



## **Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 User Guide**

August 2015

### **Americas Headquarters**

Cisco Systems, Inc.  
170 West Tasman Drive  
San Jose, CA 95134-1706  
USA  
<http://www.cisco.com>  
Tel: 408 526-4000  
800 553-NETS (6387)  
Fax: 408 527-0883

Text Part Number: OL-32122-01

THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: [www.cisco.com/go/trademarks](http://www.cisco.com/go/trademarks). Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1110R)

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

*Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 User Guide*

© 2011-2015 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.



---

**PART 1****Getting Started**

---

**CHAPTER 1****Introduction to Cisco Prime Infrastructure 1-1**

Prime Infrastructure Organization 1-1

---

**CHAPTER 2****Adding Licenses 2-1**

Adding a License to Access Features 2-1

---

**CHAPTER 3****Adding Devices to Prime Infrastructure 3-1**

Methods for Adding Devices 3-1

Adding Devices Using Discovery 3-1

Understanding the Discovery Process 3-1

Running Discovery 3-2

Running Quick Discovery 3-5

Verifying Discovery 3-5

Importing Devices from Another Source 3-6

CSV File Requirements for Importing Devices 3-6

Adding Devices Manually 3-7

Enabling IPSec Communication When Adding Devices 3-8

Validating That Devices Were Added Successfully 3-8

Verifying Device Credentials 3-9

Editing Device Parameters 3-9

Synchronizing Devices 3-10

Adding NAM HTTP/HTTPS Credentials 3-10

Exporting Devices 3-11

Next Steps 3-11

---

**CHAPTER 4****Grouping Devices 4-1**

Grouping Devices by Device Type 4-1

---

**CHAPTER 5****Setting Up Network Monitoring 5-1**

Monitoring Port Groups and Interfaces 5-1

Setting Up WAN Interface Monitoring 5-2

- Getting Enhanced Client Information by Integrating with ISE 5-3
  - Adding an Identity Services Engine 5-3
  - Configuring ACS View Servers 5-3
- Setting Up Assurance for Performance Monitoring 5-4
  - Enabling NAM Data Collection 5-4
  - Defining NAM Polling Parameters 5-4
  - Enabling NetFlow Data Collection 5-5

**PART 1**

**Watching Dashboards**

**CHAPTER 6**

**Viewing Dashboards 6-1**

- Adding Dashboards 6-3
- Configuring Dashboards 6-3
- Adding Dashlets 6-3
  - Overriding a Dashlet Filter 6-7
  - Creating Generic Dashlets 6-7

**CHAPTER 7**

**Troubleshooting Dashboards 7-1**

- Troubleshooting Missing Data 7-1

**PART 2**

**Monitoring Your Network**

**CHAPTER 8**

**Creating Monitoring Policies and Thresholds 8-1**

- Default Monitoring Policies 8-1
  - Modifying Default Monitoring Policies 8-3
- Creating New Monitoring Policies 8-3
- Monitoring Third-Party Devices By Polling MIBs 8-4
  - Example: Monitoring IP SLA 8-5
- Monitoring NetFlow Traffic 8-5

**CHAPTER 9**

**Operating and Monitoring the Network 9-1**

- Monitoring Background Tasks 9-1
- Device Work Center 9-2
- Import Policy Updates 9-3
  - Restarting the Prime Infrastructure Server 9-4
- Monitoring Jobs 9-4
- Using Packet Capture to Monitor and Troubleshoot Network Traffic 9-5



Securing Network Services 9-6

---

**CHAPTER 10**

**Monitoring Alarms 10-1**

What Is an Event? 10-1

    Recurring Alarms and Events 10-2

What Is an Alarm? 10-2

Where to Find Alarms 10-4

Where to Find Syslogs 10-4

Defining Alarm Thresholds 10-4

Changing Alarm Status 10-5

    When to Acknowledge Alarms 10-5

    Including Acknowledged and Cleared Alarms in Searches 10-6

Changing Alarm and Event Options 10-6

Configuring Alarm Severity Levels 10-6

Getting Help for Alarms 10-6

---

**CHAPTER 11**

**Configuring and Monitoring IWAN 11-1**

Using the IWAN Wizard 11-1

---

**CHAPTER 12**

**Monitoring Wireless Technologies 12-1**

RRM 12-1

Monitoring Interferers 12-4

Monitoring RFID Tags 12-4

    Searching RFID Tags 12-4

    Checking RFID Tag Search Results 12-5

    Viewing Tag List 12-5

Monitoring Media Streams 12-5

Troubleshooting Unjoined Access Points 12-6

Chokepoints 12-7

    Adding a Chokepoint to the Cisco Prime Infrastructure Database 12-7

    Adding a Chokepoint to a Cisco Prime Infrastructure Map 12-8

    Removing a Chokepoint from the Cisco Prime Infrastructure Database 12-9

    Removing a Chokepoint from a Cisco Prime Infrastructure Map 12-9

    Editing a Chokepoint 12-9

Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers 12-10

    Enhancing Tag Location Reporting with Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers 12-10

    Adding Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers to Cisco Prime Infrastructure and Maps 12-10

Monitoring Access Point Radios 12-12

---

**CHAPTER 13**

**Using Monitoring Tools 13-1**

---

**CHAPTER 14**

**Troubleshooting 14-1**

Getting Help from Cisco 14-1

    Launching the Cisco Support Community 14-1

    Opening a Support Case 14-2

Checking an End User's Network Session Status 14-3

Troubleshooting Authentication and Authorization 14-3

Troubleshooting Network Attachments 14-4

Troubleshooting Network Attachment Devices 14-4

Troubleshooting Site Network Devices 14-4

Troubleshooting the User Application and Site Bandwidth Utilization 14-5

Troubleshooting User Problems 14-6

Troubleshooting the User's Experience 14-6

Troubleshooting Voice/Video Delivery to a Branch Office 14-7

Troubleshooting Unjoined Access Points 14-7

Troubleshooting Wireless Performance Problems 14-9

---

**CHAPTER 15**

**Monitoring Multiple Prime Infrastructure Instances 15-1**

Viewing the Operation Center Dashboards 15-2

Monitoring Your Network Using Operation Center 15-2

    Monitoring Devices Using Operation Center 15-2

    Managing and Monitoring Prime Infrastructure Servers Using Operation Center 15-3

    Viewing Alarms and Events Using Operation Center 15-4

    Viewing Clients and Users Using Operation Center 15-4

    Running Reports With Operation Center 15-4

---

**PART 4**

**Configuring Devices**

---

**CHAPTER 16**

**Working with Wireless Operational Tools 16-1**

Configuring Guest User Templates 16-1

Running a Voice Audit on a Controller 16-2

Running Voice Diagnostics 16-3

Location Accuracy Tool 16-3

    Enabling the Location Accuracy Tool 16-4

Scheduling a Location Accuracy Test	16-4
Running an On-Demand Location Accuracy Test	16-6
Configuring Audit Summary	16-7
Configuring Migration Analysis	16-7
Upgrading Autonomous Access Points	16-8
Changing Station Role to Root Mode	16-8
Running Migration Analysis	16-8
Viewing the Migration Analysis Report	16-8
Viewing a Firmware Upgrade Report	16-9
Viewing a Role Change Report	16-9
Spectrum Experts	16-9
Adding a Spectrum Expert	16-9
Spectrum Experts Details	16-10

**CHAPTER 17****Designing Device Configurations 17-1**

Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates	17-2
Creating and Deploying Feature-Level Configuration Templates	17-2
Creating Features and Technologies Templates	17-3
Creating CLI Templates	17-3
Tagging Templates	17-11
Creating Composite Templates	17-12
Grouping Configuration Templates with Devices	17-13
Shared Policy Objects	17-13
Creating Interface Roles	17-14
Creating Network Objects	17-14
Creating a Security Rule Parameter Map	17-15
Creating a Security Service Group	17-15
Creating a Security Zone	17-15
Creating Wireless Configuration Templates	17-16
Creating Lightweight AP Configuration Templates	17-16
Creating Autonomous AP Configuration Templates	17-16
Creating Switch Location Configuration Templates	17-17
Creating Autonomous AP Migration Templates	17-17
Creating Controller Configuration Groups	17-17
Creating a New Configuration Group	17-18
Adding or Removing Controllers from a Configuration Group	17-19
Configuring Multiple Country Codes	17-19
Applying or Scheduling Configuration Groups	17-20

Auditing Configuration Groups 17-21  
 Rebooting Configuration Groups 17-21  
 Retrieving Configuration Group Reports 17-22  
 Creating wIPS Profiles 17-22

**CHAPTER 18**

**Deploying Templates and Devices 18-1**

Applying and Scheduling Templates 18-1  
 Automating Device Deployment 18-2  
     Automating Device Deployment Using Plug and Play Profiles 18-2  
     Prerequisites for Using Plug and Play Profiles 18-3  
     Creating Plug and Play Profiles 18-5  
     Delivering and Applying the Bootstrap 18-7  
 Configuring Controller Deployments 18-9  
     Using the Auto Provisioning Filter List 18-9  
     Adding an Auto Provisioning Filter 18-10  
     Auto Provisioning Primary Search Key Settings 18-10

**CHAPTER 19**

**Scheduling Configuration Tasks 19-1**

Managing Scheduled Configuration Tasks 19-1  
     Managing AP Template Tasks 19-1  
     Viewing WLAN Configuration Scheduled Task Results 19-2  
     Managing Software Downloads 19-2  
 Troubleshooting Template Deployment 19-5

**CHAPTER 20**

**Automating Device Deployment 20-1**

**CHAPTER 21**

**Configuring Device Features 21-1**

Configuring the Device using WSMA 21-1  
 Configuring Application Visibility 21-2  
     Estimating CPU, Memory and NetFlow Resources on ASR Devices 21-4  
     Application Visibility Enhancements in Prime Infrastructure 2.2 Release 21-5  
     Viewing the Configured AVC Profiles 21-5  
     Assessing AVC Readiness of Your Routers 21-5  
     Enabling Application Visibility on Interfaces 21-6  
     Disabling Application Visibility on Interfaces 21-6  
     NBAR Protocol Packs 21-7  
     Creating an Application Visibility Template 21-8  
     Previewing Application Visibility 21-10

Enabling Default Application Visibility on an Interface	21-11
Application Visibility Troubleshooting Sessions	21-12
Activating or Deactivating a Troubleshooting Session	21-13
Editing or Deleting a Troubleshooting Session	21-14
Configuring Quality of Service	21-14
Defining QoS Classification Profiles	21-15
Defining QoS Action Profiles	21-16
Enabling QoS on Interfaces	21-16
Disabling QoS on Interfaces	21-17
Creating a VPN Component Template	21-17
Creating an IKE Policies Template	21-17
Creating an IKE Settings Template	21-17
Creating an IPsec Profile Template	21-18
Creating a Preshared Keys Template	21-18
Creating RSA Keys Template	21-18
Creating a Transform Sets Template	21-19
Configuring an Easy VPN Server	21-19
Creating an Easy VPN Server Proxy Setting Template	21-20
Creating an Easy VPN Remote Template	21-20
Creating an Easy VPN Server Template	21-21
Creating a GSM Profile Template	21-22
Creating a Cellular Profile Template	21-23
Redirecting HTTP and HTTPS Traffic	21-23
Configuring Interfaces	21-24
Configuring a Serial Interface	21-24
Configuring POS Interface	21-25
Configuring a Service Module	21-25
Configuring Controllers	21-26
Creating a Gigabit Ethernet or Fast Ethernet Interface	21-27
Creating a Loopback Interface	21-27
Creating a VLAN Interface	21-27
Editing a VLAN Interface	21-28
Creating a Tunnel Interface	21-28
Editing an Existing Tunnel Interface	21-29
Creating a Virtual Template Interface	21-29
Editing an Existing Virtual Template Interface	21-29
Configuring Cellular WAN Interfaces	21-30
Configuring a CDMA Interfaces	21-30
Configuring a GSM Interfaces	21-30

Configuring Network Address Translation (NAT)	21-31
NAT Types	21-31
Configuring NAT for IP Address Conservation	21-32
Creating NAT IP Pools	21-32
Creating NAT44 Rules	21-33
Configuring Interfaces	21-33
Setting Up NAT MAX Translation	21-34
Configuring DMVPN	21-34
Creating a DMVPN Tunnel	21-35
Configuring Hub and Spoke Topology	21-36
Configuring a DMVPN Fully Meshed Topology	21-36
Configuring a Cluster Topology	21-37
Editing a DMVPN	21-37
Deleting a DMVPN	21-38
Configuring GETVPN	21-38
Creating a GETVPN Group Member	21-39
Creating a GETVPN Key Server	21-40
Editing a GETVPN Group Member or Key Server	21-41
Deleting a GETVPN Group Member or Key Server	21-41
Configuring VPN Components	21-41
Configuring IKE Policies	21-42
Configuring IKE Settings	21-42
Configuring IPsec Profiles	21-43
Creating Preshared Keys	21-44
Creating RSA Keys	21-44
Configuring Transform Sets	21-45
Creating a Zone-Based Firewall	21-46
Configuring a Zone-Based Firewall Template	21-47
Creating an Interface Role	21-48
Creating an IPv4 Network Object	21-48
Defining Device Override	21-48
Creating a Zone-Based Firewall Policy Rules Template	21-48
Configuring a Zone-Based Firewall on a Single Device	21-49
Creating a Routing Protocol	21-56
Creating a Static Route	21-56
Creating a RIP Route	21-56
Creating an EIGRP Route	21-57
Creating an OSPF Route	21-58

**CHAPTER 22****Getting Help Setting Up and Configuring Devices 22-1**

- Preconfiguring Devices to be Added Later 22-1
  - Supported Devices and Software Images for Plug and Play Setup Workflow 22-2
  - Prerequisites 22-3
  - Getting the Configuration to New Devices 22-4
  - Specifying Device Credentials 22-4
  - Saving the Plug and Play Profile 22-5
  - Prerequisites for Deploying Bootstrap Configuration into a Device in a FIPS-certified Prime Infrastructure Server 22-5
  - Prerequisites for Deploying Bootstrap Configuration into a Device in a non FIPS-certified Prime Infrastructure Server 22-6
- Verifying Plug and Play Provisioning Status 22-8
- Getting Help Setting Up Access Switches 22-8
  - Before You Begin 22-9
  - Assign Devices to Location 22-9
  - Choose Devices 22-9
- Configuring Wired Features Using Guided Mode 22-10
  - IP Address Options 22-10
  - Device Credentials 22-11
  - VLAN and Switching Parameters 22-11
  - Auto Smartports and Uplinks 22-11
  - Confirmation 22-12
- Configuring Wired Features Using Advanced Mode 22-12
- Configuring Wireless Features 22-13
  - Create Groups 22-13
  - Wireless Parameters 22-13
  - Wireless LAN Security 22-13
  - Guest Access 22-13
  - Confirmation 22-13

**PART 5****Managing Device Inventory****CHAPTER 23****Viewing Devices 23-1**

- Viewing Network Devices 23-1
- Viewing Compute Devices 23-3

**CHAPTER 24****Updating Device Inventory 24-1**

- Changing Discovery Settings 24-1

- Scheduling Discovery Jobs 24-2
- Monitoring the Discovery Process 24-2
- Discovery Protocols and CSV File Formats 24-3
- Updating Device Inventory Manually 24-3
- Importing Device Inventory 24-4
- Using Credential Profiles 24-4
  - Adding Credential Profiles 24-5
  - Editing Credential Profiles 24-5
  - Deleting Credential Profiles 24-6
  - Copying Credential Profiles 24-6
- Troubleshooting Unmanaged Devices 24-7

**CHAPTER 25**

**Maintaining Software Images 25-1**

- Setting Image Management and Distribution Preferences 25-2
- Managing Software Images 25-3
- Importing Software Images 25-3
- Changing Software Image Requirements 25-4
- Deploying Software Images to Devices 25-5
- Viewing Recommended Software Images from Cisco.com 25-5
- Analyzing Software Image Upgrades 25-6

**CHAPTER 26**

**Working with Device Configurations 26-1**

- Configuration Archives 26-1
- Changing Prime Infrastructure Device Configuration Settings 26-2
- Changing Prime Infrastructure Configuration Archive Collection Settings 26-2
  - Supported Syslog Formats for Configuration Archive Collection Settings 26-2
- Comparing Current and Previous Device Configurations 26-3
- Overview of Device Configurations 26-4
  - Changing a Single Device Configuration 26-4
  - Adding a Wireless LAN Controller 26-4
  - Changing Wireless LAN Controller Configuration Settings 26-5
  - Rebooting Controllers 26-5
- Configuration Rollbacks 26-6
- Rolling Back Device Configuration Versions 26-6
- Deleting Device Configurations 26-6
- Configuring Redundancy on Controllers 26-7



Prerequisites and Limitations for Redundancy	26-7
Configuring Redundancy Interfaces	26-8
Configuring Redundancy on a Primary Controller	26-8
Configuring Redundancy on a Secondary Controller	26-9
Monitoring and Troubleshooting the Redundancy States	26-10
Configuring Peer Service Port IP and Subnet Mask	26-12
Adding a Peer Network Route	26-13
Administration Commands for Redundancy	26-13
Disabling Redundancy on Controllers	26-13

**CHAPTER 27****Grouping Devices and Ports 27-1**

Types of Groups	27-1
Creating Device Groups	27-2
Using Location Groups	27-3
Creating Location Groups	27-3
Location Groups and Wireless Maps	27-3
Editing User Defined and Location Groups	27-3
Duplicating User Defined and Location Groups	27-4
Deleting User Defined and Location Groups	27-4
Device Accessibility in Parent-Child Device and Location Groups	27-4
Hiding Empty Groups	27-5
Creating Groups of Ports	27-5
Creating Customized Port Groups	27-6
Deleting a Port Group	27-6

**PART 6****Visualizing the Network****CHAPTER 28****Using Network Topology Maps 28-1**

Information Displayed in Topology Maps	28-1
Before Using Topology Maps	28-1
Understanding Topology Map Functions and Icons	28-1
Adding Unmanaged Devices and Links to Topology Maps	28-2
Viewing Fault Information for Devices and Links	28-2
Using the Network Topology Map to Find Devices	28-3
Viewing a Device's Network Topology	28-3
Viewing Link Status to Determine Network Status	28-3
Creating a Topology Dashlet	28-3

**CHAPTER 29**

**Using Wireless Maps 29-1**

- Grouping Devices by Site 29-1
  - Creating Sites 29-1
  - Importing Site Map Data 29-2
  - Associating Endpoints with a Site 29-3
- Monitoring Google Earth Maps 29-4
  - Creating an Outdoor Location Using Google Earth 29-4
  - Importing a File into Prime Infrastructure 29-8
  - Viewing Google Earth Maps 29-9
  - Adding Google Earth Location Launch Points to Access Point Pages 29-10
  - Google Earth Settings 29-10
- Using the Automatic Hierarchy to Create Maps 29-11

**PART 7**

**Ensuring Network Services**

**CHAPTER 30**

**Configuring Application Visibility and Control 30-1**

- Configuring the Device using WSMA 30-1
- Configuring Application Visibility 30-2
  - Estimating CPU, Memory and NetFlow Resources on ASR Devices 30-4
  - NBAR Protocol Packs 30-5
  - Creating an Application Visibility Template 30-5
  - Previewing Application Visibility 30-7
  - Enabling Default Application Visibility on an Interface 30-7
  - Application Visibility Troubleshooting Sessions 30-9
  - Activating or Deactivating a Troubleshooting Session 30-10
  - Editing or Deleting a Troubleshooting Session 30-10
- Creating a VPN Component Template 30-11
  - Creating an IKE Policies Template 30-11
  - Creating an IKE Settings Template 30-11
  - Creating an IPsec Profile Template 30-12
  - Creating a Preshared Keys Template 30-12
  - Creating RSA Keys Template 30-12
  - Creating a Transform Sets Template 30-13
- Configuring an Easy VPN Server 30-13
  - Creating an Easy VPN Server Proxy Setting Template 30-14
  - Creating an Easy VPN Remote Template 30-14
  - Creating an Easy VPN Server Template 30-15
  - Creating a GSM Profile Template 30-16
  - Creating a Cellular Profile Template 30-17

Redirecting HTTP and HTTPS Traffic	30-17
Configuring Interfaces	30-18
Configuring a Serial Interface	30-18
Configuring POS Interface	30-19
Configuring a Service Module	30-19
Configuring Controllers	30-20
Creating a Gigabit Ethernet or Fast Ethernet Interface	30-21
Creating a Loopback Interface	30-21
Creating a VLAN Interface	30-21
Editing a VLAN Interface	30-22
Creating a Tunnel Interface	30-22
Editing an Existing Tunnel Interface	30-22
Creating a Virtual Template Interface	30-23
Editing an Existing Virtual Template Interface	30-23
Configuring Cellular WAN Interfaces	30-24
Configuring a CDMA Interfaces	30-24
Configuring a GSM Interfaces	30-24
Configuring Network Address Translation (NAT)	30-25
NAT Types	30-25
Configuring NAT for IP Address Conservation	30-25
Creating NAT IP Pools	30-26
Creating NAT44 Rules	30-26
Configuring Interfaces	30-27
Setting Up NAT MAX Translation	30-28
Configuring DMVPN	30-28
Creating a DMVPN Tunnel	30-28
Configuring Hub and Spoke Topology	30-30
Configuring a DMVPN Fully Meshed Topology	30-30
Configuring a Cluster Topology	30-31
Editing a DMVPN	30-31
Deleting a DMVPN	30-32
Configuring GETVPN	30-32
Creating a GETVPN Group Member	30-33
Creating a GETVPN Key Server	30-34
Editing a GETVPN Group Member or Key Server	30-34
Deleting a GETVPN Group Member or Key Server	30-35
Configuring VPN Components	30-35
Configuring IKE Policies	30-36
Configuring IKE Settings	30-36

- Configuring IPsec Profiles 30-37
- Creating Preshared Keys 30-37
- Creating RSA Keys 30-38
- Configuring Transform Sets 30-39
- Creating a Zone-Based Firewall 30-39
  - Configuring a Zone-Based Firewall Template 30-41
  - Creating an Interface Role 30-41
  - Creating an IPv4 Network Object 30-41
  - Defining Device Override 30-42
  - Creating a Zone-Based Firewall Policy Rules Template 30-42
  - Configuring a Zone-Based Firewall on a Single Device 30-42
- Creating a Routing Protocol 30-49
  - Creating a Static Route 30-49
  - Creating a RIP Route 30-50
  - Creating an EIGRP Route 30-50
  - Creating an OSPF Route 30-51

**CHAPTER 31**

**Ensuring Consistent Application Experiences 31-1**

- Evaluating Service Health 31-2
  - Health Rules 31-3
  - Creating Custom Applications 31-4
- Identifying Optimization Candidates 31-4
- Establishing Performance Baselines 31-5
  - Enabling Baselining 31-6
- Validating Optimization ROI 31-7
- Monitoring Optimized Flows 31-7

**CHAPTER 32**

**Troubleshooting Applications 32-1**

**CHAPTER 33**

**Using Mediatrace 33-1**

- Troubleshooting RTP and TCP Flows Using Mediatrace 33-1
  - Using the Mediatrace Tables 33-1
  - Running Mediatrace from Selected RTP or TCP Flows 33-2
  - Launching an Ad Hoc Mediatrace From Endpoints 33-3
  - Troubleshooting Worst RTP Endpoints Using Dashlets 33-5
  - Comparing Flow Data From Multiple Sources 33-6

<b>CHAPTER 34</b>	<b>Estimating Device Resources</b>	<b>34-1</b>
<b>CHAPTER 35</b>	<b>Application Servers</b>	<b>35-1</b>
<b>CHAPTER 36</b>	<b>Network Services</b>	<b>36-1</b>
	Cisco Mobility Services Engine and Services	<b>36-1</b>
<b>CHAPTER 37</b>	<b>Configuring the Cisco AppNav Solution</b>	<b>37-1</b>
	Overview of Cisco AppNav	<b>37-1</b>
	Components of Cisco AppNav	<b>37-1</b>
	Prerequisites for Configuring Cisco AppNav	<b>37-3</b>
	Configuring Cisco AppNav	<b>37-3</b>
	Configuring Cisco AppNav from the Device Work Center	<b>37-4</b>
	Configuring Cisco AppNav Using Templates	<b>37-5</b>
	Deploying a Cisco AppNav Template	<b>37-6</b>
	Configuring Cisco AppNav Automatically During ISR-WAAS Container Activation	<b>37-7</b>
<b>CHAPTER 38</b>	<b>Configuring the Cisco WAAS Container</b>	<b>38-1</b>
	Prerequisites for Installing an ISR-WAAS Container	<b>38-1</b>
	Cisco WAAS Central Manager Integration	<b>38-1</b>
	Cisco WAAS Central Manager Integration	<b>38-2</b>
	Configuring Single Sign-On	<b>38-2</b>
	Creating a Username in Cisco WAAS Central Manager	<b>38-3</b>
	Cross-Launching Cisco WAAS Central Manager	<b>38-3</b>
	Defining Interface Roles	<b>38-4</b>
	Importing an OVA image	<b>38-4</b>
	Configuring Cisco AppNav Automatically During ISR-WAAS Container Activation	<b>38-5</b>
	Installing an ISR-WAAS Container	<b>38-5</b>
	Installing and Activating an ISR-WAAS Container	<b>38-5</b>
	Installing an ISR-WAAS Container on a Single Router	<b>38-6</b>
	Installing an ISR-WAAS Container on Multiple Routers	<b>38-6</b>
	Uninstalling and Deactivating a Cisco WAAS Container	<b>38-7</b>
	Uninstalling a Single Cisco ISR-WAAS Container	<b>38-7</b>
	Uninstalling a Multiple Cisco ISR-WAAS Container	<b>38-7</b>
	Deactivating a Cisco ISR-WAAS Container	<b>38-7</b>

**CHAPTER 39**

**Working with Wireless Mobility 39-1**

- What Is Mobility? 39-1
- New Mobility 39-2
- Mobility Work Center 39-2
- Creating a Mobility Domain 39-3
  - Creating a Switch Peer Group 39-4
  - Changing a Mobility Role 39-4
- Mobility Anchors 39-5
  - Configuring a Guest Anchor Controller for a WLAN 39-5

**CHAPTER 40**

**Managing Reports 40-1**

- Managing Reports 40-2
  - Creating, Scheduling, and Running a New Report 40-2
  - Customizing Report Results 40-3
- Managing Scheduled Reports 40-3
- Managing Saved Report Templates 40-4
- Prime Infrastructure Reports 40-4

**APPENDIX A**

**Prime Infrastructure User Interface Reference A-1**

- Prime Infrastructure UI Components A-1
  - Global Toolbars A-1
  - Filters A-2
  - Data Entry Features A-3
- Common UI Tasks A-5
  - Changing Your Password A-5
  - Changing Your Active Domain A-6
  - Monitoring Alarms A-6
  - Getting Device Details from the Device 360° View A-6
  - Getting User Details from the User 360° View A-7
  - Getting Help A-9
- Search Methods A-9
  - Performing a Quick Search A-9
  - Performing an Advanced Search A-10
  - Performing a Saved Search A-18
  - Configuring the Search Results Display (Edit View) A-18



## **PART 1**

### **Getting Started**

- [Introduction to Cisco Prime Infrastructure](#)
- [Adding Licenses](#)
- [Adding Devices to Prime Infrastructure](#)
- [Grouping Devices](#)
- [Setting Up Network Monitoring](#)
- [Changing User Settings](#)







# Introduction to Cisco Prime Infrastructure

Cisco Prime Infrastructure is a network management tool that supports lifecycle management of your entire network infrastructure from one graphical interface. Prime Infrastructure provides network administrators with a single solution for provisioning, monitoring, optimizing, and troubleshooting both wired and wireless devices. Robust graphical interfaces make device deployments and operations simple and cost-effective.

## Prime Infrastructure Organization

The Prime Infrastructure web interface is organized into a lifecycle workflow that includes the high-level task areas described in [Table 1-1](#). This document follows the same general organization.



**Caution**

You are strongly advised not to enable third-party browser extensions. In Internet Explorer, you can disable third-party browser extensions by choosing **Tools > Internet Options** and unselecting the **Enable third-party browser extensions** check box in the **Advanced** tab.

**Table 1-1** *Prime Infrastructure Task Areas*

Task Area	Description	Used By
Dashboard	View dashboards, which give you a quick view of devices, performance information, and various incidents. See <a href="#">Filters</a> for more information.	Network Operators, and Network Engineers
Monitor	Monitor your network on a daily basis and perform other day-to-day or ad hoc operations related to network device inventory and configuration management. The Monitor tab includes dashboards and tools that you need for day-to-day monitoring, troubleshooting, maintenance, and operations.	Network Engineers, Designers, and Architects
Configuration	Design feature or device patterns, or templates. You create reusable design patterns, such as configuration templates, in the Design area. You may use predefined templates or create your own. Patterns and templates are used in the deployment phase of the lifecycle. You can also design Plug and Play profiles and mobility services.	Network Engineers, Designers, and Architects

**Table 1-1** *Prime Infrastructure Task Areas (continued)*

<b>Task Area</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Used By</b>
Inventory	Perform all device management operations such as adding devices, running discovery, managing software images, configuring device archives, and auditing configuration changes on devices.	Network Engineers, NOC Operators and Service Operators
Maps	View network topology and wireless maps.	Network Engineers, NOC Operators, and Service Operators
Services	Access mobility services, Application Visibility and Control services, and IWAN features.	Network Engineers, NOC Operators and Service Operators
Report	Create reports, view saved report templates, and run scheduled reports.	Network Engineers, NOC Operators, and Service Operators
Administration	Specify system configuration settings and data collection settings, and manage access control. You can view and approve jobs, specify health rules, and manage licenses. You can also perform software updates and configure high availability.	Network Engineers

**Related Topic**

- [Understanding the Prime Infrastructure User Interface](#)



## Adding Licenses

---

You must purchase licenses to access the Cisco Prime Infrastructure features required to manage your network. Each license also controls the number of devices that you can manage using those features.

You need a base license and the corresponding feature licenses (such as the assurance or the lifecycle license) to get full access to the respective Prime Infrastructure features to manage a set number of devices.

When you install Prime Infrastructure for the first time, you can access the lifecycle, assurance, collector, and data center features using the built-in evaluation license that is available by default. The default evaluation limitations are as follows:

- The Lifecycle and Assurance license is valid for 60 days for 100 devices.
- The Collector License is valid for 60 days for 20,000 Netflow per seconds.
- The Data Center License is valid for 60 days for 10 devices.

Data Center Hypervisor License is introduced in Prime Infrastructure version 3.0. This license is not available by default and is added explicitly to manage the V-center devices (hosts). The V-center devices are added in **Inventory > Device Management > Compute Devices > Discovery Sources**. The Data Center Hypervisor License added in **Administration > Licenses and Software Updates > Licenses > Files > License Files** automatically manages the number of hosts.

For information about Prime Infrastructure license types and how to order them, see the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Ordering and Licensing Guide](#).

See the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Administrator Guide](#) for information about managing licenses, troubleshooting licensing issues, verifying license details and about the different types of licenses.

## Adding a License to Access Features

You purchase licenses to access the Prime Infrastructure features required to manage your network. Each license also controls the number of devices or the number of devices on which NetFlow is enabled that you can manage using those features.

To add a new license, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Licenses and Software Updates > Licenses**.
  - Step 2** Click **Files**, then click **License Files**.
  - Step 3** Select the licenses that you have ordered with the required device limit, then click **Add**.

**Step 4** Browse to the location of the license file, then click **OK**.

---

See the *Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Administrator Guide* for information about managing licenses, deleting licenses, troubleshooting licensing issues, and verifying license details.



## Adding Devices to Prime Infrastructure

---

### Methods for Adding Devices

You can add devices to Cisco Prime Infrastructure in one of the following ways:

- Use an automated process—See [Adding Devices Using Discovery](#).
- Import devices from a CSV file—See [Importing Devices from Another Source](#).
- Add devices manually by entering IP address and device credential information—See [Adding Devices Manually](#).

### Adding Devices Using Discovery

When you run discovery, Prime Infrastructure discovers the devices and, after obtaining access, collects device inventory data. We recommend that you run discovery, when you are initially getting started with Prime Infrastructure.

Prime Infrastructure uses SNMP polling to gather information about your network devices within the range of IP addresses you specify. If you have CDP enabled on your network devices, Prime Infrastructure uses the seed device you specify to discover the devices in your network.

You can discover your devices by:

- Configuring discovery settings—This method is recommended if you want to specify settings and rerun discovery in the future using the same settings. See [Running Discovery](#).
- Running Quick Discovery—Quick Discovery quickly ping sweeps your network and uses SNMP polling to get details on the devices. See [Running Quick Discovery](#).

### Understanding the Discovery Process

Prime Infrastructure performs the following steps during the discovery process:

1. Using ICMP ping, determine if each device is reachable. If Prime Infrastructure is unable to reach the device, the device Reachability status is *Unreachable*.
2. Verify the SNMP credentials. If the device is reachable by ICMP, but the SNMP credentials are not valid, the device Reachability status is *Ping Reachable*.

If the device is reachable by both ICMP and SNMP, the device Reachability status is *Reachable*.

3. Verify Telnet and SSH credentials.

4. Modify the device configuration(s) to add a trap receiver in order for Prime Infrastructure to receive the necessary notifications.
5. Start the inventory collection process to gather all device information.
6. Add the devices to the **Inventory > Network Devices** page.

## Running Discovery

Prime Infrastructure discovers devices with IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

To run discovery, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Discovery**.
- Step 2** Click **Discovery Settings** (in the top right corner), then click **New**.
- Step 3** Enter the Protocol Settings as described in [Table 3-1](#).
- Step 4** Perform one of the following:
  - Click **Save** to save your discovery settings and schedule your discovery to run at a specified time.
  - Click **Run Now** to run the discovery now.

**Table 3-1** Discovery Protocol Settings

Field	Description
<b>Protocol Settings</b>	
Ping Sweep Module	Prime Infrastructure gets a list of IP address ranges from a specified combination of IP address and subnet mask, then pings each IP address in the range to check the reachability of devices. See <a href="#">Sample IPv4 IP Addresses for Ping Sweep</a> for more information.
<b>Layer 2 Protocols</b>	
CDP Module	Prime Infrastructure reads the cdpCacheAddress and cdpCacheAddressType MIB objects in the cdpCacheTable from CISCO-CDP-MIB on every newly found device as follows: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The cdpCacheAddress MIB object is gathered from the current device. This provides a list of neighbor device addresses.</li> <li>2. If the neighbor device addresses do not already exist in the global device list, they are added to the local cache.</li> </ol> Select the <b>Enable Cross Router Boundary</b> check box to specify that Prime Infrastructure should discover neighboring routers.
LLDP	Similar to CDP, but it allows the discovery of non-Cisco devices.
<b>Advanced Protocols</b>	
Routing Table	Queries and analyzes routing tables on seed routers to discover subnets and next-hop routers. This process discovers a router for every subnet on its list of known networks.

Table 3-1 Discovery Protocol Settings (continued)

Field	Description
Address Resolution Protocol	<p>The ARP Discovery Module depends on the Routing Table Discovery Module (RTDM), and is executed only when RTDM is processed. This precondition is identified based on the flags processed by the ARP Discovery Module, which are part of the DeviceObject.</p> <p>The entries coming out of the ARP Discovery Module do not need to pass through RTDM because (per the router Discovery algorithm) active routers are those that RTDM must process and identify.</p> <p>When the ARP table is fetched and the entries are not already discovered by RTDM, these entries (though they may represent routers) are not active routers and need not be passed on to RTDM. This is ensured by setting the ARP Discovery Module flag to Processed and leaving the RTDM flag set to Unprocessed.</p> <p>When the RTDM comes across an entry with the RTDM flag unset and the ARP flag set, RTDM identifies the entry as a inactive router or other device and it leaves the entry as <i>unprocessed</i>. The ARP Discovery Module also ignores the entry according to the algorithm, based on the Processed flag set against the ARP Discovery Module.</p> <p>When the <b>Enable ARP</b> check box is selected, the device MAC address needs to be updated in the device information. Applications can retrieve this information in the adapter through the DeviceInfo object. By scanning the device MAC address, the applications can distinguish between Cisco and non-Cisco devices.</p> <p>ARP cache from the device is collected using CidsARPInfoCollector. The MAC ID of the device is retrieved from this data and set in the DeviceInfo object.</p>
Border Gateway Protocol	The BGP Discovery Module uses bgpPeerTable in the BGP4-MIB to find its BGP peer. The table contains its peers' IP addresses, which are added as clues to the local cache.
Open Shortest Path First	Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) protocol is an interior gateway routing protocol that uses the ospfNbrTable and ospfVirtNbrTable MIBs to find neighbor IP addresses.
<b>Filters</b>	
IP Filter	Includes or excludes devices based on IP address. For example, you can enter any of the following strings and specify whether to include or exclude the devices found during discovery: <p>192.0.2.89</p> <p>192.0.2.*</p> <p>192.0.[16-32].89</p> <p>[192-193].*.55.[16-32]</p>
<b>Advanced Filters</b>	
System Location Filter	Includes or excludes devices based on System Location.
System Object ID Filter	Includes or excludes devices based on the sysObjectID string set on the device.
DNS Filter	Includes or excludes devices based on the domain name string set on the device.
<b>Credential Settings</b>	
Credential Set	The credential set lists all the available credential profiles in Prime Infrastructure. You can associate credential profile with a range of IP addresses. The devices will be discovered based on the selected credential profile. For more information see, <a href="#">Using Credential Profiles</a> .
SNMPv2 Credential	SNMP community string is a required parameter for discovering devices in the network using SNMPv2. You can enter multiple rows of credentials mapped to a specific IP address, or the IP address can be a wildcard; for example, *.*.*.*, 10.1.1.*. You cannot save or use the discovery settings if you do not specify SNMP credentials.

Table 3-1 Discovery Protocol Settings (continued)

Field	Description
SNMPv3 Credential	<p>Prime Infrastructure supports SNMPv3 discovery for devices. The following SNMPv3 modes are available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• AuthPriv—Provides authentication based on the HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA algorithms. Provides DES 56-bit encryption in addition to authentication based on the CBC-DES (DES-56) and AES-128 standards.</li> <li>• AuthNoPriv—Provides authentication based on the HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA algorithms.</li> <li>• NoAuthNoPriv—Uses a username match for authentication.</li> <li>• PrivType—Protocol used to secure the SNMP authentication request.</li> <li>• PrivPassword—Prefixed privacy passphrase for the SNMPv3 user.</li> </ul>
Telnet Credential	<p>You can specify the Telnet credentials during discovery so that Prime Infrastructure can collect the device configurations and fully manage the devices. If you do not specify Telnet credentials in the discovery settings, Prime Infrastructure discovers the devices but is unable to collect the full inventory of the device until you specify the Telnet credentials.</p>
SSH Credential	<p>For full device support via SSH, you must use SSHv2 with a 1024 bit key. You can configure SSH before running discovery.</p> <p>We recommend that you select SSHv2 as the protocol for communicating with the device CLI because it allows the use of Web Services Management Agent (WSMA) for configuring devices. (For more information see, <a href="#">Configuring the Device using WSMA.</a>)</p>
<b>Preferred Management IP (how Prime Infrastructure attempts to find the preferred management address for devices)</b>	
Use Loopback IP	<p>Prime Infrastructure uses the preferred management IP address from the loop back interface. If the device does not have a loopback interface, Prime Infrastructure uses similar logic to the OSPF algorithm to select the router's preferred management IP address.</p>
Use SysName	<p>Prime Infrastructure gets the preferred management IP address for the device using DNS lookup of the SysName for the device.</p>
Use DNS Reverse Lookup	<p>Prime Infrastructure gets the preferred management IP address by doing a reverse DNS lookup on the device IP address, followed by a forward DNS lookup.</p>

After running discovery, choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.

**Note**

When discovery job rediscovers an existing device, the original credentials will be maintained and will not be updated with the credentials entered in Discovery Settings, if Last Inventory Collection Status of the device is “completed” in the **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices** page. However, if the status is “partial collection” or any other status, then original credentials of the existing device will be overwritten with the credentials present in the Discovery Settings.

See [Monitoring Network Devices](#) for more information.



## Sample IPv4 IP Addresses for Ping Sweep

**Table 3-2** Sample IPv4 Seed IP Addresses for Ping Sweep

Subnet Range	Number of Bits	Number of IP Addresses	Sample Seed IP Address	Start IP Address	End IP Address
255.255.240.0	20	4094	10.104.62.11	10.104.48.1	10.104.63.254
255.255.248.0	21	2046	10.104.62.11	10.104.56.1	10.104.63.254
255.255.252.0	22	1022	10.104.62.11	10.104.60.1	10.104.63.254
255.255.254.0	23	510	10.104.62.11	10.104.62.1	10.104.63.254
255.255.255.0	24	254	10.104.62.11	10.104.62.1	10.104.63.254
255.255.255.128	25	126	10.104.62.11	10.104.62.1	10.104.63.126
255.255.255.192	26	62	10.104.62.11	10.104.62.1	10.104.63.62
255.255.255.224	27	30	10.104.62.11	10.104.62.1	10.104.63.30
255.255.255.240	28	14	10.104.62.11	10.104.62.1	10.104.63.14
255.255.255.248	29	6	10.104.62.11	10.104.62.9	10.104.63.14
255.255.255.252	30	2	10.104.62.11	10.104.62.9	10.104.63.10
255.255.255.254	31	0	10.104.62.11		
255.255.255.255	32	1	10.104.62.11	10.104.62.11	10.104.62.11

## Running Quick Discovery

If you want to quickly run discovery without specifying and saving your settings, you can use Quick Discovery.

You can view the guest users discovered by Prime Infrastructure by choosing **Services > Network Services > Guest Users**. To see the correct lifetime on guest user accounts after they are discovered, make sure the devices have the correct time settings specified.

To run Quick Discovery, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Discovery**.
  - Step 2** In the top-right side of the page, click **Quick Discovery**.
  - Step 3** Complete the required fields, then click **Run Now**.
- 

## Verifying Discovery

When discovery is completed, you can verify that the process was successful.

To verify successful discovery, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Discovery**.
  - Step 2** Choose the discovery job for which you want to view details.

- Step 3** Choose **User Jobs > Discovery** from the left navigation pane and select the specific job.
- Step 4** Under Discovery Job Instances, expand the arrow to view details about the devices that were discovered.
- If devices are missing:
- Change your discovery settings, then rerun the discovery. See [Table 3-1](#) for information about discovery settings.
  - Add devices manually. See [Adding Devices Manually](#) for more information.

## Importing Devices from Another Source

If you have another management system from which you want to import your devices, or if you want to import a spreadsheet that lists all of your devices and their attributes, you can add device information into Prime Infrastructure as explained in the following steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, then click **Bulk Import**.
- Step 2** From the **Operation** drop-down list, choose **Device**.
- Step 3** In the **Select CSV File**, enter or browse to the CSV file that contains the devices that you want to import.
- Step 4** Click the link to download a sample file that contains all of the fields and descriptions for the information that must be contained in your imported file. See [Figure 3-1](#).

**Figure 3-1** Downloading a Sample Template for Importing Devices or Sites

Make sure that you retain the required information in the CSV file as explained in [CSV File Requirements for Importing Devices](#).

If the importing CSV file contains any UDF parameters, ensure that UDF is configured in **Administration > Settings > System Settings > Inventory > User Defined Fields** prior to importing the devices. The UDF column in the CSV file must begin with **UDF:** as indicated in the sample CSV template.

- Step 5** Click **Import**.

- Step 6** Check the status of the import by choosing **Administration > Dashboards > Job Dashboard > User Jobs > Import**.
- Step 7** Click the arrow to expand the job details and view the details and history for the import job.
- 

## CSV File Requirements for Importing Devices

If you want to use a CSV file to import your devices or sites from another source into Prime Infrastructure, you can download a sample template by choosing **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, then clicking **Bulk Import**. Click the link to download a sample template as shown in [Figure 3-1](#).

When you download a sample CSV template for importing devices or sites, the extent to which Prime Infrastructure can manage your devices, depends on the information you provide in the CSV file. If you do not provide values for CLI username, password, and enable password, Prime Infrastructure will have limited functionality and cannot modify device configurations, update device software images, and perform any other valuable functions. You can specify the credential profile in the CSV file to apply the credentials to a set of devices. If you specify the credential profile and also enter the values manually in the CSV file, then the manually entered credentials takes high priority and the device is managed based on the combination of manually entered credentials and credential profile. For example, if the CSV file contains credential profile with SNMP and Telnet credentials in addition to manually entered SNMP credentials, then the device is managed based on the manually entered SNMP credentials and the Telnet credentials in the credential profile.

- For partial inventory collection in Prime Infrastructure, you must provide the following values in the CSV file:
  - Device IP address
  - SNMP version
  - SNMP read-only community strings
  - SNMP write community strings
  - SNMP retry value
  - SNMP timeout value
- For full inventory collection in Prime Infrastructure, you must provide the following values in the CSV file:
  - Device IP address
  - SNMP version
  - SNMP read-only community strings
  - SNMP write community strings
  - SNMP retry value
  - SNMP timeout value
  - Protocol

You must also provide values for the fields that correspond to the protocol you specify. For example, if you specify SNMPv3, you must specify values for the SNMPv3 fields in the sample CSV file such as the SNMPv3 username and authorization password.

  - CLI username

- CLI password
- CLI enable password
- CLI timeout value

## Adding Devices Manually

Adding devices manually is helpful if you want to add a single device. If you want to add all devices in your network, we recommend that you run discovery (see [Running Discovery](#)) or import devices from a CSV file (see [Importing Devices from Another Source](#)).

After adding a device in the Converged view with profile, if you edit the device (which is associated with Credential Profile) in the Classic view, the Credential Profile association of the device is removed.

To add devices manually, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.

**Step 2** Click **Add Device**.

**Step 3** Complete the required fields.

**Step 4** For the License Level field, select

- **Full** to collect all device information and have Prime Infrastructure manage the device. Managed devices count against the number of managed devices in your Prime Infrastructure license. **Full** is selected by default.
- **Switch Port Trace Only** to collect partial device information (host name, device name, device type, and reachability status) and allow Prime Infrastructure to display how an AP is connected to a WLC on wireless maps. Switch Port Trace Only devices do not count against the number of managed devices in your Prime Infrastructure license. You cannot perform device management operations on devices that you designate as Switch Port Trace Only.

See [Enabling IPsec Communication When Adding Devices](#) for information about enabling IPsec.

**Step 5** (Optional) Click **Verify Credentials** to verify the device credentials before adding the device.




---

**Note** Prime Infrastructure provides HTTP credentials verification support for NAM devices only.

---

**Step 6** Click **Add** to add the device with the settings you specified.




---

**Note** User Defined Field (UDF) parameters are available only if you added them under **Administration > Settings > System Settings > Inventory > User Defined Fields**. Do not use the special characters : ; and # for UDF field parameters.

---

## Enabling IPsec Communication When Adding Devices

We recommend that you use IPsec tunneling to secure wireless management traffic between your network devices and Prime Infrastructure servers. Using IPsec between the management system and the managed devices provides an additional layer of security.

To enable IPSec when adding a device to Prime Infrastructure:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Click **Add Device**.
  - Step 3** Complete the required fields.
  - Step 4** Under IPSec Parameters, click **Enable IPSec Communication**, then complete the required fields.
  - Step 5** Click **Add** to add the device with the settings you specified.
- 

## About Adding Wireless Devices

Note the following information when adding wireless devices to Prime Infrastructure:

- When a controller is removed from the system, a warning message appears to confirm whether the associated access points need to be removed.
- If you are adding a controller into the Prime Infrastructure across a GRE link using IPSec or a lower MTU link with multiple fragments, you might need to adjust the Maximum VarBinds per Get PDU and Maximum VarBinds per Set PDU. If it is set too high, the controller might not be added into Prime Infrastructure.

To adjust the Maximum VarBinds per Get PDU or Maximum VarBinds per Set PDU: Stop the Prime Infrastructure, choose **Administration > Settings > System Settings > Network and Device > SNMP**, and edit the Maximum VarBinds per Get PDU and Maximum VarBinds per Set PDU values to 50 or lower.

- If you receive the error message 'Sparse table not supported', verify that Prime Infrastructure and WLC versions are compatible and retry. For information on compatible versions, see the following URL:  
[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/wireless/controller/5500/tech\\_notes/Wireless\\_Software\\_Compatibility\\_Matrix.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/wireless/controller/5500/tech_notes/Wireless_Software_Compatibility_Matrix.html).
- When a controller is added to Prime Infrastructure, Prime Infrastructure acts as a TRAP receiver and the following traps are enabled on the controller: 802.11 Disassociation, 802.11 Deauthentication, and 802.11 Authenticated.
- In the **Inventory > Network Devices > All Devices > Wireless Controllers** page, to update the credentials of multiple controllers in bulk, select the controllers you need to update and click **Edit**. Select the credential profile and click **Update** or **Update & Sync**.
- You can also update the credentials of multiple controllers in bulk by choosing a CSV file. Select the controllers and click **Bulk Import**. Browse the CSV file that contains a list of controllers to be updated, one controller per line. Each line is a comma separated list of controller attributes.
- When a controller is added, the **Reachability** of the controller will be **Unknown**, while Prime Infrastructure attempts to communicate with the controller that you added. The Reachability of the controller changes to **Reachable** or **Ping Reachable** once the communication with the controller is successful.

## Validating That Devices Were Added Successfully

After collecting device information, Prime Infrastructure gathers and displays the configurations and the software images for the devices. To verify that your devices were successfully added to Prime Infrastructure, you can choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices** and

- Verify that the devices you have added appear in the list. Click a device name to view the device configurations and the software images that Prime Infrastructure collected from the devices.
- View details about the information that was collected from the device by hovering your mouse over the **Inventory Collection Status** field and clicking the icon that appears.
- Check the **Device Reachability Status** column. See [Table 3-3](#) for status descriptions. HTTP/HTTPS parameters are verified on NAM devices only.
- Check the Admin Status column. See [Table 3-4](#) for descriptions of the possible Admin Status values.
- To view details about the collection job and the details and history for the import job, choose **Administration > Dashboards > Job Dashboard**.

See [Troubleshooting Unmanaged Devices](#) for information about how to resolve any errors.

**Table 3-3** Descriptions of Device Reachability Status

Reachability Color	Description
Green	Prime Infrastructure is able to reach the device using SNMP.
Yellow	The device is reachable using Ping, but not via SNMP. Verify that you specified the correct SNMP parameters for read access when the device was added to Prime Infrastructure.
Red	Prime Infrastructure is unable to reach the device using Ping. Verify that the device is operational and connected to the network.

**Table 3-4** Descriptions of Device Admin Status

Admin Status	Description
Managed	The device has been added successfully to Prime Infrastructure using SNMP.
Unmanaged	The device credentials are incorrect or you have exceeded the number of devices allowed by your license. Choose <b>Administration &gt; Licenses</b> to view the status of your license. See the <a href="#">Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Administrator Guide</a> for information about managing licenses, troubleshooting licensing issues, and verifying license details.

## Verifying Device Credentials

Prime Infrastructure automatically verifies device credentials as part of the inventory process. You can view device credential verification information by choosing **Reports > Report Launch Pad > Device > Device Credential Verification**.

## Editing Device Parameters

You can edit the device parameters of a single device or multiple devices by choosing **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.

To edit device parameters, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Select a single device or multiple devices and Click **Edit**.
  - Step 3** Update the required parameters.
  - Step 4** Click **Update** to update the parameters of all of the selected devices or **Update & Sync** to update and synchronize the devices with the updated parameters.
- 

## Synchronizing Devices

To synchronize the Prime Infrastructure database with the configuration running on a device, you can force an inventory collection.

To synchronize devices, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Select the device whose configuration you want synchronized with the configuration stored in the Prime Infrastructure database.
  - Step 3** Click **Sync**.
- 

## Adding NAM HTTP/HTTPS Credentials

If you are using Cisco Network Analysis Modules (NAMs) to monitor your network, you must add HTTPS credentials so that Prime Infrastructure can retrieve data from them. This is especially important for users who have licensed Assurance features, as most Assurance features depend on NAM data to work.

Prime Infrastructure polls NAMs directly via HTTP (or HTTPS) to collect their data. This type of polling requires Prime Infrastructure to store each NAMs' HTTP credentials. Unlike with SNMP community strings and Telnet/SSH credentials, you cannot enter NAM HTTP credentials during the discovery process. You can only specify NAM HTTP credentials after the modules are discovered or added to inventory.

Follow these steps to add HTTP credentials for a single NAM. You can repeat this task for all NAMs from which you want Prime Infrastructure to collect data.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices > Device Type > Cisco Interfaces and Modules > Network Analysis Modules**.
  - Step 2** Select one of the NAMs and click **Edit**.
  - Step 3** In the **Edit Device** window, under **Http Parameters**:
    - Protocol—Select the HTTP protocol, HTTP or HTTPS. The TCP Port will change automatically to the default port for the protocol that you have selected.
    - TCP Port—Enter a different TCP Port if you want to override the default.

- Username—Enter the name of a user who can access the NAM via HTTP or HTTPS.
- Password—Enter the password for the username that you entered.
- Confirm Password—Re-enter the password to confirm.

**Step 4** Choose **Update**.

---

#### Related Topics

[Enabling NAM Data Collection](#)

[Defining NAM Polling Parameters](#)

## Exporting Devices

In Prime Infrastructure, you can export device information as a CSV file. Prime Infrastructure does not export credential profiles.

To export devices, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
- Step 2** Select the devices that you want to export, then click **Export Device**.
- Step 3** Enter an encryption password that will be used to open the exported CSV file.
- Step 4** Confirm the encryption Password and click **Export** to export the device information.
- Step 5** Double-click the ExportDevice.zip file and enter the encryption password to open the ExportDevice.csv file.



#### Caution

The device export CSV file includes all device credentials and should be handled with appropriate care. Similarly, the privilege to allow device export should be assigned to appropriate users only.

---

## Next Steps

Now that you have added devices to Prime Infrastructure, you can create device groups and port groups to simplify management, monitoring, and configuration of similar devices and ports. See [Grouping Devices](#).

You might also want to:

- Plan for devices that will be added to your network in the future—See [Preconfiguring Devices to be Added Later](#).
- Configure wired and wireless features on your devices using guided, step-by-step instructions—See [Getting Help Setting Up Access Switches](#).





## Grouping Devices

---

After you add devices to Prime Infrastructure, you can organize the devices into logical groupings to simplify management, monitoring, and configuration. When you group devices, you can perform operations on the entire group instead of selecting individual devices.

### Grouping Devices by Device Type

You can group similar devices together to simplify management and configuration tasks. Depending on your needs, device groups can be based on location, device type, device role, and so on.

A device group that you create can be one of the following types:

- **Static**—Create and name a new device group to which you can add devices using the **Add to Group** button from **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices** or from **Inventory > Group Management > Network Device Groups**.
- **Dynamic**—Create and name a new device group and specify the rules to which devices must comply before they are added to this device group. You do not add devices to dynamic groups. Prime Infrastructure adds devices that match the specified rules to the dynamic group from **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices** or from **Inventory > Group Management > Network Device Groups**.
- **Mixed**—Create and name a new device group to which you can add devices manually and specify the rules to which devices must comply before they are added to this device group. This can be done from **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices** or from **Inventory > Group Management > Network Device Groups**.

To create a device group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices** or **Inventory > Group Management > Network Device Groups**.
  - Step 2** In the **Device Groups** pane on the left, hover the mouse over the icon next to **User Defined** and click the icon. Click the **Add SubGroup**.
  - Step 3** Enter the name, description, and parent group if applicable.
  - Step 4** Select one of the following for the new device group:
    - **Add Device Manually**—You add devices to the group based on your needs.
    - **Add Device Dynamically**—You specify the rules to which devices must comply before they are added to this device group. You do not add devices to dynamic groups. Prime Infrastructure adds devices that match the specified rules to the dynamic group.

**Step 5** Click **Preview** tab to view the devices that are automatically added to the group based on the specified rule and the manually added devices.

**Step 6** Click **Save**.

The device group that you created appears under the User Defined folder.

---

**Related Topic**

- [Grouping Devices, Ports and Data Center](#)



## Setting Up Network Monitoring

---

After you add devices to the Prime Infrastructure inventory and set up device and port groups, you create monitoring templates to monitor device health (for example, CPU, memory, and interface utilization), basic QoS, and VPN tunnel statistics for wired devices in the group. After you create and apply monitoring templates, Prime Infrastructure collects and processes data from specified devices and displays the information in dashboards, dashlets, and reports.

- [Monitoring Port Groups and Interfaces](#)
- [Getting Enhanced Client Information by Integrating with Cisco Identity Services Engine \(ISE\)](#)
- [Integrating Prime Infrastructure with Prime Insight](#)
- [Setting Up Assurance for Performance Monitoring](#)

### Monitoring Port Groups and Interfaces

To monitor your device ports, you can create a port group and then display monitoring information on Prime Infrastructure dashboards. Port groups are logical groupings of interfaces that allow you to monitor device ports by the function they serve. For example, you can create a port group for the WAN ports and create another port group for the internal distribution ports on the same router.

See [Types of Groups](#) and [Creating Device Context or Group Context Port Groups](#) for more information about creating port groups.

After you create groups, you can create an interface health monitoring policy on those ports as explained in the following steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Monitoring Policies**.
  - Step 2** Select **Automonitoring** under **Policies**.
  - Step 3** Click expand arrow icon adjacent to **WAN Interfaces**.
  - Step 4** Select the attributes that you want to monitor (for example, Interface Availability, Interface Inbound Errors, Interface Outbound Errors, InputUtilization, and OutputUtilization), then click **Save and Activate**.
  - Step 5** Click **My Policies**.
  - Step 6** Click **Add**.
  - Step 7** Choose **Interface Health** under **Policy Types**.
  - Step 8** From the **Device Selection** drop-down list, choose **Port Group**.

- Step 9** Choose the **User Defined** group and click **OK**.
  - Step 10** Enter the policy name.
  - Step 11** Select required the Parameters and Threshold and complete the required fields.
  - Step 12** Click **OK**.
  - Step 13** Click **Save and Activate**.
  - Step 14** To display the results, choose **Dashboards > Overview > Network Interface**, and view the Top N Interface Utilization dashlet.
  - Step 15** Edit the Top N Interface Utilization dashlet and add the port group that you previously created.
- 

#### Related Topics


- [Setting Up WAN Interface Monitoring](#)
- [Types of Groups](#)
- [Creating Device Context or Group Context Port Groups](#)

## Setting Up WAN Interface Monitoring

Creating a WAN interface port group allows you to efficiently monitor all WAN interfaces in a specific port group. For example, if you have many small branch offices that have low bandwidth issues, you can create a port group that includes all WAN interfaces from each branch office, and then monitor this port group for issues.

By default, Prime Infrastructure provides a static WAN Interfaces port group on which health monitoring is automatically deployed. The following procedure shows you how to:

1. Add interfaces to the WAN Interfaces port group.
  2. Verify the utilization and availability of the WAN interfaces from the Site dashboard.
- 

- Step 1** To add interfaces to the WAN Interfaces port group:
    - a. Choose **Inventory > Group Management > Port Groups**.
    - b. From the menu on the left, choose **System Defined > WAN Interfaces**.
    - c. Select the device, then click **Add to Group**.
  - Step 2** To display the results:
    - a. Choose **Dashboard > Overview >  > Add Dashlets**.
    - b. Click either of the following:
      - **Top N WAN Interfaces by Utilization**
      - **Top N WAN Interfaces with Issues**
-

# Getting Enhanced Client Information by Integrating with Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE)

Prime Infrastructure manages the wired and the wireless clients in the network. When Cisco ISE is used as a RADIUS server to authenticate clients, Prime Infrastructure collects additional information about these clients from Cisco ISE and provides all client relevant information to Prime Infrastructure to be visible in a single console.

When posture profiling is enforced in the network, Prime Infrastructure communicates with Cisco ISE to get the posture data for the clients and displays it along with other client attributes. When Cisco ISE is used to profile the clients or an endpoint in the network, Prime Infrastructure collects the profiled data to determine what type of client it is, whether it is an iPhone, iPad, an Android device, or any other device.

You can get enhanced information about managed clients using the Cisco ISE or Cisco Secure Access Control (ACS) View servers.

If Prime Infrastructure is integrated with an ISE server (to access endpoint information), you can:

- Check an End User's Network Session Status.
- Using the User 360° View, you can identify possible problems with the end user's authentication and authorization for network access.
- Troubleshoot the User Application and Site Bandwidth Utilization.

Prime Infrastructure displays ISE Profiling attributes only for authenticated endpoints.

## Related Topics

- [Adding an Identity Services Engine](#)
- [Configuring ACS View Servers](#)

## Adding an Identity Services Engine

A maximum of two ISEs can be added to Prime Infrastructure. If you add two ISEs, one should be primary and the other should be standby. When you are adding a standalone node, you can add only one standalone node and cannot add a second node.

To add an Identity Services Engine, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Servers > ISE Servers**.
  - Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Add ISE Server**, then click **Go**.
  - Step 3** Complete the required fields, then click **Save**.

The credentials should be superuser credentials local to ISE. Otherwise, ISE integration does not work.

---

## Configuring ACS View Servers

If you do not have ISE, you can integrate your Cisco ACS View server with Prime Infrastructure. To access the ACS View Server tab, you must add a view server with credentials.

Prime Infrastructure supports only ACS View Server 5.1 or later.

To configure an ACS View Server, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Servers > ACS View Servers**.
  - Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Add ACS View Server**, then click **Go**.
  - Step 3** Enter the port number of the ACS View Server you are adding. (Some ACS View Servers do not allow you to change the port on which HTTPS runs.)
  - Step 4** Enter the password that was established on the ACS View Server. Confirm the password.
  - Step 5** Specify the number of retries to be attempted.
  - Step 6** Click **Save**.
- 

## Integrating Prime Infrastructure with Prime Insight

You can integrate Prime Infrastructure with Prime Insight for detailed, analyzed information on network and application inventory, alarm, utilization, performance, user/service activity data.

To integrate Prime Infrastructure and Prime Insight from Prime Infrastructure 3.0 GUI, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Servers > Prime Insight Server**.
  - Step 2** Select the **Enable Prime Insight** check box.
  - Step 3** Type the required details, and click **Save**.

You can now view the information on network, application inventory, and so on of Prime Infrastructure in Prime Insight.

---

## Setting Up Assurance for Performance Monitoring

If your Prime Infrastructure implementation includes Assurance licenses, you must enable data collection via NAMs and NetFlow configurations. This is necessary to populate the additional dashlets, reports, and other features supplied with Assurance.

### Related Topics

- [Enabling NAM Data Collection](#)
- [Defining NAM Polling Parameters](#)
- [Enabling NetFlow Data Collection](#)

## Enabling NAM Data Collection

To ensure that you can collect data from your Network Analysis Modules (NAMs), you must enable NAM data collection. You can do this for each discovered or added NAM, or for all NAMs at the same time.

### Before You Begin

You must specify the HTTP/HTTPS credentials for each NAM (see [Adding NAM HTTP/HTTPS Credentials](#)).

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Application Visibility & Control > Data Sources**.
- Step 2** In the **NAM Data Collector** section, select the required NAM datasources for which you want to enable data collection.
- Step 3** Click **Enable**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Defining NAM Polling Parameters](#)
- [Enabling NetFlow Data Collection](#)

## Defining NAM Polling Parameters

You can specify data that is collected from NAMs.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Policies**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**, then select **NAM Health** under the Policy Types list from the left sidebar menu.
- Step 3** Select the NAM devices from which you want to collect data, then complete the required fields.
- Step 4** Under **Parameters and Thresholds**, specify the parameters you want to poll from the NAM devices and threshold conditions.
- Step 5** Click **Save and Activate**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Enabling NetFlow Data Collection](#)
- [Enabling NAM Data Collection](#)

## Enabling NetFlow Data Collection

To start collecting NetFlow and Flexible NetFlow data, you must configure your NetFlow-enabled switches, routers, and other devices (ISR/ASR) to export this data to Prime Infrastructure. The following table shows the various device types that support NetFlow and the ways to configure devices to export NetFlow data to Prime Infrastructure.

[Table 5-1](#) gives the detailed information of NetFlow support summary.

Table 5-1 NetFlow Support Summary

Device Type	IOS Versions Supporting NetFlow	Supported NetFlow Export Types	NetFlow Configuration in Prime Infrastructure	Template Naming Convention
Cisco ASR	IOS XE 3.11 to 15.4(1) S, and later Easy PerfMon based configuration (EzPM)	TCP/UDP conversation traffic Application Response Time (ART) Voice & Video HTTP URL visibility Application Traffic Stats	Choose <b>Services &gt; Application Visibility &amp; Control &gt; Interfaces Configuration</b> Format: V9 and IPFIX	Netflow-Traffic-Conv- Netflow-App-Traffic- Netflow-Traffic-Voice-Video- - Netflow-URL- Netflow-Aggregated-Traffic-Stats-
	IOS XE 3.9, 3.10	TCP/UDP conversation traffic Application Response Time (ART) Voice & Video HTTP URL visibility AVC Troubleshooting	Choose <b>Services &gt; Application Visibility &amp; Control &gt; Interfaces Configuration</b> Format: V9 and IPFIX	Netflow-Traffic-Host- Netflow-App-Traffic- Netflow-Voice-Video- Netflow-URL- Netflow-AVC-Troubleshooti ng-



Table 5-1 NetFlow Support Summary (continued)

Device Type	IOS Versions Supporting NetFlow	Supported NetFlow Export Types	NetFlow Configuration in Prime Infrastructure	Template Naming Convention
Cisco ISR	15.1(3) T	TCP/UDP conversation traffic Voice & Video	TCP/UDP: Choose <b>Configuration &gt; Templates &gt; Features &amp; Technologies &gt; CLI Templates &gt; System Templates - CLI &gt; Collecting Traffic Statistics</b>  Voice Video: Use Medianet Perfmon CLI template. Choose <b>Configuration &gt; Templates &gt; Features &amp; Technologies &gt; CLI Templates &gt; System Templates - CLI &gt; Medianet - PerfMon</b>  Format: V9	Netflow-Traffic-Conv- Netflow-Voice-Video-
	IOS XE 3.11 to 15.4(1) S, and later Easy PerfMon based config (EzPM)	TCP/UDP conversation traffic Application Response Time (ART) Voice & Video HTTP URL visibility Application Traffic Stats	Choose <b>Services &gt; Application Visibility &amp; Control &gt; Interfaces Configuration</b>  Format: V9 and IPFIX	Netflow-Traffic-Conv- Netflow-App-Traffic- Netflow-Traffic-Voice-Video- - Netflow-URL- Netflow-Aggregated-Traffic-Stats-
	IOS XE 3.9, 3.10	TCP/UDP conversation traffic Application Response Time (ART) Voice & Video HTTP URL visibility AVC Troubleshooting	Choose <b>Services &gt; Application Visibility &amp; Control &gt; Interfaces Configuration</b>  Format: V9 and IPFIX	Netflow-Traffic-Host- Netflow-App-Traffic- Netflow-Voice-Video- Netflow-URL- Netflow-AVC-Troubleshooting-

Table 5-1 NetFlow Support Summary (continued)

Device Type	IOS Versions Supporting NetFlow	Supported NetFlow Export Types	NetFlow Configuration in Prime Infrastructure	Template Naming Convention
Cisco ISR G2	15.1(4) M and 15.2(1) T	TCP/UDP conversation traffic Application Response Time (ART) Voice & Video	TCP/UDP, ART: Create a MACE CLI template. See <a href="#">Configuring NetFlow on ISR Devices</a>  Voice & Video: Use Medianet Perfmon CLI template. Choose <b>Configuration &gt; Templates &gt; Features &amp; Technologies &gt; CLI Templates &gt; System Templates - CLI &gt; Medianet - PerfMon</b>  Format: V9	Netflow-Traffic-Conv- Netflow-App-Traffic- Netflow-Voice-Video-
	15.2(4) M and 15.3(1)T	TCP/UDP conversation traffic Application Response Time (ART) Voice & Video	Choose: <b>Services &gt; Application Visibility &amp; Control &gt; Interfaces Configuration</b>  Format: V9 and IPFIX	Netflow-Traffic-Conv- Netflow-App-Traffic- Netflow-Voice-Video-
	15.4(1)T and later Easy PerfMon based configuration (EzPM)	TCP/UDP conversation traffic Application Response Time (ART) Voice & Video HTTP URL visibility	Choose <b>Services &gt; Application Visibility &amp; Control &gt; Interfaces Configuration</b>  Format: V9 and IPFIX	Netflow-Traffic-Conv- Netflow-App-Traffic- Netflow-Traffic-Voice-Video- - Netflow-App-Traffic-URL-
Cisco Catalyst 2000	15.0(2) UCP and later	TCP/UDP conversation traffic	Create a custom CLI template. See <a href="#">Configuring NetFlow Export on Catalyst 2000 Switches</a> .  Format: V5, V9	Netflow-Traffic-Conv-
Cisco Catalyst 3750-X, 3560-X	15.0(1)SE IP base or IP services feature set and equipped with the network services module.	TCP/UDP conversation traffic	Create a custom CLI template. See <a href="#">Configuring NetFlow on Catalyst 3000, 4000, and 6000 Family of Switches</a>  Format: V9	Netflow-Traffic-Conv-

Table 5-1 NetFlow Support Summary (continued)

Device Type	IOS Versions Supporting NetFlow	Supported NetFlow Export Types	NetFlow Configuration in Prime Infrastructure	Template Naming Convention
Cisco Catalyst 3850 (wired)	15.0(1)EX and later	TCP/UDP conversation traffic Voice & Video	TCP/UDP: Create a custom CLI template. See <a href="#">Configuring NetFlow on Catalyst 3000, 4000, and 6000 Family of Switches</a>  Voice & Video: Use Medianet Perfmon CLI template. Choose <b>Configuration &gt; Templates &gt; Features &amp; Technologies &gt; CLI Templates &gt; System Templates - CLI &gt; Medianet – PerfMon</b>  Format: V9	Netflow-Traffic-Conv- Netflow-Voice-Video-
Cisco Catalyst 3850 (wireless)	Cisco IOS XE Release 3SE (Edison)	TCP/UDP conversation traffic	See <a href="#">Configuring Flexible NetFlow</a>  Format: V9	Netflow-Traffic-Conv-
Cisco CT5760 Controller (Wireless)	Katana 5760	TCP/UDP conversation traffic	See <a href="#">Application Visibility and Flexible Netflow</a> .  Format: V9	Netflow-Traffic-Conv-
Cisco Catalyst 4500	15.0(1)XO and 15.0(2)SG onwards	TCP/UDP conversation traffic Voice & Video	TCP/UDP: Create a custom CLI template. See <a href="#">Configuring NetFlow on Catalyst 3000, 4000, and 6000 Family of Switches</a> .  Voice & Video: Use Medianet Perfmon CLI template. Choose <b>Configuration &gt; Templates &gt; Features &amp; Technologies &gt; CLI Templates &gt; System Templates - CLI &gt; Medianet – PerfMon</b>  Format: V9	Netflow-Traffic-Conv- Netflow-Voice-Video-

Table 5-1 NetFlow Support Summary (continued)

Device Type	IOS Versions Supporting NetFlow	Supported NetFlow Export Types	NetFlow Configuration in Prime Infrastructure	Template Naming Convention
Cisco Catalyst 6500	15.1(1)SY and later	TCP/UDP conversation traffic Voice & Video	TCP/UDP: Create a custom CLI template. See <a href="#">Configuring NetFlow on Catalyst 3000, 4000, and 6000 Family of Switches</a> .  Voice & Video: Use Medianet Perfmon CLI template. Choose <b>Configuration &gt; Templates &gt; Features &amp; Technologies &gt; CLI Templates &gt; System Templates - CLI &gt; Medianet - PerfMon</b>  Format: V9	Netflow-Traffic-Conv- Netflow-Voice-Video-

## Configuring NetFlow Export on Catalyst 2000 Switches

To manually configure NetFlow export on Catalyst 2000 devices, create a user-defined CLI template as shown in the following steps.

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > CLI Templates > CLI**.
- Step 2** Hover your mouse cursor over the information icon and click **New** to create a new CLI template.
- Step 3** Enter a name for the new CLI template (for example, "Prime\_NF\_CFG\_CAT2K).
- Step 4** From the **Device Type** list, choose **Switches and Hubs**.
- Step 5** In the **Template Detail > CLI Content** text box, enter the following commands, modifying them as needed for your network (note that these commands are only an example):

```

flow record PrimeNFRec
  match ipv4 protocol
  match ipv4 source address
  match ipv4 destination address
  match transport source-port
  match transport destination-port
  collect counter bytes long
  collect counter packets long
!
!
flow exporter PrimeNFExp
  destination 172.18.54.93
  transport udp 9991
  option exporter-stats timeout 20
!
!
flow monitor PrimeNFMon
  record PrimeNFRec
  exporter PrimeNFExp

interface GigabitEthernet3/0/1
  ip flow monitor PrimeNFMon input

```

- Step 6** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, deploy it to your devices (see [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#)).
- 

## Configuring NetFlow on Catalyst 3000, 4000, and 6000 Family of Switches

To manually configure NetFlow to export TCP and UDP traffic on Catalyst 3000, 4000, or 6000 devices, create a user-defined CLI template as shown in the following steps.

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > CLI Templates > CLI**.
- Step 2** Hover your mouse cursor over the information icon and click **New** to create a new CLI template.
- Step 3** Enter a name for the new CLI template (for example, “Prime\_NF\_CFG\_CAT3K\_4K”).
- Step 4** From the **Device Type** list, choose **Switches and Hubs**.
- Step 5** In the **Template Detail > CLI Content** text box, enter the following commands, modifying them as needed for your network (note that these commands are only an example):

```
flow record PrimeNFRec
  match ipv4 protocol
  match ipv4 source address
  match ipv4 destination address
  match transport source-port
  match transport destination-port
  collect counter bytes long
  collect counter packets long
!
!
flow exporter PrimeNFExp
  destination 172.18.54.93
  transport udp 9991
  option exporter-stats timeout 20
!
!
flow monitor PrimeNFMon
  record PrimeNFRec
  exporter PrimeNFExp

interface GigabitEthernet3/0/1
  ip flow monitor PrimeNFMon input
```

- Step 6** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, deploy it to your devices (see [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#)).
-

## Configuring NetFlow on ISR Devices

To manually configure NetFlow to export MACE traffic on an ISR device, use the following steps to create a user-defined CLI template:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > CLI Templates > CLI**.
  - Step 2** Hover your mouse cursor over the information icon and click **New** to create a new CLI template.
  - Step 3** Enter a name for the new CLI template (for example, “Prime\_NF\_CFG\_MACE”).
  - Step 4** From the **Device Type** list, choose **Routers**.
  - Step 5** In the **Template Detail > CLI Content** text box, enter the following commands, modifying them as needed for your network (note that these commands are only an example)

```

flow record type mace mace-record
collect application name
collect art all
!
flow exporter mace-export
destination <PI_SERVER_IP_ADDRESS>
source GigabitEthernet0/1
transport udp 9991
!

flow monitor type mace mace-monitor
record mace-record
exporter mace-export
cache timeout update 600

class-map match-all PrimeNFClass
match protocol ip
exit

policy-map type mace mace_global
class PrimeNFClass
flow monitor mace-monitor
exit
exit

interface GigabitEthernet 0/1
mace enable

```

- Step 6** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, deploy it to your devices (see [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#)).
-



## Changing User Settings

---

Prime Infrastructure provides user preference settings that allows you to modify how information is displayed.

- [Changing Your User Preferences](#)
- [Changing Your Idle-User Timeout](#)
- [Changing List Length](#)

### Changing Your User Preferences

To change your user preferences, click the **Settings** icon (the gear icon on the right side of the menu bar) and choose **My Preferences** and change the settings shown on the **My Preferences** page.

#### Related Topics

- [Changing Your Idle-User Timeout](#)
- [Changing List Length](#)
- [Changing Alarm Display Behavior](#)
- [Customizing the Alarm Summary](#)
- [Toolbar](#)

### Changing Your Idle-User Timeout

Prime Infrastructure provides two settings that control when and how idle users are automatically logged out:

- **User Idle Timeout**—You can disable or configure this setting, which ends your user session automatically when you exceed the timeout. It is enabled by default and is set to 15 minutes.
- **Global Idle Timeout**—The Global Idle Timeout setting overrides the User Idle Timeout setting. The Global Idle Timeout is enabled by default and is set to 15 minutes. Only users with administrative privileges can disable the Global Idle Timeout setting or change its time limit.

You may find it useful to disable the user idle timeout feature if, for example, you are an Operations Center user experiencing sudden log-offs, due to idle sessions, with one or more Prime Infrastructure instances managed by Operations Center. For details, see “Disabling Idle User Timeout for Operations Center” in Related Topics.

To change the timeout settings, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Click the **Settings** icon and choose **My Preferences**.
- Step 2** Under **User Idle Timeout**:
- Change the check status of the check box next to **Logout idle user** to enable or disable your idle timeout.
  - From the **Logout idle user after** drop-down list, choose one of the idle timeout limits.
- Step 3** Click **Save**. You will need to log out and log back in for this change to take effect.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Changing Your User Preferences](#)
- [Disabling Idle User Timeout for Operations Center](#)
- [Changing the Global Idle Timeout](#)

## Changing List Length

Prime Infrastructure lets you change the default number of entries shown on a given list page (such as lists of alarms, events, the AP list, and so on). The default is 50 items.

- 
- Step 1** Click the **Settings** icon and choose **My Preferences**.
- Step 2** Change the setting in the **Items Per List Page** drop down.
- Step 3** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topic

- [Changing Your User Preferences](#)





## Viewing and Managing Dashboards

---

Dashboards display at-a-glance views of the most important data in your network. They provide status and alerts, monitoring, and reporting information. Dashboards contain dashlets that consist of visual displays such as tables and charts.

### Related Topics

- [Viewing Dashboards](#)
- [Managing and Editing Dashboards](#)
- [Adding Dashboards](#)
- [Adding Dashlets](#)

## Viewing Dashboards

Prime Infrastructure provides several types of dashboards that contain graphs and visual indicators:

- **Overview**—Provides summary information and includes tabs specific to alarms and events, clients, network devices, network interfaces, and service assurance.
- **Wireless**—Provides wireless information about Security, Mesh, CleanAir, and ContextAware.
- **Performance**—Provides a summary of performance metrics and includes tabs specific to sites, devices, access points, interfaces, applications, voice/video, end user experience, and WAN optimization.
- **Network Summary**—Provides an overview summary of your network including status metrics and a tab specific to incidents which includes alarm and event type graphs and critical, major, and minor alarm counts.
- **Data Center**—Provides information about Data Center and includes tabs specific to Compute and Host.

### Related Topics

- [Overview Dashboards](#)
- [Wireless Dashboards](#)
- [Performance Dashboards](#)
- [Network Summary Dashboards](#)
- [Data Center Dashboards](#)

## Overview Dashboards

Table 7-1 describes the default information shown in each of the dashboards under **Dashboard > Overview**.

**Table 7-1** Overview Dashboard Descriptions

To View This Information	Chose Dashboard > Overview >
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Network device summary graph, including the reachable and unreachable devices</li> <li>Top N CPU and memory utilization</li> <li>Client count by association/authentication</li> <li>Coverage area</li> </ul>	<b>General</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Top N sites with the most alarms</li> <li>Alarm summary graph</li> <li>Alarm type graph</li> <li>Device reachability status</li> <li>Syslog summary and watch</li> </ul>	<b>Incidents</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Client troubleshooting tool</li> <li>Wired client speed distribution graph</li> <li>Client distribution graph</li> <li>Client alarms and events summary</li> <li>Client traffic graph</li> <li>Top 5 SSIDs by client count</li> <li>Top 5 switches by client count</li> <li>Client posture status</li> </ul>	<b>Client</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Top N CPU and memory utilization</li> <li>Top N environmental temperature</li> </ul>	<b>Network Devices</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Interface availability summary</li> <li>Top N interface utilization</li> <li>Interface utilization summary graph</li> <li>Top N interface errors and discards</li> </ul>	<b>Network Interface</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Top N applications</li> <li>Top N servers</li> <li>Top N resources by NetFlow</li> <li>Top N clients</li> </ul>	<b>Service Assurance</b>

### Related Topic

- [Managing and Editing Dashboards](#)

## Wireless Dashboards

[Table 7-2](#) describes the default information shown in each of the dashboards under **Dashboard > Wireless**.

**Table 7-2** *Wireless Dashboard Descriptions*

To View This Information	Chose Dashboard > Wireless >
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Security Index, including the top security issues</li> <li>• Adaptive WIPS</li> <li>• Rogue classification graph</li> <li>• Rogue containment graph</li> <li>• Attacks detected</li> <li>• Malicious, unclassified, friendly, and custom rogue APs</li> <li>• CleanAir security</li> <li>• Adhoc rogues</li> </ul>	<b>Security</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Most recent mesh alarms</li> <li>• Mesh work node hop count</li> <li>• Mesh worst SNR link</li> <li>• Mesh worst packet error rate</li> </ul>	<b>Mesh</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 802.11 average and minimum air quality</li> <li>• Worst interferers</li> <li>• Interferer count</li> <li>• Recent security-risk interferers</li> <li>• Recent CAS notifications for interferers</li> </ul>	<b>CleanAir</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MSE historical element count</li> <li>• Rogue elements detected by CAS</li> <li>• Location assisted client troubleshooting</li> <li>• MSE tracking counts</li> <li>• Top 5 MSEs</li> </ul>	<b>ContextAware</b>

### Related Topic

[Managing and Editing Dashboards](#)

## Performance Dashboards

Choose one of the dashboards under **Dashboard > Performance** to view a summary of performance metrics. Viewing the performance dashboards can show you the health of the networks, servers, and applications.

You can use performance graphs to compare the performance of different devices or interfaces.

Table 7-3 describes the default information shown in each of the dashboards under **Dashboard > Wireless**.

**Table 7-3 Performance Dashboard Descriptions**

To View This Information	Chose Dashboard > Performance >
For the specified site: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Client traffic (regular and optimized)</li> <li>• Device with most alarms</li> <li>• Top N applications</li> <li>• Device reachability status f</li> </ul>	<b>Site</b>
For the specified device: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Device Availability Trend</li> <li>• Device memory and CPU utilization trend</li> <li>• Device Port Summary</li> <li>• Device Health Information</li> <li>• Top N Interfaces by Netflow</li> </ul>	<b>Device</b>
For the specified access point: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Access point details</li> <li>• Top clients and applications</li> <li>• Channel utilization</li> <li>• Client count</li> </ul>	<b>Access Point</b>
For the specified interface: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Interface details</li> <li>• Interface Availability Trend</li> <li>• Interface In and Out Errors and Discards</li> <li>• Interface Tx and Rx utilization</li> <li>• Top applications and clients</li> <li>• Top application traffic over time</li> <li>• Number of clients over time</li> <li>• DSCP classification</li> <li>• QoS class map statistics</li> <li>• Top QoS class map statistics trend</li> </ul>	<b>Interface</b>
For the specified application: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Top clients and servers</li> <li>• Application traffic analysis graph</li> <li>• Application server performance</li> <li>• Top interfaces over time</li> </ul>	<b>Application</b>

**Table 7-3** Performance Dashboard Descriptions (continued)

To View This Information	Chose Dashboard > Performance >
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Top RTP streams</li> <li>• Worst RTP streams by packet loss</li> <li>• Works site-to-site connections by KPI</li> </ul>	<b>Voice/Video</b>
For the specified client: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Top applications</li> <li>• User sites summary</li> <li>• Client traffic</li> </ul>	<b>End User Experience</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Multi-segment analysis</li> <li>• Traffic volume and compression ration</li> <li>• Transaction time</li> <li>• Average concurrent connections (optimized versus pass-through)</li> <li>• Multi-segment network time</li> </ul>	<b>WAN Optimization</b>

**Related Topic**

[Managing and Editing Dashboards](#)

## Network Summary Dashboards

Choose one of the following dashboards under **Dashboard > Network Summary** to view a summary of important data points in your network. [Table 7-4](#) describes the default information shown in each of the dashboards under **Dashboard > Network Summary**.

**Table 7-4 Network Summary Dashboard Descriptions**

To View This Information	Chose Dashboard > Network Summary>
Overall system health such as <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reachability metrics for ICMP, Unified APs, and controllers</li> <li>• Alarm summary metrics for all alarms and rogue alarms</li> <li>• Health metrics for system health, WAN link health, and service health</li> <li>• Coverage areas, including links to APs not assigned to map</li> <li>• Client counts by association/authentication</li> <li>• Top CPU and interface utilization</li> <li>• Network topology</li> <li>• Interface utilization summary</li> <li>• Status of device manageability and autonomous AP.</li> </ul>	<b>Overview</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Alarm summary metrics for all alarms and rogue alarms</li> <li>• Health metrics for system health, WAN link health, and service health</li> <li>• Alarms graph</li> <li>• Top alarm and event types graphs</li> <li>• Syslog summary</li> </ul>	<b>Incidents</b>

**Related Topics**

- [Viewing Options for Network Summary Metrics](#)
- [Managing and Editing Dashboards](#)

## Viewing Options for Network Summary Metrics

You can perform the following actions on the Metrics, which are displayed at the top of the Network Summary dashboards:

- **Add or remove metrics** by select **Settings > Add or Remove Metric Dashlet(s)**.
- **Reorder the metrics** by clicking near the metric title and dragging and dropping it to the area you prefer.
- **Click any of the hyperlinks** in any of the boxes to go the details for that metric. For example, if you click on a number displayed in the Alarm Summary metrics, you go to the alarm page to view more information about the alarm(s).

**Related Topic**

- [Managing and Editing Dashboards](#)

## Data Center Dashboards

[Table 7-5](#) describes the default information shown in each of the dashboards under **Dashboard > Data Center**.

**Table 7-5 Data Center Dashboard Descriptions**

To View This Information	Chose Dashboard > Data Center >
For the specified data center: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Virtual machine summary by OS</li> <li>• Virtual machine resource usage summary</li> <li>• Compute resource summary</li> <li>• Top 5 host usage summary by CPU</li> </ul>	<b>Compute</b>
For the specified host: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Host CPU usage</li> </ul>	<b>Host</b>

**Related Topic**

- [Managing and Editing Dashboards](#)

## Managing and Editing Dashboards

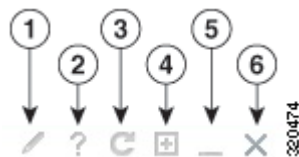
The Prime Infrastructure dashboards contain dashlets with charts, graphs, tables, and other information. There are various tools, options, and settings you can specify in order to customize the dashboards.

**Related Topics**

- [Understanding Dashlet Icons](#)
- [Adding Dashboards](#)
- [Adding Dashlets](#)
- [Time Filters for Dashboards and Dashlets](#)
- [Overriding a Dashlet Filter](#)
- [Creating Generic Dashlets](#)

## Understanding Dashlet Icons

Dashboards contain dashlets that consist of visual displays such as tables and charts. You can drag and drop dashlets to any location in the dashboards. Hover your mouse cursor over any dashlet, and the following icons appear in the top-right corner of the dashboard.

**Figure 7-1 Dashlet Icons**

1	Dashlet options include editing the dashlet title, refreshing the dashlet, or changing the dashlet refresh interval. (To disable refresh, unselect Refresh Dashlet.)
2	Dashlet help includes a picture of the dashlet, a description, the data sources used to populate the dashlet, and any filters you can apply to the dashlet's data.
3	Refresh the dashlet.
4	Maximize the dashlet. A restore icon appears, allowing you to restore the dashlet to its default size.
5	Collapse the dashlet so that only its title appears. An expand icon appears.
6	Remove the dashlet.

Dashlet badges indicate which filters were applied when generating the contents of each dashlet.

**Figure 7-2** Dashlet Badges



1	Network aware filter. Use this filter to collect data for all devices, wired devices, wireless devices, or a specific wireless SSID.
2	Site filter. Use this filter to collect data associated with an AP or a controller located at a predefined location.
3	Application filter. Use this filter to collect data based on a service, an application within a service, up to ten separate applications, or all applications.
4	Time frame filter. Use this filter to collect data for a preset time period, or you can specify a beginning and ending date.

You can customize the predefined set of dashlets depending on your network management needs. You can organize the information in user-defined dashboards. The default view comes with default dashboards and pre-selected dashlets for each.

When using dashlets bear in mind:

- The label “*Edited*” next to the dashlet heading indicates that the dashlet has been customized. If you reset to the default settings, the Edited label is cleared.
- When an upgrade occurs, the arrangement of dashlets in a previous version is maintained. Because of this, dashlets or features added in a new release are not displayed. Click the **Manage Dashboards** link to discover new dashlets.
- The horizontal and vertical scrollbars are visible if you zoom the dashlets. Reset the zoom level back to zero, or no zoom for viewing the dashlets without the scrollbars.

#### Related Topics

- [Adding Dashboards](#)



- [Restoring Dashboards](#)
- [Adding Dashlets](#)

## Adding Dashboards

Prime Infrastructure has a set of default dashboards. You can also create a custom dashboard to display information specific to your needs:

- 
- Step 1** Click **Settings** at the top right of any dashboard page, and choose **Add New Dashboard**.
  - Step 2** Enter a name for the new dashboard, then click **Add**.
  - Step 3** Choose the new dashboard and add dashlets to it.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Restoring Dashboards](#)
- [Adding Dashlets](#)
- [Viewing Dashboards](#)

## Adding Dashlets

Each dashboard displays a subset of the available dashlets. You can add any dashlet that is not automatically displayed to any dashboard you want.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Dashboard**, then select the dashboard to which you want to add the dashlet.
  - Step 2** Click the **Settings** icon, then choose **Add Dashlets**.
  - Step 3** Find the dashboard heading in the drop-down list; you can add any of the dashlets under that heading to that dashboard.
- 

### Related Topic

- [Default Dashlets](#)

## Default Dashlets

The following tables list the default dashlets that you can add to your Prime Infrastructure Home page or any dashboard:

Table 7-6 lists the default General Dashlets that you can add in your Prime Infrastructure home page.

**Table 7-6** Default General Dashlets

Dashlet	Description
AP Join Taken Time	Displays the access point name and the amount of time (in days, minutes, and seconds) that it took for the access point to join.
Top N APs by Channel Utilization	Shows the top N APs with maximum channel utilization.
AP Uptime	Displays each access point name and amount of time it has been associated.
CAPWAP Uptime	Shows the APs based on the CAPWAP uptime.
Coverage Areas	Displays the list coverage areas and details about each coverage area.
Device Unreachability Summary	Displays the unreachability summary of APs, routers, and switches.
Network Topology	Displays the network topology map.
Unreachable MA-MC CAPWAP Tunnels	Displays the unreachability status between the mobility agent and mobility controller.
Device Uptime	Displays the devices based on the device uptime.
Ad hoc Rogues	Displays ad hoc rogues for the previous hour, previous 24 hours, and total active.
GETVPN Network Statistics	Shows available GETVPN network groups summary.
Job Information Status	Shows all user defined jobs.
Most Recent AP Alarms	Displays the five most recent access point alarms. Click the number in parentheses to open the Alarms page which shows all alarms.
Network Device Summary	<p>Displays the total managed device count, number of available access points (APs) and total count of managed unreachable devices in the network.</p> <p>The Unified AP Reachability can be any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reachable—Operational status is registered and admin status is enable.</li> <li>Unreachable—Operational status unregistered and admin status is enable.</li> </ul> <p>The network device summary dashlet for AP devices will be displayed only if the admin status is enabled.</p> <p>The AP reachability information is defined as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Unified AP—Reachability is defined by the Operational Status. If the AP is registered to a wireless LAN controller, it is considered reachable. If it is not registered, it is not reachable.</li> <li>Autonomous AP—Reachability is defined by the device's SNMP Reachability field in the Device Work Center.</li> </ul>
Recent Alarms	Displays the five most recent alarms by default. Click the number in parentheses to open the Alarms page.
Recent Coverage Holes	Displays the recent coverage hole alarms listed by access point.
Software Summary	Displays the software version and software type of all managed devices.

Table 7-7 lists the default Security Dashlets that you can add in your Prime Infrastructure home page.

**Table 7-7**      **Default Security Dashlets**

Dashlet	Description
Client Classification	Allows you to classify the clients that are added in Prime Infrastructure.

Table 7-8 lists the default Client Dashlets that you can add in your Prime Infrastructure home page.

**Table 7-8**      **Default Client Dashlets**

Dashlet	Description
Client Troubleshooting Dashlet	Allows you to enter a Client MAC address and starts the client troubleshooting tool
Client Distribution Dashlet	Shows the client distribution by protocol, EAP type, and authentication type. You can click a protocol to access the list of users belonging to that protocol. For example, if you click the 802.3 protocol, you can directly access the list of the wired clients and users in the Clients and Users page.
Client Alarms and Events Summary Dashlet	Shows the most recent client alarms of both wired and wireless clients. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Client Association Failure</li> <li>• Client Authentication Failure</li> <li>• Client WEP Key Decryption Error</li> <li>• Client WPA MIC Error Counter Activated</li> <li>• Client Excluded</li> <li>• Autonomous AP Client Authentication Failure</li> <li>• Wired Client Authentication Failure</li> <li>• Wired Client Authorization Failure</li> <li>• Wired Client Critical VLAN Assigned</li> <li>• Wired Client Auth fail VLAN Assigned</li> <li>• Wired Client Guest VLAN Assigned</li> <li>• Wired Client Security Violation</li> </ul>
Client Traffic Dashlet	Shows the client traffic for wired and wireless clients. For displaying wired client traffic on Traffic Dashlet, Identity Service Engine (ISE) should be integrated with Prime Infrastructure, and wired devices should be configured with the ISE server, using 802.1x Port or MAC Authentication.
Wired Client Speed Distribution Dashlet	Shows the wired client speeds and the client count for each speed. There are three different speeds on which clients run: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 10 Mbps</li> <li>• 100 Mbps</li> <li>• 1 Gbps</li> </ul> <p>The ports are in the Auto Negotiate mode by default. For example, you get 100 Mbps speed for a client that runs in 100 Mbps speed.</p>
Top 5 SSIDs by Client Count	Shows the count of currently associated and authenticated clients. You can choose to display the information in table form or in an area chart.

Table 7-8 Default Client Dashlets (continued)

Dashlet	Description
Top 5 Switches by Switch Count	Displays the five switches that have the most clients as well as the number of clients associated to the switch.
Client Posture Status Dashlet	<p>Prime Infrastructure collects the posture status information from the Identity Services Engine (ISE). You need to add an ISE for authorization and authentication purpose. After you enable necessary functions in ISE, Prime Infrastructure shows the data in the Client Posture Status dashlet.</p> <p>This dashlet displays the client posture status and the number of clients in each of the following status categories:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compliant</li> <li>• Non-compliant</li> <li>• Unknown</li> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Not Applicable</li> <li>• Error</li> </ul>
Client Count by IP Address Type	Displays a chart which shows client count trend over time by different IP addresses types. The types include IPv4, IPv6, Dual-Stack and Unknown.
IPv6 Assignment Distribution	Displays a pie chart which shows distribution of all clients based on how their IPv6 addresses get assigned. The type include Unknown, DHCPv6, Self-Assigned, and SLACC or Static.
User Auth Failure Count	Displays a chart which shows user authentication failure count trend over time.
Client Protocol Distribution	Displays the current client count distribution by protocols.
Client EAP Type Distribution	Displays the count based on the EAP type.
Guest Users Count	Displays Guest client count over a specified time.
Client CCX Distribution	Displays a pie chart which shows client distribution among different CCX versions
Top N Client Count	<p>Displays a bar chart which shows top N elements based on client count. The elements include SSID, APs, Controller, Endpoint Type, Vendor, Switches, and Anchor Controllers. It is a generic top N chart to replace different individual top N charts.</p> <p>The Top N Client Count shows the anchor clients count on each anchor controller.</p>
Client Mobility Status Distribution	Displays a pie chart which shows client distribution between local (not anchored) and anchored.
Client 11u Distribution	Displays a pie chart which shows 11u clients over non-11u clients.
11u Client Count	Displays a pie chart which shows 11u clients over non-11u clients
11u Client Traffic	Displays a chart which shows 11u client traffic trend over time.
PMIP Clients Distribution	Displays a pie chart which shows PMIP client over non-PMIP clients.
PMIP Client Count	Displays a chart which shows PMIP client count trend over time.
Top APs by Client Count	Displays the Top APs by client count.
Most Recent Client Alarms	Displays the most recent client alarms.
Recent 5 Guest User Accounts	Displays the most recent guest user accounts created or modified
Latest 5 logged in Guest Users	Displays the most recent guest users to log in.

**Table 7-8** Default Client Dashlets (continued)

Dashlet	Description
Clients Detected by Context Aware Service	Displays the client count detected by the context aware service within the previous 15 minutes.
Client Authentication Type Distribution	Displays the client count based on the type of client authentication.
Client Count By Association/Authentication	Shows client count over a specified time interval. Count can be based on associated or authenticated clients.
Client Count By Wired/Wireless	Shows client count for wireless, wired or a combination of both.
Client Traffic By IP Address Type	Shows client traffic based on IP address type.
IP Address Type Distribution	Shows client distribution based on IP address type.

Table 7-9 lists the default Network Dashlets that you can add in your Prime Infrastructure home page.

**Table 7-9** Default Network Dashlets

Dashlet	Description
CPU Utilization Summary	Displays the distribution of devices by CPU utilization across 4 CPU utilization bands (0-25%, 26-50%, 51-75%, 76-100%)
Device Availability Summary	Shows a summary, total device count and pie chart distribution of devices in a given site that are reachable (and Unreachable) through SNMP.
Interface Availability Summary	Shows the availability of the interface in percentage in the selected time range.
Interface Statistics	Shows the statistics information of the interface in a given site.
Interface Statistics Summary	Shows the total count of interfaces and a pie chart distribution of interface status (Up, Operationally Up, Administratively Down) in a given site.
Interface Utilization Summary	Shows pie chart distribution of devices by interface utilization across 4 Interface Utilization bands (0-25%, 25-50%, 51-75%, 75-100%) in a given site. The inner pie represents the received (Rx) utilization and the outer pie represents transmitted (Tx) utilization.
Top N CPU Utilization	Shows the top N devices with maximum CPU utilization.
Top N Environmental Temperature	Shows the top N tabulated list of average, maximum, minimum, current temperature associated with devices in the network. For the stacked switches, the device name will be appended with switch instance. For example: RB-Edison.Cisco.com-Switch-1, where Switch-1 is switch instance.
Top N Interface Errors and Discards	Displays the top N interfaces with highest input and output errors and discards.
Top N Interface Utilization	Shows pie chart distribution of devices by interface utilization-transmitted across 4 Interface Utilization bands (0-25%, 25-50%, 51-75%, 75-100%) in a given site.
Top N Memory Utilization	Shows the tabulated list of top N memory utilization in the network.

Table 7-10 lists the default Service Assurance Dashlets that you can add in your Prime Infrastructure home page.

**Table 7-10**      **Default Service Assurance Dashlets**

Dashlet	Description
Top N Applications	Shows top N applications with break down of wired/wireless/unknown in terms of total traffic volume/rate for a site/enterprise, client, and interface. If there is no integration with wireless then traffic will be classified as unknown.
TOP N Clients	Shows top N clients based on total traffic volume/rate for site/enterprise and application, service or a set of applications.
Top N Interfaces by Netflow	Shows the top N interfaces with Netflow traffic based on volume.
Top N Resources by Netflow	Shows the Top N devices that are exporting Netflow traffic by volume or rate. It provides a toggle between Netflow exporting devices and sites with Netflow data. In Root Domain device list in the dashlet will not be VD aware.
Top N Servers	Shows Top N Servers by traffic rate.
Top N Sites by PFR	This dashlet lists the Top N Sites with the most PFR. out of policy counts in the selected time range
Top N WAN Interface	Shows the tabulated list of Top N WAN Interface utilization in the network.
Worst N Sites by MOS	Shows the worst sites by MOS score.
Worst N sites by Transaction Time	Shows site to site average transaction time for an application, service or a set of applications.

Table 7-11 lists the default Incident Dashlets that you can add in your Prime Infrastructure home page.

**Table 7-11**      **Default Incident Dashlets**

Dashlet	Description
Alarm Summary	Shows a pie chart distribution of alarms for Switches and Hubs, Ad hoc Rogue, Routers, AP, System, Rogue AP etc.
Device Reachability Summary	This dashlet shows a tabulated view of each device's SNMP reachability status.
Top N Alarm Types	Shows a horizontal bar chart of the top N alarm types with their associate counts.
Top N Events	Shows a horizontal bar chart of the events types and their counts.
Top N Sits with Most Alarms	Shows a horizontal bar chart of the top N sites with highest alarm counts.
Top N Syslog Sender	Shows a tabulated view of the top N devices that generated syslogs. The table shows the Syslog count by Severity.
Top N WAN Interface	shows a tabulated view of the top N WAN Interfaces that reported issues along with the severity.
Syslog Summary	Shows syslogs of severity 0,1 and 2.
Syslog Watch	The dashlet shows syslogs based on predefined filter, by default Environmental Monitor is selected.

#### Related Topics

- [Adding Dashboards](#)
- [Restoring Dashboards](#)

## Time Filters for Dashboards and Dashlets

You can filter dashboards and dashlets based on a period of time. There are two ways to display information for a specified time:

- By dashboard—Using the Filters at the top of the Dashboard page, select a value from the **Time Frame** pulldown menu. Using the Filters feature allows you to filter all dashlet information for a specified time.
- By dashlets—Edit the dashlet to override a dashboard filter.

### Related Topic

- [Overriding a Dashlet Filter](#)

## Overriding a Dashlet Filter

You can change the filter settings for just one dashlet. For example, to change the time frame during which data is collected for a single dashlet from the default to 24 hours:

- 
- Step 1** Navigate to that dashlet and click **Dashlet Options** icon.
- Step 2** Select the **Override Dashboard Time Filter** check box, choose **Past 24 Hours** from the **Time Frame** drop-down list, then click **Save And Close**.

The dashlet displays the last 24 hours of data, regardless of what is specified in the Dashboard Time Frame pulldown menu. The label “Edited” next to the Time Frame dashlet badge with a red diagonal line over the badge indicates that the filter has been customized.

---

### Related Topics

- [Adding Dashboards](#)
- [Restoring Dashboards](#)

## Creating Generic Dashlets

You can add a generic dashlet anywhere; it displays the values for all polled devices.

### Before You Begin

You must create at least one custom monitoring policy (for example, see [Creating New Monitoring Policies](#)).

To create a generic dashlet:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Dashboard**.
- Step 2** Click the **Settings** icon, then choose **Add Dashlets**.
- Step 3** Find the Generic Dashlet and click **Add**. The Generic Dashlet appears on the dashboard.
- Step 4** To edit the dashlet, hover your cursor over the Generic Dashlet and click **Dashlet Options** icon.
- Step 5** Rename the dashlet.

**Step 6** From the **Template Name** drop-down list, choose the custom template that you created, then click **Save**.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Dashboards](#)
- [Restoring Dashboards](#)

## Restoring Dashboards

After an upgrade, the arrangement of dashlets in the previous version is maintained. Therefore, dashlets or features added in a new release are not displayed. To display new dashlets, click the **Settings** icon and choose **Manage Dashboards**.

To restore a dashboard to the default settings:

**Step 1** Click **Settings** at the top right of any dashboard page, then choose **Manage Dashboards**.

**Step 2** Choose a dashboard from the list, and click **Reset**.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Dashboards](#)
- [Adding Dashlets](#)





## **PART 2**

# **Monitoring Your Network**

- [Monitoring Devices](#)
- [Creating Monitoring Policies and Thresholds](#)
- [Monitoring Alarms](#)
- [Monitoring Clients and Users](#)
- [Configuring and Monitoring IWAN](#)
- [Monitoring Wireless Technologies](#)
- [Using Monitoring Tools](#)
- [Troubleshooting](#)
- [Monitoring Multiple Prime Infrastructure Instances](#)





# Monitoring Devices

The **Monitor > Managed Elements** menu provides tools to help you monitor your network on a daily basis, as well as perform other day-to-day or ad hoc operations relating to network device inventory and configuration management.

- [Monitoring Network Devices](#)
- [Monitoring Jobs](#)
- [Monitoring Background Tasks](#)
- [Using Packet Capture to Monitor and Troubleshoot Network Traffic](#)
- [Securing Network Services](#)

## Monitoring Network Devices

Select **Monitor > Managed Elements > Network Devices** to view the list of devices that have been added to Prime Infrastructure. You can also add, edit, synchronize, and group devices.

### Related Topic

- [Network Devices Page](#)
- [Adding Devices Manually](#)

## Network Devices Page

[Table 8-1](#) describes the information that is displayed when you select **Monitor > Managed Elements > Network Devices** to view the list of devices that have been added to Prime Infrastructure. You can sort the table by clicking on any cell heading.

**Table 8-1**      *Network Devices Page Description*

To View this Information	Do This
Device details such as software version, port information, CPU and memory utilization	Click on a Device Name.
Device 360 view	Click the icon in the IP Address field.
Collection status details	Click the icon in the Last Inventory Collection column.

**Related Topics**

- [Getting Device Details from Device 360° View](#)

# Monitoring Jobs

Use the Jobs dashboard to:

- View all running and completed jobs and corresponding job details
- Filter jobs to view the specific jobs in which you are interested
- View details of the most recently submitted job
- View job execution results
- Modify jobs, including deleting, editing, running, canceling, pausing, and resuming jobs

Prime Infrastructure can have a maximum of 25 jobs running concurrently. If a new job is created while 25 jobs are already running, the new job state is “scheduled” until a job completes and the new job can start. If a new job’s scheduled time has already passed before it could be started, the new job will not run and you’ll need to reschedule or start it when less than 25 jobs are running.

To monitor jobs, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Dashboards > Job Dashboard**.
- Step 2** Click a job, then perform any of the following actions:
- Click **Run** to start the currently scheduled job immediately. If a job has the status “failed,” click **Run** to resubmit the same job, which creates a new scheduled job with the same parameters as the previous job. Only the failed and partially successful devices within the job will be selected for retry.
  - Click **Abort** to stop a discovery job currently in progress and return it to its scheduled state. You cannot abort all jobs. For example, you receive an error message if you try to abort a running configuration job.
  - Click **Cancel** to delete any future scheduled jobs for the job you specified. If a job is currently running, it will complete.
- Step 3** To view information on when the job was created, started or scheduled and its history, select a job to view the **Job Detail View** page. Hover the mouse over the **Status** column of the specific job to view the troubleshooting information for a failed job.

When a minute job is scheduled to run recursively, the first trigger of the job falls on  $n^{\text{th}}$  minute of the hour, as divided by the quartz scheduler, and successive runs will be placed as per the schedule. For example, if you have given the start time as 12:02:00 and you want the job to run every 3 minutes, then the job will be executed at 12:03 (in a minute), with the next recurrence at 12:06, 12:09, and so on. Another example, if you have given the start time as 12:00:00 and you want the job to run every 3 minutes, then the job will be executed at 12:00 (without any delay), with the next recurrence at 12:03, 12:06, and so on.

---

## Monitoring Background Tasks

A background task is a scheduled program running in the background with no visible pages or other user interfaces. In Prime Infrastructure, background tasks can be anything from data collection to backing up configurations. You can monitor background tasks to see which background tasks are running, check their schedules, and find out whether the task was successfully completed.

To monitor the background tasks, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Settings > Background Tasks** to view scheduled tasks. The Background Tasks page appears.
- Step 2** Choose a command from the drop-down list:
- **Execute Now**—Runs all of the data sets with a selected check box.
  - **Enable Tasks**—Enables the data set to run on its scheduled interval.
  - **Disable Tasks**—Prevents the data set from running on its scheduled interval.
- 

## Using Packet Capture to Monitor and Troubleshoot Network Traffic

In addition to aggregating data from multiple NAMs, Prime Infrastructure with licensed Assurance features makes it easy to actively manage and troubleshoot network problems using multiple NAMs and ASRs.



**Note** To use this feature, your Prime Infrastructure implementation must include Assurance licenses.



**Note** This feature is supported for NAMs and ASRs. For more information on minimum Cisco IOS XE version supported on ASRs, see the [Cisco ASR 1000 Series Aggregation Services Routers Release Notes](#).

In the following workflow, a network operator needs to troubleshoot a set of similar authentication violations taking place at multiple branches. Because the operator suspects that the authentication problems are due to a network attack in progress, the operator runs the Packet Capture feature against the NAMs or ASRs for each branch, then runs the Packet Decoder to inspect the suspicious traffic.

- 
- Step 1** Create a capture session definition:
- a. Choose **Monitor > Tools > Packet Capture**, then click **Capture Session** to create a new capture session definition.
  - b. Complete the **General** section as needed. Give the session definition a unique name and specify how you want to file the captured data. To capture the full packet, enter 0 in the Packet Slice Size.
  - c. If you want to restrict the captured traffic to particular source or destination IPs, VLANs, applications, or ports, click **Add** in the Software Filters section and create filters as needed. If you do not create a software filter, it captures everything.
  - d. In the **Devices** area, you can select:

- A NAM and its data ports. You can create one capture session per NAM only, whether the capture session is running or not.
- An ASR and its interfaces.

**e. Click **Create and Start All Sessions**.**

Prime Infrastructure (with licensed Assurance features) saves the new session definition, then runs separate capture sessions on each of the devices you specified. It stores the sessions as files on the device and displays the list of packet capture files in the **Capture Files** area.

**Step 2** To decode a packet capture file:

- a. Choose **Monitor > Tools > Packet Capture**.**
- b. Select a PCAP file in a NAM or ASR device.**
- c. Select **Copy To** to copy the PCAP file to the PI server (the decode operation only runs on files in the PI server).**
- d. Click **View Jobs** to confirm that the copy job completed successfully.**
- e. Open the localhost folder, select the check box for the new capture file, then click **Decode**. The decoded data appears in the bottom pane.**
- f. A TCP Stream displays the data as the application layer sees it. To view the TCP Stream for a decoded file, select a TCP packet from the Packet List, then click **TCP Stream**. You can view the data as ASCII text or in a HEX dump.**

**Step 3** To run a packet capture session again, select the session definition in the **Capture Sessions** area and click **Start**.

---

## Securing Network Services

Cisco TrustSec Identity-Based Networking Services (IBNS) is an integrated solution consisting of Cisco products that offer authentication, access control, and user policies to secure network connectivity and resources. Cisco TrustSec IBNS help enterprises to increase productivity and visibility, reduce operating costs, and enforce policy compliance.



**Note**

To use this feature, your Prime Infrastructure implementation must include Assurance licenses.

---

In Prime Infrastructure, the TrustSec network service design enables you to choose preferred options for provisioning configurations to TrustSec-capable devices to enable 802.1X and other TrustSec functionality. You can configure wired 802\_1x devices by creating TrustSec model-based configuration templates and choosing any one of the following navigation paths:

- **Services > Network Services > TrustSec**
- **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Security > TrustSec > Wired 802\_1x**

Note that for Catalyst 6000 devices:

- **Security violation as protect** is not available for Catalyst 6000 supervisor devices.
- **Security violation as replace** is available in Cisco IOS Release 15.1(01)SY and later.
- The command **macsec** is not available for Catalyst 6500 supervisor 2T devices.

The MACsec support is available only for 3560-X series and 3750-X series devices with minimum supported image version “12.2.55SE3/15.0(1)SE2”.

**Note**

For the TrustSec 2.0 platform support list, see the [Cisco TrustSec 2.0 Product Bulletin](#).

For more details about configuring TrustSec model-based configuration templates, see [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#).

**Generating a TrustSec Readiness Assessment Report**

TrustSec Readiness Assessment displays TrustSec-based device details such as TrustSec version, readiness category, readiness device count, and device percentage displayed in the pie chart.

To generate a TrustSec Readiness Assessment report, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Network Services > TrustSec**.
  - Step 2** Expand the Features-TrustSec folder, then click **Readiness Assessment**.  
A pie chart appears with the following types of devices:
    - TrustSec Limited Compatibility Devices
    - TrustSec Capable Devices
    - TrustSec Hardware Incapable Devices
    - TrustSec Software Incapable Devices
  - Step 3** Click **Section view** and click any of the pie chart slices to view the details of the selected TrustSec-based device type.
  - Step 4** Click **Complete view** to view the details of all TrustSec-based devices.
  - Step 5** Select the TrustSec version and click **Export** to export the readiness assessment details to a CSV file.
-







# Monitoring Wireless Devices

You can monitor your wireless devices in your network on a daily basis, as well as perform other day-to-day or ad hoc operations related to wireless device inventory.

- [Monitoring Controllers](#)
- [Monitoring Access Points](#)
- [Monitoring Rogue Access Points](#)
- [Monitoring Spectrum Experts](#)
- [Monitoring WiFi TDOA Receivers](#)
- [Monitoring Media Streams](#)
- [Monitoring Access Point Alarms](#)

## Monitoring Controllers

Choose **Monitor > Managed Elements > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller** to view all the wireless controllers.

### Related Topic

- [Monitoring System Parameters](#)

## Monitoring System Parameters

Choose **Monitor > Managed Elements > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller** to view all the wireless controllers. Click a Device name to view its details. You can monitor all the wireless controller details described in [Table 9-1](#).

**Table 9-1** *Monitor > Network Devices > Wireless Controller Details*

To View ...	Select This Menu ...
<b>System Information</b>	
Summary information such as IP address, device type, location, reachability status, description, etc.	<b>System &gt; Summary</b> under <b>Device Details</b> tab
CLI session details	<b>System &gt; CLI Sessions</b> under <b>Device Details</b> tab

Table 9-1 Monitor &gt; Network Devices &gt; Wireless Controller Details

To View ...	Select This Menu ...
DHCP statistics (for version 5.0.6.0 controllers or later) such as packets sent and received, DHCP server response information, and the last request time stamp	System > DHCP Statistics under Device Details tab
Multicast information	System > Multicast under Configuration tab
Stack information such as MAC address, role, state, etc.	System > Stacks under Device Details tab
STP statistics	System > Spanning Tree Protocol under Configuration tab
Information about any user-defined fields	System > User Defined Field under Device Details tab
Wireless local access networks (WLANs) configured on a controller	System > WLANs under Device Details tab
<b>Mobility</b>	
Statistics for mobility group events such as receive and transmit errors, handoff request, etc.	Mobility > Mobility Stats under Device Details tab
<b>Ports</b>	
Information regarding physical ports on the selected controller	Ports > General under Configuration tab
CDP Interfaces	Ports > CDP Interface Neighbors under Configuration tab
<b>Security</b>	
RADIUS accounting server information and statistics	Security > RADIUS Accounting under Device Details tab
RADIUS authentication server information	Security > RADIUS Authentication under Device Details tab
Information about network access control lists	System > Security > Network Access Control
Guest access deployment and network users	Security > Guest Users under Device Details tab
Management Frame Protection (MFP) summary information	System > Security > Management Frame Protection under Device Details tab
List of all rogue access point rules currently applied to a controller.	System > Security > Rogue AP Rules under Device Details tab
List of sleeping clients, which are clients with guest access that have had successful web authentication that are allowed to sleep and wake up without having to go through another authentication process through the login page	Security > Sleeping Clients under Device Details tab
<b>IPv6</b>	
Statistics for the number of messages exchanged between the host or client and the router to generate and acquire IPv6 addresses, link, MTU, etc.	IPv6 > Neighbor Binding Timers under Configuration tab
<b>Redundancy</b>	
Redundancy information	System > Redundancy Summary under Device Details tab
<b>mDNS</b>	
List of mDNS services and service provider information.	mDNS > mDNS Service Provider under Device Details tab

**Related Topics**

- [Wireless Controller System Summary](#)

- [Spanning Tree Protocol](#)
- [Management Frame Protection](#)
- [Rogue AP Rules](#)

## Spanning Tree Protocol

The Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) is a link management protocol. Cisco WLAN Solution implements the IEEE 802.1D standard for media access control bridges.

The spanning tree algorithm provides redundancy while preventing undesirable loops in a network that are created by multiple active paths between stations. STP allows only one active path at a time between any two network devices (this prevents the loops) but establishes the redundant links as a backup if the initial link should fail.

The following controllers do not support Spanning Tree Protocol: WISM, 2500, 5500, 7500 and SMWLC.

### Related Topics

- [Wireless Controller > System > Spanning Tree Protocol](#)
- [Monitoring Controllers](#)

## Management Frame Protection

Management Frame Protection (MFP) provides the authentication of 802.11 management frames. Management frames can be protected to detect adversaries who are invoking denial of service attacks, flooding the network with probes, interjecting as rogue access points, and affecting the network performance by attacking the QoS and radio measurement frames.

If one or more of the WLANs for the controller has MFP enabled, the controller sends each registered access point a unique key for each BSSID the access point uses for those WLANs. Management frames sent by the access point over the MFP enabled WLANs is signed with a Frame Protection Information Element (IE). Any attempt to alter the frame invalidates the message causing the receiving access point configured to detect MFP frames to report the discrepancy to the WLAN controller.

### Related Topic

[Monitoring Controllers](#)

## Rogue AP Rules

Rogue AP rules automatically classify rogue access points based on criteria such as authentication type, matching configured SSIDs, client count, and RSSI values. Prime Infrastructure applies the rogue access point classification rules to the controllers and respective access points.

These rules can limit a rogue appearance on maps based on RSSI level (weaker rogue access points are ignored) and time limit (a rogue access point is not flagged unless it is seen for the indicated period of time).

Rogue AP Rules also help reduce false alarms.

Rogue classes include the following types:

- Malicious Rogue—A detected access point that matches the user-defined malicious rules or has been manually moved from the Friendly AP category.
- Friendly Rogue—Known, acknowledged, or trusted access point or a detected access point that matches user-defined friendly rules.
- Unclassified Rogue—A detected access point that does not match the malicious or friendly rules.

#### Related Topic

- [Monitoring Controllers](#)

## Monitoring Third Party Controllers

Choose **Monitor > Managed Elements > Network Devices > Third Party Wireless Controllers** to view the detailed information about the third party (non-Cisco) controllers that are managed by Prime Infrastructure.

## Monitoring Switches

Choose **Monitor > Managed Elements > Network Devices > Switches and Hubs** to view the following detailed information about the switches:

- Searching Switches  
Use the Prime Infrastructure search feature to find specific switches or to create and save custom searches.
- Viewing the Switches

#### Related topics

- [Monitor > Switches > Search](#)
- [Monitor > Switches > View](#)

## Configuring the Switch List Page

The Edit View page allows you to add, remove, or reorder columns in the Switches table.

To edit the available columns in the table, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Managed Elements > Network Devices > Switches and Hubs**.
  - Step 2** Click the **Edit View** link.
  - Step 3** To add an additional column to the table, click to highlight the column heading in the left column. Click **Show** to move the heading to the right column. All items in the right column are displayed in the table.
  - Step 4** To remove a column from the table, click to highlight the column heading in the right column. Click **Hide** to move the heading to the left column. All items in the left column are not displayed in the table.
  - Step 5** Use the **Up/Down** buttons to specify the order in which the information appears in the table. Highlight the desired column heading and click **Up** or **Down** to move it higher or lower in the current list.
  - Step 6** Click **Reset** to restore the default view.

**Step 7** Click **Submit** to confirm the changes.

---

**Related topics**

- [Monitor > Switches > Search](#)
- [Monitor > Switches > View](#)

## Monitoring Switch System Parameters

Choose **Monitor > Managed Elements > Network Devices > Switches and Hubs**, then click on a Device Name to view the following detailed information about the switch:

- Viewing Switch Memory Information
- Viewing Switch Environment Information
- Viewing Switch Module Information
- Viewing Switch VLAN Information
- Viewing Switch VTP Information
- Viewing Switch Physical Ports Information
- Viewing Switch Sensor Information
- Viewing Switch Spanning Tree Information
- Viewing Spanning Tree Details
- Viewing Switch Stacks Information
- Viewing Switch NMSP and Location Information

**Related Topics**

- [Viewing Switch Information](#)

## Viewing Switch Information

To view switch information, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Managed Elements > Network Devices > Switches and Hubs**.

**Step 2** Click an Device Name in the Device Name column to view details about the switch.

**Step 3** Click one of the following from the **System** menu to view the relevant information:

- Environment
- Modules
- VLANs
- VTP
- Physical Ports
- Sensors
- Spanning Tree

- Stacks
  - NMSP and Location
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Monitoring Switch Interfaces](#)
- [Monitor > Switches > IP Address](#)
- [Monitor > Switches > Memory](#)
- [Monitor > Switches > Environment](#)
- [Monitor > Switches > Modules](#)
- [Monitor > Switches > VLANs](#)
- [Monitor > Switches > VTP](#)
- [Monitor > Switches > Physical Ports](#)
- [Monitor > Switches > Sensors](#)
- [Monitor > Switches > Spanning Tree](#)
- [Monitor > Switches > Spanning Tree Details](#)
- [Monitor > Switches > Stacks](#)

## Monitoring Switch Interfaces

---

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Managed Elements > Network Devices > Switches and Hubs**.
- Step 2** Click an Device Name in the Device Name column to view details about the switch.
- Step 3** Click **Interfaces** to view the following information:
- Monitoring Switch Ethernet Interfaces
  - Monitoring Switch Ethernet Interface Details
  - Monitoring Switch IP Interfaces
  - Monitoring Switch VLAN Interfaces
  - Monitoring Switch EtherChannel Interfaces
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Viewing Switch Interface Information](#)

## Viewing Switch Interface Information

To view switch interface information, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Managed Elements > Network Devices > Switches and Hubs**.
- Step 2** Click an Device Name in the Device Name column to view details about the switch.

**Step 3** Click **Interfaces**.

**Step 4** Click one of the following to view the relevant information:

- Ethernet Interfaces
  - Ethernet Interface Name
  - IP Interfaces
  - VLAN Interfaces
  - EtherChannel Interfaces
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Monitor > Switches > Interfaces > Ethernet Interfaces](#)
- [Monitor > Switches > Interfaces > Ethernet Interface Name](#)
- [Monitor > Switches > Interfaces > IP Interface](#)
- [Monitor > Switches > Interfaces > VLAN Interface](#)
- [Monitor > Switches > Interfaces > EtherChannel Interface](#)

## Monitoring Switch Clients

To view switch interface information, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Managed Elements > Network Devices > Switches and Hubs**.
- Step 2** Click an Device Name in the Device Name column to view details about the switch.
- Step 3** Choose **Clients** from the System Menu to monitor switch clients.
- 

## Monitoring Access Points

This section describes access to the controller access points summary details. Use the main date area to access the respective access point details.

Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios** to access this page.

#### Related Topics

- [Searching for Access Points](#)
- [Viewing a List of Access Points](#)
- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)
- [Monitoring Access Points Details](#)

## Searching for Access Points

Use the Prime Infrastructure Search feature to find specific access points or to create and save custom searches.

### Related Topics

- [Viewing a List of Access Points](#)
- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)
- [Monitoring Access Points](#)
- [Monitoring Access Points Details](#)
- [Search Methods](#)

## Viewing a List of Access Points

Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios** or perform an access point search to view the summary of access points including the default information.

### Related Topics

- [Searching for Access Points](#)
- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)
- [Monitoring Access Points](#)
- [Monitoring Access Points Details](#)
- [Viewing a List of Access Points](#)

## Configuring the List of Access Points Display

The **Edit View** page allows you to add, remove, or reorder columns in the Access Points table.

To edit the available columns in the alarms table:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios**.
  - Step 2** Click the **Edit View** link.
  - Step 3** To add an additional column to the access points table, highlight the column heading in the left column and click **Show** to move the heading to the right column. An additional column will be added to the left of the highlighted column.
  - Step 4** To remove a column from the access points table, highlight the column heading of the column on the right of the column you want to remove and click **Hide**.  
All items in the left column will be removed from the table.
  - Step 5** Use the **Up/Down** buttons to specify the order in which the information appears in the table. Highlight the desired row heading and click **Up** or **Down** to move it higher or lower in the current list.
  - Step 6** Click **Reset** to restore the default view.



**Step 7** Click **Submit** to confirm the changes.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Monitoring Access Points](#)
- [Searching for Access Points](#)
- [Viewing a List of Access Points](#)
- [Monitoring Access Points Details](#)

## Types of Reports for Access Points

The following reports can be generated for Access Points. These reports cannot be customized.

- **Load**—Generates a report with load information.
- **Dynamic Power Control**—Generates a report with Dynamic Power Control information.
- **Noise**—Generates a report with Noise information.
- **Interference**—Generates a report with Interference information.
- **Coverage (RSSI)**—Generates a report with Coverage (RSSI) information.
- **Coverage (SNR)**—Generates a report with Coverage (SNR) information.
- **Up/Down Statistics**—Time in days, hours and minutes since the last reboot. Generates a report with Up Time information.
- **Network Airtime Fairness Statistics**—Tabular representation of Average Airtime used across different WLAN profiles in the selected interval of time.
- **Voice Statistics**—Generates a report for selected access points showing radio utilization by voice traffic.
- **Voice TSM Table**—Generates a report for selected access points and radio, organized by client device showing QoS status, PLR, and latency of its voice traffic stream.
- **Voice TSM Reports**—Graphical representation of the TSM table except that metrics from the clients are averaged together on the graphs.
- **802.11 Counters**—Displays counters for access points at the MAC layer. Statistics such as error frames, fragment counts, RTS/CTS frame count, and retried frames are generated based on the filtering criteria and can help interpret performance (and problems, if any) at the MAC layer.
- **AP Profile Status**—Displays access point load, noise, interference, and coverage profile status.
- **Air Quality vs. Time**—Displays the air quality index of the wireless network during the configured time duration.
- **Traffic Stream Metrics**—Determines the current and historical quality of service (QoS) for given clients at the radio level. It also displays uplink and downlink statistics such as packet loss rate, average queuing delay, distribution of delayed packets, and roaming delays.
- **Tx Power and Channel**—Displays the channel plan assignment and transmit power level trends of devices based on the filtering criteria used when the report was generated. It can help identify unexpected behavior or issues with network performance.

- **VoIP Calls Graph**—Helps analyze wireless network usage from a voice perspective by providing details such as the number and duration of VoIP calls (per radio) on the network over time. VoIP snooping must be enabled on the WLAN to be able to gather useful data from this report. This report displays information in a graph.
- **VoIP Calls Table**—Provides the same information as the VoIP Calls Graph report but in table form.
- **Voice Statistics**—Helps analyze wireless network usage from a voice perspective by providing details such as percentage of bandwidth used by voice clients, voice calls, roaming calls, and rejected calls (per radio) on the network. To be able to gather useful data from this report, make sure call admission control (CAC) is supported on voice clients.
- **Worst Air Quality APs**—Provides a high-level, easy-to-understand metric to facilitate understanding of where interference problems are impacting the network. Air Quality (AQ) is reported at a channel, floor, and system level and it supports AQ alerts, so that you can be automatically notified when AQ falls below a desired threshold.

#### Related Topics

- [Monitoring Traffic Load](#)
- [Monitoring Dynamic Power Control](#)
- [Monitoring Access Points Noise](#)
- [Monitoring Access Points Interference](#)
- [Monitoring Access Points Coverage \(RSSI\)](#)
- [Monitoring Access Points Coverage \(SNR\)](#)
- [Monitoring Access Points Up/Down Statistics](#)
- [Monitoring the Access Points Voice Statistics](#)
- [Monitoring the Access Points Voice TSM Table](#)
- [Monitoring the Access Points Voice TSM Reports](#)
- [Monitoring Access Points 802.11 Counters](#)
- [Monitoring Access Points AP Profile Status](#)
- [Monitoring Air Quality](#)
- [Monitoring Access Points Traffic Stream Metrics](#)
- [Monitoring Access Points Tx Power and Channel](#)
- [Monitoring VoIP Calls](#)
- [Monitoring Voice Statistics](#)
- [Monitoring Air Quality](#)

## Generating Reports for Access Points

To generate a report for access points:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios**.
  - Step 2** Click to select the access point(s) for which you want to run a report.
  - Step 3** Choose the applicable report from the Select a report drop-down list.

**Step 4** Click **Go**.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)

## Monitoring Traffic Load

Traffic Load is the total amount of bandwidth used for transmitting and receiving traffic. This enables WLAN managers to track network growth and plan network growth ahead of client demand.

To generate the access point load report:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios**.
- Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable access point(s).
- Step 3** From the Generate a report for selected APs drop-down list, choose **Load**.
- Step 4** Click **Go**. The Load report displays for the selected access points.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)
- [Monitor > Access Points > Load](#)

## Monitoring Dynamic Power Control

To generate the Access Point Load report:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios**.
- Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable access point(s).
- Step 3** From the Generate a report for selected APs drop-down list, choose **Dynamic Power Control**.
- Step 4** Click **Go**. The Dynamic Power Control report displays the selected access points.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)
- [Monitor > Access Points > Dynamic Power Control](#)

## Monitoring Access Points Noise

To generate the Access Point Noise report:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios**.
- Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable access point(s).

If multiple access points are selected, they must have the same radio type.

**Step 3** Choose **Noise** from the **Generate a report selected APs** drop-down list,.

**Step 4** Click **Go**.

The Noise report displays a bar graph of noise (RSSI in dBm) for each channel for the selected access points.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)

## Monitoring Access Points Interference

To generate the Access Point Interference report:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios**.

**Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable access point(s).

If multiple access points are selected, they must have the same radio type.

**Step 3** Choose **Interference** from the **Generate a report for selected APs** drop-down list, then click **Go**.

The Interference report displays a bar graph of interference (RSSI in dBm) for each channel:

- High interference -40 to 0 dBm.
  - Marginal interference -100 to -40 dBm.
  - Low interference -110 to -100 dBm.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)

## Monitoring Access Points Coverage (RSSI)

To generate the Access Point Coverage (RSSI) report:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios**

**Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable access point(s).

**Step 3** Choose **Coverage (RSSI)** from the Generate a report for selected APs drop-down list.

**Step 4** Click **Go**.

The Coverage (RSSI) report displays a bar graph of client distribution by received signal strength showing the number of clients versus RSSI in dBm.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)

## Monitoring Access Points Coverage (SNR)

To generate the Access Point Coverage (SNR) report:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios**.
- Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable access point(s).
- Step 3** Choose **Coverage (SNR)** from the **Generate a report for selected APs** drop-down list, then click **Go**.  
The Access Points Coverage (SNR) report displays a bar graph of client distribution by signal-to-noise ratio showing the number of clients versus SNR.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)

## Monitoring Access Points Up/Down Statistics

To generate the Access Point Up/Down Statistics report:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios**.
- Step 2** Select the check box of the applicable access point.
- Step 3** Choose **Up/Down Statistics** from the **Generate a report for selected APs** drop-down list.  
Click **Go**.  
The Up/Down Statistics report displays a line graph of access point up time graphed against time.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)

## Monitoring the Access Points Voice Statistics

To generate the Access Point Voice Statistics report:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios**.
- Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable access point(s).
- Step 3** Choose **Voice Statistics** from the **Generate a report for selected APs** drop-down list, then click **Go**.  
The Voice Statistics report displays the following radio utilization statistics by voice traffic:
- AP Name.
  - Radio.
  - Calls in Progress
  - Roaming Calls in Progress

- Bandwidth in Use

Voice Statistics reports are only applicable for CAC/WMM clients.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)

## Monitoring the Access Points Voice TSM Table

To access the Access Point Voice TSM Table report:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios**.
- Step 2** Select the check box of the applicable access point.
- Step 3** Choose **Voice TSM Table** from the **Generate a report for selected APs** drop-down list.
- Step 4** Click **Go**.

The Voice Traffic Stream Metrics Table is generated for the selected access points and radio, organized by client device showing QoS status, PLR, and latency of its voice traffic stream.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)
- [Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios > Voice TSM Table](#)

## Monitoring the Access Points Voice TSM Reports

To access the access point Voice Traffic Stream Metrics Table report:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios**.
- Step 2** Select the check box of the applicable access point.
- Step 3** Choose **Voice TSM Reports** from the **Generate a report for selected APs** drop-down list.
- Step 4** Click **Go**.

The Voice Traffic Stream Metrics Table report displays a graphical representation of the Voice Traffic Stream Metrics Table except that metrics from the clients that are averaged together on the graphs for the selected access point.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)
- [Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios > Voice TSM Reports](#)

## Monitoring Access Points 802.11 Counters

The 802.11 Counters report displays counters for access points at the MAC layer. Statistics such as error frames, fragment counts, RTS/CTS frame count, and retried frames are generated based on the filtering criteria and can help interpret performance (and problems, if any) at the MAC layer.

### Related Topics

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)
- [Managing Reports](#)

## Monitoring Access Points AP Profile Status

The AP Profile Status Report displays access point load, noise, interference, and coverage profile status.

### Related Topics

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)
- [Managing Reports](#)

## Monitoring Access Points Radio Utilization

The Radio Utilization Report displays the utilization trends of the access point radios based on the filtering criteria used when the report was generated. It helps to identify current network performance and capacity planning for future scalability needs.

### Related Topics

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)
- [Managing Reports](#)

## Monitoring Access Points Traffic Stream Metrics

The Traffic Stream Metrics Report is useful in determining the current and historical quality of service (QoS) for given clients at the radio level. It also displays uplink and downlink statistics such as packet loss rate, average queuing delay, distribution of delayed packets, and roaming delays.

### Related Topics

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)
- [Managing Reports](#)

## Monitoring Access Points Tx Power and Channel

The Tx Power and Channel report displays the channel plan assignment and transmits power level trends of devices based on the filtering criteria used when the report was generated. It can help identify unexpected behavior or issues with network performance.

The Current Tx Power Level setting controls the maximum conducted transmit power. The maximum available transmit power varies according to the configured channel, individual country regulation, and access point capability. See the *Product Guide* or data sheet at for each specific model to determine the access point capability.

The Current Tx Power Level setting of 1 represents the maximum conducted power setting for the access point. Each subsequent power level (for example, 2, 3, 4, and so on.) represents approximately a 50% (or 3dBm) reduction in transmit power from the previous power level. The actual power reduction might vary slightly for different models of access points.

Based on the configured antenna gain, the configured channel, and the configured power level, the actual transmit power at the access point can be reduced so that the specific country regulations are not exceeded.

Irrespective of whether you choose Global or Custom assignment method, the actual conducted transmit power at the access point is verified such that country specific regulations are not exceeded.

The following command buttons are available to configure the transmission levels:

- Save—Save the current settings.
- Audit—Discover the present status of this access point.

#### Related Topics

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)
- [Managing Reports](#)

## Monitoring VoIP Calls

VoIP Calls Report helps analyze wireless network usage from a voice perspective by providing details such as the number and duration of VoIP calls (per radio) on the network over time. To be able to gather useful data from this report, VoIP snooping must be enabled on the WLAN. This report displays information in a graph.

Click **VoIP Calls Graph** from the Report Launch Pad to open the VoIP Calls Graph Reports page. From this page, you can enable, disable, delete, or run currently saved report templates.

#### Related Topics

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)
- [Managing Reports](#)

## Monitoring Voice Statistics

Voice Statistics report helps analyze wireless network usage from a voice perspective by providing details such as percentage of bandwidth used by voice clients, voice calls, roaming calls, and rejected calls (per radio) on the network.

To be able to gather useful data from this report, make sure Call Admission Control (CAC) is supported on voice clients.

#### Related Topics

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)
- [Managing Reports](#)



## Monitoring Air Quality

To facilitate an easy understanding of where interference problems are impacting the network, Prime Infrastructure rolls up the detailed information into a high-level, easy-to-understand metric referred to as Air Quality (AQ). AQ is reported at a channel, floor, and system level and it supports AQ alerts, so that you can be automatically notified when AQ falls below a desired threshold.

### Related Topics

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)
- [Managing Reports](#)

## Monitoring Access Points Details

The Access Points Details page enables you to view access point information for a single AP.

Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios** and click the access point name in the **AP Name** column to access this page. Depending on the type of access point, the following tabs are displayed:

- General Tab

The General tab fields differ between lightweight and autonomous access points.

For autonomous clients, Prime Infrastructure *only* collects client counts. The client counts in the Monitor page and reports have autonomous clients included. Client search, client traffic graphs, or other client reports (such as Unique Clients, Busiest Clients, Client Association) do not include clients from autonomous access points.

- Interfaces Tab
- CDP Neighbors Tab

This tab is visible only when CDP is enabled.

- Current Associated Clients Tab

This tab is visible only when there are clients associated to the AP (CAPWAP or Autonomous AP).

- SSID Tab

This tab is visible only when the access point is an Autonomous AP and there are SSIDs configured on the AP

- Clients Over Time Tab

This tab displays the following charts:

- Client Count on AP—Displays the total number of clients currently associated with an access point over time.
- Client Traffic on AP—Displays the traffic generated by the client connected in the AP distribution over time.

The information that appears in these charts is presented in a time-based graph. Time-based graphs have a link bar at the top of the graph page that displays 6h, 1d, 1w, 2w, 4w, 3m, 6m, 1y, and Custom. When selected, the data for that time frame is retrieved and the corresponding graph is displayed.

**Related Topics**

- [Types of Reports for Access Points](#)
- [Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios> General](#)
- [Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios> Interfaces](#)
- [Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios > CDP Neighbors](#)
- [Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios > Current Associated Clients](#)
- [Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios> SSID](#)

## Monitoring Rogue Access Points

A rogue device is an unknown access point or client that is detected by managed access points in your network. Rogue access points can disrupt wireless LAN operations by hijacking legitimate clients and using plain-text or other denial of service or man-in-the-middle attacks. That is, a hacker can use a rogue access point to capture sensitive information, such as usernames and passwords. The hacker can then transmit a series of clear-to-send (CTS) frames. This action mimics an access point informing a particular client to transmit and instructing all others to wait, which results in legitimate clients being unable to access network resources. Therefore, wireless LAN service providers have a strong interest in banning rogue access points from the air space.

Since rogue access points are inexpensive and readily available, employees sometimes plug unauthorized rogue access points into existing LANs and build ad-hoc wireless networks without IT department knowledge or consent. These rogue access points can be a serious breach of network security as they can be plugged into a network port behind the corporate firewall. Because employees generally do not enable any security settings on the rogue access point, it is easy for unauthorized users to use the access point to intercept network traffic and hijack client sessions. Even more alarming, wireless users frequently publish insecure access point locations, increasing the odds of having enterprise security breached.

**Related Topics**

- [Detecting Rogue Devices](#)
- [Classifying Rogue Access Points](#)
- [Monitoring Rogue AP Alarms](#)
- [Monitoring Ad hoc Rogues](#)
- [Searching Rogue Clients Using Advanced Search](#)
- [Monitoring Rogue Access Point Location, Tagging, and Containment](#)

## Detecting Rogue Devices

Controllers continuously monitor all nearby access points and automatically discover and collect information on rogue access points and clients. When a controller discovers a rogue access point, it uses the Rogue Location Discovery Protocol (RLDP) to determine if the rogue is attached to your network. Prime Infrastructure consolidates all of the controllers rogue access point data.

You can configure controllers to use RLDP on all access points or only on access points configured for monitor (listen-only) mode. The latter option facilitates automated rogue access point detection in a crowded RF space, allowing monitoring without creating unnecessary interference and without affecting regular data access point functionality. If you configure a controller to use RLDP on all access points,

the controller always chooses the monitor access point for RLDP operation if a monitor access point and a local (data) access point are both nearby. If RLDP determines that the rogue is on your network, you can choose to either manually or automatically contain the detected rogue.

Rogue access point partitions are associated with one of the detecting access points (the one with the latest or strongest RSSI value). If there is detecting access point information, Prime Infrastructure uses the detecting controller. If the rogue access point is detected by two controllers which are in different partitions, the rogue access point partition might be changed at any time.

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Rogue Policies](#)
- [Monitoring Rogue Access Points](#)
- [Classifying Rogue Access Points](#)
- [Monitoring Rogue AP Alarms](#)
- [Monitoring Ad hoc Rogue Alarms](#)

## Classifying Rogue Access Points

Classification and reporting of rogue access points occurs through the use of rogue states and user-defined classification rules that enable rogues to automatically move between states. You can create rules that enable the controller to organize and display rogue access points as Friendly, Malicious, or Unclassified.

By default, none of the classification rules are enabled. Therefore, all unknown access points are categorized as Unclassified. When you create a rule, configure conditions for it, and enable the rule, the unclassified access points are reclassified. Whenever you change a rule, it is applied to all access points (friendly, malicious, and unclassified) in the Alert state only. Rule-based rogue classification does not apply to ad-hoc rogues and rogue clients.

The 5500 series controllers support up to 2000 rogues (including acknowledged rogues); the 4400 series controllers, Cisco WiSM, and Catalyst 3750G Integrated Wireless LAN Controller Switch support up to 625 rogues; and the 2100 series controllers and Controller Network Module for Integrated Services Routers support up to 125 rogues. Each controller limits the number of rogue containments to three per radio (or six per radio for access points in monitor mode).

When the controller receives a rogue report from one of its managed access points, it responds as follows:

1. The controller verifies whether the unknown access point is in the friendly MAC address list. If it is, the controller classifies the access point as Friendly.
2. If the unknown access point is not in the friendly MAC address list, the controller starts applying rogue classification rules.
3. If the rogue is already classified as Malicious, Alert or Friendly, Internal or External, the controller does not reclassify it automatically. If the rogue is classified differently, the controller reclassifies it automatically only if the rogue is in the Alert state.
4. The controller applies the first rule based on priority. If the rogue access point matches the criteria specified by the rule, the controller classifies the rogue according to the classification type configured for the rule.
5. If the rogue access point does not match any of the configured rules, the controller classifies the rogue as Unclassified.
6. The controller repeats the previous steps for all rogue access points.

7. If RLDP determines that the rogue access point is on the network, the controller marks the rogue state as Threat and classifies it as Malicious automatically, even if no rules are configured. You can then manually contain the rogue (unless you have configured RLDP to automatically contain the rogue), which would change the rogue state to Contained. If the rogue access point is not on the network, the controller marks the rogue state as Alert, and you can manually contain the rogue.
8. If desired, you can manually move the access point to a different classification type and rogue state.

As mentioned previously, the controller can automatically change the classification type and rogue state of an unknown access point based on user-defined rules, or you can manually move the unknown access point to a different classification type and rogue state.

The following table shows the allowable classification types and rogue states from and to which an unknown access point can be configured.

**Table 9-2 Allowable Classification Type and Rogue State Transitions**

From	To
Friendly (Internal, External, Alert)	Malicious (Alert)
Friendly (Internal, External, Alert)	Unclassified (Alert)
Friendly (Alert)	Friendly (Internal, External)
Malicious (Alert, Threat)	Friendly (Internal, External)
Malicious (Contained, Contained Pending)	Malicious (Alert)
Unclassified (Alert, Threat)	Friendly (Internal, External)
Unclassified (Contained, Contained Pending)	Unclassified (Alert)
Unclassified (Alert)	Malicious (Alert)

If the rogue state is Contained, you have to uncontain the rogue access point before you can change the classification type. If you want to move a rogue access point from Malicious to Unclassified, you must delete the access point and allow the controller to reclassify it.

### Malicious Rogue APs

Malicious rogue access points are detected but untrusted or unknown access points with a malicious intent within the system. They also refer to access points that fit the user-defined malicious rules or have been manually moved from the friendly access point classification.

The Security dashboard of Prime Infrastructure home page displays the number of malicious rogue access points for each applicable state for the past hour, the past 24 hours, and the total number of active malicious rogue access points.

Malicious rogue access point states include:

- Alert—Indicates that the access point is not on the neighbor list or part of the user-configured Friendly AP list.
- Contained—The unknown access point is contained.
- Threat—The unknown access point is found to be on the network and poses a threat to WLAN security.
- Contained Pending—Indicates that the containment action is delayed due to unavailable resources.
- Removed—This unknown access point was seen earlier but is not seen now.

Click an underlined number in any of the time period categories for detailed information regarding the malicious rogue access points.

### Friendly Rogue APs

Friendly rogue access points are known, acknowledged or trusted access points. They also refer to access points that fit the user-defined friendly rogue access point rules. Friendly rogue access points cannot be contained.

Only users can add a rogue access point MAC address to the Friendly AP list. Prime Infrastructure does not apply the Friendly AP MAC address to controllers.

The Security dashboard of Prime Infrastructure home page displays the number of friendly rogue access points for each applicable state for the past hour, the past 24 hours, and the total number of active friendly rogue access points.

Friendly rogue access point states include the following:

- **Internal**—If the unknown access point is inside the network and poses no threat to WLAN security, you would manually configure it as Friendly, Internal. For example, the access points in your lab network.
- **External**—If the unknown access point is outside the network and poses no threat to WLAN security, you would manually configure it as Friendly, External. For example, the access points belonging to a neighboring coffee shop.
- **Alert**—The unknown access point is not on the neighbor list or part of the user-configured Friendly AP list.

Click an underlined number in any of the time period categories for detailed information regarding the friendly rogue access points.

To delete a rogue access point from the Friendly AP list, ensure that both Prime Infrastructure and controller remove the rogue access point from the Friendly AP list. Change the rogue access point from Friendly AP Internal or External to Unclassified or Malicious Alert.

### Unclassified Rogue APs

A rogue access point is called unclassified, if it is not classified as either malicious or friendly. These access points can be contained and can be moved manually to the friendly rogue access point list.

The Security dashboard of the Prime Infrastructure home page displays the number of unclassified rogue access points for each applicable state for the past hour, the past 24 hours, and the total number of active unclassified rogue access points.

Unclassified rogue access point states include:

- **Pending**—On first detection, the unknown access point is put in the Pending state for 3 minutes. During this time, the managed access points determine if the unknown access point is a neighbor access point.
- **Alert**—The unknown access point is not on the neighbor list or part of the user-configured Friendly AP list.
- **Contained**—The unknown access point is contained.
- **Contained Pending**—The unknown access point is marked Contained, but the action is delayed due to unavailable resources.

Click an underlined number in any of the time period categories for further information.

### Related Topics

- [Monitoring Rogue Access Points](#)
- [Detecting Rogue Devices](#)

## Monitoring Rogue AP Alarms

Rogue access point radios are unauthorized access points detected by one or more Cisco 1000 series lightweight access points. To open the Rogue AP Alarms page, do one of the following:

- Search for rogue APs.
- Navigate to **Dashboard > Wireless > Security**. This page displays all the rogue access points detected in the past hour and the past 24 hours. Click the rogue access point number to view the rogue access point alarms.
- Click the **AP number** link in the Alarm Summary.

If there are multiple alarm pages, the page numbers are displayed at the top of the page with a scroll arrow on each side. Use it to view additional alarms.

Rogue access point partitions are associated with one of the detecting access points (the one with the latest or strongest RSSI value). If there is detecting access point information, Prime Infrastructure uses the detecting controller. If the rogue access point is detected by two controllers which are in different partitions, the rogue access point partition might be changed at any time.

When Prime Infrastructure polls, some data might change or get updated. Because of this, some of the displayed rogue data (including Strongest AP RSSI, No. of Rogue Clients, Channel, SSID, and Radio Types) can change during the life of the rogue.

### Related Topic

- [Rogue AP Alarms Page](#)
- [Alarm Severity Icons](#)
- [Selecting Commands for Rogue AP Alarms](#)

## Viewing Rogue AP Alarm Details

Rogue access point radios are unauthorized access points detected by Cisco 1000 Series Lightweight APs. Alarm event details for each rogue access point are available in the Rogue AP Alarms list page.

To view alarm events for a rogue access point radio, select **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms and Events**, and click the arrow icon in a row to view Rogue AP Alarm Details page.

All Alarm Details page fields (except No. of Rogue Clients) are populated through polling and are updated every two hours. The number of rogue clients is a real-time number and is updated each time you access the Alarm Details page for a rogue access point alarm.

When a controller (version 7.4 or 7.5) sends custom rogue AP alarm, Prime Infrastructure shows it as unclassified rogue alarm. This is because Prime Infrastructure does not support custom rogue AP alarm.

When Prime Infrastructure polls, some data might change or get updated. Because of this, some of the displayed rogue data (including Strongest AP RSSI, No. of Rogue Clients, Channel, SSID, and Radio Types) can change during the life of the rogue.

### Related Topics

- [Monitoring Rogue Access Points](#)
- [Monitoring Ad hoc Rogue Alarms](#)
- [Viewing Ad hoc Rogue Alarm Details](#)
- [Selecting Commands for Rogue AP Alarms](#)

## Viewing Rogue Client Details

You can view a list of rogue clients in several ways:

- Perform a search for rogue clients using Prime Infrastructure Search feature.
- View the list of rogue clients for a specific rogue access point from the Alarm Details page for the applicable rogue access point. Click the Rogue MAC address for the applicable rogue client to view the Rogue Client details page.
- In the Alarms Details page of a rogue access point, choose **Rogue Clients** from the Select a command drop-down list.

The Rogue Clients page displays the Client MAC address, when it was last heard, its current status, its controller, and the associated rogue access point.

Rogue client statuses include: Contained (the controller contains the offending device so that its signals no longer interfere with authorized clients); Alert (the controller forwards an immediate alert to the system administrator for further action); and Threat (the rogue is a known threat). The higher the threat of the rogue access point, the higher the containment required.

Click the Client MAC Address for the rogue client to view the Rogue Client details page. T

### Related Topics

- [Monitoring Rogue Access Points](#)
- [Monitoring Rogue AP Alarms](#)
- [Monitoring Ad hoc Rogue Alarms](#)
- [Monitoring Ad hoc Rogue Events](#)
- [Viewing Ad hoc Rogue Alarm Details](#)
- [Selecting Commands for Rogue AP Alarms](#)

## Viewing Rogue AP History Details

To view the history of a rogue AP alarms, click the **Rogue AP History** link in the Rogue AP Alarm page. Click the Rogue MAC address to view the specific rogue AP history details page.

### Related Topics

- [Rogue AP History Details Page](#)
- [Rogue AP Event History Details Page](#)

## Viewing Rogue AP Event History Details

To view the event details of a rogue AP, click the **Event History** link in the Rogue AP Alarm page.

### Related Topics

- [Monitoring Rogue Access Points](#)
- [Monitoring Rogue AP Alarms](#)
- [Monitoring Ad hoc Rogue Alarms](#)
- [Monitoring Rogue Alarm Events](#)

- [Rogue AP History Details Page](#)
- [Rogue AP Event History Details Page](#)

## Monitoring Ad hoc Rogues

If the MAC address of a mobile client operating in a ad hoc network is not in the authorized MAC address list, then it is identified as an ad hoc rogue.

### Related Topics

- [Viewing Rogue AP Alarm Details](#)
- [Viewing Rogue Client Details](#)
- [Viewing Rogue AP History Details](#)
- [Monitoring Ad hoc Rogue Alarms](#)
- [Viewing Ad hoc Rogue Alarm Details](#)

## Monitoring Ad hoc Rogue Alarms

The Adhoc Rogue Alarms page displays alarm events for ad hoc rogues. To access the Adhoc Rogue Alarms page, do one of the following:

- Perform a search for ad hoc rogue alarms.
- Navigate to **Dashboard > Wireless > Security**. This page displays all the ad hoc rogues detected in the past hour and the past 24 hours. Click the ad hoc rogue number to view the ad hoc rogue alarms.

If there are multiple alarm pages, the page numbers are displayed at the top of the page with a scroll arrow on each side. Use this to view additional alarms.

When Prime Infrastructure polls, some data might change or get updated. Because of this, some of the displayed rogue data (including Strongest AP RSSI, No. of Rogue Clients, Channel, SSID, and Radio Types) can change during the life of the rogue.

### Related Topics

- [Viewing Rogue AP History Details](#)
- [Viewing Ad hoc Rogue Alarm Details](#)
- [Selecting Commands for Rogue AP Alarms](#)

## Viewing Ad hoc Rogue Alarm Details

Alarm event details for each ad hoc rogue is available on the Adhoc Rogue Alarms page. Rogue access point radios are unauthorized access points detected by Cisco 1000 Series Lightweight APs

To view alarm events for an ad hoc rogue radio, click the applicable Rogue MAC address in the Adhoc Rogue Alarms page.

When Prime Infrastructure polls, some data might change or get updated. Hence some of the displayed rogue data (including Strongest AP RSSI, No. of Rogue Clients, Channel, SSID, and Radio Types) can change during the life of the rogue.



Alarms will not be triggered if a rogue is discovered using switch port tracing as switch port tracing does not update any of the rogue attributes such as severity, state, and so on.

#### Related Topics

- [Searching Rogue Clients Using Advanced Search](#)
- [Viewing Ad hoc Rogue Alarm Details](#)
- [Selecting Commands for Rogue AP Alarms](#)

## Searching Rogue Clients Using Advanced Search

When the access points on your WLAN are powered up and associated with controllers, Prime Infrastructure immediately starts listening for rogue access points. When a controller detects a rogue access point, it immediately notifies Prime Infrastructure, which creates a rogue access point alarm.

To find rogue access point alarms using Advanced Search, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Click **Advanced Search** in the top right-hand corner of the Prime Infrastructure main page.
  - Step 2** Choose **Rogue Client** from the Search Category drop-down list.  
You can filter the search even further with the other search criteria if desired.
  - Step 3** Click **Search**. The list of rogue clients appears.
  - Step 4** Choose a rogue client by clicking a client MAC address. The Rogue Client detail page appears.
  - Step 5** To modify the alarm, choose one of these commands from the **Select a Command** drop-down list, and click **Go**.
    - Set State to 'Unknown-Alert'—Tags the ad hoc rogue as the lowest threat, continues to monitor the ad hoc rogue, and turns off containment.
    - 1 AP Containment through 4 AP Containment—Indicates the number of access points (1-4) in the vicinity of the rogue unit that send deauthenticate and disassociate messages to the client devices that are associated to the rogue unit.
    - Map (High Resolution)—Displays the current calculated rogue location in the Maps > Building Name > Floor Name page.
    - Location History—Displays the history of the rogue client location based on RF fingerprinting. The client must be detected by an MSE for the location history to appear.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing Rogue AP Alarm Details](#)
- [Monitoring Rogue Access Point Location, Tagging, and Containment](#)

## Monitoring Rogue Access Point Location, Tagging, and Containment

Prime Infrastructure generates the flags as rogue access point traps and displays the known rogue access points by MAC address Cisco Unified Network Solution is monitoring it.

The operator displays a map showing the location of the access points closest to each rogue access point. These access points are classified as:

- Known or Acknowledged rogue access points (no further action)
- Alert rogue access points (watch for and notify when active)
- Contained rogue access points

This built-in detection, tagging, monitoring, and containment capability enables system administrators to take appropriate action:

- Locate rogue access points.
- Receive new rogue access point notifications, eliminating hallway scans.
- Monitor unknown rogue access points until they are eliminated or acknowledged.
- Determine the closest authorized access point, making directed scans faster and more effective.
- Contain rogue access points by sending their clients deauthenticate and disassociate messages from one to four access points. This containment can be done for individual rogue access points by MAC address or can be mandated for all rogue access points connected to the enterprise subnet.
- Tag rogue access points:
  - Acknowledge rogue access points when they are outside of the LAN and do not compromise the LAN or WLAN security
  - Accept rogue access points when they do not compromise the LAN or WLAN security
  - Tag rogue access points as unknown until they are eliminated or acknowledged
- Tag rogue access points as contained and discourage clients from associating with the rogue access points by having between one and four access points transmit deauthenticate and disassociate messages to all rogue access point clients. This function applies to all active channels on the same rogue access point.

#### Related Topics

- [Detecting Access Points](#)
- [Monitoring Rogue Alarm Events](#)

## Detecting Access Points

Use the Detecting Access Points feature to view information about the Cisco Lightweight APs that are detecting a rogue access point.

To access the Rogue AP Alarms details page, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** To display the Rogue AP Alarms page, do one of the following:
- Perform a search for rogue APs.
  - Navigate to **Dashboard > Wireless > Security**. This dashboard displays all the rogue access points detected in the past hour and the past 24 hours. Click the rogue access point number to view the rogue access point alarms.
  - Click the **Malicious AP** number link in the Alarm Summary box.
- Step 2** In the Rogue AP Alarms page, click the Rogue MAC Address for the applicable rogue access point. The Rogue AP Alarms details page appears.
- Step 3** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Detecting APs**.
- Step 4** Click **Go**.

Click a list item to display data about that item.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Monitoring Rogue Access Point Location, Tagging, and Containment](#)
- [Monitoring Rogue Alarm Events](#)

## Monitoring Rogue Alarm Events

The Events page enables you to review information about rogue alarm events. Prime Infrastructure generates an event when a rogue access point is detected or if you make manual changes to a rogue access point (such as changing its state). The Rogue AP Events list page displays all rogue access point events.

To access the Rogue AP Events list page, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Do one of the following:
- Perform a search for rogue access point events using the Advanced Search feature of Prime Infrastructure.
  - In the Rogue AP Alarms details page, click **Event History** link.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Detecting Access Points](#)
- [Viewing Rogue AP Event Details](#)
- [Rogue AP Event History Details Page](#)

## Viewing Rogue AP Event Details

To view rogue access point event details, in the Rogue AP Events list page, click the **Rogue MAC Address** link.

**Related Topics**

- [Monitoring Rogue Alarm Events](#)
- [Monitoring Ad hoc Rogue Events](#)
- [Rogue AP Event History Details Page](#)
- [Selecting Commands for Rogue AP Alarms](#)

## Monitoring Ad hoc Rogue Events

The Events page enables you to review information about ad hoc rogue events. Prime Infrastructure generates an event when an ad hoc rogue is detected or if you make manual changes to an ad hoc rogue (such as changing its state). The Adhoc Rogue Events list page displays all ad hoc rogue events.

To access the Rogue AP Events list page, either perform a search for ad hoc rogues events using the Advanced Search feature of Prime Infrastructure or in the Adhoc Rogue Alarms details page, click **Event History** from the **Select a Command** drop-down list.

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing Rogue AP Event Details](#)
- [Viewing Ad hoc Rogue Event Details](#)

## Viewing Ad hoc Rogue Event Details

To view rogue access point event details, in the Rogue AP Events list page, click the **Rogue MAC Address** link.

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing Rogue AP Event Details](#)
- [Monitoring Ad hoc Rogue Events](#)
- [Rogue AP Event History Details Page](#)

## Troubleshooting Unjoined Access Points


When a lightweight access point initially starts up, it attempts to discover and join a WLAN controller. After joining the wireless controller, the access point updates its software image if needed and receives all the configuration details for the device and network. After successfully joining the wireless controller, the access point can be discovered and managed by Prime Infrastructure. Until the access point successfully joins a wireless controller the access point cannot be managed by Prime Infrastructure and does not contain the proper configuration settings to allow client access.

Prime Infrastructure provides you with a tool that diagnoses why an access point cannot join a controller and lists corrective actions.

The Unjoined AP page displays a list of access points that have not joined any wireless controllers. All gathered information about the unjoined access point is included in the page. This includes name, MAC address, IP address, controller name and IP address, switch and port that the access point is attached to, and any join failure reason if known.

To troubleshoot unjoined access points, do the following:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Unjoined Access Points**. The Unjoined APs page appears containing a list of access points that have not been able to join a wireless controller.
- Step 2** Select the access point that you wish to diagnose, then click **Troubleshoot**.
- An analysis is run on the access point to determine the reason why the access point was not able to join a wireless controller. After performing the analysis, the Unjoined APs page displays the results. The middle pane, you can view what the problem is. It will also list error messages and controller log information.
- Step 3** Select a controller.
- If the access point has tried to join multiple wireless controllers and has been unsuccessful, the controllers are listed in the left pane.

- Step 4** Perform one of the recommended actions from the list of recommendations for solving the problems listed in the right pane.
- Step 5** Run RTTS through the Unjoined AP page to further diagnose a problem. This allows you to see the debug messages from all the wireless controllers that the access point tried to join at one time.
- To run RTTS, click the RTTS icon (  ) located to the right of the table. The debug messages appear in the table. You can then examine the messages to see if you can determine a cause for the access point not being able to join the controllers.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Monitoring Rogue Access Points](#)
- [Monitoring Ad hoc Rogues](#)

## Monitoring Spectrum Experts

A Spectrum Expert client acts as a remote interference sensor and sends dynamic interference data to Prime Infrastructure. This feature allows Prime Infrastructure to collect, archive and monitor detailed interferer and air quality data from Spectrum Experts in the network.

To access the Monitor Spectrum Experts page, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Spectrum Experts**.
- From the left sidebar menu, you can access the Spectrum Experts Summary page.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Field Reference guide for Spectrum Experts Summary](#)
- [Field Reference guide for Interferer's Summary](#)
- [Field Reference guide for Spectrum Experts Details](#)
- [Searching Interferers](#)

## Monitoring WiFi TDOA Receivers

The WiFi TDOA receiver is an external system designed to receive signals transmitted from a tagged, tracked asset. These signals are then forwarded to the mobility services engine to aid in the location calculation of the asset.

To view WiFi TDOA receiver information:

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > WiFi TDOA Receivers**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Searching WiFi TDOA Receivers](#)

## Searching WiFi TDOA Receivers

To refine the search criteria for WiFi TDOA receivers:

- 
- Step 1** Click the **Advanced Search** in the Prime Infrastructure user interface.
- Step 2** Choose **WiFi TDOA Receiver** from the Search Category drop-down list.
- To initiate a search for a Wi-Fi TDOA receiver by its MAC address, choose **MAC Address** from the Search drop-down list and enter the MAC address of the Wi-Fi TDOA receiver in the available text box, and click **Search**.
  - To initiate a search for a Wi-Fi TDOA receiver by its name, choose **WiFi TDOA Receivers** from the Search by drop-down list and enter the name of the Wi-Fi TDOA receiver in the available text box, and click **Search**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Monitoring WiFi TDOA Receivers](#)

## Monitoring Media Streams

To view all the media streams configured across controllers:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Media Streams**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Viewing Media Stream Details](#)

## Viewing Media Stream Details

To view media stream details:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Media Streams**.
- Step 2** Click the **Stream Name** link.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Monitoring Media Streams](#)
- [Monitoring WiFi TDOA Receivers](#)

# Radio Resource Management

The Radio Resource Management (RRM), built into the Cisco Unified Wireless Network, monitors and dynamically corrects performance issues found in the RF environment. Prime Infrastructure receives traps whenever a change in the transmit power in the access point or channel occurred. These trap events or similar events such as RF regrouping are logged into Prime Infrastructure and are maintained by the event dispatcher.

RRM automatically detects and configures new controllers and lightweight access points as they are added to the network. It automatically adjusts associated and nearby lightweight access points to optimize coverage and capacity. Lightweight access points can simultaneously scan all valid 802.11b/g channels for the country of operation as well as for channels available in other locations. The access points go off-channel for a period not greater than 60 ms to monitor these channels for noise and interference. Packets collected during this time are analyzed to detect rogue access points, rogue clients, ad-hoc clients, and interfering access points.

The following notifications are sent to RRM dashboard:

- Channel change notifications are sent when a channel change occurs. Channel change depends on the Dynamic Channel Assignment (DCA) configuration.
- Transmission power change notifications are sent when transmission power changes occur. The reason code is factored and equated to one irrespective of the number of reasons for the event to occur.
- RF grouping notifications are sent when there is a RF grouping content change and automatic grouping is enabled.

## Related Topics

- [Viewing the RRM Dashboard](#)

## Viewing the RRM Dashboard

To view the RRM dashboard information:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Radio Resource Management**.
- 

## Related Topics

- [Radio Resource Management](#)

## Monitoring Access Point Alarms

To monitor the Access Point (AP) alarms on your network:

- 
- Step 1** Perform an advanced search for **AP** alarms.

The **Search Results** page contains the following information for AP alarms. You can select the check box next to the alarm and modify the required fields in the **Alarm Browser** toolbar.

- Severity

- Failure Source
- Owner
- Time
- Message
- Category
- Condition
- Acknowledged

**Step 2** Select the check box next to the alarm and modify the required fields in the **Alarm Browser** toolbar.

---

## Monitoring Air Quality Alarms

To monitor air quality alarms on your network:

---

**Step 1** Perform an advanced search for **Performance** alarms.

The **Search Results** page contains the following information for air quality alarms.

- Severity
- Failure Source
- Owner
- Time
- Message
- Category
- Condition
- Acknowledged

**Step 2** Select the check box next to the alarm and modify the required fields in the **Alarm Browser** toolbar.

---

## Monitoring CleanAir Security Alarms

To monitor CleanAir security alarms:

---

**Step 1** Perform an advanced search for **Security** alarms.

The **Search Results** page contains the following information for CleanAir Security alarms.

- Severity
- Failure Source
- Owner
- Date/Time
- Message



- Acknowledged
- Step 2** Select the check box next to the alarm and modify the required fields in the **Alarm Browser** toolbar.
- 

## Monitoring Cisco Adaptive wIPS Alarms

Alarms from Cisco Adaptive wIPS DoS (denial of service) and security penetration attacks are classified as security alarms.

To view a list of wIPS DoS and security penetration attack alarms:

- Step 1** Perform an advanced search for **wIPS DoS** alarms.
- The **Search Results** page contains the following information.
- Severity
  - Failure Object
  - Date/Time
  - Message
  - Acknowledged
  - Category
  - Condition
  - When there are multiple alarm pages, the page numbers are displayed at the top of the page with a scroll arrow on each side. Use this to view additional alarms.
- Step 2** Select the check box next to the alarm and modify the required fields in the **Alarm Browser** toolbar.
- 

## Monitoring Cisco Adaptive wIPS Alarm Details

To monitor Cisco Adaptive wIPS alarm details:

Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms and Events > failure object** to view details of the selected Cisco wIPS alarm. The following Alarm details are provided for Cisco Adaptive wIPS alarms:

- General
  - Detected By wIPS AP—The access point that detected the alarm.
  - wIPS AP IP Address—The IP address of the wIPS access point.
  - Owner—Name of person to which this alarm is assigned or left blank.
  - Acknowledged—Displays whether or not the alarm is acknowledged by the user.
  - Category—For wIPS, the alarm category is Security.
  - Created—Month, day, year, hour, minute, second, AM or PM that the alarm was created.
  - Modified—Month, day, year, hour, minute, second, AM or PM that the alarm was last modified.
  - Generated By—Indicates how the alarm event was generated (either NMS or from a trap).

NMS (Network Management System - Prime Infrastructure)—Generated through polling. Prime Infrastructure periodically polls the controllers and generates events. Prime Infrastructure generates events when the traps are disabled or when the traps are lost for those events.

Trap—Generated by the controller. Prime Infrastructure process these traps and raises corresponding events for them.

- Severity—Level of severity including critical, major, info, warning, and clear.
  - Last Disappeared—The date and time that the potential attack last disappeared.
  - Channel—The channel on which the potential attack occurred.
  - Attacker Client/AP MAC—The MAC address of the client or access point that initiated the attack.
  - Attacker Client/AP IP Address—The IP address of the client or access point that initiated the attack.
  - Target Client/AP IP Address—The IP address of the client or access point targeted by the attacker.
  - Controller IP Address—The IP address of the controller to which the access point is associated.
  - MSE—The IP address of the associated mobility services engine.
  - Controller MAC address—The MAC address of the controller to which the access point is associated.
  - wIPS access point MAC address
  - Forensic File
  - Event History—Takes you to the Monitoring Alarms page to view all events for this alarm.
  - Annotations—Displays any annotations that you have entered.
  - Messages—Displays information about the alarm.
  - Audit Report—Click to view configuration audit alarms details. This report is only available for Configuration Audit alarms.
- Configuration audit alarms are generated when audit discrepancies are enforced on configuration groups.
- Rogue Clients—If the failure object is a rogue access point, information about rogue clients is displayed.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Monitoring Cisco Adaptive wIPS Alarms](#)

## Monitoring Failure Objects

To monitor failure objects, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms and Events**, then click the **Events** tab.
  - Step 2** Click the expand icon to the left of the Description column. Depending on the type of event you selected, the associated details vary.

- General Info
    - Failure Source—Indicates the source of the event (including name and/or MAC address).
    - Category—Type of alarm such as Security or AP.
    - Generated—Date and time that the event was generated.
    - Generated By—Indicates how the alarm event was generated (either NMS or from a trap).
      - NMS (Network Management System - Prime Infrastructure)—Generated through polling. Prime Infrastructure periodically polls the controllers and generates events. Prime Infrastructure generates events when the traps are disabled or when the traps are lost for those events.
      - Trap—Generated by the controller. Prime Infrastructure process these traps and raises corresponding events for them.
    - Device IP Address—IP address of the alarm-generating device.
    - Severity—Level of severity including critical, major, info, warning, and clear.
  - Messages—Message explaining why the event occurred.
- 

## Monitoring Events for Rogue Access Points

To monitor events for rogue access points:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms and Events**, then click the **Events** tab.
  - Step 2** Use the Quick Filter or Advanced Filter feature to monitor the Rogue APs.
  - Step 3** Click the expand icon to view alarm events for a rogue access point radio.

The following fields appear:

General

- Rogue MAC Address
- Vendor
- On Network—Indicates how the rogue detection occurred.
  - Controller—The controller detected the rogue (Yes or No).
  - Switch Port Trace—The rogue was detected by a switch port trace. Indicated by one of the following: Traced but not found, Traced and found, Not traced.
- Owner—Name of person to which this alarm is assigned, or (blank).
- State—State of this radio relative to the network or Port. Rogue access point radios appear as “Alert” when first scanned by the Port, or as “Pending” when operating system identification is still underway.
- SSID—Service Set Identifier being broadcast by the rogue access point radio. (Blank if SSID is not broadcast.)
- Containment Level—An access point which is being contained is either unable to provide service at all, or provides exceedingly slow service. There is a level associated with the containment activity which indicates how many Cisco 1000 series lightweight access points to use in containing the

threat. This service must be initiated and halted by the administrator. Containment Type - Contained if the rogue access point clients have been contained at Level 1 through Level 4 under Update Status, otherwise Unassigned.

- Channel—Indicates the band at which the ad hoc rogue is broadcasting.
- Radio Type—Lists all radio types applicable to this rogue access point.
- Created—Date and time that the event occurred.
- Generated By—Indicates how the alarm event was generated (either NMS or from a trap).
  - NMS (Network Management System - Prime Infrastructure)—Generated through polling. Prime Infrastructure periodically polls the controllers and generates events. Prime Infrastructure generates events when the traps are disabled or when the traps are lost for those events.
  - Trap—Generated by the controller. Prime Infrastructure process these traps and raises corresponding events for them.
- Device IP Address—IP address of the alarm-generating device.
- Severity—Level of severity, Critical, Major, Minor, Warning, and Clear, Info.

Message—Displays descriptive information about the alarm.

Help—Displays information about the alarm.

#### Related Topics

- [Monitoring Rogue Access Points](#)

## Monitoring Events for Ad hoc Rogues

To monitor events for ad hoc rogues:

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms and Events**, then click the **Events** tab.
- Step 2** Use the Quick Filter or Advanced Filter feature to monitor the events for Ad hoc Rogue APs.
- Step 3** Click the expand icon to view alarm events for an ad hoc rogue access point. The following fields are displayed:

#### General

- Rogue MAC Address
- Vendor
- On Network—Indicates how the rogue detection occurred.
  - Controller—The controller detected the rogue (Yes or No).
  - Switch Port Trace—The rogue was detected by a switch port trace. Indicated by one of the following: Traced but not found, Traced and found, Not traced.
- Owner—Name of person to which this alarm is assigned, or (blank).
- State—State of this radio relative to the network or Port. Rogue access point radios appear as “Alert” when first scanned by the Port, or as “Pending” when operating system identification is still underway.

- SSID—Service Set Identifier being broadcast by the rogue access point radio. (Blank if SSID is not broadcast.)
- Containment Level—An access point which is being contained is either unable to provide service at all, or provides exceedingly slow service. There is a level associated with the containment activity which indicates how many Cisco 1000 series lightweight access points to use in containing the threat. This service must be initiated and halted by the administrator. Containment Type - Contained if the rogue access point clients have been contained at Level 1 through Level 4 under Update Status, otherwise Unassigned.
- Channel—Indicates the band at which the ad hoc rogue is broadcasting.
- Created—Date and time that the event occurred.
- Generated By—Indicates how the alarm event was generated (either NMS or from a trap).
  - NMS (Network Management System - Prime Infrastructure)—Generated through polling. Prime Infrastructure periodically polls the controllers and generates events. Prime Infrastructure generates events when the traps are disabled or when the traps are lost for those events.
  - Trap—Generated by the controller. Prime Infrastructure process these traps and raises corresponding events for them.
  - Device IP Address—IP address of the alarm-generating device.
- Severity—Level of severity, Critical, Major, Minor, Warning, and Clear, Info.

Message—Displays descriptive information about the alarm.

**Step 4** Help—Displays information about the alarm.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Monitoring Rogue Access Points](#)

## Monitoring Cisco Adaptive wIPS Events

To monitor Cisco adaptive wIPS events:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms and Events**, then click the Events tab.
- Step 2** Use the Quick Filter or Advanced Filter feature to narrow down the search results to monitor wIPS events. One or more events might generate an abnormal state or alarm. The alarm can be cleared, but the event remains.
- 

## Monitoring CleanAir Air Quality Events

To view the events generated on CleanAir air quality of the wireless network:

- 
- Step 1** Perform an advanced search for **Performance** event.
- The **Search Results** page contains the following CleanAir air quality events information:

- Severity—Indicates the severity of the alarm.
  - Failure Source—Device that generated the alarm.
  - Date/Time—The time at which the alarm was generated.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing Air Quality Event Details](#)

### Viewing Air Quality Event Details

To view air quality event details:

- 
- Step 1** From the Air Quality Events page, click an expand icon adjacent to **Severity** column to access the alarm details page.
- Step 2** The air quality event page displays the following information:
- Failure Source—Device that generated the alarm.
  - Category—The category this event comes under. In this case, Performance.
  - Created—The time stamp at which the event was generated.
  - Generated by—The device that generated the event.
  - Device IP Address—The IP address of the device that generated the event.
  - Severity—The severity of the event.
  - Alarm Details—A link to the related alarms associated with this event. Click the link to learn more about the alarm details.
  - Message—Describes the air quality index on this access point.
- 

## Monitoring Interferer Security Risk Events

To monitor interferer security risk events:

- 
- Step 1** To view the security risk event generated on your wireless network, perform an advanced search for **Security** event.
- The **Search Results** page contains the following interferer security events information:
- Severity—Indicates the severity of the alarm.
  - Failure Source—Device that generated the alarm.
  - Date/Time—The time at which the alarm was generated.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing Interferer Security Risk Event Details](#)

## Viewing Interferer Security Risk Event Details

To view interferer security event details:

- 
- Step 1** In the Interferer Security Event details page, click an expand icon adjacent to **Severity** column to access the alarm details page.
- Step 2** The air quality event page displays the following information:
- Failure Source—Device that generated the alarm.
  - Category—The category this event comes under. In this case, Security.
  - Created—The time stamp at which the event was generated.
  - Generated by—The device that generated the event.
  - Device IP Address—The IP address of the device that generated the event.
  - Severity—The severity of the event.
  - Alarm Details—A link to the related alarms associated with this event. Click the link to know more about the alarm details.
  - Message—Describes the interferer device affecting the access point.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Monitoring Interferer Security Risk Events](#)

## Monitoring Health Monitor Events

To view the health monitor events:

- 
- Step 1** Perform an advanced search for **Prime Infrastructure** event.
- The **Search Results** page contains the following health monitor events related information:
- Severity—Indicates the severity of the alarm.
  - Failure Source—Device that generated the alarm.
  - Date/Time—The time at which the alarm was generated.
  - Message—Describes the health details.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Viewing Health Monitor Event Details](#)

## Viewing Health Monitor Event Details

To view health monitor event details:

- 
- Step 1** In the Health Monitor Events page, click an expand icon adjacent to **Severity** column to access the alarm details page.

**Step 2** The Health Monitor Events page displays the following information:

- Failure Source—Device that generated the alarm.
  - Category—The category this event comes under.
  - Created—The time stamp at which the event was generated.
  - Generated by—The device that generated the event.
  - Device IP Address—The IP address of the device that generated the event.
  - Severity—The severity of the event.
  - Alarm Details—A link to the related alarms associated with this event. Click the link to know more about the alarm details.
  - Message—Describes the event through a message.
- 

#### **Related Topics**

- [Monitoring Health Monitor Events](#)





## Creating Monitoring Policies and Thresholds

Prime Infrastructure uses monitoring policies to monitor devices against the thresholds you specify. When the thresholds that you specify are reached, Prime Infrastructure issues an alarm. The alarms warn you of changing conditions before the issues impact operations.

By default, Prime Infrastructure polls:

- Device health metrics on supported routers, switches and hubs. Storage devices and UCS series devices are not monitored by the default health policy. See [Modifying Default Monitoring Policies](#).
- Port group health metrics.
- Interface health metrics on WAN interface groups, AVC, and UCS.



**Note** Prime Infrastructure uses monitoring policies only for Wired devices.

You can also enable other Prime Infrastructure monitoring policies or create a custom MIB polling policy (see [Monitoring Third-Party Devices By Polling MIBs](#)).

## Default Monitoring Policies

Prime Infrastructure polls SNMP objects to gather monitoring information for the following health monitoring policies under **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Monitoring Policies > Automonitoring**:

- Device Parameters—[Table 10-1](#) describes the device health parameters that are polled.
- Interface Parameters—[Table 10-2](#) describes the interface parameters that are polled for:
  - Trunk and Link Ports
  - WAN Interfaces

For the following monitoring policies that provide assurance information, data is collected through NetFlow or NAMs:

- Application Response Time
- NAM Health
- Traffic Analysis
- Voice Video Data
- Voice Video Signaling

**Table 10-1** Device Parameter Automonitoring Metrics

Metric	Devices Polled	MIB	MIB Objects Included
Device Availability	All SNMP devices	SNMPv2-MIB	sysUpTime
CPU Utilization	Cisco IOS devices, All Supported Nexus devices, Cisco UCS devices	CISCO-PROCESS-MIB	cpmCPUTotalPhysicalIndex cpmCPUTotal1minRev
Memory Pool Utilization	Cisco IOS devices	CISCO-MEMORY-POOL-MIB ciscoMemoryPoolUsed / (ciscoMemoryPoolUsed + ciscoMemoryPoolFree) * 100	ciscoMemoryPoolName ciscoMemoryPoolType ciscoMemoryPoolUsed ciscoMemoryPoolFree
	All supported Cisco Nexus devices, Cisco UCS devices	CISCO-MEMORY-POOL-MIB (cempMemPoolUsed / (cempMemPoolUsed + cempMemPoolFree)) * 100	
Environment Temp <sup>1</sup>	ASR, All Supported Nexus devices, Cisco UCS devices	CISCO-ENVMON-MIB	entSensorValue
	Catalyst 2000, 3000, 4000, 6000, ISR	CISCO-ENVMON-MIB	ciscoEnvMonTemperatureStatusValue

1. For stacked switch devices, the Environment Temp displays the temperature of each stacked instance.

**Table 10-2** Interface Parameter Automonitoring Metrics

Metric	Devices Polled	MIB	MIB Objects Included
Interface Availability	Cisco IOS devices, All Supported Nexus devices	IF-MIB	ifOperStatus ifOutOctets ifHighSpeed ifInOctets ifInErrors ifOutErrors ifInDiscards ifOutDiscards
Input Utilization	Cisco IOS devices	IF-MIB, Old-CISCO-Interface-MIB	ifHCInBroadcastPkts, ifHCInMulticastPkts, ifInErrors, ifInDiscards, ifInUnknownProtos ifHCInBroadcastPkts, ifHCInMulticastPkts

**Table 10-2** Interface Parameter Automonitoring Metrics (continued) (continued)

Metric	Devices Polled	MIB	MIB Objects Included
Output Utilization	Cisco IOS devices	IF-MIB, Old-CISCO-Interface-MIB	ifHCInBroadcastPkts, ifHCInMulticastPkts, ifHCInUcastPkts, ifInDiscards, ifInUnknownProtos, locIfInputQueueDrops
Percent Drop per QoS Class	Cisco IOS devices	IF-MIB, Old-CISCO-Interface-MIB	ifHCOutBroadcastPkts, ifHCOutMulticastPkts, ifHCOutUcastPkts, ifOutDiscards, ifOutUnknownProtos, locIfOutputQueueDrops

**Table 10-3** Class-Based, QoS, Health-Monitoring Metrics

Metric	Devices Polled	MIB	MIB Objects Included
QoS calculation	Cisco IOS devices	CISCO-CLASS-BASED-QOS-MIB	cbQosCMDropByte64 cbQosCMPostPolicyByte64 cbQosCMPrePolicyByte64
Interface Inbound Errors	Cisco IOS devices	IF-MIB	ifInErrors
Interface Outbound Errors	Cisco IOS devices	IF-MIB	ifOutErrors
Interface Inbound Discards	Cisco IOS devices	IF-MIB	ifInDiscards
Interface Outbound Discards	Cisco IOS devices	IF-MIB	ifOutDiscards

## Modifying Default Monitoring Policies

Prime Infrastructure monitoring policies monitor network device metrics and alert you of changing conditions before the issues impact their operation. By default, Prime Infrastructure polls device health metrics on supported routers, switches and hubs only, and interface health metrics on WAN interface groups. It is not polled on storage devices, and UCS series devices. If a the threshold is violated three times, Prime Infrastructure generates a critical alarm, which is displayed on the **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms and Events** page.

To modify or disable the polling frequency and the threshold parameters, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Monitoring Policies > Automonitoring**.
  - Step 2** Select **Device Health**, then modify the polling frequencies and thresholds as desired.
  - Step 3** Click:
    - **Save and Activate** to save and activate the policy immediately on the selected devices.
    - **Save and Close** to save the policy and activate it at a later time.
-

## Creating New Monitoring Policies

Prime Infrastructure monitoring policies monitor network device metrics and alert you of changing conditions before the issues impact their operation.

To create a new monitoring policy, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Monitoring Policies > My Policies**.
  - Step 2** Click **Add**.
  - Step 3** Select a monitoring policy from the Policy Types menu.
  - Step 4** Enter a name for the new policy.
  - Step 5** Under Parameters and Thresholds, specify the threshold values for which you want Prime Infrastructure to issue an alarm when they are reached.
  - Step 6** Click:
    - **Save and Activate** to save and activate the policy immediately on the selected devices.
    - **Save and Close** to save the policy and activate it at a later time.
- 

## Monitoring Third-Party Devices By Polling MIBs

You can design custom MIB polling policies to monitor third-party or Cisco devices and device groups. You can also create custom MIB policies to monitor device features for which Prime Infrastructure doesn't provide default policies. Using this feature, you can:

- Upload the SNMP MIB for the device type, then choose devices and attributes to poll and the polling frequency.
- Upload a single MIB definition file or a group of MIBs with their dependencies as a ZIP file.




---

**Note** Ensure that you upload all the dependencies of the MIB, before uploading the MIB. You can also upload the MIB along with its dependencies in a ZIP file.

---

- Display the results as a line chart or a table.

This feature allows you to easily repeat polling for the same devices and attributes and customize the way Cisco devices are polled using SNMP.

You can create a maximum of 25 custom MIB polling policies. There is no limitation in the number of MIB files uploaded.

To create custom MIB polling policies, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Monitoring Policies > My Policies**, then click **Add**.
  - Step 2** From the Policy Types menu, select **Custom MIB Polling**.
  - Step 3** Enter a name for the policy.
  - Step 4** Under the MIB Selection tab, specify the polling frequency and enter the MIB information.

- If Prime Infrastructure doesn't have the specific MIB you want to monitor, download the MIBs you want to monitor from the following URL:  
<http://tools.cisco.com/Support/SNMP/do/BrowseMIB.do?local=en&step=2>
- To upload a MIB, specify a filename extension only if you are uploading a ZIP file. Regardless of the device, the extensions .ZIP, .MIB and .MY are allowed.
- If you are uploading a ZIP file, ensure that all dependent MIB files are either included in the ZIP or already present in the system.
- Ensure your upload file and the MIB definition have the same name (for example: Do not rename the ARUBA-MGMT-MIB definition file to ARUBA\_MGMT). If you are uploading a ZIP file, you may name it as you please, but the MIB files packaged inside it must also follow this convention (for example: MyMibs.zip is acceptable, as long as all MIB files in the ZIP match their MIB names).

- Step 5** To test the policy you created on a device before activating it, click the **Test** tab and select a device on which to test the new policy.
- Step 6** Click **Save and Activate** to immediately activate the policy on the devices specified.
- Step 7** To view the MIB polling data, create a generic dashlet (see [Creating Generic Dashlets](#)) using the name of the policy that you created.

To view the SNMP polling data for ASR devices, you should use the **show platform hardware qfp active datapath utilization | inc Processing** command for CPU utilization and **show platform hardware qfp active infrastructure exmem statistics | sec DRAM** command for memory utilization.

---

## Example: Monitoring IP SLA

You can create a monitoring policy to view IP service levels for network-based applications and services. There are approximately seven IP SLA-related MIBs. In this example, the video MIB only is monitored.

- Step 1** Download the IP SLA video MIB from the following URL:  
<http://tools.cisco.com/Support/SNMP/do/BrowseMIB.do?local=en&step=2>
- Step 2** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Policies > My Policies**, then click **Add**.
- Step 3** Click **Custom MIB Polling**.
- Step 4** Enter a name for the policy.
- Step 5** Under the MIB Selection tab, click **Upload MIB** and navigate to the MIB that you uploaded in Step 1.
- Step 6** From the Tables pulldown menu, select a table, then select the specific metrics to monitor.
- Step 7** To test the policy you created on a device before activating it, click the **Test** tab and select a device on which to test the new policy.
- Step 8** Select the devices for which you want to monitor IP SLA metrics.
- Step 9** Click **Save and Activate** to immediately activate the policy on the devices specified.
- Step 10** To monitor this information from a dashboard, you need to create a generic dashlet. See [Creating Generic Dashlets](#) for more information.
-

## Polled Data in Dashlets and Reports

When viewing polled data from devices, consider the following scenario:

- Device 1 data is polled from the last 6 hours.
- Device 2 data is polled from the last 2 days.

When you filter dashlets or reports to show data from the past 2 days, only the data from Device 2 is displayed.

If you filter dashlets and reports by devices and time frame, then data for both devices is displayed.



# Monitoring Alarms

---

An alarm is a Cisco Prime Infrastructure response to one or more related events. If an event is considered of high enough severity (critical, major, minor, or warning), Prime Infrastructure raises an alarm until the condition no longer occurs.

- [What Is an Event?](#)
- [What Is an Alarm?](#)
- [Defining Alarm Thresholds](#)
- [Where to Find Alarms](#)
- [Display Options](#)
- [Changing Alarm Status](#)
- [Changing Alarm and Event Options](#)
- [Configuring Alarm Severity Levels](#)
- [Customizing Alarms and Events For Traps](#)
- [Getting Help for Alarms](#)
- [Where to Find Syslogs](#)

## What Is an Event?

An event is an occurrence or detection of some condition in or around the network. An event is a distinct incident that occurs at a specific point in time. Examples of events include:

- Port status change
- Device reset
- Device becomes unreachable by the management station

An event can also result from:

- A fault that is an error, failure, or exceptional condition in the network. For example, when a device becomes unreachable, an unreachable event is triggered.
- A fault clearing. For example, when a device state changes from unreachable to reachable, a reachable event is triggered.

One or more events may generate an abnormal state or alarm. The alarm can be cleared, but the event remains. You can view the list of events using the Event Browser.

Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms & Events**, then click **Events** to access the Events Browser page.

### Event Creation

Prime Infrastructure maintains an event catalog and decides how and when an event is created and whether to associate an alarm with the event. Multiple events can be associated with the same alarm.

Prime Infrastructure discovers events in the following ways:

- By receiving notification events and analyzing them; for example, syslog and traps.
- By automatically polling devices and discovering changes; for example, device unreachable.
- By receiving events when a significant change occurs on the Prime Infrastructure server; for example, rebooting the server.

Incoming event notifications (traps and syslogs) are identified by matching the event data to predefined patterns. A trap or syslog is considered supported by Prime Infrastructure if it has matching patterns and can be properly identified. If the event data does not match predefined patterns, the event is considered unsupported, and it is dropped.

Faults are discovered by Prime Infrastructure through polling, traps, or syslog messages. Prime Infrastructure maintains the context of all faults and ensures that duplicate events or alarms are not maintained in the Prime Infrastructure database.

The following table provides examples of when Prime Infrastructure creates an event.

Time	Event	Prime Infrastructure Behavior
10:00AM PDT December 1, 2014	Device A becomes unreachable.	Creates a new unreachable event on device A.
10:30AM PDT December 1, 2014	Device A continues to be unreachable.	No change in the event status.
10:45AM PDT December 1, 2014	Device A becomes reachable.	Creates a new reachable event on device A.
11:00AM PDT December 1, 2014	Device A stays reachable.	No change in the event status.
12:00AM PDT December 1, 2014	Device A becomes unreachable.	Creates a new unreachable event on device A.

## Recurring Alarms and Events

To reduce the amount of unnecessary alarms and events, Prime Infrastructure detects the underlying causes of an event, and then modifies when it issues alarms and events if the devices have any of the problems. For example, for module or link faults, if a module is down, Prime Infrastructure creates one Module Down alarm only, and associates all of the interfaces' link down events to the Module Down alarm. When the module state is restored, Prime Infrastructure clears the module alarm and all interface messages are associated to the cleared alarm.

When several link-up and link-down traps are received for the same interface, within a short time period, then Prime Infrastructure detects those traps and creates a Flapping event.

## What Is an Alarm?

An alarm is a Prime Infrastructure response to one or more related events. If an event is considered of high enough severity (critical, major, minor, or warning), Prime Infrastructure raises an alarm until the resulting condition no longer occurs.



One or more events can result in a single alarm being raised. An alarm is created in the following sequence:

1. A notification is triggered when a fault occurs in the network.
2. An event is created, based on the notification.
3. An alarm is created after verifying that there is no active alarm corresponding to this event.

An alarm is associated with two types of events:

- Active Events: Events that have not been cleared. An alarm remains in this state until the fault is resolved in a network.
- Historical Events: Events that have been cleared. An event state changes to a historical event when the fault is resolved in a network.

A cleared alarm represents the end of an alarm's lifecycle. A cleared alarm can be revived if the same fault recurs within a preset period of time. The default is 5 minutes.

### Event and Alarm Association

Prime Infrastructure maintains a catalog of events and alarms. This catalog contains a list of events and alarms managed by Prime Infrastructure, and the relationship among the events and alarms. Events of different types can be attached to the same alarm type.

When a notification is received:

1. Prime Infrastructure compares an incoming notification against the event and alarm catalog.
2. Prime Infrastructure decides whether to raise an event.
3. If an event is raised, Prime Infrastructure decides if the event triggers a new alarm or if it is associated with an existing alarm.

A new event is associated with an existing alarm if the new event is of the same type and occurs on the same source.

### Alarm Status

Table 11-1 provides alarm status descriptions.

**Table 11-1 Alarm Status Descriptions**

Alarm Status	Description
Not acknowledged	When an event triggers a new alarm or a new event is associated with an existing alarm.
Acknowledged	When you acknowledge an alarm, the status changes from Not acknowledged to Acknowledged.
Cleared	<p>A cleared alarm can involve any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto-clear from the device—The fault is resolved on the device and an event is triggered for the device. For example, a device-reachable event clears a device-unreachable event. This, in turn, clears the device-unreachable alarm.</li> <li>• Manual-clear from Prime Infrastructure users—You can manually clear an active alarm without resolving the fault in the network. A clearing event is triggered and the alarm is cleared.</li> <li>• If a fault continues to exist in the network, a new event and alarm are created subsequently, based on event notification (traps/syslogs).</li> </ul>

### Event and Alarm Severity

Each event has an assigned severity. Events fall broadly into the following severity categories, each with an associated color in Prime Infrastructure:

- Flagging (indicates a fault)—Critical (red), Major (orange), Minor (yellow), or Warning (sky blue).
- Informational—Info (blue). Some informational events clear flagging events.

For example, a Link Down event might be assigned Critical severity, while its corresponding Link Up event will be Cleared severity.

In a sequence of events, the event with the highest severity determines the severity of the alarm.

## Defining Alarm Thresholds

Use monitoring templates to define thresholds. When the thresholds that you specify are reached, Prime Infrastructure issues an alarm. See [Creating Monitoring Policies and Thresholds](#) for information about defining thresholds.

## Where to Find Alarms

[Table 11-2](#) lists where you can find alarms.

**Table 11-2** *Where to Find Alarms*

Location in GUI	Description
<b>Monitor &gt; Monitoring Tools &gt; Alarms &amp; Events</b>	Displays a new page listing all alarms with details such as severity, status, failure source, time stamp, owner, category, and condition. You can change the status of alarms and assign, annotate, delete, specify email notifications from this page and use the troubleshoot functionality to devices from Prime Infrastructure.  If you enable Alarm Badging, Prime Infrastructure displays severity icons next to the device groups. See <a href="#">Displaying Alarm Icons</a> .
Toolbar on top right of the Prime Infrastructure window	The red box on the top right of the Prime Infrastructure window displays the total number of critical alarms currently detected by Prime Infrastructure. You can click on the box to open the Alarm Summary. See <a href="#">Customizing the Alarm Summary</a> .
From device 360° view	On the <b>Alarms</b> tab, when you hover the mouse over the Failure Source field, the crosshair icon appears. Click the icon to see the 360° view of the device. Or, on the Alarm browser, when you hover the mouse over the Failure Source field, the crosshair icon appears. Click the icon to see the 360° view of the device.
<b>Dashboard &gt; Overview &gt; Incidents</b>	Displays dashlets that contain alarm summary information, top n sites with the most alarms, top n alarm types, device reachability status, syslog watch, and syslog summary.
<b>Dashboard &gt; Network Summary &gt; Incidents</b>	Displays dashlets that contain Alarms, Top N Alarm Types, Syslog Summary and Top N Event Types.
<b>Dashboard &gt; Data Center &gt; Compute</b>	Displays Compute Resources Summary dashlet which shows alarms associated with each Compute Resource.

Table 11-2 Where to Find Alarms (continued)

Location in GUI	Description
Inventory > Device Management > Compute Devices > Compute Resources > Clusters > Cluster Detail Page	Displays Severity, Status, Timestamp and Description of the Alarms in the <b>Alarms</b> area.
Inventory > Device Management > Compute Devices > Compute Resources > Host > Host Details Page	Displays Severity, Status, Timestamp and Description of the Alarms in the <b>Alarms</b> area.
Inventory > Device Management > Compute Devices > Compute Resources > Virtual Machines > Virtual Machine Details Page	Displays Severity, Status, Timestamp and Description of the Alarms in the <b>Alarms</b> area.

## Display Options

The following sections explain the various ways you can modify how alarms, events, and syslogs are displayed:

- [Viewing Options for Alarms, Events, and Syslogs](#)
- [Displaying Alarm Icons](#)
- [Changing Alarm Display Behavior](#)

## Viewing Options for Alarms, Events, and Syslogs

When you choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms & Events**, then click any of the tabs at the top of the page (**Alarms**, **Events**, or **Syslogs**), you can click on either of the following viewing modes:

- **Show Latest 4000 Alarms**—Prime Infrastructure displays the most recent alarms, events, or syslogs (depending on which tab you clicked), based on the timestamp when it was last modified. The Most Recent cache supports till 4000 alarms that can be displayed in the Show Latest 4000 Alarms. If a newer alarm, event, or syslog occurs, Prime Infrastructure removes an older item from the list and adds the most recent one.
- **Show All**—Prime Infrastructure retrieves all alarms, events, or syslogs from the database and displays them.

You can use filters on either view.

If there are more than 200,000 rows of data on the Alarms, Events, or Syslog page, the global toolbar displays *200000 of N* where N is the total number of rows in the table. If you hover your cursor over *200000 of N*, a message appears saying that “Only the first 200,000 rows are displayed. Use the table filter controls to display a smaller result set.”

## Displaying Alarm Icons

To have Prime Infrastructure display alarm severity icons next to the device groups on the **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms & Events** page, you need to enable Alarm Badging. This feature is disabled by default because it could impact performance if Prime Infrastructure is monitoring more than 2,000 devices with more than 10,000 active alarms. If you notice performance degradation issues, we suggest you disable this feature.

- 
- Step 1** Click your login name at the top-right of the screen and choose **My Preferences**.
  - Step 2** Click the checkbox next to **Enable Alarm Badging on Alarms & Events page**.
  - Step 3** Click **Save**.
- 

## Changing Alarm Display Behavior

Prime Infrastructure provides user preference settings that let you control whether:

- Automatically refreshes the Alarms and Events page.
- Prime Infrastructure displays prompts and warning messages when you acknowledge an alarm or clear all alarms of a condition.
- Cleared alarm conditions are always set to the “Information” severity level.

- 
- Step 1** Click the **Settings** icon and choose **My Preferences**.
  - Step 2** If you want **Alarms/Events/Syslog** page to automatically refresh at a periodic interval, select the **Automatically refresh Alarms & Events** page.
  - Step 3** If you do not want the warning message to appear whenever you acknowledge an alarm, select the **Disable Alarm Acknowledge Warning Message** check box. Note that the warning message displays as a reminder that a recurrence of the problem does not generate another alarm unless this functionality is disabled.
  - Step 4** If you do not want to be prompted to confirm each time you clear an alarm condition, select the **Disable confirmation prompt for “Clear all of this condition”** check box. Note that the warning displays as a reminder that you are clearing all occurrences of the specified condition.
  - Step 5** If you do not want to be prompted to confirm the severity change each time you clear an alarm condition, select the **Disable “Set severity to Information?” prompt for “Clear all of this condition”** check box.
  - Step 6** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Changing Alarm Display Behavior](#)
- [Customizing the Alarm Summary](#)
- [Changing Alarm Display Behavior](#)
- [Customizing Alarms and Events For Traps](#)

## Customizing the Alarm Summary

Prime Infrastructure provides user settings that control the information shown in the Alarm Summary box (shown in the top right of the Toolbar at the top on the Prime Infrastructure window) and in the Alarm Summary pop-up page displayed when you click on the Alarm Summary box. These include:

- How often the alarm count is refreshed in the Alarm Summary box and page.
- Which category of alarm to track as the default alarm category shown in the Alarm Summary box.
- Which categories of alarms to include in the Alarm Summary page, and in the total displayed in the Alarm Summary box.

- 
- Step 1** Click the **Settings** icon and choose **My Preferences**.
- You can also access the User Preferences page by clicking the arrow next to your login name in the Global Toolbar at the top right.
- Step 2** To change the Alarm Summary refresh frequency: In the **Refresh Alarm count in the Alarm Summary every** drop down list, choose a refresh frequency (every 5 seconds, 15 seconds, 30 seconds, 1 minute, 2 minutes, or 5 minutes).
- Step 3** To select the alarm categories to display in the Alarm Summary box and pop-up page:
- a. Click **Edit Alarm Categories**. The Select Alarm Categories pop-up displays.
  - b. In the **Default Category to display** drop-down, choose the default category whose total alarm count you want to display in the Alarm Summary box. For example: Choose “AP Rogue” to have the Alarm Summary box display the count for AP Rogue alarms only. Choose “Alarm Summary” to have the box display a count of all alarms in all selected categories and subcategories.
  - c. In the pick list under the **Show** drop-down, choose the checkbox next to each category or sub-category of alarm that you want to include in the Alarm Summary popup page.  
  
If **Default Category to display** is set to “Alarm Summary”, the alarm totals shown will be the total of all critical alarms for all the categories and sub-categories you select in the pick list. If any other category or sub-category is selected as the Default Category, the box displays totals only for that category.
  - d. When you are finished, click **OK**. Your selected alarm category and subcategories are listed on the User Preferences page.
- Step 4** Click **Save** to save your changes.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Changing Alarm Display Behavior](#)
- [Toolbar](#)

## Changing Alarm Status

You can remove an alarm from the list of alarms by changing its status to Acknowledged or Cleared. No e-mails will be generated for these alarms.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms & Events**. By default, the Alarms tab is selected.

**Step 2** Select an alarm, then choose one of the following options under **Change Status**:

- **Acknowledge**—Removes the alarm from the Alarms list and prevents the alarm from being counted as an active alarm on the Alarm Summary page or any alarms list.
- **Unacknowledge**—Returns the alarm to its active alarm state on the Alarm Summary page and all alarms lists.
- **Clear**—Sets the alarm state to Cleared. Cleared alarms remain in the Prime Infrastructure database, but in the Clear state. You clear an alarm when the condition that caused it no longer exists.
- **Clear all of this Condition**—Sets the alarm state to Cleared for all alarms with the same Condition as the alarm you selected.

After you click **Yes** to confirm that you want to clear all alarms of the specified condition, a dialog appears asking if you want to change the severity for the selected alarm condition to Informational. This prevents Prime Infrastructure from issuing alarms for the specified condition. To later reset the condition's severity, choose **Administration > Settings > System Settings > Alarms and Events > Alarm Severity and Auto Clear > Severity Configuration** and modify the severity.

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Alarm Severity Levels](#)
- [When to Acknowledge Alarms](#)
- [Including Acknowledged and Cleared Alarms in Searches](#)

## When to Acknowledge Alarms

You may want certain alarms to be removed from the Alarms list. For example, if you are continuously receiving an interference alarm from a certain device, you may want to stop that alarm from being counted as an active alarm on the Alarm Summary page or any alarms list. In this scenario, you can find the alarm for the device in the Alarms list, select an alarm and choose **Change Status > Acknowledge**.

If the device generates a new violation on the same interface, Prime Infrastructure does not create a new alarm, and the Alarm Summary page shows no new alarms. However, if the interference violation is created on another interface, a new alarm is created.

By default, acknowledged alarms are not displayed on either the Alarm Summary page or in any alarm list. Also, no emails are generated for acknowledged alarms. By default, acknowledged alarms are not included for any search criteria. To change this default, go to the **Administration > Settings > System Settings > Alarms and Events** page and disable the **Hide Acknowledged Alarms** preference.

When you acknowledge an alarm, a warning message appears as a reminder that a recurrence of the problem does not generate another alarm unless this functionality is disabled. Click the **Settings** icon and choose **My Preferences** page to disable this warning message.

You can also search for all previously acknowledged alarms to reveal the alarms that were acknowledged during the last seven days. Prime Infrastructure automatically deletes cleared alerts that are more than seven days old, so your results can show activity for only the last seven days. Until an existing alarm is deleted, a new alarm cannot be generated for any managed entity for which Prime Infrastructure has already generated an alarm.

## Including Acknowledged and Cleared Alarms in Searches

By default, acknowledged and cleared alarms are not included for any search criteria. To change this default, choose **Administration > Settings > System Settings > Alarms and Events** and disable the Hide Acknowledged Alarms or Hide Cleared Alarms preference.

Cleared alarms remain in the Prime Infrastructure database, but in the Clear state. You clear an alarm when the condition that caused it no longer exists.

## Changing Alarm and Event Options

You might want to change the schedule for deleting alarms, the alarm severities that are displayed, or alarm email options.

To change alarm and event options, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Settings > System Settings**.
  - Step 2** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Alarms and Events**.
  - Step 3** Change the alarm or event settings, then click **Save**.
- 

## Configuring Alarm Severity Levels

A newly generated alarm has a default severity level that you might want to change.

To configure an alarm's severity level, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Settings > System Settings > Alarms and Events > Alarm Severity and Auto Clear**.
  - Step 2** Choose **Severity Configuration**.
  - Step 3** Select the check box of the alarm condition whose severity level that you want to change.
  - Step 4** From the Configure Severity Level drop-down list, choose a severity level.
  - Step 5** Click **OK** to confirm the changes.
- 

## Customizing Alarms and Events For Traps

You can enable Prime Infrastructure to recognize additional traps and to customize how Prime Infrastructure creates events and alarms for these traps. You can specify a trap notification name or syslog message identifier, and specify the event severity, category, and message to use when the specified trap is received. Prime Infrastructure creates an event with the settings you specify.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms & Events**.
  - Step 2** Click the **Events** tab.

- Step 3** Click **Custom Trap Event**. The Custom Trap Events window opens displaying any previously created custom trap events.
- Step 4** Click **Add**.
- Step 5** Select a MIB from the menu, which includes all MIBs that are not fully supported, or click **Upload New MIB** to upload a MIB file.
- If you upload a new MIB file, wait approximately 15 seconds, then click **Refresh MIBs** to have the newly added MIB added to the MIB drop-down list.
- Step 6** Select a **Notification Name** from the list of unsupported notification names included in the selected MIB.
- Step 7** In the **Event Description** field, enter the text you want displayed in the Description column for the events that are generated from traps with the selected notification name.
- Step 8** Select a **Default Severity** level, then click **OK**.
- Prime Infrastructure creates a new event type and alarm condition for the specified trap.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Modifying a Customized Trap Event](#)

## Modifying a Customized Trap Event

You can modify a previously created customized trap event.

---

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms & Events**.
- Step 2** Click the **Events** tab.
- Step 3** Click **Custom Trap Event**. The Custom Trap Events window opens displaying any previously created custom trap events.
- Step 4** Select the custom trap event you want to modify, then click **Edit**.
- Step 5** Modify the necessary fields, then click **OK**.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Customizing Alarms and Events For Traps](#)

## Getting Help for Alarms

If you receive an alarm in **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms & Events** for which you cannot find a resolution in the Cisco Support Community (select an alarm, then choose **Troubleshoot > Support Forum**), you can use Prime Infrastructure to open a support request (click an alarm, then choose **Troubleshoot > Support Case**). See “Troubleshooting Prime Infrastructure” in the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Administrator Guide](#) for more information.



# Where to Find Syslogs

Prime Infrastructure logs all syslogs from severity 0 through 7 (emergency through debugging messages) generated by all devices that are managed by Prime Infrastructure. Prime Infrastructure also logs all SNMP messages.

Prime Infrastructure logs and displays syslogs from managed devices only. Syslogs from devices that are not managed by Prime Infrastructure are not logged or displayed.

To view syslogs, choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms & Events**, then click the **Syslogs** tab. You can use the predefined filters provided by Prime Infrastructure, or use the Quick or Advanced Filters to search on your own criteria.

## Supported Syslog Formats for Event Based Inventory

The following are the supported Syslog formats. Prime Infrastructure will trigger the inventory collection if the device syslog matches any one of the following conditions:

Message Type is any one of the following:

LINK-3-UPDOWN

PORT\_SECURITY-6-VLAN\_REMOVED

PORT\_SECURITY-6-VLAN\_FULL

G8032-STATE\_IDLE

G8032-STATE\_PENDING

G8032-STATE\_PROTECTION

G8032-STATE\_FORCED\_SWITCH

G8032-STATE\_MANUAL\_SWITCH

L2-G8032-3-APS\_CHANNEL\_INACTIVE

L2-G8032-6-APS\_CHANNEL\_ACTIVE

L2-L2VPN\_ICCP\_SM-4-REMOTE\_CORE\_ISOLATION

L2-L2VPN\_ICCP\_SM-4-REMOTE\_CORE\_ISOLATION\_CLEAR

L2-L2VPN\_ICCP\_SM-3-CONFIG\_LOCAL\_ERROR

L2-L2VPN\_ICCP\_SM-3-CONFIG\_REMOTE\_ERROR

L2-L2VPN\_ICCP\_SM-4-LOCAL\_CORE\_ISOLATION

L2-L2VPN\_ICCP\_SM-4-LOCAL\_CORE\_ISOLATION\_CLEAR

L2-L2VPN\_ICCP\_SM-4-PEER\_REACHABILITY\_FAILURE

L2-L2VPN\_ICCP\_SM-4-PEER\_REACHABILITY\_CLEAR

L2-L2VPN\_ICCP\_SM-4-REMOTE\_ACCESS\_MAIN\_PORT\_FAILURE

L2-L2VPN\_ICCP\_SM-4-REMOTE\_ACCESS\_MAIN\_PORT\_FAILURE\_CLEAR

INFRA-ICCP-5-ISOLATION

INFRA-ICCP-5-ISOLATION\_CLR

INFRA-ICCP-5-NEIGHBOR\_STATE\_UP

INFRA-ICCP-5-NEIGHBOR\_STATE\_DOWN

INFRA-ICCP-6-BACKBONE\_INTERFACE\_STATE\_UP  
 INFRA-ICCP-6-BACKBONE\_INTERFACE\_STATE\_DOWN  
 L2-BM-6-ACTIVE\_CLEAR  
 L2-BM-6-ACTIVE\_PROBLEM  
 L2-L2VPN\_ICCP\_SM-3-CONFIG\_INVALID\_NODEID  
 L2-L2VPN\_ICCP\_SM-3-CONFIG\_INVALID\_NODEID\_CLEAR  
 PKT\_INFRA-ICPE\_GCO-5-SATELLITE\_STATUS\_PROBLEM  
 PKT\_INFRA-ICPE\_GCO-5-SATELLITE\_STATUS\_CLEAR  
 PLATFORM-REDDRV-7-ROLE\_CHANGE  
 PLATFORM-CE\_SWITCH-6-UPDN  
 PLATFORM-CLUSTER\_CLM-6-UPDN  
 E\_CFM-6-LCK  
 E\_CFM-6-AIS  
 E\_CFM-6-AIS\_INT  
 E\_CFM-6-LCK\_INT  
 LINK\_UP  
 LINK\_DOWNNcefcPowerStatusChange  
 cefcFRURemoved  
 cefcFRUInserted  
 SYS-5-RELOAD  
 SYS-5-RESTART  
 OIR-6-INSCARD  
 OIR-SP-6-INSCARD  
 SWT\_CEFM\_STATUS\_CHANGE

## Customizing Alarms and Events For Syslogs

You can enable Prime Infrastructure to create events for particular syslogs. You can specify a syslog message identifier, and specify the event severity and message to use when the specified syslog is received. Prime Infrastructure creates an event with the settings you specify.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms & Events**.
  - Step 2** Click the **Syslogs** tab.
  - Step 3** If there is an existing syslog for which you want to create an event, select the syslog, then click **Custom Syslog Events**. To create a new event for which there is not an existing syslog, click **Custom Syslog Events**.
  - Step 4** Click **Add**. Complete the required fields. If you selected a syslog in Step 3, the Message Type and Event Message fields are prepopulated with the values of the syslog you selected.

**Step 5** Select a **Default Severity** level, then click **OK**.

---

## Modifying a Customized Syslog Event

You can modify a previously created customized syslog event.

---

**Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms & Events**.

**Step 2** Click the **Syslogs** tab.

**Step 3** Click **Custom Syslog Events**. The Custom Syslog Events window opens displaying any previously created event mappings.

**Step 4** Select the custom syslog event you want to modify, then click **Edit**.

**Step 5** Modify the necessary fields, then click **OK**.

---

### Related Topic

- [Customizing Alarms and Events For Syslogs](#)





## Monitoring Clients and Users

---

### About Wired and Wireless Clients

A client is a device that is connected to an access point or a switch. Cisco Prime Infrastructure supports both wired and wireless clients. After you add controllers and switches to Prime Infrastructure, the client discovery process starts. Wireless clients are discovered from managed controllers or autonomous access points. The controllers are polled during regular client status poll. The wireless client count includes autonomous clients as well. In the case of switches, Prime Infrastructure polls for clients immediately after the device is added and updates the device information in the database. For wired clients, the client status polling to discover client associations occurs every two hours (by default). A complete polling happens twice every day to poll complete information of all wired clients connected to all switches.

Prime Infrastructure uses background tasks to perform the data polling operations. There are three tasks associated with clients:

1. Autonomous AP Client Status
2. Lightweight Client Status
3. Wired Client Status

You can refresh the data collection tasks (such as polling interval) from the Administration > Settings > Background Tasks page.

Client status (applicable only for wired clients) is noted as connected, disconnected, or unknown:

- Connected clients—Clients that are active and connected to a wired switch.
- Disconnected clients—Clients that are disconnected from the wired switch.
- Unknown clients—Clients that are marked as unknown when the SNMP connection to the wired switch is lost.

For the clients of autonomous access point managed by Prime Infrastructure and for the clients authenticated using Local Extensible Authentication Protocol (LEAP), the username is not registered and is displayed as unknown.

Prime Infrastructure supports both identity and non-identity wired clients. The support for wired clients is based on the identity service. The identity service provides secure network access to users and devices and it also enables the network administrators to provision services and resources to the users based on their job functions.

Prime Infrastructure do not poll end hosts connected through VLAN 1000-1024.

#### Related Topics

- [Managing Data Collection and Retention](#)

- [Tracking Clients](#)

## Client Dashlets on the General Dashboard

When you log into Prime Infrastructure, the General dashboard displays a few client-related dashlets.

- **Client Count By Association/Authentication**—Displays the total number of clients by Association and authentication in Prime Infrastructure over the selected period of time.
  - **Associated client**—All clients connected regardless of whether it is authenticated or not.
  - **Authenticated client**—All clients connected and passed authentication, authorization and other policies, and ready to use the network.
- **Client Count By Wireless/Wired**—Displays the total number of wired and wireless clients in Prime Infrastructure over the selected period of time.

### Related Topics

- [Interactive Graphs](#)
- [Client Dashboard](#)

## Client Dashboard

The Client dashboard (**Dashboard > Overview > Client**) page displays the client-related dashlets. These dashlets enable you to monitor the clients on the network. The data for graphs is also polled/updated periodically and stored in Prime Infrastructure database. On the other hand, most of the information in the Client Details page are polled directly from the controller/switch.

Click the **Edit Content** link to choose the dashlets you want to have appear on the Client dashboard. You can choose the dashlet from the Available dashlets list and then click to add it to the left or right column. For example, if you want to see the client count in both the General and Client dashboards, you can add the same dashlet to both.

To return to the original Client dashboard before customization, click **Edit Tabs**, and click **Reset to Factory Default**.

### Related Topics

- [Interactive Graphs](#)
- [Adding Dashlets](#)

## Monitoring Clients and Users

Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users** to view all the wired and wireless clients in your network. In addition, you can view the client association history and statistical information. These tools are useful when users complain of network performance as they move throughout a building with their laptop computers. The information might help you assess what areas experience inconsistent coverage and which areas have the potential to drop coverage.

Access the Client Detail page by clicking on a MAC Address to help you identify, diagnose, and resolve client issues.



**Related Topics**

- [Filtering Clients and Users](#)
- [Viewing Clients and Users](#)
- [Modifying the Clients and Users Page](#)

## Filtering Clients and Users

The **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users** page lists all associated clients by default. There are preset filters that allow you to view a subset of clients.

The WGB, Wired Guest, and Office Extended Access Point 600 (OEAP 600) are tracked as wireless clients. Prime Infrastructure only remembers sorting column which is indexed including MAC Address, IP Address, Username, AP MAC Address and SSID. Sorting on non-indexed column causes serious performance issue when loading the client list page. You can still sort the table by any column. But after you leave this page, Prime Infrastructure will not remember the last used sorting column if it is not indexed.

In addition, you can use the filter icon (  ) to filter the records that match the filter rules. If you want to specify a filter rule, choose **All** from the Show drop-down list before you click .

When you select a preset filter and click the filter icon, the filter criteria is dimmed. You can only see the filter criteria but cannot change it. When the All option is selected to view all the entries, clicking the filter icon shows the quick filter options, where you can filter the data using the filterable fields. You can also enter text in the free form text box for table filtering.

You can use the advanced search feature to narrow the client list based on specific categories and filters.

**Related Topics**

- [Filtering on IP Addresses](#)

## Filtering on IP Addresses

When you perform advanced client filtering on IPv6 addresses, each octet that you specify must be a complete octet. If you specify a partial octet, the filtering might not show correct results.

The following example shows how the advanced client filtering works on IPv6 addresses. This example assumes that you have the following IP addresses in the system:

```
10.10.40.1
10.10.40.2
10.10.40.3
10.10.240.1
Fec0::40:20
Fe80::240:20
```

If you search for all IP addresses containing 40, you get the following result:

```
10.10.40.1
10.10.40.2
10.10.40.3
Fec0::40:20
```

The IP addresses that contain 240 are not filtered because the filtering feature expects you to enter a complete octet.

**Related Topic**

- [Search Methods](#)

## Viewing Clients and Users

To view complete details in the **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users** page and to perform operations such as Radio Measurement, users in User Defined groups should have the required permission before they access the Monitor Clients, View Alerts & Events, Configure Controllers, and Client Location pages.

The following attributes are populated only when the ISE is added to Prime Infrastructure:


- ISE
- Endpoint Type
- Posture
- Authorization Profile Name

Prime Infrastructure queries the ISE for client authentication records for the last 24 hours to populate this data. If the client is connected to the network 24 hours before it is discovered in Prime Infrastructure, you might not see the ISE-related data in the table. You might see the data in client details page. To work around this, reconnect the client to the network. The ISE information is shown in the table after the next client background task run.

To view clients and users, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users** to view both wired and wireless clients information. The Clients and Users page appears.

The Clients and Users table displays a few columns by default. If you want display the additional columns that are available, click  , and then click **Columns**. The available columns appear. Select the columns that you want to show in the Clients and Users table. When you click anywhere in a row, the row is selected and the client details are shown.

**Step 2** Choose a client or user. The following information appears depending on the selected client/user.

- Client Attributes
  - Client Statistics
  - Client Statistics.
  - Client Association History
  - Client Event Information
  - Client Location Information
  - Wired Location History
  - Client CCXv5 Information
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Modifying the Clients and Users Page](#)
- [Filtering Clients and Users](#)



## Exporting Clients and Users

You can quickly export your clients and users list into a CSV file (spreadsheet format with comma-separated values).

The columns that are shown in the Clients and Users table are only exported to the CSV file.

To export the clients and users list, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.
- Step 2** Click the export icon on the toolbar. A dialog box appears.
- Step 3** In the File Download dialog box, click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Viewing Clients and Users](#)
- [Modifying the Clients and Users Page](#)
- [Filtering Clients and Users](#)

## When to Use the Client Troubleshooting Tool

Prime Infrastructure provides a troubleshooting tool to help you diagnose and solve issues experienced with both wired and wireless clients. This tool relies on SNMP to discover clients and collect client data. If Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) is integrated with Prime Infrastructure, the tool also collects ISE-based client statistics and other data shown in Prime Infrastructure's client dashlets and reports.

Launch the client troubleshooting tool whenever you need to:

- Monitor the status of a client connection.
- Verify the current and past locations of users and their devices.
- Troubleshoot client connectivity problems.
- Troubleshoot current client issues.
- View client issue history.
- Obtain the location history for location-assisted clients.

The client troubleshooting feature is available for identity wired clients (those that are identified by ISE) and not for non-identity wired clients.

### Related Topics

- [Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool](#)
- [Searching for Clients](#)
- [Analyzing Client Connection Logs](#)
- [Viewing Client Event History and Event Logs](#)

# Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool

You can launch the Client Troubleshooting tool for any client from the Clients and Users page.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**. The Clients and Users page lists all the clients the system knows (including those not currently associated).
- Step 2** Click the MAC Address for the client having connection problems that you want to troubleshoot. You may find it handy to narrow the client list first, by using the Search feature. See “Troubleshooting Clients Using the Search Feature” in Related Topics.
- Step 3** Click **Troubleshoot and Debug**.
- 

## Related Topics

- [About the Client Troubleshooting Page](#)
- [How the Client Troubleshooting Tool Gives Advice](#)
- [Searching for Clients](#)

## About the Client Troubleshooting Page

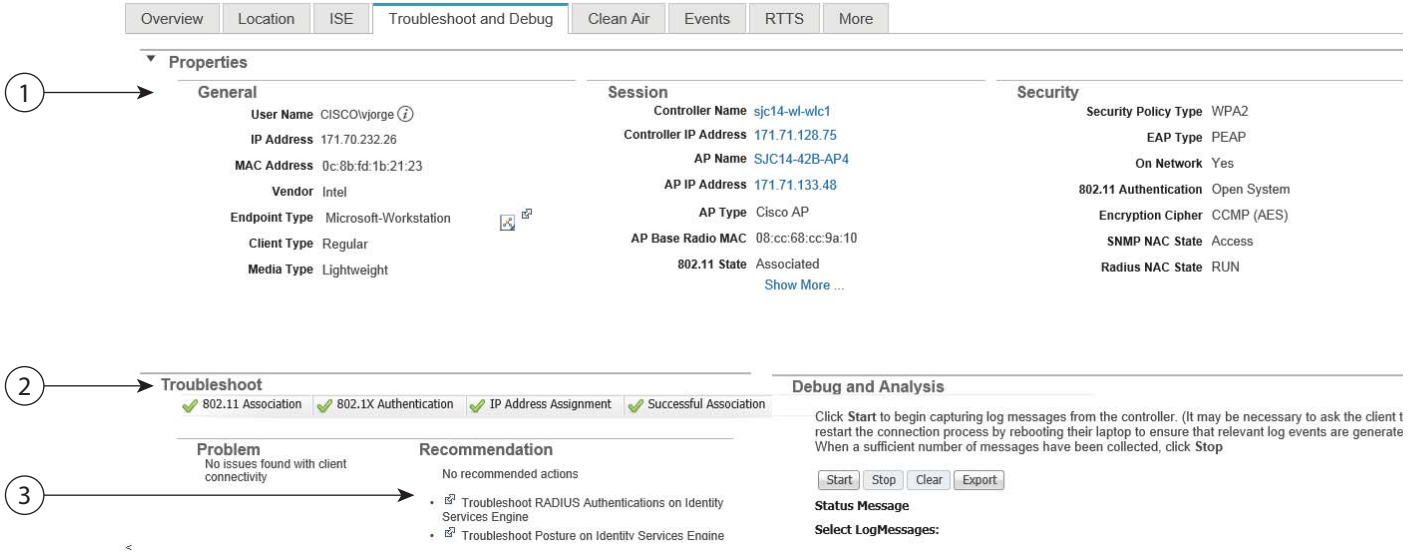
The Client Troubleshooting page provides:

- Details on the current or last session for a selected wired or wireless client.
- The client’s current/last connection status, shown as a series of graphic icons.
- If connection problems are detected:
  - The nature of the connection problem (also indicated by graphic icons)
  - Advice on how to troubleshoot that problems.

[Figure 12-1](#) shows the complete Client Troubleshooting page for a wireless client that has connected successfully. The upper Properties section of the page provides the same session details for a successfully connected client that you would see on the Clients and Users page.

Also note that, as this is a successful connection, the lower Troubleshoot section shows green check marks as the status for each stage of the wireless connection process, and provides no advice on troubleshooting the connection.

Figure 12-1 Client Troubleshooting page for Successful Wireless Client



1	Properties
2	Troubleshoot
3	Recommendation

Figure 12-2 shows the Troubleshoot section of the Client Troubleshooting page for a different wireless client (for simplicity, we have collapsed the Properties section by clicking on the section’s right arrow icon). This client had trouble connecting. As you can see, there is an alert on the 802.1X Authentication portion of the connection process and a list of steps to try to determine exactly why this was a problem.

This number and type of connection status icons, and advice in the Troubleshoot section, will vary according to the kind of client, the stage of the connection process that had problems, and the likely sources of the problem. For more information, see “How the Client Troubleshooting Tool Gives Advice” in Related Topics.

**Figure 12-2** Client Troubleshooting page for Unsuccessful Wireless Client

1	Troubleshoot
2	Problem
3	Recommendation

**Related Topics**

- [Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool](#)
- [How the Client Troubleshooting Tool Gives Advice](#)
- [Searching for Clients](#)

## How the Client Troubleshooting Tool Gives Advice

Prime Infrastructure determines the number of connection areas and the type of troubleshooting advice to present on the Client Troubleshooting page based on the stages the client passes through when establishing connection and connectivity protocols involved at each stage. [Table 12-1](#) summarizes these stages and protocols involved at each stage.

**Table 12-1** Client Connection Stages and Protocols

Connection Stage	Link Connectivity	802.1X Authentication	MAC Authentication	Web Authentication	IP Connectivity	Authorization
802.1X	X	X	–	–	X	X
MAC Authentication	X	–	X	–	X	X
Web Authentication	X	–	–	X	X	X

Table 12-2 Details the troubleshooting advice presented for each kind of problem detected during the stages of connection building.

**Table 12-2** Troubleshooting Advice for Each Connection Stage and Problem

Client State	Problem	Suggested Action
Link Connectivity	Cannot find the client in the network	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check whether the client cable is plugged into the network.</li> <li>• Check whether the client is using the proper cable to connect to the network.</li> <li>• Ensure that the port to which the client is connected is not disabled administratively.</li> <li>• Ensure that the port to which the client is connected is not error disabled.</li> <li>• Check whether the speed and duplex are set to Auto on the port to which the client is connected.</li> </ul>
	Authentication in progress	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the client has been in this state for a long time, check the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Check whether the supplicant on the client is configured properly as required.</li> <li>– Modify the timers related to the authentication method and try again.</li> <li>– Use the fall back authentication feature if you are not sure which authentication method works with the client.</li> <li>– Try disconnecting and reconnecting.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
802.1X Authentication	802.1X Authentication Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check whether the RADIUS server(s) is reachable from the switch.</li> <li>• Check whether the client choice of EAP is supported by the RADIUS server(s).</li> <li>• Check whether the username/password/certificate of the client is valid.</li> <li>• Ensure that the certificates used by the RADIUS server are accepted by the client.</li> </ul>

**Table 12-2** Troubleshooting Advice for Each Connection Stage and Problem (continued)

Client State	Problem	Suggested Action
MAC Authentication	MAC Authentication Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check whether the RADIUS server(s) is reachable from the switch.</li> <li>• Check whether the MAC address of the client is in the list of known clients on the RADIUS server.</li> <li>• Check whether the MAC address of the client is not in the list of excluded clients.</li> </ul>
Web Authentication	Client could not be authenticated through web/guest interface	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check whether the guest credentials are valid and have not expired.</li> <li>• Check whether the client can be redirected to the login page.</li> <li>• Check whether the RADIUS server is reachable.</li> <li>• Ensure that pop-ups are not blocked.</li> <li>• Check whether the DNS resolution on the client is working.</li> <li>• Ensure that the client is not using any proxy settings.</li> <li>• Check whether the client can access https://&lt;virtual-ip&gt;/login.html</li> <li>• Check whether the browser of the client accepts the self-signed certificate offered by the controller.</li> </ul>
IP Connectivity	Client could not complete DHCP interaction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check whether the DHCP server is reachable.</li> <li>• Check whether the DHCP server is configured to serve the WLAN.</li> <li>• Check whether the DHCP scope is exhausted.</li> <li>• Check whether multiple DHCP servers are configured with overlapping scopes.</li> <li>• Check whether the local DHCP server is present. If the DHCP bridging mode is enabled (move it to second), the client is configured to get the address from the DHCP server.</li> <li>• Check if the client has the static IP configured and ensure that the client generates IP traffic.</li> </ul>
Authorization	Authorization Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure that the VLAN defined for authorization is available on the switch.</li> <li>• Ensure that the default port ACL is configured for ACL authorization.</li> </ul>
Successful Connection	None	None. This indicates that all previous stages were completed successfully.

**Related Topics**

- [Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool](#)
- [Searching for Clients](#)
- [Analyzing Client Connection Logs](#)

# Searching for Clients

---

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.
- Step 2** Type the full or partial client MAC address in the Advanced Search text box, and click **Search**. The Search Results page appears.
- Step 3** Click **View List** to view the clients that match the search criteria in the Clients page. The **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users** page appears.
- You can click the Reset link to set the table to the default display so that the search criteria is no longer applied.
- Step 4** Select a client, and then click the **Troubleshoot**. The Troubleshooting Client page appears. If you are troubleshooting a Cisco-compatible Extension v5 client (wireless), your Troubleshooting Client page will have additional tabs.
- If you receive a message that the client does not seem to be connected to any access point, you must reconnect the client and click **Refresh**.
- 

## Related Topics

- [Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool](#)
- [Analyzing Client Connection Logs](#)

# Analyzing Client Connection Logs

---

- Step 1** Launch the Client Troubleshooting Tool for the client you want to analyze. See “Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool” in Related Topics.
- Step 2** Click the **Log Analysis** tab to view log messages logged against the client.
- Step 3** Click **Start** to begin capturing log messages about the client from the controller.
- Step 4** Click **Stop** to stop log message capture.
- Step 5** Click **Clear** to clear all log messages. Log messages are captured for ten minutes and then automatically stopped. Click **Start** to continue.
- Step 6** Click one of the links under Select Log Messages to display log messages (the number between parentheses indicates the number of messages).
- 

## Related Topics

- [Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool](#)
- [Searching for Clients](#)
- [Viewing Client Event History and Event Logs](#)

## Viewing Client Event History and Event Logs

- 
- Step 1** Launch the Client Troubleshooting Tool. See “Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool” in Related Topics.
- Step 2** Click the **Events** tab to display the event history of a client.
- Step 3** Click the **Event Log** tab to view the event log.
- Step 4** Click **Start** to begin capturing log messages from the client.
- Step 5** Click **Stop** when a sufficient number of messages have been collected.

The Client Troubleshooting Event log and Messaging features are available to CCX Version 6 clients only if the Management Service version is 2 and later.

---

### Related Topics

- [Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool](#)
- [Searching for Clients](#)
- [Checking Client ACS Authentication History](#)

## Checking Client ACS Authentication History

### Before You Begin

You must have View Server credentials established before you can access the **ACS View Server** tab. This tab displays an empty server list if no view servers are configured.

---

- Step 1** Launch the Client Troubleshooting Tool for the Client you want to analyze. See “Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool” in Related Topics.
- Step 2** Click the **ACS View Server** tab to interact with the Cisco Access Control System (ACS) View Server. This tab displays the latest authentication records received either from an ACS View server or ISE, whichever is configured in Prime Infrastructure.
- Step 3** If the ACS View Server is already configured, you can select a time range and click **Submit** to retrieve the authentication records from the ACS View Server. Prime Infrastructure uses the ACS View NS API to retrieve the records.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool](#)
- [Searching for Clients](#)
- [Checking Client ISE Authentication History and Identity Services](#)



## Checking Client ISE Authentication History and Identity Services

---

- Step 1** Launch the Client Troubleshooting Tool for the Client you want to analyze. See “Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool” in Related Topics.
- Step 2** Click the **Identity Services Engine** tab to view information about ISE authentication.
- Step 3** Enter the date and time ranges to retrieve historical authentication and authorization information, and then click **Submit**. The results of the query are displayed in the Authentication Records portion of the page.
- Step 4** Click the **Identity Services Engine** tab to view information about the identity services parameters. You must configure the Identity Services Engine (ISE) before you access this tab.

If the ISE is not configured, it provides a link to add an ISE to Prime Infrastructure. The ISE provides authentication records to Prime Infrastructure via REST API. The network administrator can choose a time period for retrieving authentication records from the ISE.

---

### Related Topics

- [Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool](#)
- [Searching for Clients](#)
- [Checking Client Clean Air Environment](#)

## Checking Client Clean Air Environment

---

- Step 1** Launch the Client Troubleshooting Tool for the Client you want to analyze. See “Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool” in Related Topics.
- Step 2** Click the CleanAir tab to view information about the air quality parameters and active interferer for the CleanAir-enabled access point.
- Step 3** Click **CleanAir Details** to know more about the air quality index.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool](#)
- [Searching for Clients](#)
- [Checking Client ACS Authentication History](#)

## Running Diagnostic Tests on Problem Clients

---

- Step 1** Launch the Client Troubleshooting Tool for the Client you want to analyze. See “Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool” in Related Topics.

- Step 2** (Optional) Click the **Test Analysis** tab if Cisco-compatible Extension Version 5 or Version 6 clients are available.
- Step 3** Check the check box for the applicable diagnostic test, enter any appropriate input information, and click **Start**. The **Test Analysis** tab allows you to run a variety of diagnostic tests on the client.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool](#)
- [Searching for Clients](#)
- [When to Run Diagnostic Tests on Problem Clients](#)

## When to Run Diagnostic Tests on Problem Clients

Before you begin, ensure that you have reviewed the test qualifications and restrictions. See Related Topics.

The following diagnostic tests are available on the **Test Analysis** tab:

- **DHCP**—Executes a complete DHCP Discover/Offer/Request/ACK exchange to determine that the DHCP is operating properly between the controller and client.
- **IP Connectivity**—Causes the client to execute a ping test of the default gateway obtained in the DHCP test to verify that IP connectivity exists on the local subnet.
- **DNS Ping**—Causes the client to execute a ping test of the DNS server obtained in the DHCP test to verify that IP connectivity exists to the DNS server.
- **DNS Resolution**—Causes the DNS client to attempt to resolve a network name known to be resolvable to verify that name resolution is functioning correctly.
- **802.11 Association**—Directs an association to be completed with a specific access point to verify that the client is able to associate properly with a designated WLAN.
- **802.1X Authentication**—Directs an association and 802.1X authentication to be completed with a specific access point to verify that the client is able to properly complete an 802.1x authentication.
- **Profile Redirect**—At any time, the diagnostic system might direct the client to activate one of the configured WLAN profiles and to continue operation under that profile.

To run the profile diagnostic test, the client must be on the diagnostic channel. This test uses the profile number as the input. To indicate a wildcard redirect, enter **0**. With this redirect, the client is asked to disassociate from the diagnostic channel and associate with any profile. You can also enter a valid profile ID. Because the client is on the diagnostic channel when the test is run, only one profile is returned in the profile list. You should use this profile ID in the profile redirect test (when wildcard redirecting is not desired).

**Related Topics**

- [Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool](#)
- [Searching for Clients](#)
- [Running Diagnostic Tests on Problem Clients](#)

## Pinging Problem Clients with Text Messages

- 
- Step 1** Launch the Client Troubleshooting Tool for the Client you want to analyze. See “Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool” in Related Topics.
- Step 2** (Optional) For Cisco-compatible Extension Version 5 or Version 6 clients, a **Messaging** tab will appear which can be used to send an instant text message to the user of this client. From the **Message Category** drop-down list, choose a message, and click **Send**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool](#)
- [Running Diagnostic Tests on Problem Clients](#)
- [When to Run Diagnostic Tests on Problem Clients](#)

## Viewing Client Location History

- 
- Step 1** Launch the Client Troubleshooting Tool for the Client you want to analyze. See “Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool” in Related Topics.
- Step 2** Click the **RTTS** tab to view the Real Time Troubleshooting (RTTS) details.
- Step 3** Select **modules to debug** and **debug level**.
- Step 4** Click **Run**. The RTTS manager executes a set of commands in the controllers connected to the client based on the selected debug modules and debug level and displays the RTTS details.
- Step 5** Click the **Filter** tab to filter the RTTS details based on debug time, controller name, controller IP, severity, and debug message.
- Step 6** Click the **Export** tab to export the debug details as a csv file.

You can also debug other controllers based on the selected debug modules and debug levels by using the **Choose different controllers** option.

The RTTS Manager supports five concurrent RTTS debug sessions and each debug session is limited to five devices.

---

### Related Topics

- [Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool](#)
- [Debug Commands for RTTS](#)

## Debug Commands for RTTS

[Table 12-3](#) contains the list of debug commands for Legacy controllers and NGWC controllers.

**Table 12-3** List of Debug Commands for Legacy Controllers and NGWC Controllers

Controller	Modules to Debug	Debug Level	Commands
Legacy	All		debug capwap info enable debug dot1x all enable debug mobility directory enable
		Detail	debug dot1x all enable
			debug dot1x events enable
	High Level	debug dot1x states enable	
Legacy	Mobility	Detail	debug mobility packet enable debug mobility keepalive enable
		Error	debug mobility directory enable debug mobility config enable
		High Level	debug mobility handoff enable
	Wireless Client Join	Detail	debug client <macAddress> debug aaa all enable debug dot1x all enable
		Error	debug client <macAddress>
		High Level	debug client <macAddress>

**Table 12-3** List of Debug Commands for Legacy Controllers and NGWC Controllers

Controller	Modules to Debug	Debug Level	Commands	
NGWC	All		debug capwap ap error debug dot1x events debug capwap ios detail	
		Dot1.x	Detail	debug wcm-dot1x detail debug wcm-dot1x all debug dot1x all
			Error	debug wcm-dot1x errors debug dot1x errors
	High Level		debug wcm-dot1x trace debug wcm-dot1x event debug wcm-dot1x error debug client mac-address <macAddress>	
	Mobility	Detail	debug mobility all	
		Error	debug mobility error	
		High Level	debug mobility handoff	
	Wireless Client Join	Detail		debug wcdb error debug wcdb event debug wcdb db debug ip dhcp snooping events debug ip dhcp server events debug client mac <macAddress>
			Error	debug client mac <macAddress>
			High Level	debug client mac <macAddress>

**Related Topic**

- [Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool](#)

## Tracking Clients

This feature enables you to track clients and be notified when they connect to a network.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.
- Step 2** Click **Track Clients**. The **Track Clients** dialog box appears listing the currently tracked clients.
- This table supports a maximum of 2000 rows. To add or import new rows, you must first remove some older entries.
- Step 3** Click **Add** to track a single client, and then enter the following parameters:

- Client MAC address
- Expiration—Choose **Never** or enter a date.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool](#)
- [Specifying Notification Settings](#)

## Tracking Multiple Clients

This feature enables you to track multiple clients and be notified when they connect to a network.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.
- Step 2** Click **Track Clients**. The **Track Clients** dialog box appears listing the currently tracked clients. This table supports a maximum of 2000 rows. To add or import new rows, you must first remove some older entries.
- Step 3** Click **Add** to track a single client, and then enter the following parameters:
- Client MAC address
  - Expiration—Choose **Never** or enter a date.
- Step 4** If you have a long list of clients, click **Import** to track multiple clients. This allows you to import a client list from a CSV file. Enter the MAC address and username.

A sample CSV file can be downloaded that provides data format:

```
# MACAddress, Expiration: Never/Date in MM/DD/YYYY format
00:40:96:b6:02:cc,10/07/2010
00:02:8a:a2:2e:60,Never
```

A maximum of 2000 clients can be tracked. If you have reached the limit, you will have to remove some clients from the list before you can add more.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Launching the Client Troubleshooting Tool](#)
- [Specifying Notification Settings](#)
- [Tracking Clients](#)

## Specifying Notification Settings

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.
- Step 2** Click **Track Clients**. The **Track Clients** dialog box appears listing the currently tracked clients.
- Step 3** Select the tracked client(s) for which you want to specify notification settings.
- Step 4** Select a notification settings option from the following:

- **Purged Expired Entries**—You can set the duration to keep tracked clients in Prime Infrastructure database. Clients can be purged as follows:
  - after 1 week
  - after 2 weeks
  - after 1 month
  - after 2 months
  - after 6 months
  - kept indefinitely
- **Notification Frequency**—You can specify when Prime Infrastructure sends a notification of a tracked client:
  - on first detection
  - on every detection
- **Notification Method**—You can specify that the tracked client event generates an alarm or sends an email message.

**Step 5** Enter the email address.

**Step 6** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Tracking Clients](#)
- [Identifying Unknown Users](#)

## When to Assign a Username

Not all users or devices are authenticated via 802.1x (for example, printers). In such a case, a network administrator can assign a username to a device.

If a client device is authenticated to the network through web auth, Prime Infrastructure might not have username information for the client (applicable only for wired clients).

Clients are marked as unknown when the NMSP connection to the wired switch is lost. A client status (applicable only for wired client) is noted as connected, disconnected, or unknown:

- **Connected clients**—Clients that are active and connected to a wired switch.
- **Disconnected clients**—Clients that are disconnected from the wired switch.
- **Unknown clients**—Clients that are marked as unknown when the NMSP connection to the wired switch is lost.

#### Related Topics

- [Identifying Unknown Users](#)

## Identifying Unknown Users

---

**Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.

**Step 2** Click **Identify Unknown Users**.

**Step 3** Click **Add** to add a user.

**Step 4** Enter the MAC address and username and click **Add**.

Once a username and MAC address have been added, Prime Infrastructure uses this data for client lookup by matching the MAC address.

**Step 5** Repeat Step 3 to Step 4 to enter a MAC Address and its corresponding username for each client.

**Step 6** Click **Save**.

The username is updated only when the next association of the client occurs.

This table supports a maximum of 10,000 rows. To add or import new rows, you must first remove some older entries.

---

### Related Topics

- [When to Assign a Username](#)
- [Tracking Clients](#)
- [Modifying the Clients and Users Page](#)

## Modifying the Clients and Users Page

You can add, remove, or reorder columns in the Clients table.

---

**Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.

**Step 2** Click the settings icon, then click **Columns**.

**Step 3** Select the columns to show

**Step 4** Click **Reset** to restore the default view.

**Step 5** Click **Close** to confirm the changes.

---

### Related Topics

- [Tracking Clients](#)
- [Enabling Automatic Client Troubleshooting](#)

## Enabling Automatic Client Troubleshooting

In the **Settings > Client** page, you can enable automatic client troubleshooting on a diagnostic channel. This feature is available only for Cisco-compatible Extension clients Version 5.



To enable automatic client troubleshooting, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Settings > System Settings**.
- Step 2** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Client**.
- Step 3** Check the **Automatically troubleshoot client on diagnostic channel** check box.
- When the check box is selected, Prime Infrastructure processes the diagnostic association trap. When it is not selected, Prime Infrastructure raises the trap, but automated troubleshooting is not initiated.
- Step 4** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Modifying the Clients and Users Page](#)
- [Obtaining Radio Measurements for a Client](#)

## When to Obtain Radio Measurements for a Client

In the client page, you can obtain radio measurements only if the client is Cisco-compatible Extensions v2 (or higher) and in the associated state (with a valid IP address). If the client is busy when asked to do the measurement, it determines whether to honor the measurement or not. If it declines to make the measurement, it shows no data from the client.

This feature is available to CCX Version 6 clients only if the Foundation service version is 1 or later.

#### Related Topic

- [Obtaining Radio Measurements for a Client](#)

## Obtaining Radio Measurements for a Client

To receive radio measurements, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.
- Step 2** Click the circle next to a client.
- You can also perform a search for a specific client using Prime Infrastructure Search feature. See “Searching for Clients” in Related Topics.
- Step 3** From the **Test** drop-down list, choose **Radio Measurement**.
- The Radio Measurement option only appears if the client is Cisco-compatible Extensions v2 (or higher) and is in the associated state (with a valid IP address).
- Step 4** Check the check box to indicate if you want to specify beacon measurement, frame measurement, channel load, or noise histogram.
- Click **Initiate**. The different measurements produce differing results. See “Radio Measurement Results for a Client” in Related Topics.

The measurements take about 5 milliseconds to perform. A message from Prime Infrastructure indicates the progress. If the client chooses not to perform the measurement, that is communicated.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Searching for Clients](#)
- [When to Obtain Radio Measurements for a Client](#)
- [Radio Measurement Results for a Client](#)

## Radio Measurement Results for a Client

Depending on the measurement type requested, the following information might appear:

- Beacon Response
  - Channel—The channel number for this measurement
  - BSSID—6-byte BSSID of the station that sent the beacon or probe response
  - PHY—Physical Medium Type (FH, DSS, OFDM, high rate DSS or ERP)
  - Received Signal Power—The strength of the beacon or probe response frame in dBm
  - Parent TSF—The lower 4 bytes of serving access point TSF value
  - Target TSF—The 8-byte TSF value contained in the beacon or probe response
  - Beacon Interval—The 2-byte beacon interval in the received beacon or probe response
  - Capability information—As found in the beacon or probe response
- Frame Measurement
  - Channel—Channel number for this measurement
  - BSSID—BSSID contained in the MAC header of the data frames received
  - Number of frames—Number of frames received from the transmit address
  - Received Signal Power—The signal strength of 802.11 frames in dBm
- Channel Load
  - Channel—The channel number for this measurement
  - CCA busy fraction—The fractional duration over which CCA indicated the channel was busy during the measurement duration defined as ceiling (255 times the duration the CCA indicated channel was busy divided by measurement duration)
- Noise Histogram
  - Channel—The channel number for this measurement
  - RPI density in each of the eight power ranges

**Related Topics**

- [When to Obtain Radio Measurements for a Client](#)
- [Obtaining Radio Measurements for a Client](#)

# Viewing Client V5 Statistics

To access the Statistics request page, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.
- Step 2** Select a client.
- Step 3** From the **Test** drop-down list, choose **V5 Statistics**.  
This menu is shown only for CCX v5 and later clients.
- Step 4** Click **Go**.
- Step 5** Select the desired type of stats (Dot11 Measurement or Security Measurement).
- Step 6** Click **Initiate** to initiate the measurements.  
The duration of measurement is five seconds.
- Step 7** Depending on the V5 Statistics request type, the following counters are displayed in the results page:
- Dot11 Measurement
    - Transmitted Fragment Count
    - Multicast Transmitted Frame Count
    - Failed Count
    - Retry Count
    - Multiple Retry Count
    - Frame Duplicate Count
    - Rts Success Count
    - Rts Failure Count
    - Ack Failure Count
    - Received Fragment Count
    - Multicast Received Frame Count
    - FCS Error Count—This counter increments when an FCS error is detected in a received MPDU.
    - Transmitted Frame Count
  - Security
    - Pairwise Cipher
    - Tkip ICV Errors
    - Tkip Local Mic Failures
    - Tkip Replays
    - Ccmp Replays
    - Ccmp Decryp Errors
    - Mgmt Stats Tkip ICV Errors
    - Mgmt Stats Tkip Local Mic Failures
    - Mgmt Stats Tkip Replays
    - Mgmt Stats Ccmp Replays

- Mgmt Stats Ccmp Decrypt Errors
  - Mgmt Stats Tkip MHDR Errors
  - Mgmt Stats Ccmp MHDR Errors
  - Mgmt Stats Broadcast Disassociate Count
  - Mgmt Stats Broadcast Deauthenticate Count
  - Mgmt Stats Broadcast Action Frame Count
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Viewing Client Operational Parameters](#)

## Viewing Client Operational Parameters

To view specific client operational parameters, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.
- Step 2** Select a client.
- Step 3** From the **Test** drop-down list, choose **Operational Parameters**.

The following information is displayed:

Operational Parameters:

- Device Name—User-defined name for device.
- Client Type—Client type can be any of the following:
  - laptop(0)
  - pc(1)
  - pda(2)
  - dot11mobilephone(3)
  - dualmodephone(4)
  - wgb(5)
  - scanner(6)
  - tabletpc(7)
  - printer(8)
  - projector(9)
  - videoconfsystem(10)
  - camera(11)
  - gamingsystem(12)
  - dot11deskphone(13)
  - cashregister(14)
  - radiotag(15)

- rfidsensor(16)
  - server(17)
- SSID—SSID being used by the client.
- IP Address Mode—The IP address mode such as static configuration or DHCP.
- IPv4 Address—IPv4 address assigned to the client.
- IPv4 Subnet Address—IPv4 subnet address assigned to the client.
- IPv6 Address—IPv6 address assigned to the client.
- IPv6 Subnet Address—IPv6 address assigned to the client.
- Default Gateway—The default gateway chosen for the client.
- Operating System—Identifies the operating system that is using the wireless network adapter.
- Operating System Version—Identifies the version of the operating system that is using the wireless network adapter.
- WNA Firmware Version—Version of the firmware currently installed on the client.
- Driver Version—
- Enterprise Phone Number—Enterprise phone number for the client.
- Cell Phone Number—Cell phone number for the client.
- Power Save Mode—Displays any of the following power save modes: awake, normal, or maxPower.
- System Name—
- Localization—

#### Radio Information:

- Radio Type—The following radio types are available:
  - unused(0)
  - fhss(1)
  - dsss(2)
  - irbaseband(3)
  - ofdm(4)
  - hrdss(5)
  - erp(6)
- Radio Channel—Radio channel in use.

#### DNS/WNS Information:

- DNS Servers—IP address for DNS server.
- WNS Servers—IP address for WNS server.

#### Security Information:

- Credential Type—Indicates how the credentials are configured for the client.
- Authentication Method—Method of authentication used by the client.
- EAP Method—Method of Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) used by the client.
- Encryption Method—Encryption method used by the client.

- Key Management Method—Key management method used by the client.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Viewing Client Operational Parameters](#)
- [Viewing Client Profiles](#)

## Viewing Client Profiles

To view specific client profile information, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.
- Step 2** Select a client.
- Step 3** From the **More** drop-down list, choose **Profiles**.

The following information is displayed:

- Profile Name—List of profile names as hyperlinks. Click a hyperlink to display the profile details.
  - SSID—SSID of the WLAN to which the client is associated.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Disabling Current Clients](#)

## Disabling Current Clients

To disable a current client, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.
- Step 2** Select a client.
- Step 3** Click **Disable**. The Disable Client page appears.
- Step 4** Enter a description in the **Description** text box.
- Step 5** Click **OK**.

Once a client is disabled, it cannot join any network/ssid on controller(s). To enable the client again, choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices > Wireless Controller > Device Name > Security > Manually Disabled Clients**, and remove the client entry.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Viewing Client Profiles](#)
- [Removing Current Clients](#)

## Removing Current Clients

To remove a current client, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.
  - Step 2** Select a client.
  - Step 3** Choose **Remove**.
  - Step 4** Click **Remove** to confirm the deletion.
- 

### Related Topic

- [Enabling Mirror Mode](#)

## Enabling Mirror Mode

When a client is enabled, mirror mode enables you to duplicate (to another port) all the traffic originating from or terminating at a single client device or access point.

Mirror mode is useful in diagnosing specific network problems but should only be enabled on an unused port because any connections to this port become unresponsive.

To enable mirror mode, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.
  - Step 2** Select a client.
  - Step 3** From the **More** drop-down list, choose **Enable Mirror Mode**.
  - Step 4** Click **Go**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Mapping Recent Client Locations](#)

## Mapping Recent Client Locations

To display a high-resolution map of the client recent location, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.
  - Step 2** Choose a client from the Client Username column.
  - Step 3** From the **More** drop-down list, choose **Recent Map (High Resolution)**.
  - Step 4** Click **Go**.
-

**Related Topic**

- [Mapping Current Client Locations](#)

## Mapping Current Client Locations

To display a high-resolution map of the client current location, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.
  - Step 2** Select a client.
  - Step 3** From the **More** drop-down list, choose **Present Map (High Resolution)**.
  - Step 4** Click **Go**.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Running Client Sessions Reports](#)

## Running Client Sessions Reports

To view the most recent client session report results for a client, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.
  - Step 2** Select a client.
  - Step 3** From the **More** drop-down list, choose **Client Sessions Report**.
  - Step 4** Click **Go**. The Client Session report details display.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Viewing Client Roam Reason Reports](#)

## Viewing Client Roam Reason Reports

To view the most recent roam report for this client, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.
  - Step 2** Select a client.
  - Step 3** From the **More** drop-down list, choose **Roam Reason**.
  - Step 4** Click **Go**.

This page displays the most recent roam report for the client. Each roam report has the following information:

- New AP MAC address



- Old (previous) AP MAC address
  - Previous AP SSID
  - Previous AP channel
  - Transition time—Time that it took the client to associate to a new access point.
  - Roam reason—Reason for the client roam.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Viewing Detecting Access Point Details](#)

## Viewing Detecting Access Point Details

To display details of access points that can hear the client including the signal strength/SNR, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.
  - Step 2** Select a client.
  - Step 3** From the **More** drop-down list, choose **Detecting APs**.
  - Step 4** Click **Go**.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Viewing Client Location History](#)

## Viewing Client Location History

To display the history of the client location based on RF fingerprinting, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.
  - Step 2** Select a client.
  - Step 3** From the **More** drop-down list, choose **Location History**.
  - Step 4** Click **Go**.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Viewing Voice Metrics for a Client](#)

## Viewing Voice Metrics for a Client

To view traffic stream metrics for this client, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.

**Step 2** Select a client.

**Step 3** From the **More** drop-down list, choose **Voice Metrics**.

**Step 4** Click **Go**.

The following information appears:

- Time—Time that the statistics were gathered from the access point(s).
  - QoS
  - AP Ethernet MAC
  - Radio
  - % PLR (Downlink)—Percentage of packets lost on the downlink (access point to client) during the 90 second interval.
  - % PLR (Uplink)—Percentage of packets lost on the uplink (client to access point) during the 90 second interval.
  - Avg Queuing Delay (ms) (Uplink)—Average queuing delay in milliseconds for the uplink. Average packet queuing delay is the average delay of voice packets traversing the voice queue. Packet queue delay is measured beginning when a packet is queued for transmission and ending when the packet is successfully transmitted. It includes time for re-tries, if needed.
  - % Packets > 40 ms Queuing Delay (Downlink)—Percentage of queuing delay packets greater than 40 ms.
  - % Packets 20ms—40ms Queuing Delay (Downlink)—Percentage of queuing delay packets greater than 20 ms.
  - Roaming Delay—Roaming delay in milliseconds. Roaming delay, which is measured by clients, is measured beginning when the last packet is received from the old access point and ending when the first packet is received from the new access point after a successful roam.
- 

#### Related Topic

- [Viewing Client Location History](#)



# Performance Routing Version 3 Based Network Monitoring

---

## Performance Routing

Performance Routing Version 3 (PFRv3) represents the third generation of enhancement to the intelligent path control capabilities offered by Cisco. PFR monitors network performance and selects the best path for each application based upon advanced criteria such as reachability, delay, jitter and packet loss. PFR can evenly distribute traffic to maintain equivalent link utilization levels using an advanced load balancing technique.

PFRv3 is an intelligent path control of the IWAN initiative and provides a business-class WAN over Internet transports. PFR allows customers to protect critical applications from fluctuating WAN performance while intelligently load balancing traffic over all WAN paths.

PfR comprises two major Cisco IOS components:

- **Master Controller** —The Master Controller is a policy decision point at which policies are defined and applied to various traffic classes that traverse the Border Router systems. The Master Controller can be configured to learn and control traffic classes on the network.
- **Border Routers (BR)**— Border Routers are in the data forwarding path. The BR collects data from the Performance Monitor cache and from the smart probe results. The BR influences the packet forwarding path as directed by the master controller to manage user traffic.

## Getting Access to PFR Monitoring for a User Group

PfR monitoring is enabled for the Prime Infrastructure *root* user group by default.



To access the PFR monitoring landing page by other user groups, do the following:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > User, Roles & AAA > User**.
  - Step 2** Click **Users** in the left pane, and choose **Select a command > Add User**, then click **Go**.
  - Step 3** Enter the username and password, and then confirm the password, for the new user.
  - Step 4** Assign user group to the new user by selecting the check box next to each user group which has PFR Monitoring Access entry in its task list.
  - Step 5** Click **Save**.
  - Step 6** Log in to Prime Infrastructure using the new Username and Password.

- Step 7** Choose **Services > Application Visibility & Control > PfR Monitoring**.
  - Step 8** If you do not see PfR Monitoring, go to **Administration > User, Roles & AAA > User Groups**.
  - Step 9** Click **Task List** corresponding to the assigned user group and check whether PfR Monitoring is available.
  - Step 10** If PfR Monitoring is not available in the task list, click the **Task Permissions** tab and check the **PfR Monitoring Access** check box under the **Network Monitoring** list.
  - Step 11** Click **Submit**.
- 

## PfR Monitoring Landing Page

You can launch the PfR monitoring landing page by choosing **Services > Application Visibility & Control > PfR Monitoring**. The PfR landing page includes Site to Site PfR Events table, a filter panel, Metrics panel (Metrics Crossing Thresholds versus Service Provider(s)), and a time slider.

By default, **Auto Refresh Enabled** is selected so the PfR landing page is refreshed every five minutes. Hover your mouse over the Refresh icon  next to the **Auto Refresh Enabled** check box to know the time till next refresh. You can also manually refresh the PfR landing page by clicking the Refresh icon  at the top right corner of the PfR landing page.

### Related Topics

- [Site to Site PfR Events Table](#)
- [PfR Filter Panel](#)
- [Metrics Crossing Thresholds Vs Service Provider\(s\)](#)
- [Time Slider](#)

## Site to Site PfR Events Table

The Site to Site PfR events table displays site to site PfR events including Threshold Crossing Alert (TCA), Route change (RC) and Immitigable event (IME). The PfR events that occurred over last 72 hours are displayed, by default.

The events are represented by red and blue dots in the Site to Site PfR events table. The metric violations that could not be corrected by the PfR are classified as IME and indicated as red dots in the table. The degraded network performance that are identified and corrected by PfR are indicated by blue dots.

The events in the table are sorted such that the site combinations with maximum number of IMEs, is present at top row of the table. If two site combinations have equal number of IMEs, then the one with maximum number of events (including IME, TCA, and RC) is placed on the top of the table and indicated in red color. You can view the site hierarchy by hovering the mouse over the source and destination sites. You can search the events based on the site name, RC or TCA or IME by entering the search criteria in the **Search** box.

### Related Topics

- [PfR Monitoring Landing Page](#)
- [Site to Site PfR Events Table](#)
- [Metrics Crossing Thresholds Vs Service Provider\(s\)](#)

- [Time Slider](#)

## PfR Filter Panel

The PfR Filter Panel allows you to filter events based on time filter, location group filter, event filter, and service provider filter. The Metrics panel and the Site to Site PfR Events table display the details based on the selected filter options.

[Table 13-1](#) displays the filter options available in the Filter panel.

**Table 13-1** Filter Options

Filter Options	Description
Time Filter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The default filter time is 72 hours. You can choose any of the preset filter time.</li> <li>• The <b>Custom</b> option allows you to select the <b>From</b> and <b>To</b> dates and time.</li> <li>• You can also use the <b>Jump To</b> option available adjacent to the filter icon, to set the filter time.</li> </ul>
Location Group filter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allows you to select the <b>From Site</b> and <b>To Site</b>.</li> <li>• You can select either a parent site or a child site. If you select a parent site, the PfR events table will display the details of the parent and all its children.</li> </ul>
Events Filter	<p>You can choose one or more of the following events:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Threshold Crossing Alert (TCA)—Generated by BR, whenever there is an Unreachability, Delay, Jitter or Packet loss, based on the Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP).</li> <li>• Route Change (RC) Event—Generated whenever there is a route change to rectify a TCA.</li> <li>• Immitigable Event (IME)— An IME is generated whenever an RC fails and the traffic violation could not be corrected.</li> </ul>
Service Provider Filter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Displays the list of service providers based on the BR NetFlow data and allows to select one or more service provider.</li> </ul>

You can view the selected filter options in the top of the filter panel. You can click **more** to view all the selected filter options.

### Related Topics

- [PfR Monitoring Landing Page](#)
- [Metrics Crossing Thresholds Vs Service Provider\(s\)](#)
- [Site to Site PfR Events Table](#)
- [Time Slider](#)

## Metrics Crossing Thresholds Vs Service Provider(s)

The Metrics panel displays the metrics gathered using the TCA, as charts. Each service provider is represented by a unique color in the chart. The charts available in the Metrics panel are:

- Unreachability over time
- Maximum Delay over time
- Maximum Jitter over time

- Maximum Packet loss% over time

A particular service provider may not have TCA, but may have RC events occurring when a route changes from the other service provider to the selected service provider. The Metrics panel may not show any graphs for the particular service provider whereas the PfR events table shows the RC events of the service provider.

#### Related Topics

- [PfR Monitoring Landing Page](#)
- [Site to Site PfR Events Table](#)
- [Site to Site PfR Events Table](#)
- [Time Slider](#)

## Time Slider

A time slider present at the bottom of the page, represents the time range selected using the filter. You can drag the slider and set a particular time range. The Metrics Panels and the Site to Site PfR events table change corresponding to the set time range.

#### Related Topics

- [PfR Monitoring Landing Page](#)
- [PfR Site To Site Details Page](#)
- [Metrics Crossing Thresholds Vs Service Provider\(s\)](#)
- [Site to Site PfR Events Table](#)

## PfR Site To Site Details Page

A PfR events pop-up window appears when you click an event (dot) in the Site to Site PfR Events table. The pop-up window displays the events occurred in the selected time range and the number of occurrences of each event.

Click the **Click here for site to site details** in the pop-up window to view the site to site details page that includes **Site to Site Topology**, **Threshold Crossing Alert(s)**, **Route Change Event(s)**, and **Immitigable** tabs.

[Table 13-2](#) displays the details of the PfR Events.

**Table 13-2** PfR Events Details

Tabs	Details displayed under each tab
Site to Site Topology	The site to site network topology monitored by PfR V3 is schematically represented by a Sankey diagram.
Threshold Crossing Alerts	Time at which the events occurred, Border Router, WAN Interface, Service Provider, DSCP, Byte Loss (%), Packet Loss (%), Delay (ms), Jitter (ms), and Reachability.

Table 13-2 PfR Events Details

Tabs	Details displayed under each tab
Route Change Events	Time at which the events occurred, Border Router, WAN Interface, Service Provider, DSCP, Application.
Immitigable Events	Time at which the events occurred, Service Provider, Number of Performance Violations, and Number of Bandwidth Violations.

**Related Topics**

- [Site to Site PfR Topology](#)
- [Viewing Link Context page](#)
- [Viewing Device Context Page](#)

## Site to Site PfR Topology

The site to site network topology monitored by PfR V3 is schematically represented by a Sankey diagram. The topology is plotted based on the data for a minimum of 72 hours, even if you select a time frame of less than 72 hours using the time filter.

The site to site topology consists of nodes representing BR, master controller, and service provider. The egress and ingress orange links represent the WAN link connectivity between BR and service provider, and blue links connect the BR and master controller. The color of the link does not indicate the link state or the bandwidth utilization.

If the inventory collection is not proper or if a user is not authorized to access the node (as per Role Based Access Control), the node is dimmed and you cannot click the node and the corresponding links.

Click a node to view the device metrics pop-up window from where you can navigate to the corresponding device context page. Click **Launch Device Dashboard** link in the device metrics pop-up window to view the Device dashlets in the Performance dashboard. See Performance Dashboard in Related Topics.

Similarly, click a link to view the link metrics pop-up window from where you can navigate to the link context page. Click **Launch Interface Dashboard** link in the **Link Metrics** pop-up window to view the Interface dashlets in the Performance dashboard.

**Related Topics**

- [PfR Site To Site Details Page](#)
- [Comparing WAN Interfaces](#)
- [Viewing Device Context Page](#)
- [Viewing Link Context page](#)
- [Performance Dashboards](#)

## Viewing Device Context Page

The device context page displays the Border Router Metrics and WAN link Usage and Performance.

- 
- Step 1** Click a node in the Sankey diagram.

The device metrics pop-up window showing CPU Utilization and Memory Utilization appears.

- Step 2** Click **Analyze** in the device metrics pop-up window to view the device context page. You can see:
- **Border Router Metrics**—Displays three charts in which the utilization of service provider, memory and CPU are plotted for the selected time range. In the CPU and memory utilization charts, click the CPU and memory modules to know their utilization. Click the zoom icon to see the enlarged view of the chart. You can further enlarge the chart to view the data pattern in a specific time interval by moving the slider.
  - **WAN Link Usage and Performance**—Displays a table that shows WAN link usage and performance with respect to DSCP markings, for the WAN interfaces of the selected border router. The data includes Egress Bandwidth (B/W) usage, number of TCAs, RCs and IMEs occurred and the number of applications associated to DSCP markings. The number of applications is visible only if AVC NetFlow is received by Prime Infrastructure for this WAN link.
- Step 3** Click the Expand arrow adjacent to the Traffic Class in the WAN Link Usage and Performance table to view and compare the Egress Bandwidth Utilization over time and Top Application traffic over time for that traffic class.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [PfR Site To Site Details Page](#)
- [Site to Site PfR Events Table](#)
- [Viewing Link Context page](#)
- [Comparing WAN Interfaces](#)

## Viewing Link Context page

The link context page displays WAN Link Metrics and WAN Link Usage and Performance details.

---

- Step 1** Click Egress orange link in the Sankey diagram.
- The **Link Metrics** pop-up window comprising Egress B/W utilization, Interface Tx/Rx utilization, Maximum one-way delay, Maximum packet loss%, and Maximum Jitter appears.
- Step 2** Click Ingress orange link in the Sankey diagram.
- The **Link Metrics** pop-up window comprising Ingress B/W utilization and Interface Tx/Rx utilization appears.
- Step 3** Click **Analyze** in the **Link Metrics** pop-up window to view the link context page. You can see:
- **WAN Link Metrics**—Displays WAN Link B/W Usage Over Time, Top 5 Application Traffic Over Time, and Top QOS Class Map Statistics Trend charts. Click the zoom icon to view the enlarged view of the chart. You can further enlarge the chart to view the data pattern in a specific time interval by moving the slider.
  - **WAN Link Usage and Performance**—Displays a table that shows WAN Link Usage and Performance with respect to DSCP markings, for the WAN interface. The data includes Egress Bandwidth (B/W) usage, number of TCAs, RCs and IMEs occurred and the number of applications associated to DSCP markings. The number of applications is visible only if AVC NetFlow is received by Prime Infrastructure for this WAN link.



- Step 4** Click the Expand arrow adjacent to the Traffic Class in the WAN Link Usage and Performance table to view the Egress Bandwidth Utilization over time and Top Application traffic over time for that traffic class.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [PfR Site To Site Details Page](#)
- [Site to Site PfR Topology](#)
- [Viewing Device Context Page](#)
- [Comparing WAN Interfaces](#)

## Comparing WAN Interfaces

The Compare WAN Interfaces page shows the WAN link usage and performance of the selected WAN interfaces.

---

- Step 1** Click **Compare WAN Interfaces** in top right corner of the PfR Landing Page.
- Step 2** In the Compare WAN Interfaces page, click the filter icon to view the Time Filter, if required.
- Step 3** In the Compare WAN Interfaces page, choose the **Source Site, Border Router** and **WAN Interface/Service Provider** details and click **Compare**.

You can view the WAN Link Usage and Performance table that compares the Egress Bandwidth (B/W) usage, number of TCAs, RCs and IMEs occurred and number of applications routed, for the selected WAN Interfaces.

- Step 4** Click **Reset** to reset an individual comparison group or click **Reset All** to reset all the three comparison groups, if required.
- 

You can also click **Compare WAN Links** in the device metrics pop-up window in the Sankey diagram to view the Compare WAN Interfaces page. The BR and WAN Interface details get automatically populated based on the device from which the page is launched.

**Related Topics**

- [PfR Site To Site Details Page](#)
- [Site to Site PfR Topology](#)
- [Viewing Link Context page](#)





## Monitoring Wireless Technologies

---

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Monitoring Radio Resource Management](#)
- [Monitoring Interferers](#)
- [Monitoring Media Streams](#)
- [Troubleshooting Unjoined Access Points](#)
- [Monitoring Chokepoints](#)
- [Monitoring WiFi TDOA Receivers](#)

### Monitoring Radio Resource Management

The operating system security solution uses the Radio Resource Management (RRM) function to continuously monitor all nearby access points to automatically discover rogue access points.

RRM, built into the Cisco Unified Wireless Network, monitors and dynamically corrects performance issues found in the RF environment.

Prime Infrastructure would receive traps whenever a change in the transmit power of the access point or channel occurred. These trap events or similar events such as RF regrouping were logged into Prime Infrastructure events as informational and were maintained by the event dispatcher. The reason behind the transmit power or channel changes (such as signals from neighboring access points, interference, noise, load, and the like) were not evident. You could not view these events and statistics to then perform troubleshooting practices.

RRM statistics help to identify trouble spots and provide possible reasons for channel or power-level changes. The dashboard provides network-wide RRM performance statistics and predicts reasons for channel changes based on event groupings. The event groupings may include the following:

- Worst performing access points
- Configuration mismatch between controllers in the same RF group
- Coverage holes that were detected by access points based on threshold
- Precoverage holes that were detected by controllers
- Ratios of access points operating at maximum power



**Note**

---

RRM dashboard information is available only for lightweight access points.

---

## Channel Change Notifications

Notifications are sent to the Prime Infrastructure RRM dashboard when a channel change occurs. Channel changes depend on the Dynamic Channel Assignment (DCA) configuration where the mode can be set to auto or on demand. When the mode is auto, channel assignment is periodically updated for all lightweight access points that permit this operation. When the mode is set to on demand, channel assignments are updated based on request. If the DCA is static, no dynamic channel assignments occur, and values are set to their global defaults.

When a channel change trap is received after an earlier channel change, the event is marked as Channel Revised; otherwise, it is marked as Channel Changed. A channel change event can have multiple causes. The reason code is factored and equated to 1, irrespective of the number of reasons that are possible. For example, suppose a channel change might be caused by signal, interference, or noise. The reason code in the notification is refactored across the reasons. If the event had three causes, the reason code is refactored to 1/3 or 0.33 per reason. If ten channel change events have the same reason code, all three reasons are equally factored to determine the cause of the channel change.

## Transmission Power Change Notifications

Notifications are sent to the Prime Infrastructure RRM dashboard when transmission power changes occur. Each event for transmit power changes is caused by multiple reasons. The reason code is factored and equated to one, irrespective of the number of reasons for the event to occur.

## RF Grouping Notifications

When RRM is run on the controller, dynamic grouping is done and a new group leader is chosen. Dynamic grouping has three modes: Automatic, Off, and Leader. When grouping is Off, no dynamic grouping occurs, and each switch optimizes only its own lightweight access point parameters. When grouping is Automatic, switches form groups and elect leaders to perform better dynamic parameter optimization. With automatic grouping, configured intervals (in seconds) represent the period with which the grouping algorithm is run. (Grouping algorithms also run when the group contents change and automatic grouping is enabled.)

## RRM Dashboard

The RRM dashboard is available at **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Radio Resource Management**.

The dashboard is made up of the following parts:

- The RRM RF Group Summary shows the number of different RF groups. To get the latest number of RF Groups, run the configuration synchronization background task.
- The RRM Statistics portion shows network-wide statistics.
- The Channel Change Reason portion shows why channels changed for all 802.11a/b/g/n radios.
  - Signal—The channel changed because it improved the channel quality for some other neighbor radio(s). Improving the channel quality for some other neighbor radio(s) improved the channel plan of the system as evaluated by the algorithm.
  - WiFi Interference

- Load
  - Radar
  - Noise
  - Persistent Non-WiFi Interference
  - Major Air Quality Event
  - Other
- The Channel Change shows all events complete with causes and reasons.
  - The Configuration Mismatch portion shows comparisons between leaders and members.
  - The Coverage Hole portion rates how severe the coverage holes are and gives their location.
  - The Percent Time at Maximum Power shows what percent of time the access points were at maximum power and gives the location of those access points.

The following statistics are displayed:

- Total Channel Changes—The sum total of channel changes across 802.11a/b/g/n radios, irrespective of whether the channel was updated or revised. The count is split over a 24-hour and 7-day period. If you click the percentages link or the link under the 24-hour column, a page with details for that access point only appears.
- Total Configuration Mismatches—The total number of configuration mismatches detected over a 24-hour period.
- Total Coverage Hole Events—The total number of coverage hole events over a 24-hour and 7-day period.
- Number of RF Groups—The total number of RF groups (derived from all of the controllers which are currently managed by Prime Infrastructure).
- Configuration Mismatch—The configuration mismatch over a 24-hour period by RF group with details on the group leader.
- APs at MAX Power—The percentage of access points with 802.11a/n radios as a total percentage across all access points which are at maximum power. The maximum power levels are preset and are derived with reference to the preset value.

Maximum power is shown in three areas of the RRM dashboard. This maximum power portion shows the current value and is poll driven.

- Channel Change Causes—A graphical bar chart for 802.11a/n radios. The chart is factored based on the reason for channel change. The chart is divided into two parts, each depicting the percentage of weighted reasons causing the event to occur over a 24-hour and 7-day period. Each event for channel change can be caused by multiple reasons, and the weight is equally divided across these reasons. The net reason code is factored and equated to one irrespective of the number of reasons for the event to occur.
- Channel Change - APs with channel changes—Each event for channel change includes the MAC address of the lightweight access point. For each reason code, you are given the most channel changes that occurred for the 802.11a/n access point based on the weighted reason for channel events. This count is split over a 24-hour and 7-day period.
- Coverage Hole - APs reporting coverage holes—The top five access points filtered by IF Type 11 a/n which triggered a coverage hole event (threshold based) are displayed.
- Aggregated Percent Max Power APs—A graphical progressive chart of the total percentage of 802.11a/n lightweight access points which are operating at maximum power to accommodate coverage holes events. The count is split over a 24-hour and 7-day period.

This maximum power portion shows the values from the last 24 hours and is poll driven. This occurs every 15 minutes or as configured for radio performance.

- **Percent Time at Maximum Power**—A list of the top five 802.11a/n lightweight access points which have been operating at maximum power.

This maximum power portion shows the value from the last 24 hours and is event driven.

## Monitoring Interferers

In the **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Interferers** page, you can monitor interference devices detected by CleanAir-enabled access points. By default, the Monitoring AP Detected Interferers page is displayed.

Table 14-1 lists the menu paths to follow to monitor interferers.

**Table 14-1** Menu Paths to Monitor Interferers

To See...	Go To...
AP-detected interferers	<b>Monitor &gt; Wireless Technologies &gt; Interferers</b>
AP-detected interferer details	<b>Monitor &gt; Wireless Technologies &gt; Interferers &gt; Interferer ID</b>
AP-detected interferer details location history	<b>Monitor &gt; Wireless Technologies &gt; Interferers &gt; Interferer ID</b> , then choose <b>Select a command &gt; Location History</b> and click <b>Go</b>

### Related topics

- [Field Reference for AP-detected interferers](#)
- [Field Reference for AP-detected interferer details](#)
- [Field Reference for AP-detected interferer details location history](#)

## Configuring the Search Results Display

The Edit View page allows you to add, remove, or reorder columns in the AP Detected Interferers Summary page. To edit the columns in the AP Detected Interferers page, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Interferers**. The AP Detected Interferers page appears showing details of the interferers detected by the CleanAir-enabled access points.
- Step 2** Click the **Edit View** link.
- Step 3** To add an additional column to the access points table, click to highlight the column heading in the left column. Click **Show** to move the heading to the right column. All items in the right column are displayed in the table.
- Step 4** To remove a column from the access points table, click to highlight the column heading in the right column. Click **Hide** to move the heading to the left column. All items in the left column are not displayed in the table.
- Step 5** Use the **Up/Down** buttons to specify the order in which the information appears in the table. Highlight the desired column heading and click **Up** or **Down** to move it higher or lower in the current list.

- Step 6** Click **Reset** to restore the default view.
- Step 7** Click **Submit** to confirm the changes.
- 

## Monitoring RFID Tags

The **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > RFID Tags** page allows you to monitor tag status and location on Prime Infrastructure maps as well as review tag details.

This page is only available in the Location version of Prime Infrastructure.

This section provides information on the tags detected by the location appliance.

The Tag Summary page is available at **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > RFID Tags**.

## Searching RFID Tags

Use the Prime Infrastructure Advanced Search feature to find specific tags or all tags.

To search for tags:

---

- Step 1** Click **Advanced Search**.
- Step 2** From the Search Category drop-down list, choose **Tags**.
- Step 3** Enter the required information. Note that search fields sometimes change, depending on the category chosen.
- Step 4** Click **Go**.
- 

## Checking RFID Tag Search Results

To check the search results, click the MAC address of a tag location on a search results page.

Note the following:

- The Tag Vendor option does not appear when Asset Name, Asset Category, Asset Group, or MAC Address is the search criterion.
- Only vendor tags that support telemetry appear.
- The Telemetry data option appears only when MSE (select for location servers), Floor Area, or Outdoor Area is selected as the “Search for tags by” option.
- Telemetry data displayed is vendor-specific; however, some commonly reported details are GPS location, battery extended information, pressure, temperature, humidity, motion, status, and emergency code.
- Asset Information, Statistics, Location, and Location Notification details are displayed.
- Only CCX v1 compliant tags are displayed for emergency data.

## Viewing Tag List

Click the **Total Tags number** link to view the Tags List for the applicable device name. The Tag List contains the MAC address, asset details, vendor name, mobility services engine, controller, battery status, and map location.

## Monitoring Media Streams

To monitor the media streams configurations, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Media Streams**. The Media Streams page appears showing the list of media streams configured across controllers.

The Media Streams page contains a table with the following columns:

- Stream Name—Media Stream name.
- Start IP—Starting IP address of the media stream for which the multicast direct feature is enabled.
- End IP—Ending IP address of the media stream for which the multicast direct feature is enabled.
- State—Operational state of the media stream.
- Max Bandwidth—Indicates the maximum bandwidth that is assigned to the media stream.
- Priority—Indicates the priority bit set in the media stream. The priority can be any number from 1 to 8. A lower value indicates a higher priority. For example, a priority of 1 is highest and a value of 8 is the lowest.
- Violation—Indicates the action to be performed in case of a violation. The possible values are as follows:
  - Drop—Indicates that a stream is dropped on periodic reevaluation.
  - Best Effort—Indicates that a stream is demoted to best-effort class on periodic reevaluations.
- Policy—Indicates the media stream policy. The possible values are Admit or Deny.
- Controllers—Indicates the number of controllers that use the specified media stream.
- Clients—Indicates the number of clients that use the specified media stream.

- Step 2** To view the media stream details, click a media stream name in the Stream column. The Media Streams page appears.

The Media Streams page displays the following group boxes:

- Media Stream Details—Displays the media stream configuration information. This includes the Name, Start Address, End Address, Maximum Bandwidth, Operational Status, Average Packet Size, RRC Updates, Priority, and Violation.
- Statistics—Displays the number of controllers and number of clients that use the selected media stream. Click the controller count to access the list of controllers that use the selected media stream.
- Error—Displays the error, Worst AP, and corresponding floor map for that AP.
- Client Counts—Displays the number of clients for each period.
- Failed Client Counts—Displays the number of clients that failed for each period.



The client information is presented in a time-based graph. For graphs that are time-based, there is a link bar at the top of the graph page that displays 6h, 1d, 1w, 2w, 4w, 3m, 6m, 1y, and Custom. When selected, the data for that time frame is retrieved and the corresponding graph is displayed.

---

## Troubleshooting Unjoined Access Points


When a lightweight access point initially starts up, it attempts to discover and join a wireless LAN controller. After joining the wireless controller, the access point updates its software image if needed and receives all the configuration details for the device and network. After successfully joining the wireless controller, the access point can be discovered and managed by Prime Infrastructure. Until the access point successfully joins a wireless controller the access point cannot be managed by Prime Infrastructure and does not contain the proper configuration settings to allow client access.

Prime Infrastructure provides you with a tool that diagnoses why an access point cannot join a controller and lists corrective actions.

The Unjoined AP page displays a list of access points that have not joined any wireless controllers. All gathered information about the unjoined access point is included in the page. This includes name, MAC address, IP address, controller name and IP address, switch and port that the access point is attached to, and any join failure reason if known.

To troubleshoot unjoined access points, do the following:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Unjoined Access Points**. The Unjoined APs page appears containing a list of access points that have not been able to join a wireless controller.
  - Step 2** Select the access point that you wish to diagnose, then click **Troubleshoot**. An analysis is run on the access point to determine the reason why the access point was not able to join a wireless controller. After performing the analysis, the Unjoined APs page displays the results.
  - Step 3** If the access point has tried to join multiple wireless controllers and has been unsuccessful, the controllers are listed in the left pane. Select a controller.
  - Step 4** In the middle pane, you can view what the problem is. It will also list error messages and controller log information.
  - Step 5** In the right pane, recommendations for solving the problems are listed. Perform the recommended action.
  - Step 6** If you need to further diagnose a problem, you can run RTTS through the Unjoined AP page. This allows you to see the debug messages from all the wireless controllers that the access point tried to join at one time.

To run RTTS, click the RTTS icon (  ) located to the right of the table. The debug messages appear in the table. You can then examine the messages to see if you can determine a cause for the access point not being able to join the controllers.

---

# Monitoring Chokepoints

Chokepoints are low-frequency transmitting devices. When a tag passes within range of a placed chokepoint, the low-frequency field awakens the tag, which, in turn, sends a message over the Cisco Unified Wireless Network that includes the chokepoint device ID. The transmitted message includes sensor information (such as temperature and pressure). A chokepoint location system provides room-level accuracy (ranging from few inches to 2 feet, depending on the vendor).

Chokepoints are installed and configured as recommended by the chokepoint vendor. After the chokepoint is installed and operational, it can be entered into the location database and plotted on a Prime Infrastructure map.

## Related Topic

- [Field Reference for Chokepoints Page](#)

## Adding a Chokepoint to the Prime Infrastructure Database

To add a chokepoint to the Prime Infrastructure database:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Chokepoints**.
  - Step 2** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Chokepoint**.
  - Step 3** Click **Go**.
  - Step 4** Enter the MAC address and name for the chokepoint.
  - Step 5** Specify either an entry or exit chokepoint.
  - Step 6** Enter the coverage range for the chokepoint.

Chokepoint range is a visual representation only. It is product-specific. The actual range must be configured separately using the applicable chokepoint vendor software.

- Step 7** Click **Save**.

After the chokepoint is added to the database, it can be placed on the appropriate Prime Infrastructure floor map.

---

## Adding a Chokepoint to a Prime Infrastructure Map

To add a chokepoint to a map:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Wireless Maps > Site Maps**.
  - Step 2** In the Maps page, click the link that corresponds to the floor location of the chokepoint.
  - Step 3** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Chokepoints**.
  - Step 4** Click **Go**.

The Add Chokepoints summary page lists all recently added chokepoints that are in the database but not yet mapped.

- Step 5** Select the check box next to the chokepoint that you want to place on the map.

- Step 6** Click **OK**.
- A map appears with a chokepoint icon located in the top-left corner. You are now ready to place the chokepoint on the map.
- Step 7** Click the chokepoint icon and drag it to the proper location.
- The MAC address, name, and coverage range of the chokepoint appear in the selected chokepoints detail page when you click the chokepoint icon for placement.
- Step 8** Click **Save**.
- The newly created chokepoint icon might or might not appear on the map, depending on the display settings for that floor. The rings around the chokepoint icon indicate the coverage area. When a CCX tag and its asset passes within the coverage area, location details are broadcast, and the tag is automatically mapped on the chokepoint coverage circle. When the tag moves out of the chokepoint range, its location is calculated as before and is no longer mapped on the chokepoint rings.
- MAC address, name, entry/exit chokepoint, static IP address, and range of the chokepoint display when you hover your mouse cursor over its map icon.
- Step 9** If the chokepoint does not appear on the map, select the **Chokepoints** check box located in the Floor Settings menu.
- Do not select the **Save Settings** check box unless you want to save this display criteria for all maps.
- Step 10** Synchronize network design to the mobility services engine or location server to push chokepoint information.
- 

## Removing a Chokepoint from the Prime Infrastructure Database

To remove a chokepoint from the Prime Infrastructure database:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Chokepoints**.
- Step 2** Select the check box of the chokepoint that you want to delete.
- Step 3** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Remove Chokepoints**.
- Step 4** Click **Go**.
- Step 5** Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
- 

## Removing a Chokepoint from a Prime Infrastructure Map

To remove a chokepoint from a Prime Infrastructure map:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Wireless Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** In the Maps page, click the link that corresponds to the floor location of the chokepoint.
- Step 3** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Remove Chokepoints**.
- Step 4** Click **Go**.

**Step 5** Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.

---

## Editing a Chokepoint

To edit a chokepoint in the Prime Infrastructure database and the appropriate map:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Chokepoints**.

**Step 2** In the MAC Address column, click the chokepoint that you want to edit.

**Step 3** Edit the parameters that you want to change.

The chokepoint range is product-specific and is supplied by the chokepoint vendor.

**Step 4** Click **Save**.

---

## Monitoring WiFi TDOA Receivers

The WiFi TDOA receiver is an external system designed to receive signals transmitted from a tagged, tracked asset. These signals are then forwarded to the mobility services engine to aid in the location calculation of the asset.

## Enhancing Tag Location Reporting with WiFi TDOA Receivers

TDOA receivers use the method of Time Difference of Arrival (TDOA) to calculate tag location. This method uses data from a minimum of three TDOA receivers to generate a tagged asset location.



### Note

- If a TDOA receiver is not in use and the partner engine software is resident on the mobility service engine, then the location calculations for tags are generated using RSSI readings from access points.
  - The Cisco Tag engine can calculate the tag location using the RSSI readings from access points.
- 

Before using a TDOA receiver within the Cisco Unified Wireless Network, you must perform the following steps:

1. Have a mobility services engine active in the network. See [Adding MSEs to Prime Infrastructure](#).
2. Add the TDOA receiver to Prime Infrastructure database and map. See [Adding WiFi TDOA Receivers to Prime Infrastructure and Maps](#).
3. Activate or start the partner engine service on the MSE using Prime Infrastructure.
4. Synchronize Prime Infrastructure and mobility services engines. See [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and MSE](#).
5. Set up the TDOA receiver using the AeroScout System Manager. See the AeroScout Context-Aware Engine for Tags, for Cisco Mobility Services Engine User's Guide for configuration details at the following URL:  
<http://support.aeroscout.com>.

## Adding WiFi TDOA Receivers to Prime Infrastructure and Maps

After the WiFi TDOA receiver is installed and configured by the AeroScout System Manager and the partner software is downloaded on the mobility services engine, you are ready to add the TDOA receiver to the mobility services engine database and position it on a Prime Infrastructure map.

After adding TDOA receivers to Prime Infrastructure maps, you continue to make configuration changes to the TDOA receivers using the AeroScout System Manager application rather than Prime Infrastructure.

For more details on configuration options, see the AeroScout Context-Aware Engine for Tags, for Cisco Mobility Services Engine User Guide at the following URL:

<http://support.aeroscout.com>.

To add a TDOA receiver to the Prime Infrastructure database and the appropriate map:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > WiFi TDOA Receivers** to open the All WiFi TDOA Receivers summary page.

To view or edit current WiFi TDOA receiver details, click the MAC Address link to open the details page.

**Step 2** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add WiFi TDOA Receivers**.

**Step 3** Click **Go**.

**Step 4** Enter the MAC address, name, and static IP address of the TDOA receiver.

**Step 5** Click **Save** to save the TDOA receiver entry to the database.



---

**Note** A WiFi TDOA Receiver must be configured separately using the receiver vendor software.

---

**Step 6** Choose **Maps > Wireless Maps > Site Maps**.

**Step 7** In the Maps page, select the link that corresponds to the floor location of the TDOA receiver.

**Step 8** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add WiFi TDOA receivers**.

**Step 9** Click **Go**.

The All WiFi TDOA Receivers summary page lists all recently-added TDOA receivers that are in the database but not yet mapped.

**Step 10** Select the check box next to each TDOA receiver to add it to the map.

**Step 11** Click **OK**.

A map appears with a TDOA receiver icon located in the top-left corner. You are now ready to place the TDOA receiver on the map.

**Step 12** Click the TDOA receiver icon and drag it to the proper location on the floor map.

**Step 13** Click **Save**.

The icon for the newly added TDOA receiver might or might not appear on the map depending on the display settings for that floor. If the icon did not appear, proceed with [Step 14](#).

**Step 14** If the TDOA receiver does not appear on the map, click **Layers** to collapse a selection menu of possible elements to display on the map.

**Step 15** Select the **WiFi TDOA Receivers** check box.

When you hover your mouse cursor over a TDOA receiver on a map, configuration details appear for that receiver.

**Step 16** Click **X** to close the Layers page.

Do not choose **Save Settings** from the Layers menu unless you want to save this display criteria for all maps.

**Step 17** Download the partner engine software to the mobility services engine.

---



## Using Monitoring Tools

---

- [Monitoring Wireless Voice Audit](#)
- [Monitoring Wireless Voice Diagnostics](#)
- [Monitoring Wireless Configuration Audit](#)
- [Monitoring Autonomous AP Migration Analysis](#)
- [Monitoring Location Accuracy](#)
- [Monitoring Packet Capture](#)

### Monitoring Wireless Voice Audit

Prime Infrastructure provides a voice auditing mechanism to check controller configuration and to ensure that any deviation from the deployment guidelines is highlighted as an Audit Violation. You can run a voice audit on a maximum of 50 controllers in a single operation.

To run the voice audit:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor** > **Tools** > **Wireless Voice Audit**.
  - Step 2** Click the **Controllers** tab, and complete the fields as described in the Voice Audit Field Descriptions section in the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide](#).
  - Step 3** Click the **Rules** tab.
  - Step 4** In the VoWLAN SSID text box, type the applicable VoWLAN SSID.



**Note** The red circle indicates an invalid rule (due to insufficient data). The green circle indicates a valid rule.

---

- Step 5** Do either of the following:
    - To save the configuration without running a report, click **Save**.
    - To save the configuration and run a report, click **Save and Run**.
  - Step 6** Click the **Report** tab to view the report results.
-

# Monitoring Wireless Voice Diagnostics

The Voice Diagnostic tool is an interactive tool that diagnoses voice calls in real time. This tool reports call control errors, clients' roaming history, and the total number of active calls accepted and rejected by an associated AP.

The Voice Diagnostic test is provisioned for multiple controllers; that is, if the AP is associated with more than one controller during roaming, the Voice Diagnostic tool tests all associated controllers. Prime Infrastructure supports testing on controllers whose APs are placed on up to three floors. For example, a Prime Infrastructure map might have floors 1 to 4, with all APs associated to controllers (WLC1, WLC2, WLC3, and WLC4) and placed on the Prime Infrastructure map. If a client on any AP is associated with WLC1 on the first floor and a Voice Diagnostic test is started for that client, a test is also provisioned on WLC2 and WLC3.

The Voice Diagnostic page lists prior test runs, if any. For information about the fields on this page, see the Voice Diagnostic Field Descriptions section in the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide](#).

From the Select a command from the drop-down list, you can start a new test, check the results of an existing test, or delete a test.

**Note**

To support roaming, the tool figures out controllers in the same building as of client's associated AP building and adds to all controller's watchlist. The tool looks for controllers in +/-5 floors from client's current association A's location to configure on controllers. Configuration on controller's watchlist is done for 10 minutes. After 10 minutes controller will remove the entry from the watchlist.

To run a Voice Diagnostic test:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Tools > Wireless Voice Diagnostic**.
- Step 2** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose the New test and click **Go**.
- 
- Note** You can configure a maximum of two clients for voice call diagnosis. Both clients can be on the same call or can be on a different call.
- 
- Step 3** Enter a test name and the length of time to monitor the voice call.
- Step 4** Enter the MAC address of the device for which you want to run the voice diagnostic test.
- Step 5** Select a device type; if you select a custom phone, enter an RSSI range.
- Step 6** Click **StartTest**.
- 

# Monitoring Wireless Configuration Audit

Choose **Monitor > Tools > Wireless Configuration Audit** to launch the Configuration Audit Summary page.

This page provides a summary of the following:

- Total Enforced Config Groups—Templates that are configured for Background Audit and are enforcement enabled.



- Total Mismatched Controllers—Configuration differences found between Prime Infrastructure and the controller during the last audit.
- Total Config Audit Alarms—Alarms generated when audit discrepancies are enforced on configuration groups. If enforcement fails, a critical alarm is generated on the configuration group. If enforcement succeeds, a minor alarm is generated on the configuration group. Alarms contain links to the audit report, where you can view a list of discrepancies for each controller.
- Most recent 5 config audit alarms—Includes object name, event type, date, and time of the audit alarm.

Click **View All** to view the applicable Alarm page that includes all configuration audit alarms.

## Monitoring Autonomous AP Migration Analysis

Choose **Monitor > Tools > Autonomous AP Migration Analysis** to launch the Migration Analysis Summary page.

Autonomous access points are eligible for migration only if all criteria have a pass status. A red X designates ineligibility, and a green check mark designates eligibility. These columns represent the following:

- Privilege 15 Criteria—The Telnet credential provided as part of the autonomous access point discovery must be privilege 15.
- Software Version—Conversion is supported only from Cisco IOS 12.3(7)JA releases excluding Cisco IOS 12.3(11)JA, Cisco IOS 12.3(11)JA1, Cisco IOS 12.3(11)JA2, and Cisco IOS 12.3(11)JA3.
- Role Criteria—A wired connection between the access point and controller is required to send the association request; therefore, the following autonomous access point roles are required:
  - root
  - root access point
  - root fallback repeater
  - root fallback shutdown
  - root access point only
- Radio Criteria—In dual-radio access points, the conversion can happen even if only one radio is of the supported type.

## Monitoring Location Accuracy

You can analyze the location accuracy of non-rogue and rogue clients, interferers, and asset tags by using the Location Accuracy tool.

By verifying for location accuracy, you are ensuring that the existing access point deployment can estimate the true location of an element within 10 meters at least 90% of the time.

The Location Accuracy tool enables you to run either of the following tests:

- **Scheduled Accuracy Testing**—Employed when clients, tags, and interferers are already deployed and associated to the wireless LAN infrastructure. Scheduled tests can be configured and saved when clients, tags, and interferers are already prepositioned so that the test can be run on a regularly scheduled basis.
- **On-Demand Accuracy Testing**—Employed when elements are associated but not pre-positioned. On-demand testing allows you to test the location accuracy of clients, tags, and interferers at a number of different locations. It is generally used to test the location accuracy for a small number of clients, tags, and interferers.

Both are configured and executed through a single page.

## Enabling the Location Accuracy Tool

You must enable the **Advanced Debug** option in Prime Infrastructure to use the Scheduled and On-demand location accuracy tool testing features. The Location Accuracy tool does not appear as an option on the Monitor > Tools menu when the Advanced Debug option is not enabled.

To enable the advanced debug option in Prime Infrastructure:

- 
- Step 1** In Prime Infrastructure, choose **Maps > Wireless Maps > Site Maps**.
  - Step 2** Choose **Properties** from the Select a command drop-down list, and click **Go**.
  - Step 3** Select the **Enabled** check box to enable the Advanced Debug Mode. Click **OK**.



---

**Note** If Advanced Debug is already enabled, you do not need to do anything further. Click **Cancel**.

---

Use the Select a command drop-down list in the Location Accuracy page, to create a new scheduled or on-demand accuracy test, to download logs for last run, to download all logs, or to delete a current accuracy test.



**Note**

- You can download logs for accuracy tests from the Accuracy Tests summary page. To do so, select an accuracy test and from the Select a command drop-down list, choose either **Download Logs** or **Download Logs for Last Run**. Click **Go**.
  - The Download Logs option downloads the logs for all accuracy tests for the selected test(s).
  - The Download Logs for Last Run option downloads logs for only the most recent test run for the selected test(s).
- 



## Scheduling a Location Accuracy Test

Use the scheduled accuracy testing to verify the accuracy of the current location of non-rogue and rogue clients, interferers, and asset tags. You can get a PDF of the test results at **Accuracy Tests > Results**. The Scheduled Location Accuracy report includes the following information:

- A summary location accuracy report that details the percentage of elements that fell within various error ranges.

- An error distance histogram.
- A cumulative error distribution graph.
- An error distance over time graph.
- A summary by each MAC address whose location accuracy was tested noting its actual location, error distance and a map showing its spatial accuracy (actual vs. calculated location), and error distance over time for each MAC.

To schedule a Location Accuracy test:


- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Tools > Location Accuracy**.
- Step 2** Choose **New Scheduled Accuracy Test** from the Select a command drop-down list.
- Step 3** Enter a test name.
- Step 4** Choose an area type, a building, and a floor from the corresponding drop-down lists.
-  **Note** Campus is configured as Root Area, by default. There is no need to change this setting.
- 
- Step 5** Choose a beginning and ending time for the test by entering the days, hours, and minutes. Hours are entered using a 24-hour clock.
-  **Note** When entering the test start time, be sure to allow enough time prior to the test start to position testpoints on the map.
- 
- Step 6** Choose a destination point for the test results. (If you choose the e-mail option, you must first define an SMTP Mail Server for the target email address. Choose **Administration > Settings > System Settings > Mail Server Configuration** to enter the appropriate information.)
- Step 7** Click **Position Test Points**.
- Step 8** On the floor map, select the check box next to each client, tag, and interferer for which you want to check location accuracy.
- When you select a MAC address check box, two icons appear on the map. One represents the actual location and the other represents the reported location. If the actual location for an element is not the same as the reported location, drag the actual location icon for that element to the correct position on the map. (You cannot drag the reported location.)
- Step 9** (Optional) To enter a MAC address for a client, tag, or interferer that is not listed, select the **Add New MAC** check box, enter the MAC address, and click **Go**.
- An icon for the newly added element appears on the map. If the element is on the location server but on a different floor, the icon appears in the left-most corner (in the 0,0 position).
- Step 10** When all elements are positioned, click **Save**.
- Step 11** Click **OK** to close the confirmation dialog box.
- You are returned to the Accuracy Tests summary page.
- Step 12** To check the test results, click the test name, click the **Results** tab in the page that appears, and click **Download** under Saved Report.
-

## Running an On-Demand Location Accuracy Test

You can run an On-Demand Accuracy Test when elements are associated but not prepositioned. On-Demand testing allows you to test the location accuracy of clients, tags, and interferers at a number of different locations. It is generally used to test the location accuracy of a small number of clients, tags, and interferers. You can get a PDF of the test results at **Accuracy Tests > Results**. The On-Demand Accuracy Report includes the following information:

- A summary location accuracy report that details the percentage of elements that fell within various error ranges.
- An error distance histogram
- A cumulative error distribution graph

To run an On-Demand Accuracy Test:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Tools > Location Accuracy**.
- Step 2** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **New On demand Accuracy Test**.
- Step 3** Enter a test name.
- Step 4** Choose an area type, a building, and a floor from the corresponding drop-down lists.
- 
-  **Note** Campus is configured as Root Area, by default. There is no need to change this setting.
- 
- Step 5** Choose a destination point for the test results. (If you choose the e-mail option, you must first define an SMTP Mail Server for the target email address. Choose **Administration > Settings > System Settings > Mail Server Configuration** to enter the appropriate information.)
- Step 6** Click **Position Test Points**.
- Step 7** To test the location accuracy and RSSI of a particular location, select client, tag, or interferer from the drop-down list on the left. A list of all MAC addresses for the selected option (client, tag, or interferer) is displayed in a drop-down list to the right.
- Step 8** Choose a MAC address from the drop-down list, move the red cross hair to a map location, and click the mouse to place it.
- Step 9** From the Zoom percentage drop-down list, choose the zoom percentage for the map.  
The X and Y text boxes are populated with the coordinates based on the position of the red cross hair in the map.
- Step 10** Click **Start** to begin collection of accuracy data, and click **Stop** to finish collection. You must allow the test to run for at least two minutes before stopping the test.
- Step 11** Repeat Step 7 to Step 10 for each testpoint that you want to plot on the map.
- Step 12** Click **Analyze Results** when you are finished mapping the testpoints, and then click the **Results** tab in the page that appears to view the report.
-

# Monitoring Packet Capture

In addition to aggregating data from multiple NAMs, Prime Infrastructure with licensed Assurance features makes it easy to actively manage and troubleshoot network problems using multiple NAMs and ASRs. For details, see [Using Packet Capture to Monitor and Troubleshoot Network Traffic](#).





## Viewing Performance Graphs

---

To compare the Key Performance Indicators (KPIs) for devices and interfaces, choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Performance Graphs**. You can choose the device or interface metrics you want to view over a specified time, and the resulting performance graphs allow you to quickly monitor performance.

### Creating Performance Graphs

---

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Performance Graphs**.
- The first time you access this page, an overlay help window appears with helpful tips.
- Step 2** Select one of the tabs at the top of the left frame:
- **Devices**—Allows you to select a device for which to create a performance graph.
  - **Interfaces**—Allows you to select an interface for which to create a performance graph.
- Depending on what you select, the Metrics panel displays the available metrics for the device or interface type.
- Step 3** Hover your cursor over a metric for which you want to measure performance, then click and drag the metric on to the Graphs portion of the window.
- An overlay help window appears explaining the icons, date range, and other information.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing Multiple Metrics on a Single Performance Graph](#)
- [Performance Graphs Options](#)

### Viewing Multiple Metrics on a Single Performance Graph

You might want to view more than one metric on a single performance graph. For example, if you see a spike in CPU utilization, you might add the memory utilization metric to the performance graph to see if the memory was impacted by change in CPU utilization.

You can add a maximum of 10 metrics on a single performance graph.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Performance Graphs**.
- Step 2** Select one of the tabs at the top of the left frame:
- **Devices**—Allows you to select a device for which to create a performance graph.
  - **Interfaces**—Allows you to select an interface for which to create a performance graph.
- Depending on what you select, the Metrics panel displays the available metrics for the device or interface type.
- Step 3** Hover your cursor over a metric for which you want to measure performance, then click and drag the metric on to the Graphs portion of the window.
- Step 4** To add a second metric to the same graph, hover your cursor over the metric you want to add, then click and drag the metric on to the same graph that has the metric you added in the previous step.
- If you don't want multiple metrics in a single graph, you can create a new graph on the same page by dragging the metric on to the lower portion of the Graphs window where Drop item here is displayed.
- Step 5** To launch the Device 360° View, click on the IP address hyperlink at the top of the graph.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Creating Performance Graphs](#)
- [Performance Graphs Options](#)

## Performance Graphs Options

The **Show** menu at the top of the performance chart allows you to change the following graph display options:

- **Legend Options**—Specify whether to show or hide the legend.
- **Show Legends**—Specify if the legends are at the right or the top of the performance chart.
- **Show Alarms**—Specify whether to display alarms. A colored flag appears in the performance graph to indicate that an alarm occurred at that time. To view details about the alarm, click on the colored flag.
- **Show Config Changes**—Specify whether to display configuration changes. A black flag appears in the performance graph to indicate that a configuration on the device was modified at that time. To view details about the configuration change, click on the flag.

You can also Export and Print performance graphs by clicking the arrow at the top of the graph.

Click **Detach** at the top right of the performance graph page to open the performance graph in a new browser window. This allows you to continue monitoring the performance graph in a separate window while you perform actions in another window.

**Related Topics**

- [Creating Performance Graphs](#)
- [Viewing Multiple Metrics on a Single Performance Graph](#)





## Troubleshooting

---

Cisco Prime Infrastructure provides the following for sophisticated monitoring and troubleshooting of end-user network access.

The following sections describe some typical troubleshooting tasks:

- [Getting Help from Cisco](#)
- [Checking an End User's Network Session Status](#)
- [Troubleshooting Authentication and Authorization](#)
- [Troubleshooting Network Attachments](#)
- [Troubleshooting Network Attachment Devices](#)
- [Troubleshooting Site Network Devices](#)
- [Troubleshooting the User Application and Site Bandwidth Utilization](#)
- [Troubleshooting User Problems](#)
- [Troubleshooting the User's Experience](#)
- [Troubleshooting Voice/Video Delivery to a Branch Office](#)
- [Troubleshooting Unjoined Access Points](#)
- [Troubleshooting Wireless Performance Problems](#)

## Getting Help from Cisco

Prime Infrastructure provides helpful tools for network operators to connect to Cisco experts to diagnose and resolve problems. You can open support cases and track your cases from Prime Infrastructure. If you need help troubleshooting any problems, Prime Infrastructure allows you to:

- Connect with the Cisco Support Community to view and participate in discussion forums. See [Launching the Cisco Support Community](#).
- Open a support case with Cisco Technical Support. See [Opening a Support Case](#).

## Launching the Cisco Support Community

You can use Prime Infrastructure to access and participate in discussion forums in the online Cisco Support Community. This forum can help you find information for diagnosing and resolving problems.

You must enter your Cisco.com username and password to access and participate in the forums.

To launch the Cisco Support Community:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms & Events**, select an alarm, then choose **Troubleshoot > Support Forum**.
- Step 2** In the Cisco Support Community Forum page, enter additional search parameters to refine the discussions that are displayed.
- 

## Opening a Support Case

You can use Prime Infrastructure to open a support request and to track your support cases. Prime Infrastructure helps you gather critical contextual information to be attached to the support case, reducing the time it takes to create a support case.

To open a support case or access the Cisco Support Community, you must:

- Have a direct Internet connection on the Prime Infrastructure server
- Enter your Cisco.com username and password

To open a support case:

- 
- Step 1** Chose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms & Events**, then hover your mouse cursor over the IP address of the device on which the alarm occurred.
- Step 2** From the device 360° view, Select **Support Request** from **Actions** drop-down menu.
- Step 3** Enter your Cisco.com username and password.
- Step 4** Click **Login**.
- Step 5** Click **Create** in **Update or Create a Support Case** window.

Prime Infrastructure gathers information about the device and populates the fields for which it can retrieve information. You can enter a Tracking Number that corresponds to your own organization's trouble ticket system.

- Step 6** Click **Next** and enter a description of the problem.
- By default, Prime Infrastructure enters information that it can retrieve from the device. Prime Infrastructure automatically generates the necessary supporting documents such as the technical information for the device, configuration changes, and all device events over the last 24 hours. You can also upload files from your local machine.
- Step 7** Click **Create Service Request**.
- 

## Checking an End User's Network Session Status

When an end user calls the help desk, typically with a complaint that might not be very specific (“I can’t log in” or “The network is really slow”), you will want to get an overall view of the user’s current network session status, identify which individual session is associated with the problem, and examine the details for that session.

For example, how is the user attached to the network? Does this person have more than one endpoint (where an endpoint could be, for example, a laptop, desktop, iPad, iPhone, or Android)?

### Before You Begin

This feature requires:

- Integration with an ISE server (to access endpoint information).
- Integration with LDAP (to display information about the end user).

To check an end user's network session status:

---

**Step 1** In the system search field (see [Search Methods](#)), enter the name of the user (or client) who is experiencing the issue. If there are multiple matches, select the correct username from the list of matches.

**Step 2** Start the User 360° View.

The information that is available from this view typically includes current information about the end user and all of that user's current or recently ended network sessions.

---

## Troubleshooting Authentication and Authorization

Using the User 360° View, you can identify possible problems with the end user's authentication and authorization for network access.

For example, there could be authentication problems (such as the user's password being rejected), or there could be authorization issues (such as the user being placed in a policy category such as "guest" or "quarantine" that might result in unexpected behavior).

### Before You Begin

This feature requires integration with an ISE server.

To troubleshoot the network:

---

**Step 1** Open the User 360° View for that user and check the value in "Authorization Profile". This is a mnemonic string that is customer-defined, so it might not contain clear information (for example, "standard\_employee" or "standard\_BYOD" or "Guest").

**Step 2** If this field is a link, click it to display information about the user's authorization profile. Based on this information:

- If the end user is associated with the appropriate policy category, this procedure is complete.
- If the end user is not associated with the appropriate policy category, you can hand off the problem (for example, to an ISE admin or help tech) or perform actions outside Prime Infrastructure to investigate why the user was placed in the current policy category (Authorization Profile).

**Step 3** Check to see whether there are any indications of authentication errors (authentication failure could be due to various things, including an expired password). The visual indication of authentication errors allows you to see more data related to the authentication errors. At that point, you might need to hand off the problem (for example, to an ISE admin or help tech).

---

## Troubleshooting Network Attachments

Use the following procedure to determine if there are problems with the end user attaching to the network, such as errors on the access port (wired) or radio association problems (wireless).

To troubleshoot network attachments:

- 
- Step 1** Open the User 360° View for that user and click the Go to Client Details icon.
  - Step 2** If a problem has been detected, it might not be appropriate to continue troubleshooting the problem; it is probably sufficient to note the problem and hand it off to second tier support. If you want to continue detailed client troubleshooting, exit the User 360° View and launch the full client and user troubleshooting page (choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**).
- 

## Troubleshooting Network Attachment Devices

Use the following procedure to troubleshoot any active alarms or error conditions associated with the network attachment device and port for the end user that might be causing problems for the end user's network session:

- 
- Step 1** To view any existing active alarms or error conditions associated with the network attachment device and port for the end user (available for the controller, switch, access point, and site), open the User 360° View for that user and click the **Alarms** tab.
  - Step 2** To see if a problem has been detected, click the Go to Client Details icon.
  - Step 3** If a problem has been detected, it might not be appropriate to continue troubleshooting the problem; it is probably sufficient to note that fact and hand off the task to second tier support. If you want to continue detailed client troubleshooting, exit the User 360° View and launch the full client and user troubleshooting page (choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**).
- 

## Troubleshooting Site Network Devices

Use the following procedure to determine if there are any existing active alarms or error conditions associated with any of the network devices that are part of the site for the end user that could be causing problems for the user's network session.

- 
- Step 1** To view any existing active alarms or error conditions associated with network devices that are part of the site for the end user, open the User 360° View for that user and click the **Alarms** tab.
  - Step 2** You can choose to view:
    - Active alarms list for the site
    - List of all site devices (with alarm indications)
    - Topo map of site (with alarm indications)

- Step 3** If a problem with a site has been detected, an alarm icon will appear next to the site location. Click the icon to view all of the alarms associated with that site.
- Step 4** If a problem has been detected, it might not be appropriate to continue troubleshooting the problem; it is probably sufficient to note that fact and hand off the task to second tier support. If you want to continue detailed client troubleshooting, exit the User 360° View and launch the full client and user troubleshooting page (choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**).
- 

## Troubleshooting the User Application and Site Bandwidth Utilization

If an end user is experiencing high bandwidth utilization for a site on the interface dashboard, use the following procedure to identify the applications consumed by the user and the bandwidth consumed by every application for a given endpoint owned by the user.

### Before You Begin

This feature requires:

- Integration with an ISE server (to access endpoint information).
  - For wired sessions, that AAA accounting information is being sent to ISE.
  - That session information (netflow/NAM data, Assurance licenses) is available.
- 


- Step 1** To view the applications accessed by the end user and the response time for the applications for the user's devices, open the User 360° View for that user and click the **Applications** tab.
- Step 2** The Applications tab displays information about the applications accessed by the end user (see [Troubleshooting](#)). To get more information about an application, including the bandwidth utilization of the application consumed by the end user (the bandwidth consumed for the conversation), choose **Dashboard > Performance > Application**.
-

# Troubleshooting User Problems

You can use the User 360° View to troubleshoot problems reported by users.

- 
- Step 1** In the Search field on any page, enter the end user's name.
  - Step 2** In the Search Results window, hover your mouse cursor over the end user's name in the User Name column, then click the User 360° view icon that appears as shown in [Figure A-6](#).
  - Step 3** With the User 360° view displayed, identify where the problem is occurring using the information described in [Table 17-1](#).

**Table 17-1** Using the User 360° View to Diagnose User Problems

To Gather This Data	Click Here in User 360° View	Additional Information
Information about the device to which the user is attached, such as the endpoint, location, connections, and session information	Click a device icon at the top of the User 360° View.	Click available links to display additional information. For example, you can click the Authorization Profile link to launch ISE. See <a href="#">Troubleshooting Authentication and Authorization</a>
Alarms associated with the device to which the user is attached	Click a device icon at the top of the User 360° View, then click the <b>Alarms</b> tab.	Click the Troubleshoot Client icon  to go to client troubleshooting.
Applications running on the device to which the user is attached	Click a device icon at the top of the User 360° View, then click the <b>Applications</b> tab.	Click an application to view the end-user data filtered for the user you specified. See <a href="#">Troubleshooting the User's Experience</a> .

## Troubleshooting the User's Experience

If an end user reports a problem with accessing the application, use the User 360° View to troubleshoot the user's experience.

### Before You Begin

This feature requires that session information (netflow/NAM data, Assurance licenses) is available.

- 
- Step 1** To view the applications accessed by the end user and the response time for the applications for the user's devices, open the User 360° View for that user and click the **Applications** tab.
  - Step 2** The Applications tab displays information about the applications accessed by the end user (see [Troubleshooting User Problems](#)). To get more information about an application, choose **Dashboard > Performance > Application**.
-

# Troubleshooting Voice/Video Delivery to a Branch Office

To successfully diagnose and resolve problems with application service delivery, network operators must be able to link user experiences of network services with the underlying hardware devices, interfaces, and device configurations that deliver these services. This is especially challenging with RTP-based services like voice and video, where service quality, rather than gross problems like outages, impose special requirements.

**Note**

To use this feature, your Prime Infrastructure implementation must include Assurance licenses.

Prime Infrastructure with the licensed Assurance features makes this kind of troubleshooting easy. The following workflow is based on a typical scenario: The user complains to the network operations desk about poor voice quality or choppy video replay at the user's branch office. The operator first confirms that the user is indeed having a problem with jitter and packet loss that will affect the user's RTP application performance. The user further confirms that other users at the same branch are also having the same problem. The operator next confirms that there is congestion on the WAN interface on the edge router that connects the local branch to the central voice/video server in the main office. Further investigation reveals that an unknown HTTP application is using a high percentage of the WAN interface bandwidth and causing the dropouts. The operator can then change the unknown application's DSCP classification to prevent it from stealing bandwidth.

**Step 1** Choose **Dashboard > Performance > End User Experience**.

**Step 2** Next to **Filters**, specify:

- The IP address of the **Client** machine of the user complaining about poor service.
- The **Time Frame** during which the problem occurred.
- The ID of the problem **Application**.

Click **Go** to filter the Detail Dashboard information using these parameters.

**Step 3** View **Average Packet Loss** to see the Jitter and Packet Loss statistics for the client experiencing the problem.

**Step 4** View the **User Site Summary** to confirm that other users at the same site are experiencing the same issue with the same application.

**Step 5** In the **User Site Summary**, under Device Reachability, hover your mouse cursor over the branch's edge router. Prime Assurance displays a 360° View icon for the device under the Device IP column. Click the icon to display the 360° View.

**Step 6** In the 360° View, click the **Alarms** tab, to see alarms on the WAN interfaces, or on the Interfaces tab, to see congested WAN interfaces and the top applications running on them.

## Troubleshooting Unjoined Access Points

When a lightweight access point initially starts up, it attempts to discover and join a wireless LAN controller. After joining the wireless controller, the access point updates its software image if needed and receives all of the configuration details for the device and network. Until the access point


successfully joins a wireless controller, it cannot be managed by Prime Infrastructure, and it does not contain the proper configuration settings to allow client access. Prime Infrastructure provides you with a tool that diagnoses why an access point cannot join a controller, and lists corrective actions.

**Note**

To use this feature, your Prime Infrastructure implementation must include Assurance licenses.

The Unjoined AP page displays a list of access points that have not joined any wireless controllers. All gathered information about the unjoined access point is included on the page. This information includes name, MAC address, IP address, controller name and IP address, switch and port that the access point is attached to, and any join failure reason, if known.

To troubleshoot unjoined access points:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Unjoined Access Points**.
- Step 2** In the Unjoined APs page, select an access point to diagnose, then click **Troubleshoot**.
- Step 3** After the troubleshooting analysis runs, check the results in the Unjoined APs page.  
If the access point has tried to join multiple wireless controllers but has been unsuccessful, the controllers are listed in the left pane.
- Step 4** Select a controller and check the middle pane for:
- A statement of the problem
  - A list of error messages
  - Controller log information
- Step 5** Check the right pane for recommendations for solving any problems, and perform any recommended actions.
- Step 6** (Optional) To further diagnose the problem, run RTTS through the Unjoined AP page by clicking the RTTS icon  located to the right of the table. Examine the debug messages that appear in the table to determine a cause for the access point being unable to join the controllers.
- 

## RTTS Debug commands for Troubleshooting Unjoined Access Points

[Table 17-2](#) contains the list of RTTS debug commands for Legacy controllers and NGWC controllers.

**Table 17-2** *RTTS Debug commands for Legacy controllers and NGWC controllers*

Controller	Commands
Legacy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• debug capwap info enable</li> <li>• debug dot1x all enable</li> <li>• debug mobility directory enable</li> </ul>
NGWC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• debug capwap ap error</li> <li>• debug dot1x events</li> <li>• debug capwap ios detail</li> </ul>



# Troubleshooting Wireless Performance Problems

If an end user reports a problem with their wireless device, you can use the Site dashboard to help you determine the AP that is experiencing problems.

## Before You Begin

This feature requires that session information (netflow/NAM data, Assurance licenses) is available.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Dashboard > Performance > Site** and view the site to which the client experiencing trouble belongs.
- Step 2** To see the AP that is experiencing trouble at this site, click the **Settings** icon, then click **Add** next to **Busiest Access Points**.
- Step 3** Scroll down to the Busiest Access Points dashlet. You can
- Hover your mouse over a device to view device information. See [Getting Device Details from Device 360° View](#).
  - Click on an AP name to go to the AP dashboard from where you can use the AP filter option to view AP details such as Client Count, Channel Utilization, and, if you have an Assurance license, Top *N* Clients and Top *N* Applications.
  - Utilization based on SNMP polling for the APs.
  - Volume information based on Assurance NetFlow data, if you have an Assurance license. For example, you can see the traffic volume per AP.
- 

## Root Cause and Impact analysis of Physical and Virtual Data Center Components

The physical servers shows the list of UCS B-Series and C-series servers that are managed by Prime Infrastructure. With application of this tech pack, it would also show the Host/Hypervisor running on it, only if the corresponding Vcenter is added.

The Cisco UCS Server Schematic shows the complete architecture of the UCS device. The Schematic tab shows a graph that can be expanded to show different elements of UCS device such as chassis and blades. You can view quick summary of the element by hovering your mouse over the operational status icon next to the chassis or blade. In addition, clicking on the operational status icon, which symbolizes each unique element (chassis or blade), would show the subsequent connection. You can view the connection to host and its VM if managed by Prime Infrastructure by clicking the operational status icon. The schematic view also shows the operational status of the data center components and the associated alarms using which you can trace the root cause of an application delivery failure to a UCS hardware problem of Cisco UCS device.

## Troubleshooting UCS Hardware Problems

Use the following procedure to trace the root cause of an application delivery failure to a UCS hardware problem of Cisco UCS B-series and C-series servers. You can identify whether the problem is in fabric interconnect port, chassis or blades.

To identify the issue in UCS chassis, blade server, fabric interconnect port:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Compute Devices**.
  - Step 2** Choose **Cisco UCS Servers** in the **Compute Devices** pane.
  - Step 3** Click the expand icon corresponding to the faulty UCS device in the **Cisco UCS Servers** pane to open the **Schematic** that shows the inter-connections of the UCS chassis and blades and the up/down status of chassis, and blade servers.
  - Step 4** Click the **Chassis** tab and hover your mouse cursor over the faulty chassis name, then **click** the chassis 360° view icon to view the up/down status of power supply unit and fan modules.
  - Step 5** Click the **Servers** tab and hover your mouse cursor over the faulty blade server name, then **click** the server 360° view icon.  
  
The server 360° view provides detailed blade server information including the number of processors, memory capacity, up/down status of adapters, network interface cards (NICs), and hot bus adapters (HBAs).
  - Step 6** Click the **Network** tab to view the entire network interface details of fabric interconnect such as port channel, Ethernet interface, vEthernet, and vFabric Channel.
  - Step 7** Click the **IO Modules** tab to view the operational status of backplane ports and fabric ports.
- 

To identify the bandwidth issue in fabric interconnect port:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Click the faulty UCS device from the **All Devices** pane.
  - Step 3** Click the expand icon corresponding to fabric interconnect switch.
  - Step 4** Click **Fixed Modules** to view the operational status of fabric interconnect ports.
  - Step 5** Click **Interfaces** to view the operational status for fabric interconnect port and interfaces. This is same as the operational stays of fabric interconnect port and interfaces viewed from **Network** tab in Compute Devices page.
- 

## Viewing Bandwidth on Fabric Interconnect Ports

You can view the details of a fabric interconnect port or a fabric interconnect port group using the Top-N Interface Utilization dashlet from the Overview and Performance dashboards. Use the following procedure to identify whether the overuse of bandwidth on the ports connecting the fabric interconnect to the UCS chassis is causing application performance issues such as slowness on Cisco UCS.

We recommend you to create a fabric interconnect port group and select the port group in the dashlet to view the bandwidth utilization details.

To identify the overuse of bandwidth on the fabric interconnect ports:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Dashboard > Performance > Interface** then choose the UCS device interface from the **Interface** drop-down list.

or

Choose **Dashboard > Overview > Network Interface**.

**Step 2** Click the **Settings** icon as shown in and choose **Add Dashlets**.

**Step 3** Choose **Top N Interface Utilization** dashlet and click **Add**.

**Step 4** Do the following if you have already created a fabric interconnect port group

- a. Click the **Dashlet Options** icon in the **Top N Interface Utilization** dashlet.
- b. Select the fabric interconnect port group in the **Port Group** and click **Save And Close**.

The Top N Interface Utilization dashlet displays the list of interfaces with maximum utilization percentage. This dashlet also shows the average and maximum data transmission and reception details of the fabric interconnect ports.

---





# Monitoring Multiple Prime Infrastructure Instances

---

There are three situations that justify the use of multiple Cisco Prime Infrastructure instances to manage your network:

- You want to categorize the devices in your network into logical groups, with a different Prime Infrastructure instance managing each of those groups. For example, you could have one instance managing all of your network's wired devices and another managing all of its wireless devices.
- The one Prime Infrastructure instance you have running is sufficient to manage your network, but the addition of one or more instances would improve Prime Infrastructure's performance by spreading the CPU and memory load among multiple instances.
- Your network has sites located throughout the world, and you want a different Prime Infrastructure instance to manage each of those sites in order to keep their data separate.

If multiple Prime Infrastructure instances are running in your network, you can monitor those instances from the Operations Center. In this chapter, we will cover a typical workflow you might employ when using the Operations Center. This workflow consists of the following tasks:

- Viewing the Operations Center dashboards
- Monitoring your network
- Running reports

See Related Topics for details on these and related tasks.

## Related Topics

- [Setting Up Operations Center](#)
- [Viewing the Operations Center Dashboards](#)
- [Monitoring Your Network Using Operations Center](#)
- [Running Reports With Operations Center](#)

# Viewing the Operations Center Dashboards

The Operations Center provides additional, Operations Center-specific dashboards that you can use to quickly determine the status of your network and identify any issues that require further attention. The Operations Center dashlets display aggregated data. The following types of dashboards are available:

- Overview dashboards, which summarize the current status of key areas in your network.
- Incident dashboards, which report on all alarms and events recorded across your network.

To access a particular dashboard and the dashlets that comprise it, either click the appropriate tabs on the main Operations Center page or select the dashboard from the Dashboard menu.

For general information about using and customizing dashboards and dashlets, see “Prime Infrastructure User Interface Reference” in Related Topics.

## Related Topics

- [Setting Up Operations Center](#)
- [Monitoring Your Network Using Operations Center](#)
- [Appendix A, “Prime Infrastructure User Interface Reference.”](#)

# Monitoring Your Network Using Operations Center

After viewing the various dashboards available in the Operations Center, you can then take a closer look at what is going on in your network. Specifically, you can monitor:

- The devices that belong to your network.
- The Prime Infrastructure servers that manage those devices.
- The alarms, events and other incidents that have taken place in your network.
- The clients and users configured to use your network.

The following related topics cover these items in more detail.

## Related Topics

- [Monitoring Devices Using Operations Center](#)
- [Using Virtual Domains With Operations Center](#)
- [Managing and Monitoring Prime Infrastructure Servers Using Operations Center](#)
- [Viewing the Prime Infrastructure Server Status Summary in Operations Center](#)
- [Viewing Alarms and Events Using Operations Center](#)
- [Viewing Clients and Users Using Operations Center](#)
- [Cross-Launching Prime Infrastructure Using Operations Center](#)
- [Viewing the Operations Center Dashboards](#)

## Monitoring Devices Using Operations Center

Select **Monitor > Managed Elements > Network Devices** to open the Network Devices page in Operations Center. From here, you can view information for every device that belongs to your network that a Prime Infrastructure instance is managing. This information includes the device's hostname/IP address, its current reachability status, and the last time inventory data was successfully collected from that device.

When you first open the Network Devices page, every network device is displayed. To refine the devices displayed, do one of the following:

- From the Device Group pane, select the desired device type, location, or user-defined group.
- Apply a custom filter or select one of the predefined filters from the Show drop-down list. Operations Center provides a custom filter that allows you to view duplicate devices across your managed instances. For details on how to use filters, see the related topic “Performing a Quick Filter”.
- Search for a particular device. For details, see the related topic “Search Methods”.

If you delete a device from the Operations Center Network Devices page, the device is also deleted from all the managed Prime Infrastructure instances monitoring that device.

### Related Topics

- [Performing a Quick Filter](#)
- [Search Methods](#)
- [Monitoring Your Network Using Operations Center](#)
- [Using Virtual Domains With Operations Center](#)

## Using Virtual Domains With Operations Center

As explained in “Controlling User Access” in Related Topics, this feature provides an Operation Center administrator the ability to define a virtual domain on managed Prime Infrastructure instances. The Virtual Domains page will be modified to give Operation Center administrators visibility to each virtual domain defined under a managed Prime Infrastructure instance. The list of domains will be consolidated and displayed in the Operation Center.

From the Operations Center, you can view all the virtual domains available in all of the Prime Infrastructure instances that Operations Center is managing.

You can also create or edit virtual domains from Operations Center itself. If the same virtual domain is active in multiple Prime Infrastructure instances, Operations Center displays the virtual domain once, with data aggregated from all the active virtual domains with the same name on all the managed Prime Infrastructure instances.

You can create virtual domain only if an instance is present or it is in reachable state. The Number of network elements in Virtual Domains is limited when compared to that of Prime Infrastructure, since the Virtual Domain shows only managed network elements.

Note that any virtual domain you create using Operations Center will be replicated across all the instances of Prime Infrastructure that Operations Center manages, and if selected network elements are not present in particular instances, an empty virtual domain will be created.

Creating and editing virtual domains from within Operations Center works the same way as creating and editing virtual domains in a single instance of Prime Infrastructure. For details on adding, editing and viewing virtual domains, see “Using Virtual Domains to Control Access” in Related Topics.

**Related Topics**

- [Controlling User Access](#)
- [Using Virtual Domains to Control Access](#)
- [Monitoring Your Network Using Operations Center](#)
- [Monitoring Devices Using Operations Center](#)
- [Managing and Monitoring Prime Infrastructure Servers Using Operations Center](#)
- [Creating Existing Virtual Domain in New Instances](#)
- [Maximum Virtual Domains Supported in Operations Center](#)

## Maximum Virtual Domains Supported in Operations Center

We recommend to use Express OVA for Operations Center in Prime Infrastructure 3.0. For Express OVA, the maximum number of Virtual Domains supported in Operations Center is 100 (Including Virtual Domains in Prime Infrastructure instances). Also you have an option to increase CPU and Memory of Operations Center server to higher configuration based on number of Virtual Domains supported. For more understanding, please refer *Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Quick Start Guide*, for metrics of hardware profiles and the respective number of Virtual Domains supported.

**Related Topics**

[Using Virtual Domains With Operations Center](#)

[Creating Existing Virtual Domain in New Instances](#)

## Creating Existing Virtual Domain in New Instances

In Operations Center, if you want to create the existing virtual domain in new instances, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Users > Virtual Domains**.
  - Step 2** From the Virtual Domains sidebar menu, click an existing virtual domain which you want to create in new instance.
  - Step 3** Click **Managed Servers** tab.
  - Step 4** Click **Distribute to All Servers**.
  - Step 5** Click **Submit**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Controlling User Access](#)
- [Using Virtual Domains With Operations Center](#)
- [Maximum Virtual Domains Supported in Operations Center](#)



## Role Based Access Control Support in Operations Center

The Role Based Access Control (RBAC) support in Operation Center allows a collection of devices from multiple managed instances to be associated with a user via virtual domains. This feature enables to assign privileges such as accessing Monitor and Manage server page, adding, modifying or deleting managed instances and providing Nbi privilege to generate reports and populate certain dashlets, to a specific user.

Follow these steps to enable RBAC in the Operation Center:

- 
- Step 1** Log in to Prime Infrastructure as an administrator.
  - Step 2** Choose **Administration > Users > Users, Roles & AAA > User Groups**.
  - Step 3** Click a group name to which RBAC is to be provided.
  - Step 4** Click **Task Permissions** tab.
  - Step 5** Check the following check boxes under Operation Center Tasks:
    - **Monitor and Manage Servers Page Access**
    - **Administrative Privileges under Manage and Monitor Server Pages**
    - **Nbi Security Exception.**
- These options are enabled by default for admin and super users.
- Step 6** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Controlling User Access](#)
- [Using Virtual Domains With Operations Center](#)
- [Maximum Virtual Domains Supported in Operations Center](#)

## Managing and Monitoring Prime Infrastructure Servers Using Operations Center

Select **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Manage and Monitor Servers** to open the Manage and Monitor Servers page. From here, you can:

- Add new Prime Infrastructure servers (up to the license limit).
- Edit, delete, activate, and deactivate current Prime Infrastructure servers.
- View each servers' reachability, network latency, CPU utilization, memory utilization, software update status and secondary server details (if it is configured), license count, and alarms generated for the Prime Infrastructure instances.
- Determine whether any servers are down.
- View alarms and events.
- Cross-launch into individual Prime Infrastructure instances.

- See if any backup servers are running. Administrators can use the Prime Infrastructure High Availability (HA) framework to configure a backup Prime Infrastructure server to automatically come online and take over operations for the associated primary server when it goes down. For more information on Prime Infrastructure's HA framework, see "Configuring High Availability" in Related Topics. Administrators should be sure to follow the restrictions on use of HA with Operations Center given in "Before You Begin Setting Up High Availability".

Aside from a server's reachability status, there are three server metrics you should focus on:

- Network latency
- CPU utilization
- Memory utilization.

If a server has a network latency figure that exceeds one second, or it has a CPU or memory utilization percentage greater than 80%, the chances are good that an issue exists with that server.

If a server's status is listed as "unreachable", a "?" icon will appear next to the reachability status message. Hover your mouse cursor over the icon to see a popup message giving possible causes for the server's status (for example, server cannot be pinged, API response (latency) is too slow and SSO is not setup properly).

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring High Availability](#)
- [Before You Begin Setting Up High Availability](#)
- [Monitoring Your Network Using Operations Center](#)
- [Using Virtual Domains With Operations Center](#)
- [Viewing the Prime Infrastructure Server Status Summary in Operations Center](#)

## Viewing the Prime Infrastructure Server Status Summary in Operations Center

Use the Server Status Summary to view the current status of your Prime Infrastructure servers without leaving the dashboard or page you have open. To open it, place your cursor over any portion of the Server Status area at the top of the Operations Center's main page. From here, you can quickly determine if any of your servers are currently down. You can also launch a separate Prime Infrastructure instance for the selected server.

#### Related Topics

- [Monitoring Your Network Using Operations Center](#)
- [Cross-Launching Prime Infrastructure Using Operations Center](#)

## Viewing Alarms and Events Using Operations Center

Select **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms and Events** to open the Alarms and Events page. From here, you can view a comprehensive listing of your network's alarms, events, and syslog messages. With one or multiple alarms selected, you can also determine whether those alarms have been acknowledged, add a note that describes them in more detail, or delete them from the page.

The Alarm Summary displays an aggregated count of critical, major, and minor alarms from the managed Prime Infrastructure instances.

To refine the alarms, events, and syslog messages displayed here, do one of the following:

- From the Device Group pane, select the desired device type, location, or user-defined group.
- Apply a custom filter or select one of the predefined filters from the Show drop-down list. For details on how to use filters, see the related topic “Performing a Quick Filter”.
- Search for a particular alarm or event. For details, see the related topic “Search Methods”.
- Hover your cursor on the Alarm Browser screen to display the aggregated count of alarms for the managed Prime Infrastructure instances. You can also acknowledge, annotate, and delete alarms; that action is duplicated on the respective Prime Infrastructure instance.

#### Related Topics

- [Performing a Quick Filter](#)
- [Search Methods](#)
- [Monitoring Your Network Using Operations Center](#)
- [Viewing Clients and Users Using Operations Center](#)

## Viewing Clients and Users Using Operations Center

Select **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users** to open the Clients and Users page, which contains the aggregated clients of all managed Prime Infrastructure instances. From here, you can view information for the clients configured on your network, such as a client's MAC address, the user associated with the client, and the name of the device that hosts the client. By clicking a client's corresponding radio button, you can access even more detailed information for that client at the bottom of the Clients and Users page. To refine the list of clients displayed here, do one of the following:

- Apply a custom filter or select one of the predefined filters from the Show drop-down list. For details on how to use filters, see the related topic “Performing a Quick Filter”.
- Search for a particular client. For details, see the related topic “Search Methods”.

### Related Topics

- [Performing a Quick Filter](#)
- [Search Methods](#)
- [Monitoring Your Network Using Operations Center](#)

## Cross-Launching Prime Infrastructure Using Operations Center

A common element in the Operations Center's four Monitor pages is the Prime Server column, which indicates the Prime Infrastructure server associated with any given device, alarm, event, client, or user. By clicking the corresponding link in any of the Monitor pages or the Server Status summary, you can launch a separate Prime Infrastructure instance to perform the necessary management tasks without closing the Operations Center.

### Related Topics

- [Monitoring Your Network Using Operations Center](#)

## Running Reports With Operations Center

In addition to the Operations Center dashboards and monitor pages, Operations Center provides a subset of Prime Infrastructure reports that combine network management and performance data across all the managed instances of Prime Infrastructure. If you are using Operations Center to segment and rationalize your management of a global network, these specialized versions of the standard reports can help get a closer look at your network as a whole, help you monitor health across the globe, and troubleshoot emergent issues.

The Operations Center reports contain aggregated data from all of the managed Prime Infrastructure instances. If you want to restrict this aggregation to a subset of the managed instances, the best ways to do this are to:]

- Temporarily deactivate those Prime Infrastructure managed instances whose data you do not want included in the aggregated Operations Center report data. You can do this by selecting **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Manage and Monitor Servers** and choosing to deactivate the servers you want to ignore.
- Use virtual domains to restrict the data the instances in which you are interested. For details, see “Using Virtual Domains With Operations Center” in Related Topics.

Except for aggregating data across managed instances, Operations Center reports generation works the same way as in Prime Infrastructure. For more information about Prime Infrastructure reports and how to generate them, see “Managing Reports” in Related Topics.

**Related Topics**

- [Managing Reports](#)
- [Viewing the Operations Center Dashboards](#)
- [Monitoring Your Network Using Operations Center](#)
- [Using Virtual Domains With Operations Center](#)
- [Viewing Alarms and Events Using Operations Center](#)
- [Viewing Clients and Users Using Operations Center](#)





## **PART 4**

### **Configuring Devices**

- [Configuring Network Devices](#)
- [Using Templates to Configure Devices](#)
- [Configuring Wireless Devices](#)
- [Creating Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Configuring Wireless Technologies](#)
- [Scheduling Configuration Tasks](#)
- [Auditing Device Configurations to Ensure Compliance](#)
- [Configuring Plug and Play](#)







# Configuring Network Devices

From the **Configuration > Network > Network Devices** page, you can view all devices and device configuration information. The Network Devices page contains configuration functions as described in [Table 19-1](#).

**Table 19-1** Configuration > Network > Network Devices Tasks

<b>Task</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Location in Configuration &gt; Network &gt; Network Devices</b>
Manage devices	You can add, edit, delete, sync, and export devices, add and delete devices from groups and sites, and perform a bulk import.	Buttons are located across the top of the page.
View basic device information and collection status	View basic device information such as reachability status, IP address, device type, and collection status.	<p>Click the icon next to the IP Address to access the 360° view for that device.</p> <p>For controllers, click the arrow to launch the controller web UI.</p> <p>Hover your mouse cursor over the Reachability cell to view the status.</p> <p>Click the icon in the Last Inventory Collection cell to view errors related to the inventory collection.</p>
Manage device groups	By default, Cisco Prime Infrastructure creates dynamic device groups and assigns devices to the appropriate Device Type folder. You can create new device groups that appear under the User Defined folder.	Displayed in the left pane of the page.

Table 19-1 Configuration &gt; Network &gt; Network Devices Tasks (continued)

Task	Description	Location in Configuration > Network > Network Devices
Add devices to site groups	<p>After you set up a site group profile, you can add devices to it.</p> <p>To add devices to site groups in Network Devices page, add them to Group and then select site group.</p> <p>To add devices to site maps, go to the Maps &gt; Site Map.</p> <p><b>Note</b> A device can belong to one site group hierarchy only.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The devices added to a site group on this page are not added in the Maps &gt; Site Map page. Similarly, the devices added in the Site Map Design page are not added to site groups on this page.</p>	<b>Groups &amp; Sites</b> button located at the top of the page.
View device details	View device details such as memory, port, environment, and interface information.	Click on a Device Name to view the detailed configuration information for that device.
Create and deploy configuration templates	You can configure device features on the selected device. You can also view the list of applied and scheduled feature templates that were deployed to the device.	Click on a Device Name, then click the <b>Configuration</b> tab.
View device configurations	View archived configurations, schedule configuration rollbacks, and schedule archive collections.	Click on a Device Name, then click the <b>Configuration Archives</b> tab.
View software images	You can view the recommended software image for a single device, and then import or distribute that image.	<p>Click on a Device Name, then click the <b>Image</b> tab.</p> <p>Scroll down to Recommended Images to view the recommended image for the device that you selected. Prime Infrastructure gathers the recommended images from both Cisco.com and the local repository.</p>
View interface details	You can view the description, admin status, and operational status of the interface.	Click on a Device Name, click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, then in the left frame, click <b>Interfaces</b> to view the interface details.
View and modify TrustSec configuration	You can view and modify the TrustSec configuration of a TrustSec-based device.	Click on a Device Name, click the <b>Configuration</b> tab, then in the left frame, click <b>Security &gt; TrustSec &gt; Wired 802_1x</b> .

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring Network Devices](#)
- [Using Templates to Configure Devices](#)
- [Configuring Wireless Devices](#)

- [Creating Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Configuring Wireless Technologies](#)
- [Scheduling Configuration Tasks](#)
- [Auditing Device Configurations to Ensure Compliance](#)
- [Configuring Plug and Play](#)





## Using Templates to Configure Devices

---

You can use Cisco Prime Infrastructure configuration templates to design the set of device configurations that you need to set up the devices in a branch. When you have a site, office, or branch that uses a similar set of devices and configurations, you can use configuration templates to build a generic configuration that you can apply to one or more devices in the branch. You can also use configuration templates when you have a new branch and want to quickly and accurately set up common configurations on the devices in the branch. Altering configurations across a large number of devices can be tedious and time-consuming, and templates save you time by applying the necessary configurations and ensuring consistency across devices.

### Related Topics

- [Guidelines for Planning Your Network Design](#)
- [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#)
- [Creating Composite Templates](#)
- [Shared Policy Objects](#)
- [Grouping Configuration Templates with Devices](#)
- [Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Creating Wireless Configuration Templates](#)
- [Creating Switch Location Configuration Templates](#)
- [Creating Security Templates](#)
- [Deploying Templates](#)

## Guidelines for Planning Your Network Design

Consider the following factors when using the Prime Infrastructure to create reusable design patterns to simplify device configurations. When you plan your network design and then create templates based on that design, you can increase operational efficiency, reduce configuration errors, and improve compliance to standards and best practices.:

- What is the size of your network?
- How diverse are the devices and services that you support?
- How many network designers do you have?
- What degree of precision do you need in controlling your network?

If you have a small network with only one or two designers and not much variation among device configurations, you could start by copying all CLI configurations you know are “good” into a set of configuration and monitoring templates, then create a composite template that contains these templates.

If you have a large network with many different devices, try to identify the configurations you can standardize. Creating feature and technology templates as exceptions to these standards allows you to turn features on and off as needed.

#### Related Topics

- [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#)
- [Creating Composite Templates](#)
- [Shared Policy Objects](#)
- [Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Creating Wireless Configuration Templates](#)
- [Creating Switch Location Configuration Templates](#)
- [Creating Security Templates](#)

## Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates

Prime Infrastructure provides the following types of feature-level configuration templates:

- Features and technologies templates—Configurations that are specific to a feature or technology in a device’s configuration.
- CLI templates—User-defined templates that are created based on your own parameters. CLI templates allow you to choose the elements in the configurations. Prime Infrastructure provides variables that you replace with actual values and logic statements. You can also import templates from the Cisco Prime LAN Management System.
- Composite templates—Two or more feature or CLI templates grouped together into one template. You specify the order in which the templates contained in the composite template are deployed to devices.

#### Related Topics

- [Creating Features and Technologies Templates](#)
- [Creating Composite Templates](#)
- [Creating Composite Templates](#)
- [Creating Wireless Configuration Templates](#)
- [Creating Switch Location Configuration Templates](#)
- [Creating CLI Configuration Templates, page 20-4](#)
- [Creating Security Templates](#)

## Creating Features and Technologies Templates

Features and Technologies templates are templates that are based on device configuration and that focus on specific features or technologies in a device’s configuration.

When you add a device to Prime Infrastructure, Prime Infrastructure gathers the device configuration for the model you added. Prime Infrastructure does not support every configurable option for all device types. If Prime Infrastructure does not have a Features and Technologies template for the specific feature or parameter that you want to configure, create a CLI template.

Features and Technologies templates simplify the deployment of configuration changes. For example, you can create an SNMP Features and Technologies template and then quickly apply it to devices you specify. You can also add this SNMP template to a composite template. Then later, when you update the SNMP template, the composite template in which the SNMP template is contained automatically has your latest changes.

To create a Features and Technologies template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features and Technologies**.
  - Step 2** In the Features and Technologies menu on the left, choose a template type to create.
  - Step 3** Complete the fields for that template.  
  
If you are creating a feature template that applies only to a particular device type, the Device Type field lists only the applicable device type, and you cannot change the selection. Specifying a device type helps you to prevent a mismatch; that is, you cannot create a configuration and apply the configuration to a wrong device.
  - Step 4** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, apply it to your devices.
  - Step 5** To verify the status of a template deployment, choose **Administration > Dashboard > Jobs Dashboard**.
  - Step 6** To modify the deployment parameters for any subsequent configuration template deployments, select a configuration job, then click **Edit Schedule**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Creating Composite Templates](#)
- [Creating CLI Configuration Templates](#)
- [Creating Features and Technologies Templates](#)

## Example: Creating an ACL Template

To create an ACL template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features and Technologies > Security > ACL**.
  - Step 2** Enter the mandatory fields.
  - Step 3** In the Template Detail, click **Add Row**.
  - Step 4** Enter the ACL details, then click **Save as New Template**.
  - Step 5** Click the arrow to expand the ACL, then click **Add Row** to provide additional details about the ACL such as the action, source IP address, and wildcard mask.
  - Step 6** Click **Save**.
  - Step 7** After you save the template, you can specify devices, values, and scheduling information to tailor your deployment.
-

**Related Topics**

- [Creating Features and Technologies Templates](#)

## Creating CLI Templates

CLI templates are a set of re-usable device configuration commands with the ability to parameterize select elements of the configuration as well as add control logic statements. This template is used to generate a device deployable configuration by replacing the parameterized elements (variables) with actual values and evaluating the control logic statements.

To view the list of system CLI templates, choose **Configuration > Templates > Features and Technologies > CLI Templates > System Templates - CLI**. You cannot delete a System Template, but you can modify and save it as a new template. In this page, you can import or export any template. You cannot import a template under the system defined folder. The Undeploy button is disabled in this page since the CLI templates do not have an option undeploy them.

## Prerequisites for Creating CLI Templates

Before you create a CLI template, you must:

- Have expert knowledge and understanding of the CLI and be able to write the CLI in Apache VTL. For more information about Apache Velocity Template Language, see <http://velocity.apache.org/engine/devel/vtl-reference-guide.html>.
- Understand to what devices the CLI you create can be applied.
- Understand the data types supported by Prime Infrastructure.
- Understand and be able to manually label configurations in the template.
- To know how to use variables and data types, see the [Variables and Data Types](#).

## Creating CLI Configuration Templates

Use templates to define device parameters and settings, which you can later to a specified number of devices based on device type.

**Before You Begin**

Make sure that you have satisfied the prerequisites (see [Prerequisites for Creating CLI Templates](#)).

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features and Technologies**.
- Step 2** Expand the **CLI Templates** folder, then click **CLI**.
- Step 3** Enter the required information.
- In the OS Version field, you can specify an OS image version so that you can filter out devices older than the one that you specified.
  - In the Template Detail section, click the **Manage Variables** icon (above the CLI Content field). This allows you to specify a variable for which you will define a value when you apply the template.
  - Click **Add Row** and enter the parameters for the new variable (see the [Variables and Data Types](#)), then click **Save**.



- c. Enter the CLI information. In the CLI field, you must enter code using Apache VTL (see <http://velocity.apache.org/engine/devel/vtl-reference-guide.html>). For more information about different CLI command formats, see:
    - [Adding Multi-line Commands](#)
    - [Adding Enable Mode Commands](#)
    - [Adding Interactive Commands](#)
  - d. (Optional) To change the variables, click the Manage Variables icon, and then make your changes (see the [Variables and Data Types](#)). Click **Form View** (a read-only view) to view the variables.
- Step 4** Click **Save As New Template**, specify the folder in which you want to save the template, then click **Save**. To duplicate a CLI template, expand the **System Templates - CLI**, hover your mouse cursor over the quick view picker icon next to CLI, and then click **Duplicate**.

## Variables and Data Types

You can use variables as placeholders to store values. The variables have names and data types. [Table 20-1](#) lists data types that you can configure in the Manage Variables page.

**Table 20-1** Data Types

Data Type	Description
String	Enables you to create a text box for CLI templates. To specify a validation expression and a default value, expand the row and configure the Default Value and Validation Expression fields.
Integer	Enables you to create a text box that accepts only numeric value. If you want to specify a range for the integer, expand the row and configure the Range From and To fields. To specify a validation expression and a default value, expand the row and configure the Default Value and Validation Expression fields.
DB	Enables you to specify a database type. See the <a href="#">Managing Database Variables in CLI Templates</a> .
IPv4 Address	Enables you to create a text box that accepts only IPv4 addresses for CLI templates. To specify a validation expression and a default value, expand the row and configure the Default Value and Validation Expression fields.
Drop-down	Enables you to create a list for CLI templates. To specify a validation expression and a default value, expand the row and configure the Default Value field (with a comma-separated value for multiple lists which appears in the UI).
Check box	Enables you to create a check box for CLI templates. To specify a validation expression and a default value, expand the row and configure the Default Value field.
Radio Button	Enables you to create a radio button for CLI templates. To specify a validation expression and a default value, expand the row and configure the Default Value field.
Text Area	Enables you to create a text area which allows multiline values for CLI templates. To specify a validation expression and a default value, expand the row and configure the Default Value and Validation Expression fields.

## Managing Database Variables in CLI Templates

You can use database (DB) variables for the following reasons:

- DB variables are one of the data types in CLI templates. You can use the DB variables to generate device-specific commands.

- DB variables are predefined variables. To view the list of predefined DB variables, see the `CLITemplateDbVariablesQuery.properties` file in the following folder `/opt/CSCOLumos/conf/ifm/template/inventoryTagsInTemplate`.
- For example, `SysObjectID`, `IPAddress`, `ProductSeries`, `ImageVersion` are DB variables. When a device is added to Prime Infrastructure, the complete details of the device is collected in the DB variables. That is, the OID of the devices is collected in `SysObjectID`, product series in `ProductSeries`, image versions of the device in `ImageVersion`, and so on.
- Using the data collected by the DB variables, accurate commands can be generated to the device.
- You can select the DB variable in the Type field (using the Managed Variables page). Expand the name field and fill in the default value field with any of the DB variables which you want to use.
- When a device is discovered and added to Prime Infrastructure, you can use the database values that were gathered during the inventory collection to create CLI templates.

For example, if you want to create a CLI template to shut down all interfaces in a branch, create a CLI template that contains the following commands:

```
#foreach ($interfaceName in $interfaceNameList)
interface $interfaceName
shutdown
#end
```

where `$interfaceNameList` is the database variable type whose value will be retrieved from the database. `$interfaceNameList` has a default value of `IntfName`. You need to create the `interfaceNameList` variable as DB data type (using the managed variable dialog box) and add set the default to `IntfName`. If you have not specified a default value, you can specify it when you apply the CLI template.

To populate `interfaceNameList` with the value from the database, you must create a properties file to capture the query string and save it in the `/opt/CSCOLumos/conf/ifm/template/inventoryTagsInTemplate` folder.

To view the predefined DB variables go to the following path:  
`cd /opt/CSCOLumos/conf/ifm/template/inventoryTagsInTemplate`

After you create and apply the CLI template and the property file, the following CLI is configured on the devices. This output assumes that the device has two interfaces (GigabitEthernet0/1 and GigabitEthernet0/0):

```
interface GigabitEthernet0/0
shutdown
interface GigabitEthernet0/1
shutdown
```


**Note**

While it is possible to create a customized query using Enterprise JavaBeans Query Language (EJB QL), only advanced developers should attempt this. We recommend you use the variables defined in the `CLITemplateDbVariablesQuery.properties` file only.

## Using Validation Expression

The values that you define in the Validation Expression are validated with the associated component value. For example, if you enter a default value and a validation expression value in the design flow, this will be validated during the design flow. That is, if the default value does not match with the entered value in the validation expression, you will encounter a get error at the design flow.


**Note**

The validation expression value works only for the string data type field.

Example:

Choose Configuration > Features and Technologies > CLI Templates > CLI > Manage Variables > Add Row. Choose string data type and then expand the row and configure the regular expression, which will not allow a space in that text box.

Enter the following expression in the validating expression field.

```
^\[S]+\$
```

Default value (optional)—ncs

The value should match with regular expression in the validation expression field.)

Result:

Save the template, and then select a device. Try to enter a space in the text field. You will encounter a regular expression error.

## Adding Multi-line Commands

To enter multi-line commands in the CLI Content area, use the following syntax:

```
<MLTCMD>First Line of Multiline Command
Second Line of Multiline Command
.....
.....
Last Line of Multiline Command</MLTCMD>
```

where:

- <MLTCMD> and </MLTCMD> tags are case-sensitive and must be entered as uppercase.
- The multi-line commands must be inserted between the <MLTCMD> and </MLTCMD> tags.
- Do not start this tag with a space.
- Do not use <MLTCMD> and </MLTCMD> in a single line.

Example 1:

```
<MLTCMD>banner_motd ~ Welcome to
Cisco. You are using
Multi-line commands.
~</MLTCMD>
```

Example 2:

```
<MLTCMD>banner motd ~ ${message}
~</MLTCMD>
```

where *message* is a multi-line input variable.

### Restrictions for Using Multi-line Banner Commands

Prime Infrastructure does not support multi-line banner commands.

You can use “*banner file xyz*” format as shown in the following example:

```
#conf t
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with Ctrl-Z.
(config)#parameter-map type webauth global
(config-params-parameter-map)# type webauth
(config-params-parameter-map)#banner file tftp://192.168.0.0/banner.txt
(config-params-parameter-map)^Z
```

```
#more tftp://192.168.0.0/banner.txt
Disclaimer:
Usage of this wireless network is restricted to authorized users only.
Unauthorized access is strictly forbidden.
All accesses are logged and can be monitored.
#
```

## Adding Enable Mode Commands

Use this syntax to add enable mode commands to your CLI templates:

```
#MODE_ENABLE
<<commands >>
#MODE_END_ENABLE
```

## Adding Interactive Commands

An interactive command contains the input that must be entered following the execution of a command.

To enter an interactive command in the CLI Content area, use the following syntax:

```
CLI Command<IQ>interactive question 1<R>command response 1 <IQ>interactive question
2<R>command response 2
```

where <IQ> and <R> tag are case-sensitive and must be entered as uppercase.

For example:

```
#INTERACTIVE
crypto key generate rsa general-keys <IQ>yes/no<R> no
#ENDS_INTERACTIVE
```

## Combining Interactive Enable Mode Commands

Use this syntax to combine interactive Enable Mode commands:

```
#MODE_ENABLE
#INTERACTIVE
commands<IQ>interactive question<R>response
#ENDS_INTERACTIVE
#MODE_END_ENABLE
```

For example:

```
#MODE_ENABLE
#INTERACTIVE
mkdir <IQ>Create directory<R>xyz
#ENDS_INTERACTIVE
#MODE_END_ENABLE
```

## Adding Interactive Multiline Commands

This is an example of an interactive command that contains multiple lines:

```
#INTERACTIVE
macro name EgressQoS<IQ>Enter macro<R><MLTCMD>mls qos trust dscp
wrr-queue queue-limit 10 25 10 10 10 10
wrr-queue bandwidth 1 25 4 10 10 10
priority-queue queue-limit 15
wrr-queue random-detect 1
wrr-queue random-detect 2
wrr-queue random-detect 3
wrr-queue random-detect 4
wrr-queue random-detect 5
wrr-queue random-detect 6
```

```

wrr-queue random-detect 7
wrr-queue random-detect max-threshold 1 100 100 100 100
wrr-queue random-detect min-threshold 1 80 100 100 100
wrr-queue random-detect max-threshold 2 100 100 100 100
wrr-queue random-detect min-threshold 2 80 100 100 100
wrr-queue random-detect max-threshold 3 80 90 100 100
wrr-queue random-detect min-threshold 3 70 80 90 100
wrr-queue random-detect min-threshold 4 70 80 90 100
wrr-queue random-detect max-threshold 4 80 90 100 100
wrr-queue random-detect min-threshold 5 70 80 90 100
wrr-queue random-detect max-threshold 5 80 90 100 100
wrr-queue random-detect min-threshold 6 70 80 90 100
wrr-queue random-detect max-threshold 6 80 90 100 100
wrr-queue random-detect min-threshold 7 60 70 80 90
wrr-queue random-detect max-threshold 7 70 80 90 100
@</MLTCMD>
#ENDS_INTERACTIVE

```

## Creating CLI Configuration Templates from Copied Code

A quick way to create CLI configuration templates is to copy code from a command line configuration session, CLI script, or other stored set of configuration commands. Prime Infrastructure lets you turn all the CLI parameters in the copied CLI into template variables.

To create a CLI template variable from copied code:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features and Technologies**.
  - Step 2** Expand the **CLI Template** folder, then click **CLI**.
  - Step 3** In the CLI template, paste the copied code into the **CLI Content** field.
  - Step 4** Select the text that is to be the variable name and click **Manage Variables** (the icon above the CLI Content field).  
You can use this same procedure to edit an existing variable created from copied code.
  - Step 5** Fill out the required information, then click **Save > Add**.
  - Step 6** To view the new variable, click **Form View**.
- 

## Exporting a CLI Configuration Template

If you have CLI templates in any other Prime Infrastructure server, you can export them as an XML file and import them into your current Prime Infrastructure server.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features and Technologies**.
  - Step 2** Expand the **CLI Template** folder, then click **System Templates - CLI**.
  - Step 3** Select the template(s) that you want to export.
  - Step 4** Click the **Export** icon at the top right of the CLI template page.
-

## Importing a CLI Configuration Template

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features and Technologies**.
  - Step 2** Expand the **CLI Template** folder, then hover your mouse cursor over the quick view picker icon next to **CLI**.
  - Step 3** Click **Show All Templates**.
  - Step 4** Click the **Import** icon at the top right of the CLI template page.
  - Step 5** Click **Select Templates** to navigate to your file, then click **OK**.
- 

## Exporting CLI Variables

You can export the CLI variables into a CSV file while deploying a CLI configuration template. You can use the CSV file to make necessary changes in the variable configuration and import it into Prime Infrastructure at a later time.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features and Technologies > CLI Templates**.
  - Step 2** Click **System Templates - CLI**.
  - Step 3** Select the template whose variables you want to export.
  - Step 4** Click **Deploy**.
  - Step 5** Select devices in **Device Selection** area.
  - Step 6** Click the **Export** icon at the top right of the **Value Assignment** area.
  - Step 7** Click **OK**.

Exporting the variables without any data will export a blank file.

---

## Importing CLI Variables

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features and Technologies > CLI Templates**.
  - Step 2** Click **System Templates - CLI**.
  - Step 3** Select the template whose variables you want to import.
  - Step 4** Click the **Import** icon at the top right of the CLI template page.
  - Step 5** Click **OK**.
- 

## Example: Updating Passwords Using a CLI Template

You might want to update the password for network devices on a regular basis, once every six months. To make the changes in a rolling fashion, you plan to perform the operation once for two regions every three months.

In this example, there are four custom dynamic groups, one for each region based on the cities in every region: North Region, South Region, East Region, and West Region. You must update the enable password for all of the devices in the north and south region. After this is complete, you plan to set another job to occur for the West and East region devices to occur three months later.

### Before You Begin

The devices in these regions must have an assigned location attribute.

- 
- Step 1** If the four groups, North Region, South Region, East Region, and West Region, have not been created:
- Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, then hover your mouse cursor over **User Defined** and click **Add SubGroup**.
  - In the Create Sub-Group area, enter:
    - Group Name: North Region
    - Group Description: List of devices in the north region
    - Filter: **Location > Contains > SJC-N**  
To determine the location of a device, choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices > (gear icon) > Columns > Location**.  
The devices for the new group appear under Device Work Center > User Defined > North.
  - Do the same for south, east, and west regions.
- Step 2** To deploy the password template:
- Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features and Technologies > CLI Templates > System Templates-CLI**.
  - Select the **Enable Password-IOS** template and click **Deploy**.
  - In the Device Selection area, open the User Defined groups and select the **North Region** and **South Region** groups.
  - In the Value Selection area, enter and confirm the new enable password, then click **Apply**.
  - In the Schedule area, enter a name for the job, the date and time to apply the new template (or click **Now**), then click **OK**.
- Step 3** After the job has run, choose **Administration > Jobs** to view the status of the job (see [Monitoring Jobs](#)).
- 

## Tagging Templates

You can label a set of templates by providing an intuitive name to tag the templates. After you create a tagged template, the template is listed under the My Tags folder. Tagging a configuration template helps you:

- Search a template using the tag name in the search field
- Use the tagged template as a reference to configure more devices

### Tagging a New Configuration Template

To tag a new configuration template and publish the tagged template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies**.
  - Step 2** Expand the Features and Technologies folder, choose an appropriate subfolder, and then choose a template type.
  - Step 3** Complete the required fields, enter a tag name in the **Tags** field, then click **Save as New Template**.
- 

## Tagging an Existing Template

To tag an existing template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies**.
  - Step 2** In the Features and Technologies menu on the left, expand the **My Templates** folder and choose the template that you want to update.
  - Step 3** Click the Tag icon, enter a tag name in the **Tag as** text box, then click **Save**.
- 

## Associating a Tag With Multiple Templates

You can tag a new tag name or associate an existing tag with multiple templates.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies**.
  - Step 2** Click the Tag icon on the navigation toolbar of the Templates column.
  - Step 3** Enter a tag name in the **Tag as** field.
  - Step 4** In the My Templates folder, click the templates that are to be associated with the tag.  
To associate all of the templates in the folder with the tag, select the check box next to the My Templates folder.
  - Step 5** Click **Apply**.
- 

## Creating Composite Templates

Create a composite template if you have a collection of existing features or CLI templates that you want to apply collectively to devices. For example, when you deploy a branch, you need to specify the minimum configurations for the branch router. Creating a composite template allows you to create a set of required features that include:

- Feature templates for the Ethernet interface
- A CLI template for additional features you require

All of the templates that you create can be added to a single *composite template*, which aggregates all of the individual feature templates that you need for the branch router. You can then use this composite template to perform branch deployment operations and to replicate the configurations at other branches.



If you have multiple similar devices replicated across a branch, you can create and apply a *master (golden) composite template* for all of the devices in the branch. You can use this master composite template to:

- Simplify deployment and ensure consistency across your device configurations.
- Compare against an existing device configuration to determine if there are mismatches.
- Create new branches.

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Composite Templates > Composite Templates**.

**Step 2** Provide the required information.

- From the **Device Type** drop-down list, choose the devices to which all of the templates contained in the composite template apply. For example, if your composite template contains one template that applies to Cisco 7200 Series routers and another that applies to all routers, choose the Cisco 7200 Series routers in the Device Type list.

If a device type is dimmed, the template cannot be applied on that device type.

- In the Template Detail area, choose the templates to include in the composite template.

Using the arrows, put the templates in the composite in the order in which they should be deployed to the devices. For example, to create an ACL and associate it with an interface, put the ACL template first, followed by the interface template.

**Step 3** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, and apply it to your devices (see [Creating Features and Technologies Templates](#)).

---

#### Related Topic

- [Shared Policy Objects](#)

## Shared Policy Objects

Policy objects enable you to define logical collections of elements. They are reusable, named components that can be used by other objects and policies. They also eliminate the need to define a component each time that you define a policy.

Objects are defined globally. This means that the definition of an object is the same for every object and policy that references it. However, many object types (such as interface roles) can be overridden at the device level. This means that you can create an object that works for most of your devices, then customize the object to match the configuration of a particular device that has slightly different requirements.

To improve efficiency and accuracy in your configuration templates, you can create shared policy objects to include in your configuration templates. You create interface roles (see [Interface Roles](#)) or network objects (see [Creating Network Objects](#)) that you can add to your configuration templates.

#### Related Topics

- [Interface Roles](#)
- [Creating Network Objects](#)

## Interface Roles

Interface roles allow you to define policies to specific interfaces on multiple devices without having to manually define the names of each interface. Interface roles can refer to any of the actual interfaces on the device, including physical interfaces, subinterfaces, and virtual interfaces such as loopback interfaces.

If you create an all-Ethernets interface role, you can define identical advanced settings for every Ethernet interface on the device with a single definition. You add this interface role to a configuration template, then deploy the template to the selected devices to configure the Ethernet interfaces.

Interface roles are especially useful when applying policies to new devices. As long as the devices that you are adding share the same interface naming scheme as existing devices, you can quickly deploy the necessary configuration template containing the interface role to the new devices.

## Creating Interface Roles

An interface role allows you to dynamically select a group of interfaces without having to manually define the interfaces on each device. For example, you can use interface roles to define the zones in a zone-based firewall configuration template. You might define an interface role with a naming pattern of DMZ\*. When you include this interface role in a template, the configuration is applied to all interfaces whose name begins with “DMZ” on the selected devices. As a result, you can assign a policy that enables anti-spoof checking on all DMZ interfaces to all relevant device interfaces with a single action.

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Shared Policy Objects**.

**Step 2** In the Shared Policy Objects pane, choose **Shared > Interface Role**.

**Step 3** From the Interface Role page, click **Add Object**.

**Step 4** From the Add Interface Role page, create matching rules for the interface role.

When you define the zone-based template, for example, all of the interfaces on the device that match the specified rules will become members of the security zone represented by this interface role. You can match interfaces according to their name, description, type, and speed.

**Step 5** Click **OK** to save the configurations.

---

## Creating Network Objects

Network objects are logical collections of IP addresses or subnets that represent networks. Network objects make it easier to manage policies.

There are separate objects for IPv4 and IPv6 addresses; the IPv4 object is called “networks/hosts,” and the IPv6 object is called “network/hosts-IPv6.” Except for the address notation, these objects are functionally identical, and in many instances the name network/host applies to either type of object. Note that specific policies require the selection of one type of object over the other, depending on the type of address expected in the policy.

You can create shared policy objects to be used in the following configuration templates:

- Zone-based firewall templates—See [Creating a Zone-Based Firewall](#)
- Application Visibility—See [Configuring Application Visibility](#)

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Shared Policy Objects > Shared > IPv4 Network Object**.
  - Step 2** From the Network Object page, click **Add Object** and add a group of IP addresses or subnets.
  - Step 3** Click **OK** to save the configurations.
- 

## Creating a Security Rule Parameter Map

To create and use a set of parameter map objects in the firewall rules, do the following:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Shared Policy Objects**.
  - Step 2** In the Shared Policy Objects pane, choose **Shared > Security Rule Parameter Map**.
  - Step 3** From the Security Rule Parameter Map page, click **Add Object**.
  - Step 4** Specify a name and description for the parameter map that is being created.
  - Step 5** From the parameters list, select the parameters you want to apply and provide a value for each of them.
  - Step 6** To specify Device Level Override, choose **Device Level Override > Add Device**.
  - Step 7** Select the device you wish to add, and click **OK**.
  - Step 8** Click **OK** to save the configurations.
- 

## Creating a Security Service Group

To create and use a set of parameter map objects in the firewall rules, do the following:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Shared Policy Objects**.
  - Step 2** In the Shared Policy Objects pane, choose **Shared > Security Service**.
  - Step 3** From the Security Service page, click **Add Object**.
  - Step 4** Specify a name and description for the service that is being created.
  - Step 5** Select the service data from the available list. If you select TCP or UDP, provide a list of port numbers or port ranges (separated by comma).
  - Step 6** To specify Device Level Override, choose **Device Level Override > Add Device**.
  - Step 7** Select the device you wish to add, and click **OK**.
  - Step 8** Click **OK** to save the configurations.
- 

## Creating a Security Zone

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Shared Policy Objects**.
  - Step 2** In the Shared Policy Objects pane, choose **Shared > Security Zone**.

- Step 3** From the Security Zone page, click **Add Object**.
  - Step 4** Specify a name and description for the security zone that is being created.
  - Step 5** Specify a set of rules that defines the interfaces that must be attached to the zone.
  - Step 6** To specify Device Level Override, choose **Device Level Override > Add Device**.
  - Step 7** Select the device you wish to add, and click **OK**.
  - Step 8** Click **OK** to save the configurations.
- 

## Grouping Configuration Templates with Devices

You might want to associate a set of configuration templates with specific devices. If you have devices that require the same configuration, you can create a *configuration group* that associates configuration templates with devices. Creating a configuration group allows you to quickly apply new templates without remembering to which devices the new templates should be deployed.

Composite templates allow you to group smaller templates together, but only configuration groups specify the relationship between the templates and the groups of devices to which those templates apply. You can also specify the order in which the templates in the configuration group are deployed to the devices.

Before you create a configuration group, you should:

- Create configuration templates for the devices in your configuration group. See [Creating Features and Technologies Templates](#).
- Determine which devices should be included in the configuration group.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Configuration Groups**.
  - Step 2** Complete the required fields. The device types displayed depend on what you select from the Device Type field.
  - Step 3** Where needed, change a template's order in the group by selecting it and clicking the up or down arrow.
  - Step 4** Click **Save as a New Configuration Group**.

[Table 20-2](#) describes the possible configuration group states.

---

**Table 20-2** Configuration Group Status Descriptions

Status	Description
Success	Indicates that a configuration group has been successfully created.
Pending	One or more devices in the configuration group have changes that have not yet been deployed. For example, if you add a new device to the configuration group, the status of the new device is <i>Pending</i> . If you modify a configuration template to which the configuration group is associated, all devices in the configuration group have the status <i>Pending</i> .

Table 20-2 Configuration Group Status Descriptions (continued)

Status	Description
Scheduled	Indicates that a configuration group deployment is scheduled. When a configuration group is <i>Scheduled</i> , any devices in the group that are <i>Pending</i> or <i>Failed</i> are changed to <i>Scheduled</i> . If a device is <i>Deployed</i> , it remains <i>Deployed</i> and its status does not change to <i>Scheduled</i> .
Failure	Deployment has failed for one or more devices in the configuration group.

## Controller Configuration Groups

By creating a configuration group, you can group controllers that should have the same mobility group name and similar configuration. You can assign templates to the group and push templates to all of the controllers in a group. You can add, delete, or remove configuration groups, and download software, IDS signatures, or a customized web authentication page to controllers in the selected configuration groups. You can also save the current configuration to nonvolatile (flash) memory to controllers in selected configuration groups.



### Note

A controller cannot be a member of more than one mobility group. Adding a controller to one mobility group removes that controller from any other mobility group to which it is already a member.

By choosing **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**, you can view a summary of all configuration groups in the Prime Infrastructure database. Choose **Add Configuration Groups** from the **Select a command** drop-down list to display a table with the following columns:

- Group Name—Name of the configuration group.
- Templates—Number of templates applied to the configuration group.

## Creating Controller Configuration Groups

To create a configuration group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**.
  - Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Add Config Group**, then click **Go**.
  - Step 3** Enter the new configuration group name. It must be unique across all groups.
    - If **Enable Background Audit** is selected, the network and controller audits occur for this configuration group.
    - If **Enable Enforcement** is selected, the templates are automatically applied during the audit if any discrepancies are found.
  - Step 4** Other templates created in Prime Infrastructure can be assigned to a configuration group. The same WLAN template can be assigned to more than one configuration group. Choose from the following:
    - **Select and add later**—Click to add a template at a later time.
    - **Copy templates from a controller**—Click to copy templates from another controller. Choose a controller from a list of current controllers to copy its applied template to the new configuration group. Only the templates are copied.



**Note** The order of the templates is important when dealing with radio templates. For example, if the template list includes radio templates that require the radio network to be disabled prior to applying the radio parameters, the template to disable the radio network must be added to the template first.

**Step 5** Click **Save**. The Configuration Groups page appears.

After you create a configuration group, Prime Infrastructure allows you to choose and configure multiple controllers by choosing the template that you want to push to the group of controllers.

- **General**—Allows you to enable mobility group.  
To enable the Background Audit option, set template-based audit in **Administration > System > Audit Settings**.
- **Controllers**—For details, see [Adding or Removing Controllers from Configuration Groups](#).
- **Country/DCA**—For details, see [Configuring Multiple Country Codes](#).
- **Templates**—Allows you to select the configuration templates that you have already created.
- **Apply/Schedule**—For details, see [Applying or Scheduling Configuration Groups](#).
- **Audit**—For details, see [Auditing Configuration Groups](#).
- **Reboot**—For details, see [Rebooting Configuration Groups](#).
- **Report**—Allows you to view the most recent report for this group.

## Adding or Removing Controllers from Configuration Groups

To add or remove controllers from a configuration group, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**.

**Step 2** Click a group name in the Group Name column, then click the **Audit** tab.

The columns in the table display the IP address of the controller, the configuration group name the controller belongs to, and the mobility group name of the controller.

**Step 3** Click to highlight the row of the controller that you want to add to the group, then click **Add**.

**Step 4** To remove a controller from the group, highlight the controller in the Group Controllers area and click **Remove**.

**Step 5** Click the **Apply/Schedule** tab, click **Apply** to add or remove the controllers to the configuration groups, then click **Save Selection**.

## Configuring Multiple Country Codes

You can configure one or more countries on a controller. After countries are configured on a controller, the corresponding 802.11a/n DCA channels are available for selection. At least one DCA channel must be selected for the 802.11a/n network. When the country codes are changed, the DCA channels are automatically changed in coordination.

**Note**

802.11a/n and 802.11b/n networks for controllers and access points must be disabled before configuring a country on a controller. To disable 802.11a/n or 802.11b/n networks, choose **Configure > Controllers**, select the desired controller that you want to disable, choose **802.11a/n** or **802.11b/g/n** from the left sidebar menu, and then choose **Parameters**. The Network Status is the first check box.

To add multiple controllers that are defined in a configuration group and then set the DCA channels, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**.
  - Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Add Config Groups**, then click **Go**.
  - Step 3** Create a configuration group by entering the group name and mobility group name.
  - Step 4** Click **Save**, then click the **Controllers** tab.
  - Step 5** Highlight the controllers that you want to add, and click **Add**. The controller is added to the Group Controllers page.
  - Step 6** Click the **Country/DCA** tab. The Country/DCA page appears. Dynamic Channel Allocation (DCA) automatically selects a reasonably good channel allocation amongst a set of managed devices connected to the controller.
  - Step 7** Select the **Update Country/DCA** check box to display a list of countries from which to choose.
  - Step 8** Those DCA channels that are currently configured on the controller for the same mobility group are displayed in the Select Country Codes page. The corresponding 802.11a/n and 802.11b/n allowable channels for the chosen country is displayed as well. You can add or delete any channels in the list by selecting or deselecting the channel and clicking **Save Selection**.

A minimum of 1 and a maximum of 20 countries can be configured for a controller.

---

## Applying or Scheduling Configuration Groups

The scheduling function allows you to schedule a start day and time for provisioning.

To apply the mobility groups, mobility members, and templates to all of the controllers in a configuration group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**.
  - Step 2** Click a group name in the Group Name column, then choose the **Apply/Schedule** tab.
  - Step 3** Click **Apply** to start the provisioning of mobility groups, mobility members, and templates to all of the controllers in the configuration group. After you apply, you can leave this page or log out of Prime Infrastructure. The process continues, and you can return later to this page to view a report.

**Note**

Do not perform any other configuration group functions during the provisioning process.

A report is generated and appears in the Recent Apply Report page. It shows which mobility groups, mobility members, or templates were successfully applied to each of the controllers.

- Step 4** Enter a starting date in the text box or use the calendar icon to choose a start date.

- Step 5** Choose the starting time using the hours and minutes drop-down lists.
  - Step 6** Click **Schedule** to start the provisioning at the scheduled time.
- 

## Auditing Configuration Groups

The Configuration Groups Audit page allows you to verify if the configuration complies of the controller with the group templates and mobility group. During the audit, you can leave this window or log out of Prime Infrastructure. The process continues, and you can return to this page later to view a report.

Do not perform any other configuration group functions during the audit verification.

To perform a configuration group audit, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**.
  - Step 2** Click a group name in the Group Name column, then click the **Audit** tab.
  - Step 3** Click to highlight a controller on the Controllers tab, choose **>> (Add)**, and **Save Selection**.
  - Step 4** Click to highlight a template on the Templates tab, choose **>> (Add)**, and **Save Selection**.
  - Step 5** Click **Audit** to begin the auditing process.  
A report is generated and the current configuration on each controller is compared with that in the configuration group templates. The report displays the audit status, the number of templates in sync, and the number of templates out of sync.  
This audit does not enforce Prime Infrastructure configuration to the device. It only identifies the discrepancies.
  - Step 6** Click **Details** to view the Controller Audit report details.
  - Step 7** Double-click a line item to open the Attribute Differences page. This page displays the attribute, its value in Prime Infrastructure, and its value in the controller.
  - Step 8** Click **Retain Prime Infrastructure Value** to push all attributes in the Attribute Differences page to the device.
  - Step 9** Click **Close** to return to the Controller Audit Report page.
- 

## Rebooting Configuration Groups

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**.
  - Step 2** Click a group name in the Group Name column, then click the **Reboot** tab.
  - Step 3** Select the **Cascade Reboot** check box if you want to reboot one controller at a time, waiting for that controller to come up before rebooting the next controller.
  - Step 4** Click **Reboot** to reboot all controllers in the configuration group at the same time. During the reboot, you can leave this page or log out of Prime Infrastructure. The process continues, and you can return later to this page and view a report.



The Recent Reboot Report page shows when each controller was rebooted and what the controller status is after the reboot. If Prime Infrastructure is unable to reboot the controller, a failure is shown.

---

## Retrieving Configuration Group Reports

To display all recently applied reports under a specified group name, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**.
- Step 2** Click a group name in the Group Name column, then click the **Report** tab. The Recent Apply Report page displays all recently applied reports including the apply status, the date and time the apply was initiated, and the number of templates. The following information is provided for each individual IP address:
- Apply Status—Indicates success, partial success, failure, or not initiated.
  - Successful Templates—Indicates the number of successful templates associated with the applicable IP address.
  - Failures—Indicates the number of failures with the provisioning of mobility group, mobility members, and templates to the applicable controller.
  - Details—Click **Details** to view the individual failures and associated error messages.
- Step 3** To view the scheduled task reports, click the **click here** link at the bottom of the page.
- 

## Creating Wireless Configuration Templates

The following sections describe how to create wireless configuration templates for:

- Lightweight access points
- Autonomous access points
- Switches
- Converting autonomous access points to lightweight access points

## Creating Lightweight AP Configuration Templates

To create a template for a lightweight access point, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Lightweight Access Points**.
- Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Add Template**, then click **Go**.
- Step 3** Enter a name and description for the template and click **Save**. If you are updating an already existing template, click the applicable template in the Template Name column.

- Step 4** Click each of the tabs and complete the required fields. For information about the field descriptions, see the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide](#).
- 

## Creating Autonomous AP Configuration Templates

To create a template for an autonomous access point, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Autonomous Access Points**.
- Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Add Template**, then click **Go**. If you are updating an already existing template, click the applicable template in the Template Name column.
- Step 3** Enter a name for the template and the applicable CLI commands.



**Note** Do not include any show commands in the CLI commands text box. The show commands are not supported.

---

## Creating Controller WLAN Configuration Policy Templates

Use the Policy Configuration Templates page to configure device-based policies on a controller. You can configure policies for a user or a device on the network.

The maximum number of policies that you can configure is 64. Policies are not applied on WLANs and AP groups if AAA override is configured on the controller.

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features and Technologies**.
- Step 2** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Features and Technologies > Controller > WLANs > Policy Configuration**. The Policy Configuration Template page displays.
- Step 3** Complete the following fields:
- Name—Name of the policy template
  - Description—Description of the policy template.
  - Tags—Search keywords applicable to this template.
  - Device Type (validation criteria)—The device product family, series or type used to validate the template (CUWN, for Cisco Unified Wireless Network, is the default).
  - Policy Name—Name of the policy.
  - Policy Role—The user type or the user group the user belongs to. For example, student, employee.
  - EAP Type—EAP authentication method used by the client. The available types are as follows:
    - LEAP
    - EAP-FAST
    - EAP-TLS
    - PEAP

- Device Type—Choose the device type to which this policy applies (e.g., Apple Laptop).
- VLAN ID—VLAN associated with the policy.
- IPv4 ACL—Choose an IPv4 ACL for the policy from the list
- QoS—Choose the policy's Quality of Service level from the list. You can choose one of the follows:
  - Platinum (Voice)—Assures a high QoS for Voice over Wireless.
  - Gold (Video)—Supports the high-quality video applications.
  - Silver (Best Effort)—Supports the normal bandwidth for clients.
  - Bronze (Background)— Provides the lowest bandwidth for guest services.
- Session Timeout—Maximum amount of time, in seconds, before a client is forced to re-authenticate. The default value is 0 seconds.
- Sleeping Client Timeout—Maximum amount of time, in hours, before a guest client is forced to re-authenticate. The default value is 12 hours. The range is from 1 to 720 hours.

**Step 4** When you are finished, click **Save as new template**.

---

## Creating Autonomous AP Migration Templates

To make a transition from an autonomous solution to a unified architecture, autonomous access points must be converted to lightweight access points.

After an access point has been converted to lightweight, the previous status or configuration of the access point is not retained.

To create an autonomous AP migration template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Autonomous AP Migration**.
- Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Add Template**, then click **Go**. If you are updating an already existing template, click the applicable template in the Template Name column.
- Step 3** Complete the required fields. For information about the field descriptions, see the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide](#).
- Step 4** To view the migration analysis summary, choose **Monitor > Tools > Autonomous AP Migration Analysis**.
- 

## Creating Switch Location Configuration Templates

To configure a location template for a switch, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Switch Location**.
- Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Add Template**, then click **Go**.
- Step 3** Enter the required fields. For information about the field descriptions, see the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide](#).

# Creating Wireless Templates

This section describes how to add and apply wireless templates. Templates allow you to set fields that you can then apply to multiple devices without having to reenter the common information.

## Related Topics

- [Controller Templates](#)
- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating AP Configuration Templates](#)
- [Configuring Switch Location Configuration Templates](#)
- [Creating Autonomous AP Migration Templates](#)

## Controller Templates

The controller templates provides access to all Cisco Prime Infrastructure templates from a single page. You can add and apply controller templates, view templates, or make modifications to the existing templates. This section also includes steps for applying and deleting controller templates and creating or changing access point templates.

To access the controller templates, choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller**.

## Related Topics

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating AP Configuration Templates](#)
- [Creating System Templates](#)
- [About WLAN Templates](#)
- [Creating Security - Access Control Templates](#)
- [Creating Security - CPU Access Control List Templates](#)
- [Creating Security - Rogue Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11 Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Radio Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Radio Templates](#)
- [Creating Mesh Settings Templates](#)
- [Creating Management Templates](#)
- [Creating CLI Templates](#)
- [Creating Location Configuration Templates](#)
- [Creating IPv6 Templates](#)

- [Creating Proxy Mobile IPv6 Templates](#)
- [Creating mDNS Templates](#)
- [Creating AVC Profiles Templates](#)
- [Creating NetFlow Templates](#)

## Adding Controller Templates

To add a new controller template:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller**.
  - Step 2** Select the template you want to add.
  - Step 3** Enter the template name.  
Template Name is the unique key used to identify the template. A template name is mandatory to distinguish between two templates that have identical key attributes.
  - Step 4** Provide a description of the template.
  - Step 5** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Deleting Controller Templates

To delete a controller template:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > My Templates**.
  - Step 2** Select the template(s) you want to delete, then click **Delete**.
  - Step 3** Click **OK** to confirm the deletion. If this template is applied to controllers, the Remove Template Confirmation page opens and lists all controllers to which this template is currently applied.
  - Step 4** Select the check box of each controller from which you want to remove the template.
  - Step 5** Click **OK** to confirm the deletion or **Cancel** to close this page without deleting the template.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Applying Controller Templates

You can apply a controller template directly to a controller or to controllers in a selected configuration group.

To apply a controller template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller**.
- Step 2** From the left sidebar menu, choose the category of templates to apply.
- Step 3** Click the template name for the template that you want to apply to the controller.
- Step 4** Click **Apply to Controllers** to open the Apply to Controllers page.
- Step 5** Select the check box for each controller to which you want to apply the template.

To select all controllers, select the check box that appears at the left most corner of the controllers table.

Select the **Ignore errors on Apply template to Controllers** check box to ignore errors and apply all commands in the template to the controller. If this check box is not selected, any errors encountered while applying a command in the template to a controller causes the rest of the commands to be not applied.

- Step 6** Choose between applying the template directly to a controller or to all controllers in a selected configuration group.

To apply the template directly to a controller (or controllers), follow these steps:

- a. Select the **Apply to controllers selected directly** radio button. The Apply to Controllers page lists the IP address for each available controller along with the controller name and the configuration group name (if applicable).
- b. Select the check box for each controller to which you want to apply the template.

Select the **Ignore errors on Apply template to Controllers** check box to ignore errors and apply all commands in the template to the controller. If this check box is not selected, any errors encountered while applying a command in the template to a controller causes the rest of the commands to be not applied.

To apply the template to all controllers in a selected configuration group, follow these steps:

- a. Select the **Apply to controllers in the selected Config Groups** radio button. The Apply to Controllers page lists the name of each configuration group along with the mobility group name and the number of controllers included.
- b. Select the check box for each configuration group to which you want to apply the template.  
Configuration groups which have no controllers cannot be selected to apply the templates.

- Step 7** You can perform the following additional operations:

- If you select the Save Config to Flash after apply check box, the save config to Flash command is executed after the template is applied successfully.
- If you select the Reboot Controller after apply check box, the controller reboots after the template is successfully applied.

This configuration results can be viewed in the Template Results page by enabling the View Save Config / Reboot Results option.

- Step 8** Click **Save**.

You can apply some templates directly from the Template List page. Select the check box(es) of the template(s) that you want to apply, choose **Apply Templates** from the Select a command drop-down list, and click **Go** to open the Apply to Controllers page. Select the check box(es) of the controllers to which you want to apply this template, and click **OK**.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating System Templates

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > System**. You can create the following controller system template:

- AP 802.1X Supplicant Credentials
- AP Timers
- AP Username Password
- DHCP
- Dynamic Interface
- General-System
- Global CDP Configuration
- Interface Groups
- Network Time Protocol
- QoS Profiles
- SNMP Community
- Traffic Stream Metrics QoS
- User Roles
- Vlan Group

**Related Topics**

- [Controller > System > General](#)
- [Creating General - System Templates](#)
- [Creating SNMP Community Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating User Roles Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating AP Username Password Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating DHCP Templates](#)
- [Creating Dynamic Interface Templates](#)
- [Creating a Traffic Stream Metrics QoS Template](#)

## Creating AP 802.1X Supplicant Credentials

You can configure 802.1X authentication between lightweight access points and the switch. The access point acts as an 802.1X supplicant and is authenticated by the switch using EAP-FAST with anonymous PAC provisioning. You can set global authentication settings that all access points inherit as they join the controller. All access points that are currently joined to the controller and any that join in the future are included.

If desired, you can override the global authentication settings and assign unique authentication settings for a specific access point.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > System > AP 802.1X Supplicant Credentials**.
- Step 2** Hover your mouse cursor over the tool tip next to the template type and click **New** to create the template.
- Step 3** Complete the required fields, then and click **Save as New Template**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Controller > System > AP 802.1X Supplicant Credentials](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Configuring AP Timers Template

Some advanced timer configuration for FlexConnect and local mode is available for the controller on Prime Infrastructure.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > System > AP 802.1X Supplicant Credentials**.
- Step 2** Hover your mouse cursor over the tool tip next to the template type and click **New** to create General - System template.
- Step 3** Complete the required fields, then and click **Save as New Template**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Controller > System > AP Timers](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating AP Username Password Controller Templates

Create or modify a template for setting an access point username and password. All access points inherit the password as they join the controller and these credentials are used to log into the access point via the console or Telnet/SSH.

The AP Username Password page enables you to set a global password that all access points inherit as they join a controller. When you are adding an access point, you can also choose to accept this global username and password or override it on a per-access point basis. See the to see where the global password is displayed and how it can be overridden on a per-access point basis.

Also, in controller software Release 5.0, after an access point joins the controller, the access point enables console port security and you are prompted for your username and password whenever you log into the access point console port. When you log in, you are in non-privileged mode and you must enter the enable password to use the privileged mode.

To create an AP username password controller template:



- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > System > AP Username Password**.
- Step 2** Hover your mouse cursor over the tool tip next to the template type and click **New** to create a General - System template.
- Step 3** Complete the required fields, then and click **Save as New Template**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Controller > System > AP Username Password](#)
- [Creating AP Configuration Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating DHCP Templates

You can enable or disable DHCP proxy on a global basis rather than on a WLAN basis. When DHCP proxy is enabled on the controller, the controller unicasts DHCP requests from the client to the configured servers. At least one DHCP server must be configured on either the interface associated with the WLAN or on the WLAN itself. DHCP proxy is enabled by default.

To create DHCP templates:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > System > DHCP Templates**.
- Step 2** Hover your mouse cursor over the tool tip next to the template type and click **New** to create General - System template.
- Step 3** Complete the required fields, then and click **Save as New Template**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Controller > System > DHCP](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating Dynamic Interface Templates

If you change the interface fields, the WLANs are temporarily disabled, therefore you might lose connectivity for some clients. Any changes to the interface fields are saved only after you successfully apply them to the controller(s).

If you remove an interface here, it is removed only from this template and not from the controllers. Primary and secondary port numbers are present only in the Cisco 4400 Series Wireless LAN controllers.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > System > Dynamic Interface Templates**.
- Step 2** Hover your mouse cursor over the tool tip next to the template type and click **New** to create General - System template.

**Step 3** Complete the required fields, then and click **Save as New Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Controllers > System > Dynamic Interface](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying a Dynamic Interface Template to Controllers](#)

## Applying a Dynamic Interface Template to Controllers

Changing the Interface fields causes the WLANs to be temporarily disabled and might result in loss of connectivity for some clients.

Interfaces removed from this page are removed only from this template and not from controllers.

To apply a Dynamic Interface template to a controller, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** In the Dynamic Interface controller template page, click **Apply to Controllers**.

**Step 2** Use the Manage Interfaces options to configure device-specific fields:

- Add—Click **Add** to open the Add Interface dialog box. Enter an interface name, VLAN identifier, IP address, and gateway. When all fields are entered, click **Done**.
- Edit—Click **Edit** to make changes to current interfaces.
- Remove—Click **Remove** to delete a current interface.

**Step 3** Select a check box for each controller to which you want to apply this template.

**Step 4** Click **Apply**. Interface field changes or configurations made on this page are saved only when applied successfully to the controller(s).

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating Dynamic Interface Templates](#)

## Creating General - System Templates

To add a general-system template or make changes to an existing general template:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > System > General - System**.

**Step 2** Hover your mouse cursor over the tool tip next to the template type and click **New** to create General - System template.

**Step 3** Complete the required fields, then and click **Save as New Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Controller > System > General](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating a Global CDP Configuration Template

Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) is a device-discovery protocol that runs on all Cisco network equipment. Each device sends identifying messages to a multicast address, and each device monitors the messages sent by other devices. CDP is enabled on the Ethernet and radio ports of the bridge by default.

CDP for Ethernet Interfaces fields are supported for Controller Release 7.0.110.2 and later.

The Global Interface CDP configuration is applied only to the APs for which the CDP is enabled at AP level.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > System > Global CDP Configuration**.
- Step 2** Hover your mouse cursor over the tool tip next to the template type and click **New** to create General - System template.
- Complete the required fields, then and click **Save as New Template**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Controller > System > Global CDP Configuration](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating an Interface Group Template

The interface group template page allows you to select list of interfaces and form a group. You cannot create interfaces using this page.

The Interface Groups feature is supported by controller software release 7.0.116.0 and later.

To configure an interface group template:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > System > Interface Group**.
- Step 2** Hover your mouse cursor over the tool tip next to the template type and click **New** to create General - System template.
- Step 3** Complete the required fields, then and click **Save as New Template**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating an Network Time Protocol Template

NTP is used to synchronize computer clocks on the Internet.

To add an NTP template or make modifications to an existing NTP template:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > System > Network Time Protocol**.

- Step 2** Hover your mouse cursor over the tool tip next to the template type and click **New** to create General - System template.
- Step 3** Complete the required fields, then and click **Save as New Template**.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating QoS Profiles Templates

The Air QoS configurations are applicable for controller Release 7.0 and earlier.

To modify the quality of service (QoS) profiles:

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > System > QoS Profiles**.
- Step 2** Hover your mouse cursor over the tool tip next to the template type and click **New** to create QoS profiles template.
- Step 3** Complete the required fields, then and click **Save as New Template**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Controller > System > QoS Profiles Template](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating SNMP Community Controller Templates

Create or modify a template for configuring SNMP communities on controllers. Communities can have read-only or read-write privileges using SNMP v1, v2, or v3.

When setting up SNMP communities on the WLC (Wireless LAN Controller), you are given an option to specify IP address and subnet. The default is 0.0.0.0 for both, which allows open SNMP access to any host using the specified community string. If you specify something other than the default of 0.0.0.0, the SNMP access is limited to the settings specified for IP address and Subnet Mask. A subnet of 255.255.255.255 limits to the specific host ID specified in the IP address.

If the Access Mode option is configured as Read Only, then Prime Infrastructure has only read access to the controller after applying this template.

To create a new template with SNMP community information for a controller:

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > System > SNMP Community**.
- Step 2** Hover your mouse cursor over the tool tip next to the template type and click **New** to create SNMP community template.
- Step 3** Complete the required fields, then and click **Save as New Template**.

The template appears in the Template List page. In the Template List page, you can apply this template to controllers. If a template is applied successfully and the Update Discover Community option is enabled, then the applied community name is updated in Prime Infrastructure database for that applied controller. Also, Prime Infrastructure uses that community name for further communication with the controller.

#### Related Topics

- [Controller > System > SNMP Community](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating a Traffic Stream Metrics QoS Template

Traffic stream metrics are a series of statistics about VoIP over your wireless LAN and informs you of the QoS of the wireless LAN. These statistics are different than the end-to-end statistics provided by VoIP systems. End-to-end statistics provide information on packet loss and latency covering all the links comprising the call path. However, traffic stream metrics are statistics for only the WLAN segment of the call. Because of this, system administrators can quickly determine whether audio problems are being caused by the WLAN or by other network elements participating in a call. By observing which access points have impaired QoS, system administrators can quickly determine the physical area where the problem is occurring. This is important when lack of radio coverage or excessive interference is the root problem.

Four QoS values (packet latency, packet jitter, packet loss, and roaming time), which can affect the audio quality of voice calls, are monitored. All the wireless LAN components participate in this process. Access points and clients measure the metrics, access points collect the measurements and then send them to the controller. The access points update the controller with traffic stream metric information every 90 seconds, and 10 minutes of data is stored at one time. Prime Infrastructure queries the controller for the metrics and displays them in the Traffic Stream Metrics QoS Status. These metrics are compared to threshold values to determine their status level and if any of the statistics are displaying a status level of fair (yellow) or degraded (red), the administrator investigates the QoS of the wireless LAN.

For the access points to collect measurement values, traffic stream metrics must be enabled on the controller.

To configure a Traffic Stream Metrics QoS template:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > System > Traffic Stream Metrics QoS**.

The Traffic Stream Metrics QoS Controller Configuration page shows several QoS values. An administrator can monitor voice and video quality of the following:

- Upstream delay
- Upstream packet loss rate
- Roaming time
- Downstream packet loss rate
- Downstream delay

Packet Loss Rate (PLR) affects the intelligibility of voice. Packet delay can affect both the intelligibility and conversational quality of the connection. Excessive roaming time produces undesired gaps in audio.

There are three levels of measurement:

- Normal: Normal QoS (green)
- Fair: Fair QoS (yellow)
- Degraded: Degraded QoS (red)

System administrators should employ some judgment when setting the green, yellow, and red alarm levels. Some factors to consider are:

- Environmental factors including interference and radio coverage which can affect PLR.
- End-user expectations and system administrator requirements for audio quality on mobile devices (lower audio quality can permit greater PLR).
- Different codec types used by the phones have different tolerance for packet loss.
- Not all calls are mobile-to-mobile; therefore, some have less stringent PLR requirements for the wireless LAN.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Controller > System > Traffic Stream Metrics QoS](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating User Roles Controller Templates

This section describes how to create or modify a template for configuring user roles. User roles determine how much bandwidth the network can use. Four QoS levels (Platinum, Bronze, Gold, and Silver) are available for the bandwidth distribution to Guest Users. Guest Users are associated with predefined roles (Contractor, Customer, Partner, Vendor, Visitor, Other) with respective bandwidth configured by the Admin. These roles can be applied when adding a new Guest User.

To add a new template with User Roles information for a controller:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > System > User Roles**.
  - Step 2** Hover your mouse cursor over the tool tip next to the template type and click **New** to create user Roles template.
  - Step 3** Complete the required fields, then and click **Save as New Template**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Controller > System > User Roles](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating Guest User Templates](#)

## About WLAN Templates

WLAN templates allow you to define various WLAN profiles for application to different controllers.

You can configure multiple WLANs with the same SSID. This feature enables you to assign different Layer 2 security policies within the same wireless LAN. Unlike previous release where profile name was used as the unique identifier, the template name is now the unique identifier with software release 5.1.

These restrictions apply when configuring multiple WLANs with the same SSID:

- WLANs with the same SSID must have unique Layer 2 security policies so that clients can make a WLAN selection based on information advertised in the beacons and probes. These are the available Layer 2 security policies:
  - None (open WLAN)
  - Static WEP or 802.1
  - CKIP
  - WPA/WPA2
- Broadcast SSID must be enabled on the WLANs that share an SSID so that the access points can generate probe responses for these WLANs.
- FlexConnect access points do not support multiple SSIDs.

#### Related Topics

- [About WLAN Templates](#)
- [Creating WLAN AP Groups Templates](#)

## Creating WLAN Configuration Templates

To add a WLAN configuration template or make modifications to an existing WLAN template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > WLANs > WLAN Configuration**.
  - Step 2** Hover your mouse cursor over the tool tip next to the template type and click **New**.
  - Step 3** Complete the required fields in the General, Security, QoS, Advanced, HotSpot, Policy Mappings tabs, and then click **Save as New Template**.
- 

#### Related Topic

- [Controller > WLANs > WLAN Configuration](#)

## Client Profiling

When a client tries to associate with a WLAN, it is possible to determine the client type from the information received in the process. The controller acts as the collector of the information and sends the ISE with the required data in an optimal form.

Follow these guidelines when configuring client profiling:

By default, client profiling will be disabled on all WLANs.

- Client profiling is supported on access points that are in Local mode and FlexConnect mode.
- Profiling is not supported for clients in the following scenarios:
  - Clients associating with FlexConnect mode APs in Standalone mode.

- Clients associating with FlexConnect mode APs when local authentication is done with local switching is enabled.
- Both DHCP Proxy and DHCP Bridging mode on the controller are supported.
- Accounting Server configuration on the WLAN must be pointing at an ISE running 1.1 MnR or later releases. Cisco ACS does not support client profiling.
- The type of DHCP server used does not affect client profiling.
- If the DHCP\_REQUEST packet contains a string that is found in the Profiled Devices list of the ISE, then the client will be profiled automatically.
- The client is identified based on the MAC address sent in the Accounting request packet.
- Only MAC address should be sent as calling station ID in accounting packets when profiling is enabled.
- With profiling enabled for local switching FlexConnect mode APs, only VLAN override is supported as an AAA override attribute.

#### Related Topics

- [Client Profiling](#)
- [Controller > WLANs > WLAN Configuration > Advanced](#)

## Configuring Client Profiling

To configure client profiling, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > WLANs > WLAN Configuration**.
  - Step 2** Click the **Advanced** tab.
  - Step 3** Select the **DHCP Profiling** check box to enable DHCP profiling.
  - Step 4** Select the **HTTP Profiling** check box to enable HTTP profiling.  
HTTP client profiling is supported since controller Version 7.3.1.31.
  - Step 5** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Client Profiling](#)
- [Creating WLAN Configuration Templates](#)

## Configuring Mobile Concierge (802.11u)

Mobile Concierge is a solution that enables 802.1X capable clients to interwork with external networks. The Mobile Concierge feature provides service availability information to clients and can help them to associate available networks.

The services offered by the network can be broadly classified into two protocols:

- 802.11u MSAP
- 802.11u HotSpot 2.0



The following guidelines and limitations apply to Mobile Concierge:

- Mobile Concierge is not supported on FlexConnect Access Points.
- 802.11u configuration upload is not supported. If you perform a configuration upgrade and upload a configuration on the controller, the HotSpot configuration on the WLANs is lost.

To configure Mobile Concierge (802.11u) Groups:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > WLANs > WLAN Configuration**.
- Step 2** Click the **Hot Spot** tab.
- Step 3** On the General tab, configure the following fields:
- Select the **802.11u Status** check box to enable 802.11u on the WLAN.
  - Select the **Internet Access** check box to enable this WLAN to provide Internet services.
  - From the Network Type drop-down list, choose the network type that best describes the 802.11u you want to configure on this WLAN. The following options are available:
    - **Private Network**
    - **Private Network with Guest Access**
    - **Chargeable Public Network**
    - **Free Public Network**
    - **Emergency Services Only Network**
    - **Personal Device Network**
    - **Test or Experimental**
    - **Wildcard**
  - Choose the authentication type that you want to configure for the 802.11u parameters on this network:
    - **Not configured**
    - **Acceptance of Terms and Conditions**
    - **Online Enrollment**
    - **HTTP/HTTPS Redirection**
  - In the HESSID field, enter the Homogeneous Extended Service Set Identifier value. The HESSID is a 6-octet MAC address that identifies the homogeneous ESS.
- Step 4** On the Others tab, configure the following fields:
- In the OUI List group box, enter the following details:
    - OUI name
    - Is Beacon
    - OUI Index
- Click **Add** to add the OUI (Organizationally Unique Identifier) entry to this WLAN.
- In the Domain List group box, enter the following details:
    - Domain Name—The domain name operating in the 802.11 access network.
    - Domain Index—Choose the domain index from the drop-down list.

Click **Add** to add the domain entry to this WLAN.

**Step 5** On the Realm tab, configure the following fields:

- In the OUI List section, enter the following details:
  - Realm Name—The realm name.
  - Realm Index—The realm index.

Click **Add** to add the domain entry to this WLAN.

**Step 6** On the Service Advertisement tab, configure the following fields:

- Select the **MSAP Enable** check box to enable service advertisements.
- If you enabled MSAP in the previous step, you must provide a server index. Enter the server index for this WLAN. The server index field uniquely identifies an MSAP server instance serving a venue that is reachable through the BSSID.

MSAP (Mobility Services Advertisement Protocol) is designed to be used primarily by mobile devices that are configured with a set of policies for establishing network services. These services are available for devices that offer higher-layer services, or network services that are enabled through service providers. Service advertisements use MSAP to provide services to mobile devices prior to association to a Wi-Fi access network. This information is conveyed in a service advertisement. A single-mode or dual-mode mobile device queries the network for service advertisements before association. The device's network discovery and the selection function may use the service advertisements in its decision to join the network.

**Step 7** On the HotSpot 2.0 tab, configure the following fields:

- Choose the **Enable** option from the HotSpot2 Enable drop-down list.
- In the WAM Metrics group box, specify the following:
  - WAN Link Status—The link status. The valid range is 1 to 3.
  - WAN SIM Link Status—The symmetric link status. For example, you can configure the uplink and downlink to have different speeds or same speeds.
  - Down Link Speed—The downlink speed. The maximum value is 4,194,304 kbps.
  - Up Link Speed—The uplink speed. The maximum value is 4,194,304 kbps.
- In the Operator Name List group box, specify the following:
  - Operator Name—Specify the name of the 802.11 operator.
  - Operator Index—Select an operator index. The range is from 1 to 32.
  - Language Code—An ISO-14962-1997 encoded string defining the language. This string is a three character language code.

Click **Add** to add the operator details. The operator details are displayed in a tabular form.

- In the Port Config List, specify the following:
  - IP Protocol—The IP protocol that you want to enable. The following options are ESP, FTP, ICMP, and IKEV2.
  - Port No—The port number that is enabled on this WLAN.
  - Status—The status of the port.

**Step 8** Click **Save**.

---

**Related Topics**

- [About WLAN Templates](#)
- [Controller > WLANs > WLAN Configuration](#)

## Creating WLAN AP Groups Templates

Site-specific VLANs or AP groups limit the broadcast domains to a minimum by segmenting a WLAN into different broadcast domains. Benefits include more effective management of load balancing and bandwidth allocation.

To configure WLAN AP Groups, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > WLANs > AP Groups**.

The WLAN > AP Groups page appears, and the number of controllers and virtual domains that the template is applied to automatically populates. The last column indicates when the template was last saved.

The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names.

**Step 2** If you want to add a new template, choose **Add Template** from the Select a command drop-down list, and click **Go**. To modify an existing template, click the template name. The AP Groups template page appears.

This page displays a summary of the AP groups configured on your network. In this page, you can add, remove, edit, or view details of an AP group. Click in the Edit column to edit its access point(s). Select the check box in the WLAN Profile Name column, and click **Remove** to delete WLAN profiles.

The maximum characters that you can enter in the Description text box is 256.

---

**Related Topics**

- [About WLAN Templates](#)

## Adding Access Point Groups

- AP Groups (for controllers Release 5.2 and later) are referred to as AP Group VLANs for controllers prior to 5.2.
- To display all available WLAN profile names, delete the current WLAN profile name from the text box. When the current WLAN profile name is deleted from the text box, all available WLAN profiles appear in the drop-down list.
- Each access point is limited to 16 WLAN profiles. Each access point broadcasts all WLAN profiles unless the WLAN override feature is enabled. The WLAN override feature allows you to disable any of the 16 WLAN profiles per access point.
- The WLAN override feature applies only to older controllers that do not support the 512 WLAN feature (can support up to 512 WLAN profiles).

You can create or modify a template for dividing the WLAN profiles into AP groups.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > WLANs > AP Groups**.
- Step 2** Choose **Add Template** from the Select a command drop-down list, and click **Go**.
- Step 3** Enter a name and group description for the access point group. The group description is optional.
- Step 4** If you want to add a WLAN profile, click the **WLAN Profiles** tab and configure the following fields:
- Click **Add**.
  - Type a WLAN profile name or choose one from the WLAN Profile Name drop-down list.
  - Enter an interface/interface group or choose one from the Interface/Interface Group drop-down list.  
To display all available interfaces, delete the current interface from the Interface text box. When the current interface is deleted from the Interface text box, all available interfaces appear in the drop-down list.
  - Select the **NAC Override** check box, if applicable. The NAC override feature is disabled by default.
  - Specify the policy configuration parameters by clicking the **Add/Edit** link.
    - Policy Name—Name of the policy.
    - Policy Priority—Configure policy priority between 1 and 16. No two policies can have same priority. Only 16 Policy mappings are allowed per WLAN. Selected policy template for the mapping will be applied first if it does not exist on the controller.
  - When access points and WLAN profiles are added, click **Save**.
- Step 5** If you want to add a RF profile, click the **RF Profiles** tab, and configure the following fields:
- 802.11a—Drop-down list from which you can choose an RF profile for APs with 802.11a radios.
  - 802.11b—Drop-down list from which you can choose an RF profile for APs with 802.11b radios.
  - When RF profiles are added, click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [About WLAN Templates](#)
- [Creating RF Profiles Templates \(802.11\)](#)

**Deleting Access Point Groups**

To delete an access point group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies**.
- Step 2** Choose **Controller > WLANs > AP Groups** from the left sidebar menu.
- Step 3** Click **Remove**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [About WLAN Templates](#)
- [Creating WLAN AP Groups Templates](#)
- [Adding Access Point Groups](#)

## Creating Policy Configuration Templates

The Policy Configuration Templates page enables you to configure the device-based policies on the controller. You can configure policies for a user or a device on the network. The maximum number of policies that you can configure is 64. Policies are not applied on WLANs and AP groups if AAA override is configured on the controller.

To configure Policy Configuration templates:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > WLANs > Policy Configuration**.
  - Step 2** If you want to add a new template, choose **Add Template** from the Select a command drop-down list, and click **Go**.
  - Step 3** Configure the required fields.
  - Step 4** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

## Creating FlexConnect Templates

FlexConnect enables you to configure and control access points in a branch or remote office from the corporate office through a wide area network (WAN) link without deploying a controller in each office. There is no deployment restriction on the number of FlexConnect access points per location, but you can organize and group the access points per floor and limit them to 25 or so per building, because it is likely the branch offices share the same configuration.

### Related Topics

- [Creating FlexConnect AP Groups Templates](#)
- [Adding FlexConnect Users to FlexConnect AP Groups Templates](#)

## Creating FlexConnect AP Groups Templates

To set up a FlexConnect AP group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller**.
  - Step 2** Choose **FlexConnect > FlexConnect AP Groups** from the left sidebar menu.
  - Step 3** Hover the mouse on **FlexConnect AP Groups** and select **Show All Templates**. It displays the primary and secondary RADIUS, as well as the number of controllers and virtual domains that the template is applied to, which automatically populates. The last column indicates when the template was last saved.  
  
The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names. To modify an existing template, click the template name.
  - Step 4** If you want to add a new template, hover the mouse on **FlexConnect AP Groups** and select **New** or select **FlexConnect AP Groups**. The General tab of the FlexConnect AP Groups page appears.
  - Step 5** The **Template Name** shows the group name assigned to the FlexConnect access point group.

- Step 6** Choose the primary RADIUS authentication servers for each group. You can also configure local RADIUS servers on the flexconnect group (at a site-level) which are not present on the controller. The FlexConnect groups support up to 100 RADIUS servers per group.
- Step 7** Choose the secondary RADIUS authentication servers for each group. You can also configure local RADIUS servers on the flexconnect group (at a site-level) which are not present on the controller. The FlexConnect groups support up to 100 RADIUS servers per group.
- Step 8** If you want to add an access point to the group, click the **FlexConnect AP** tab.
- Step 9** An access point Ethernet MAC address cannot exist in more than one FlexConnect group on the same controller. If more than one group is applied to the same controller, select the **Ethernet MAC** check box to unselect an access point from one of the groups. You should save this change or apply it to controllers.
- Step 10** Click **Add AP**. Select the applicable check boxes and click **Add**.
- Step 11** Click the **Local Authentication** tab to enable local authentication for a FlexConnect group. Ensure that the Primary RADIUS Server and Secondary RADIUS Server fields are set to **None** on the General tab to perform this action.
- Step 12** Select the **FlexConnect Local Authentication** check box to enable local authentication for this FlexConnect group. Enabling this option enables **EAP-TLS Authentication**.
- Step 13** Select the **EAP-TLS Authentication** check box to enable EAP-TLS certificate download.
- Step 14** To allow a FlexConnect access point to authenticate clients using LEAP, select the **LEAP Authentication** check box. Otherwise, to allow a FlexConnect access point to authenticate clients using EAP-FAST, select the **EAP-FAST Authentication** check box.
- Step 15** Perform one of the following, depending on how you want Protected Access Credentials (PACs) to be provisioned:
- To use manual PAC provisioning, enter the key used to encrypt and decrypt PACs in the EAP-FAST Key and Confirm EAP-FAST Key text boxes. The key must be 32 hexadecimal characters.
  - To allow PACs to be sent automatically to clients that do not have one during PAC provisioning, select the **Auto key generation** check box.
- The following EAP-FAST options are available only if you select the **EAP-FAST** check box in [Step 14](#).
- Step 16** In the **EAP-FAST Key** text box, enter the authority identifier of the EAP-FAST server. The identifier must be 32 hexadecimal characters.
- Step 17** In the **EAP-FAST Authority ID** text box, enter the authority identifier of the EAP-FAST server in text format. You can enter up to 32 hexadecimal characters.
- Step 18** In the **EAP-FAST Authority Info** text box, enter the authority information of the EAP-FAST server.
- Step 19** In the **EAP-FAST PAC Timeout** text box, specify a PAC timeout value by entering the number of seconds for the PAC to remain viable in the edit box. The valid range is 2 to 4095 seconds.
- Step 20** To allow a FlexConnect access point to authenticate clients using PEAP, select the **PEAP Authentication** check box.
- Step 21** Click the **Image Upgrade** tab and configure the following:
- FlexConnect AP Upgrade—Select the check box if you want to upgrade the FlexConnect access points.
  - Slave Maximum Retry Count—Enter the maximum retries for the slave to undertake to start the download from the master in the FlexConnect group. This option is available only if you select the FlexConnect AP Upgrade check box.
  - You are allowed to add an access point as a master access point only if the FlexConnect AP Upgrade check box is enabled on the General tab. Click **Add Master** to add an access point as master AP.

- Step 22** Click the **ACL Mapping** tab.
- Click **VLAN-ACL Mapping** tab to view, add, edit, or remove a VLAN ACL mapping.
  - Click the **WLAN-ACL Mapping** tab to view, add, edit, or remove a WLAN ACL mapping. You can add up to a maximum of 16 WebAuth ACLs.
  - Click the **Local Split** to view, add, edit, or remove a Local Split ACL mapping. Only the FlexConnect central switching WLANs are displayed in the WLAN Profile Name drop-down list.
  - Click the **Policies** tab to view, add, edit, or remove a WebPolicy ACL mapping. You can add up to a maximum of 16 Web-Policy ACLs.
  - Click **Save**.
- Step 23** Click the **Central DHCP** tab to view, add, edit, or remove a Central DHCP processing.
- a. Click the **Add Row** icon.
  - b. From the WLAN Profile Name drop-down list, choose a WLAN profile. Only the FlexConnect local switching WLANs are displayed in the WLAN Profile Name drop-down list.
  - c. From the Central DHCP drop-down list, choose Enable or Disable. When you enable this feature, the DHCP packets received from AP are centrally switched to the controller and then forwarded to the corresponding VLAN based on the AP and the SSID.
  - d. From the Override DNS drop-down list, choose Enable or Disable. You can enable or disable the overriding of the DNS server address on the interface assigned to the locally switched WLAN. When you override DNS in centrally switched WLANs, the clients get their DNS server IP address from the AP, not from the controller.
  - e. From the NAT-PAT drop-down list, choose Enable or Disable. You can enable or disable Network Address Translation (NAT) and Port Address Translation (PAT) on locally switched WLANs. You must enable Central DHCP Processing to enable NAT and PAT.
  - f. Click **Save**.
- Step 24** Click the **WLAN-VLAN Mapping** tab to view, add, edit, or remove the WLAN-VLAN mapping.
- a. Click the **Add Row** icon.
  - b. From the WLAN Profile Name drop-down list, choose a WLAN profile. Only the FlexConnect local switching WLANs are displayed in the WLAN Profile Name drop-down list.
  - c. Enter the VLAN ID within the specified range.
  - d. Click **Save**.
- Step 25** Click the **WLAN-AVC Mapping** tab to view, add, edit, or remove the WLAN-AVC mapping.
- a. Click the **Add Row** icon.
  - b. From the WLAN Profile Name drop-down list, choose a WLAN profile. Only the FlexConnect local switching WLANs are displayed in the WLAN Profile Name drop-down list.
  - c. From the Application Visibility drop-down list, choose Enable, Disable or Wlan-specific. When Wlan-specific is chosen, the Flex AVC Profile will be disabled.
  - d. From the Flex AVC Profile drop-down list, choose the specific AVC profile.
  - e. Click **Save**.
- Step 26** Click **Save**.
-

**Related Topic**

- [Controller > FlexConnect > FlexConnect AP Groups](#)

## Adding FlexConnect Users to FlexConnect AP Groups Templates

You can click the **Users configured in the group** link that appears when the **FlexConnect Local Authentication** check box is enabled to view the list of FlexConnect users. You can create FlexConnect users only after you save the FlexConnect AP Group. Maximum 100 FlexConnect users are supported in controller Release 5.2.x.x and later. If controller Release 5.2.0.0, and earlier supports only 20 FlexConnect users.

To delete a FlexConnect User, choose a user from the FlexConnect Users list, and then click **Delete**.

To configure a FlexConnect user, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > FlexConnect > FlexConnect AP Groups**.
  - Step 2** Hover the mouse on **FlexConnect AP Groups** and select **Show All Templates**.
  - Step 3** Click the **Local Authentication** tab and select the **FlexConnect Local Authentication** check box to enable local authentication for this FlexConnect group.
  - Step 4** Click the **Users configured in the group** link. The FlexConnect Users page appears.
  - Step 5** If you want to add a new user, choose **Add User** from the Select a command drop-down list, and click **Go**. The **Add User** page appears.
  - Step 6** In the User Name text box, enter the FlexConnect username.
  - Step 7** In the Password text box, enter the password.
  - Step 8** Reenter the password in the Confirm Password text box.
  - Step 9** Click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Creating FlexConnect AP Groups Templates](#)
- [Creating FlexConnect Templates](#)
- [Controller > FlexConnect > FlexConnect AP Groups](#)

## Creating Security Templates

This section contains the following topics:

- [Creating General Security Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating File Encryption Templates](#)
- [RADIUS Authentication Templates](#)
- [Creating RADIUS Accounting Templates](#)
- [Creating RADIUS Fallback Templates](#)
- [LDAP Server Templates](#)



- [TACACS+ Server Templates](#)
- [Local EAP General Templates](#)
- [Local EAP Profile Templates](#)
- [EAP-FAST Templates](#)
- [Creating Network User Priority Templates](#)
- [Local Network Users Templates](#)
- [Guest User Templates](#)
- [User Login Policies Templates](#)
- [Creating a MAC Filter Template](#)
- [Access Point or MSE Authorization Templates](#)
- [Creating a Manually Disabled Client Template](#)
- [Access Point Authentication and MFP Templates](#)
- [Web Authentication Templates](#)
- [Creating External Web Auth Server Templates](#)
- [Creating a Security Password Policy Template](#)

## Creating General Security Controller Templates

To add a new template with general security information for a controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security**.
- Step 2** Select the template you want to add.
- Step 3** Complete the following fields:
- **Template Name**—Template Name is the unique key used to identify the template. A template name is mandatory to distinguish between two templates that have identical key attributes.
  - **Maximum Local Database Entries (on next reboot)**—Enter the maximum number of allowed database entries. This amount becomes effective on the next reboot.
- Step 4** Click **Save**.
- The template appears in the Template List page. In the Template List page, you can apply this template to controllers.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating File Encryption Templates

To add and configure a File Encryption template or make modifications to an existing file encryption template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > File Encryption**.
  - Step 2** Choose **Add Template** from the **Select a command** drop-down list, and click **Go** to add a new template. To modify an existing template, click the template name. The File Encryption template page appears.
  - Step 3** Check if you want to enable file encryption.
  - Step 4** Enter an encryption key text string of exactly 16 ASCII characters.
  - Step 5** Re-enter the encryption key.
  - Step 6** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## RADIUS Authentication Templates

You can add a RADIUS authentication template or make modifications to an existing template. After these server templates are configured, controller users who log into the controller through the CLI or GUI are authenticated.

### Related Topics

- [Creating RADIUS Authentication Templates](#)

## Creating RADIUS Authentication Templates

To configure a RADIUS Authentication template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > AAA > RADIUS Auth Servers**.
  - Step 2** From the **Shared Secret Format** drop-down list, choose either **ASCII** or **hex**.  
Regardless of the format you choose, for security reasons, only ASCII is visible on the WLC (and Prime Infrastructure). For this reason, you cannot use a template to replicate the configuration on a second controller during auto provisioning. You should set the key format again in the template in case a discovered template is applied to another device.
  - Step 3** Enter the RADIUS shared secret used by your specified server.
  - Step 4** Check the **Key Wrap** check box if you want to enable key wrap. If this check box is enabled, the authentication request is sent to RADIUS servers that have key encryption key (KEK) and message authenticator code keys (MACK) configured. Complete the following fields:

- **Shared Secret Format:** Enter ASCII or hexadecimal.

Regardless of the format you choose, for security reasons, only ASCII is visible on the WLC (and Prime Infrastructure). For this reason, you cannot use a template to replicate the configuration on a second controller during auto provisioning. You should set the key format again in the template in the event a discovered template is applied to another device.

- **KEK Shared Secret.**
- **MACK Shared Secret.**

Each time the controller is notified with the shared secret, the existing shared secret is overwritten with the new shared secret.

**Step 5** Check the **Admin Status** check box to enable administration privileges.

**Step 6** Check the **Support for RFC 3576** check box to t to enable support for RFC 3576.

RFC 3576 is an extension to the Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) protocol. It allows dynamic changes to a user session and includes support for disconnecting users and changing authorizations applicable to a user session. With these authorizations, support is provided for Disconnect and Change-of-Authorization (CoA) messages. Disconnect messages immediately terminate a user session, whereas CoA messages modify session authorization attributes such as data filters.

**Step 7** Check **Network User** to enable network user authentication. If this option is enabled, this entry is considered as the RADIUS authenticating server for the network user.

**Step 8** Check **Management User** to enable management authentication. If this option is enabled, this entry is considered as the RADIUS authenticating server for the management user.

**Step 9** In the **Retransmit Timeout** text box, enter the number of seconds between retransmissions. The valid range is 2 to 30 seconds, and the default value is 2 seconds.

**Step 10** If you enable **IP Sec** the IP security mechanism, additional IP security fields are added to the page, and Steps 13 to 19 are required. If you disable it, click **Save** and skip Steps 13 to 19.

**Step 11** Use the drop-down list to choose the IP security authentication protocol to be used. The available options are:

- **HMAC-SHA1**
- **HMAC-MD5**
- **None**

Message Authentication Codes (MAC) are used between two parties that share a secret key to validate information transmitted between them. HMAC (Hash MAC) is a mechanism based on cryptographic hash functions and can be used in combination with any iterated cryptographic hash function. HMAC-MD5 and HMAC-SHA1 are two constructs of the HMAC using the MD5 hash function and the SHA1 hash function. HMAC also uses a secret key for calculation and verification of the message authentication values.

**Step 12** Set the IP security encryption mechanism to use. The options are as follows:

- **DES**—Data Encryption Standard is a method of data encryption using a private (secret) key. DES applies a 56-bit key to each 64-bit block of data.
- **Triple DES**—Data Encryption Standard that applies three keys in succession.
- **AES 128 CBC**—Advanced Encryption Standard uses keys with a length of 128, 192, or 256 bits to encrypt blocks with a length of 128, 192, or 256 bits. AES 128 CBC uses a 128-bit data path in Cipher Clock Chaining (CBC) mode.
- **None**—No IP security encryption mechanism.

- Step 13** From the IKE phase 1 drop-down list choose either **aggressive** or **main** to set the IKE protocol. IKE phase 1 is used to negotiate how IKE is protected. Aggressive mode passes more information in fewer packets, with the benefit of a slightly faster connection, at the cost of transmitting the identities of the security gateways in the clear.
- Step 14** Enter the timeout interval (in seconds) in the **Lifetime** field to define when the session expires.
- Step 15** Set the **IKE Diffie Hellman** group. The options are group 1 (768 bits), group 2 (1024 bits), or group 5 (1536 bits).
- Diffie-Hellman techniques are used by two devices to generate a symmetric key where you can publicly exchange values and generate the same symmetric key.
- Although all three groups provide security from conventional attacks, Group 5 is considered more secure because of its larger key size. However, computations involving Group 1 and Group 2 based keys might occur slightly faster because of their smaller prime number size.
- Step 16** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)
- [RADIUS Authentication Templates](#)
- [Controller > Security > AAA > RADIUS Auth Servers](#)

## Creating RADIUS Accounting Templates

To add and configure a RADIUS Accounting template or modify an existing template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > AAA > RADIUS Acct Servers**.
- Step 2** Use the **Shared Secret Format** drop-down list to choose either **ASCII** or **hexadecimal**.
- Regardless of the format you choose, for security reasons, only ASCII is visible on the WLC (and Prime Infrastructure). For this reason, you cannot use a template to replicate the configuration on a second controller during auto provisioning. You should set the key format again in the template in case a discovered template is applied to another device.
- Step 3** Enter the RADIUS shared secret used by your specified server.
- Step 4** Re-enter the shared secret.
- Step 5** Click if you want to establish administrative privileges for the server.
- Step 6** Click if you want to enable the network user authentication. If this option is enabled, this entry is considered as the RADIUS authenticating server for the network user.
- Step 7** Specify the time in seconds after which the RADIUS authentication request times out and a retransmission by the controller occurs. You can specify a value between 2 and 30 seconds.

**Step 8** Click **Save**.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating RADIUS Fallback Templates

To add and configure a RADIUS Fallback template or modify an existing template, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > AAA > RADIUS Fallback**.

**Step 2** From the **RADIUS Fallback Mode** drop-down list, choose one of the following:

- **Off**—Disables fallback.
- **Passive**—You must enter a time interval.
- **Active**—You must enter a username and time interval.

**Step 3** Click **Save**.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## LDAP Server Templates

This section explains how to configure a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server as a backend database, similar to a RADIUS or local user database. An LDAP backend database allows the controller to query an LDAP server for the credentials (username and password) of a particular user. These credentials are then used to authenticate the user. For example, local EAP might use an LDAP server as its backend database to retrieve user credentials.

**Related Topics**

- [Creating LDAP Server Templates](#)

## Creating LDAP Server Templates

To add an LDAP server template or make modifications to an existing LDAP server template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > AAA > LDAP Servers**.
- Step 2** Enter the port number of the controller to which the access point is connected.
- Step 3** From the **Bind Type** drop-down list, choose one of the following:
- **Authenticated**—Enter a bind username and password.
  - **Anonymous**.
- Step 4** In the **Server User Base DN** text box, enter the distinguished name of the subtree in the LDAP server that contains a list of all the users.
- Step 5** In the **Server User Attribute** text box, enter the attribute that contains the username in the LDAP server.
- Step 6** In the **Server User Type** text box, enter the ObjectType attribute that identifies the user.
- Step 7** In the **Retransmit Timeout** text box, enter the number of seconds between retransmissions. The valid range is 2 to 30 seconds, and the default value is 2 seconds.
- Step 8** Check the **Admin Status** check box if you want the LDAP server to have administrative privileges.
- Step 9** Click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)
- [LDAP Server Templates](#)

## TACACS+ Server Templates

This page allows you to add a TACACS+ server or make modifications to an existing TACACS+ server template. After these server templates are configured, controller users who log into the controller through the CLI or GUI are authenticated.

**Related Topics**

- [Creating TACACS+ Server Templates](#)

## Creating TACACS+ Server Templates

To configure a TACACS+ Server template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > AAA > TACACS+ Servers**.
- Step 2** Select one or more server types by selecting their respective check boxes. The following server types are available:
- **authentication**—Server for user authentication/authorization.
  - **authorization**—Server for user authorization only.
  - **accounting**—Server for RADIUS user accounting.

- Step 3** Enter the IP address of the server.
- Step 4** Enter the port number of the server. The default is 49.
- Step 5** From the drop-down list, choose either **ASCII** or **hex**.  
Regardless of which format you choose, for security reasons, only ASCII is visible on the WLC (and Prime Infrastructure). For this reason, you cannot use a template to replicate the configuration on a second controller during auto provisioning. Set the key format again in the template in the event a discovered template is applied to another device.
- Step 6** Enter the TACACS+ shared secret used by your specified server in the **Shared Secret** text box.
- Step 7** Reenter the shared secret in the Confirm Shared Secret text box.
- Step 8** Select the **Admin Status** check box if you want the TACACS+ server to have administrative privileges.
- Step 9** In the **Retransmit Timeout** text box, enter the time, in seconds, after which the TACACS+ authentication request times out and a retransmission is attempted by the controller.
- Step 10** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)
- [TACACS+ Server Templates](#)
- [Controller > Security > AAA > TACACS+ Servers](#)

## Local EAP General Templates

This page allows you to specify a timeout value for local EAP. You can then add or make changes to an existing local EAP general template.

If any RADIUS servers are configured on the controller, the controller tries to authenticate the wireless clients using the RADIUS servers first. Local EAP is attempted only if no RADIUS servers are found, either because the RADIUS servers timed out or no RADIUS servers were configured. If four RADIUS servers are configured, the controller attempts to authenticate the client with the first RADIUS server, then the second RADIUS server, and then local EAP. If the client attempts to then reauthenticate manually, the controller tries the third RADIUS server, then the fourth RADIUS server, and then local EAP.

#### Related Topics

- [Creating Local EAP General Templates](#)

## Creating Local EAP General Templates

To add an Local EAP template or make modifications to an existing template, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > Local EAP > General - Local EAP**.  
The Local EAP General page appears.

**Step 2** In the **Local Auth Active Timeout** text box, enter the time (in seconds) that the controller attempts to authenticate wireless clients using local EAP after any pair of configured RADIUS servers fail. The valid range is 1 to 3600 seconds, and the default setting is 1000 seconds.

The following values should be adjusted if you are using EAP-FAST, manual password entry, one-time password, or 7920/7921 phones:

- Local EAP Identify Request Timeout =1
- Local EAP Identity Request Maximum Retries=20
- Local EAP Dynamic WEP Key Index=0
- Local EAP Request Timeout=20
- Local EAP Request Maximum Retries=2

You must increase the 802.1x timeout values on the controller (default=2 seconds) for the client to obtain the PAC using automatic provisioning. The recommended and default timeout on the Cisco ACS server is 20 seconds.

Roaming fails if these values are not set the same across multiple controllers.

**Step 3** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)
- [Local EAP General Templates](#)
- [Controller > Security > Local EAP > General - Local EAP](#)

## Local EAP Profile Templates

Local EAP is an authentication method that allows users and wireless clients to be authenticated locally. It is designed for use in remote offices that want to maintain connectivity to wireless clients when the backend system becomes disrupted or the external authentication server goes down. When you enable local EAP, the controller serves as the authentication server and the local user database, thereby removing dependence on an external authentication server. Local EAP retrieves user credentials from the local user database or the LDAP backend database to authenticate users.

The LDAP backend database supports only these local EAP methods:

- EAP-TLS.
- EAP-FAST with certificates.

LEAP and EAP-FAST with PACs are not supported for use with the LDAP backend database.

#### Related Topic

- [Creating Local EAP Profile Templates](#)

## Creating Local EAP Profile Templates

To add Local EAP Profile template or make modifications to an existing template, follow these steps:



- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > Local EAP > Local EAP Profiles**.
- Step 2** Choose one of the following desired authentication type:
- **LEAP**—This authentication type leverages Cisco Key Integrity Protocol (CKIP) and MMH message integrity check (MIC) for data protection. A username and password are used to perform mutual authentication with the RADIUS server through the access point.
  - **EAP-FAST**—This authentication type (Flexible Authentication via Secure Tunneling) uses a three-phased tunnel authentication process to provide advanced 802.1X EAP mutual authentication. A username, password, and PAC (protected access credential) are used to perform mutual authentication with the RADIUS server through the access point.
  - **TLS**—This authentication type uses a dynamic session-based WEP key derived from the client adapter and RADIUS server to encrypt data. It requires a client certificate for authentication.
  - **PEAP**—This authentication type is based on EAP-TLS authentication but uses a password instead of a client certificate for authentication. PEAP uses a dynamic session-based WEP key derived from the client adapter and RADIUS server to encrypt data.
- Step 3** Choose the certificate for authentication from the **Certificate Issuer** drop-down list to determine whether Cisco or another vendor issued the certificate for authentication. Only EAP-FAST and TLS require a certificate.
- Step 4** Check the **Check Against CA Certificates** check box if you want the incoming certificate from the client to be validated against the certificate authority (CA) certificates on the controller.
- Step 5** Check the **Verify Certificate CN Identity** check box if you want the incoming certificate to be validated against the common name of the CA certificate.
- Step 6** Check the **Check Against Date Validity** check box if you want the controller to verify that the incoming device certificate is still valid and has not expired,.
- Step 7** Check the **Local Certificate Required** check box if a local certificate is required.
- Step 8** Check the **Client Certificate Required** check box if a client certificate is required.
- Step 9** Click **Save**.
- Step 10** To enable local EAP, follow these steps:
- a. Choose **WLAN > WLAN Configuration** from the left sidebar menu.
  - b. Click the profile name of the desired WLAN.
  - c. Choose the **Security > AAA Servers** tab to access the AAA Servers page.
  - d. Select the **Local EAP Authentication** check box to enable local EAP for this WLAN.
- Step 11** Click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)
- [Local EAP Profile Templates](#)
- [Controller > Security > Local EAP > Local EAP Profiles](#)

## EAP-FAST Templates

This authentication type (Flexible Authentication via Secure Tunneling) uses a three-phased tunnel authentication process to provide advanced 802.1X EAP mutual authentication. A username, password, and PAC are used to perform mutual authentication with the RADIUS server through the access point.

### Related Topics

- [Creating an EAP-FAST Template](#)

## Creating an EAP-FAST Template

To add an EAP-FAST template or make modifications to an existing template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > Local EAP > EAP-FAST Parameters**.
  - Step 2** In the **Time to Live for the PAC** text box, enter the number of days for the PAC to remain viable. The valid range is 1 to 1000 days, and the default setting is 10 days.
  - Step 3** In the **Authority ID** text box, enter the authority identifier of the local EAP-FAST server in hexadecimal characters. You can enter up to 32 hexadecimal characters, but you must enter an even number of characters.
  - Step 4** In the **Authority Info** text box, enter the authority identifier of the local EAP-FAST server in text format.
  - Step 5** In the **Server Key** and **Confirm Server Key** text boxes, enter the key (in hexadecimal characters) used to encrypt and decrypt PACs.
  - Step 6** If you want to enable anonymous provisioning, select the **Anonymous Provision** check box. This feature allows PACs to be sent automatically to clients that do not have one during PAC provisioning. If you disable this feature, PACs must be manually provisioned.
  - Step 7** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)
- [EAP-FAST Templates](#)

## Creating Network User Priority Templates

You can specify the order that LDAP and local databases use to retrieve user credential information. This page allows you to add or make modifications to an existing network user credential retrieval priority template.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > Local EAP > Network Users Priority**.
  - Step 2** Use the left and right arrow keys to include or exclude network user credentials in the right page.

- Step 3** Use the up and down keys to determine the order credentials are tried.
- Step 4** Click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Local Network Users Templates

With this template, you can store the credentials (username and password) of all the local network users. These credentials are then used to authenticate the users. For example, local EAP might use the local user database as its back end database to retrieve user credentials. This page allows you to add or make modifications to an existing local network user template. You must create a local net user and define a password when logging in as a web authentication client.

**Related Topics**

- [Creating Local Network Users Templates](#)

## Creating Local Network Users Templates

To configure a Local Network Users template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > AAA > Local Net Users**.
- Step 2** Click **Import CSV** to import from a file, then click **Browse** to navigate to the file. Then continue to Step 6. If you disable the import, continue to Step 3.
- Only CSV file formats are supported.
- Prime Infrastructure reads data from the second row onwards. The first row in the file is treated as the header and the data is not read by Prime Infrastructure. The header can either be blank or filled.
- Step 3** Enter the following details:
- Username
  - Password
  - Profile
  - Description.
- The Profile column if left blank (or filled in with *any profile*) means a client on any profile can use this account.
- Step 4** Use the drop-down list to choose the SSID which this local user is applied to or choose the any SSID option.
- Step 5** Enter a user-defined description of this interface.

**Step 6** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)
- [Local Network Users Templates](#)

## Guest User Templates

The purpose of a guest user account is to provide a user account for a limited amount of time. A Lobby Ambassador is able to configure a specific time frame for the guest user account to be active. After the specified time period, the guest user account automatically expires. Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > CLI Templates > System Templates - CLI > Guest Users** to access the Guest Users template page.

#### Related Topics

- [Creating Guest User Templates](#)

## Creating Guest User Templates

To add a guest user template or make modifications to an existing template, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > CLI Templates > System Templates - CLI > Guest Users**.
- Step 2** Enter a guest username in the **User Name** text box. The maximum size is 24 characters.
- Step 3** Enter a password for this username in the **Password** text box.
- Step 4** From the **Advanced** tab choose the guest user to connect to from the **Profile** drop-down list
- Step 5** Choose a user role for the guest user from the drop-down list. User roles are predefined by the administrator and are associated with the access of the guest.
- User Role is used to manage the amount of bandwidth allocated to specific users within the network.
- Step 6** Choose one of the following radio buttons to specify the lifetime of the guest account:
- **Limited**—The period of time that the guest user account is active using the hours and minutes drop-down lists. The default value for Limited is one day (8 hours).
  - **Unlimited Lifetime**—no expiration date for the guest account.
- Step 7** Choose the area (indoor, outdoor), controller list, or config group to which the guest user traffic is limited from the **Apply to** drop-down list.
- If you choose the controller list option, a list of controller IP addresses appears.
- Step 8** Modify the default guest user description on the General tab if necessary. This is not mandatory.
- Step 9** Modify the Disclaimer text on the General tab, if necessary. If you want the supplied text to be the default, select the **Make this Disclaimer default** check box. This is not mandatory.

**Step 10** Click **Save**.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)
- [Guest User Templates](#)

## User Login Policies Templates

You can set the maximum number of concurrent logins that each single user can have.

**Related Topics**

- [Creating User Login Policies Templates](#)

## Creating User Login Policies Templates

To add a user login template or make modifications to an existing template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > User Login Policies**.
- Step 2** Enter the maximum number of concurrent logins each single user can have.
- Step 3** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)
- [User Login Policies Templates](#)

## Creating a MAC Filter Template

To add a MAC filter template or make modifications to an existing template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > AAA > MAC Filtering** or choose **Security > MAC Filtering**.
- Step 2** Click **Import CSV** to import a file containing access point MAC addresses.
- Step 3** Enter the desired file path or click **Browse** to import the file.



- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)
- [Access Point or MSE Authorization Templates](#)

## Creating a Manually Disabled Client Template

This page allows you to add a manually disable client template or make modifications to an existing disabled client template.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > Manually Disable Clients**.
- Step 2** Enter the MAC address of the client you want to disable.
- Step 3** Enter a description of the client you are setting to disabled.
- Step 4** Click **Save as New Template**.

You cannot use a MAC address in the broadcast range.

---

### Related Topics

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating Client Exclusion Policies Templates

To add a client exclusion policies template or modify an existing client exclusion policies template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Client Exclusion Policies**.
- Step 2** Complete the following fields:
- **Template Name**—Enter a name for the client exclusion policy.
  - **Excessive 802.11 Association Failures**—Enable to exclude clients with excessive 802.11 association failures.
  - **Excessive 802.11 Authentication Failures**—Enable to exclude clients with excessive 802.11 authentication failures.
  - **Excessive 802.1X Authentication Failures**—Enable to exclude clients with excessive 802.1X authentication failures.
  - **Excessive 802.11 Web Authentication Failures**—Enable to exclude clients with excessive 802.11 web authentication failures.
  - **IP Theft or Reuse**—Enable to exclude clients exhibiting IP theft or reuse symptoms.
- Step 3** Click **Save as New Template**.
-

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Access Point Authentication and MFP Templates

Management Frame Protection (MFP) provides for the authentication of 802.11 management frames by the wireless network infrastructure. Management frames can be protected to detect adversaries who are invoking denial of service attacks, flooding the network with associations and probes, interjecting as rogue access points, and affecting the network performance by attacking the QoS and radio measurement frames.

When enabled, the access point protects the management frames it transmits by adding a message integrity check information element (MIC IE) to each frame. Any attempt to copy, alter, or replay the frame invalidates the MIC, causing any receiving access point configured to detect MFP frames to report the discrepancy. An access point must be a member of a WDS to transmit MFP frames.

When MFP detection is enabled, the access point validates every management frame that it receives from other access points in the network. It ensures that the MIC IE is present (when the originator is configured to transmit MFP frames) and matches the content of the management frame. If it receives any frame that does not contain a valid MIC IE from a BSSID belonging to an access point that is configured to transmit MFP frames, it reports the discrepancy to the network management system.

**Related Topics**

- [Creating Access Point Authentication and MFP Templates](#)

## Creating Access Point Authentication and MFP Templates

To add or make modifications for the access point authentication and management frame protection (MFP) template, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > Wireless Protection Policies > AP Authentication and MFP**.

**Step 2** From the Protection Type drop-down list, choose one of the following authentication policies:

- **None**—No access point authentication policy.
- **AP Authentication**—Apply authentication policy.
- **MFP**—Apply management frame protection.

Alarm trigger threshold appears only when AP authentication is selected as a protection type. Set the number of hits from an alien access point to ignore before raising an alarm.

The valid range is from 1 to 255. The default value is 255.

**Step 3** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)



- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)
- [Access Point Authentication and MFP Templates](#)

## Web Authentication Templates

With web authentication, guests are automatically redirected to a web authentication page when they launch their browsers. Guests gain access to the WLAN through this web portal. Wireless LAN administrators using this authentication mechanism should have the option of providing unencrypted or encrypted guest access. Guest users can then log into the wireless network using a valid username and password, which is encrypted with SSL. Web authentication accounts might be created locally or managed by a RADIUS server. The Cisco Wireless LAN controllers can be configured to support a web authentication client. You can use this template to replace the Web authentication page provided on the controller.

### Related Topics

- [Creating a Web Authentication Template](#)

## Creating a Web Authentication Template

To add or make modifications to an existing web authentication template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > AAA > Web Auth Configuration**.
  - Step 2** Choose one of the following web authentication type from the drop-down list.
    - **default internal**— You can still alter the page title, message, and redirect URL, as well as whether the logo appears. Continue to Step 5.
    - **customized web authentication**—Click **Save** and apply this template to the controller. You are prompted to download the web authentication bundle.

Before you can choose customized web authentication, you must first download the bundle by going to **Config > Controller** and choose **Download Customized Web Authentication** from the **Select a command** drop-down list, and click **Go**.
    - **external**—you need to enter the URL you want to redirect to after a successful authentication. For example, if the value entered for this text box is `http://www.example.com`, the user is directed to the company home page
  - Step 3** Select the **Logo Display** check box if you want your company logo displayed.
  - Step 4** Enter the title you want displayed on the Web Authentication page.
  - Step 5** Enter the message you want displayed on the Web Authentication page.
  - Step 6** Provide the URL where the user is redirected after a successful authentication. For example, if the value entered for this text box is `http://www.example.com`, the user would be directed to the company home page.
  - Step 7** Click **Save as New Template**.
-

**Related Topics**

- [Web Authentication Templates](#)
- [Customized Web Authentication Pages](#)

## Customized Web Authentication Pages

You can download a customized Web Authentication page to the controller. With a customized web page, you can establish a username and password for user web access.

When downloading customized web authentication, you must follow these strict guidelines:

- Provide a username.
- Provide a password.
- Retain a redirect URL as a hidden input item after extracting from the original URL.
- Extract the action URL and set aside from the original URL.
- Include scripts to decode the return status code.

**Related Topics**

- [Downloading Customized Web Authentication Pages](#)

## Downloading Customized Web Authentication Pages

Before downloading, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Download the sample login.html bundle file from the server. The following figure displays .html file. The login page is presented to web users the first time they access the WLAN if web authentication is turned on.

**Figure 20-1** Login.html



- Step 2** Edit the login.html file and save it as a .tar or .zip file.  
 You can change the text of the Submit button to read Accept terms and conditions and Submit.
- Step 3** Make sure you have a Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) server available for the download. Keep these guidelines in mind when setting up a TFTP server:

- If you are downloading through the service port, the TFTP server must be on the same subnet as the service port because the service port is not routable. However, if you want to put the TFTP server on a different network while the management port is down, add a static route if the subnet where the service port resides has a gateway (config route add *IP address of TFTP server*).
- If you are downloading through the distribution system network port, the TFTP server can be on the same or a different subnet because the distribution system port is routable.
- A third-party TFTP server cannot run on the same computer as Prime Infrastructure because the built-in TFTP server of Prime Infrastructure and third-party TFTP server use the same communication port.

**Step 4** Download the .tar or .zip file to the controller(s).

The controller allows you to download up to 1 MB of a .tar file containing the pages and image files required for the Web authentication display. The 1 MB limit includes the total size of uncompressed files in the bundle.

You can now continue with the download.

**Step 5** Copy the file to the default directory on your TFTP server.

**Step 6** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices > Wireless Controller**.

**Step 7** Click on a Device Name. If you select more than one device, the customized Web authentication page is downloaded to multiple controllers.

**Step 8** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Commands**.

**Step 9** From the Upload/Download Commands drop-down list, choose **Download Customized Web Auth**, and click **Go**.

**Step 10** The IP address of the controller to receive the bundle and the current status are displayed.

**Step 11** Choose **local machine** from the File is Located On field. If you know the filename and path relative to the root directory of the server, you can also select TFTP server.

For a local machine download, either .zip or .tar file options exists, but Prime Infrastructure does the conversion of .zip to .tar automatically. If you chose a TFTP server download, only .tar files would be specified.

**Step 12** Enter the maximum number of times the controller should attempt to download the file in the Maximum Retries field.

**Step 13** Enter the maximum amount of time in seconds before the controller times out while attempting to download the file in the Timeout field.

**Step 14** The files are uploaded to the c:\tftp directory. Specify the local filename in that directory or click **Browse** to navigate to it.

**Step 15** Click **OK**.

If the transfer times out, you can simply choose the TFTP server option in the File Is Located On field, and the server filename is populated for you. The local machine option initiates a two-step operation. First, the local file is copied from the workstation of the administrator to the built-in TFTP server of Prime Infrastructure. Then the controller retrieves that file. For later operations, the file is already in the TFTP directory of Prime Infrastructure server, and the download web page now automatically populates the filename.

**Step 16** Click the **Click here to download a sample tar file** link to get an option to open or save the login.tar file.

**Step 17** After completing the download, you are directed to the new page and able to authenticate.

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating a Web Authentication Template](#)

## Creating External Web Auth Server Templates

To create or modify an External Web Auth Server template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > External Web Auth Server** or choose **Security > External Web Auth Server**.
- Step 2** Enter the server address of the external web auth server.
- Step 3** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating a Security Password Policy Template

To add or make modifications to an existing password policy template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > Password Policy**.
- Step 2** You can enable or disable the following settings:
- Password must contain characters from at least 3 different classes such as uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, and special characters.
  - No character can be repeated more than 3 times consecutively.
  - Password cannot be the default words like cisco or admin.  
Password cannot be “cisco”, “ocsic”, “admin”, “nimda” or any variant obtained by changing the capitalization of letters, or by substituting ‘1’ ‘l’ or ‘!’ for i, or substituting “0” for “o”, or substituting “\$” for “s”.
  - Password cannot contain username or reverse of username.
- Step 3** Click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)

- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating Security - Access Control Templates

This section contains the following topics:

- [Creating an Access Control List Template](#)
- [Creating a FlexConnect Access Control List Template](#)
- [Creating an ACL IP Groups Template](#)
- [Creating an ACL Protocol Groups Template](#)

### Creating an Access Control List Template

An access control list (ACL) is a set of rules used to limit access to a particular interface (for example, if you want to restrict a wireless client from pinging the management interface of the controller). ACLs can be applied to data traffic to and from wireless clients or to all traffic destined for the controller Central Processing Unit (CPU) and can now support reusable grouped IP addresses and reusable protocols. After ACLs are configured in the template, they can be applied to the management interface, the AP-manager interface, or any of the dynamic interfaces for client data traffic; to the Network Processing Unit (NPU) interface for traffic to the controller CPU; or to a WAN.

You can create or modify an ACL template by protocol, direction, and the source or destination of the traffic.

You can now create new mappings from the defined IP address groups and protocol groups. You can also automatically generate rules from the rule mappings you created. These rules are generated with contiguous sequence. That is, if rules 1 through 4 are already defined and you add up to 29 rules.

Existing ACL templates are duplicated into a new ACL template. This duplication clones all the ACL rules and mappings defined in the source ACL template.

This release of Prime Infrastructure provides support to IPv6 ACLs.

#### Related Topics

- [Adding or Modifying an ACL Template](#)
- [Creating an ACL IP Groups Template](#)
- [Creating an ACL Protocol Groups Template](#)

### Adding or Modifying an ACL Template

To add or modify an existing ACL template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > Access Control Lists**.
- Step 2** Complete the following fields:
- Access Control List Name—User-defined name of the template.
  - ACL Type—Choose either **IPv4** or **IPv6**. IPv6 ACL is supported from controller Release 7.2.x.

**Step 3** Choose **IP Groups** from the left sidebar menu to create reusable grouped IP addresses and protocols.

**Step 4** Choose **Add IP Group** from the **Select a command** drop-down list and click **Go** to define a new IP address group.

One IP address group can have a maximum of 128 IP address and netmask combinations. To view or modify an existing IP address group, click the URL of the IP address group. The IP address group page opens. For the IP address of any, an *any* group is predefined.

**Step 5** Edit the following current IP group fields if required in the ACL IP Groups details page:

- IP Group Name
- IP Address
- Netmask OR CIDR Notation

Enter the Netmask or CIDR Notation and then click **Add**. The list of IP addresses or Netmasks appears in the List of IP Address/Netmasks text box.

CIDR or Classless InterDomain Routing a protocol which allows the assignment of Class C IP addresses in multiple contiguous blocks. CIDR notation allows you to add a large number of clients that exist in a subnet range by configuring a single client object.

Netmask allows you to set the subnet mask in dotted-decimal notation rather than the CIDR notation for the IP address property.

- BroadCast/Network
- List of IP Addresses/Netmasks

Use the Move Up and Move Down buttons to rearrange the order of the list items. Use the Delete button to delete any IP address or Netmask.

**Step 6** Choose **Access Control > Protocol Groups** from the left sidebar menu to define an additional protocol that is not a standard predefined one.

The protocol groups with their source and destination port and DSCP are displayed.

**Step 7** Choose **Add Protocol Group** from the **Select a command** drop-down list, and click **Go** to create a new protocol group. To view or modify an existing protocol group, click the URL of the group.

The Protocol Groups page appears.

**Step 8** Enter a name for a new rule. ACLs are not required to have rules defined. When a packet matches all the parameters of a rule, the action for this rule is exercised.

**Step 9** Choose one of the following protocols from the drop-down list:

- Any—All protocols
- TCP—Transmission Control Protocol
- UDP—User Datagram Protocol
- ICMP—Internet Control Message Protocol
- ESP—IP Encapsulating Security Payload
- AH—Authentication Header
- GRE—Generic Routing Encapsulation
- IP—Internet Protocol
- Eth Over IP—Ethernet over Internet Protocol
- Other Port OSPF—Open Shortest Path First
- Other—Any other IANA protocol (<http://www.iana.org/>)

Some protocol choices (such as TCP or UDP) cause additional Source Port and Dest Port GUI elements to appear.

- **Source Port**—Specify the source of the packets to which this ACL applies. The choices are Any, HTTP, HTTPS, Telnet, RADIUS, DHCP Server, DHCP Client, DNS, L2TP, PPTP control, FTP control, SMTP, SNMP, LDAP, Kerberos, NetBIOS NS, NetBIOS DS, NetBIOS SS, MS Dir Server, Other, and Port Range.
- **Dest Port**—Specify the destination of the packets to which this ACL applies. The choices are Any, HTTP, HTTPS, Telnet, RADIUS, DHCP Server, DHCP Client, DNS, L2TP, PPTP control, FTP control, SMTP, SNMP, LDAP, Kerberos, NetBIOS NS, NetBIOS DS, NetBIOS SS, MS Dir Server, Other, and Port Range.

**Step 10** Choose **any** or **specific** from the DSCP (Differentiated Services Code Point) drop-down list. If you choose specific, enter the DSCP (range of 0 to 255).

DSCP is a packet header code that can be used to define the quality of service across the Internet.

**Step 11** Click **Save**.

**Step 12** Choose the ACL template to which you want to map the new groups to define a new mapping. All ACL mappings appear on the top of the page, and all ACL rules appear on the bottom.

**Step 13** Choose **Add Rule Mappings** from the **Select a command** drop-down list. The Add Rule Mapping page appears.

**Step 14** Configure the following fields:

- **Source IP Group**—Predefined groups for IPv4 and IPv6.
- **Destination IP Group**—Predefined groups for IPv4 and IPv6.
- **Protocol Group**—Protocol group to use for the ACL.
- **Direction**—Any, Inbound (from client) or Outbound (to client).
- **Action**—Deny or Permit. The default filter is to deny all access unless a rule explicitly permits it.

**Step 15** Click **Add**. The new mappings populate the bottom table.

**Step 16** Click **Save**.

**Step 17** Choose the mappings for which you want to generate rules, and click **Generate**. This automatically creates the rules.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating a FlexConnect Access Control List Template

You can create or modify a FlexConnect ACL template for configuring the type of traffic that is allowed by protocol, and the source or destination of the traffic. The FlexConnect ACLs do not support IPv6 addresses.

## Creating and Applying a FlexConnect Access Control List

To configure and apply an Access Control List template to a Controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > FlexConnect ACLs**.
- Step 2** Enter a name for the new FlexConnect ACL.
- Step 3** Click **Save as New Template**.
- A FlexConnect ACL template is created. You can now create new mappings from the defined IP address groups and protocol groups. To define a new mapping, choose the ACL template to which you want to map the new groups. All FlexConnect ACL mappings appear on the top of the page, and all FlexConnect ACL rules appear in the bottom.
- Step 4** Click **Add Rule Mappings**, then configure the following fields in the FlexConnect ACL IP Protocol Map page:
- Source IP Group—Predefined groups for IPv4 and IPv6.
  - Destination IP Group—Predefined groups for IPv4 and IPv6.
  - Protocol Group—Protocol group to use for the ACL.
  - Action—Deny or Permit. The default filter is to deny all access unless a rule explicitly permits it.
- Step 5** Click **Add**. The new mappings populate the bottom table.
- Step 6** Click **Save**.
- Step 7** Choose the mappings for which you want to generate rules, and click **Generate**. This automatically creates the rules.
- Step 8** From the **Select a command** drop-down list in the FlexConnect ACL page, choose **Apply Templates**. The Apply to Controllers page appears.
- Step 9** Select **Save Config to Flash after apply** check box to save the configuration to Flash after applying the FlexConnect ACL to the controller.
- Step 10** Select **Reboot Controller after apply** to reboot the controller once the FlexConnect ACL is applied. This check box is available only when you select the Save Config to Flash after apply check box.
- Step 11** Select one or more controllers and click **OK** to apply the FlexConnect ACL template.
- The FlexConnect ACL that you created appears in **Configure > Controller Template Launch Pad > IP Address > Security > Access Control > FlexConnect ACLs**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Deleting a FlexConnect Access Control List

To delete a FlexConnect ACL, follow these steps:



- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices > Controllers**.
- Step 2** Click a controller Device Name.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > FlexConnect ACLs**.
- Step 4** From the FlexConnect ACLs page, select one or more FlexConnect ACLs to delete.
- Step 5** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Delete FlexConnect ACLs**.
- Step 6** Click **Go**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating an ACL IP Groups Template

To create reusable grouped IP addresses, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > IP Groups**.
- Step 2** Configure the following fields:
- Name
  - IP Address—For IP Group, enter an IPv4 address format. For IPv6 groups, enter an IPv6 address format.
  - Netmask OR CIDR Notation—Enter the Netmask or CIDR Notation and then click **Add**.  
The list of IP addresses or Netmasks appears in the List of IP Addresses/Netmasks text box.  
These fields are not applicable for IPv6 groups.
  - BroadCast/Network  
These fields are not applicable for IPv6 groups.
  - Prefix Length—Prefix for IPv6 addresses, ranging from 0 to 128.
  - List of IP Addresses/Netmasks—Use the Move Up and Move Down buttons to rearrange the order of the list items. Use the Delete button to delete an IP address or Netmask.
- Step 3** Click **Save as New Template**.

You can create new mappings from the defined IP address groups and protocol groups. To define a new mapping, choose the ACL template to which you want to map the new groups. All ACL mappings appear in the top of the page, and all ACL rules appear in the bottom.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

- [Creating Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Creating an ACL Protocol Groups Template](#)

## Creating an ACL Protocol Groups Template

To define an additional protocol that is not a standard predefined one, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > Protocol Groups**.
- Step 2** Configure the following fields:
- **Name**—The rule name is provided for the existing rules, or you can now enter a name for a new rule. ACLs are not required to have rules defined. When a packet matches all the fields of a rule, the action for this rule is exercised.
  - **Protocol**—Choose a protocol from the drop-down list:
    - Any—All protocols
    - TCP—Transmission Control Protocol
    - UDP—User Datagram Protocol
    - ICMP—Internet Control Message Protocol
    - ESP—IP Encapsulating Security Payload
    - AH—Authentication Header
    - GRE—Generic Routing Encapsulation
    - IP—Internet Protocol
    - Eth Over IP—Ethernet over Internet Protocol
    - Other Port OSPF—Open Shortest Path First
    - Other—Any other IANA protocol (<http://www.iana.org/>)
  - **Source Port**—Can be Any, HTTP, HTTPS, Telnet, RADIUS, DHCP Server, DHCP Client, DNS, L2TP, PPTP control, FTP control, SMTP, SNMP, LDAP, Kerberos, NetBIOS NS, NetBIOS DS, NetBIOS SS, MS Dir Server, Other and Port Range.
  - **Dest Port**—Destination port. If TCP or UDP is selected, can be Any, HTTP, HTTPS, Telnet, RADIUS, DHCP Server, DHCP Client, DNS, L2TP, PPTP control, FTP control, SMTP, SNMP, LDAP, Kerberos, NetBIOS NS, NetBIOS DS, NetBIOS SS, MS Dir Server, Other and Port Range.
  - **DSCP (Differentiated Services Code Point)**—Choose Any or Specific from the drop-down list. If Specific is selected, enter the DSCP (range of 0 through 255).  
DSCP is a packet header code that can be used to define the quality of service across the Internet.
- Step 3** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Creating Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Creating an ACL IP Groups Template](#)
- [Adding Controller Templates](#)

- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating Security - CPU Access Control List Templates

CPU ACL configuration with IPv6 is not supported in this release because all IP addresses of controllers on interfaces use IPv4 except the virtual interface. The existing ACLs are used to set traffic controls between the Central Processing Unit (CPU) and Network Processing Unit (NPU).

### Creating a CPU Access Control List (ACL) Template

To add or modify an existing CPU ACL template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > CPU Access Control List**.
  - Step 2** Select the check box to enable CPU ACL. When CPU ACL is enabled and applied on the controller, Prime Infrastructure displays the details of the CPU ACL against that controller.
  - Step 3** From the **ACL Name** drop-down list, choose a name from the list of defined names.
  - Step 4** From the **CPU ACL Mode** drop-down list, choose which data traffic direction this CPU ACL list controls. The choices are the wired side of the data traffic, the wireless side of the data traffic, or both wired and wireless.
  - Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating Security - Rogue Templates

Rogue templates enable you to configure the rogue policy (for access points and clients) applied to the controller. It also determines whether or not the Rogue Location Discovery Protocol (RLDP) is connected to the enterprise wired network. With RLDP, the controller instructs a managed access point to associate with the rogue access point and sends a special packet to the controller. If the controller receives the packet, the rogue access point is connected to the enterprise network. This method works for rogue access points that do not have encryption enabled.

There can be many rogues with very weak RSSI values that do not provide any valuable information in the rogue analysis. Therefore, you can use this option to filter the rogues by specifying the minimum RSSI value at which the APs should detect rogues.

Rogue access point rules allow you to define rules to automatically classify rogue access points. Prime Infrastructure applies the rogue access point classification rules to the controllers. These rules can limit the appearance of a rogue on maps based on RSSI level (weaker rogue access points are ignored) and time limit (a rogue access point is not flagged unless it is seen for the indicated period of time). Rogue access point rules also help reduce false alarms.

The new enhancements to the role classification rule are applicable for Cisco WLC 7.4 and later. These enhancements are not applicable to Catalyst 3850, Catalyst 3650, Catalyst 4500 switches, and Cisco 5760 WLAN Controllers (WLC).

To view current classification rule templates, rule type, and the number of controllers to which they are applied, choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Rogue AP Rules**.

Rogue classes include the following types:

- **Malicious Rogue**—A detected access point that matches the user-defined malicious rules or has been manually moved from the Friendly AP category.
- **Friendly Rogue**—Known, acknowledged, or trusted access point or a detected access point that matches user-defined friendly rules.
- **Unclassified Rogue**—A detected access point that does not match the malicious or friendly rules.

#### Related Topics

- [Creating a Rogue Policies Template](#)
- [Creating a Rogue AP Rules Template](#)
- [Creating a Rogue AP Rule Groups Template](#)

## Creating a Rogue Policies Template

To add or modify a rogue policy (for access points and clients) template applied to the controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Rogue Policies**.
- Step 2** Choose one of the following from the drop-down list:
- **Disable**—Disables RLDP on all access points.
  - **All APs**—Enables RLDP on all access points.
  - **Monitor Mode APs**—Enables RLDP only on access points in monitor mode.
- Step 3** Set the expiration timeout (in seconds) for rogue access point entries.
- Step 4** Enter the time interval in seconds at which the APs should send the rogue detection report to the controller in the Rogue Detection Report Interval text box.
- The valid range is 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. This feature is applicable to APs that are in monitor mode only.
- Step 5** Enter the minimum RSSI value that a rogue should have for the APs to detect and for the rogue entry to be created in the controller in the Rogue Detection Minimum RSSI text box.
- The valid range is -70 dBm to -128 dBm, and the default value is -128 dBm. This feature is applicable to all the AP modes.

- Step 6** Enter the time interval at which a rogue has to be consistently scanned for by the AP after the first time the rogue is scanned in the Rogue Detection Transient Interval text box.
- By entering the transient interval, you can control the time interval at which the AP should scan for rogues. The APs can filter the rogues based on their transient interval values. The valid range is between 120 seconds to 1800 seconds, and the default value is 0. This feature is applicable to APs that are in monitor mode only.
- Step 7** Select the **Validate rogue clients against AAA** check box to enable the AAA validation of rogue clients.
- Step 8** Select the **Detect and report Adhoc networks** check box to enable detection and reporting of rogue clients participating in ad hoc networking.
- Step 9** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Rogue AP Rules

To configure rogue rules on Prime Infrastructure, follow these steps:

1. Create a Rogue AP rule—See [Creating a Rogue AP Rules Template](#).
2. Create a Rogue AP Rule Group that contains all the rules you want to apply—See [Creating a Rogue AP Rule Groups Template](#).
3. Deploy the Rogue AP Rule Group to the controllers—See [Deploying a Rogue AP Rule Groups Template](#).

## Creating a Rogue AP Rules Template

To add or create a new classification rule template for rogue access points, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Rogue AP Rules**.
- Step 2** Configure the following fields:
- Template Name.
  - Rule Type—Choose **Malicious**, **Friendly**, or **Custom** from the drop-down list.
  - Notify—Choose **Global**, **Local**, **None**, or **All** from the drop-down list.
    - Global—Trap information is sent only to Prime Infrastructure.
    - Local—Trap information is sent only to controller.
    - None —Trap information is not sent.
    - All—Trap information is sent to Prime Infrastructure and controller.
  - State—Use the drop-down list to choose from **Contain**, **Alert**, or **Delete**.

- Match Type—Choose **Match All Conditions** or **Match Any Condition** from the drop-down list.
- Severity Score (for Custom rule type only)—Specify the severity score. The Custom Rogue AP severity is based on Severity Score Value you specify:
  - Critical—80 to 100
  - Major—60 to 79
  - Minor—1 to 59
- Classification Name (for Custom rule type only).

**Step 3** In the Rogue Classification Rule group box of the page, configure the following fields.

- Open Authentication—Select the check box to enable open authentication.
- Match Managed AP SSID—Select the check box to enable the matching of a Managed AP SSID. Managed SSIDs are the SSIDs configured for the WLAN and known to the system.
- Match User Configured SSID—Select the check box to enable the matching of User Configured SSIDs. User Configured SSIDs are the SSIDs that are manually added. Enter the User Configured SSIDs (one per line) in the Match User Configured SSID text box.
- Match Wildcard Configured SSID—Select the check box to enable the matching of Wildcard Configured SSIDs. You can use wildcards (\*).
- Minimum RSSI—Select the check box to enable the Minimum RSSI threshold limit. Enter the minimum RSSI threshold level (dBm) in the text box. The detected access point is classified with the Rule Type you specified if it is detected above the indicated RSSI threshold.
- Time Duration—Select the check box to enable the Time Duration limit. Enter the time duration limit (in seconds) in the text box. If it is viewed for a longer period of time than the specified time limit, the detected access point is classified with the Rule Type you specified.
- Minimum Number Rogue Clients—Select the check box to enable the Minimum Number Rogue Clients limit. Enter the minimum number of rogue clients allowed. If the number of clients associated to the detected access point is greater than or equal to the specified value, the detected access point is classified with the Rule Type you specified.

**Step 4** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating a Rogue AP Rule Groups Template](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating a Rogue AP Rule Groups Template

A rogue access point rule group template allows you to combine more than one rogue access point rule to controllers. To view current rogue access point rule group templates or create a new rule group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Rogue AP Rule Groups**.
- Step 2** Enter a template name.
- Step 3** To add a Rogue AP rule, click to highlight the rule in the left column. Click **Add** to move the rule to the right column.
- Rogue access point rules can be added from the Rogue Access Point Rules section.
- Step 4** To remove a rogue access point rule, click to highlight the rule in the right column. Click **Remove** to move the rule to the left column.
- Step 5** Use the **Move Up/Move Down** buttons to specify the order in which the rules apply. Highlight the desired rule and click **Move Up** or **Move Down** to move it higher or lower in the current list.
- Step 6** Click **Save** to confirm the rogue access point rule list.
- Step 7** Click **Deploy** to apply the rule group to the controller. See [Deploying a Rogue AP Rule Groups Template](#).
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Creating a Rogue AP Rules Template](#)
- [Deploying a Rogue AP Rule Groups Template](#)
- [Viewing Deployed Rogue AP Rules](#)

## Deploying a Rogue AP Rule Groups Template

After you create and save a rogue AP Rule Group template, you can deploy it to a controller.

---

- Step 1** Navigate to the Rogue AP Rule Group that you previously created. By default, it is saved in **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > My Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > Wireless Protection Policies**.
- Step 2** Click **Deploy** to apply the rule group to the controller.
- Step 3** Select the controller(s) to which you want to apply the AP Rule Group, then click **OK**.
- Prime Infrastructure creates a job for deploying the rules to the controllers you specified.
- Step 4** Choose **Administration > Dashboards > Job Dashboard > User Jobs > Config Deploy - Deploy View** to view the status of the job.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Creating a Rogue AP Rules Template](#)
- [Creating a Rogue AP Rule Groups Template](#)
- [Viewing Deployed Rogue AP Rules](#)

## Viewing Deployed Rogue AP Rules

You can view and edit the Rogue AP Rules that you previously deployed.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Network > Network Devices > Wireless Controllers**.
  - Step 2** Click on a Device Name, then select **Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Rogue AP Rules**.
  - Step 3** Click on a Rogue AP Rule name to edit the rule.
  - Step 4** To view Rogue AP alarms, click the Alarm Summary at the top right of the page, then select **Rogue AP**. You can also choose **Dashboard > Wireless > Security** to view Rogue AP information.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Monitoring Alarms](#)
- [Where to Find Alarms](#)

## Friendly Access Point Templates

This template allows you to import friendly internal access points. Importing these friendly access points prevents non-lightweight access points from being falsely identified as rogues. Friendly Internal access points were previously referred to as Known APs. The Friendly AP page identifies the MAC address of an access point, status, any comments, and whether or not the alarm is suppressed for this access point.

### Creating a Friendly Access Point Template

To view or edit the current list of friendly access points, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Friendly AP**.
  - Step 2** To import an access point, click **Import CSV**. Then enter the file path or click **Browse** to navigate to the CSV file containing the MAC addresses.  
  
Use a line break to separate MAC addresses. For example, enter the MAC addresses as follows:  
00:00:11:22:33:44  
00:00:11:22:33:45  
00:00:11:22:33:46
  - Step 3** To manually add an access point, enter the MAC address for the access point.
  - Step 4** Choose **Internal** access point from the Status drop-down list.
  - Step 5** Enter a comment regarding this access point, if necessary.
  - Step 6** Select the **Suppress Alarms** check box to suppress all alarms for this access point.
  - Step 7** Click **Save as New Template**.



To modify an existing friendly access point, choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices > Controller**, and click the controller Device Name, then select **Security > Rogue > Friendly Internal**, and click the MAC address of an access point. Make the necessary changes to the access point, and click **Save**.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Ignored Rogue AP Templates

The Ignored Rogue AP Template page allows you to create or modify a template for importing ignored access points. Access points in the Ignored AP list are not identified as rogues. You create an Ignored Rogue AP Template with a specific MAC address, or a set of MAC addresses in a CSV file. The Ignored Rogue AP Template is not immediately applied to the controller. The next time the controller detects the rogue MAC address and informs Prime Infrastructure about it, Prime Infrastructure deletes the Rogue AP/Adhoc alarm from its database and this MAC address is added to the controller's Rogue AP Ignore-List.

## Creating Ignored Rogue AP Templates

To add or edit the Ignored Rogue access points, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Ignored Rogue AP**.
- Step 2** To import an ignored rogue access point, click **Import CSV**. Then enter the file path or click **Browse** to navigate to the CSV file containing the MAC addresses.
- Use a line break to separate MAC addresses. For example, enter the MAC addresses as follows:  
00:00:11:22:33:44  
00:00:11:22:33:45  
00:00:11:22:33:46
- Step 3** To manually add an ignored rogue access point, unselect the **Import from File** check box.
- Step 4** Enter the MAC address and comment for the rogue access point.
- Step 5** Click **Save as a New Template**.

If you remove the MAC address from the Ignored AP list, the MAC address is removed from the Rogue AP Ignore-List on the controller.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

# Creating 802.11 Templates

You can create the following 802.11 templates:

- Creating Load Balancing Templates.
- Creating Band Selection Templates.
- Creating Media Parameters Controller Templates (802.11a/n).

## Related Topics

- [Creating Load Balancing Templates](#)
- [Creating Band Selection Templates](#)
- [Creating Media Stream for Controller Templates \(802.11\)](#)

## Creating Load Balancing Templates

To configure load balancing templates, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11 > Load Balancing**.
- Step 2** Enter a value between 1 and 20 for the client window size.
- The page size becomes part of the following algorithm that determines whether an access point is too heavily loaded to accept more client associations:
- $$\text{load-balancing page} + \text{client associations on AP with lightest load} = \text{load-balancing threshold}$$
- In the group of access points accessible to a client device, each access point has a different number of client associations. The access point with the lowest number of clients has the lightest load. The client page size plus the number of clients on the access point with the lightest load forms the threshold. Access points with more client associations than this threshold is considered busy, and clients can associate only to access points with client counts lower than the threshold.
- Step 3** Enter a value between 0 and 10 for the max denial count. The denial count sets the maximum number of association denials during load balancing.
- Step 4** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

## Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11 Templates](#)
- [Creating Band Selection Templates](#)
- [Creating Media Stream for Controller Templates \(802.11\)](#)

## Creating Band Selection Templates

To configure band selection templates, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11 > Band Select**.

- Step 2** Enter a value between 1 and 10 for the **probe cycle count**.  
The cycle count sets the number of suppression cycles for a new client. The default cycle count is 2.
- Step 3** Enter a value between 1 and 1000 milliseconds for the **scan cycle period threshold**.  
This setting determines the time threshold during which new probe requests from a client come from a new scanning cycle. The default cycle threshold is 200 milliseconds.
- Step 4** Enter a value between 10 and 200 seconds for the **age out suppression** field.  
Age-out suppression sets the expiration time for pruning previously known 802.11b/g clients. The default value is 20 seconds. After this time elapses, clients become new and are subject to probe response suppression.
- Step 5** Enter a value between 10 and 300 seconds for the **age out dual band** field.  
The age-out period sets the expiration time for pruning previously known dual-band clients. The default value is 60 seconds. After this time elapses, clients become new and are subject to probe response suppression.
- Step 6** Enter a value between -20 and -90 dBm for the **acceptable client RSSI** field.  
This field sets the minimum RSSI for a client to respond to a probe. The default value is -80 dBm.
- Step 7** Click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Creating 802.11 Templates](#)
- [Creating Load Balancing Templates](#)
- [Creating Preferred Call Templates](#)
- [Creating Media Stream for Controller Templates \(802.11\)](#)

## Creating Preferred Call Templates

To add or modify preferred call templates, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11 > Preferred Call**.
- Step 2** Configure the following Preferred Call parameters:
- **Template Name**—Enter a template name which is the unique key used to identify the template. A template name is mandatory to distinguish between two templates that have identical key attributes.
  - **Number Id**—Enter a value to identify the preferred number. You can have a maximum of six preferred call numbers. The valid range is from 1 to 6. The default value is 1.
  - **Preferred Number**—Enter the preferred call number.
- Step 3** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Creating 802.11 Templates](#)

- [Creating Load Balancing Templates](#)
- [Creating Band Selection Templates](#)
- [Creating Media Stream for Controller Templates \(802.11\)](#)

## Creating Media Stream for Controller Templates (802.11)

To configure the media stream for a controller template for an 802.11 Radio, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11 > Media Stream**.
- Step 2** Enter a name for the template.
- Template Name is the unique key used to identify the template. A template name is mandatory to distinguish between two templates that have identical key attributes.
- Step 3** In the **Media Stream Configuration** group box, specify the following fields:
- **Media Stream Name**
  - **Multicast Destination Start IP**—Start IP address of the media stream to be multicast.
  - **Multicast Destination End IP**—End IP address of the media stream to be multicast.
  - IPv4 or IPv6 multicast addresses are supported from controller Release 7.2.x.
  - **Maximum Expected Bandwidth**—Maximum bandwidth that a media stream can use.
- Step 4** In the **Resource Reservation Control (RRC) Parameters** group box, specify the following fields:
- **Average Packet Size**—Average packet size that a media stream can use.
  - **RRC Periodical Update**—Resource Reservation Control calculations that are updated periodically; if disabled, RRC calculations are done only once when a client joins a media stream.
  - **RRC Priority**—Priority of RRC with the highest at 1 and the lowest at 8.
  - **Traffic Profile Violation**—Appears if the stream is dropped or put in the best effort queue if the stream violates the QoS video profile.
  - **Policy**—Appears if the media stream is admitted or denied.
- Step 5** Click **Save**.
- Once saved, the template is displayed in the Template List page. In the Template List page, you can apply this template to controllers.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11 Templates](#)
- [Creating Load Balancing Templates](#)
- [Creating Band Selection Templates](#)
- [Creating Preferred Call Templates](#)
- [Creating RF Profiles Templates \(802.11\)](#)

## Creating RF Profiles Templates (802.11)

To configure a RF Profile for a controller template for an 802.11 Radio, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11 > RF Profiles**.

**Step 2** Configure the following information:

- **General**
  - **Template Name**—User-defined name for the template.
  - **Profile Name**—User-defined name for the current profile.
  - **Description**—Description of the template.
  - **Radio Type**—The radio type of the access point. This is a drop-down list from which you can choose an RF profile for APs with 802.11a or 802.11b radios.
- **TPC (Transmit Power Control)**
  - **Minimum Power Level Assignment (-10 to 30 dBm)**—Indicates the minimum power assigned. Range: -10 to 30 dBm Default: -10 dBm.
  - **Maximum Power Level Assignment (-10 to 30 dBm)**—Indicates the maximum power assigned. Range: -10 to 30 dBm Default: 30 dBm.
  - **Power Threshold v1(-80 to -50 dBm)**—Indicates the transmitted power threshold.
  - **Power Threshold v2(-80 to -50 dBm)**—Indicates the transmitted power threshold.
- **Data Rates**—Use the Data Rates drop-down lists to specify the rates at which data can be transmitted between the access point and the client. The following data rates are available:
  - 802.11a—6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, and 54 Mbps.
  - 802.11b/g—1, 2, 5.5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, or 54 Mbps

For each data rate, choose one of these options:

- **Mandatory**—Clients must support this data rate to associate to an access point on the controller.
- **Supported**—Any associated clients that support this data rate might communicate with the access point using that rate. However, the clients are not required to be able to use this rate to associate.
- **Disabled**—The clients specify the data rates used for communication.
- **Band Select**—The Band Select feature enables you to balance client distribution among both serving radios when APs are serving hundreds of clients in a dense auditorium or stadium sites. Band Select discovers the client capabilities to verify whether client can associate on both 2.4 GHz and 5Ghz spectrum. Enabling band select on a WLAN, forces AP to do a probe suppression on 2.4GHz that ultimately moves dual band clients to 5Ghz spectrum. In the Band Select group box, specify the following:
  - Probe Response
  - Cycle Count(1 to 10 Cycles)
  - Cycle Threshold(1 to 1000 msec)
  - Suppression Expire(10 to 200 secs)
  - Dual Band Expire(10 to 300 secs)
  - Client RSSI(-90 to -20 dBm)

- **High Density Configurations**
  - **Maximum Clients**—Specify the maximum number of clients
- **Multicast Configurations**
  - **Multicast Data Rate**—From the Multicast Data Rate drop-down list, choose the data rate. The value “auto” indicates that the AP automatically adjusts data rate with client.
- **Coverage Hole Detection**
  - **Data RSSI(-90 to -60 dBm)**—Enter the minimum receive signal strength indication (RSSI) value for data packets received by the access point. The value that you enter is used to identify coverage holes (or areas of poor coverage) within your network. If the access point receives a packet in the data queue with an RSSI value below the value that you enter here, a potential coverage hole has been detected. The valid range is –90 to –60 dBm, and the default value is –80 dBm. The access point takes data RSSI measurements every 5 seconds and reports them to the controller in 90-second intervals.
  - **Voice RSSI(-90 to -60 dBm)**—Enter the minimum receive signal strength indication (RSSI) value for voice packets received by the access point. The value that you enter is used to identify coverage holes within your network. If the access point receives a packet in the voice queue with an RSSI value below the value that you enter here, a potential coverage hole has been detected. The valid range is –90 to –60 dBm, and the default value is –75 dBm. The access point takes voice RSSI measurements every 5 seconds and reports them to the controller in 90-second intervals.
  - **Coverage Exception(1 to 75 Clients)**—Enter the minimum number of clients on an access point with an RSSI value at or below the data or voice RSSI threshold. The valid range is 1 to 75, and the default value is 3.
  - **Coverage Level(0 to 100%)**—In the Coverage Exception Level per AP text box, enter the percentage of clients on an access point that are experiencing a low signal level but cannot roam to another access point. The valid range is 0 to 100%, and the default value is 25%.
- **Load Balancing**
  - **Window(0 to 20 Clients)**—Enter a value between 1 and 20. The window size becomes part of the algorithm that determines whether an access point is too heavily loaded to accept more client associations.
  - **Denial(1 to 10)**—Enter a value between 0 and 10. The denial count sets the maximum number of association denials during load balancing.

**Step 3** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11 Templates](#)
- [Creating Load Balancing Templates](#)
- [Creating Band Selection Templates](#)
- [Creating Preferred Call Templates](#)

## SIP Snooping

Keep the following guidelines in mind when using SIP Snooping:

- SIPs are available only on the Cisco 5500 Series Controllers and on the 1240, 1130, and 11n access points.
- SIP CAC should only be used for phones that support status code 17 and do not support TSPEC-based admission control.
- SIP CAC will be supported only if SIP snooping is enabled.

## Creating SIP Snooping

To configure SIP Snooping for a controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11 > SIP Snooping**.
- Step 2** Configure the following fields:
- **Port Start**
  - **Port End**
- If single port is to be used, configure both start and end port fields with same number.
- Step 3** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11 Templates](#)
- [Creating Load Balancing Templates](#)
- [Creating Band Selection Templates](#)
- [Creating Preferred Call Templates](#)
- [Creating RF Profiles Templates \(802.11\)](#)

## Creating 802.11a/n Radio Templates

You can create or modify a 802.11a/n radio template for a wireless controller and/or apply specific settings to controller(s).

### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11a/n Parameters Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Media Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters Through a Controller Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters Template](#)
- [Creating an 802.11h Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n High Throughput Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n CleanAir Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n RRM Templates](#)

## Creating 802.11a/n Parameters Templates

To add or modify radio templates, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11a or n or ac > Parameters**.
- The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names.
- Step 2** Select the check box if you want to enable 802.11a/n network status.
- Step 3** In the **Beacon Period** field, enter the amount of time between beacons in kilo-microseconds. The valid range is from 20 to 1000 milliseconds.
- Step 4** In the **DTIM Period** field, enter the number of beacon intervals that might elapse between transmission of beacon frames containing a traffic indicator message (TIM) element whose delivery count text box is 0. This value is transmitted in the DTIM period field of beacon frames. Shorter DTIM periods reduce the delay in receiving packets but use more battery power because clients wake up more often.
- Step 5** In the **Fragmentation Threshold** field, determine the size at which packets are fragmented (sent as several pieces instead of as one block). Use a low setting in areas where communication is poor or where there is a great deal of radio interference.
- Step 6** Enter the percentage for **802.11e Maximum Bandwidth**.
- Step 7** The client and controller negotiate data rates between them. It can range from 6 Mbps to 54 Mbps.
- If the data rate is set to **Mandatory**, the client must support it to use the network.
  - If a data rate is set as **Supported** by the controller, any associated client that also supports that same rate might communicate with the access point using that rate.
  - Each data rate can also be set to **Disabled** to match client settings.
- Step 8** From the **Channel List** drop-down list in the Noise/Interference/Rogue Monitoring Channels section, choose between **all channels**, **country channels**, or **DCA channels** based on the level of monitoring you want. Dynamic Channel Allocation (DCA) automatically selects a reasonably good channel allocation amongst a set of managed devices connected to the controller.
- Step 9** Configure the CCX Location Measurement parameters:
- Select the **Mode** check box to enable the broadcast radio measurement request. When enabled, this enhances the location accuracy of clients.
  - When the **Mode** check box is enabled, you can enter the time in seconds between requests in the **Interval** field.
- Step 10** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11a/n Media Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters Through a Controller Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters Template](#)
- [Creating an 802.11h Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n High Throughput Template](#)



- [Creating 802.11a/n CleanAir Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n RRM Templates](#)

## Creating 802.11a/n Media Parameters Controller Templates

This page enables you to create or modify a template for configuring 802.11a/n voice fields such as call admission control and traffic stream metrics.

To add a new template with 802.11a/n voice fields information (such as Call Admission Control and traffic stream metrics) for a controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11a or n or ac > Media Parameters**.
- Step 2** Specify an appropriate name for the template.
- Step 3** On the Voice tab, configure the following fields:
- Select the **Admission Control (ACM)** check box to enable admission control.
 

For end users to experience acceptable audio quality during a VoIP phone call, packets must be delivered from one endpoint to another with low latency and low packet loss. To maintain QoS under differing network loads, call admission control (CAC) is required. CAC on an access point allows it to maintain controlled QoS when the network is experiencing congestion and keep the maximum allowed number of calls to an acceptable quantity.
  - If Admission Control (ACM) is enabled, choose either load-based or static from the **CAC method** drop-down list.
 

Load-based CAC incorporates a measurement scheme that takes into account the bandwidth consumed by all traffic types from itself, from co-channel access points, and by co-located channel interference. Load-based CAC also covers the additional bandwidth consumption resulting from PHY and channel impairment.
  - In the **Maximum Bandwidth Allowed** field, specify the percentage of maximum bandwidth allowed. This option is only available when CAC is enabled. For controller versions 6.0.188.0 and earlier, the valid range is 40 to 85. For controller versions 6.0.188.1 and later, the valid range is 5 to 85, and the default is 75.
  - In the **Reserved Roaming Bandwidth** field, specify the percentage of reserved roaming bandwidth. This option is only available when CAC is enabled. The valid range is 0 to 25, and the default is 6.
  - Select the **Expedited Bandwidth** check box to enable expedited bandwidth as an extension of CAC for emergency calls.
 

You must have an expedited bandwidth IE that is CCXv5 compliant so that a TSPEC request is given higher priority.
  - Select the **SIP CAC** check box to enable SIP CAC.
  - Choose the appropriate option from the **SIP Codec** drop-down list. The available options are **G.711**, **G.729**, and **User Defined**.
  - In the **SIP Call Bandwidth** field, specify the bandwidth in kilobits per second that you want to assign per SIP call on the network. This field can be configured only when the SIP Codec selected is User Defined.
  - In the **SIP Sample Interval** field, specify the sample interval in milliseconds that the Codec must operate in.
  - Select the **Metric Collection** check box to enable metric collection.

Traffic stream metrics are a series of statistics about VoIP over your wireless LAN which inform you of the QoS of the wireless LAN. For the access point to collect measurement values, traffic stream metrics must be enabled. When this is enabled, the controller begins collecting statistical data every 90 seconds for the 802.11a/n interfaces from all associated access points. If you are using VoIP or video, this feature should be enabled.

**Step 4** On the Video tab, configure the following fields:

- Select the **Admission Control (ACM)** check box to enable admission control.
- In the **Maximum Bandwidth Allowed** field, specify the percentage of maximum bandwidth allowed. This option is only available when CAC is enabled.
- In the **Reserved Roaming Bandwidth** field, specify the percentage of reserved roaming bandwidth. This option is only available when CAC is enabled. The valid range is 0 to 25.
- From the **SIP Codec** drop-down list, choose one of the following options to set the CAC method.
- Select the **SIP CAC** check box to enable Static CAC support. SIP CAC will be supported only if SIP snooping is enabled.
- Select the **Unicast Video Redirect** check box to enable all non-media stream packets in video queue are redirected to the best effort queue. If disabled, all packets with video marking are kept in video queue.
- Specify the physical data rate required for the client to join a media stream from the **Client Minimum Phy Rate** drop-down list.
- Select the **Multicast Direct Enable** check box to set the Media Direct for any WLAN with Media Direct enabled on a WLAN on this radio.
- In the **Maximum Number of Streams per Radio** field, specify the maximum number of streams per radio to be allowed.
- In the **Maximum Number of Streams per Client** field, specify the maximum number of streams per client to be allowed.
- Select the **Best Effort QOS Admission** check box to redirect new client requests to the best effort queue. This happens only if all the video bandwidth has been used. If disabled and maximum video bandwidth has been used, then any new client request is rejected.
- In the **Maximum Retry Percentage** field, specify the maximum retry percentage value.

**Step 5** On the General tab, specify the following field:

- In the **Maximum Media Bandwidth** field, specify the percentage of maximum of bandwidth allowed. This option is only available when CAC is enabled.

**Step 6** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters Through a Controller Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Parameters Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters Template](#)
- [Creating an 802.11h Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n High Throughput Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n CleanAir Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n RRM Templates](#)

## Creating 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters Through a Controller Template

Enhanced Distributed Channel Access (EDCA) parameters are designed to provide preferential wireless channel access for voice, video, and other quality of service (QoS) traffic.

You must shut down radio interface before configuring EDCA Parameters

To add or configure 802.11a/n EDCA parameters through a controller template, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11a or n or ac > EDCA Parameters**.

The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names. .

**Step 2** Choose one of the following options from the **EDCA Profile** drop-down list:

- **WMM**—Enables the Wi-Fi Multimedia (WMM) default parameters. This is the default value. Choose this option when voice or video services are not deployed on your network.
- **Spectralink Voice Priority**—Enables Spectralink voice priority parameters. Choose this option if Spectralink phones are deployed on your network to improve the quality of calls.
- **Voice Optimized**—Enables EDCA voice-optimized profile parameters. Choose this option when voice services other than Spectralink are deployed on your network.
- **Voice & Video Optimized**—Enables EDCA voice- and video-optimized profile parameters. Choose this option when both voice and video services are deployed on your network. Video services must be deployed with admission control (ACM). Video services without ACM are not supported.

**Step 3** Select the **Low Latency MAC** check box to enable this feature. Enable low latency MAC only if all clients on the network are WMM compliant.

---

### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Parameters Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Media Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating an 802.11h Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n High Throughput Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n CleanAir Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n RRM Templates](#)

## Creating 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters Template

To add or modify an existing roaming parameter template, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11a or n or ac > Roaming Parameters**.

The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names.

- Step 2** Use the **Mode** drop-down list to choose one of the configurable modes.
- **Default values**—When this option is chosen, the roaming parameters are unavailable with the default values displayed in the text boxes.
  - **Custom values**—When this option is chosen, the roaming parameters can be edited in the text boxes. To edit the parameters, continue to Step 6.
- Step 3** In the **Minimum RSSI** field, enter a value for the minimum Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) required for the client to associate to an access point. If the average received signal power of the client dips below this threshold, reliable communication is usually impossible. Therefore, clients must already have found and roamed to another access point with a stronger signal before the minimum RSSI value is reached.
- Step 4** In the **Roaming Hysteresis** field, enter a value to indicate how strong the signal strength of a neighboring access point must be for the client to roam to it. This field is intended to reduce the amount of ping between access points if the client is physically located on or near the border between two access points.
- Step 5** In the **Adaptive Scan Threshold** field, enter the RSSI value from the associated access point of the client, below which the client must be able to roam to a neighboring access point within the specified transition time. This field also provides a power-save method to minimize the time that the client spends in active or passive scanning. For example, the client can scan slowly when the RSSI is above the threshold and scan more rapidly when below the threshold.
- Step 6** In the **Transition Time** field, enter the maximum time allowed for the client to detect a suitable neighboring access point to roam to and to complete the roam, whenever the RSSI from the associated access point of the client is below the scan threshold.
- The Scan Threshold and Transition Time parameters guarantee a minimum level of client roaming performance. Together with the highest expected client speed and roaming hysteresis, these parameters make it possible to design a wireless LAN network that supports roaming simply by ensuring a certain minimum overlap distance between access points.
- Step 7** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Creating an 802.11h Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Parameters Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Media Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters Through a Controller Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n High Throughput Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n CleanAir Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n RRM Templates](#)

## Creating an 802.11h Template

802.11h informs client devices about channel changes and can limit the transmit power of the client device. You can create or modify a template for configuring 802.11h parameters (such as power constraint and channel controller announcement) and apply these settings to multiple controllers.

To add or modify an 802.11h template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11a or n or ac > 802.11h**.
- The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names.
- Step 2** Select the **Power Constraint** check box if you want the access point to stop transmission on the current channel.
- Step 3** Select the **Channel Announcement** check box to enable channel announcement. Channel announcement is a method in which the access point announces when it is switching to a new channel and the new channel number.
- Step 4** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11a/n High Throughput Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Parameters Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Media Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters Through a Controller Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n CleanAir Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n RRM Templates](#)

## Creating 802.11a/n High Throughput Template

To add or modify to an 802.11a/n high throughput template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11a or n or ac > High Throughput (802.11n or ac)**.
- The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names.
- Step 2** Select the **802.11n Network Status** check box to enable high throughput.
- Step 3** The **802.11ac Network Status** check box can be enabled and is supported from WLC version 7.5 onwards.

- Step 4** In the MCS (Data Rate) Settings column, choose which level of data rate you want supported. Modulation coding schemes (MCS) are similar to 802.11a data rate. As a default, 20 MHz and short guarded interval is used. When you select the **Supported** check box, the chosen numbers appear in the Selected MCS Indexes page.
- Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11a/n CleanAir Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Parameters Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Media Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters Through a Controller Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters Template](#)
- [Creating an 802.11h Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n RRM Templates](#)

## Creating 802.11a/n CleanAir Controller Templates

You can configure the template to enable or disable CleanAir, reporting and alarms in 802.11a/n radio for the controllers. You can also configure the type of interfering devices to include for reporting and alarms.

To add a new template with 802.11a/n CleanAir information for a controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11a or n or ac > CleanAir**.
- Step 2** Configure the following fields:
- Select the **CleanAir** check box to enable CleanAir functionality on the 802.11 b/g/n network, or unselect to prevent the controller from detecting spectrum interference. If CleanAir is enabled, the Reporting Configuration and Alarm Configuration group boxes appear.
  - Reporting Configuration—Use the fields in this group box to configure the interferer devices you want to include for your reports.
    - Select the **Report Interferers** check box to enable CleanAir system to report and detect sources of interference.
 

Make sure that any sources of interference that need to be detected and reported by the CleanAir system appear in the **Interferences Selected for Reporting** box and any that do not need to be detected appear in the **Interferences Ignored for Reporting** box. Use the > and < buttons to move interference sources between these two boxes. By default, all interference sources are ignored.
    - Select the **Persistent Device Propagation** check box to enable propagation of information about persistent devices that can be detected by CleanAir. Persistent device propagation enables designating information about interference types and propagating this information to the neighboring access points. Persistent interferers are present at the a location and interfere with the WLAN operations even if they are not detectable at all times.
  - Alarm Configuration—This group box enables you to configure triggering of air quality alarms.
    - Select the **Air Quality Alarm** check box to enable the triggering of air quality alarms.

- If you selected the **Air Quality Alarm** check box, enter a value between 1 and 100 (inclusive) in the **Air Quality Alarm Threshold** field to specify the threshold at which you want the air quality alarm to be triggered. When the air quality falls below the threshold level, the alarm is triggered.
- Select the **Air Quality Unclassified category Alarm** check box to enable the alarms to be generated for unclassified interference category. CleanAir can detect and monitor unclassified interferences. Unclassified interference are interference that are detected but do not correspond to any of the known interference types.

The Unclassified category alarm is generated when the unclassified severity goes above the configured threshold value for unclassified severity or when the air quality index goes below the configured threshold value for Air Quality Index.

- If you selected the **Air Quality Unclassified category Alarm** check box, enter a value between 1 and 99 (inclusive) in the **Air Quality Unclassified Severity Threshold** text box to specify the threshold at which you want the unclassified category alarm to be triggered. The default is 20.
- Select the **Interferers For Security Alarm** check box to trigger interferer alarms when the controller detects specified device types.
- Make sure that any sources of interference that need to trigger interferer alarms appear in the **Interferers Selected for Security Alarms** box and any that do not need to trigger interferer alarms appear in the **Interferers Ignored for Security Alarms** box. Use the > and < buttons to move interference sources between these two boxes. By default, all interferer sources for security alarms are ignored.

**Step 3** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11 a/n RRM Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11 a/n Parameters Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11 a/n Media Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11 a/n EDCA Parameters Through a Controller Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11 a/n Roaming Parameters Template](#)
- [Creating an 802.11 h Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11 a/n High Throughput Template](#)
- 

## Creating 802.11a/n RRM Templates

You can create or modify the parameters such as threshold, interval, DCA, TPC for 802.11a/n Radio Resource Management (RRM) templates.

#### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11 a/n RRM Threshold Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11 a/n RRM Interval Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11 a/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11 a/n RRM Transmit Power Control Template](#)

## Creating 802.11a/n RRM Threshold Template

You must disable the 802.11a/n network before applying the RRM threshold fields.

To add or make modifications to an 802.11a/n RRM threshold template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11a or n or ac > dot11a-RRM > Thresholds**.

The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names.

- Step 2** Coverage Hole Algorithm—Enter the values for the following parameters.
- In the **Min Failed Clients** field, enter the minimum number of failed clients currently associated with the controller.
  - In the **Coverage Level** field, enter the target range of coverage threshold.
  - In the **Data RSSI** field, enter the value in the specified range. This number indicates the value for the minimum Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) for data required for the client to associate to an access point.
  - In the **Voice RSSI** field, enter the value in the specified range. This number indicates the value for the minimum Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) required for voice for the client to associate to an access point.
- Step 3** Local Thresholds—Enter the values for the following parameters.
- In the **Max Clients** field, enter the maximum number of failed clients that are currently associated with the controller.
  - In the **RF Utilization** field, enter the percentage of threshold for 802.11a/n.
- Step 4** Threshold for Traps—Enter the values for the following parameters.
- In the **Interference Threshold Percentage** field, enter the percentage of interference threshold.
  - In the **Noise Threshold** field, enter a noise threshold between -127 and 0 dBm. When the controller is outside of this threshold, it sends an alarm to Prime Infrastructure.
  - In the **Coverage Exception Level per AP** field, enter the percentage value of coverage exception level. When the coverage drops by this percentage from the configured coverage for the minimum number of clients, a coverage hole is generated.
- Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11a/n RRM Interval Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n RRM Transmit Power Control Template](#)

## Creating 802.11a/n RRM Interval Template

To add or make modifications to an 802.11a/n RRM interval template, follow these steps:



---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11a or n or ac > dot11a-RRM > Intervals**.

The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names.

**Step 2** In the **Neighbor Packet Frequency** field, enter the interval at which you want strength measurements taken for each access point. The default is 300 seconds.

**Step 3** In the **Channel Scan Duration** field, enter the interval at which you want scanning of the channel for each access point. The default is 300 seconds.

**Step 4** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11a/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n RRM Threshold Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n RRM Transmit Power Control Template](#)

### Creating 802.11a/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation Template

The RRM Dynamic Channel Assignment (DCA) page allows you to choose the DCA channels as well as the channel width for this controller.

RRM DCA supports 802.11n 40-MHz channel width in the 5-GHz band. The higher bandwidth allows radios to achieve higher instantaneous data rates.

Choosing a larger bandwidth reduces the non-overlapping channels which could potentially reduce the overall network throughput for certain deployments.

To configure 802.11 a/n RRM DCA template, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11a or n or ac > dot11a-RRM > DCA**.

**Step 2** Hover the mouse on **DCA** and select **Show All Templates**. The 802.11a/n RRM DCA Template page appears and to modify an existing template, click the template name. The number of controllers and virtual domains that the template is applied to automatically populates. The last column indicates when the template was last saved.

The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names.

**Step 3** If you want to add a new template, hover the mouse on **DCA** and select **New** or click **DCA**. The 802.11a/n DCA template page appears.

**Step 4** Dynamic Channel Assignment Algorithm— Configure the following fields:

- From the **Assignment Mode** drop-down list, choose one of three modes:
  - **Automatic**—The transmit power is periodically updated for all access points that permit this operation.

- **On Demand**—Transmit power is updated when you click **Assign Now**.
- **Disabled**—No dynamic transmit power assignments occur, and values are set to their global default.
- Select the **Avoid Foreign AP Interference** check box to enable RRM to consider interference from foreign Cisco access points (those non-Cisco access points outside RF/mobility domain) when assigning channels. Unselect this check box to have RRM ignore this interference.
 

In certain circumstances with significant interference energy (dB) and load (utilization) from foreign access points, RRM might adjust the channel assignment to avoid these channels (and sometimes adjacent channels) in access points close to the foreign access points. This increases capacity and reduces variability for the Cisco WLAN Solution.
- Select the **Avoid Cisco AP Load** check box to enable this bandwidth-sensing field to have controllers consider the traffic bandwidth used by each access point when assigning channels to access points. Unselect this check box to have RRM ignore this value.
 

In certain circumstances and with denser deployments, there might not be enough channels to properly create perfect channel reuse. In these circumstances, RRM can assign better reuse patterns to those access points that carry more traffic load.
- Select the **Avoid non 802.11 Noise** check box to enable this noise-monitoring field to have access points avoid channels that have interference from non-access point sources, such as microwave ovens or Bluetooth devices. Unselect this check box to have RRM ignore this interference.
 

In certain circumstances with significant interference energy (dB) from non-802.11 noise sources, RRM might adjust the channel assignment to avoid these channels (and sometimes adjacent channels) in access points close to the noise sources. This increases capacity and reduces variability for the Cisco WLAN Solution.
- Select the **Avoid Persistent Non-WiFi Interference** check box to enable this field to have access points avoid persistent interferences from non-wifi sources.
- The **Signal Strength Contribution** check box is always enabled (not configurable). This constantly monitors the relative location of all access points within the RF/mobility domain to ensure near-optimal channel reuse. The net effect is an increase in Cisco WLAN Solution capacity and a reduction in co-channel and adjacent channel interference.
- Event Driven RRM—Enable or disable event-driven RRM using the following fields. Event Driven RRM is used when a CleanAir-enabled access point detects a significant level of interference.
  - Select the **Event Driven RRM** check box to enable it.
  - If Event Driven RRM is enabled, **Sensitivity Threshold** field displays the threshold level at which event-driven RRM is triggered. It can have a value of either Low, Medium, or High. When the interference for the access point rises above the threshold level, RRM initiates a local Dynamic Channel Assignment (DCA) run and changes the channel of the affected access point radio if possible to improve network performance.
 

Low represents a decreased sensitivity to changes in the environment while High represents an increased sensitivity.
  - Select the **Rogue Contribution** check box to enable contribution from rogue access points.
  - If the Rogue Contribution is enabled, **Rogue Duty-Cycle** field displays the interval at which the rogue access points are interfered. The range is between 1 to 99.

**Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Creating 802.11a/n RRM Transmit Power Control Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n RRM Threshold Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n RRM Interval Template](#)

**Creating 802.11a/n RRM Transmit Power Control Template**

The controller dynamically controls access point transmit power based on real-time wireless LAN conditions. Normally, power can be kept low to gain extra capacity and reduce interference. The controller attempts to balance the transmit power of the access points according to how the access points are seen by their third strongest neighbor.

The transmit power control (TPC) algorithm both increases and decreases the power of an access point in response to changes in the RF environment. In most instances, TPC seeks to lower the power of an access point to reduce interference, but in the case of a sudden change in the RF coverage—for example, if an access point fails or becomes disabled—TPC can also increase power on surrounding access points. This feature is different from Coverage Hole Detection. Coverage hole detection is primarily concerned with clients, while TPC is tasked with providing enough RF power to achieve desired coverage levels while avoiding channel interference between access points.

To configure 802.11a/n RRM TPC template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11a or n or ac > dot11a-RRM > TPC**.
- Step 2** Hover the mouse on **TPC** and select **Show All Templates**. The 802.11a/n RRM TPC Template page appears and to modify an existing template, click the template name. The number of controllers and virtual domains that the template is applied to automatically populates. The last column indicates when the template was last saved.
- The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names.
- Step 3** If you want to add a new template, hover the mouse on **TPC** and select **New** or click **TPC**. The 802.11a/n TPC template page appears.
- Step 4** Configure the following fields:
- Choose **TPCv1** or **TPCv2** radio buttons in the **TPC Version** field. The TPCv2 option is applicable only for those controllers running on Release 7.2.x or later.
  - From the **Dynamic Assignment** drop-down list, choose one of three modes:
    - **Automatic**—The transmit power is periodically updated for all access points that permit this operation.
    - **On Demand**—Transmit power is updated when you click **Assign Now**.
    - **Disabled**—No dynamic transmit power assignments occur, and values are set to their global default.
  - In the **Maximum Power Assignment** field, enter the value that indicates the maximum power assigned.
    - Range: -10 to 30 dB
    - Default: 30 dB

- In the **Minimum Power Assignment** field, enter the value that indicates the minimum power assigned.
  - Range: -10 to 30 dB
  - Default: 30 dB
- Determine if you want to enable **Dynamic Tx Power Control** check box.
- In the **Transmitted Power Threshold** field, enter a value between -50 and -80.

**Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11a/n RRM Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Parameters Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Media Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters Through a Controller Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters Template](#)
- [Creating an 802.11h Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n High Throughput Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11a/n CleanAir Controller Templates](#)

## Creating 802.11b/g/n Radio Templates

You can create or modify a 802.11b/g/n radio template for a wireless controller and/or apply specific settings to controller(s).

#### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Parameters Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n High Throughput Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11 b/g/n CleanAir Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Templates](#)

## Creating 802.11b/g/n Parameters Templates

You can create or modify a template for configuring 802.11b/g/n parameters (such as power and channel status, data rates, channel list, and CCX location measurement) and/or applying these settings to controller(s).

To add a new template with 802.11b/g/n parameters information for a controller, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11b or g or n > Parameters**.

**Step 2** Configure the following General parameters:

- Select the **802.11b/g Network Status** check box to enable 802.11b/g network status on controller.
- In the **Beacon Period** field, enter the rate at which the SSID is broadcast by the access point (the amount of time between beacons). The valid range is from 100 to 600 milliseconds.
- In the **DTIM Period** field, enter the number of beacon intervals that might elapse between transmission of beacon frames containing a traffic indicator message (TIM) element whose delivery count field is 0. This value is transmitted in the DTIM period field of beacon frames.

DTIM period is not applicable in controller Release 5.0.0.0 and later.

When client devices receive a beacon that contains a DTIM, they normally “wake up” to check for pending packets. Longer intervals between DTIMs let clients sleep longer and preserve power. Conversely, shorter DTIM periods reduce the delay in receiving packets but use more battery power because clients wake up more often.

- In the **Fragmentation Threshold** field, enter the value that determines the size at which packets are fragmented (sent as several pieces instead of as one block). Use a low setting in areas where communication is poor or where there is a great deal of radio interference. The default value is 2346.
- In the **802.11e Max Bandwidth** field, enter the percentage value for 802.11e max bandwidth. The default value is 100.
- Select the **Short Preamble** check box to enable short preamble.

**Step 3** Configure the **Data Rate** parameters that are negotiated between the client and the controller. For each rate, a drop-down list selection of Mandatory, Supported and Disabled is available.

- If the data rate is set to **Mandatory**, the client must support it to use the network.
- If a data rate is set as **Supported** by the controller, any associated client that also supports that same rate might communicate with the access point using that rate. But it is not required that a client be able to use all the rates marked Supported to associate 6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54 Mbps.
- Each data rate can also be set to **Disabled** to match Client settings.

**Step 4** Configure the Noise/Interference/Rogue Monitoring Channels parameters.

- From the **Channel List** drop-down list, choose between All Channels, Country Channels, or DCA Channels based on the level of monitoring you want. Dynamic Channel Allocation (DCA) automatically selects a reasonably good channel allocation among a set of managed devices connected to the controller.

**Step 5** Configure the CCX Location Measurement parameters:

- Select the **Mode** check box to enable the broadcast radio measurement request. When enabled, this enhances the location accuracy of clients.
- When the **Mode** check box is enabled, you can enter the time in seconds between requests in the **Interval** field.

**Step 6** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n High Throughput Controller Templates](#)

- [Creating 802.11 b/g/n CleanAir Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Templates](#)

## Creating 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters Controller Templates

You can create or modify a template for configuring 802.11b/g/n voice parameters such as Call Admission Control and traffic stream metrics.

To add a new template with 802.11b/g/n voice parameters information (such as Call Admission Control and traffic stream metrics) for a controller, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11b or g or n > Media Parameters**.

**Step 2** On the Voice tab, configure the following parameters:

- Select the **Admission Control (ACM)** check box to enable admission control.

For end users to experience acceptable audio quality during a VoIP phone call, packets must be delivered from one endpoint to another with low latency and low packet loss. To maintain QoS under differing network loads, call admission control (CAC) is required. CAC on an access point allows it to maintain controlled QoS when the network is experiencing congestion and keep the maximum allowed number of calls to an acceptable quantity.

- If Admission Control (ACM) is enabled, choose either load-based or static from the **CAC method** drop-down list.

Load-based CAC incorporates a measurement scheme that takes into account the bandwidth consumed by all traffic types from itself, from co-channel access points, and by co-located channel interference. Load-based CAC also covers the additional bandwidth consumption resulting from PHY and channel impairment.

- In the **Maximum Bandwidth Allowed** field, specify the percentage of maximum bandwidth allowed. This option is only available when CAC is enabled. For controller versions 6.0.188.0 and earlier, the valid range is 40 to 85. For controller versions 6.0.188.1 and later, the valid range is 5 to 85, and the default is 75.
- In the **Reserved Roaming Bandwidth** field, specify the percentage of reserved roaming bandwidth. This option is only available when CAC is enabled. The valid range is 0 to 25, and the default is 6.
- Select the **Expedited Bandwidth** check box to enable expedited bandwidth as an extension of CAC for emergency calls.

You must have an expedited bandwidth IE that is CCXv5 compliant so that a TSPEC request is given higher priority.

- Select the **SIP CAC** check box to enable SIP CAC. SIP CAC should be used only for phones that support status code 17 and do not support TSPEC-based admission control.
- Choose the appropriate option from the **SIP Codec** drop-down list. The available options are **G.711**, **G.729**, and **User Defined**.
- In the **SIP Call Bandwidth** field, specify the bandwidth in kilobits per second that you want to assign per SIP call on the network. This field can be configured only when the SIP Codec selected is User Defined.
- In the **SIP Sample Interval** field, specify the sample interval in milliseconds that the Codec must operate in.
- Select the **Metric Collection** check box to enable metric collection.

Traffic stream metrics are a series of statistics about VoIP over your wireless LAN which inform you of the QoS of the wireless LAN. For the access point to collect measurement values, traffic stream metrics must be enabled. When this is enabled, the controller begins collecting statistical data every 90 seconds for the 802.11b/g interfaces from all associated access points. If you are using VoIP or video, this feature should be enabled.

**Step 3** On the Video tab, configure the following parameters:

- Select the **Admission Control (ACM)** check box to enable admission control.
- In the **Maximum Bandwidth Allowed** field, specify the percentage of maximum bandwidth allowed. This option is only available when CAC is enabled.
- In the **Reserved Roaming Bandwidth** field, specify the percentage of reserved roaming bandwidth. This option is only available when CAC is enabled. The valid range is 0 to 25.
- From the **SIP Codec** drop-down list, choose one of the following options to set the CAC method.
- Select the **SIP CAC** check box to enable Static CAC support. SIP CAC will be supported only if SIP snooping is enabled.
- Select the **Unicast Video Redirect** check box to enable all non-media stream packets in video queue are redirected to the best effort queue. If disabled, all packets with video marking are kept in video queue.
- Specify the physical data rate required for the client to join a media stream from the **Client Minimum Phy Rate** drop-down list.
- Select the **Multicast Direct Enable** check box to set the Media Direct for any WLAN with Media Direct enabled on a WLAN on this radio.
- In the **Maximum Number of Streams per Radio** field, specify the maximum number of streams per radio to be allowed.
- In the **Maximum Number of Streams per Client** field, specify the maximum number of streams per client to be allowed.
- Select the **Best Effort QOS Admission** check box to redirect new client requests to the best effort queue. This happens only if all the video bandwidth has been used. If disabled and maximum video bandwidth has been used, then any new client request is rejected.
- In the **Maximum Retry Percentage** field, specify the maximum retry percentage value.

**Step 4** On the General tab, specify the following field:

- In the **Maximum Media Bandwidth** field, specify the percentage of maximum of bandwidth allowed. This option is only available when CAC is enabled.

**Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Parameters Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n High Throughput Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11 b/g/n CleanAir Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Templates](#)

## Creating 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters Controller Templates

You can create or modify a template for configuring 802.11b/g/n EDCA parameters. EDCA parameters designate pre-configured profiles at the MAC layer for voice and video.

You must shut down radio interface before configuring EDCA Parameters.

To add a new template with 802.11b/g/n EDCA parameters information for a controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11b or g or n > EDCA Parameters**.
- Step 2** Choose one of the following options from the **EDCA Profile** drop-down list:
- **WMM**—Enables the Wi-Fi Multimedia (WMM) default parameters. This is the default value. Choose this option when voice or video services are not deployed on your network.
  - **Spectralink Voice Priority**—Enables Spectralink voice priority parameters. Choose this option if Spectralink phones are deployed on your network to improve the quality of calls.
  - **Voice Optimized**—Enables EDCA voice-optimized profile parameters. Choose this option when voice services other than Spectralink are deployed on your network.
  - **Voice & Video Optimized**—Enables EDCA voice- and video-optimized profile parameters. Choose this option when both voice and video services are deployed on your network. Video services must be deployed with admission control (ACM). Video services without ACM are not supported.
- Step 3** Select the **Low Latency MAC** check box to enable this feature. Enable low latency MAC only if all clients on the network are WMM compliant.
- Step 4** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Parameters Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n High Throughput Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11 b/g/n CleanAir Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Templates](#)

## Creating 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters Controller Templates

You can create or modify a template for configuring roaming parameters for 802.11b/g/n radios.

To add a new template with 802.11b/g/n Roaming parameters information for a controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11b or g or n > Roaming Parameters**.
- Step 2** Configure the following parameters:
- From the **Mode** drop-down list, choose one of the configurable modes:



- **Default Values**—The roaming parameters are unavailable and the default values are displayed.
- **Custom Values**—The following roaming parameters can be edited.
- In the **Minimum RSSI** field, enter a value for the minimum Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) required for the client to associate to an access point.

If the client average received signal power dips below this threshold, reliable communication is usually impossible. Therefore, clients must already have found and roamed to another access point with a stronger signal before the minimum RSSI value is reached.

- Range: -80 to -90 dBm
- Default: -85 dBm
- In the **Roaming Hysteresis** field, enter a value to indicate how strong the signal strength of a neighboring access point must be in order for the client to roam to it. This field is intended to reduce the amount of “ping ponging” between access points if the client is physically located on or near the border between two access points.
- Range: 2 to 4 dB
- Default: 2 dB
- In the **Adaptive Scan Threshold** field, enter the RSSI value, from a client associated access point, below which the client must be able to roam to a neighboring access point within the specified transition time.

This field also provides a power-save method to minimize the time that the client spends in active or passive scanning. For example, the client can scan slowly when the RSSI is above the threshold and scan more rapidly when below the threshold.

- Range: -70 to -77 dB
- Default: -72 dB
- In the **Transition Time** field, enter the maximum time allowed for the client to detect a suitable neighboring access point to roam to and to complete the roam, whenever the RSSI from the client associated access point is below the scan threshold.
- Range: 1 to 10 seconds
- Default: 5 seconds

The Scan Threshold and Transition Time parameters guarantee a minimum level of client roaming performance. Together with the highest expected client speed and roaming hysteresis, these parameters make it possible to design a wireless LAN network that supports roaming simply by ensuring a certain minimum overlap distance between access points.

**Step 3** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Creating 802.11b/g/n High Throughput Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Parameters Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11 b/g/n CleanAir Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Templates](#)

## Creating 802.11b/g/n High Throughput Controller Templates

You can create or modify a template for configuring high-throughput parameters such as MCS (data rate) settings and indexes and for applying these 802.11n settings to multiple controllers.

To add a new template with High Throughput (802.11n) information for a controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11b or g or n > High Throughput(802.11n) Parameters**.
- Step 2** Configure the following fields:
- Select the **802.11n Network Status** check box to enable high throughput.
  - In the **HT MCS (Data Rate) SS VHT MCS Index**, choose which level of data rate you want supported. MCS is modulation coding schemes which are similar to 802.11a data rate.  
As a default, 20 MHz and short guarded interval are used.
    - When you select the **Supported** check box, the chosen numbers appear in the Selected MCS Indexes page.
- Step 3** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11 b/g/n CleanAir Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Parameters Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters Controller Templates](#)

## Creating 802.11 b/g/n CleanAir Controller Templates

You can create or modify a template for configuring CleanAir parameters for the 802.11 b/g/n radio to enable or disable CleanAir, reporting and alarms for the controllers. You can also configure the type of interfering devices to include for reporting and alarms.

To add a new template with 802.11b/g/n CleanAir information for a controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11b or g or n > CleanAir Parameters**.
- Step 2** Configure the following fields:
- Select the **CleanAir** check box to enable CleanAir functionality on the 802.11 b/g/n network, or unselect to prevent the controller from detecting spectrum interference. The default value is selected.  
If CleanAir is enabled, the Reporting Configuration and Alarm Configuration group boxes appear.
  - Reporting Configuration—Use the parameters in this group box to configure the interferer devices you want to include for your reports.

- Select the **Report Interferers** check box to enable CleanAir system to report and detect sources of interference, or unselect it to prevent the controller from reporting interferers.
- Make sure that any sources of interference that need to be detected and reported by the CleanAir system appear in the **Interferers Selected for Reporting** box and any that do not need to be detected appear in the **Interferers Ignored for Reporting** box. Use the > and < buttons to move interference sources between these two boxes. By default, all interference sources are ignored.
- Select the **Persistent Device Propagation** check box to enable propagation of information about persistent devices that can be detected by CleanAir. Persistent device propagation enables designating information about interference types and propagating this information to the neighboring access points. Persistent interferers are present at the a location and interfere with the WLAN operations even if they are not detectable at all times.
- Alarm Configuration—This group box enables you to configure triggering of air quality alarms.
  - Select the **Air Quality Alarm** check box to enable the triggering of air quality alarms, or unselect the box to disable this feature.
  - If you selected the Air Quality Alarm check box, enter a value between 1 and 100 (inclusive) in the **Air Quality Alarm Threshold** text box to specify the threshold at which you want the air quality alarm to be triggered. When the air quality falls below the threshold level, the alarm is triggered. A value of 1 represents the worst air quality, and 100 represents the best. The default value is 1.
  - Select the **Air Quality Unclassified category Alarm** check box to enable the alarms to be generated for unclassified interference category. CleanAir can detect and monitor unclassified interferences. Unclassified interference are interference that are detected but do not correspond to any of the known interference types.

The Unclassified category alarm is generated when the unclassified severity goes above the configured threshold value for unclassified severity or when the air quality index goes below the configured threshold value for Air Quality Index.
  - If you selected the Air Quality Unclassified category Alarm check box, enter a value between 1 and 99 (inclusive) in the **Air Quality Unclassified Severity Threshold** text box to specify the threshold at which you want the unclassified category alarm to be triggered. The default is 20.
  - Select the **Interferers For Security Alarm** check box to trigger interferer alarms when the controller detects specified device types, or unselected it to disable this feature. The default value is unselected.
  - Make sure that any sources of interference that need to trigger interferer alarms appear in the **Interferers Selected for Security Alarms** box and any that do not need to trigger interferer alarms appear in the **Interferers Ignored for Security Alarms** box. Use the > and < buttons to move interference sources between these two boxes. By default, all interferer sources for security alarms are ignored.

**Step 3** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Parameters Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters Controller Templates](#)

- [Creating 802.11b/g/n High Throughput Controller Templates](#)

## Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Templates

You can create or modify the parameters such as threshold, interval, DCA, TPC for 802.11b/g/n Radio Resource Management (RRM) templates.

### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Thresholds Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Intervals Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Transmit Power Control Template](#)

## Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Thresholds Controller Templates

You can create or modify a template for setting various RRM thresholds such as load, interference, noise, and coverage.

To add a new template with 802.11b/g/n RRM thresholds information for a controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11b or g or n > dot11b-RRM > Thresholds**.
- Step 2** Configure the following Coverage Hole Algorithm parameters:
- In the **Min. Failed Clients** field, enter the minimum number of failed clients currently associated with the controller.
  - In the **Coverage Level** field, enter the target range of coverage threshold (dB).
  - When the Coverage Level field is adjusted, the value in the **Signal Strength** (dBm) field automatically reflects this change. The Signal Strength field provides information regarding what the signal strength is when adjusting the coverage level.
  - In the **Data RSSI** field, enter the Data RSSI value (-60 to -90 dBm). This number indicates the value for the minimum Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) for data required for the client to associate to an access point.
  - In the **Voice RSSI** field, enter the Voice RSSI value(-60 to -90 dBm). This number indicates the value for the minimum Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) required for voice for the client to associate to an access point.
- Step 3** Configure the following Load Thresholds parameters:
- In the **Max Clients** field, enter the maximum number of clients able to be associated with the controller.
  - In the **RF Utilization** field, enter the percentage of threshold for this radio type.
- Step 4** Configure the following Threshold for Traps parameters:
- In the **Interference Threshold** field, enter an interference threshold between 0 and 100 percent.
  - In the **Noise Threshold** field, enter a noise threshold between -127 and 0 dBm. When outside of this threshold, the controller sends an alarm to Prime Infrastructure.
  - In the **Coverage Exception Level per AP** field, enter the coverage exception level percentage. When the coverage drops by this percentage from the configured coverage for the minimum number of clients, a coverage hole is generated.

**Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Intervals Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Transmit Power Control Template](#)

### Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Intervals Controller Templates

You can create or modify a template for configuring RRM intervals for 802.11b/g/n radios.

To add a new template with 802.11b/g/n RRM intervals information for a controller, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11b or g or n > dot11b-RRM > Intervals**.

**Step 2** Configure the following parameters:

- In the **Neighbor Packet** Frequency field, enter at which interval you want strength measurements taken for each access point. The default is 300 seconds.
- In the **Channel Scan Duration** field, enter at which interval you want coverage measurements taken for each access point. The default is 300 seconds.

**Step 3** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Thresholds Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Transmit Power Control Template](#)

### Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation Template

The RRM Dynamic Channel Assignment (DCA) page allows you to choose the DCA channels as well as the channel width for this controller.

RRM DCA supports 802.11n 40-MHz channel width in the 5-GHz band. The higher bandwidth allows radios to achieve higher instantaneous data rates.

Choosing a larger bandwidth reduces the non-overlapping channels, which could potentially reduce the overall network throughput for certain deployments.

To configure 802.11b/g/n RRM DCA template, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11b or g or n > dot11b-RRM > DCA**.

**Step 2** Configure the following parameters in Dynamic Channel Assignment Algorithm:

- From the **Assignment Mode** drop-down list, choose one of three modes:
  - **Automatic**—The transmit power is periodically updated for all access points that permit this operation.

- **On Demand**—Transmit power is updated when you click **Assign Now**.
- **Disabled**—No dynamic transmit power assignments occur, and values are set to their global default.
- Select the **Avoid Foreign AP Interference** check box to enable this field to have RRM consider interference from foreign Cisco access points (those non-Cisco access points outside RF/mobility domain) when assigning channels. This foreign 802.11 interference. Unselect this check box to have RRM ignore this interference.

In certain circumstances with significant interference energy (dB) and load (utilization) from foreign access points, RRM might adjust the channel assignment to avoid these channels (and sometimes adjacent channels) in access points close to the foreign access points. This increases capacity and reduces variability for the Cisco WLAN Solution.

- Select the **Avoid Cisco AP Load** check box to enable this bandwidth-sensing field to have controllers consider the traffic bandwidth used by each access point when assigning channels to access points. Unselect this check box to have RRM ignore this value.

In certain circumstances and with denser deployments, there might not be enough channels to properly create perfect channel reuse. In these circumstances, RRM can assign better re-use patterns to those access points that carry more traffic load.

- Select the **Avoid non 802.11 Noise** check box to enable this noise-monitoring field to have access points avoid channels that have interference from non-access point sources, such as microwave ovens or Bluetooth devices. Unselect this check box to have RRM ignore this interference.

In certain circumstances with significant interference energy (dB) from non-802.11 noise sources, RRM might adjust the channel assignment to avoid these channels (and sometimes adjacent channels) in access points close to the noise sources. This increases capacity and reduces variability for the Cisco WLAN Solution.

- Select the **Avoid Persistent Non-WiFi Interference** check box to enable this field to have access points avoid persistent interferences from non-wifi sources.
- The **Signal Strength Contribution** check box is always enabled (not configurable). constantly monitors the relative location of all access points within the RF/mobility domain to ensure near-optimal channel re-use. The net effect is an increase in Cisco WLAN Solution capacity and a reduction in co-channel and adjacent channel interference.
- Event-driven RRM—Enable or disable event-driven RRM using the following parameters. Event Driven RRM is used when a CleanAir-enabled access point detects a significant level of interference.

- Select the **Event Driven RRM** check box to enable it.
- If Event Driven RRM is enabled, **Sensitivity Threshold** field displays the threshold level at which event-driven RRM is triggered. It can have a value of either Low, Medium, or High. When the interference for the access point rises above the threshold level, RRM initiates a local Dynamic Channel Assignment (DCA) run and changes the channel of the affected access point radio if possible to improve network performance.

Low represents a decreased sensitivity to changes in the environment while High represents an increased sensitivity.

- Select the **Rogue Contribution** check box to enable contribution from rogue access points.
- If the Rogue Contribution is enabled, **Rogue Duty-Cycle** field displays the interval at which the rogue access points are interfered. The range is between 1 to 99.

**Step 3** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Transmit Power Control Template](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Thresholds Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Intervals Controller Templates](#)

### Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Transmit Power Control Template

The controller dynamically controls access point transmit power based on real-time wireless LAN conditions. Normally, power can be kept low to gain extra capacity and reduce interference. The controller attempts to balance the transmit power of an access point according to how the access points are seen by their third strongest neighbor.

The transmit power control (TPC) algorithm both increases and decreases the power of an access point in response to changes in the RF environment. In most instances, TPC seeks to lower the power of an access point to reduce interference, but in the case of a sudden change in the RF coverage—for example, if an access point fails or becomes disabled—TPC can also increase power on surrounding access points. This feature is different from Coverage Hole Detection. Coverage hole detection is primarily concerned with clients, while TPC is tasked with providing enough RF power to achieve desired coverage levels while avoiding channel interference between access points.

To configure 802.11b/g/n RRM TPC template, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > 802.11b or g or n > dot11b-RRM > TPC**.

**Step 2** Configure the following parameters:

- Choose **TPCv1** or **TPCv2** radio buttons in the **TPC Version** field. The TPCv2 option is applicable only for those controllers running on Release 7.2.x or later.
- From the **Dynamic Assignment** drop-down list, choose one of three modes:
  - **Automatic**—The transmit power is periodically updated for all access points that permit this operation.
  - **On Demand**—Transmit power is updated when you click **Assign Now**.
  - **Disabled**—No dynamic transmit power assignments occur, and values are set to their global default.
- In the **Maximum Power Assignment** field, enter the value that indicates the maximum power assigned.
  - Range: -10 to 30 dB
  - Default: 30 dB
- In the **Minimum Power Assignment** field, enter the value that indicates the minimum power assigned.
  - Range: -10 to 30 dB
  - Default: 30 dB
- Determine if you want to enable **Dynamic Tx Power Control** check box.
- In the **Transmitted Power Threshold** field, enter a value between -50 and -80.

**Step 3** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating 802.11b/g/n RRM Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Parameters Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11b/g/n High Throughput Controller Templates](#)
- [Creating 802.11 b/g/n CleanAir Controller Templates](#)

## Creating Mesh Settings Templates

You can configure an access point to establish a connection with the controller.

To add or modify a mesh template, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > Mesh > Mesh Settings**.

**Step 2** Hover the mouse on **Mesh Settings** and select **Show All Templates**. The Mesh Configuration Template page appears, and to modify an existing template, click the template name. The number of controllers and virtual domains that the template is applied to automatically populates. This initial page also displays the rootAP to MeshAP range, the client access on backhaul link, and security mode. The last column indicates when the template was last saved.

The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names.

**Step 3** The **Root AP to Mesh AP Range** field has the value as 12,000 feet by default. Enter the optimum distance (in feet) that should exist between the root access point and the mesh access point. This global field applies to all access points when they join the controller and all existing access points in the network.

**Step 4** When the **Client Access on Backhaul Link** check box is enabled, mesh access points can associate with 802.11a/n wireless clients over the 802.11a/n backhaul. This client association is in addition to the existing communication on the 802.11a/n backhaul between the root and mesh access points.

This feature applies only to access points with two radios.

**Step 5** Select **Mesh DCA Channels** check box to enable backhaul channel deselection on the Controller using the DCA channel list configured in the Controller. Any change to the channels in the Controller DCA list is pushed to the associated access points. This feature applies only to the 1524SB mesh access points.

**Step 6** Select the **Background Scanning** check box to enable Cisco Aironet 1510 Access Points to actively and continuously monitor neighboring channels for more optimal paths and parents.

**Step 7** Enabling the **Global Public Safety** check box indicates that 4.9 Ghz can be used on backhaul link by selecting channel on the 802.11a backhaul radio. 4.9Ghz considered to be public safety band and is limited to some service providers. This setting applies at the controller level.

**Step 8** From the **Security Mode** drop-down list, choose **EAP** (Extensible Authentication Protocol) or **PSK** (Pre-Shared Key).



**Step 9** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

## Creating Management Templates

You can create or modify the templates for the following management parameters of the controllers.

- Trap Receivers
- Trap Control
- Telnet and SSH
- Multiple Syslog servers
- Local Management Users
- Authentication Priority

### Related Topics

- [Creating Trap Receiver Templates](#)
- [Creating Trap Control Templates](#)
- [Creating Telnet SSH Templates](#)
- [Creating Local Management User Templates](#)
- [Creating User Authentication Priority Templates](#)

## Creating Trap Receiver Templates

If you have monitoring devices on your network that receive SNMP traps, you might want to add a trap receiver template.

To add or modify a trap receiver template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > Management > Trap Receiver**.
- Step 2** Hover the mouse on **Trap Receiver** and select **Show All Templates**. The Management > Trap Receiver page appears, and to modify an existing template, click the template name. The number of controllers and virtual domains that the template is applied to automatically populates. This initial page also displays the IP address and admin status. The last column indicates when the template was last saved.
- The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names.
- The Trap Receiver Template name should not contain any space.
- Step 3** Enter the IP address of the server in the **IP Address** text box.
- Step 4** Select the **Admin Status** check box to enable the administrator status if you want SNMP traps to be sent to the receiver.
- Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**.
-

**Related Topics**

- [Creating Trap Control Templates](#)
- [Creating Telnet SSH Templates](#)
- [Creating Local Management User Templates](#)
- [Creating User Authentication Priority Templates](#)

## Creating Trap Control Templates

To add or modify a trap control template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > Management > Trap Control**.
- Step 2** Hover the mouse on **Trap Control** and select **Show All Templates**. The Management > Trap Control page appears, and to modify an existing template, click the template name. The number of controllers and virtual domains that the template is applied to automatically populates. This initial page also displays the link port up or down and rogue AP. The last column indicates when the template was last saved.
- The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names.
- Step 3** If you want to add a new template, hover the mouse on **Trap Control** and select **New** or click **Trap Control**. The Trap Control template page appears.
- Step 4** Select the appropriate check box to enable any of the following Miscellaneous Traps:
- **SNMP Authentication**—The SNMPv2 entity has received a protocol message that is not properly authenticated. When a user who is configured in SNMP V3 mode tries to access the controller with an incorrect password, the authentication fails and a failure message is displayed. However, no trap logs are generated for the authentication failure.
  - **Link (Port) Up/Down**—Link changes states from up or down.
  - **Multiple Users**—Two users log in with the same login ID.
  - **Spanning Tree**—Spanning Tree traps. See the STP specification for descriptions of individual parameters.
  - **Rogue AP**—Whenever a rogue access point is detected or when a rogue access point was detected earlier and no longer exists, this trap is sent with its MAC address.
  - **Controller Config Save as New Template**—Notification sent when the configuration is modified.
  - **RFID Limit Reached Threshold**— The maximum permissible value for RFID limit.
- Step 5** Select the appropriate check box to enable any of the following Client-related Traps:
- **802.11 Association**—A trap is sent when a client is associated to a WLAN. This trap does not guarantee that the client is authenticated.
  - **802.11 Disassociation**—The disassociate notification is sent when the client sends a disassociation frame.
  - **802.11 Deauthentication**—The deauthenticate notification is sent when the client sends a deauthentication frame.
  - **802.11 Failed Authentication**—The authenticate failure notification is sent when the client sends an authentication frame with a status code other than successful.

- 802.11 Failed Association—The associate failure notification is sent when the client sends an association frame with a status code other than successful.
  - Excluded—The associate failure notification is sent when a client is excluded.
  - 802.11 Authenticated— The authenticate notification is sent when the client sends an authentication frame with a status code 'successful'.
  - MaxClients Limit Reached Threshold— The maximum permissible number of clients allowed.
- Step 6** Select the appropriate check box to enable any of the following Cisco AP Traps:
- AP Register—Notification sent when an access point associates or disassociates with the controller.
  - AP Interface Up/Down—Notification sent when access point interface (802.11a/n or 802.11b/g/n) status goes up or down.
- Step 7** Select the appropriate check box to enable any of the following Auto RF Profile Traps:
- Load Profile—Notification sent when Load Profile state changes between PASS and FAIL.
  - Noise Profile—Notification sent when Noise Profile state changes between PASS and FAIL.
  - Interference Profile—Notification sent when Interference Profile state changes between PASS and FAIL.
  - Coverage Profile—Notification sent when Coverage Profile state changes between PASS and FAIL.
- Step 8** Select the appropriate check box to enable any of the following Auto RF Update Traps:
- Channel Update—Notification sent when the dynamic channel algorithm of an access point is updated.
  - Tx Power Update—Notification sent when the dynamic transmit power algorithm of an access point is updated.
- Step 9** Select the appropriate check box to enable any of the following AAA Traps:
- User Auth Failure—This trap is to inform you that a client RADIUS authentication failure has occurred.
  - RADIUS Server No Response—This trap is to indicate that no RADIUS server(s) are responding to authentication requests sent by the RADIUS client.
- Step 10** Select the appropriate check box to enable the following 802.11 Security Traps:
- WEP Decrypt Error—Notification sent when the controller detects a WEP decrypting error.
  - Signature Attack— Notification sent when a signature attack is detected in the wireless controller that uses RADIUS Authentication.
- Step 11** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Creating Telnet SSH Templates](#)
- [Creating Trap Receiver Templates](#)
- [Creating Local Management User Templates](#)
- [Creating User Authentication Priority Templates](#)

## Creating Telnet SSH Templates

To add or modify a Telnet SSH configuration template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > Management > Telnet SSH**.
- Step 2** Hover the mouse on **Telnet SSH** and select **Show All Templates**. The Management > Telnet SSH page appears, and to modify an existing template, click the template name. The number of controllers and virtual domains that the template is applied to automatically populates. This initial page also displays the session timeout, maximum sessions, and whether Telnet or SSH sessions are allowed. The last column indicates when the template was last saved.
- The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names.
- Step 3** If you want to add a new template, hover the mouse on **Telnet SSH** and select **New** or click **Telnet SSH**. The Telnet SSH template page appears.
- Step 4** In the **Session Timeout** field, enter the number of minutes a Telnet session is allowed to remain inactive before being logged off. A zero means there is no timeout. The valid range is 0 to 160, and the default is 5.
- Step 5** In the **Maximum Sessions** field, enter the number of simultaneous Telnet sessions allowed. The valid range is 0 to 5, and the default is 5. New Telnet sessions can be allowed or disallowed on the DS (network) port. New Telnet sessions are always allowed on the service port.
- Step 6** Use the **Allow New Telnet Session** drop-down list to determine if you want new Telnet sessions allowed on the DS port. New Telnet sessions can be allowed or disallowed on the DS (network) port. New Telnet sessions are always allowed on the service port. The default is no.
- Step 7** Use the **Allow New SSH Session** drop-down list to determine if you want Secure Shell Telnet sessions allowed. The default is yes.
- Step 8** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Creating Trap Receiver Templates](#)
- [Creating Trap Control Templates](#)
- [Creating Local Management User Templates](#)
- [Creating User Authentication Priority Templates](#)

## Creating Multiple Syslog Templates

You can enter up to three syslog server templates. To add or modify a multiple syslog configuration template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > Management > Multiple Syslog**.

- Step 2** Hover the mouse on **Multiple Syslog** and select **Show All Templates**. The Management > **Multiple Syslog** page appears, and to modify an existing template, click the template name. The number of controllers and virtual domains that the template is applied to automatically populates. This initial page also displays the syslog server address. The last column indicates when the template was last saved.
- The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names.
- Step 3** If you want to add a new template, hover the mouse on **Multiple Syslog** and select **New** or click **Multiple Syslog**. The Multiple Syslog template page appears.
- Step 4** In the **Syslog Server IP Address** field, enter the appropriate syslog server IP address.
- Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Creating Local Management User Templates](#)
- [Creating Trap Receiver Templates](#)
- [Creating Trap Control Templates](#)
- [Creating Telnet SSH Templates](#)
- [Creating User Authentication Priority Templates](#)

## Creating Local Management User Templates

To add or modify a local management user template, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > Management > Local Management Users**.
- Step 2** Hover the mouse on **Local Management Users** and select **Show All Templates**. The Management > **Local Management Users** page appears, and to modify an existing template, click the template name. The number of controllers and virtual domains that the template is applied to automatically populates. This initial page also displays the username and access level. The last column indicates when the template was last saved.
- The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names.
- Step 3** If you want to add a new template, hover the mouse on **Local Management Users** and select **New** or click **Local Management Users**. The Local Management Users template page appears.
- Step 4** In the **User Name** text box, enter the template username.
- Step 5** In the **Password** text box, enter a password for this local management user template.
- Step 6** In the **Confirm Password** text box, reenter the password.
- Step 7** From the **Access Level** drop-down list, choose either **Read Only** or **Read Write**.
- Step 8** Select the **Update Telnet Credentials** check box to update the user credentials in Prime Infrastructure for Telnet/SSH access.

If the template is applied successfully and the Update Telnet Credentials option is enabled, the applied management user credentials are used in Prime Infrastructure for Telnet/SSH credentials to that applied controller.

**Step 9** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating User Authentication Priority Templates](#)
- [Creating Trap Receiver Templates](#)
- [Creating Trap Control Templates](#)
- [Creating Telnet SSH Templates](#)

## Creating User Authentication Priority Templates

Management user authentication priority templates control the order in which authentication servers are used to authenticate the management users of a controller.

To add a user authentication priority template or make modifications to an existing template, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > Management > Authentication Priority**.
- Step 2** Hover the mouse on **Authentication Priority** and select **Show All Templates**. The **Management > Authentication Priority** page appears, and to modify an existing template, click the template name. The number of controllers and virtual domains that the template is applied to automatically populates. This initial page also displays the authentication priority list. The last column indicates when the template was last saved.
- The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names.
- Step 3** If you want to add a new template, hover the mouse on **Authentication Priority** and select **New** or click **Authentication Priority**. The Local Management Users template page appears.
- Step 4** Select either **First** or **Second** radio buttons to prioritize the authentication of the local server.
- Step 5** Select either **RADIUS** or **TACACS+** radio buttons to try if local authentication fails.
- Step 6** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Creating Trap Receiver Templates](#)
- [Creating Trap Control Templates](#)
- [Creating Telnet SSH Templates](#)
- [Creating Local Management User Templates](#)

## Creating CLI Templates

You can create templates containing a set of CLI commands and apply them to one or more controllers from Prime Infrastructure. These templates are meant for provisioning features in multiple controllers for which there is no SNMP support or custom Prime Infrastructure user interface. The template contents are simply a command array of strings. No support for substitution variables, conditionals, and the like exist.

The CLI sessions to the device are established based on user preferences. The default protocol is SSH.

To add or modify a CLI template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > CLI > General -CLI**.
  - Step 2** Hover the mouse on **General -CLI** and select **Show All Templates**. The General-CLI page appears, and to modify an existing template, click the template name. The number of controllers that the template is applied to automatically populates.  
  
The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names.
  - Step 3** If you want to add a new template, hover the mouse on **General -CLI** and select **New** or click **General -CLI**. The Command-Line Interface General template page appears.
  - Step 4** In the **Commands** box, enter the series of CLI commands.
  - Step 5** Select the **Refresh Config after Apply** check box to perform a refresh config on the controller after the CLI template is applied successfully.
  - Step 6** Select the **Save as New Template Config to Flash after apply** check box to save the config to flash after the CLI template is applied successfully.
  - Step 7** When the **Save as New Template Config to Flash after apply** check box is enabled, the **Reboot Controller after apply** check box can be selected to perform a reboot on the controller after the CLI template is applied successfully.
  - Step 8** Select the **Ignore errors on Apply Template to Controllers** check box to ignore the errors when the template is applied to the controllers.
  - Step 9** Click **Save as New Template**.


When the template is applied to the selected controllers, a status screen appears. If an error occurred while you applied the template, an error message is displayed. You can click the icon in the Session Output column to get the entire session output.

If the Controller Telnet credentials check fails or the Controller CLI template fails with invalid username and password even though the correct username and password are configured on the controller, check whether the controller has exceeded the number of CLI connections it can accept. If the connections have exceeded the maximum limit, then either increase the maximum allowed CLI sessions or terminate any pre-existing CLI sessions on the controller, and then retry the operation.

---

## Creating Location Configuration Templates

To add or modify a location setting template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > Location > Location Configuration**.
- Step 2** Hover the mouse on **Location Configuration** and select **Show All Templates**. The **Location Configuration** appears, and to modify an existing template, click the template name. The number of controllers that the template is applied to automatically populates.
- The Applied to Controllers number is a link. Clicking the number opens an Applied to Controllers page, which displays the controller name and IP address to which that template is applied, as well as the time it was applied and its status. The Applied to Virtual Domains number is also a link. Clicking this link opens an Applied to Virtual Domains page that shows all partition names.
- Step 3** If you want to add a new template, hover the mouse on **Location Configuration** and select **New** or click **Location Configuration**. The **General** tab of Location Configuration template page appears.
- Step 4** Select the **RFID Tag Data Collection** check box to enable tag collection. Before the mobility services engine can collect asset tag data from controllers, you must enable the detection of active RFID tags using the CLI command **config rfid status enable** on the controllers.
- Step 5** Configure the following Location Path Loss Configuration parameters:
- Select the **Calibrating Client** check box to enable calibration for the client. Controllers send regular S36 or S60 requests (depending on the client capability) by way of the access point to calibrating clients. Packets are transmitted on all channels. All access points irrespective of channel (and without a channel change) gather RSSI data from the client at each location. These additional transmissions and channel changes might degrade contemporaneous voice or video traffic.
  - Select the **Normal Client** check box to have a non-calibrating client. No S36 requests are transmitted to the client.
-  **Note** S36 and S60 are client drivers compatible with specific Cisco-compatible Extensions. S36 is compatible with CCXv2 or later. S60 is compatible with CCXv4 or later. For details, see the following URL:  
[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps9806/products\\_qanda\\_item09186a0080af9513.shtml](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps9806/products_qanda_item09186a0080af9513.shtml)
- 
- Step 6** Measurement Notification Interval— In the **Tags, Clients and Rogue APs/Clients** field, specify how many seconds should elapse before notification of the found element (tags, clients, and rogue APs/clients).
- Step 7** Configure the following RSSI Expiry Timeout parameters:
- In the **For Clients** field, enter the number of seconds after which RSSI measurements for clients should be discarded.
  - In the **For Calibrating Clients** field, enter the number of seconds after which RSSI measurements for calibrating clients should be discarded.
  - In the **For Tags** field, enter the number of seconds after which RSSI measurements for tags should be discarded.
  - In the **For Rogue APs** field, enter the number of seconds after which RSSI measurement for rogue access points should be discarded.
- Step 8** Click the **Advanced** tab.
- Step 9** In the **RFID Tag Data Timeout** field, enter a value in seconds to set the RFID tag data timeout setting.
- Step 10** Location Path Loss Configuration—Select the **Calibrating Client Multiband** check box to send S36 and S60 packets (where applicable) on all channels. Calibrating clients must be enabled in the General group box.



- Step 11** Configure the Hyperlocation Config parameters:
- Select the **Hyperlocation** check box so that all the APs associated to that controller which have the Hyperlocation module will be enabled.
  - Adjust the value in **Packet Detection RSSI Minimum** field to filter out weak RSSI readings from location calculation.
  - In the **Scan Count Threshold for Idle Client Detection** field, enter the maximum permissible count of the idle clients detected while scanning.
  - In the **NTP Server IP Address** field, enter the valid NTP server IP address. This IP address is used by all APs for time synchronization.
- Step 12** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

## Creating LyncSDN Templates

LyncSDN configuration is not supported on Virtual and Cisco 2500 Series and Virtual Controllers.

You can create these LyncSDN templates:

- LyncSDN Global Config feature templates.
- LyncSDN PolicyFeature templates.
- LyncSDN ProfileFeature templates

### Related Topics

- [Creating LyncSDN Global Configuration Template](#)
- [Creating LyncSDN Policy Template](#)
- [Creating LyncSDN Profile Template](#)

## Creating LyncSDN Global Configuration Template

To create parameters to apply to devices using the LyncSDN Global Config feature, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > LyncSDN > LyncSDN Global Config**.
- Step 2** In the Template Basic area, enter a name, description, and tag for your template in the appropriate text boxes.
- Step 3** In the Validation Criteria area, choose a Device Type from the drop-down list and enter the OS Version.
- Step 4** In the Template Detail area, configure the following information:
- Select the LyncServer checkbox to enable or disable the LYNC application on the PI.
  - Enter the port number.

You can configure support for HTTP/HTTPS communication on PI for LYNC server. PI supports only http. For https certificate, you need to provide and approved at Lync server which takes once Lync service is ready from Prime Infrastructure.

**Step 5** When you are finished, click **Save as Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating LyncSDN Policy Template](#)
- [Creating LyncSDN Profile Template](#)

## Creating LyncSDN Policy Template

To create parameters to apply to devices using the LyncSDN Policy feature, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > LyncSDN > LyncSDN Policy**.
- Step 2** In the Template Basic area, enter a name, description, and tag for your template in the appropriate text boxes.
- Step 3** In the Validation Criteria area, choose a Device Type from the drop-down list and enter the OS Version.
- Step 4** In the Template Detail area, configure the following information:
- Choose the policy of audio lync call on WLAN from the Audio drop-down list. The possible policy types are Silver, Gold, Platinum, or Bronze.
  - Choose the policy of video lync call on WLAN from the Video drop-down list. The possible policy types are Silver, Gold, Platinum, or Bronze.
  - Choose the policy of desktop-share lync call on WLAN from the Application-Sharing drop-down list. The possible policy types are Silver, Gold, Platinum, or Bronze.
  - Choose the policy of file transfer lync call on WLAN from the File-Transfer drop-down list. The possible policy types are Silver, Gold, Platinum, or Bronze.
- Step 5** When you are finished, click **Save as Template**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Creating LyncSDN Global Configuration Template](#)
- [Creating LyncSDN Profile Template](#)

## Creating LyncSDN Profile Template

To create parameters to apply to devices using the LyncSDN Profile feature, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > LyncSDN > LyncSDN Policy**.
- Step 2** In the Template Basic area, enter a name, description, and tag for your template in the appropriate text boxes.
- Step 3** In the Validation Criteria area, choose a Device Type from the drop-down list and enter the OS Version.
- Step 4** In the Template Detail area, click the Wlan Profile check box and select a policy from the LyncSDN Policy drop-down list.

**Step 5** When you are finished, click **Save as Template**.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Creating LyncSDN Global Configuration Template](#)
- [Creating LyncSDN Policy Template](#)

## Creating IPv6 Templates

You can create or modify IPv6 templates with parameters such as Neighbor Binding Timers and Router Advertisements (RA).

**Related Topics**

- [Creating Neighbor Binding Timers Templates](#)
- [Creating RA Throttle Policy Templates](#)
- [Creating RA Guard Templates](#)

## Creating Neighbor Binding Timers Templates

You can create or modify a template for configuring IPv6 Router Neighbor Binding Timers such as Down Lifetime, Reachable Lifetime, State Lifetime, and corresponding intervals.

To create a Neighbor Binding Timers template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > IPv6 > Neighbor Binding Timers**.
- Step 2** Specify the value in the **Down Lifetime Interval** text box which indicates the maximum time, in seconds, an entry learned from a down interface is kept in the binding table before the entry is deleted or proof is received that the entry is reachable. The range is 0 to 86,400 seconds, and the default value is 0.
- Step 3** Specify the value in the **Reachable Lifetime Interval** text box which indicates the maximum time, in seconds, an entry is considered reachable without getting a proof of reachability (direct reachability through tracking, or indirect reachability through Neighbor Discovery protocol [NDP] inspection). After that, the entry is moved to stale. The range is 0 to 86,400 seconds, and the default value is 0.
- Step 4** Specify the value in the **Stale Lifetime Interval** text box which indicates the maximum time, in seconds, a stale entry is kept in the binding table before the entry is deleted or proof is received that the entry is reachable. The range is 0 to 86,400 seconds, and the default value is 0.
- Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Creating RA Throttle Policy Templates](#)
- [Creating RA Guard Templates](#)

## Creating RA Throttle Policy Templates

The RA Throttle Policy allows you to limit the amount of multicast Router Advertisements (RA) circulating on the wireless network. You can create or modify a template for configuring IPv6 Router Advertisement parameters such as RA Throttle Policy, Throttle Period, and other options.

To create a RA Throttle Policy template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > IPv6 > RA Throttle Policy**.
- Step 2** If you want to add a new template, hover the mouse on **RA Throttle Policy** and select **New** or click **RA Throttle Policy**. To modify an existing template, click the template name. The IPv6 > RA Throttle Policy page appears.
- Step 3** If you want to enable the RA Throttle Policy, select the **Enable** check box and configure the following parameters:
- In the **Throttle Period** field, enter the duration of the throttle period in seconds. The range is 10 to 86,400 seconds.
  - In the **Max Through** field, enter the number of RA that passes through over a period in seconds. If the **No Limit** check-box is not enabled, the maximum pass-through number can be specified.
  - From the **Interval Option** drop-down list, choose an option (Ignore, Passthrough, Throttle) that indicates the behavior in case of RA with an interval option.
  - Specify the value in the **Allow At-least** field that indicates the minimum number of RA not throttled per router.
  - Specify the value in the **Allow At-most** field that indicates the maximum number of RA not throttled per router. If the **No Limit** check-box is not enabled, the maximum number of RA not throttled per router can be specified.
- Step 4** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Creating RA Guard Templates](#)
- [Creating Neighbor Binding Timers Templates](#)

## Creating RA Guard Templates

RA Guard is a Unified Wireless solution used to drop RA from wireless clients. It is configured globally, and by default it is enabled. You can create or modify a template for configuring IPv6 Router Advertisement parameters.

To create an RA Guard template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > IPv6 > RA Guard**.
- Step 2** If you want to add a new template, hover the mouse on **RA Guard** and select **New** or click **RA Guard**. To modify an existing template, click the template name. The RA Guard template page appears.
- Step 3** If you want to enable the RA Guard on AP, select the **Enable** check box.
- Step 4** Click **Save as New Template**.
-

## Creating Proxy Mobile IPv6 Templates

Proxy Mobile IPv6 is a network-based mobility management protocol that supports a mobile node by acting as the proxy for the mobile node in any IP mobility-related signaling. The mobility entities in the network track the movements of the mobile node and initiate the mobility signaling and set up the required routing state.

The main functional entities are the Local Mobility Anchor (LMA) and Mobile Access Gateway (MAG). The LMA maintains the reachability state of the mobile node and is the topological anchor point for the IP address of the mobile node. The MAG performs the mobility management on behalf of a mobile node. The MAG resides on the access link where the mobile node is anchored. The controller implements the MAG functionality.

### Related Topics

- [Creating PMIP Global Configurations](#)
- [Creating LMA Configurations](#)
- [Creating PMIP Profile](#)

## Creating PMIP Global Configurations

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > PMIP > Global Config.**
- Step 2** If you want to add a new template, hover the mouse on **Global Config** and select **New** or click **Global Config**. To modify an existing template, click the template name.
- Step 3** Enter a template name in the text box.
- Step 4** Configure the following fields:
- In the **Domain Name** text box, enter the domain name.
  - In the **Maximum Bindings Allowed** field, enter the maximum number of binding updates that the controller can send to the MAG. The valid range is between 0 to 40000.
  - In the **Binding Lifetime** field, enter the value of the lifetime of the binding entries in the controller. The valid range is between 10 to 65535 seconds. The default value is 65535. The binding lifetime should be a multiple of 4 seconds.
  - In the **Binding Refresh Time** field, enter the refresh time of the binding entries in the controller. The valid range is between 4 to 65535 seconds. The default value is 300 seconds. The binding refresh time should be a multiple of 4 seconds.
  - In the **Binding Initial Retry Timeout** field, specify the initial timeout between the proxy binding updates (PBUs) when the controller does not receive the proxy binding acknowledgments (PBAs). The valid range is between 100 to 65535 seconds. The default value is 1000 second.
  - In the **Binding Maximum Retry Timeout** field, enter the maximum timeout between the proxy binding updates (PBUs) when the controller does not receive the proxy binding acknowledgments (PBAs). The valid range is between 100 to 65535 seconds. The default value is 32000 seconds.
  - In the **Replay Protection Timestamp** field, specify the maximum amount of time difference between the timestamp in the received proxy binding acknowledgment and the current time of the day. The valid range is between 1 to 255 milliseconds. The default value is 7 milliseconds.
  - In the **Minimum BRI Retransmit Timeout** field, specify the minimum amount of time that the controller waits before retransmitting the BRI message. The valid range is between 500 to 65535 seconds.

- In the **Maximum BRI Retransmit Timeout** field, specify the maximum amount of time that the controller waits before retransmitting the Binding Revocation Indication (BRI) message. The valid range is between 500 to 65535 seconds. The default value is 2000 seconds.
- In the **BRI Retries**, specify the number of BRI retries.
- In the **MAG APN** text box, specify the name of the Access Point Node of MAG.

**Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating LMA Configurations](#)
- [Creating PMIP Profile](#)

## Creating LMA Configurations

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > PMIP > LMA Config**.
- Step 2** If you want to add a new template, hover the mouse on **LMA Config** and select **New** or click **LMA Config**. To modify an existing template, click the template name.
- Step 3** Configure the following fields:
- In the **LMA Name** text box, enter the name of the LMA connected to the controller.
  - In the **LMA IP Address**, enter the IP address of the LMA connected to the controller.
- Step 4** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Creating PMIP Profile](#)
- [Creating PMIP Global Configurations](#)

## Creating PMIP Profile

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > PMIP > PMIP Profile**.
- Step 2** If you want to add a new template, hover the mouse on **PMIP Profile** and select **New** or click **PMIP Profile**. To modify an existing template, click the template name.
- Step 3** In the **PMIP Profile** text box, enter the profile name.
- Step 4** Click **Add** and then configure the following fields:
- In the **Network Access Identifier** text box, enter the name of the Network Access Identifier (NAI) associated with the profile.
  - In the **LMA** field, enter the name of the LMA to which the profile is associated.
  - In the **Access Point Node** text box, enter the name of the access point node connected to the controller.
- Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**.
-

**Related Topics**

- [Creating PMIP Global Configurations](#)
- [Creating LMA Configurations](#)

## Creating mDNS Templates

Multicast DNS (mDNS) service discovery provides a way to announce and discover services on the local network. mDNS performs DNS queries over IP multicast. mDNS supports zero configuration IP networking.

The following are the guidelines and limitations for mDNS templates:

- You cannot delete a mDNS service when it is mapped to one or more profiles.
- The length of the profile name and the services name can be a maximum of 31 characters.
- The length of the service string can be maximum 255 characters.
- You cannot delete the default profile (default-mdns-profile).
- You cannot delete profiles when they are mapped to interfaces, interface-groups, or WLANs.
- You cannot remove mDNS services from a profile when they are mapped to interface, interface-groups or WLANs. You can add new services.
- Whenever you create and apply any mDNS template, it overwrites existing configuration on controller.
- You cannot enable mDNS snooping for WLAN when FlexConnect local switching is ON.
- You cannot attach mDNS profiles to interfaces when “AP Management” is enabled.

You can create a mDNS template so that the controller can learn about the mDNS services and advertise these services to all clients.

There are two tabs—Services and Profiles.

- **Services Tab**—This tab enables you to configure the global mDNS parameters and update the Master Services database.
- **Profiles Tab**—This tab enables to view the mDNS profiles configured on the controller and create new mDNS profiles. After creating a new profile, you must map the profile to an interface group, an interface, or a WLAN. Clients receive service advertisements only for the services associated with the profile. The controller gives the highest priority to the profiles associated to interface groups, followed by the interface profiles, and then the WLAN profiles. Each client is mapped to a profile based on the order of priority. By default, the controller has an mDNS profile, default-mdns-profile. You cannot delete this default profile.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > mDNS > mDNS**.
- Step 2** If you want to add a new template, hover the mouse on **mDNS** and select **New** or click **mDNS**. To modify an existing template, click the template name.
- Step 3** On the Services tab, configure the following parameters:
- Select the **mDNS Global Snooping** check box to enable snooping of mDNS packets. The controller does not support IPv6 mDNS packets even when you enable mDNS snooping.
  - In the **Query Interval(10-120)** field, specify the mDNS query interval in minutes that you can set. This interval is used by WLC to send periodic mDNS query messages to services which do not send service advertisements automatically after they are started. The default value is 15 minutes.

- **Master Services**—Click **Add Row** and then configure the following fields. To add a new service, enter or choose the service name, enter the service string, and then choose the service status.
  - From the **Master Service Name** drop-down list, choose the supported services that can be queried. The following services are available:
    - AirTunes
    - AirPrint
    - AppleTV
    - HP Photosmart Printer1
    - HP Photosmart Printer2
    - Apple File Sharing Protocol (AFP)
    - Scanner
    - Printer
    - FTP
    - iTunes Music Sharing
    - iTunes Home Sharing
    - iTunes Wireless Device Syncing
    - Apple Remote Desktop
    - Apple CD/DVD Sharing
    - Time Capsule Backup
  - In the **Service String** text box, specify the unique string associated to an mDNS service. For example, `_airplay._tcp.local.` is the service string associated to AppleTV.
  - From the **Query Status** drop-down list, choose **Enabled** or **Disabled** to specify an mDNS query for a service. Periodic mDNS query messages will be sent by WLC at configured Query Interval for services only when the query status is enabled; otherwise, service should automatically advertised for other services where the query status is disabled (for example AppleTV).

**Step 4** On the Profiles tab, configure the following parameters:

- **Profiles**—Click **Add Profile** and then configure the following fields:
  - In the **Profile Name** text box, enter the name of the mDNS profile. You can create a maximum of 16 profiles.
  - Select the services (using the check boxes) that you want to map to the mDNS profile.
  - Click **OK**.

**Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

## Creating AVC Profiles Templates

Application Visibility and Control (AVC) uses the Network Based Application Recognition (NBAR) deep packet inspection technology to classify applications based on the protocol they use. Using AVC, the controller can detect more than 1400 Layer 4 to Layer 7 protocols. AVC enables you to perform real-time analysis and create policies to reduce network congestion, costly network link usage, and infrastructure upgrades.



AVC is supported only on the following controllers:

- Cisco 2500 and 5500 Series Controllers.
- WiSM 2 Controllers
- Cisco Flex 7500 and Cisco 8500 Series Controllers.

To configure the AVC profile template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Features & Technologies > Controller > Application Visibility And Control > AVC Profiles**.
- Step 2** If you want to add a new template, hover the mouse on **AVC Profiles** and select **New** or click **AVC Profiles**. To modify an existing template, click the template name.
- Step 3** In the **AVC Profile Name** text box, enter the AVC Profile Name.



---

**Note** You can configure only one AVC profile per WLAN and each AVC profile can have up to 32 rules. Each rule states a Mark or Drop action for an application. This allows you to configure up to 32 application actions per WLAN. You can configure up to 16 AVC profiles on a controller and associate an AVC profile with multiple WLANs.

---

- Step 4** Under the AVC Rule List, click **Add Row** to create AVC rules.
- In the **Application Name** field, enter the name of the application.
  - In the **Application Group Name** field, enter the name of the application group to which the application belongs.
  - From the **Action** drop-down list, choose one of the following:
    - Drop—Drops the upstream and downstream packets corresponding to the chosen application.
    - Mark—Marks the upstream and downstream packets corresponding to the chosen application with the DSCP value that you specify in the Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) drop-down list. The DSCP value helps you provide differentiated services based on the QoS levels.
    - Rate Limit—If you select Rate Limit as an action, you can specify Average Rate Limit per client and Burst data rate limit. The number of rate limit applications is limited to 3.  
The default action is to permit all applications.
  - If you select **Mark** as an action, then choose QoS levels from the **DSCP** drop-down list. DSCP is a Packet header code that is used to define quality of service across the Internet. The DSCP values are mapped to the following QoS levels:
    - Platinum (Voice)—Assures a high QoS for Voice over Wireless.
    - Gold (Video)—Supports the high-quality video applications.
    - Silver (Best Effort)—Supports the normal bandwidth for clients.
    - Bronze (Background)—Provides lowest bandwidth for guest services.
    - Custom—Specify the DSCP value. The range is from 0 to 63.
  - In the **DSCP Value** field, enter the value which can be entered only when **Custom** is chosen from the **DSCP** drop-down list.
  - If you select **Rate Limit** as an action, you can specify the value in **Avg. Rate Limit (in Kbps)**, which is the average bandwidth limit of that application.

- If you select **Rate Limit** as an action, you can specify **Burst Rate Limit (in Kbps)**, which is the peak limit of that application

**Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Adding Controller Templates](#)
- [Deleting Controller Templates](#)
- [Applying Controller Templates](#)

## Creating NetFlow Templates

NetFlow is a protocol that provides valuable information about network users and applications, peak usage times, and traffic routing. This protocol collects IP traffic information from network devices to monitor traffic. The NetFlow architecture consists of the following components:

- **Collector**—An entity that collects all the IP traffic information from various network elements.
- **Exporter**—A network entity that exports the template with the IP traffic information. The controller acts as an exporter.

#### Related Topics

- [Creating NetFlow Monitor Template](#)
- [Creating NetFlow Exporter Template](#)

## Creating NetFlow Monitor Template

To create NetFlow Monitor template:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Netflow > Monitor**.
- Step 2** Hover your mouse cursor over the tool tip next to the template type and click **New** to create.
- Step 3** Complete the required fields, then and click **Save as New Template**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Creating NetFlow Templates](#)

## Creating NetFlow Exporter Template

You can configure only one NetFlow Exporter per controller. To create NetFlow exporter template:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Controller > Netflow > Monitor**.
- Step 2** Hover your mouse cursor over the tool tip next to the template type and click **New** to create.

**Step 3** Complete the required fields, then and click **Save as New Template**.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Creating NetFlow Templates](#)

## Creating AP Configuration Templates

This menu provides access to the access point templates summary details. Use the selector group box to access and configure the respective templates details.

- [Configuring a New Lightweight Access Point Template](#)
- [Creating Autonomous Access Point Templates](#)

## Configuring a New Lightweight Access Point Template

To configure a new Lightweight Access Point template, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Lightweight Access Points**.
- Step 2** Choose **Add Template** from the Select a command drop-down list and click **Go**.
- Step 3** Enter a template name in the text box.
- Step 4** Enter a template description in the text box.
- Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**.

The Lightweight AP Template Detail page contains the following tabs:

- AP Parameters
  - Mesh
  - 802.11a/n/ac
  - 802.11a SubBand
  - 802.11b/g/n
  - CDP
  - FlexConnect
- 

## Selecting Access Points for Template Deployment

You can deploy the template using the AP Selection or Schedule tabs.

To deploy access point template:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Lightweight Access Points**.
- Step 2** Click the applicable Template Name link in the Lightweight Access Points page.

- Step 3** Click the AP Selection tab and select one or more access points by selecting their respective check boxes. You can use the Filter feature to search for specific access points.
- Step 4** Click **Deploy** to save and deploy the template to the relevant access points.
- Step 5** Click **Apply** to save and apply the AP/Radio parameters to the selected access points from the search.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring a New Lightweight Access Point Template](#)

## Scheduling Template Deployment

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Lightweight Access Points**.
- Step 2** Click the applicable Template Name link in the Lightweight Access Points page.
- Step 3** Click the Schedule tab.

This allows you to save the current template, apply the current template immediately, or schedule the current template to start the provisioning at the applicable time.

- Start Time—Allows you to configure and start the template deployment at a scheduled time.
    - Now—Deploys the template right away.
    - Date—Enter a date in the text box or use the calendar icon to select a start date.
  - Recurrence—Select from none, hourly, daily, or weekly to determine how often this scheduling occurs.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring a New Lightweight Access Point Template](#)

## Viewing the Status of the Template Deployment

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Lightweight Access Points**.
- Step 2** Click the applicable Template Name link in the Lightweight Access Points page.
- Step 3** Click the Deploy Status tab and displays all recently applied reports including the apply status and the date and time the apply was initiated. Click the link that is available on the number of access points (next to the Template Deployed to APs field) to view the deployment status information.
- Graph shows the Success or Partial Success status. Click the graph to view status information.
  - The Deploy Status section shows the following information:
    - AP Name
    - Status—Indicates success, partial failure, failure, or not initiated. For failed or partially failed provisioning, click **Details** to view the failure details (including what failed and why it failed).
    - Ethernet MAC—Indicates the Ethernet MAC address for the applicable access point.
    - Controller IP—Indicates the controller IP address for the applicable access point.
    - AP IP

- Controller Name
- AP Model
- Campus
- Building
- Floor
- Outdoor Area
- FlexConnect Group

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring a New Lightweight Access Point Template](#)

## Editing a Lightweight Access Point Template

To edit an existing Lightweight Access Point Template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Lightweight Access Points**.
  - Step 2** Click the applicable template in the Template Name column.
  - Step 3** Make any necessary changes to the current lightweight access point template or schedule.
  - Step 4** Click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring a New Lightweight Access Point Template](#)

## Creating Autonomous Access Point Templates

The Configuration > Templates > Autonomous Access Point templates page allows you to configure CLI templates for autonomous access points.

- [Configuring a New Autonomous Access Point Template, page 20-129](#)
- [Creating Wireless Configuration Templates, page 20-21](#)
- [Editing Current Autonomous AP Migration Templates, page 20-133](#)

## Configuring a New Autonomous Access Point Template

To configure a new Autonomous Access Point template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Autonomous Access Points**.
  - Step 2** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Template**.
  - Step 3** Click **Go**.
  - Step 4** Enter a Template Name.
  - Step 5** Enter the applicable CLI commands.

Do not include any show commands in the CLI commands text box. The show commands are not supported.

**Step 6** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating Autonomous Access Point Templates](#)

## Applying an AP Configuration Template to an Autonomous Access Point

To apply an AP Configuration template to an autonomous access point, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Autonomous Access Points**.

**Step 2** Click the template name link to select a template and apply it to the an autonomous access point. The New Autonomous AP Configuration template page appears.

**Step 3** Enter a **Template Name**.

**Step 4** Enter the applicable CLI commands.

**Step 5** Click **Save**.

**Step 6** Click **Apply to Autonomous Access Points**. The Apply to Autonomous Access Points page appears.

**Step 7** Select the desired autonomous access point.

**Step 8** Click **OK**.

Select the **Ignore errors on Apply template to Controllers** check box to ignore errors and apply all commands in the template to the Autonomous AP. If this check box is not selected, any errors encountered while applying a command in the template to a Autonomous AP causes the rest of the commands to be not applied.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating Autonomous Access Point Templates](#)

## Viewing Template Results

To view the results when you apply an Autonomous AP Configuration template to an access point, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Autonomous AP**.

**Step 2** Click the template name link to select a template and apply it to the an autonomous access point. The Autonomous AP Configuration template page appears.

**Step 3** Enter a **Template Name**.

**Step 4** Enter the applicable CLI commands.

**Step 5** Click **Save**.

**Step 6** Click **Apply to Autonomous Access Points**. The Apply to Autonomous Access Points page appears.

**Step 7** Select the desired autonomous access point.

**Step 8** Click **OK**. The Template Results page appears. The following parameters appear:

- IP Address —IP address of the access point.
  - AP Name—The name of the access point.
  - Apply Status—Indicates success, failure, initiated or not initiated.
  - Operation Status—Displays the operational status: Success or Failure.
  - Reason—Indicates the reasons for failure.
  - Session Output
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Creating Autonomous Access Point Templates](#)

## Configuring Switch Location Configuration Templates

You can configure the location template for a switch using the Switch Location Configuration template.

To configure a location template for a switch, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Switch Location**.

The Switch Location Configuration template page appears.

**Step 2** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Template**, and click **Go**.

**Step 3** Complete the required fields in the New Template page.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Switch Location Configuration Template](#)

## Creating Autonomous AP Migration Templates

When you migrate an already-managed autonomous access point to lightweight, its location and antenna information is migrated as well. You do not need to reenter the information. Prime Infrastructure automatically removes the autonomous access point after migration.

The Migration Analysis option does not run during discovery by default. If you prefer to run the migration analysis during discovery, choose **Administration > Settings > CLI Session** to enable this option.

Prime Infrastructure also supports the migration of autonomous access point to CAPWAP access point.

Choose **Configuration > Templates > Autonomous AP Migration** to access this page.

#### Related Topics

- [Migrating an Autonomous Access Point to a Lightweight Access Point](#)
- [Viewing the Current Status of Cisco IOS Access Points](#)

## Migrating an Autonomous Access Point to a Lightweight Access Point

To make a transition from an Autonomous solution to a Unified architecture, autonomous access points must be converted to lightweight access points. Choose **Configuration > Autonomous AP Migration**.

The Autonomous AP Migration Templates list page displays the following information:

- Name—The template name.
- Description—The description of template.
- AP Count—The number of autonomous access points selected for migration.
- Schedule Run—The time at which the task is scheduled to run.
- Status—Indicates one of the following task statuses:
  - Not initiated—The template is yet to start the migration and starts at the scheduled time.
  - Disabled—The template is disabled and does not run at the scheduled time. This is the default state for a template when it is created without selecting any autonomous access points.
  - Expired—The template did not run at the scheduled time (this might be due to Prime Infrastructure server being down).
  - Enabled—The template is yet to start the migration and starts at the scheduled time.
  - In progress—The template is currently converting the selected autonomous access points to CAPWAP.
  - Success—The template has completed the migration of autonomous access point to CAPWAP successfully.
  - Failure—The template failed to migrate all the selected autonomous access point to CAPWAP. You can check the detailed status about the failures by using the View Migration Status page.
  - Partial Success—The template failed to migrate a subset of the selected autonomous access point to CAPWAP. You can check the detailed status about the failures by using the View Migration Status page.

Once an access point is converted to lightweight, the previous status or configuration of the access point is not retained.

From the Select a command drop-down list, the following functions can be performed:

- Add Template—Allows you to provide necessary information for migration.
- Delete Templates—Allows you to delete a current template.
- View Migration Report—Allows you to view information such as AP address, migration status (in progress or fail), timestamp, and a link to detailed logs.
- View Current Status—Allows you to view the progress of the current migration (updated every three seconds).
- View Migration Analysis Summary—Lists the pass or fail status as required for an access point conversion. Only those access points with all criteria as pass are eligible for conversion.

### Related Topics

- [Autonomous AP Migration Templates > Add Template](#)
- [Editing Current Autonomous AP Migration Templates](#)



## Editing Current Autonomous AP Migration Templates

To edit a current migration template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Autonomous AP Migration**.
- Step 2** Click the migration template in the Name column.
- Step 3** Edit the necessary parameters:
- General
    - Name—Indicates the user-defined name of the migration template.
    - Description—Enter a brief description to help you identify the migration template.
  - Upgrade Options
    - DHCP Support—Click to enable Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol support. This ensures that after the conversion every access point gets an IP from the DHCP server.
    - Retain AP HostName—Click to enable retention of the same hostname for this access point.  
The hostname is retained in the CAPWAP, only when you are migrating the AP to CAPWAP for the first time. It might not be retained if you are upgrading an AP for several times. The CAPWAP access points hostname is set to default if autonomous access points hostname has more than 32 characters.  
  
If you upgrade the access points to LWAPP from 12.3(11)JA, 12.3(11)JA1, 12.3(11)JA2, 12.3(11)JA3 autonomous images, the converted access points might not retain their Static IP Address, Netmask, Hostname and Default Gateway.
    - Migrate over WANLink—If you enable this option, the *env\_vars* file stores the remote TFTP server location. This information is copied to the AP. If this option is not selected, then Prime Infrastructure internal TFTP server is used to copy the *env\_vars* file to AP.
    - DNS Address—Enter the DNS address.
    - Domain Name—Enter the domain name.
  - Controller Details

Ensures that the access point authorization information (SSC) can be configured on this controller and the converted access points can join.

    - Controller IP
    - AP Manager IP
    - User Name
    - Password
  - TFTP Details
    - TFTP Server IP
    - File Path
    - File Name
  - Schedule Details
    - Apply Template
    - Notification (Optional)

**Step 4** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating Autonomous AP Migration Templates](#)

## Viewing the Migration Analysis Summary

To view the Migration Analysis Summary, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Autonomous AP Migration**.

**Step 2** Choose **View Migration Analysis Summary** from the Select a command drop-down list, and click **Go**. The Migration Analysis Summary page appears.

The autonomous access points are eligible for migration only if all the criteria have a pass status. A red X designates ineligibility, and a green checkmark designates eligibility. These columns represent the following:

- **Privilege 15 Criteria**—The Telnet credential provided as part of the autonomous access point discovery must be privilege 15.
  - **Software Version Criteria**—Conversion is supported only in Cisco IOS Release 12.3(7)JA excluding 12.3(11)JA, 12.3(11)JA1, 12.3(11)JA2, and 12.3(11)JA3.
  - **Role Criteria**—A wired connection between the access point and controller is required to send the association request; therefore, the following autonomous access point roles are required:
    - root
    - root access point
    - root fallback repeater
    - root fallback shutdown
    - root access point only
  - **Radio Criteria**—In dual-radio access points, the conversion can happen even if only one radio is of the supported type.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Creating Autonomous AP Migration Templates](#)

## Adding/Modifying a Migration Template

If you want to add a migration template:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Autonomous AP Migration**.

**Step 2** Choose **Add Template** from the Select a command drop-down list.

**Step 3** To modify an existing template, click the template name from the summary list.

**Step 4** Add or modify the required migration parameters.

**Step 5** Click **Save**.

Once a template is added in Prime Infrastructure, the following additional buttons appear:

- **Select APs**—Choosing this option provides a list of autonomous access points in Prime Infrastructure from which to choose the access points for conversion. Only those access points with migration eligibility as *pass* can be chosen for conversion.
  - **Select File**—To provide CSV information for access points intended for conversion.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Autonomous AP Migration Templates](#)

## Copying a Migration Template

To copy a migration template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Autonomous AP Migration**.
  - Step 2** Select the check box of the template you want to copy, and then choose **Copy Template** from the Select a command drop-down list.
  - Step 3** Click **Go**.
  - Step 4** Enter the name for the new template to which you want to copy the current template.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Autonomous AP Migration Templates](#)

## Deleting Migration Templates

To delete migration templates, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Autonomous AP Migration**.
  - Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the template(s) you want to delete, and then choose **Delete Templates** from the Select a command drop-down list.
  - Step 3** Click **Go**.
  - Step 4** Click **OK** to confirm the deletion or **Cancel** to close this page without deleting the template.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Autonomous AP Migration Templates](#)

## Viewing the Current Status of Cisco IOS Access Points

To view the current status of Cisco IOS Access point:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Autonomous AP Migration**.

- Step 2** Select **View Current Status** from the Select a command drop-down list in the Autonomous AP Migration Templates page to view the status of Cisco IOS access point migration.

The following information is displayed:

- IP Address—IP address of the access point.
- Status—Current status of the migration.
- Progress—Summary of the migration progress.

#### Related Topics

- [Autonomous AP Migration Templates](#)

## Disabling Access Points that are Ineligible

If an autonomous access point is labeled as ineligible for conversion, you can disable it.

#### Related Topics

- [Autonomous AP Migration Templates](#)

# Deploying Templates

After you create a configuration template, and click **Deploy**, you can specify various deployment options as shown in [Table 20-3](#).

**Table 20-3** *Template Deployment Options*

Option	Description
Device Selection	Displays the list of devices to which you want to apply the template.
Value Assignment	<p>Allows you to specify a variable other than what was previously defined in the configuration template. Click a name, and the previously defined variables are displayed. To change any of the values, click the variable that you want to change, enter a new value, and click <b>Apply</b>.</p> <p>You can also update the variables for all selected devices. Click <b>All Selected Devices</b> and update variables to apply the changes on all selected devices at the same time. If you want to update variables for a particular device in the list that need not be applicable to other devices, then choose the device and update its variables. All of the other devices will continue to use the variables that were previously defined except for the device for which variables are updated.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The changes that you make apply only to the specific configuration that you are deploying. To change the configuration template for all future deployments, choose <b>Configuration &gt; Templates &gt; Features &amp; Technologies</b> and change the template.</p>
Schedule	<p>Allows you to create a meaningful deployment job name, then specify whether to run the job now or in the future.</p> <p>You can also schedule the job to run periodically on hourly, daily, weekly, monthly or yearly basis.</p>

**Table 20-3**      **Template Deployment Options**

<b>Option</b>	<b>Description</b>
Job Option	<p>The following job options are available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Failure Policy– <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Ignore failure and continue—This is the default option. The devices are randomly picked up for template deployment. If the job fails on a device, the job skips the device and continues with the remaining devices. The Job results show success/failure information for all the selected devices.</li> <li>– Stop on failure—If the job fails to execute on a device, the job is stopped. The job results are updated only for the devices on which the job was executed successfully and for other devices which didn't undergo template deployment, "Not Attempted" message is shown. The order of devices chosen for deployment will be same as the device order in Value assignment pane.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Copy Running Config to Startup—If the template deployment job succeeds, the running configuration of the device is copied to startup configuration.</li> <li>• Archive Config after deploy—Creates a new config archive job and archives the configuration of devices after successfully deploying the template.</li> </ul>
Summary	Summarizes your deployment option selections.





## Configuring Wireless Devices

---

This section describes how to configure wireless devices in Prime Infrastructure and contains the following sections:

- [Configuring Controllers](#)
- [Configuring Controller WLANs](#)
- [Configuring FlexConnect on APs](#)
- [Configuring Controller Security Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Third-Party Controllers and Access Points](#)
- [Configuring Switches](#)
- [Enabling Traps and Syslogs on Switches for Wired Client Discovery](#)
- [Configuring Unified Access Points](#)
- [Configuring Controller Redundancy](#)
- [Configuring Cisco Adaptive wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Managing MSE High Availability Using Prime Infrastructure](#)

### Configuring Controllers

The following sections describe how to configure your controllers using Prime Infrastructure:

- [Viewing All Controllers](#)
- [Wireless Controller Summary Information](#)
- [Controller-Specific Commands](#)
- [Auditing Controllers](#)
- [Updating Controller Credentials](#)
- [Updating Controller Credentials in Bulk](#)
- [Rebooting Controllers](#)
- [Downloading Software to Controllers](#)
- [Configuring IPAddr Upload Configuration/Logs from Controllers](#)
- [Downloading IDS Signatures to Controllers](#)
- [Downloading Customized WebAuthentication Bundles to Controllers](#)

- [Downloading Vendor Device Certificates to Controllers](#)
- [Downloading Vendor CA Certificates to Controllers](#)
- [Saving Controller Configurations to Flash](#)
- [Refreshing Configurations from Controllers](#)
- [Managing Controller Templates](#)
- [Replacing Old Controller Models with New Models](#)
- [Modifying Controller Properties](#)
- [Configuring Controller System Parameters](#)
- [Uploading Configuration and Logs from Controllers](#)
- [Downloading Configurations to Controllers](#)

## Viewing All Controllers

You can view a summary of all controllers in the Prime Infrastructure database.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** To use the command buttons at the top of the page, select the check box next to one or more controllers.
- Step 3** To view specific information about a controller, click on a Device Name.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Wireless Controller Summary Information](#)
- [Controller-Specific Commands](#)

## Wireless Controller Summary Information

When you choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**, then select a check box next to one or more controllers, summary information appears:

**Table 21-1** *Wireless Controller Summary Information*

Field	Description
Device Name	Name of the controller. Click on a device name to view device details, configure the controller, apply templates, view and schedule configuration archives, and view and update the controller software image.
Reachability	Reachability status is updated based on the last execution information of the Device Status background task.
IP Address/DNS	Local network IP address of the controller management interface. Click the icon under the IP address to launch the controller web user interface in a new browser window.



**Table 21-1** Wireless Controller Summary Information

Field	Description
Device Type	Based on the series, device types are grouped. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• WLC2100—21xx Series Wireless LAN Controllers</li> <li>• 2500—25xx Series Wireless LAN Controllers</li> <li>• 4400—44xx Series Wireless LAN Controllers</li> <li>• 5500—55xx Series Wireless LAN Controllers</li> <li>• 7500—75xx Series Wireless LAN Controllers</li> <li>• WiSM—WiSM (slot number, port number)</li> <li>• WiSM2—WiSM2 (slot number, port number)</li> </ul>
AP Discovery Status	Indicates whether the AP discovery has completed.
Software Version	The operating system release.version.dot.maintenance number of the code currently running on the controller.
Mobility Group Name	Name of the mobility or WPS group.

**Related Topics**

- [Controller-Specific Commands](#)

## Controller-Specific Commands

When you choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller** and select the checkbox next to one or more devices, the following buttons appear at the top of the page:

- Delete—Allows you to delete a controller.
- Edit—Allows you to edit general parameters, SNMP parameters, Telnet/SSH parameters, HTTP parameters, and IPSec parameters.
- Sync—
- Groups & Sites—Allows you to add and remove controllers from location groups and sites.
- Reboot—Enables you to confirm the restart of your controller after saving configuration changes. You can select these reboot options:
  - Save Config to Flash—Data is saved to the controller in non-volatile RAM (NVRAM) and is preserved in the event of a power cycle. If the controller is rebooted, all applied changes are lost unless the configuration has been saved.
  - Reboot APs
  - Swap AP Image
- Download—Allows you to select the following options to download software to controllers.
  - Download Software—Choose from TFTP, FTP, SFTP to download software to the selected controller or all controllers in the selected groups after you have a configuration group established.
  - Download IDS Signatures

- Download Customized Web Auth
- Download Vendor Device Certificate
- Download Vendor CA Certificate
- Bulk Update Controllers
- Configure
  - Save Config to Flash
  - Discover Templates from Controller
  - Templates Applied to Controller
  - Audit Now
  - Update Credentials

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing All Controllers](#)
- [Wireless Controller Summary Information](#)
- [Auditing Controllers](#)
- [Updating Controller Credentials in Bulk](#)
- [Rebooting Controllers](#)
- [Downloading Software to Controllers](#)

## Auditing Controllers

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable controller(s).
- Step 3** Click **Configure > Audit Now**.
- Step 4** Click **OK** in the pop-up dialog box to remove the template associations from configuration objects in the database as well as template associations for this controller from associated configuration groups (This is a template-based audit only).
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Controller Audit Reports](#)
- [Viewing Templates Applied to Controllers](#)

## Controller Audit Reports

After you perform an audit on a controller, the Audit Report displays the following information:

- Device Name
- Time of Audit
- Audit Status

- Applied and Config Group Template Discrepancies information including the following:
  - Template type (template name)
  - Template application method
  - Audit status (For example, mismatch, identical)
  - Template attribute
  - Value in Prime Infrastructure
  - Value in Controller
- Other Prime Infrastructure Discrepancies including the following:
  - Configuration type (name)
  - Audit Status (For example, mismatch, identical)
  - Attribute
  - Value in Prime Infrastructure
  - Value in Controller
  - Total enforcements for configuration groups with background audit enabled. If discrepancies are found during the audit in regards to the configuration groups enabled for background audit, and if the enforcement is enabled, this section lists the enforcements made during the controller audit. If the total enforcement count is greater than zero, this number appears as a link. Click the link to view a list of the enforcements made from Prime Infrastructure.
- Failed Enforcements for Configuration Groups with background audit enabled—If the failed enforcement count is greater than zero, this number appears as a link. Click the link to view a list of failure details (including the reason for the failure) returned by the device.
- Restore Prime Infrastructure Values to Controller or Refresh Configuration from Controller—If there are configuration differences found as a result of the audit, you can either click **Restore Prime Infrastructure Values to controller** or **Refresh Config from controller** to bring Prime Infrastructure configuration in sync with the controller.
  - Choose **Restore Prime Infrastructure Values to Controller** to push the discrepancies to the device.
  - Choose **Refresh config from controller** to pick up the device for this configuration from the device. Templates are not refreshed as a result of clicking Refresh Config from Controller.

**Related Topic**

- [Auditing Controllers](#)

## Updating Controller Credentials

To update SNMP and Telnet credentials, you must do so on each controller. You cannot update SNMP/Telnet credential details for multiple controllers at the same time.

SNMP write access parameters are needed for modifying controller configuration. With read-only access parameters, configuration can be displayed only and not modified.

To update the SNMP/Telnet credentials, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable controller(s).

- Step 3** Click **Configure > Update Credentials**.
- Step 4** Complete the required fields, then click **OK**.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Updating Controller Credentials in Bulk](#)

## Updating Controller Credentials in Bulk

You can update multiple controllers credentials by importing a CSV file.

To update controller(s) information in bulk, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, select **Wireless Controllers**.
- Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable controller(s).
- Step 3** Click **Download > Bulk Update Controllers**.
- Step 4** Enter the CSV filename in the Select CSV File text box or click **Browse** to locate the desired file.
- Step 5** Click **Update and Sync**.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Updating Controller Credentials](#)
- [Rebooting Controllers](#)
- [Replacing Old Controller Models with New Models](#)
- [Modifying Controller Properties](#)

## Rebooting Controllers

You should save the current controller configuration prior to rebooting. To reboot a controller, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, select **Wireless Controllers**, then click **Reboot > Reboot Controllers**.
- Step 2** Select the required Reboot Controller option:
- **Save Config to Flash**—Data is saved to the controller in non-volatile RAM (NVRAM) and is preserved in the event of a power cycle. If the controller is rebooted, all applied changes are lost unless the configuration has been saved.
  - **Reboot APs**—Select the check box to enable a reboot of the access point after making any other updates.
  - **Swap AP Image**—Indicates whether or not to reboot controllers and APs by swapping AP images. This could be either Yes or No.

**Step 3** Click **OK**.

---

**Related Topic**

- [Updating Controller Credentials](#)
- [Replacing Old Controller Models with New Models](#)
- [Modifying Controller Properties](#)

## Downloading Software to Controllers

To download software to a controller, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controllers**.
- Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable controller(s).
- Step 3** Click **Download** and select one of the following options:
- **Download Software TFTP**
  - **Download Software FTP**
  - **Download Software SFTP**
- Step 4** Complete the required fields.
- Step 5** Select the download type. The pre-download option is displayed only when all selected controllers are using Release 7.0.x.x or later.
- **Now**—Executes the download software operation immediately. If you select this option, proceed with Step 7.
  - **Scheduled**—Specify the scheduled download options.
    - **Schedule download to controller**—Select this check box to schedule download software to controller.
    - **Pre-download software to APs**—Select this check box to schedule the pre-download software to APs. The APs download the image and then reboot when the controller reboots. To see Image Predownload status per AP, enable the task in the **Administration > Dashboards > Job Dashboard > System Jobs > Wireless Poller > AP Image Pre-Download Status**, and run an AP Image Predownload report from the Report Launch Pad.
    - **FlexConnect AP Upgrade**—Select this option to enable one access point of each model in the local network to download the image. The remaining access points will then download the image from the master access point using the pre-image download feature over the local network, which reduces the WAN latency.
- Step 6** Select the Schedule options.
- Schedule enough time (at least 30 minutes) between Download and Reboot so that all APs can complete the software pre-download. If any AP is in pre-download progress state at the time of the scheduled reboot, the controller will not reboot. You must wait for the pre-download to finish for all the APs, and then reboot the controller manually.
- Step 7** Enter the FTP credentials including username, password, and port.

You can use special characters such as @, #, ^, \*, ~, \_, -, +, =, {, }, [, ], :, ., and / in the password. You cannot use special characters such as \$, ', \, %, &, (, ), ;, ", <, >, , , ? , and | as part of the FTP password. The special character "!" (exclamation mark) works when the password policy is disabled.

**Step 8** Select whether the file is located on the **Local machine** or an **FTP Server**. If you select FTP Server, the software files are uploaded to the FTP directory specified during the installation.

**Step 9** Click **Download**.

If the transfer times out, choose the FTP server option in the **File is located on** field; the server filename is populated and Prime Infrastructure retries the operation.

## Configuring *IPaddr* Upload Configuration/Logs from Controllers

You can upload a controller system configuration to the specified TFTP or TFTP server as a file. Both File FTP and TFTP are supported for uploading and downloading files to and from Prime Infrastructure. To upload files from a controller, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.

**Step 2** Click a Device Name, then click the **Configuration** tab.

**Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Commands**.

**Step 4** Select the **FTP** or **TFTP** radio button, then select **Upload File from Controller** and click **Go**.

**Step 5** Complete the required fields.

Prime Infrastructure uses an integral TFTP and FTP server. This means that third-party TFTP and FTP servers cannot run on the same workstation as Prime Infrastructure because Prime Infrastructure and the third-party servers use the same communication port.

**Step 6** Click **OK**. The selected file is uploaded to your TFTP or FTP server and named what you entered in the File Name text box.

## Downloading IDS Signatures to Controllers

Prime Infrastructure can download Intrusion Detection System (IDS) signature files to a controller. If you specify to download the IDS signature file from a local machine, Prime Infrastructure initiates a two-step operation:

1. The local file is copied from the administrator workstation to Prime Infrastructure's built-in TFTP server.
2. The controller retrieves that file.

If the IDS signature file is already in the Prime Infrastructure server's TFTP directory, the downloaded web page automatically populates the filename.

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.

**Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable controller(s).

**Step 3** Click **Download > Download IDS Signatures**.

**Step 4** Complete the required fields.

**Step 5** Click **Download**.

If the transfer times out, choose the FTP server option in the **File is located on** field; the server filename is populated and Prime Infrastructure retries the operation.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing All Controllers](#)
- [Rebooting Controllers](#)
- [Downloading Software to Controllers](#)
- [Replacing Old Controller Models with New Models](#)
- [Modifying Controller Properties](#)

## Downloading Customized WebAuthentication Bundles to Controllers

You can compress the page and image files used for displaying a web authentication login page, known as webauth bundles, and download the file to a controller.

Controllers accept a .tar or .zip file of up to 1 MB in size. The 1 MB limit includes the total size of uncompressed files in the bundle.

To download customized web authentication bundles to a controller, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.

**Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable controller(s).

**Step 3** Click **Download > Download Customized WebAuth**.

**Step 4** To download an example login.tar bundle file, click on the preview image displayed, then edit the login.html file and save it as a .tar or .zip file. The file contains the pages and image files required for the web authentication display.

**Step 5** Download the .tar or .zip file to the controller.

**Step 6** Select where the file is located.

If you select local machine, you can upload either a .zip or .tar file type. Prime Infrastructure converts .zip files to .tar files. If you choose a TFTP server download, you can specify a .tar files only.

**Step 7** Complete the required fields, then click **Download**.

If the transfer times out, choose the FTP server option in the **File is located on** field; the server filename is populated and Prime Infrastructure retries the operation.

After Prime Infrastructure completes the download, you are directed to a new page and are able to authenticate.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing All Controllers](#)
- [Downloading Software to Controllers](#)

- [Replacing Old Controller Models with New Models](#)
- [Modifying Controller Properties](#)

## Downloading Vendor Device Certificates to Controllers

Each wireless device (controller, access point, and client) has its own device certificate. If you want to use your own vendor-specific device certificate, you must download it to the controller.

To download a vendor device certificate to a controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable controller(s).
  - Step 3** Click **Download > Download Vendor Device Certificate**.
  - Step 4** Complete the required fields, then click **Download**.
- 

### Related Topic

- [Downloading Vendor CA Certificates to Controllers](#)
- [Downloading Software to Controllers](#)
- [Replacing Old Controller Models with New Models](#)
- [Modifying Controller Properties](#)

## Downloading Vendor CA Certificates to Controllers

Controllers and access points have a certificate authority (CA) certificate that is used to sign and validate device certificates. The controller is shipped with a Cisco-installed CA certificate. This certificate might be used by EAP-TLS and EAP-FAST (when not using PACs) to authenticate wireless clients during local EAP authentication. However, if you want to use your own vendor-specific CA certificate, you must download it to the controller.

To download a vendor CA certificate to the controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable controller(s).
  - Step 3** Click **Download > Download Vendor Device Certificate**.
  - Step 4** Complete the required fields, then click **Download**.
- 

### Related Topic

- [Downloading Vendor Device Certificates to Controllers](#)
- [Viewing All Controllers](#)
- [Rebooting Controllers](#)
- [Downloading Software to Controllers](#)



- [Replacing Old Controller Models with New Models](#)
- [Modifying Controller Properties](#)

## Saving Controller Configurations to Flash

To save the configuration to flash memory, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable controller(s).
  - Step 3** Click **Configure > Save Config to Flash**.
- 

### Related Topic

- [Refreshing Configurations from Controllers](#)
- [Rebooting Controllers](#)
- [Downloading Software to Controllers](#)
- [Replacing Old Controller Models with New Models](#)
- [Modifying Controller Properties](#)

## Refreshing Configurations from Controllers

The **Refresh Config from Controller** command will not work when there is a custom rogue AP rule specified on the controller.

To refresh the configuration from the controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable controller(s).
  - Step 3** Click **Configure > Refresh Config from Controller**.
  - Step 4** At the Configuration Change prompt, select the **Retain** or **Delete** radio button.
- 

### Related Topic

- [Saving Controller Configurations to Flash](#)
- [Rebooting Controllers](#)
- [Downloading Software to Controllers](#)
- [Replacing Old Controller Models with New Models](#)
- [Modifying Controller Properties](#)

## Managing Controller Templates

You can specify for which Prime Infrastructure configurations you want to have associated templates.

The templates that are discovered do not retrieve management or local user passwords.

The following rules apply for template discovery:

- Template Discovery discovers templates that are not found in Prime Infrastructure.
- Existing templates are not discovered.
- Template Discovery does not retrieve dynamic interface configurations for a controller. You must create a new template to apply the dynamic interface configurations on a controller.

### Related Topic

- [Discovering Controller Templates](#)
- [Rebooting Controllers](#)
- [Downloading Software to Controllers](#)
- [Replacing Old Controller Models with New Models](#)
- [Modifying Controller Properties](#)

## Discovering Controller Templates

To discover current templates, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.

**Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable controller(s).

**Step 3** Click **Configure > Discover Templates from Controller**.

The Discover Templates page displays the number of discovered templates, each template type and each template name.

**Step 4** Select the **Enabling this option will create association between discovered templates and the device listed above** check box so that discovered templates are associated to the configuration on the device and are shown as applied on that controller.

The template discovery refreshes the configuration from the controller prior to discovering templates.

**Step 5** Click **OK** in the warning dialog box to continue with the discovery.

For the TACACS+ Server templates, the configuration on the controller with same server IP address and port number but different server types are aggregated into one single template with the corresponding Server Types set on the Discovered Template. For the TACACS+ Server templates, the Admin Status on the discovered template reflects the value of Admin Status on the first configuration from the controller with same Server IP address and port number.

---

### Related Topic

- [Managing Controller Templates](#)

## Viewing Templates Applied to Controllers

You can view all templates currently applied to a specific controller. Prime Infrastructure displays templates applied in the partition only.

To view applied templates, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Select the check box(es) of the applicable controller(s).
- Step 3** Click **Configure > Templates Applied to a Controller**.

The page displays each applied template name, template type, the date the template was last saved, and the date the template was last applied.

- Step 4** Click the template name link to view the template details. See the [Managing Controller Templates](#) for more information.
- 

### Related Topic

- [Auditing Controllers](#)
- [Replacing Old Controller Models with New Models](#)

## Replacing Old Controller Models with New Models

When you want to replace an old controller model with a new one without changing the IP address, do the following:

1. Delete the old controller from Prime Infrastructure and wait for the confirmation that the device was deleted.
2. Replace the controller with the new model in the setup with same IP address.
3. Re-add the IP address to Prime Infrastructure.

### Related Topic

- [Modifying Controller Properties](#)

## Modifying Controller Properties

To change controller properties such as the device name, location, SNMP parameters, or Telnet/SSH parameters, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Select a wireless controller, then click **Edit**.
- Step 3** Modify the fields as desired, then click one of the following buttons:
- **Update**
  - **Update & Sync**
  - **Verify Credentials**

- **Cancel** to return to the previous or default settings.
- 

#### Related Topic

- [Configuring Controller System Parameters](#)

## Configuring Controller System Parameters

This section describes how to configure the controller system parameters and contains the following topics:

- [Modifying General System Properties for Controllers](#)
- [Related Topics](#)
- [Setting Controller Time and Date](#)

### Modifying General System Properties for Controllers

To view the general system parameters for a current controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click a Device Name, then click the **Configuration** tab.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > General - System**. The general system parameters appear.
  - Step 4** Make the required changes, then click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topic

- [Wireless Controllers > System > General - System Field Descriptions](#)

### Enabling AP Failover Priority

When a controller fails, the backup controller configured for the access point suddenly receives a number of Discovery and Join requests. If the controller becomes overloaded, it might reject some of the access points.

By assigning failover priority to an access point, you have some control over which access points are rejected. When the backup controller is overloaded, join requests of access points configured with a higher priority levels take precedence over lower-priority access points.

To configure failover priority settings for access points, you must first enable the AP Failover Priority feature.

To enable the AP Failover Priority feature, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click a Device Name, then click the **Configuration** tab.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **General - System**.

- Step 4** From the AP Failover Priority drop-down list, choose **Enabled**.
- 

### Configuring AP Failover Priority

To configure an access point failover priority, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select an AP Name.
- Step 2** From the AP Failover Priority drop-down list, choose the applicable priority (**Low, Medium, High, Critical**). The default priority is Low.
- 

### Configuring 802.3 Bridging

The controller supports 802.3 frames and applications that use them, such as those typically used for cash registers and cash register servers. However, to make these applications work with the controller, the 802.3 frames must be bridged on the controller.

Support for raw 802.3 frames allows the controller to bridge non-IP frames for applications not running over IP. Only this raw 802.3 frame format is currently supported.

To configure 802.3 bridging using Prime Infrastructure, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click a Device Name, then click the **Configuration** tab.
- Step 3** Choose **System > General - System** to access the General page.
- Step 4** From the 802.3 Bridging drop-down list, choose **Enable** to enable 802.3 bridging on your controller or **Disable** to disable this feature. The default value is Disable.
- Step 5** Click **Save** to confirm your changes.
- 

### 802.3x Flow Control

Flow control is a technique for ensuring that a transmitting entity, such as a modem, does not overwhelm a receiving entity with data. When the buffers on the receiving device are full, a message is sent to the sending device to suspend the transmission until the data in the buffers has been processed.

By default, flow control is disabled. You can only enable a Cisco switch to receive PAUSE frames but not to send them.

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click a Device Name, then click the **Configuration** tab.
- Step 3** Choose **System > General - System** to access the General page.
- Step 4** Click **Enable** in the 802.3x Flow Control field.
-

## Configuring Lightweight Access Point Protocol Transport Mode

Lightweight Access Point Protocol transport mode indicates the communications layer between controllers and access points. Cisco IOS-based lightweight access points do not support Layer 2 lightweight access point mode. These access points can only be run with Layer 3.

To convert a Cisco Unified Wireless Network Solution from Layer 3 to Layer 2 lightweight access point transport mode using Prime Infrastructure user interface, follow these steps. This procedure causes your access points to go offline until the controller reboots and the associated access points re associate to the controller.

- 
- Step 1** Make sure that all controllers and access points are on the same subnet.  
You must configure the controllers and associated access points to operate in Layer 2 mode before completing the conversion.
- Step 2** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 3** Click a Device Name, click the **Configuration** tab, then choose **System > General - System** to access the General page.
- a. Change lightweight access point transport mode to Layer2 and click **Save**.
  - b. If Prime Infrastructure displays the following message, click **OK**:  
Please reboot the system for the CAPWAP Mode change to take effect.
- Step 4** Select the controller, then click **Reboot > Reboot Controllers**.
- Step 5** Select the Save Config to Flash option.
- Step 6** After the controller reboots, follow these steps to verify that the CAPWAP transport mode is now Layer 2:
- a. Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - b. Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - c. Verify that the current CAPWAP transport mode is Layer2 from the **System > General - System** page.

You have completed the CAPWAP transport mode conversion from Layer 3 to Layer 2. The operating system software now controls all communications between controllers and access points on the same subnet.

---

## Aggressive Load Balancing

In routing, load balancing refers to the capability of a router to distribute traffic over all its network ports that are the same distance from the destination address. Good load-balancing algorithms use both line speed and reliability information. Load balancing increases the use of network segments, thus increasing effective network bandwidth.

Aggressive load balancing actively balances the load between the mobile clients and their associated access points.

## Link Aggregation

Link aggregation allows you to reduce the number of IP addresses needed to configure the ports on your controller by grouping all the physical ports and creating a link aggregation group (LAG). In a 4402 model, two ports are combined to form a LAG whereas in a 4404 model, all four ports are combined to form a LAG.

You cannot create more than one LAG on a controller.

If LAG is enabled on a controller, the following configuration changes occur:

- Any dynamic interfaces that you have created are deleted in order to prevent configuration inconsistencies in the interface database.
- Interfaces cannot be created with the “Dynamic AP Manager” flag set.

The advantages of creating a LAG include the following:

- Assurance that, if one of the links goes down, the traffic is moved to the other links in the LAG. As long as one of the physical ports is working, the system remains functional.
- You do not need to configure separate backup ports for each interface.
- Multiple AP-manager interfaces are not required because only one logical port is visible to the application.

When you make changes to the LAG configuration, the controller has to be rebooted for the changes to take effect.

## Wireless Management

Because of IPsec operation, management via wireless is only available to operators logging in across WPA, Static WEP, or VPN Pass Through WLANs. Wireless management is not available to clients attempting to log in via an IPsec WLAN.

## Mobility Anchor Group Keep Alive Interval

You can specify the delay between tries for clients attempting to join another access point. This decreases the time it takes for a client to join another access point following a controller failure because the failure is quickly identified, the clients are moved away from the problem controller, and the clients are anchored to another controller.

### Related Topics

- [Restoring Controller Factory Defaults](#)
- [Setting Controller Time and Date](#)
- [Downloading Configurations to Controllers](#)

## Restoring Controller Factory Defaults

You can reset the controller configuration to the factory default. This overwrites all applied and saved configuration parameters. You are prompted for confirmation to reinitialize your controller.

All configuration data files are deleted, and upon reboot, the controller is restored to its original non-configured state. This removes all IP configuration, and you need a serial connection to restore its base configuration.

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.

- Step 2** Click a Device Name, then click the **Configuration** tab.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Commands**, and from the Administrative Commands drop-down list, choose **Reset to Factory Default**, and click **Go** to access this page.
- Step 4** After confirming configuration removal, you must reboot the controller and select the **Reboot Without Saving** option.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Rebooting Controllers](#)
- [Setting Controller Time and Date](#)
- [Downloading Configurations to Controllers](#)

## Setting Controller Time and Date

You can manually set the current time and date on the controller.

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click a Device Name, then click the **Configuration** tab.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Commands**, and from the Configuration Commands drop-down list choose **Set System Time**, and click **Go**.
- Step 4** Modify the required parameters:
- **Current Time**—Shows the time currently being used by the system.
  - **Month/Day/Year**—Choose the month/day/year from the drop-down list.
  - **Hour/Minutes/Seconds**—Choose the hour/minutes/seconds from the drop-down list.
  - **Delta (hours)**—Enter the positive or negative hour offset from GMT (Greenwich Mean Time).
  - **Delta (minutes)**—Enter the positive or negative minute offset from GMT.
  - **Daylight Savings**—Select to enable Daylight Savings Time.
- 

## Uploading Configuration and Logs from Controllers

You can upload files from controllers to a local TFTP (Trivial File Transfer Protocol) server. You must enable TFTP to use the Default Server option on the **Administration System Settings > Server Settings** page.

Prime Infrastructure uses an integral TFTP server. This means that third-party TFTP servers cannot run on the same workstation as Prime Infrastructure, because the Cisco Prime Infrastructure and the third-party TFTP servers use the same communication port.

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click a Device Name, then click the **Configuration** tab.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Commands**.



- Step 4** From the Upload/Download Commands drop-down list, choose **Upload File from Controller**, then click **Go**.
- By default, configuration file encryption is disabled. Uploading configuration file is unsecured without encryption.
- Step 5** To enable encryption before uploading files, click the link at the bottom of the Upload File from Controller page.
- Step 6** Complete the required fields, then click **OK**. The selected file is uploaded to your TFTP server with the name you specified.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Downloading Configurations to Controllers](#)
- [Restoring Controller Factory Defaults](#)
- [Setting Controller Time and Date](#)
- [Downloading Configurations to Controllers](#)

## Downloading Configurations to Controllers

You can download configuration files to your controller from a local TFTP (Trivial File Transfer Protocol) server.

Prime Infrastructure uses an integral TFTP server. This means that third-party TFTP servers cannot run on the same workstation as Prime Infrastructure, because the Cisco Prime Infrastructure and the third-party TFTP servers use the same communication port.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click a Device Name, then click the **Configuration** tab.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Commands**.
- Step 4** From the Upload/Download Commands drop-down list, choose **Download Config**, then click **Go**.
- Step 5** Complete the required fields, then click **OK**.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Uploading Configuration and Logs from Controllers](#)
- [Restoring Controller Factory Defaults](#)
- [Setting Controller Time and Date](#)

## Configuring Controller System Interfaces

Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller** to configure controller system interfaces.

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Interfaces to Controllers](#)
- [Viewing or Modifying Controller Interface Details](#)
- [Deleting Dynamic Interfaces](#)
- [NAC Integration](#)
- [Wired Guest Access](#)

## Adding Interfaces to Controllers

To add an interface:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click a Device Name, then click the **Configuration** tab.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Interfaces**.
  - Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Interface > Go**.
  - Step 5** Complete the required fields, then click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Viewing or Modifying Controller Interface Details](#)
- [Deleting Dynamic Interfaces](#)

## Viewing or Modifying Controller Interface Details

To view the existing interfaces:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click a Device Name, then click the **Configuration** tab.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Interfaces**. The following parameters appear:
    - Check box—Check box to select the dynamic interface for deletion. Choose **Delete Dynamic Interfaces** from the Select a command drop-down list.
    - Interface Name —User-defined name for the interface (for example, Management, Service-Port, Virtual).
    - VLAN Id—VLAN identifier between 0 (untagged) and 4096, or N/A.
    - Quarantine—Select the check box if the interface has a quarantine VLAN ID configured on it.
    - IP Address—IP address of the interface.
    - Interface Type—Interface Type: Static (Management, AP-Manager, Service-Port, and Virtual interfaces) or Dynamic (operator-defined interfaces).

- AP Management Status—Status of AP Management interfaces and the parameters include Enabled, Disabled, and N/A. Only the management port can be configured as Redundancy Management Interface port.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Interfaces to Controllers](#)
- [Deleting Dynamic Interfaces](#)

## Deleting Dynamic Interfaces

The dynamic interface cannot be deleted if it has been assigned to any interface group. To delete a dynamic interface:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click a Device Name, then click the **Configuration** tab.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Interfaces**.
  - Step 4** Select the check box of the dynamic interface that you want to delete and choose **Delete Dynamic Interfaces** from the Select a command drop-down list.
  - Step 5** Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Interface Groups](#)
- [Viewing or Modifying Controller Interface Details](#)

## Configuring Controller System Interface Groups

Interface groups are logical groups of interfaces. Interface groups facilitate user configuration where the same interface group can be configured on multiple WLANs or while overriding a WLAN interface per AP group. An interface group can exclusively contain either quarantine or nonquarantine interfaces. An interface can be part of multiple interface groups.

Follow these recommendations while configuring controller system interface groups:

- Ensure that the interface group name is different from the interface name.
- Guest LAN interfaces cannot be part of interface groups

The Interface Groups feature is supported by Cisco Wireless Controller software release 7.0.116.0 and later.

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Interface Groups](#)
- [Deleting Interface Groups](#)
- [Viewing Interface Groups](#)

## Adding Interface Groups

To add an interface group:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click on a Device Name, then click the **Controller** tab.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Interface Groups**.
  - Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Interface Group** and click **Go**.
  - Step 5** Complete the required fields, then click **Add**.  
The Interface dialog box appears.
  - Step 6** Select the interfaces that you want to add to the group, and click **Select**.
  - Step 7** To remove an Interface from the Interface group, from the Interface Group page, select the Interface and click **Remove**.
  - Step 8** Click **Save** to confirm the changes made.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Controller System Interface Groups](#)
- [Deleting Interface Groups](#)

## Deleting Interface Groups

You cannot delete interface groups that are assigned to:

- WLANs
- AP groups
- Foreign Controller Mapping for WLANs
- WLAN templates
- AP group templates

To delete an interface group:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click on a Device Name, then click the **Controller** tab.
  - Step 3** Click the Device Name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 4** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Interface Groups**.
  - Step 5** Select the check box of the interface group that you want to delete.
  - Step 6** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Delete Interface Group**, and click **Go**.
  - Step 7** Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
-

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring Controller System Interface Groups](#)

## Viewing Interface Groups

To view existing interface groups:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click on a Device Name, then click the **Controller** tab.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Interface Groups**. The following parameters appear:
- Name—User-defined name for the interface group (For example, group1, group2).
  - Description—(Optional) Description for the Interface Group.
  - Interfaces—Count of the number of interfaces belonging to the group.
- Step 4** Click the **Interface Group Name** link.

The Interface Groups Details page appears with the Interface group details as well as the details of the Interfaces that form part of that particular Interface group.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring Controller System Interface Groups](#)

## NAC Integration

The Cisco Network Admission Control (NAC) appliance, also known as Cisco Clean Access (CCA), is a Network Admission Control (NAC) product that allows network administrators to authenticate, authorize, evaluate, and remediate wired, wireless, and remote users and their machines prior to allowing users onto the network. It identifies whether machines are compliant with security policies and repairs vulnerabilities before permitting access to the network. The NAC appliance is available in two modes: in-band and out-of-band. Customers can deploy both modes if desired, each geared toward certain types of access (in-band for supporting wireless users and out-of-band for supporting wired users, for example).

**Related Topics**

- [Guidelines for Using SNMP NAC](#)
- [Configuring NAC Out-of-Band Integration \(SNMP NAC\): Workflow](#)

## Guidelines for Using SNMP NAC

Follow these guidelines when using SNMP NAC out-of-band integration:

- The NAC appliance supports up to 3500 users, and the controller supports up to 5000 users. Therefore, multiple NAC appliances might need to be deployed.

- Because the NAC appliance supports static VLAN mapping, you must configure a unique quarantine VLAN for each interface configured on the controller. For example, you might configure a quarantine VLAN of 110 on controller 1 and a quarantine VLAN of 120 on controller 2. However, if two WLANs or guest LANs use the same distribution system interface, they must use the same quarantine VLAN, provided they have one NAC appliance deployed in the network. The NAC appliance supports unique quarantine-to-access VLAN mapping.
- For posture reassessment based on session expiry, you must configure the session timeout on both the NAC appliance and the WLAN, making sure that the session expiry on the WLAN is greater than that on the NAC appliance.
- When a session timeout is configured on an open WLAN, the timing out of clients in the Quarantine state is determined by the timer on the NAC appliance. Once the session timeout expires for WLANs using web authentication, clients deauthenticate from the controller and must perform posture validation again.
- NAC out-of-band integration is supported only on WLANs configured for FlexConnect central switching. It is not supported for use on WLANs configured for FlexConnect local switching.
- If you want to enable NAC on an access point group VLAN, you must first enable NAC on the WLAN. Then you can enable or disable NAC on the access point group VLAN. If you ever decide to disable NAC on the WLAN, be sure to disable it on the access point group VLAN as well.
- NAC out-of-band integration is not supported for use with the WLAN AAA override feature.
- All Layer 2 and Layer 3 authentication occurs in the quarantine VLAN. To use external web authentication, you must configure the NAC appliance to allow HTTP traffic to and from external web servers and to allow the redirect URL in the quarantine VLAN.

**Related Topics**

- [Cisco NAC Appliance Configuration](#)

## Guidelines for Using RADIUS NAC

Follow these guidelines when using RADIUS NAC:

- RADIUS NAC is available only for WLAN with 802.1x/WPA/WPA2 Layer 2 security.
- RADIUS NAC cannot be enabled when FlexConnect local switching is enabled.
- AAA override should be enabled to configure RADIUS NAC.

**Related Topics**

- [NAC Integration](#)

## Configuring NAC Out-of-Band Integration (SNMP NAC): Workflow

To configure SNMP NAC out-of-band integration, follow this workflow:

1. Configure the quarantine VLAN for a dynamic interface—The NAC appliance supports static VLAN mapping, and you must configure a unique quarantine VLAN for each interface that is configured on the controller.
2. Configure NAC out-of-band support on a WLAN or guest LAN—To enable NAC support on an access point group VLAN, you must first enable NAC on the WLAN or guest LAN.

3. Configure NAC Out-of-band support for a specific AP group—To configure NAC out-of-band support for specific access point groups.

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring Quarantine VLAN for Dynamic Interface](#)
- [Configuring NAC Out-of-Band Support on WLANs or Guest LANs](#)
- [Configuring NAC Out-of-Band Support for Specific AP Groups](#)

## Configuring Quarantine VLAN for Dynamic Interface

To configure the quarantine VLAN for a dynamic interface:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Choose which controller you are configuring for out-of-band integration by clicking it in the IP Address column.
  - Step 3** Choose **System > Interfaces** from the left sidebar menu.
  - Step 4** Click the Interface Name.
  - Step 5** Choose **Add Interface** from the Select a command drop-down list and click **Go**.
  - Step 6** In the Interface Name text box, enter a name for this interface, such as “quarantine.”
  - Step 7** In the VLAN ID text box, enter a non-zero value for the access VLAN ID, such as “10.”
  - Step 8** Select the **Quarantine** check box if the interface has a quarantine VLAN ID configured on it.
  - Step 9** Configure any remaining fields for this interface, such as the IP address, netmask, and default gateway.



---

**Note** To avoid issues when adding the wireless controller to Prime Infrastructure, the Dynamic Interface should not be in the same subnet as Prime Infrastructure.

---

- Step 10** Enter an IP address for the primary and secondary DHCP server.
  - Step 11** Click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring NAC Out-of-Band Support on WLANs or Guest LANs](#)
- [Configuring NAC Out-of-Band Support for Specific AP Groups](#)

## Configuring NAC Out-of-Band Support on WLANs or Guest LANs

To configure NAC out-of-band support on a WLAN or guest LAN, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click on a Device Name.
  - Step 3** Choose **WLANs > WLAN** from the left sidebar menu.

- Step 4** Choose **Add a WLAN** from the Select a command drop-down list, and click **Go**.
- Step 5** If you have a template established that you want to apply to this controller, choose the guest LAN template name from the drop-down list. Otherwise, click the **click here** link to create a new template.
- Step 6** Click the **Advanced** tab.
- Step 7** To configure SNMP NAC support for this WLAN or guest LAN, choose **SNMP NAC** from the NAC Stage drop-down list. To disable SNMP NAC support, choose **None** from the NAC Stage drop-down list, which is the default value.
- Step 8** Click **Apply** to commit your changes.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring NAC Out-of-Band Support for Specific AP Groups](#)
- [Wired Guest Access](#)

## Configuring NAC Out-of-Band Support for Specific AP Groups

To configure NAC out-of-band support for a specific AP group, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click on a Device Name, then click the **Controller** tab.
- Step 3** Choose **WLANs > AP Groups VLAN** from the left sidebar menu to open the AP Groups page.
- Step 4** Click the name of the desired AP group.
- Step 5** From the Interface Name drop-down list, choose the quarantine enabled interface.
- Step 6** To configure SNMP NAC support for this AP group, choose **SNMP NAC** from the Nac State drop-down list. To disable NAC out-of-band support, choose **None** from the Nac State drop-down list, which is the default value.
- Step 7** Click **Apply** to commit your changes.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Quarantine VLAN for Dynamic Interface](#)
- [Configuring NAC Out-of-Band Support on WLANs or Guest LANs](#)
- [Wired Guest Access](#)

## Viewing Client State

To see the current state of the client (either Quarantine or Access), follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Clients and Users** to open the Clients. Perform a search for clients.



- Step 2** Click the MAC address of the desired client to open the Clients > Detail page. The NAC state appears as access, invalid, or quarantine in the Security Information section.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring NAC Out-of-Band Integration \(SNMP NAC\): Workflow](#)

## Wired Guest Access

Wired Guest Access enables guest users to connect to the guest access network from a wired Ethernet connection designated and configured for guest access. Wired guest access ports might be available in a guest office or specific ports in a conference room.

Like wireless guest user accounts, wired guest access ports are added to the network using the Lobby Ambassador feature. Wired Guest Access can be configured in a standalone configuration or in a dual controller configuration employing an anchor and foreign controller. This latter configuration is used to further isolate wired guest access traffic but is not required for deployment of wired guest access.

Wired Guest Access ports initially terminate on a Layer 2 access switch or switch port which is configured with VLAN interfaces for wired guest access traffic. The wired guest traffic is then trunked from the access switch to a wireless LAN controller. This controller is configured with an interface that is mapped to a wired guest access VLAN on the access switch.

If two controllers are being used, the controller (foreign) that receives the wired guest traffic from the switch then forwards the wired guest traffic to an anchor controller that is also configured for wired guest access. After successful hand off of the wired guest traffic to the anchor controller, a bidirectional Ethernet over IP (EoIP) tunnel is established between the foreign and anchor controllers to handle this traffic.

Although wired guest access is managed by anchor and foreign anchors when two controllers are deployed, mobility is not supported for wired guest access clients. In this case, DHCP and web authentication for the client are handled by the anchor controller.

You can specify how much bandwidth a wired guest user is allocated in the network by configuring and assigning a role and bandwidth contract.

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring and Enabling Wired Guest User Access: Workflow](#)

## Configuring and Enabling Wired Guest User Access: Workflow

To configure and enable the wired guest user access, follow this workflow:

1. Configure a dynamic interface (VLAN) for wired guest access—Create a dynamic interface to enable the wired guest user access.
2. Configure a wired LAN for guest user access—Configure a new LAN, which is a guest LAN.

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring a Dynamic Interface for Wired Guest User Access](#)
- [Configuring a Wired LAN for Guest User Access](#)

## Configuring a Dynamic Interface for Wired Guest User Access

To configure and enable a dynamic interface (VLAN) for wired guest user access on the network:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click on a Device Name, then click the **Controller** tab.
  - Step 3** Choose **System > Interfaces** from the left sidebar menu.
  - Step 4** Choose **Add Interface** from the Select a command drop-down list, and click **Go**.
  - Step 5** Complete the required fields.
  - Step 6** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring and Enabling Wired Guest User Access: Workflow](#)

## Configuring a Wired LAN for Guest User Access

To configure a wired LAN for guest user access:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click on a Device Name.
  - Step 3** To configure a wired LAN for guest user access, choose **WLANs > WLAN configuration** from the left sidebar menu.
  - Step 4** Choose **Add a WLAN** from the Select a command drop-down list, and click **Go**.
  - Step 5** If you have a template established that you want to apply to this controller, choose the guest LAN template name from the drop-down list. Otherwise, click the **click here** link to create a new template.
  - Step 6** In the **WLAN > New Template** general page, enter a name in the Profile Name text box that identifies the guest LAN. Do not use any spaces in the name entered.
  - Step 7** Select the **Enabled** check box for the WLAN Status field.
  - Step 8** From the Ingress Interface drop-down list, choose the VLAN that you created in Step 3. This VLAN provides a path between the wired guest client and the controller by way of the Layer 2 access switch.
  - Step 9** From the Egress Interface drop-down list, choose the name of the interface. This WLAN provides a path out of the controller for wired guest client traffic. If you have only one controller in the configuration, choose **management** from the Egress Interface drop-down list.
  - Step 10** Click the **Security > Layer 3** tab to modify the default security policy (web authentication) or to assign WLAN specific web authentication (login, logout, login failure) pages and the server source.
    - a.** To change the security policy to passthrough, select the **Web Policy** check box and select the **Passthrough** radio button. This option allows users to access the network without entering a username or password.

An Email Input check box appears. Select this check box if you want users to be prompted for their e-mail address when attempting to connect to the network.

- b. To specify custom web authentication pages, unselect the Global WebAuth Configuration **Enabled** check box.

When the Web Auth Type drop-down list appears, choose one of the following options to define the web login page for the wireless guest users:

**Default Internal**—Displays the default web login page for the controller. This is the default value.

**Customized Web Auth**—Displays custom web login, login failure, and logout pages. When the customized option is selected, three separate drop-down lists for login, login failure, and logout page selection appear. You do not need to define a customized page for all three of the options. Choose **None** from the appropriate drop-down list if you do not want to display a customized page for that option.

**External**—Redirects users to an external server for authentication. If you choose this option, you must also enter the URL of the external server in the URL text box.

You can select specific RADIUS or LDAP servers to provide external authentication in the **Security > AAA** pane. The RADIUS and LDAP external servers must be already configured to have selectable options in the Security > AAA pane. You can configure these servers on the RADIUS Authentication Servers, TACACS+ Authentication Servers page, and LDAP Servers page.

- Step 11** If you selected External as the Web Authentication Type, choose **Security > AAA** and choose up to three RADIUS and LDAP servers using the drop-down lists.
- Step 12** Click **Save**.
- Step 13** Repeat this process if a second (anchor) controller is being used in the network.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring and Enabling Wired Guest User Access: Workflow](#)

## Creating an Ingress Interface

To create an Ingress interface:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click on a Device Name, then click the **Controller** tab.
  - Step 3** Choose **System > Interfaces** from the left sidebar menu.
  - Step 4** Choose **Add Interface** from the Select a command drop-down list, and click **Go**.
  - Step 5** In the Interface Name text box, enter a name for this interface, such as **guestinterface**.
  - Step 6** Enter a VLAN identifier for the new interface.
  - Step 7** Select the **Guest LAN** check box.
  - Step 8** Enter the primary and secondary port numbers.
  - Step 9** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Creating an Egress Interface](#)

## Creating an Egress Interface

To create an Egress interface:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click on a Device Name, then click the **Controller** tab.
  - Step 3** Choose **System > Interfaces** from the left sidebar menu.
  - Step 4** Choose **Add Interface** from the Select a command drop-down list, and click **Go**.
  - Step 5** In the Interface Name text box, enter a name for this interface, such as **quarantine**.
  - Step 6** In the vlan Id text box, enter a non-zero value for the access VLAN ID, such as 10.
  - Step 7** Select the **Quarantine** check box and enter a non-zero value for the Quarantine VLAN identifier, such as 110.

You can have NAC-support enabled on the WLAN or guest WLAN template Advanced tab for interfaces with Quarantine enabled.

- Step 8** Enter the IP address, Netmask, and Gateway information.
- Step 9** Enter the primary and secondary port numbers.
- Step 10** Provide an IP address for the primary and secondary DHCP server.
- Step 11** Configure any remaining fields for this interface, and click **Save**.

You are now ready to create a wired LAN for guest access.

---

### Related Topics

- [Creating an Ingress Interface](#)

## Configuring Controller Network Routes

The Network Route page enables you to add a route to the controller service port. This route allows you to direct all Service Port traffic to the designated management IP address.

### Related Topics

- [Viewing Existing Network Routes](#)
- [Adding Network Routes](#)

## Viewing Existing Network Routes

To view existing network routes:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click on a Device Name, then click the **Controller** tab.
  - Step 3** Choose **System > Network Route** from the left sidebar menu. The following parameters appear:

- IP Address—The IP address of the network route.
  - IP Netmask—Network mask of the route.
  - Gateway IP Address—Gateway IP address of the network route.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring Controller Network Routes](#)

## Adding Network Routes

To add a network route, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click on a Device Name, then click the **Controller** tab.
  - Step 3** Choose **System > Network Route** from the left sidebar menu.
  - Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Network Route**.
  - Step 5** Click **Go**.
  - Step 6** Complete the required fields, then click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring Controller Network Routes](#)

## Viewing Controller Spanning Tree Protocol Parameters

Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) is a link management protocol that provides path redundancy while preventing undesirable loops in the network.

To view or manage current STP parameters:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click on a Device Name, then click the **Controller** tab.
  - Step 3** Choose **System > Spanning Tree Protocol** from the left sidebar menu. The Spanning Tree Protocol page displays the following parameters:
    - Protocol Spec—The current protocol specification.
    - Admin Status—Select this check box to enable.
    - Priority—The numerical priority number of the ideal switch.
    - Maximum Age (seconds)—The amount of time (in seconds) before the received protocol information recorded for a port is discarded.
    - Hello Time (seconds)—Determines how often (in seconds) the switch broadcasts its hello message to other switches.

- Forward Delay (seconds)—The time spent (in seconds) by a port in the learning/listening states of the switches.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring Controller Network Routes](#)
- [Configuring Controller System Parameters](#)

## Configuring Controller Mobility Groups

By creating a mobility group, you can enable multiple network controllers to dynamically share information and forward data traffic when inter-controller or inter-subnet roaming occurs. Controllers can share the context and state of client devices and controller loading information. With this information, the network can support inter-controller wireless LAN roaming and controller redundancy.

If it is possible for a wireless client in your network to roam from an access point joined to one controller to an access point joined to another controller, both controllers should be in the same mobility group.

**Related Topics**

- [Messaging Among Mobility Groups](#)
- [Mobility Group Prerequisites](#)
- [Viewing Current Mobility Group Members](#)
- [Adding Mobility Group Members from a List of Controllers](#)
- [Manually Adding Mobility Group Members](#)
- [Setting the Mobility Scalability Parameters](#)

## Messaging Among Mobility Groups

The controller provides inter-subnet mobility for clients by sending mobility messages to other member controllers:

- There can be up to 72 members in the list with up to 24 in the same mobility group.
- The controller sends a Mobile Announce message to members in the mobility list each time a new client associates to it.
- In Prime Infrastructure and Wireless Controller software release 5.0 and later, the controller uses multicast mode to send the Mobile Announce messages. This allows the controller to send only one copy of the message to the network, which delivers it to the multicast group containing all the mobility members.

**Related Groups**

- [Configuring Controller Mobility Groups](#)

## Mobility Group Prerequisites

Before you add controllers to a mobility group, you must verify that the following prerequisites are met for all controllers that are to be included in the group:

- All controllers must be configured for the same CAPWAP transport mode (Layer 2 or Layer 3).
- IP connectivity must exist between the management interfaces of all controllers.
- All controllers must be configured with the same mobility group name.
- All controllers must be configured with the same virtual interface IP address.
- You must have gathered the MAC address and IP address of every controller that is to be included in the mobility group. This information is necessary because you will be configuring all controllers with the MAC address and IP address of all the other mobility group members.

**Related Groups**

- [Configuring Controller Mobility Groups](#)

## Viewing Current Mobility Group Members

To view current mobility group members:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click on a Device Name, then click the **Controller** tab.
  - Step 3** Choose **System > Mobility Groups** from the left sidebar menu.
- 

**Related Groups**

- [Adding Mobility Group Members from a List of Controllers](#)
- [Manually Adding Mobility Group Members](#)

## Adding Mobility Group Members from a List of Controllers

To add a mobility group member from a list of existing controllers:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click on a Device Name, then click the **Controller** tab.
  - Step 3** Choose **System > Mobility Groups** from the left sidebar menu.
  - Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Group Members**.
  - Step 5** Click **Go**.
  - Step 6** Select the check box(es) for the controller to be added to the mobility group.
  - Step 7** Click **Save**.
- 

**Related Groups**

- [Viewing Current Mobility Group Members](#)
- [Manually Adding Mobility Group Members](#)

## Manually Adding Mobility Group Members

If there were no controllers found to add to the mobility group, you can add members manually. To manually add members to the mobility group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Click the **click here** link from the Mobility Group Member details page.
  - Step 2** In the Member MAC Address text box, enter the MAC address of the controller to be added.
  - Step 3** In the Member IP Address text box, enter the management interface IP address of the controller to be added.  
  
If you are configuring the mobility group in a network where Network Address Translation (NAT) is enabled, enter the IP address sent to the controller from the NAT device rather than the controller management interface IP address. Otherwise, mobility fails among controllers in the mobility group.
  - Step 4** Enter the multicast group IP address to be used for multicast mobility messages in the Multicast Address text box. The local mobility member group address must be the same as the local controller group address.
  - Step 5** In the Group Name text box, enter the name of the mobility group.
  - Step 6** Click **Save**.
  - Step 7** Repeat Steps 1 through 6 for the remaining Cisco Wireless Controller devices.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Adding Mobility Group Members from a List of Controllers](#)
- [Viewing Current Mobility Group Members](#)

## Setting the Mobility Scalability Parameters

### Before You Begin

You must configure Mobility Groups prior setting up the mobility scalability parameters.

To set the mobility message parameters:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the Device Name of a controller whose software version is 5.0 or later.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > General**.
  - Step 4** From the Multicast Mobility Mode drop-down list, specify if you want to enable or disable the ability for the controller to use multicast mode to send Mobile Announce messages to mobility members.
  - Step 5** If you enabled multicast messaging by setting multicast mobility mode to enabled, you must enter the group IP address at the Mobility Group Multicast-address field to begin multicast mobility messaging. You must configure this IP address for the local mobility group but it is optional for other groups within the mobility list. If you do not configure the IP address for other (non-local) groups, the controllers use unicast mode to send mobility messages to those members.
  - Step 6** Click **Save**.
-



**Related Topics**

- [Configuring Controller Multicast Mode](#)
- [Configuring Controller System Parameters](#)

## Configuring Controller Network Time Protocol

To add a new NTP Server:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the Device Name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Network Time Protocol**.
  - Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add NTP Server**.
  - Step 5** Click **Go**.
  - Step 6** From the Select a template to apply to this controller drop-down list, choose the applicable template to apply to this controller.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring an NTP Server Template](#)
- [Configuring Controller System Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Controller Network Time Protocol](#)

## Background Scanning on 1510s in Mesh Networks

Background scanning allows Cisco Aironet 1510 Access Points to actively and continuously monitor neighboring channels for more optimal paths and parents. Because the access points are searching on neighboring channels as well as the current channel, the list of optimal alternate paths and parents is greater.

Identifying this information prior to the loss of a parent results in a faster transfer and the best link possible for the access points. Additionally, access points might switch to a new channel if a link on that channel is found to be better than the current channel in terms of fewer hops, stronger signal-to-noise ratio (SNR), and so on.

Background scanning on other channels and data collection from neighbors on those channels are performed on the primary backhaul between two access points:

The primary backhaul for 1510s operate on the 802.11a link.

Background scanning is enabled on a global basis on the associated controller of the access point. Latency might increase for voice calls when they are switched to a new channel.

In the EMEA regulatory domain, locating neighbors on other channels might take longer given DFS requirements.

**Related Topics**

- [Background Scanning Scenarios](#)

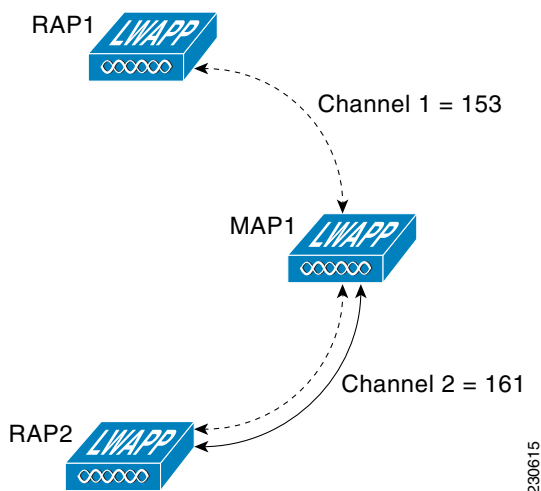
- Enabling Background Scanning

## Background Scanning Scenarios

A few scenarios are provided below to better illustrate how background scanning operates.

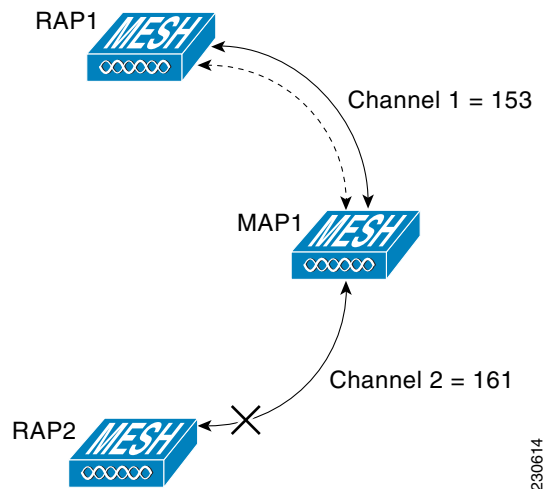
In [Figure 21-1](#), when the mesh access point (MAP1) initially comes up, it is aware of both root access points (RAP1 and RAP2) as possible parents. It chooses RAP2 as its parent because the route through RAP2 is better in terms of hops, SNR, and so on. After the link is established, background scanning (once enabled) continuously monitors all channels in search of a more optimal path and parent. RAP2 continues to act as parent for MAP1 and communicates on channel 2 until either the link goes down or a more optimal path is located on another channel.

**Figure 21-1 Mesh Access Point (MAP1) Selects a Parent**



In [Figure 21-2](#), the link between MAP1 and RAP2 is lost. Data from ongoing background scanning identifies RAP1 and channel 1 as the next best parent and communication path for MAP1 so that link is established immediately without the need for additional scanning after the link to RAP2 goes down.

**Figure 21-2** Background Scanning Identifies a New Parent



#### Related Topics

- [Enabling Background Scanning](#)

## Enabling Background Scanning

To enable background scanning on an AP1510 RAP or MAP:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click an IP address of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** Choose **Mesh > Mesh Settings** from the left sidebar menu.
  - Step 4** Select the **Background Scanning** check box to enable background scanning or unselect it to disable the feature. The default value is disabled.
  - Step 5** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Background Scanning Scenarios](#)

## Configuring Controller QoS Profiles

To make modifications to the quality of service profiles:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click an IP address of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > QoS Profiles**. The following parameters appear:

- Bronze—For Background
- Gold—For Video Applications
- Platinum—For Voice Applications
- Silver—For Best Effort

**Step 4** Click the applicable profile to view or edit profile parameters.

**Step 5** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Controller System Parameters](#)

## Configuring Controller DHCP Scopes

Controllers have built-in DHCP relay agents. However, when you desire network segments that do not have a separate DHCP server, the controllers can have built-in DHCP scopes that assign IP addresses and subnet masks to wireless client. Typically, one controller can have one or more DHCP scopes that each provide a range of IP addresses.

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing Current DHCP Scopes](#)
- [Adding a New DHCP Scope](#)

## Viewing Current DHCP Scopes

To view current DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) scopes, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the Device Name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > DHCP Scopes**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Controller DHCP Scopes](#)

## Adding a New DHCP Scope

To add a new DHCP Scope, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the Device Name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > DHCP Scopes**.

- Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add DHCP Scope** and click **Go**.
- Step 5** Configure the required fields, and click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring Controller DHCP Scopes](#)
- [Configuring Controller System Parameters](#)

## Viewing Controller User Roles

To view current local net user roles on a controller, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the Device Name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > User Roles**.  
The Local Net User Role parameters appear.
- Step 4** Click a Template Name to view the User Role details.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Adding a New Local Net User Role to Controllers](#)

## Adding a New Local Net User Role to Controllers

To add a new local net user role to a controller:

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the Device Name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > User Roles**.
- Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add User Role**.
- Step 5** Select a template from the Select a template to apply to this controller drop-down list.
- Step 6** Click **Apply**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Adding a New Local Net User Role to Controllers](#)
- [Configuring Controller System Parameters](#)

## Configuring a Global Access Point Password

The AP Username Password page enables you to set a global password that all access points inherit as they join a controller. When you are adding an access point, you can also choose to accept this global username and password or override it on a per-access point basis.

Also in controller software release 5.0, after an access point joins the controller, the access point enables console port security and you are prompted for your username and password whenever you log into the access point console port. When you log in, you are in non-privileged mode and you must enter the enable password to use the privileged mode.

To establish a global username and password, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the Device Name of a controller with a Release 5.0 or later.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > AP Username Password**.
  - Step 4** Enter the username and password that you want to be inherited by all access points that join the controller.  
For Cisco IOS access points, you must also enter and confirm an enable password.
  - Step 5** Click **Save**.
- 

## Configuring Global CDP

Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) is a device-discovery protocol that runs on all Cisco network equipment. Each device sends identifying messages to a multicast address, and each device monitors the messages sent by other devices.

CDP is enabled on the Ethernet and radio ports of a bridge by default.

Global Interface CDP configuration is applied to only the APs with CDP enabled at AP level.

To configure a Global CDP, perform the following steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the Device Name of the desired controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Global CDP Configuration** from the left sidebar menu. The Global CDP Configuration page appears.
  - Step 4** Configure the required fields in the Global CDP Configuration page. In the Global CDP group box, configure the following parameters:
    - CDP on controller—Choose enable or disable CDP on the controller. This configuration cannot be applied on WiSM2 controllers.
    - Global CDP on APs—Choose to enable or disable CDP on the access points.
    - Refresh-time Interval (seconds)—In the Refresh Time Interval field, enter the time in seconds at which CDP messages are generated. The default is 60.

- Holdtime (seconds)—Enter the time in seconds before the CDP neighbor entry expires. The default is 180.
  - CDP Advertisement Version—Enter which version of the CDP protocol to use. The default is v1.
- Step 5** In the CDP for Ethernet Interfaces group box, select the slots of Ethernet interfaces for which you want to enable CDP.
- CDP for Ethernet Interfaces fields are supported for Controller Release 7.0.110.2 and later.
- Step 6** In the CDP for Radio Interfaces group box, select the slots of Radio interfaces for which you want to enable CDP.
- CDP for Radio Interfaces fields are supported for Controller Release 7.0.110.2 and later.
- Step 7** Click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Configuring Controller System Parameters](#)

## Configuring AP 802.1X Supplicant Credentials

You can configure 802.1X authentication between lightweight access points and the switch. The access point acts as an 802.1X supplicant and is authenticated by the switch using EAP-FAST with anonymous PAC provisioning. You can set global authentication settings that all access points inherit as they join the controller. This includes all access points that are currently joined to the controller and any that join in the future.

If desired, you can override the global authentication settings and assign unique authentication settings for a specific access point.

To enable global supplicant credentials, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the Device Name of the desired controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > AP 802.1X Supplicant Credentials**.
- Step 4** Select the **Global Supplicant Credentials** check box.
- Step 5** Enter the supplicant username.
- Step 6** Enter and confirm the applicable password.
- Step 7** Click **Save**. Once saved, you can click **Audit** to perform an audit on this controller.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring Controller System Parameters](#)
- [802.11 Parameters](#)

## Configuring Controller DHCP

To configure DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) information for a controller:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the Device Name of the desired controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > DHCP**.
- Step 4** Add or modify the following parameters:
- DHCP Option 82 Remote Id Field Format—Choose **AP-MAC**, **AP-MAC-SSID**, **AP-ETHMAC**, or **AP-NAME-SSID** from the drop-down list.  
To set the format for RemoteID field in DHCP option 82  
If Ap-Mac is selected, then set the RemoteID format as *AP-Mac*. If Ap-Mac-ssid is selected, then set the RemoteID format as *AP-Mac:SSID*.
  - DHCP Proxy—Select the check box to enable DHCP by proxy.  
When DHCP proxy is enabled on the controller, the controller unicasts DHCP requests from the client to the configured servers. Consequently, at least one DHCP server must be configured on either the interface associated with the WLAN or the WLAN itself.
- Step 5** Enter the DHCP Timeout in seconds after which the DHCP request times out. The default setting is 5. Allowed values range from 5 to 120 seconds. DHCP Timeout is applicable for Controller Release 7.0.114.74 and later.
- Step 6** Click **Save**.
- Once saved, you can click **Audit** to perform an audit on this controller.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Controller System Parameters](#)

## Configuring Controller Multicast Mode

Prime Infrastructure provides an option to configure IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) snooping and timeout values on the controller.

### IGMP

To configure multicast mode and IGMP snooping for a controller:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the Device Name of the desired controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Multicast**.
- Step 4** From the Ethernet Multicast Support drop-down list, choose the applicable Ethernet multicast support (Unicast or Multicast).
- Step 5** If Multicast is selected, enter the multicast group IP address.
- Step 6** Select the Global Multicast Mode check box to make the multicast mode available globally.



IGMP Snooping and timeout can be set only if Ethernet Multicast mode is Enabled. Select to enable IGMP Snooping.

**Step 7** Choose **Enable** from the Multicast Mobility Mode drop-down list to change the IGMP snooping status or to set the IGMP timeout. When IGMP snooping is enabled, the controller gathers IGMP reports from the clients and then sends each access point a list of the clients listening to any multicast group. The access point then forwards the multicast packets only to those clients.

The timeout interval has a range of 3 to 300 and a default value of 60. When the timeout expires, the controller sends a query to all WLANs. Those clients which are listening in the multicast group then send a packet back to the controller.

**Step 8** If you enabled the Multicast Mobility Mode, enter the mobility group multicast address.

**Step 9** Select the **Multicast Direct** check box to enable videos to be streamed over a wireless network.

**Step 10** Choose **Enable** from the Multicast Mobility Mode drop-down list to change MLD configuration.

**Step 11** Select the **Enable MLD Snooping** check box to enable IPv6 MLD snooping. If you have selected this check box, configure the following parameters:

- **MLD Timeout**—Enter the MLD timeout value in seconds. The timeout has a range of 3 to 7200 and a default value of 60.
- **MLD Query Interval**—Enter the MLD query interval timeout value in seconds. The interval has a range of 15 to 2400 and a default value of 20.

Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) snooping enables you to limit the flooding of multicast traffic for IPv4. For IPv6, Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) snooping is used.

**Step 12** Configure the Session Banner information, which is the error information sent to the client if the client is denied or dropped from a Media Stream.

**Step 13** Click **Save**.

Once saved, you can click **Audit** to perform an audit on this controller.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Controller System Parameters](#)

## Configuring Access Point Timer Settings

Advanced timer configuration for FlexConnect and local mode is available for the controller on Prime Infrastructure.

This feature is only supported on Release 6.0 controllers and later.

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Advanced Timers](#)

## Configuring Advanced Timers

To configure the advanced timers, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Devices Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.

- Step 2** Choose the controller for which you want to set timer configuration.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > AP Timers**.
- Step 4** In the AP Timers page, click the applicable Access Point Mode link: Local Mode or FlexConnect Mode.
- Step 5** Configure the necessary parameters in the Local Mode AP Timer Settings page or in the FlexConnect Mode AP Timer Settings page accordingly.
- AP timer settings for Local Mode—To reduce the failure detection time, you can configure the fast heartbeat interval (between the controller and the access point) with a smaller timeout value. When the fast heartbeat timer expires (at every heartbeat interval), the access point determines if any data packets have been received from the controller within the last interval. If no packets have been received, the access point sends a fast echo request to the controller. You can then enter a value between 10 and 15 seconds.
  - AP timer settings for FlexConnect—Once selected, you can configure the FlexConnect timeout value. Select the **AP Primary Discovery Timeout** check box to enable the timeout value. Enter a value between 30 and 3600 seconds. 5500 series controllers accept access point fast heartbeat timer values in the range of 1-10.
- Step 6** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Access Point Timer Settings](#)

## Configuring Controller WLANs

Because controllers can support 512 WLAN configurations, Prime Infrastructure provides an effective way to enable or disable multiple WLANs at a specified time for a given controller.

To view a summary of the wireless local access networks (WLANs) that you have configured on your network, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configure > Controllers**.
- Step 2** Click the Device Name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **WLANs > WLAN Configuration**.
- Step 4** Configure the required fields in the Configure WLAN Summary page appears.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Controller WLANs](#)

## Configuring Controller WLANs

Because controllers can support 512 WLAN configurations, Prime Infrastructure provides an effective way to create WLANs on controllers, and enable or disable multiple WLANs at a specified time for a given controller.

**Related Topics**

- [Viewing Controller WLAN Configurations](#)
- [Adding Policies to Controller WLANs](#)
- [Configuring Mobile Concierge \(802.11u\) on WLANs](#)
- [Adding WLANs to Controllers](#)
- [Deleting Controller WLANs](#)
- [Scheduling Status Changes for Multiple Controller WLANs](#)
- [Viewing WLAN Mobility Anchors](#)
- [Working with WLAN AP Groups](#)

## Viewing Controller WLAN Configurations

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the Device Name of the wireless controller whose WLAN configurations you want to see.
- Step 3** Click the **Configuration** tab.
- Step 4** Under **Features**, choose **WLANs > WLAN Configuration**. The WLAN Configuration summary page appears, displaying the list of WLANs currently configured on the controller, including each:
- WLAN ID
  - The name of the WLAN configuration profile
  - WLAN SSID
  - The names of any active security policies
  - The WLAN current administrative status (enabled or disabled)
  - A link to the list of all currently scheduled WLAN configuration tasks
- Step 5** To view WLAN configuration details, click the WLAN ID. The WLAN Configuration details page appears.
- Step 6** Use the tabs (General, Security, QoS, and Advanced) to view or edit parameters for the WLAN. Whenever you change a parameter, click Save.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Configure > Controllers > WLANs > WLAN Configuration](#)
- [Adding Policies to Controller WLANs](#)
- [Configuring Mobile Concierge \(802.11u\) on WLANs](#)
- [Adding WLANs to Controllers](#)
- [Deleting Controller WLANs](#)
- [Scheduling Status Changes for Multiple Controller WLANs](#)
- [Viewing WLAN Mobility Anchors](#)

## Adding Policies to Controller WLANs

---

- Step 1** Click **Add Row**.
- Step 2** Select a policy name that you want to map to the WLAN, from the drop-down list.
- Step 3** Enter the priority. The priority ranges from 1 to 16.  
Two policies cannot have the same priority.
- Step 4** Click **Save**.  
If you want to delete a policy, select the check box corresponding to the policy that you want to delete and click **Delete**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Viewing Controller WLAN Configurations](#)
- [Configuring Mobile Concierge \(802.11u\) on WLANs](#)
- [Adding WLANs to Controllers](#)
- [Deleting Controller WLANs](#)
- [Scheduling Status Changes for Multiple Controller WLANs](#)
- [Viewing WLAN Mobility Anchors](#)

## Configuring Mobile Concierge (802.11u) on WLANs

Cisco Mobile Concierge is a solution that enables 802.1X-capable clients to interwork with external networks without pre-authorization. Mobile Concierge provides service availability information to clients that can help them to associate to available networks more quickly, easily, and securely.

The services offered by the network can be broadly classified into two protocols:

- 802.11u MSAP
- 802.11u HotSpot 2.0

The following guidelines and limitations apply to Mobile Concierge:

- Mobile Concierge is not supported on FlexConnect Access Points.
- 802.11u configuration upload is not supported. If you perform a configuration upgrade and upload a configuration on the controller, the HotSpot configuration on the WLANs is lost.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the Device Name of the wireless controller on which you want to configure Mobile Concierge.
- Step 3** Click the **Configuration** tab.
- Step 4** Under **Features**, choose **WLANs > WLAN Configuration**. The WLAN Configuration summary page appears, displaying the list of WLANs currently configured on the controller,
- Step 5** Click the WLAN ID of the WLAN on which you want to configure Mobile Concierge.
- Step 6** Click the **Hot Spot** tab.

- Step 7** Click the **802.11u Configuration** sub-tab and complete the fields as follows:
- a. Select the **802.11u Status** check box to enable 802.11u on the WLAN.
  - b. Select the **Internet Access** check box to enable this WLAN to provide Internet services.
  - c. From the **Network Type** drop-down list, choose the appropriate description for the 802.11u service you want to configure on this WLAN. The following options are available:
    - **Private Network**
    - **Private Network with Guest Access**
    - **Chargeable Public Network**
    - **Free Public Network**
    - **Emergency Services Only Network**
    - **Personal Device Network**
    - **Test or Experimental**
    - **Wildcard**
  - d. Choose the authentication type that you want to configure for the 802.11u parameters on this network:
    - Not configured
    - Acceptance of Terms and Conditions
    - Online Enrollment
    - DNS Redirection
    - HTTP/HTTPS Redirection
  - e. In the **HESSID** field, enter the Homogeneous Extended Service Set Identifier value. The HESSID is a 6-octet MAC address that identifies the homogeneous ESS.
  - f. In the **IPv4 Address Type** field, choose the method of assigning IPv4 addresses:
    - **Not Available**
    - **Public**
    - **Port Restricted**
    - **Single NAT Private**
    - **Double NAT Private**
    - **Port Restricted and Single NAT Private**
    - **Port Restricted and Double NAT Private**
    - **Unknown**
  - g. In the **IPv6 Address Type** field, choose the method of assigning IPv6 addresses:
    - **Not Available**
    - **Available**
    - **Unknown**
- Step 8** Click the **Others** sub-tab and complete the fields as follows:
- a. In the OUI List group box, click **Add Row** and enter the following details:
    - OUI name

- Is Beacon
- OUI Index

Click **Save** to add the OUI (Organizationally Unique Identifier) entry to this WLAN.

- b. In the Domain List group box, click **Add Row** and enter the following details:
  - Domain Name—The domain name operating in the 802.11 access network.
  - Domain Index—Choose the domain index from the drop-down list.

Click **Save** to add the domain entry to this WLAN.

- c. In the Cellular section, click **Add Row** and enter the following details:
  - Country Code—The 3-character cellular country code.
  - Network Code—The 3-character cellular network code.

Click **Save** to add the cellular entry to this WLAN.

**Step 9** Click the **Realm** sub-tab and complete the fields as follows:

- a. Click **Add Row** and enter the realm name.
- b. Click **Save** to add the realm entry to this WLAN.

**Step 10** Click the **Service Advertisements** sub-tab and complete the fields as follows:

- a. Select the **MSAP Enable** check box to enable service advertisements.
- b. If you enable MSAP, enter the server index for this WLAN. The server index field uniquely identifies an MSAP server instance serving a venue that is reachable through the BSSID.

MSAP (Mobility Services Advertisement Protocol) is designed to be used primarily by mobile devices that are configured with a set of policies for establishing network services. These services are available for devices that offer higher-layer services, or network services that are enabled through service providers. Service advertisements use MSAP to provide services to mobile devices prior to association to a Wi-Fi access network. This information is conveyed in a service advertisement. A single-mode or dual-mode mobile device queries the network for service advertisements before association. The device's network discovery and the selection function may use the service advertisements in its decision to join the network.

**Step 11** Click the **Hotspot 2.0** sub-tab and complete the fields as follows:

- a. Choose the **Enable** option from the HotSpot2 Enable drop-down list.
- b. In the WAM Metrics group box, specify the following:
  - WAN Link Status—The link status. The valid range is 1 to 3.
  - WAN SIM Link Status—The symmetric link status. For example, you can configure the uplink and downlink to have different speeds or same speeds.
  - Down Link Speed—The downlink speed. The maximum value is 4,194,304 kbps.
  - Up Link Speed—The uplink speed. The maximum value is 4,194,304 kbps.
- c. In the Operator Name List, click **Add Row** and enter the following details:
  - Operator Name—Specify the name of the 802.11 operator.
  - Operator Index—Select an operator index. The range is from 1 to 32.
  - Language Code—An ISO-14962-1997 encoded string defining the language. This string is a three character language code.

Click **Save** to add the operator to the list.

- In the Port Config List, click **Add Row** and enter the following details:
  - IP Protocol—The IP protocol that you want to enable. The following options are ESP, FTP, ICMP, and IKEV2.
  - Port No—The port number that is enabled on this WLAN.
  - Status—The status of the port.

Click **Save** to add the port configuration to the list.

**Step 12** Click **Save** to save the Mobile Concierge configuration.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing Controller WLAN Configurations](#)
- [Adding Policies to Controller WLANs](#)
- [Adding WLANs to Controllers](#)
- [Deleting Controller WLANs](#)
- [Scheduling Status Changes for Multiple Controller WLANs](#)
- [Viewing WLAN Mobility Anchors](#)

## Adding WLANs to Controllers

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the Device Name of the appropriate controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **WLANs > WLAN Configuration**.
- Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add a WLAN**.
- Step 5** Click **Go** to open the WLAN Details: Add from Template page.
- Step 6** Choose a template from the Select a template to apply to this controller drop-down list.
- Step 7** Click **Apply**.

To create a new template for WLANs, use the [click here](#) link in this page, or choose **Configure > Controller Template Launch Pad > WLANs > WLAN**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing Controller WLAN Configurations](#)
- [Adding Policies to Controller WLANs](#)
- [Configuring Mobile Concierge \(802.11u\) on WLANs](#)
- [Deleting Controller WLANs](#)
- [Scheduling Status Changes for Multiple Controller WLANs](#)
- [Viewing WLAN Mobility Anchors](#)

## Deleting Controller WLANs

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the Device Name of the appropriate controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **WLANs > WLAN Configuration**.
  - Step 4** Select the check boxes of the WLANs that you want to delete.
  - Step 5** Choose **Select a command > Delete a WLAN > Go**.
  - Step 6** Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Viewing Controller WLAN Configurations](#)
- [Adding Policies to Controller WLANs](#)
- [Configuring Mobile Concierge \(802.11u\) on WLANs](#)
- [Adding WLANs to Controllers](#)
- [Scheduling Status Changes for Multiple Controller WLANs](#)
- [Viewing WLAN Mobility Anchors](#)

## Scheduling Status Changes for Multiple Controller WLANs

Prime Infrastructure lets you change the status of more than one WLAN at a time on any given controller. You can select multiple WLANs and select the date and time for that status change to take place.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the Device Name of the appropriate controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **WLANs > WLAN Configuration**.
  - Step 4** Select the check boxes of the WLANs that you want to schedule for a status change.
  - Step 5** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Schedule Status** to open the WLAN Schedule Task Detail page.  
The selected WLANs are listed at the top of the page.
  - Step 6** Enter a Scheduled Task Name to identify this status change schedule.
  - Step 7** Choose the new Admin Status (Enabled or Disabled) from the drop-down list.
  - Step 8** Choose the schedule time using the hours and minutes drop-down lists.
  - Step 9** Click the calendar icon to choose a schedule date or enter the date in the text box (MM/DD/YYYY).
  - Step 10** Select the appropriate Recurrence radio button to determine the frequency of the status change (Daily, Weekly, or No Recurrence).
  - Step 11** Click **Submit** to initiate the status change schedule.
-



**Related Topics**

- Viewing WLAN Configuration Scheduled Task Results (user guide section)
- [Viewing Controller WLAN Configurations](#)
- [Adding Policies to Controller WLANs](#)
- [Configuring Mobile Concierge \(802.11u\) on WLANs](#)
- [Adding WLANs to Controllers](#)
- [Deleting Controller WLANs](#)
- [Viewing WLAN Mobility Anchors](#)

## Viewing WLAN Mobility Anchors

Mobility anchors are controllers defined as anchors for WLANs. Clients (that is, any 802.11 mobile station, such as a laptop) are always attached to one of the anchors.

You can use mobility anchors to restrict a WLAN to a single subnet, regardless of the client's network entry point. Users can access a public or guest WLAN throughout the enterprise but will still be restricted to a specific subnet. You can also use guest WLANs to provide geographical load balancing, as WLANs can represent a particular section of a building (such as a lobby, restaurant, and so on).

When a client first associates to a controller of a mobility group that has been preconfigured as a mobility anchor for a WLAN, the client associates to the controller locally, and a local session is created for the client. Clients can be anchored only to preconfigured anchor controllers of the WLAN. For a given WLAN, you should configure the same set of anchor controllers on all controllers in the mobility group.

When a client first associates to a controller of a mobility group that has not been configured as a mobility anchor for a WLAN, the client associates to the controller locally, a local session is created for the client, and the controller is announced to the other controllers in the same mobility group. If the announcement is not answered, the controller contacts one of the anchor controllers configured for the WLAN and creates a foreign session for the client on the local switch. Packets from the client are encapsulated and delivered to the wired network. Packets to the client are received by the anchor controller and forwarded to the foreign controller through a mobility tunnel using EtherIP. The foreign controller encapsulates the packets and forwards them to the client.

A 2000 series controller cannot be designated as an anchor for a WLAN. However, a WLAN created on a 2000 series controllers can have a 4100 series controller or a 4400 series controller as its anchor.

The L2TP Layer 3 security policies are unavailable for WLANs configured with a mobility anchor.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the Device Name of the appropriate controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **WLANs > WLAN Configuration**.
  - Step 4** Click a WLAN ID to view the parameters for a specific WLAN.
  - Step 5** Click the **Advanced** tab.
  - Step 6** Click the **Mobility Anchors** link. Prime Infrastructure displays the IP address and current status (for example, reachable) for each anchor.
-

**Related Topics**

- [Viewing Controller WLAN Configurations](#)
- [Adding Policies to Controller WLANs](#)
- [Configuring Mobile Concierge \(802.11u\) on WLANs](#)
- [Adding WLANs to Controllers](#)
- [Deleting Controller WLANs](#)
- [Scheduling Status Changes for Multiple Controller WLANs](#)

## Working with WLAN AP Groups

Site-specific VLANs or AP (access point) groups allow you to segment WLANs into different broadcast domains. This will allow you to minimize the total number of broadcast domains, which permits more effective load balancing and bandwidth allocation.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the Device Name of the appropriate controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **WLAN > AP Groups**. The AP groups summary page displays. This page displays a summary of the AP groups configured on your network. From here you can add, remove, or view details of an AP group.
- Step 4** Click the AP group name on the Access Points tab to view or edit its access point(s).
- Step 5** Click the **WLAN Profiles** tab to view, edit, add, or delete WLAN profiles.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Creating Controller WLAN AP Groups](#)
- [Deleting Controller WLAN AP Groups](#)
- [Deleting Controller WLAN AP Groups](#)
- [Configuring Controller WLANs](#)
- [Auditing Controller WLAN AP Groups](#)

## Creating Controller WLAN AP Groups

Use the AP Groups detail page to add AP (access point) groups. Note that if the target controller is earlier than version 5.2, *AP Groups* are called *AP Group VLANs*.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the Device Name of the appropriate controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **WLAN > AP Groups**.
- Step 4** Choose **Select a command > Add AP Groups > Go**. The AP Groups details page displays.

- Step 5** Create a new AP group, as follows:
- Enter a name for the AP group.
  - Enter a description for the new AP group (this group description is optional).
- Step 6** Add access points to the new AP group, as follows:
- Click the **Access Points** tab.
  - Click **Add**. The Access Point page displays a list of available access points.
  - Select the check boxes of the access points you want to add.
  - Click **Select**.
- Step 7** Add a WLAN profile, as follows:
- Click the **WLAN Profiles** tab.
  - Click **Add**.
- To display all available WLAN profile names, delete the current WLAN profile name from the text box. When the current WLAN profile name is deleted from the text box, all available WLAN profiles appear in the drop-down list.
- Each access point is limited to 16 WLAN profiles. Each access point broadcasts all WLAN profiles unless the WLAN override feature is enabled. The WLAN override feature allows you to disable any of the 16 WLAN profiles per access point.
- The WLAN override feature applies only to older controllers that do not support the 512 WLAN feature (can support up to 512 WLAN profiles).
- Type a WLAN profile name or choose one from the WLAN Profile Name drop-down list.
  - Enter an interface/interface group or choose one from the Interface/Interface Group drop-down list.
- To display all available interfaces, delete the current interface in the Interface text box. When the current interface is deleted from the Interface text box, all available interfaces appear in the drop-down list.
- Select the **NAC Override** check box, if applicable. NAC override is disabled by default.
  - Specify the policy configuration parameters by clicking the **Add/Edit** link.
    - Policy Name—Name of the policy.
    - Policy Priority—Configure policy priority between 1 and 16. No two policies can have same priority.
- Only 16 Policy mappings are allowed per WLAN. Selected policy template for the mapping will be applied first if it does not exist on the controller.
- When access points and WLAN profiles are added, click **Save**.
- Step 8** (Optional): Add an RF profile, as follows:
- Click the **RF Profiles** tab:
  - Complete the fields as follows:
    - 802.11a—Choose an RF profile for APs with 802.11a radios.
    - 802.11b—Choose an RF profile for APs with 802.11b radios.
- Step 9** When you are finished adding APs, WLAN profiles, and RF profiles to the new AP Group, click **Save**.

Changing the WLAN-interface mapping in an AP Group removes the local VLAN mapping for FlexConnect APs in this group. These mappings need to be reconfigured after applying this change.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Creating RF Profiles Templates \(802.11\)](#)
- [Working with WLAN AP Groups](#)
- [Deleting Controller WLAN AP Groups](#)
- [Auditing Controller WLAN AP Groups](#)

## Deleting Controller WLAN AP Groups

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the Device Name of the appropriate controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **WLAN > AP Groups**.
- Step 4** Select the check box(es) of the AP Groups that you want to delete.
- Step 5** Choose **Select a command > Delete AP Groups > Go**.
- Step 6** Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Working with WLAN AP Groups](#)
- [Creating Controller WLAN AP Groups](#)
- [Auditing Controller WLAN AP Groups](#)

## Auditing Controller WLAN AP Groups

It is possible for difference to occur between the values Prime Infrastructure has stored for an AP group and the actual values stored in the current controller and access points device configurations. Auditing the AP group will help you determine if this has occurred and resolve them.

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the Device Name of the appropriate controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **WLAN > AP Groups**.
- Step 4** Click the name of the access point group that you want to audit.
- Step 5** Click **Audit**.

The **Audit** button is located at the bottom of the page, next to the **Save** and **Cancel** buttons

---

**Related Topics**

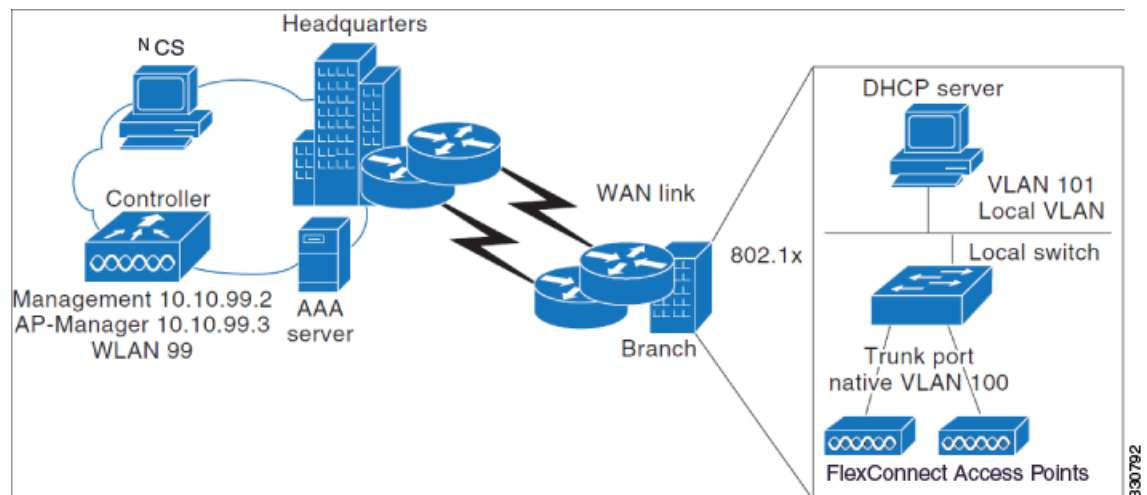
- [Working with WLAN AP Groups](#)
- [Creating Controller WLAN AP Groups](#)
- [Deleting Controller WLAN AP Groups](#)

## Configuring FlexConnect on APs

FlexConnect enables you to configure and control APs in a remote location from the corporate office through a wide area network (WAN) link without deploying a controller in each office. The FlexConnect APs switch client data traffic and perform client authentication locally when their connection to the controller is lost. When they are connected to the controller, they can also send traffic back to the controller.

The following figure illustrates a typical FlexConnect deployment.

**Figure 21-3 FlexConnect Deployment**

**Related Topics**

- [Supported Platforms for FlexConnect](#)
- [FlexConnect Guidelines and Limitations](#)
- [FlexConnect Authentication Process](#)
- [FlexConnect Operation Modes](#)
- [FlexConnect States](#)

## Supported Platforms for FlexConnect

FlexConnect is supported only on these components:

- 1130AG, 1240AG, 1142, and 1252 APs
- Cisco 2000, and 4400 series controllers,

- Catalyst 3750G Integrated Wireless LAN Controller Switch
- Cisco Wireless Services Module (WiSM)
- Controller Network Module for Integrated Services Routers

**Related Topics**

- [FlexConnect Guidelines and Limitations](#)
- [FlexConnect Authentication Process](#)
- [FlexConnect Operation Modes](#)
- [FlexConnect States](#)

## FlexConnect Guidelines and Limitations

Follow these guidelines when you configure FlexConnect:

- You can deploy FlexConnect with either a static IP address or a DHCP address. The DHCP server must be available locally and must be able to provide the IP address for the AP during bootstrap.
- The maximum transmission unit (MTU) must be at least 500 bytes.
- Round-trip latency must not exceed 300 milliseconds (ms) between the AP and the controller. If the 300 milliseconds round-trip latency cannot be achieved, configure the AP to perform local authentication.
- The controller can send multicast packets in the form of unicast or multicast packets to the AP. In FlexConnect mode, the AP can receive multicast packets only in unicast form.
- FlexConnect supports CCKM full authentication but not CCKM fast roaming.
- FlexConnect supports a 1-1 network address translation (NAT) configuration and port address translation (PAT) for all features except true multicast. Multicast is supported across NAT boundaries when configured using the Unicast option.
- VPN, IPsec, L2TP, PPTP, Fortress authentication, and Cranite authentication are supported for locally switched traffic if these security types are accessible locally at the AP.
- NAC out-of-band integration is supported only on WLANs configured for FlexConnect central switching. It is not supported for use on WLANs configured for FlexConnect local switching.
- For FlexConnect APs, the interface mapping at the controller for WLANs configured for FlexConnect local switching is inherited at the AP as the default VLAN tagging. This can be easily changed per SSID and per FlexConnect AP. Non-FlexConnect APs tunnel all traffic back to the controller, and VLAN tagging is dictated by each interface mapping of the WLAN
- VLAN is not enabled on the FlexConnect AP by default. When FlexConnect is enabled, the AP inherits the VLAN ID associated to the WLAN. This configuration is saved in the AP and received after the successful join response. By default, the native VLAN is 1. One native VLAN must be configured per FlexConnect AP in a VLAN-enabled domain. Otherwise, the AP cannot send and receive packets to and from the controller. When the client is assigned a VLAN from the RADIUS server, that VLAN is associated to the locally switched WLAN.

**Related Topics**

- [FlexConnect Authentication Process](#)

## FlexConnect Authentication Process

A FlexConnect AP searches for a controller on booting up. The AP joins the controller, downloads the latest software image from the controller and configuration information, and initializes the radio. It saves the downloaded configuration in non-volatile memory for use in standalone mode.

A FlexConnect AP identifies the controller IP address in one of the following ways:

- If the AP has been assigned an IP address from a DHCP server, it discovers a controller through the regular CAPWAP discovery process [Layer 3 broadcast, over-the-air provisioning (OTAP), DNS, or DHCP option 43]. OTAP does not work when the AP is booting up for the first time.
- If the AP has been assigned a static IP address, it discovers a controller through any of the CAPWAP discovery process methods except DHCP option 43. If the AP is unable to discover a controller through Layer 3 broadcast or OTAP, we recommend DNS resolution. With DNS, any AP with a static IP address that knows of a DNS server can find at least one controller.
- If you want the AP to discover a controller from a remote network where CAPWAP discovery mechanisms are not available, you can use priming. This method enables you to specify (through the AP command-line interface) the controller to which the AP should connect.

### Related Topics

- [Supported Platforms for FlexConnect](#)
- [FlexConnect Guidelines and Limitations](#)
- [FlexConnect Operation Modes](#)
- [FlexConnect States](#)

## FlexConnect Operation Modes

The two modes of operation for FlexConnect APs are:

- **Connected mode**— In this mode the FlexConnect AP has CAPWAP connectivity with the controller.
- **Standalone mode**—In this mode the controller is unreachable and the FlexConnect AP enters standalone mode and authenticates clients by itself.

When a FlexConnect AP enters standalone mode:

- All clients that are on centrally switched WLANs are disassociated.
- For 802.1X or web-authentication WLANs, existing clients are not disassociated, but the FlexConnect AP stops sending beacons when the number of associated clients reaches zero.
- Disassociation messages are sent to new clients associating to 802.1X or web-authentication WLANs.
- Controller-dependent activities such as 802.1X authentication, NAC, and web authentication (guest access) are disabled, and the AP does not send any Intrusion Detection System (IDS) reports to the controller.
- Radio Resource Management (RRM) features (such as neighbor discovery; noise, interference, load, and coverage measurements, use of the neighbor list, and rogue containment and detection) are disabled. However, a FlexConnect AP supports dynamic frequency selection in standalone modes.

The FlexConnect AP maintains client connectivity even after entering standalone mode. However, once the AP reestablishes a connection with the controller, it disassociates all clients, applies new configuration information from the controller, and reallows client connectivity.

The LEDs on the AP change as the device enters different FlexConnect modes.

#### Related Topics

- [Supported Platforms for FlexConnect](#)
- [FlexConnect Guidelines and Limitations](#)
- [FlexConnect Authentication Process](#)
- [FlexConnect States](#)

## FlexConnect States

The FlexConnect WLAN can be in any one of the following states depending on the configuration and state of controller connectivity:

- **Central authentication, central switching**—In this state, the controller handles client authentication, and all client data tunnels back to the controller. This state is valid only in connected mode.
- **Central authentication, local switching**—In this state, the controller handles client authentication, and the FlexConnect AP switches data packets locally. This state is supported only when the FlexConnect AP is in connected mode.
- **Local authentication, local switching**—In this state, the FlexConnect AP handles client authentication and switches client data packets locally. The authentication capabilities are present in the AP itself and thus reduces the latency requirements. Local authentication can only be enabled on the WLAN of a FlexConnect AP that is in local switching mode. This state is valid in standalone mode and connected mode.

Local authentication is useful when the following conditions cannot be met:

- A minimum bandwidth of 128 kbps.
- Round trip latency no greater than 100 ms.
- Maximum transmission unit (MTU) no smaller than 500 bytes.

Local authentication does not support:

- Guest Authentication.
- RRM information.
- Local radius.
- Roaming till the WLC and the other FlexConnect APs in the group are updated with the client information.
- **Authentication down, switching down**—In this state, the WLAN disassociates existing clients and stops sending beacon and probe responses. This state is valid only in standalone mode.
- **Authentication down, local switching**—In this state, the WLAN rejects any new clients trying to authenticate, but it continues sending beacon and probe responses to keep existing clients alive. This state is valid only in standalone mode.

The WLANS enter the following states when a FlexConnect AP enters the standalone mode:



- Local authentication, local switching state if the WLANs are configured as open, shared, WPA-PSK, or WPA2-PSK authentication and continue new client authentications.
- Authentication down, switching down state if the WLANs configured to central switching.
- Authentication down, local switching state if the WLANs configured to local-switch.

**Related Topics**

- [Supported Platforms for FlexConnect](#)
- [FlexConnect Guidelines and Limitations](#)
- [FlexConnect Authentication Process](#)
- [FlexConnect Operation Modes](#)
- [Configuring FlexConnect: Workflow](#)

## Configuring FlexConnect: Workflow

To configure FlexConnect, you must follow the instructions in this section in the following order:

1. Configuring the Switch at the Remote Site.
2. Configuring the Controller.
3. Configuring an AP for FlexConnect.
4. Connecting Client Devices to the WLANs.

### Configuring the Switch at the Remote Site

To prepare the switch at the remote site, follow these steps:

- 
- |               |   |
|---------------|---|
| <b>Step 1</b> | Connect the AP that is enabled for FlexConnect to a trunk or access port on the switch. |
| <b>Step 2</b> | Configure the switch to support the FlexConnect AP.                                     |
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Example: Configuring FlexConnect on Switches at Remote Sites](#)
- [Configuring the Controller for a Centrally Switched WLAN](#)
- [Configuring the Controller for a Locally Switched WLAN](#)
- [Configuring the Controller for a Centrally Switched WLAN for Guest Access](#)

### Example: Configuring FlexConnect on Switches at Remote Sites

In this sample configuration:

- The FlexConnect AP is connected to trunk interface FastEthernet 1/0/2 with native VLAN 100. The AP needs IP connectivity on the native VLAN.
- The remote site has local servers/resources on VLAN 101.
- A DHCP pool is created in the local switch for both VLANs in the switch.

- The first DHCP pool (NATIVE) is used by the FlexConnect AP, and the second DHCP pool (LOCAL-SWITCH) is used by the clients when they associate to a WLAN that is locally switched.

The addresses in this sample configuration are for illustration purposes only. The addresses that you use must fit into your upstream network.

```
ip dhcp pool NATIVE
  network 10.10.100.0 255.255.255.0
  default-router 10.10.100.1
!
ip dhcp pool LOCAL-SWITCH
  network 10.10.101.0 255.255.255.0
  default-router 10.10.101.1
!
interface FastEthernet1/0/1
  description Uplink port
  no switchport
  ip address 10.10.98.2 255.255.255.0
  spanning-tree portfast
!
interface FastEthernet1/0/2
  description the Access Point port
  switchport trunk encapsulation dot1q
  switchport trunk native vlan 100
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 100,101
switchport mode trunk
  spanning-tree portfast
!
interface Vlan100
  ip address 10.10.100.1 255.255.255.0
  ip helper-address 10.10.100.1
!
interface Vlan101
  ip address 10.10.101.1 255.255.255.0
  ip helper-address 10.10.101.1
end
```

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring the Switch at the Remote Site](#)
- [Configuring the Controller for a Centrally Switched WLAN](#)
- [Configuring the Controller for a Locally Switched WLAN](#)
- [Configuring the Controller for a Centrally Switched WLAN for Guest Access](#)

## Configuring the Controller for a Centrally Switched WLAN

To create a centrally switched WLAN:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices > Wireless Controllers**.
  - Step 2** Click the Device Name of the appropriate controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **WLAN > WLAN Configuration** to access the WLAN Configuration page.
  - Step 4** Choose **Add a WLAN** from the Select a command drop-down list, and click **Go**.

Cisco APs can support up to 16 WLANs per controller. However, some Cisco APs do not support WLANs that have a WLAN ID greater than 8. In such cases when you attempt to create a WLAN the following message is displayed:

*Not all types of AP support WLAN ID greater than 8, do you wish to continue?*

Click **OK** to create a WLAN with the next available WLAN ID.

If you have earlier deleted a WLAN that has a WLAN ID less than 8, then that ID is applied to the next created WLAN.

- Step 5** Choose a template from the drop-down list to apply it to the controller.  
To create a new WLAN template, click **Click here** link to be redirected to the template creation page.
- Step 6** Choose **WPA1+WPA2** from the Layer 2 Security drop-down list.
- Step 7** Check the **Status** check box under General Policies to enable the WLAN.  
If NAC is enabled and you have created a quarantined VLAN for use with this, make sure to select it from the **Interface** drop-down list under General Policies. Also, check the **Allow AAA Override** check box to ensure that the controller validates a quarantine VLAN assignment.
- Step 8** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring the Switch at the Remote Site](#)
- [Configuring the Controller for a Locally Switched WLAN](#)
- [Configuring the Controller for a Centrally Switched WLAN for Guest Access](#)

## Configuring the Controller for a Locally Switched WLAN

To create a locally switched WLAN:

---

- Step 1** Create a new WLAN as described in *Configuring the Controller for a Centrally Switched WLAN*, Step 1 to Step 5.
- Step 2** Click the WLAN ID and modify the configuration parameters.  
Choose **WPA1+WPA2** from the Layer 2 Security drop-down list. Make sure you choose **PSK authentication key management** and enter a preshared key.
- Step 3** Check the **Admin Status** check box to this WLAN.
- Step 4** Check the **FlexConnect Local Switching** check box to enable local switching.
- Step 5** Click **Save** to commit your changes.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring the Switch at the Remote Site](#)
- [Configuring the Controller for a Centrally Switched WLAN](#)
- [Configuring the Controller for a Centrally Switched WLAN for Guest Access](#)

## Configuring the Controller for a Centrally Switched WLAN for Guest Access

To create a Centrally Switched WLAN for Guest Access to tunnel guest traffic to the controller:

- 
- Step 1** Create a new WLAN as described in *Configuring the Controller for a Centrally Switched WLAN*, Step 1 to Step 5.
- Step 2** Click the WLAN to modify the following configuration parameters:
- Choose **None** from the Layer 2 Security and Layer 3 Security drop-down lists on the **Security** tab.
  - Check the **Web Policy** check box.
  - Select **Authentication**.
  - Configure a preauthentication access control list (ACL) on the WLAN if you are using an external web server, and then choose this ACL as the WLAN preauthentication ACL.
- Step 3** Check the **Status** check box under General Policies to enable the WLAN.
- Step 4** Click **Save** to commit your changes.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring the Switch at the Remote Site](#)
- [Configuring the Controller for a Centrally Switched WLAN](#)
- [Configuring the Controller for a Locally Switched WLAN](#)
- [Adding Guest Users to a Centrally Switched WLAN for Guest Access](#)
- [Web Authentication Templates](#)

**Adding Guest Users to a Centrally Switched WLAN for Guest Access**

To add a local user:

- 
- Step 1** Select **Configure > Controller Template Launch Pad**.
- Step 2** Select **Security > Local Net Users** from the left sidebar menu.
- Step 3** From the **Select a Command** drop-down list select **Add Template** click **Go**.
- Step 4** Uncheck the **Import from File** check box.
- Step 5** Enter a username and password for the local user.
- Step 6** From the Profile drop-down list, choose the appropriate SSID.
- Step 7** Enter a description of the guest user account.
- Step 8** Click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring the Controller for a Centrally Switched WLAN for Guest Access](#)

**Configuring an AP for FlexConnect**

To configure an AP for FlexConnect, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Add the AP physically to the network.

- Step 2** Select **Configure > Access Points**.
- Step 3** Select the AP from the AP Name list.
- Step 4** Select **Configure > AP Configuration Templates > Lightweight AP** or **Autonomous AP** if the AP Mode field does not display FlexConnect.  
If the AP Mode field displays FlexConnect skip to Step 8.
- Step 5** Select the AP from the AP Name list. The Lightweight AP Template Detail page appears.
- Step 6** Check the **FlexConnect Mode supported** check box to view all the profile mappings.  
If you are changing the mode to FlexConnect and if the AP is not already in FlexConnect mode, all other FlexConnect parameters are not applied on the AP.
- Step 7** Check **VLAN Support** check box and enter the number of the native VLAN on the remote network in the Native VLAN ID text box.
- Step 8** Click the **Apply/Schedule** tab to save your changes.
- Step 9** Click the **Edit** link in the Locally Switched VLANs section to change the number of VLANs from which a client IP address is obtained.
- Step 10** Click **Save** to save your changes.  
Repeat this procedure for any additional APs that need to be configured for FlexConnect at the remote site.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring the Switch at the Remote Site](#)
- [Configuring the Controller for a Centrally Switched WLAN](#)
- [Configuring the Controller for a Locally Switched WLAN](#)

## Connecting Client Devices to the WLANs

Follow the instructions for your client device to create profiles that connect to the WLANs you created while configuring the controller.

In our example, you create three profiles on the client:

1. To connect to the centrally switched WLAN, create a client profile that uses WPA/WPA2 with PEAP-MSCHAPV2 authentication. When the client becomes authenticated, it gets an IP address from the management VLAN of the controller.
2. To connect to the locally switched WLAN, create a client profile that uses WPA/WPA2 authentication. When the client becomes authenticated, it gets an IP address from VLAN 101 on the local switch.
3. To connect to the centrally switched WLAN for Guest Access, create a profile that uses open authentication. When the client becomes authenticated, it gets an IP address from VLAN 101 on the network local to the AP. After the client connects, the local user types any HTTP address in the web browser. You are automatically directed to the controller to complete the web-authentication process. When the web login page appears, enter the username and password.

To see if data traffic of the client is being locally or centrally switched, choose **Monitor > Devices > Clients**.

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring the Switch at the Remote Site](#)
- [Configuring the Controller for a Centrally Switched WLAN](#)
- [Configuring the Controller for a Locally Switched WLAN](#)
- [Configuring the Controller for a Centrally Switched WLAN for Guest Access](#)

## FlexConnect AP Groups

FlexConnect enables you to configure and control APs in a remote location through a wide area network (WAN) link without deploying a controller in each location. There is no deployment restriction on the number of FlexConnect APs per location, but you can organize and group the APs.

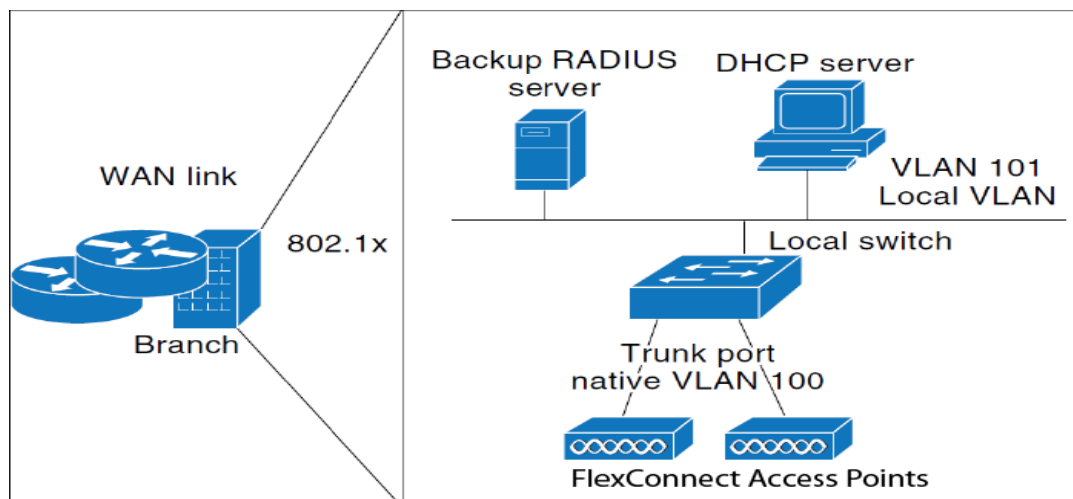
By forming AP groups with similar configurations, a procedure such as CCKM fast roaming can be processed faster than going through the controller individually.

For example, to activate CCKM fast roaming, the FlexConnect APs must know the CCKM cache for all devices that could associate with it. If you have a controller with 300 APs and 1000 devices that can potentially connect, it is quicker and more practical to process and send the CCKM cache for the FlexConnect group rather than for all 1000 devices. One particular FlexConnect group could focus on a small number of APs so that devices in that group connect to and roam between those few APs. With the established group, features such as CCKM cache and backup RADIUS are configured for the entire FlexConnect group rather than being configured in each AP.

All of the FlexConnect APs in a group share the same WLAN, backup RADIUS server, CCKM, and local authentication configuration information. This feature is helpful if you have multiple FlexConnect APs in a remote office or on the floor of a building and you want to configure them all at once. For example, you can configure a backup RADIUS server for a FlexConnect group rather than having to configure the same server on each AP.

The following figure illustrates a typical FlexConnect group deployment with a backup RADIUS server in the branch office.

**Figure 21-4 FlexConnect Group Deployment**



**Related Topics**

- [FlexConnect Groups and Backup RADIUS Servers](#)
- [FlexConnect Groups and CCKM](#)
- [FlexConnect Groups and Local Authentication](#)
- [Auditing FlexConnect Groups](#)

## FlexConnect Groups and Backup RADIUS Servers

You can configure the controller to allow a FlexConnect AP in standalone mode to perform full 802.1x authentication to a backup RADIUS server. You can either configure a primary RADIUS server or both a primary and secondary RADIUS server.

**Related Topics**

- [FlexConnect Groups and CCKM](#)
- [FlexConnect Groups and Local Authentication](#)
- [Auditing FlexConnect Groups](#)

## FlexConnect Groups and CCKM

FlexConnect groups are required for CCKM fast roaming. When you configure your WLAN for CCKM fast secure roaming, EAP-enabled clients securely roam from one access point to another without the need to re-authenticate with the RADIUS server. Using CCKM, an access point uses a fast re-keying technique that enables Cisco client devices to roam from one access point to another typically in under 150 milliseconds. CCKM fast secure roaming ensures that there is no perceptible delay in time-sensitive applications. The FlexConnect access points obtain the CCKM cache information for all the clients that might associate so they can process it quickly instead of sending it back to the controller.

For example, if you have a controller with 300 APs and 100 clients that might associate, sending the CCKM cache for all 100 clients is not practical. If you create a FlexConnect group comprising a limited number of APs, the clients roam only among those four APs, and the CCKM cache is distributed among those four APs only when the clients associate to one of them.

CCKM fast roaming between FlexConnect and non-FlexConnect APs is not supported.

**Related Topics**

- [FlexConnect Groups and Backup RADIUS Servers](#)
- [FlexConnect Groups and Local Authentication](#)
- [Auditing FlexConnect Groups](#)

## FlexConnect Groups and Local Authentication

You can configure the controller to allow a FlexConnect AP in standalone mode to perform LEAP or EAP-FAST authentication for up to 20 statically configured users. The controller sends the static list of usernames and passwords to each FlexConnect AP when it joins the controller. Each AP in the group authenticates only its own associated clients.

This feature is ideal for customers who are migrating from an autonomous AP network to a lightweight FlexConnect AP network and are not interested in maintaining a large user database nor adding another hardware device to replace the RADIUS server functionality available in the autonomous AP.

LEAP or EAP-FAST authentication can be used in conjunction with the FlexConnect backup RADIUS server. If a FlexConnect group is configured with both a backup RADIUS server and local authentication, the FlexConnect AP always attempts to authenticate clients using the primary backup RADIUS server first, followed by the secondary backup RADIUS server (if the primary is not reachable), and finally the FlexConnect AP itself (if the primary and secondary RADIUS servers are not reachable).

#### Related Topics

- [FlexConnect Groups and Backup RADIUS Servers](#)
- [FlexConnect Groups and CCKM](#)
- [Configuring FlexConnect AP Groups](#)
- [Auditing FlexConnect Groups](#)

## Viewing FlexConnect AP Groups

You can view a list of existing FlexConnect AP groups.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **FlexConnect > FlexConnect AP Groups**. The FlexConnect AP Groups page opens.
  - Step 4** Click the group name to view details about the FlexConnect AP group.
- 

## Configuring FlexConnect AP Groups

To configure a FlexConnect AP group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **FlexConnect > FlexConnect AP Groups**.
  - Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, click **Add FlexConnect AP Group** to open the FlexConnect AP Group > Add From Template pane.
  - Step 5** Choose a template from the Select a template to apply to this controller drop-down list.
  - Step 6** Click **Apply**.
  - Step 7** Configure the required FlexConnect AP Group parameters. You can add, edit, or remove any of the following mappings by clicking the required tab:
    - VLAN-ACL Mapping—Valid VLAN ID range is 1-4094.
    - WLAN-ACL Mapping—Select the FlexConnect access control list for external web authentication. You can add up to a maximum of 16 WebAuth ACLs.



- WebPolicy ACL—Select the FlexConnect access control list to be added as a web policy. You can add up to a maximum of 16 Web-Policy ACLs.
- Local Split
- Central DHCP
  - Central DHCP—When you enable this feature, the DHCP packets received from APs are centrally switched to the controller and then forwarded to the corresponding VLAN based on the AP and the SSID.
  - Override DNS—You can enable or disable the overriding of the DNS server address on the interface assigned to the locally switched WLAN. When you override DNS in centrally switched WLANs, the clients get their DNS server IP address from the AP, not from the controller.
  - NAT-PAT—You can enable or disable Network Address Translation (NAT) and Port Address Translation (PAT) on locally switched WLANs. You must enable Central DHCP Processing to enable NAT and PAT.

**Step 8** To see if an individual access point belongs to a FlexConnect group, click the **Users configured in the group** link. The FlexConnect AP Group page shows the names of the groups and the access points that belong in it.

**Step 9** Click **Save**.

**Step 10** To delete an existing FlexConnect AP group, select the check box of the group you want to remove, and choose **Delete FlexConnect AP Group** from the Select a command drop-down list.

---

#### Related Topic

Add xref to Ref Guide.

- [Verifying APs in FlexConnect Groups](#)

## Verifying APs in FlexConnect Groups

To verify that an individual AP belongs to a FlexConnect group, click the **Users configured in the group** link. It takes you to the FlexConnect AP Group page, which shows the names of the groups and the APs that belong to it.

#### Related Topics

- [Auditing FlexConnect Groups](#)

## Auditing FlexConnect Groups

If the FlexConnect configuration changes over a period of time either on Prime Infrastructure or the controller, you can audit the configuration. The changes are visible on subsequent screens. You can choose to synchronize the configuration by refreshing Prime Infrastructure or the controller.

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring FlexConnect AP Groups](#)
- [Viewing FlexConnect AP Groups](#)

# Configuring Controller Security Parameters

- [Configuring Controller File Encryption](#)
- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)
- [Local EAP on Controllers](#)
- [Configuring Controller Web Auth Certificates](#)
- [Configuring Controller User Login Policies](#)
- [Managing Manually Disabled Clients](#)
- [Configuring Controller Access Control Lists](#)
- [Configuring CPU Access Control Lists](#)
- [Configuring the IDS Sensor List](#)
- [Certificate Authority \(CA\) Certificates](#)
- [Identity Certificates](#)
- [Configuring Controller Web Auth Certificates](#)
- [Configuring Wireless Protection Policies](#)
- [Configuring Rogue Policies](#)
- [Configuring Rogue AP Rules](#)
- [Configuring Client Exclusion Policies](#)
- [Viewing Controller Standard Signature Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Custom Signatures](#)
- [Configuring AP Authentication and MFP](#)

## Configuring Controller File Encryption

You can configure file encryption to ensure that data is encrypted when you upload or download controller configuration files from a TFTP server.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > File Encryption**.
  - Step 4** Check the **File Encryption** box.
  - Step 5** In the Encryption Key field, enter a text string of exactly 16 characters. Reenter the key in the Confirm Encryption Key field.
  - Step 6** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Controller Security Parameters](#)

## Configuring Controllers AAA Security

This section describes how to configure controller security AAA parameters and contains the following topics:

- [Configuring AAA General Parameters](#)
- [Viewing AAA RADIUS Auth Servers](#)
- [Viewing AAA RADIUS Acct Servers](#)
- [Configuring AAA RADIUS Fallback Parameters](#)
- [Configuring AAA LDAP Servers](#)
- [Configuring AAA TACACS+ Servers](#)
- [Viewing AAA Local Net Users](#)
- [Configuring AAA MAC Filtering](#)
- [Configuring AAA AP/MSE Authorization](#)
- [Configuring AAA Web Auth Configuration](#)
- [Configuring AAA Web Auth Configuration](#)

### Configuring AAA General Parameters

The General page allows you to configure the local database entries on a controller.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > General - AAA**.
- Step 4** Enter the maximum number of allowed database entries. The valid range is 512 - 2048.
- Step 5** Reboot your server to apply the changes.
- 

#### Related Topic

- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)

### Viewing AAA RADIUS Auth Servers

You can view a summary of existing RADIUS authentication servers

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > RADIUS Auth Servers**. The following RADIUS Auth Servers parameters appear:
- **Server Index**—Access priority number for the RADIUS server (display only). Click to go to **Configure IPaddr > RADIUS Authentication Server**.

- Server Address—IP address of the RADIUS server (read-only).
  - Port Number—Controller port number (read-only).
  - Admin Status—Enable or Disable.
  - Network User—Enable or Disable.
  - Management User—Enable or Disable.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)
- [Adding Authentication Servers](#)

## Adding Authentication Servers

To add an authentication server, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > RADIUS Auth Servers**.
  - Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Auth Server** to open the Radius Authentication Server > Add From Template page.
  - Step 5** Choose a template from the Select a template to apply to this controller drop-down list.
  - Step 6** Click **Apply**.

To create a new template for Radius authentication servers, choose **Configuration > Templates > Features and Technologies > Controller > Security > AAA > RADIUS Auth Servers**.

---

#### Related Topic

- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)
- [Viewing AAA RADIUS Auth Servers](#)

## Viewing AAA RADIUS Acct Servers

To view a summary of existing RADIUS accounting servers, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > RADIUS Acct Servers**. RADIUS Acct Server parameters include the following:
    - Server Index—Access priority number for the RADIUS server (read-only). Click to open the Radius Acct Servers Details page.

To edit or audit the current accounting server parameters, click the Server Index for the applicable accounting server.

- Server Address—IP address of the RADIUS server (read-only).
  - Port Number—Controller port number (read-only).
  - Admin Status—Enable or Disable.
  - Network User—Enable or Disable.
- 

#### Related Topic

- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)
- [Adding an Accounting Server](#)

## Adding an Accounting Server

To add an accounting server, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > RADIUS Acct Servers**.
  - Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Acct Server** to open the Radius Acct Servers Details > Add From Template page.
  - Step 5** Choose a template from the Select a template to apply to this controller drop-down list.
  - Step 6** From the drop-down list, choose a controller on which to apply to this template.
  - Step 7** Click **Apply**.

To create a new template for Radius accounting servers, choose **Configuration > Templates > Features and Technologies > Controller > Security > AAA > RADIUS Acct Servers**.

---

#### Related Topic

- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)
- [Viewing AAA RADIUS Acct Servers](#)

## Deleting an Accounting Server

To delete an accounting server, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > RADIUS Acct Servers**.
  - Step 4** Select the check box(es) for the applicable accounting server(s).

- Step 5** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Delete Acct Server**.
- Step 6** Click **Go**.
- Step 7** Click **OK** in the pop-up dialog box to confirm the deletion.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)
- [Viewing AAA RADIUS Acct Servers](#)

## Configuring AAA RADIUS Fallback Parameters

To configure RADIUS fallback parameters, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > RADIUS Fallback**.
- Step 4** Make the required changes, then click **Save**.
- Step 5** Click **Audit** to check the present configuration status of Prime Infrastructure and the controller.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)

## Configuring AAA LDAP Servers

You can add and delete LDAP servers to controllers. Prime Infrastructure supports LDAP configuration for both an anonymous or authenticated bind.

To access the LDAP Servers page, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > LDAP Servers**.

This page displays LDAP servers currently used by this controller and contains the following parameters:

- Check box—Select the check box to choose an LDAP server for deletion.
- Server Index—A number assigned to identify the LDAP server. Click the index number to go the LDAP server configuration page.
- Server Address—The LDAP server IP address.
- Port Number—The port number used to communicate with the LDAP server.
- Admin Status—Server template status.

Indicates if use of the LDAP server template is enabled or disabled.

- Step 4** Click on a column title to toggle whether the information is sorted in ascending or descending order.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring New LDAP Bind Requests](#)
- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)

## Adding LDAP Servers

To add an LDAP Server, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > LDAP Servers**.
- Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add LDAP Server**.
- Step 5** Click **Go**.
- 

#### Related Topic

- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)

## Deleting LDAP Servers

To delete the LDAP Server, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > LDAP Servers**.
- Step 4** Select the check box(es) of the LDAP servers that you want to delete.
- Step 5** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Delete LDAP Servers**.
- Step 6** Click **Go**.
- 

#### Related Topic

- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)

## Configuring New LDAP Bind Requests

Prime Infrastructure supports LDAP configuration for both an anonymous or authenticated bind. A bind is a socket opening that performs a lookup.

To configure LDAP bind requests, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > LDAP Servers**.
  - Step 4** Click a value under the Server Index column.
  - Step 5** From the Bind Type drop-down list, choose **Authenticated** or **Anonymous**. If you choose Authenticated, you must enter a bind username and password as well.
  - Step 6** In the Server User Base DN text box, enter the distinguished name of the subtree in the LDAP server that contains a list of all the users.
  - Step 7** In the Server User Attribute text box, enter the attribute that contains the username in the LDAP server.
  - Step 8** In the Server User Type text box, enter the ObjectType attribute that identifies the user.
  - Step 9** In the Retransmit Timeout text box, enter the number of seconds between retransmissions. The valid range is 2 to 30 seconds, and the default value is 2 seconds.
  - Step 10** Select the **Admin Status** check box if you want the LDAP server to have administrative privileges.
  - Step 11** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topic

- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)

## Configuring AAA TACACS+ Servers

You can add and delete TACACS+ servers to controllers. To access the TACACS+ Servers page, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > TACACS+ Servers**.

This page displays TACACS+ servers currently used by this controller and contains the following parameters:

- Check box—Select the check box to choose a TACACS+ server for deletion.
- Server Type—The TACACS+ server type—accounting, authorization, or authentication.
- Server Index—A number assigned to identify the TACACS+ server and set its use priority. Click the index number to go to the TACACS+ server configuration page.
- Server Address—The TACACS+ server IP address.
- Port Number—The port number used to communicate with the TACACS+ server.
- Admin Status—Server template status. Indicates if use of the TACACS+ server template is enabled.

You can select one of the following options from the Select a command drop-down list:



- Add TACACS+ Server—Choose this option, then click **Go** to add a TACACS+ server to the controller.
  - Delete TACACS+ Servers—Choose this option, then click **Go** to delete all TACACS+ servers with a selected check box from the controller.
- Step 4** Click on a column title to toggle whether the information is sorted in ascending or descending order.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)

## Viewing AAA Local Net Users

You can view summary of the existing local network user controllers for clients who are allowed to access a specific WLAN. This is an administrative bypass of the RADIUS authentication process. Layer 3 Web Authentication must be enabled. The client information is passed to the RADIUS authentication server first, and if the client information does not match a RADIUS database entry, this local database is polled. Clients located in this database are granted access to network services if the RADIUS authentication fails or does not exist.

To view existing local network users, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > Local Net Users**. The Local Net Users page displays the following local net user parameters:
- Username—User-defined identification.
  - WLAN ID—Any WLAN ID, 1 through 16; 0 for all WLANs; 17 for third-party WLAN that this local net user is allowed to access.
  - Description—Optional user-defined description.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Deleting Local Net Users](#)
- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)

## Deleting Local Net Users

To delete a local net user, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > Local Net Users**.
- Step 4** Select the check box(es) for the applicable local net user(s).

- Step 5** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Delete Local Net Users**.
- Step 6** Click **Go**.
- Step 7** Click **OK** in the dialog box to confirm the deletion.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)

## Configuring AAA MAC Filtering

You can view MAC Filter information. You cannot use MAC address in the broadcast range.

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > MAC Filtering**. The MAC Filtering page displays the following parameters:
- MAC Filter Parameters
    - RADIUS Compatibility Mode—User-defined RADIUS server compatibility: Cisco ACS, FreeRADIUS, or Other.
    - MAC Delimiter—The MAC delimiters can be Colon (xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx), Hyphen (xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx), Single Hyphen (xxxxxx-xxxxxx), or No Delimiter (xxxxxxxxxxxx), as required by the RADIUS server.
  - MAC Filters
    - MAC Address—Client MAC address. Click to open *Configure IPaddr > MAC Filter*.
    - WLAN ID—1 through 16, 17 = Third-party AP WLAN, or 0 = all WLANs.
    - Interface—Displays the associated Interface Name.
    - Description—Displays an optional user-defined description.
- Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add MAC Filters** to add a MAC Filter, **Delete MAC Filters** to delete the template(s), or **Edit MAC Filter Parameters** to edit the MAC Filters.
- Step 5** Click **Go**.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)

## Configuring AAA AP/MSE Authorization

The AP/MSE Authorization page displays the access point policies and the list of authorized access points along with the type of certificate that an access point uses for authorization.

You cannot use MAC address in the broadcast range.

To access the AP/MSE Authorization page, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > AP or MSE Authorization**. The AP/MSE Authorization page displays the following parameters:
- AP Policies
    - Authorize APs—Enabled or Disabled.
    - Accept SSC-APs—Enabled or Disabled.
  - AP/MSE Authorization
    - AP/MSE Base Radio MAC Address—The MAC address of the authorized access point. Click the AP/MSE Base Radio MAC Address to view AP/MSE Authorization details.
    - Type
    - Certificate Type—MIC or SSC.
    - Key Hash—The 40-hex long SHA1 key hash. The key hash is displayed only if the certificate type is SSC.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Editing AP/MSE Policies](#)
- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)

## Editing AP/MSE Policies

To edit AP/MSE Authorization access point policies, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > AP or MSE Authorization**.
- Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, select Edit AP Policies, then click **Go**.
- Step 5** Edit the following parameters, if necessary:
- Authorize APs—Select the check box to enable access point authorization.
  - Accept SSC-APs—Select the check box to enable the acceptance of SSE access points.
- Step 6** Click **Save** to confirm the changes, **Audit** to perform an audit on these device values, or **Cancel** to close this page with no changes.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)

## Configuring AAA Web Auth Configuration

The Web Auth Configuration page enables the user to configure the web auth configuration type. If the type is configured as customized, the user downloaded web auth replaces the controller-provided internal web auth page.

To access the Web Auth Configuration page, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > Web Auth Configuration**.
- Step 4** Select the Web Auth Type from the drop-down list.
- Step 5** Configure the web auth parameters depending on the type chosen:
- Default Internal
    - Custom Redirect URL—URL where the user is redirected after a successful authentication. For example, if the value entered for this text box is `http://www.example.com`, the user is directed to the company home page.
    - Logo Display—Enable or disable logo display.
    - Web Auth Page Title—Title displayed on web authentication page.
    - Web Auth Page Message—Message displayed on web authentication page.
  - Customized Web Auth
 

You can download an example login page and customizing the page. If you are using a customized web authentication page, it is necessary to download the example login.tar bundle file from the server, edit the login.html file and save it as either a .tar or .zip file, then download the .tar or .zip file to the controller.

Click the preview image to download this sample login page as a TAR. After editing the HTML you might click here to redirect to the Download Web Auth page. See the [Downloading Customized WebAuthentication Bundles to Controllers](#) for more information.
  - External
    - External Redirect URL—Location of the login.html on an external server on the network.
 

If there are not any external web auth servers configured, you have the option of configuring one.
- 

### Related Topic

- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)
- [Downloading Customized WebAuthentication Bundles to Controllers](#)

## Configuring AAA Password Policy

This page enables you to determine your password policy.

To make modifications to an existing password policy, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > AAA > Password Policy**.
- Step 4** Modify the password policy parameters as appropriate.
- Step 5** Click **Save**.

If you disable password policy options, you see a “Disabling the strong password check(s) will be a security risk as it allows weak passwords” message.

---

**Related Topic**

- [Configuring Controllers AAA Security](#)

## Local EAP on Controllers

Local EAP is an authentication method that allows users and wireless clients to be authenticated locally. It is designed for use in remote offices that want to maintain connectivity to wireless clients when the backend system becomes disrupted or the external authentication server goes down.

When you enable local EAP, the controller serves as the authentication server and the local user database, making it independent of an external authentication server. Local EAP retrieves user credentials from the local user database or the LDAP backend database to authenticate users.

**Related Topic**

- [Configuring Local EAP General Parameters](#)
- [Local EAP Profiles](#)
- [Configuring Local EAP General EAP-FAST Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Local EAP General Network Users Priority](#)

## Configuring Local EAP General Parameters

You can specify a timeout value for local EAP. You can then add a template with this timeout value or make changes to an existing template.

If any RADIUS servers are configured on the controller, the controller tries to authenticate the wireless clients using the RADIUS servers first. Local EAP is attempted only if no RADIUS servers are found, either because the RADIUS servers timed out or no RADIUS servers were configured. If four RADIUS servers are configured, the controller attempts to authenticate the client with the first RADIUS server, then the second RADIUS server, and then local EAP. If the client attempts to then re-authenticate manually, the controller tries the third RADIUS server, then the fourth RADIUS server, and then local EAP.

To specify a timeout value for local EAP, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.

- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > Local EAP > General - Local EAP**.
- Step 4** Enter the Local Auth Active Timeout in the Local Auth Active Timeout text box (in seconds). Local Auth Active Timeout refers to the timeout period during which Local EAP is always used after all Radius servers are failed.
- Step 5** The following values should be adjusted if you are using EAP-FAST, manual password entry, one-time password, or 7920/7921 phones.
- You must increase the 802.1x timeout values on the controller (default=2 seconds) for the client to obtain the PAC using automatic provisioning. We recommend the default timeout on the Cisco ACS server of 20 seconds.
- Local EAP Identify Request Timeout =1 (in seconds)
  - Local EAP Identity Request Maximum Retries=20 (in seconds)
  - Local EAP Dynamic Wep Key Index=0
  - Local EAP Request Timeout=20 (in seconds)
  - Local EAP Request Maximum Retries=2
  - EAPOL-Key Timeout=1000 (in milli-seconds)
  - EAPOL-Key Max Retries=2
  - Max-Login Ignore Identity Response
- Roaming fails if these values are not set the same across multiple controllers.
- Step 6** Click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Local EAP on Controllers](#)
- [Local EAP Profiles](#)
- [Configuring Local EAP General EAP-FAST Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Local EAP General Network Users Priority](#)

**Local EAP Profiles**

You can apply a template for a local EAP profile or make modifications to an existing template.

The LDAP backend database supports only these local EAP methods: EAP-TLS and EAP-FAST with certificates. LEAP and EAP-FAST with PACs are not supported for use with the LDAP backend database.

**Related Topics**

- [Viewing Existing Local EAP Profiles](#)
- [Adding Local EAP Profiles](#)
- [Local EAP on Controllers](#)

**Viewing Existing Local EAP Profiles**

To view existing local EAP profiles, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > Local EAP > Local EAP Profiles**. The Local EAP Profiles page displays the following parameters:
- EAP Profile Name—User-defined identification.
  - LEAP—Authentication type that leverages Cisco Key Integrity Protocol (CKIP) and MMH message integrity check (MIC) for data protection. A username and password are used to perform mutual authentication with the RADIUS server through the access point.
  - EAP-FAST—Authentication type (Flexible Authentication via Secure Tunneling) that uses a three-phased tunnel authentication process to provide advanced 802.1x EAP mutual authentication. A username, password, and PAC (protected access credential) are used to perform mutual authentication with the RADIUS server through the access point.
  - TLS—Authentication type that uses a dynamic session-based WEP key derived from the client adapter and RADIUS server to encrypt data. It requires a client certificate for authentication.
  - PEAP—Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Local EAP on Controllers](#)
- [Local EAP Profiles](#)

## Adding Local EAP Profiles

To add a local EAP profile, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > Local EAP > Local EAP Profile**.
- Step 4** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Add Local EAP Profile**.
- Step 5** Choose a template from the Select a template to apply to this controller drop-down list.
- Step 6** Click **Apply**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Local EAP on Controllers](#)
- [Local EAP Profiles](#)
- [Configuring Local EAP General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Local EAP General EAP-FAST Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Local EAP General Network Users Priority](#)

## Configuring Local EAP General EAP-FAST Parameters

The EAP-FAST authentication type (Flexible Authentication via Secure Tunneling) uses a three-phased tunnel authentication process to provide advanced 802.1x EAP mutual authentication. A username, password, and PAC are used to perform mutual authentication with the RADIUS server through the access point.

To set EAP-FAST Parameters, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > Local EAP > EAP-FAST Parameters**.
- Step 4** Enter the following parameters:
- Time to live for the PAC—The number of days for the PAC to remain viable. The valid range is 1 to 1000 days; the default setting is ten days.
  - Authority ID—The authority identifier of the local EAP-FAST server in hexadecimal characters. You can enter up to 32 hexadecimal characters but it must be an even number of characters.
  - Authority Info—The authority identifier of the local EAP-FAST server in text format.
  - Server Key—The key (in hexadecimal characters) used to encrypt and decrypt PACs.
  - Confirm Server Key—Verify the correct Server Key by re-typing it.
  - Anonymous Provision—Select the check box to enable anonymous provisioning. This feature allows PACs to be sent automatically to clients that do not have one during PAC provisioning. If this feature is disabled, PACs must be manually provisioned.
- Step 5** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Local EAP on Controllers](#)
- [Local EAP Profiles](#)
- [Configuring Local EAP General Parameters](#)
- [Local EAP Profiles](#)
- [Configuring Local EAP General Network Users Priority](#)

## Configuring Local EAP General Network Users Priority

To specify the order that LDAP and local databases use to retrieve user credential information, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > Local EAP > Network Users Priority**.
- Step 4** Use the left and right pointing arrows to include or exclude network credentials in the right-most list.



- Step 5** Use the up and down buttons to determine the order credentials are attempted.
- Step 6** Click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Local EAP on Controllers](#)
- [Local EAP Profiles](#)
- [Certificate Authority \(CA\) Certificates](#)
- [Configuring Controller Web Auth Certificates](#)

## Configuring Controller Web Auth Certificates

You can download a web authorization certificate or regenerate the internally-generated web auth certificate.

**Caution**

Each certificate has a variable-length embedded RSA Key. The RSA key can vary from 512 bits, which is relatively insecure, through thousands of bits, which is very secure. When you are obtaining a new certificate from a certificate authority (such as the Microsoft CA), make sure the RSA key embedded in the certificate is at least 768 Bits.

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > Web Auth Certificate**.
- Step 4** Click **Download Web Auth Certificate** to access the Download Web Auth Certificate to Controller page.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Local EAP on Controllers](#)
- [Configuring Local EAP General Parameters](#)
- [Local EAP Profiles](#)
- [Configuring Local EAP General EAP-FAST Parameters](#)

## Configuring Controller User Login Policies

To configure the user login policies for controllers, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.

- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > User Login Policies**.
- Step 4** Enter the maximum number of concurrent logins allowed for a single username.
- Step 5** Click **Save**.
- 

## Managing Manually Disabled Clients

The Disabled Clients page enables you to view excluded (blacklisted) client information.

Clients who fail to authenticate three times when attempting to associate are automatically blocked, or excluded, from further association attempts for an operator-defined timeout. After the Excluded timeout, the client is allowed to retry authentication until it associates or fails authentication and is excluded again.

You cannot use MAC address in the broadcast range.

To access the Manually Disabled Clients page, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > Manually Disabled Clients**. The Manually Disabled Clients page displays the following parameters:
- **MAC Address**—Disabled Client MAC addresses. Click a list item to edit the disabled client description.
  - **Description**—Optional description of disabled client.
- 

## Configuring Controller Access Control Lists

You can view, edit, or add a new access control list (ACLs) for controllers.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > Access Control Lists**.
- **Check box**—Use the check box to select one or more ACLs for deletion.
  - **ACL Name**—User-defined name of this template. Click an ACL item to view its parameters.
- 

### Related Topic

- [Configuring Access Control List Rules](#)
- [Configuring CPU Access Control Lists](#)

## Configuring Access Control List Rules

You can create and modify access control list Access Control Lists (ACL) rules applied to controllers.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > Access Control Lists**.
- Step 4** Click an ACL name.

- Check box—Select to delete access control list rules.
- Seq#—You can define up to 64 Rules for each ACL. The Rules for each ACL are listed in contiguous sequence from 1 to 64. That is, if Rules 1 through 4 are already defined and you add Rule 29, it is added as Rule 5.

If you add or change a Sequence number, Prime Infrastructure adjusts the other rule sequence numbers to retain the contiguous sequence. For instance, if you have Sequence numbers 1 through 7 defined and change number 7 to 5, operating system automatically reassigns Sequence 6 to 7 and Sequence 5 to 6.

- Action—Permit, Deny.
- Source IP/Mask—Source IP address and mask.
- Destination IP/Mask—Destination IP address and mask.
- Protocol—Protocol to use for this ACL:
  - Any—All protocols
  - TCP—Transmission Control Protocol
  - UDP—User Datagram Protocol
  - ICMP—Internet Control Message Protocol
  - ESP—IP Encapsulating Security Payload
  - AH—Authentication Header
  - GRE—Generic Routing Encapsulation
  - IP—Internet Protocol
  - Eth Over IP—Ethernet over Internet Protocol
  - Other Port OSPF—Open Shortest Path First
  - Other—Any other IANA protocol (<http://www.iana.org/>)

If TCP or UDP is selected, Source Port and Dest Port parameters appear:

- Source Port—Source Port. Can be Any, HTTP, HTTPS, Telnet, RADIUS, DHCP Server, DHCP Client, DNS, L2TP, PPTP control, FTP control, SMTP, SNMP, LDAP, Kerberos, NetBIOS NS, NetBIOS DS, NetBIOS SS, MS Dir Server, Other and Port Range.
- Dest Port—Destination port. If TCP or UDP is selected, can be Any, HTTP, HTTPS, Telnet, RADIUS, DHCP Server, DHCP Client, DNS, L2TP, PPTP control, FTP control, SMTP, SNMP, LDAP, Kerberos, NetBIOS NS, NetBIOS DS, NetBIOS SS, MS Dir Server, Other and Port Range.

- DSCP (Differentiated Services Code Point)—Any, or 0 through 255.
- 

## Adding New ACL Rules

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > Access Control Lists**.
  - Step 4** Click an ACL name.
  - Step 5** Click an applicable Seq#, or choose **Add New Rule** to access this page.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Controller Access Control Lists](#)
- [Configuring CPU Access Control Lists](#)

## FlexConnect Access Control Lists

The ACLs on FlexConnect provide a mechanism to cater to the need for access control at the FlexConnect access point for protection and integrity of locally switched data traffic from the access point.

### Related Topics

- [Adding FlexConnect Access Control Lists](#)
- [Deleting FlexConnect Access Control Lists](#)

## Adding FlexConnect Access Control Lists

To add an Access Control List for FlexConnect access points, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > FlexConnect ACLs**.
  - Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add FlexConnect ACLs**.
  - Step 5** Click **Go**.  
  
You cannot add a FlexConnect ACL if there is no template created. If you try to create an FlexConnect ACL when there are no templates available, you are redirected to the New Controller Templates page where you can create a template for FlexConnect ACL.
  - Step 6** Choose a template from the drop-down list to apply to the controller, and click **Apply**.

The FlexConnect ACL that you created appears in **Configure > Controllers > IP Address > Security > FlexConnect ACLs**.

---

**Related Topics**

- [FlexConnect Access Control Lists](#)

## Deleting FlexConnect Access Control Lists

To delete a FlexConnect ACL, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > FlexConnect ACLs**.
  - Step 4** From the FlexConnect ACLs page, select one or more FlexConnect ACLs to delete.
  - Step 5** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Delete FlexConnect ACLs**.
  - Step 6** Click **Go**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [FlexConnect Access Control Lists](#)

## Configuring CPU Access Control Lists

Access control lists (ACLs) can be applied to the controller CPU to control traffic to the CPU.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > CPU Access Control Lists**.
  - Step 4** Select the **Enable CPU ACL** check box to enable the CPU ACL. The following parameters are available:
    - ACL Name—Choose the ACL to use from the ACL Name drop-down list.
    - CPU ACL Mode—Choose which data traffic direction this CPU ACL list controls.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [FlexConnect Access Control Lists](#)
- [Configuring Controller Access Control Lists](#)
- [Configuring Access Control List Rules](#)

## Configuring the IDS Sensor List

When the sensors identify an attack, they alert the controller to shun the offending client. When you add a new IDS (Intrusion Detection System) sensor, you register the controller with that IDS sensor so that the sensor can send shunned client reports to the controller. The controller also polls the sensor periodically.

To view IDS sensors, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > IDS Sensor Lists**.

The IDS Sensor page lists all IDS sensors that have been configured for this controller. Click an IP address to view details for a specific IDS sensor.

---

## Certificate Authority (CA) Certificates

A Certificate Authority (CA) certificate is a digital certificate issued by one certificate authority (CA) for another certification CA.

### Related Topics

- [Importing CA Certificates](#)
- [Pasting CA Certificates Directly](#)

## Importing CA Certificates

To import a CA certificate from a file, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > IP Sec Certificates > CA Certificate**.
  - Step 4** Click **Browse** to navigate to the applicable certificate file.
  - Step 5** Click **Open**, then click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Certificate Authority \(CA\) Certificates](#)

## Pasting CA Certificates Directly

To paste a CA certificate directly, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Copy the CA certificate to your computer clipboard.
- Step 2** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 3** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 4** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > IP Sec Certificates > CA Certificate**.
- Step 5** Select the **Paste** check box.
- Step 6** Paste the certificate directly into the text box.
- Step 7** Click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Certificate Authority \(CA\) Certificates](#)
- [Identity Certificates](#)
- [Configuring Controller Web Auth Certificates](#)

## Identity Certificates

This page lists the existing network Identity (ID) certificates by certificate name. An ID certificate can be used by web server operators to ensure secure server operation. ID certificates are available only if the controller is running Cisco Unified Wireless Network Software Version 3.2 or higher.

- [Importing ID Certificates](#)
- [Pasting ID Certificates](#)

## Importing ID Certificates

To import an ID certificate from a file, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > IP Sec Certificates > ID Certificate**.
- Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Certificate**.
- Step 5** Click **Go**.
- Step 6** Enter the Name and Password.
- Step 7** Click **Browse** to navigate to the applicable certificate file.
- Step 8** Click **Open**, then click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Identity Certificates](#)

## Pasting ID Certificates

To paste an ID certificate directly, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Copy the ID certificate to your computer clipboard.
  - Step 2** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 3** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 4** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > IP Sec Certificates > ID Certificate**.
  - Step 5** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Certificate**.
  - Step 6** Click **Go**.
  - Step 7** Enter the Name and Password.
  - Step 8** Select the **Paste** check box.
  - Step 9** Paste the certificate directly into the text box.
  - Step 10** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Identity Certificates](#)
- [Certificate Authority \(CA\) Certificates](#)
- [Identity Certificates](#)

## Configuring Wireless Protection Policies

This section describes the wireless protection policy configurations and contains the following topics:

- [Configuring Rogue Policies](#)
- [Configuring Rogue AP Rules](#)
- [Configuring Client Exclusion Policies](#)
- [Viewing Controller Standard Signature Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Custom Signatures](#)
- [Configuring AP Authentication and MFP](#)

## Configuring Rogue Policies

You can set up policies for rogue access points. Make sure that rogue detection is enabled on the desired access points. Rogue detection is enabled by default for all access points joined to a controller (except for OfficeExtend access points). However, in Prime Infrastructure software Release 6.0 or later, you can enable or disable rogue detection for individual access points by selecting or unselecting the **Rogue Detection** check box in the Access Point Details page.

Rogue detection is disabled by default for OfficeExtend access points because these access points, which are deployed in a home environment, are likely to detect a large number of rogue devices

To access the Rogue Policies page, follow these steps:



- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Rogue Policies**. The following parameters appear:
- Rogue Location Discovery Protocol—RLDP determines whether or not the rogue is connected to the enterprise wired network. Choose one of the following from the drop-down list:
    - Disable—Disables RLDP on all access points. This is the default value.
    - All APs—Enables RLDP on all access points.
    - Monitor Mode APs—Enables RLDP only on access points in monitor mode.
  - Rogue APs
    - Expiration Timeout for Rogue AP and Rogue Client Entries (seconds)—Enter the number of seconds after which the rogue access point and client entries expire and are removed from the list. The valid range is 240 to 3600 seconds and the default value is 1200 seconds.  
  
If a rogue access point or client entry times out, it is removed from the controller only if its rogue state is Alert or Threat for any classification type.
    - Rogue Detection Report Interval—Enter the time interval in seconds at which the APs should send the rogue detection report to the controller. Valid range is 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. This feature is applicable to APs that are in monitor mode only.
    - Rogue Detection Minimum RSSI—Enter the minimum RSSI value that a rogue should have for the APs to detect and for the rogue entry to be created in the controller. Valid range is -70 dBm to -128 dBm, and the default value is -128 dBm. This feature is applicable to all the AP modes.  
  
There can be many rogues with very weak RSSI values that do not provide any valuable information in the rogue analysis. Therefore, you can use this option to filter the rogues by specifying the minimum RSSI value at which the APs should detect rogues.
    - Rogue Detection Transient Interval—Enter the time interval at which a rogue has to be consistently scanned for by the AP after the first time the rogue is scanned. By entering the transient interval, you can control the time interval at which the AP should scan for rogues. The APs can filter the rogues based on their transient interval values. Valid range is between 120 seconds to 1800 seconds, and the default value is 0. This feature is applicable to APs that are in monitor mode only.
  - Rogue Clients
    - Validate rogue clients against AAA—Select the check box to use the AAA server or local database to validate if rogue clients are valid clients. The default value is unselected.
    - Detect and report Adhoc networks—Select the check box to enable ad-hoc rogue detection and reporting. The default value is selected.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Wireless Protection Policies](#)
- [Configuring Rogue AP Rules](#)
- [Configuring Client Exclusion Policies](#)
- [Viewing Controller Standard Signature Parameters](#)

- [Configuring Custom Signatures](#)
- [Configuring AP Authentication and MFP](#)

## Configuring Rogue AP Rules

This page enables you to view and edit current Rogue AP Rules.

To access the Rogue AP Rules page, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Rogue AP Rules**. The Rogue AP Rules displays the Rogue AP Rules, the rule types (Malicious or Friendly), and the rule sequence.
  - Step 4** Click a Rogue AP Rule to view or edit its details.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Wireless Protection Policies](#)
- [Configuring Rogue Policies](#)
- [Configuring Client Exclusion Policies](#)
- [Viewing Controller Standard Signature Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Custom Signatures](#)
- [Configuring AP Authentication and MFP](#)

## Configuring Client Exclusion Policies

This page enables you to set, enable, or disable the client exclusion policies applied to the controller.

To access the Client Exclusion Policies page, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Client Exclusion Policies**. The following parameters appear:
    - Excessive 802.11a Association Failures—If enabled, clients are excluded on the sixth 802.11 association attempt, after five consecutive failures.
    - Excessive 802.11a Authentication Failures—If enabled, clients are excluded on the sixth 802.11 authentication attempt, after five consecutive failures.
    - Excessive 802.11x Authentication Failures—If enabled, clients are excluded on the fourth 802.1X authentication attempt, after three consecutive failures.
    - Excessive 802.11 Web Authentication Failures—If enabled, clients are excluded on the fourth web authentication attempt, after three consecutive failures.

- IP Theft Or Reuse—If enabled, clients are excluded if the IP address is already assigned to another device.

**Step 4** Click **Save** to save the changes made to the client exclusion policies and return to the previous page or click **Audit** to compare Prime Infrastructure values with those used on the controller.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Wireless Protection Policies](#)
- [Configuring Rogue Policies](#)
- [Configuring Rogue AP Rules](#)
- [Configuring IDS Signatures](#)
- [Viewing Controller Standard Signature Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Custom Signatures](#)
- [Configuring AP Authentication and MFP](#)

## Configuring IDS Signatures

You can configure IDS Signatures, or bit-pattern matching rules used to identify various types of attacks in incoming 802.11 packets, on the controller. When the signatures are enabled, the access points joined to the controller perform signature analysis on the received 802.11 data or management frames and report any discrepancies to the controller. If an attack is detected, an appropriate mitigation action is initiated.

Cisco supports 17 standard signatures on controllers.

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing Controller Standard Signature Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Custom Signatures](#)
- [Configuring AP Authentication and MFP](#)

## Viewing Controller Standard Signature Parameters

The Standard Signature Parameters page shows the list of Cisco-supplied signatures that are currently on the controller.

To access the Standard Signatures page, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Standard Signatures**. This page displays the following parameters:
- Precedence—The order in which the controller performs the signature checks.
  - Name—The type of attack the signature is trying to detect.

- **Frame Type**—Management or data frame type on which the signature is looking for a security attack.
- **Action**—What the controller is directed to do when the signature detects an attack. For example:
  - **None**—No action is taken.
  - **Report**—Report the detection.
- **State**—Enabled or Disabled.
- **Description**—A more detailed description of the type of attack the signature is trying to detect.

**Step 4** Click a signature Name to view individual parameters and to enable or disable the signature.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring IDS Signatures](#)
- [Uploading Signature Files](#)
- [Global Settings for Standard and Custom Signatures](#)

## Downloading Signature Files

To download a signature file, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Standard Signatures** or **Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Custom Signatures**.
- Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Download Signature Files**.
- Step 5** Click **Go**.
- Step 6** Copy the signature file (\*.sig) to the default directory on your TFTP server.
- Step 7** Choose **Local Machine** from the File is Located On. If you know the filename and path relative to the server root directory, you can also choose **TFTP server**.
- Step 8** Enter the maximum number of times the controller should attempt to download the signature file in the Maximum Retries.
- Step 9** Enter the maximum amount of time in seconds before the controller times out while attempting to download the signature file in the Timeout.
- Step 10** The signature files are uploaded to the c:\tftp directory. Specify the local filename in that directory or click **Browse** to navigate to it. A “revision” line in the signature file specifies whether the file is a Cisco-provided standard signature file or a site-tailored custom signature file (custom signature files must always have revision=custom).

If the transfer times out for some reason, choose the TFTP server option in the File Is Located On field, and the server filename is populated for you and retried. The local machine option initiates a two-step operation. First, the local file is copied from the administrator workstation to Prime Infrastructure own built-in TFTP server. Then the controller retrieves that file. For later operations, the file is already in Prime Infrastructure server TFTP directory, and the downloaded web page now automatically populates the filename.

**Step 11** Click **OK**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring IDS Signatures](#)

## Uploading Signature Files

You can upload a signature file from controllers. Make sure you have a Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) server available for the signature download. Keep these guidelines in mind when setting up a TFTP server:

- If you are downloading through the service port, the TFTP server must be on the same subnet as the service port because the service port cannot be routed.
- If you are downloading through the distribution system network port, the TFTP server can be on the same or a different subnet because the distribution system port cannot be routed.
- A third-party TFTP server cannot run on the same computer as Prime Infrastructure because Prime Infrastructure built-in TFTP server and third-party TFTP server use the same communication port:

---

**Step 1** Obtain a signature file from Cisco (*standard* signature file).

**Step 2** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.

**Step 3** Click the device name of the applicable controller.

**Step 4** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Standard Signatures** or **Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Custom Signatures**.

**Step 5** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Upload Signature Files from controller**.

**Step 6** Specify the TFTP server name being used for the transfer.

**Step 7** If the TFTP server is new, enter the TFTP IP address in the **Server IP Address** field.

**Step 8** Choose **Signature Files** from the File Type drop-down list.

The signature files are uploaded to the root directory which was configured for use by the TFTP server. You can change to a different directory at the Upload to File field (this field only shows if the Server Name is the default server). The controller uses this local filename as a base name and then adds `_std.sig` as a suffix for standard signature files and `_custom.sig` as a suffix for custom signature files.

**Step 9** Click **OK**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Downloading Signature Files](#)
- [Configuring IDS Signatures](#)

## Global Settings for Standard and Custom Signatures

This command enables all signatures that were individually selected as enabled. If this text box remains unselected, all files are disabled, even those that were previously enabled. When the signatures are enabled, the access points joined to the controller perform signature analysis on the received 802.11 data or management frames and report any discrepancies to the controller.

To enable all standard and custom signatures currently on the controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Edit Signature Parameters**.
  - Step 4** Click **Go**.
  - Step 5** Select the **Enable Check for All Standard and Custom Signatures** check box.
  - Step 6** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topic

- [Configuring IDS Signatures](#)

## Enabling or Disabling Individual Signatures

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Edit Signature Parameters**.
  - Step 4** Click an applicable Name for the type of attack you want to enable or disable.

The Standard Signature parameters page shows the list of Cisco-supplied signatures that are currently on the controller. The Custom Signatures page shows the list of customer-supplied signatures that are currently on the controller. The following parameters are displayed in both the signature page and the detailed signature page:

- **Precedence**—The order, or precedence, in which the controller performs the signature checks.
- **Name**—The type of attack the signature is trying to detect.
- **Description**—A more detailed description of the type of attack that the signature is trying to detect.
- **Frame Type**—Management or data frame type on which the signature is looking for a security attack.
- **Action**—What the controller is directed to do when the signature detects an attack. One possibility is *None*, where no action is taken, and another is *Report*, to report the detection.
- **Frequency**—The signature frequency or the number of matching packets per interval that must be identified at the detecting access point level before an attack is detected. The range is 1 to 32,000 packets per interval and the default value is 50 packets per interval.

- Quiet Time—The length of time (in seconds) after which no attacks have been detected at the individual access point level, and the alarm can stop. This time appears only if the MAC information is all or both. The range is 60 to 32,000 seconds and the default value is 300 seconds.
- MAC Information—Whether the signature is to be tracked per network or per MAC address or both at the detecting access point level.
- MAC Frequency—The signature MAC frequency or the number of matching packets per interval that must be identified at the controller level before an attack is detected. The range is 1 to 32,000 packets per interval and the default value is 30 packets per interval.
- Interval—Enter the number of seconds that must elapse before the signature frequency threshold is reached within the configured interval. The range is 1 to 3600 seconds and the default value is 1 second.
- Enable—Select this check box to enable this signature to detect security attacks or unselect it to disable this signature.
- Signature Patterns—The pattern that is being used to detect a security attack.

**Step 5** From the Enable drop-down list, choose **Yes**. Because you are downloading a customized signature, you should enable the files named with the `_custom.sgi` and disable the standard signature with the same name but differing suffix. For example, if you are customizing broadcast probe flood, you want to disable broadcast probe flood in the standard signatures but enable it in custom signatures.

**Step 6** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring IDS Signatures](#)
- [Configuring Rogue Policies](#)
- [Configuring Rogue AP Rules](#)
- [Configuring IDS Signatures](#)
- [Configuring Custom Signatures](#)
- [Configuring AP Authentication and MFP](#)

## Configuring Custom Signatures

The Custom Signature page shows the list of customer-supplied signatures that are currently on the controller.

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.

**Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.

**Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Custom Signatures**. This page displays the following parameters:

- Precedence—The order in which the controller performs the signature checks.
- Name—The type of attack the signature is trying to detect.
- Frame Type—Management or data frame type on which the signature is looking for a security attack.

- Action—What the controller is directed to do when the signature detects an attack. For example:
  - None—No action is taken.
  - Report—Report the detection.
- State—Enabled or Disabled.
- Description—A more detailed description of the type of attack the signature is trying to detect.

**Step 4** Click a signature Name to view individual parameters and to enable or disable the signature.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring IDS Signatures](#)
- [Downloading Signature Files](#)
- [Uploading Signature Files](#)
- [Global Settings for Standard and Custom Signatures](#)
- [Configuring IDS Signatures](#)
- [Viewing Controller Standard Signature Parameters](#)
- [Configuring AP Authentication and MFP](#)

## Configuring AP Authentication and MFP

You can set the access point authentication policy and MFP (Management Frame Protection).

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Security > Wireless Protection Policies > AP Authentication and MFP**.

This page displays the following fields:

- RF Network Name—Not an editable text box. The RF Network Name entered in the General parameters page is displayed here.
  - Protection Type—From the drop-down list, choose one of the following authentication policies:
    - **None**—No access point authentication policy.
    - **AP Authentication**—Apply authentication policy.
    - **MFP**—Apply Management Frame Protection.
  - Alarm Trigger Threshold—(Appears only when AP Authentication is selected as the Protection Type). Set the number of hits to be ignored from an alien access point before raising an alarm. The valid range is from 1 to 255. The default value is 255.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Rogue Policies](#)
- [Configuring Rogue AP Rules](#)



- [Configuring IDS Signatures](#)
- [Viewing Controller Standard Signature Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Custom Signatures](#)

## 802.11 Parameters

- [Configuring General Parameters for 802.11 Controllers](#)
- [Configuring Aggressive Load Balancing](#)
- [Configuring Band Selection](#)
- [Configuring 802.11 Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring RF Profiles \(802.11\)](#)

### Configuring General Parameters for 802.11 Controllers

You can edit country selection and timer information on a 802.11 controllers. To access this page, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** Choose **802.11 > General - 802.11** from the left sidebar menu. The page opens and displays the following parameters:
- Country
    - Country—Countries and the protocols allowed. The maximum number of countries that you can select is 20.
    - Selected Countries—Displays countries currently selected.
  - Timers
    - Authentication Response Timeout—Configures 802.11 authentication response timeout in seconds.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Setting Multiple Country Codes](#)
- [Configuring Aggressive Load Balancing](#)
- [Configuring Band Selection](#)
- [Configuring 802.11 Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring RF Profiles \(802.11\)](#)

### Setting Multiple Country Codes

To set multiple country support for a single controller that is not part of a mobility group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** Choose **802.11 > General** from the left sidebar menu.
- Step 4** Select the check box to choose which country you want to add. Access points are designed for use in many countries with varying regulatory requirements. You can configure a country code to ensure that it complies with your country regulations.
- Access points might not operate properly if they are not designed for use in your country of operation. For example, an access point with part number AIR-AP1030-A-K9 (which is included in the Americas regulatory domain) cannot be used in Australia. Always be sure to purchase access points that match your country regulatory domain. For a complete list of country codes supported per product, see the following URL:  
<http://www.cisco.com/warp/public/779/smbiz/wireless/approvals.html>.
- Step 5** Enter the time (in seconds) after which the authentication response times out.
- Step 6** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring General Parameters for 802.11 Controllers](#)
- [Configuring Aggressive Load Balancing](#)
- [Configuring Band Selection](#)
- [Configuring 802.11 Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring RF Profiles \(802.11\)](#)

## Configuring Aggressive Load Balancing

Enabling aggressive load balancing on the controller allows lightweight access points to load balance the wireless clients across access points. Clients are load balanced between the access points on the same controller. Load balancing does not occur between access points on different controllers.

When a wireless client attempts to associate to a lightweight access point, association response packets are sent to the client with an 802.11 response packet including status code 17. This code indicates whether the access point can accept any more associations. If the access point is too busy, the client attempts to associate to a different access point in the area. The system determines if an access point is relatively more busy than its neighbor access points that are also accessible to the client.

For example, if the number of clients on AP1 is more than the number of clients on AP2 plus the load-balancing window, then AP1 is considered to be busier than AP2. When a client attempts to associate to AP1, it receives an 802.11 response packet with status code 17, indicating that the access point is busy, and the client attempts to associate to a different access point.

You can configure the controller to deny client associations up to 10 times (if a client attempted to associate 11 times, it is allowed to associate on the 11th try). You can also enable or disable load balancing on a particular WLAN, which is useful if you want to disable load balancing for a select group of clients (such as time-sensitive voice clients).

To configure aggressive load balancing, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** Choose **802.11 > Load Balancing** from the left sidebar menu. The Load Balancing page appears.
- Step 4** Enter a value between 1 and 20 for the client window size. The page size becomes part of the algorithm that determines whether an access point is too heavily loaded to accept more client associations:
- $$\text{load-balancing page} + \text{client associations on AP with lightest load} = \text{load-balancing threshold}$$
- In the group of access points accessible to a client device, each access point has a different number of client associations. The access point with the lowest number of clients has the lightest load. The client page size plus the number of clients on the access point with the lightest load forms the threshold. Access points with more client associations than this threshold is considered busy, and clients can associate only to access points with client counts lower than the threshold.
- Step 5** Enter a value between 0 and 10 for the max denial count. The denial count sets the maximum number of association denials during load balancing.
- Step 6** Click **Save**.
- Step 7** To enable or disable aggressive load balancing on specific WLANs, browse to the WLAN Configuration page, and click the **Advanced** tab. For instructions on using the WLAN Configuration page, see Configuring Controller WLANs in Related Topics.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring General Parameters for 802.11 Controllers](#)
- [Configuring Aggressive Load Balancing](#)
- [Configuring Band Selection](#)
- [Configuring 802.11 Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring RF Profiles \(802.11\)](#)
- [Configuring Controller WLANs](#)

## Configuring Band Selection

Band selection enables client radios that are capable of dual-band (2.4- and 5-GHz) operation to move to a less congested 5-GHz access point. The 2.4-GHz band is often congested. Clients on this band typically experience interference from Bluetooth devices, microwave ovens, and cordless phones as well as co-channel interference from other access points because of the 802.11b/g limit of three non-overlapping channels. To combat these sources of interference and improve overall network performance, you can configure band selection on the controller.

Band selection works by regulating probe responses to clients. It makes 5-GHz channels more attractive to clients by delaying probe responses to clients on 2.4-GHz channels.

You can enable band selection globally on a controller, or you can enable or disable band selection for a particular WLAN, which is useful if you want to disable it for a select group of clients (such as time-sensitive voice clients).

Band-selection-enabled WLANs do not support time-sensitive applications like voice and video because of roaming delays.

### Guidelines for Using Band Selection

Follow these guidelines when using band selection:

- Band selection can be used only with Cisco Aironet 1140 and 1250 series access points.
- Band selection operates only on access points that are connected to a controller. A FlexConnect access point without a controller connection does not perform band selection after a reboot.
- The band-selection algorithm directs dual-band clients only from the 2.4-GHz radio to the 5-GHz radio of the same access point, and it only runs on an access point when both the 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz radios are up and running.
- You can enable both band selection and aggressive load balancing on the controller. They run independently and do not impact one another.

### Configuration Steps

To configure band selection, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** Choose **802.11 > Band Select** from the left sidebar menu. The Band Select page appears.
  - Step 4** Enter a value between 1 and 10 for the probe cycle count. The cycle count sets the number of suppression cycles for a new client. The default cycle count is 2.
  - Step 5** Enter a value between 1 and 1000 milliseconds for the scan cycle period threshold. This setting determines the time threshold during which new probe requests from a client come from a new scanning cycle. The default cycle threshold is 200 milliseconds.
  - Step 6** Enter a value between 10 and 200 seconds for the age out suppression field. Age-out suppression sets the expiration time for pruning previously known 802.11b/g clients. The default value is 20 seconds. After this time elapses, clients become new and are subject to probe response suppression.
  - Step 7** Enter a value between 10 and 300 seconds for the age out dual band field. The age-out period sets the expiration time for pruning previously known dual-band clients. The default value is 60 seconds. After this time elapses, clients become new and are subject to probe response suppression.
  - Step 8** Enter a value between –20 and –90 dBm for the acceptable client RSSI field. This field sets the minimum RSSI for a client to respond to a probe. The default value is –80 dBm.
  - Step 9** Click **Save**.
  - Step 10** To enable or disable band selection on specific WLANs, browse to the WLAN Configuration page and click the **Advanced** tab. For instructions on using the WLAN Configuration page, see *Configuring Controller WLANs in Related Topics*.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring General Parameters for 802.11 Controllers](#)
- [Configuring Aggressive Load Balancing](#)
- [Configuring 802.11 Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring RF Profiles \(802.11\)](#)
- [Configuring Controller WLANs](#)

## Configuring Preferred Call

The Preferred Call feature enables you to specify highest priority to SIP calls made to some specific numbers. The high priority is achieved by allocating bandwidth to such preferred SIP Calls even when there is no available voice bandwidth in the configured Voice Pool. This feature is supported only for those clients that use SIP based CAC for bandwidth allocation in WCS or WLC.

You can configure up to 6 numbers per controller.

To configure the preferred call support, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11 > Preferred Call**. The following fields appear if there is an existing preferred call:
- Description—Description for the preferred call.
  - Number Id—Indicates the unique identifier for the controller and denotes one of the six preferred call numbers assigned to the controller.
  - Preferred Number—Indicates the preferred call number.
- Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Number**.
- Step 5** Select a template to apply to this controller.
- You need to select a template to apply to the selected controller. To create a New Template for Preferred Call Numbers, see Configuring Preferred Call Templates in Related Topics.
- Step 6** Click **Apply**.
- To delete a preferred call, select the check box for the applicable preferred call number and choose **Delete** from the Select a command drop-down list. Click **Go** and then click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring General Parameters for 802.11 Controllers](#)
- [Configuring Aggressive Load Balancing](#)
- [Configuring Band Selection](#)
- [Configuring RF Profiles \(802.11\)](#)

## Configuring 802.11 Media Parameters

To configure media parameters for 802.11, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11 > Media Stream**.
- Step 4** In the Media Stream Configuration section, configure the following parameters

- Media Stream Name
- Multicast Destination Start IP—Start IP address of the media stream to be multicast
- Multicast Destination End IP—End IP address of the media stream to be multicast
- Maximum Expected Bandwidth—Maximum bandwidth that a media stream can use

**Step 5** In the Resource Reservation Control (RRC) Parameters group box, configure the following parameters:

- Average Packet Size—Average packet size that a media stream can use.
- RRC Periodical Update—Resource Reservation Control calculations that are updated periodically; if disabled, RRC calculations are done only once when a client joins a media stream.
- RRC Priority—Priority of RRC with the highest at 1 and the lowest at 8.
- Traffic Profile Violation—Appears if the stream is dropped or put in the best effort queue if the stream violates the QoS video profile.
- Policy—Appears if the media stream is admitted or denied.

**Step 6** Click **Save**.

---

## Configuring RF Profiles (802.11)

The RF Profiles page enables you to create or modify RF profiles that get associated to AP Groups.

To configure a RF Profile for a controller, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.

**Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.

**Step 3** Click **RF Profiles** or choose either **802.11 > RF Profiles** from the left sidebar menu. The RF Profiles page appears. This page lists the existing RF Profile templates.

**Step 4** If you want to add a RF profile, choose **Add RF Profile** from the Select a command drop-down list.

**Step 5** Click **Go**. The New Controller Template page appears.

**Step 6** Configure the following information:

- General
  - Template Name—User-defined name for the template.
  - Profile Name—User-defined name for the current profile.
  - Description—Description of the template.
  - Radio Type—The radio type of the access point. This is a drop-down list from which you can choose an RF profile for APs with 802.11a or 802.11b radios.
- TCP (Transmit Power Control)
  - Minimum Power Level Assignment (-10 to 30 dBm)—Indicates the minimum power assigned. The range is -10 to 30 dB, and the default value is 30 dB.
  - Maximum Power Level Assignment (-10 to 30 dBm)—Indicates the maximum power assigned. The range is -10 to 30 dB, and the default value is 30 dB.
  - Power Threshold v1(-80 to -50 dBm)—Indicates the transmitted power threshold.

- Power Threshold v2(-80 to -50 dBm)—Indicates the transmitted power threshold.
- Data Rates—Use the Data Rates drop-down lists to specify the rates at which data can be transmitted between the access point and the client. These data rates are available:
  - 802.11a—6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, and 54 Mbps.
  - 802.11b/g—1, 2, 5.5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, or 54 Mbps.

For each data rate, choose one of these options:

- Mandatory—Clients must support this data rate to associate to an access point on the controller.
- Supported—Any associated clients that support this data rate might communicate with the access point using that rate. However, the clients are not required to be able to use this rate to associate.
- Disabled—The clients specify the data rates used for communication.

**Step 7** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring General Parameters for 802.11 Controllers](#)
- [Configuring Aggressive Load Balancing](#)
- [Configuring Band Selection](#)
- [Configuring 802.11 Media Parameters](#)

## Configuring SIP Snooping

Keep the following guidelines in mind when using SIP Snooping:

- SIPs are available only on the Cisco 5500 Series Controllers and on the 1240, 1130, and 11n access points.
- SIP CAC should only be used for phones that support status code 17 and do not support TSPEC-based admission control.
- SIP CAC will be supported only if SIP snooping is enabled.

To configure SIP Snooping for a controller, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.

**Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.

**Step 3** Click the Device Name of the applicable controller.

**Step 4** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11 > SIP Snooping**.

**Step 5** Configure the following fields:

- Port Start
- Port End

If single port is to be used, configure both start and end port fields with same number.

**Step 6** Click **Save**.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring General Parameters for 802.11 Controllers](#)
- [Configuring Aggressive Load Balancing](#)
- [Configuring Band Selection](#)
- [Configuring 802.11 Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring RF Profiles \(802.11\)](#)

## Configuring 802.11a/n Parameters

- [Configuring 802.11a/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n 802.11h Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11a/n General Parameters

To view 802.11a/n parameters for a specific controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11a/n > Parameters** to view the following parameters:
- General
    - 802.11a/n Network Status—Select the check box to enable.
    - Beacon Period—The amount of time between beacons. The valid range is from 100 to 600 milliseconds.
    - Fragmentation Threshold (in bytes)—The size at which packets are fragmented. Use a low setting in areas where communication is poor or where there is a great deal of radio interference.
    - Template Applied
  - 802.11a/n Band Status
    - Low, Medium, and High Bands (read-only).
  - 802.11a/n Power Status
    - Dynamic Assessment—Automatic, On Demand, or Disabled.



- Current Tx Level—Range includes: 1 (maximum power allowed per country code setting), 2 (50% power), 3 (25% power), 4 (6.25 to 12.5% power), and 5 (0.195 to 6.25% power). The power levels and available channels are defined by the country code setting and are regulated on a country by country basis.
- Control Interval—In seconds (read-only).
- Dynamic Treatment Power Control—Select the check box to enable.
- 802.11a/n Channel Status
  - Assignment Mode—Automatic, On Demand, or Disabled.
  - Update Interval—In seconds.
  - Avoid Foreign AP Interference—Enable to have RRM consider interference from foreign Cisco access points (those non-Cisco access points outside RF/mobility domain) when assigning channels.
  - Avoid Cisco AP load—Enable to have controllers consider the traffic bandwidth used by each access point when assigning channels to access points.
  - Avoid non 802.11 Noise—Enable to have access points avoid channels that have interference from non-access point sources, such as microwave ovens or Bluetooth devices. Disable this field to have RRM ignore this interference.
  - Signal Strength Contribution—Not configurable.
  - Avoid Persistent Non-WiFi interface
- Data Rates
  - Ranges between 6 Mbps and 54 Mbps—Supported, Mandatory, or Disabled.
- Noise/Interference/Rogue Monitoring Channels.
  - Channel List—All Channels, Country Channels, DCA Channels. Dynamic Channel Allocation (DCA) automatically selects a reasonably good channel allocation from a set of managed devices connected to the controller.
- CCX Location Measurement—When enabled, it enhances the location accuracy of clients.
  - Mode—Select the check box to enable.
  - Interval—In seconds. The CCX Location Measurement Interval can be changed only when measurement mode is enabled.

**Step 4** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring 802.11a/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters](#)

- [Configuring 802.11a/n 802.11h Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Thresholds

To configure a 802.11a/n RRM threshold controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11a/n > RRM Thresholds**.
  - Step 4** Make any necessary changes to Coverage Thresholds, Load Thresholds, Other Thresholds, and Noise/Interference/Rogue Monitoring Channels.

When the Coverage Thresholds Min SNR Level (dB) field is adjusted, the value of the Signal Strength (dB) automatically reflects this change. The Signal Strength (dB) field provides information regarding what the target range of coverage thresholds is when adjusting the SNR value.

- Step 5** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring 802.11a/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n 802.11h Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Intervals

To configure 802.11a/n or 802.11b/g/n RRM intervals for an individual controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11a/n > RRM Intervals** or **802.11b/g/n > RRM Intervals**.



---

**Note** The default for the following four RRM interval parameters is 300 seconds.

---

- Step 4** Enter at which interval you want strength measurements taken for each access point.
- Step 5** Enter at which interval you want noise and interference measurements taken for each access point.
- Step 6** Enter at which interval you want load measurements taken for each access point.
- Step 7** Enter at which interval you want coverage measurements taken for each access point.
- Step 8** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring 802.11a/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n 802.11h Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Transmit Power Control

The controller dynamically controls access point transmit power based on real-time wireless LAN conditions. Normally, power can be kept low to gain extra capacity and reduce interference. The controller attempts to balance the transmit power of the access point according to how the access points are seen by their third strongest neighbor.

The transmit power control (TPC) algorithm both increases and decreases the power of an access point in response to changes in the RF environment. In most instances, TPC seeks to lower the power of an access point to reduce interference, but in the case of a sudden change in the RF coverage—for example, if an access point fails or becomes disabled—TPC can also increase power on surrounding access points. This feature is different from Coverage Hole Detection. Coverage hole detection is primarily concerned with clients, while TPC is tasked with providing enough RF power to achieve desired coverage levels while avoiding channel interference between access points.

Transmit Power Control version 2 (TPCv2) attempts to reduce the co-channel interference from Cisco AP networks. The former version of TPC is designed to provide strong signal coverage with a tendency to use larger Tx Power, and as a result customers were suffering from overheating in densely deployed networks.

To configure 802.11a/n or 802.11b/g/n RRM TPC, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11a/n-RRM > TPC**.
- Step 4** Configure the following TPC parameters:
- **Template Applied**—The name of the template applied to this controller.
  - **Template Version**—Indicates the TPC version.  
The TPCv2 option is applicable only for those controllers running 7.2.x release or later.
  - **Dynamic Assignment**—At the Dynamic Assignment drop-down list, choose one of three modes:
    - **Automatic** - The transmit power is periodically updated for all access points that permit this operation.
    - **On Demand** - Transmit power is updated when the Assign Now button is selected.
    - **Disabled** - No dynamic transmit power assignments occur, and values are set to their global default.
  - **Maximum Power Assignment**—Indicates the maximum power assigned.
    - Range: -10 to 30 dB
    - Default: 30 dB
  - **Minimum Power Assignment**—Indicates the minimum power assigned.
    - Range: -10 to 30 dB
    - Default: 30 dB
  - **Dynamic Tx Power Control**—Determine if you want to enable Dynamic Tx Power Control.
  - **Transmitted Power Threshold**—Enter a transmitted power threshold between -50 and -80.
  - **Control Interval**—In seconds (read-only).
- Step 5** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topics


- [Configuring 802.11a/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n 802.11h Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation

The Radio Resource Management (RRM) Dynamic Channel Assignment (DCA) page allows you to choose the DCA channels as well as the channel width for this controller.

RRM DCA supports 802.11n 40-MHz channel width in the 5-GHz band. The higher bandwidth allows radios to achieve higher instantaneous data rates. Choosing a larger bandwidth reduces the non-overlapping channels which could potentially reduce the overall network throughput for certain deployments. To view the channel width for the radio of an access point, go to **Monitor > Network Devices > Access Points > name > Interfaces** tab. You can also view the channel width and antenna selections by choosing **Configuration > Network > Network Devices > Access Points** and clicking the desired radio in the Radio column.

To configure 802.11 a/n RRM DCA channels for an individual controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11a/n > RRM DCA**. The 802.11a/n RRM DCA page appears. You can also configure the channel width on the access point page by choosing **Configure > Access Points**, and clicking the **802.11a/n** link in the Radio column. The Current RF Channel Assignment is provided, and you can choose a Global assignment method or choose Custom to specify a channel.
- Step 4** From the Channel Width drop-down list, choose **20 MHz** or **40 MHz**. Prior to software release 5.1, 40-MHz channels were only statically configurable. Only radios with 20-MHz channels were supported by DCA. With 40 MHz, radios can achieve higher instantaneous data rates; however, larger bandwidths reduce the number of non-overlapping channels so certain deployments could have reduced overall network throughput.
-  **Note** Be cautious about deploying a mix of 20-MHz and 40-MHz devices. The 40-MHz devices have slightly different channel access rules which might negatively impact the 20-MHz devices.
- 
- Step 5** Select the check boxes for the appropriate DCA channels. The selected channels are listed in the Selected DCA channels list.
- Step 6** Enable or disable event-driven Radio Resource Management (RRM) using the following parameters. Event Driven RRM is used when a CleanAir-enabled access point detects a significant level of interference.
- Event Driven RRM—Enable or Disable spectrum event-driven RRM. By default, Event Driven RRM is enabled.
  - Sensitivity Threshold—If Event Driven RRM is enabled, this field displays the threshold level at which event-driven RRM is triggered. It can have a value of either Low, Medium, or High. When the interference for the access point rises above the threshold level, RRM initiates a local Dynamic Channel Assignment (DCA) run and changes the channel of the affected access point radio if possible to improve network performance. Low represents a decreased sensitivity to changes in the environment while High represents an increased sensitivity.
- Step 7** Click **Save**.
-

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring 802.11a/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n 802.11h Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

**Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Radio Grouping**

To configure 802.11a/n or 802.11b/g/n RRM Radio Grouping for an individual controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11a/n > RRM > RF Grouping**.
- Step 4** Choose a grouping mode from the drop-down list. The following parameters appear:
- **Automatic**—Allows you to activate the automatic RRM Grouping Algorithm. This is the default mode.
  - **Off**—Allows you to deactivate the automatic grouping.
  - **Leader**—Allows you to assign members to the group.
- Step 5** Choose a group update interval (secs) from the drop-down list. When grouping is on, this interval (in seconds) represents the period with which the grouping algorithm is run by the Group Leader. The grouping algorithm also runs when the group contents changes and the automatic grouping is enabled. A dynamic grouping can be started upon request from the system administrator. Default value is 600 seconds.
- Step 6** In the Group Members group box, click **Add >**. The selected controller moves from the Available Controllers to the RF Group Members list.
- The RF Group Members group box appears only when the grouping mode is set to Leader. The maximum number of controllers that can be added to a RF Group is 20.
- Step 7** Click **Save**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring 802.11a/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Thresholds](#)

- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n 802.11h Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11a/n Media Parameters

To configure the media parameters for 802.11a/n, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.

**Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.

**Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11a/n > Media Parameters**.

**Step 4** On the **Voice** tab, configure the following parameters:

- Admission Control (ACM)—Select the check box to enable admission control.

For end users to experience acceptable audio quality during a VoIP phone call, packets must be delivered from one endpoint to another with low latency and low packet loss. To maintain QoS under differing network loads, Call Admission Control (CAC) is required. CAC on an access point allows it to maintain controlled QoS when the network is experiencing congestion and keep the maximum allowed number of calls to an acceptable quantity.

- CAC Method—If Admission Control (ACM) is enabled, specify the CAC method as either load-based or static.

Load-based CAC incorporates a measurement scheme that takes into account the bandwidth consumed by all traffic types from itself, from co-channel access points, and by co-located channel interference. Load-based CAC also covers the additional bandwidth consumption resulting from PHY and channel impairment.

In load-based CAC, the access point periodically measures and updates the utilization of the RF channel, channel interference, and the additional calls that the access point can admit. The access point admits a new call only if the channel has enough unused bandwidth to support that call. By doing so, load-based CAC prevents over-subscription of the channel and maintains QoS under all conditions of WLAN loading and interference.

- Maximum Bandwidth Allowed—Specify the percentage of maximum bandwidth allowed. This option is only available when CAC is enabled. The valid range is 5 to 85.
- Reserved Roaming Bandwidth—Specify the percentage of reserved roaming bandwidth. This option is only available when CAC is enabled. The valid range is 0 to 25.
- Expedited Bandwidth—Select the check box to enable expedited bandwidth as an extension of CAC for emergency calls.

You must have an expedited bandwidth that is CCXv5 compliant so that a TSPEC request is given higher priority.

- SIP CAC—Select the check box to enable SIP CAC.  
SIP CAC should be used only for phones that support status code 17 and do not support TSPEC-based admission control.
- SIP Codec—Specify the codec name you want to use on this radio. The available options are G.711, G.729, and User Defined.
- SIP Call Bandwidth—Specify the bandwidth in kilobits per second that you want to assign per SIP call on the network. This field can be configured only when the SIP Codec selected is User Defined.
- SIP Sample Interval—Specify the sample interval in milliseconds that the codec must operate in.
- Max Voice Calls per Radio—Specify the maximum number of voice calls that can be made per Radio.
- Max Roaming Reserved Calls per Radio—Specify the maximum number roaming calls that can be reserved per Radio. The Max Voice Calls per Radio and Max Roaming Reserved Calls per Radio options are available only if the CAC Method is specified as Static and SIP CAC is enabled.
- Metric Collection—Select the check box to enable metric collection.

Traffic stream metrics are a series of statistics about VoIP over your wireless LAN which inform you of the QoS of the wireless LAN. For the access point to collect measurement values, traffic stream metrics must be enabled. When this is enabled, the controller begins collecting statistical data every 90 seconds for the 802.11b/g interfaces from all associated access points. If you are using VoIP or video, this feature should be enabled.

**Step 5** On the **Video** tab, configure the following parameters:

- Admission Control (ACM)—Select the check box to enable admission control.
- Maximum Bandwidth Allowed—Specify the percentage of maximum bandwidth allowed. This option is only available when CAC is enabled. For controller versions 6.0.188.0 and earlier, the valid range is 0 to 100. For controller versions 6.0.188.1 and later, the valid range is 5 to 85.
- Reserved Roaming Bandwidth—Specify the percentage of reserved roaming bandwidth. This option is only available when CAC is enabled. The valid range is 0 to 25, and the default is 0.
- Static CAC method— From the SIP Codec drop-down list, choose one of the following options to set the CAC method. The default value is G.711. The options are as follows:
  - Load-Based
  - Static

Static CAC method is radio based and load-based CAC method is channel based

- SIP CAC—Select the SIP CAC check box to enable Static CAC support. By default, this check box is disabled. SIP CAC will be supported only if SIP snooping is enabled. SIPs are available only on the following controllers: 4400, 5500. Also, SIPs are available only for the following access points: 1240, 1130, and 11n.
- Unicast Video Redirect—Select the **Unicast Video Redirect** check box to enable all non-media stream packets in video queue are redirected to the best effort queue. If disabled, all packets with video marking are kept in video queue.
- Client Minimum Phy Rate—Choose the physical data rate required for the client to join a media stream from the Client Minimum Phy Rate drop-down list.
- Multicast Direct Enable—Select the **Multicast Direct Enable** check box to set the Media Direct for any WLAN with Media Direct enabled on a WLAN on this radio.
- Maximum Number of Streams per Radio—Specify the maximum number of streams per Radio to be allowed.



- **Maximum Number of Streams per Client**—Specify the maximum number of streams per Client to be allowed.
- **Best Effort QoS Admission**—Select the **Best Effort QoS Admission** check box to redirect new client requests to the best effort queue. This happens only if all the video bandwidth has been used. If disabled and maximum video bandwidth has been used, then any new client request is rejected.

**Step 6** On the **General** tab, configure the following field:

- **Maximum Media Bandwidth (0 to 85%)**—Specify the percentage of maximum of bandwidth allowed. This option is only available when CAC is enabled.

**Step 7** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring 802.11a/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n 802.11h Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters

The EDCA parameters (EDCA profile and Streaming MAC Enable settings) for 802.11a/n and 802.11b/g/n can be configured either by individual controller or through a controller template to improve voice QoS support.

To configure 802.11a/n or 802.11b/g/n EDCA parameters for an individual controller, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.

**Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.

**Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11a/n > EDCA Parameters** or **802.11b/g/n > EDCA Parameters**.

**Step 4** Choose the EDCA Profile from the drop-down list.

Profiles include Wi-Fi Multimedia (WMM), Spectralink Voice Priority (SVP), Voice Optimized, and Voice & Video Optimized. WMM is the default EDCA profile. You must shut down radio interface before configuring EDCA Parameters.

**Step 5** Select the **Enable Streaming MAC** check box to enable this feature.

Only enable Streaming MAC if all clients on the network are WMM compliant.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring 802.11a/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n 802.11h Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters

To configure 802.11a/n or 802.11b/g/n EDCA parameters for an individual controller, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11a/n > Roaming Parameters**.
- Step 4** From the Mode drop-down list, choose **Default values** or **Custom values**.
- Default values—The default values (read-only) are automatically displayed in the text boxes.
  - Custom values—Activates the text boxes to enable editing of the roaming parameters.
- Step 5** In the Minimum RSSI text box, enter a value for the minimum Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) required for the client to associate to an access point.
- Range: -80 to -90 dBm
  - Default: -85 dBm
- If the client average received signal power dips below this threshold, reliable communication is typically impossible; clients must already have found and roamed to another access point with a stronger signal before the minimum RSSI value is reached.
- Step 6** In the Hysteresis text box, enter a value to indicate how strong the signal strength of a neighboring access point must for the client to roam to it.
- This field is intended to reduce the amount of “ping ponging” between access points if the client is physically located on or near the border between two access points.
- Range: 2 to 4 dB
  - Default: 3 dB

- Step 7** In the Adaptive Scan Threshold text box, enter the RSSI value, from a client associated access point, below which the client must be able to roam to a neighboring access point within the specified transition time.
- This field provides a power-save method to minimize the time that the client spends in active or passive scanning. For example, the client can scan slowly when the RSSI is above the threshold and scan more rapidly when below the threshold.
- Range: -70 to -77 dB
  - Default: -72 dB
- Step 8** In the Transition Time text box, enter the maximum time allowed for the client to detect a suitable neighboring access point to roam to and to complete the roam, whenever the RSSI from the client associated access point is below the scan threshold.
- The Scan Threshold and Transition Time parameters guarantee a minimum level of client roaming performance. Together with the highest expected client speed and roaming hysteresis, these parameters make it possible to design a wireless LAN network that supports roaming simply by ensuring a certain minimum overlap distance between access points.
- Range: 1 to 10 seconds
  - Default: 5 seconds
- Step 9** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring 802.11a/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n 802.11h Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11a/n 802.11h Parameters

To configure 802.11h parameters for an individual controller, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11a/n > 802.11h** or **802.11b/g/n > 802.11h**.
- Step 4** Select the **power constraint** check box to enable TPC.

- Step 5** Select the **channel announcement** check box to enable channel announcement. Channel announcement is a method in which the access point announces when it is switching to a new channel and the new channel number.
- Step 6** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring 802.11a/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11a/n High Throughput (802.11n) Parameters

To configure 802.11a/n or 802.11b/g/n high throughput parameters, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11a/n > High Throughput** or **802.11b/g/n > High Throughput**.
- Step 4** Select the **802.11n Network Status Enabled** check box to enable high throughput.
- Step 5** In the MCS (Data Rate) Settings, choose which level of data rate you want supported. MCS is modulation coding schemes which are similar to 802.11a data rate. As a default, 20 MHz and short guarded interval is used. When you select the Supported check box, the chosen numbers appear in the Selected MCS Indexes page.
- Step 6** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring 802.11a/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation](#)

- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n 802.11h Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11a/n CleanAir Parameters

To configure 802.11a/n CleanAir parameters, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11a/n > CleanAir** to view the following information.
- **CleanAir**—Select the check box to enable CleanAir functionality on the 802.11 a/n network, or unselect to disable CleanAir functionality. The default value is selected.
  - **Reporting Configuration**—Use the parameters in this section to configure the interferer devices you want to include for your reports.
    - **Report**—Select the **report interferers** check box to enable CleanAir system to report and detect sources of interference, or unselect it to prevent the controller from reporting interferers. The default value is selected.
    - Make sure that any sources of interference that need to be detected and reported by the CleanAir system appear in the Interferences to Detect text box and any that do not need to be detected appear in the Interferers to Ignore text box. Use the > and < buttons to move interference sources between these two text boxes. By default, all interference sources are detected.
    - Select the **Persistent Device Propagation** check box to enable propagation of information about persistent devices that can be detected by CleanAir. Persistent device propagation enables designating information about interference types and propagating this information to the neighboring access points. Persistent interferers are present at the a location and interfere with the WLAN operations even if they are not detectable at all times.
  - **Alarm Configuration**—This section enables you to configure triggering of air quality alarms.
    - **Air Quality Alarm**—Select the **Air Quality Alarm** check box to enable the triggering of air quality alarms, or unselect the box to disable this feature. The default value is selected.
    - **Air Quality Alarm Threshold**—If you selected the Air Quality Alarm check box, enter a value between 1 and 100 (inclusive) in the Air Quality Alarm Threshold text box to specify the threshold at which you want the air quality alarm to be triggered. When the air quality falls below the threshold level, the alarm is triggered. A value of 1 represents the worst air quality, and 100 represents the best. The default value is 35.
    - **Air Quality Unclassified category Alarm**—Select the **Air Quality Unclassified category Alarm** check box to enable the alarms to be generated for unclassified interference category. CleanAir can detect and monitor unclassified interferences. Unclassified interference are interference that are detected but do not correspond to any of the known interference types.

The Unclassified category alarm is generated when the unclassified severity goes above the configured threshold value for unclassified severity or when the air quality index goes below the configured threshold value for Air Quality Index.

- Air Quality Unclassified Category Severity Threshold—If you selected the Air Quality Unclassified category Alarm check box, enter a value between 1 and 99 (inclusive) in the Air Quality Unclassified Severity Threshold text box to specify the threshold at which you want the unclassified category alarm to be triggered. The default is 20.
- Interferers For Security Alarm—Select the **Interferers For Security Alarm** check box to trigger interferer alarms when the controller detects specified device types, or unselect it to disable this feature. The default value is selected.
- Make sure that any sources of interference that need to trigger interferer alarms appear in the Interferers Selected for Security Alarms text box and any that do not need to trigger interferer alarms appear in the Interferers Ignored for Security Alarms text box. Use the > and < buttons to move interference sources between these two boxes. By default, all interference sources trigger interferer alarms.
- Event Driven RRM—To trigger spectrum event-driven Radio Resource Management (RRM) to run when a CleanAir-enabled access point detects a significant level of interference, follow these steps:
  - Event Driven RRM—Displays the current status of spectrum event-driven RRM.
  - Sensitivity Threshold—If Event Driven RRM is enabled, this text box displays the threshold level at which event-driven RRM is triggered. It can have a value of either Low, Medium, or High. When the interference for the access point rises above the threshold level, RRM initiates a local Dynamic Channel Assignment (DCA) run and changes the channel of the affected access point radio if possible to improve network performance. Low represents a decreased sensitivity to changes in the environment while High represents an increased sensitivity.

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring 802.11a/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Dynamic Channel Allocation](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n 802.11h Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11a/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11b/g/n General Parameters

To view 802.11b/g/n parameters for a specific controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11b/g/n Parameters** to view the following parameters:
- General
    - 802.11b/g Network Status—Select the check box to enable.
    - 802.11g Support—Select the check box to enable.
    - Beacon Period—In milliseconds.
    - DTIM Period—The number of beacon intervals that might elapse between transmission of beacon frames containing a traffic indicator message (TIM) element whose delivery count field is 0.
    - Fragmentation Threshold—In bytes.
    - Short Preamble—Select the check box to enable.
    - Template Applied.
  - 802.11a/n Power Status
    - Dynamic Assessment—Automatic, On Demand, or Disabled.
    - Current Tx Level.
    - Control Interval—In seconds (Read-only).
    - Dynamic Treatment Power Control—Select the check box to enable.
  - 802.11a/n Channel Status
    - Assignment Mode—Automatic, On Demand, or Disabled.
    - Update Interval—In seconds.
    - Avoid Foreign AP Interference—Select the check box to enable.
    - Avoid Cisco AP load—Select the check box to enable.
    - Avoid non 802.11 Noise—Select the check box to enable.
    - Signal Strength Contribution—Select the check box to enable.
  - Data Rates
    - Ranges between 1 Mbps and 54 Mbps—Supported, Mandatory, or Disabled.
  - Noise/Interference/Rogue Monitoring Channels
    - Channel List—All Channels, Country Channels, DCA Channels.
  - CCX Location Measurement
    - Mode—Select the check box to enable.
    - Interval—In seconds.
- The CCX Location Measurement Interval can be changed only when measurement mode is enabled.
- Step 4** Click **Save**.
-

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM DCA](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Thresholds

To configure a 802.11b/g/n RRM threshold controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11b/g/n > RRM Thresholds**.
  - Step 4** Make any necessary changes to Coverage Thresholds, Load Thresholds, Other Thresholds, and Noise/Interference/Rogue Monitoring Channels. When the Coverage Thresholds Min SNR Level (dB) field is adjusted, the value of the Signal Strength (dB) automatically reflects this change. The Signal Strength (dB) field provides information regarding what the target range of coverage thresholds is when adjusting the SNR value.
  - Step 5** Click **Save**.
- 


**Related Topics**

- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM DCA](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n CleanAir Parameters](#)



## Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Intervals

To configure 802.11a/n or 802.11b/g/n RRM intervals for an individual controller, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11a/n > RRM Intervals** or **802.11b/g/n > RRM Intervals**.
- 
-  **Note** The default for the following four RRM interval parameters is 300 seconds.
- 
- Step 4** Enter at which interval you want strength measurements taken for each access point.
  - Step 5** Enter at which interval you want noise and interference measurements taken for each access point.
  - Step 6** Enter at which interval you want load measurements taken for each access point.
  - Step 7** Enter at which interval you want coverage measurements taken for each access point.
  - Step 8** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM DCA](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Transmit Power Control

The controller dynamically controls access point transmit power based on real-time wireless LAN conditions. Normally, power can be kept low to gain extra capacity and reduce interference. The controller attempts to balance the transmit power of an access point according to how the access points are seen by their third strongest neighbor.

The transmit power control (TPC) algorithm both increases and decreases the power of an access point in response to changes in the RF environment. In most instances, TPC seeks to lower the power of an access point to reduce interference, but in the case of a sudden change in the RF coverage—for example, if an access point fails or becomes disabled—TPC can also increase power on surrounding access points. This feature is different from Coverage Hole Detection. Coverage hole detection is primarily concerned with clients, while TPC is tasked with providing enough RF power to achieve desired coverage levels while avoiding channel interference between access points.

To configure 802.11b/g/n RRM TPC, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11b/g/n-RRM > TPC**.
- Step 4** Configure the following TPC parameters:
- **Template Applied**—The name of the template applied to this controller.
  - **Dynamic Assignment**—At the Dynamic Assignment drop-down list, choose one of three modes:
    - **Automatic**—The transmit power is periodically updated for all access points that permit this operation.
    - **On Demand**—Transmit power is updated when the Assign Now button is selected.
    - **Disabled**—No dynamic transmit power assignments occur, and values are set to their global default.
  - **Maximum Power Assignment**—Indicates the maximum power assigned.
    - Range: -10 to 30 dB
    - Default: 30 dB
  - **Minimum Power Assignment**—Indicates the minimum power assigned.
    - Range: -10 to 30 dB
    - Default: 30 dB
  - **Dynamic Tx Power Control**—Determine if you want to enable Dynamic Tx Power Control.
  - **Transmitted Power Threshold**—Enter a transmitted power threshold between -50 and -80.
  - **Control Interval**—In seconds (read-only).
- Step 5** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM DCA](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM DCA

To configure 802.11a/n or 802.11b/g/n RRM DCA channels for an individual controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11b/g/n-RRM > DCA**.
- Step 4** Select the check box(es) for the applicable DCA channel(s). The selected channels are listed in the Selected DCA channels text box.
- Step 5** Enable or disable event-driven Radio Resource Management (RRM). Event Driven RRM is used when a CleanAir-enabled access point detects a significant level of interference, follow these steps:
- Event Driven RRM—Enable or Disable spectrum event-driven RRM. By default, Event Driven RRM is enabled.
  - Sensitivity Threshold—If Event Driven RRM is enabled, this text box displays the threshold level at which event-driven RRM is triggered. It can have a value of either Low, Medium, or High. When the interference for the access point rises above the threshold level, RRM initiates a local Dynamic Channel Assignment (DCA) run and changes the channel of the affected access point radio if possible to improve network performance. Low represents a decreased sensitivity to changes in the environment while High represents an increased sensitivity
- Step 6** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Radio Grouping

To configure 802.11a/n or 802.11b/g/n RRM Radio Grouping for an individual controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.

- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11b/g/n > RRM > RF Grouping**.
- Step 4** Choose a grouping mode from the drop-down list. The following parameters appear:
- **Automatic**—Allows you to activate the automatic RRM Grouping Algorithm. This is the default mode.
  - **Off**—Allows you to deactivate the automatic grouping.
  - **Leader**—Allows you to assign members to the group.
- Step 5** Choose a group update interval (secs) from the drop-down list. When grouping is on, this interval (in seconds) represents the period with which the grouping algorithm is run by the Group Leader. Grouping algorithm also runs when the group contents changes and the automatic grouping is enabled. A dynamic grouping can be started upon request from the system administrator. The default value is 600 seconds.
- Step 6** In the Group Members group box, click **Add >**. The selected controller moves from the Available Controllers to the RF Group Members list.
- The RF Group Members group box appears only when the grouping mode is set to Leader. The maximum number of controllers that can be added to a RF Group is 20.
- Step 7** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM DCA](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters

To configure the media parameters for 802.11b/g/n, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11b/g/n > Media Parameters**.
- Step 4** In the Voice tab, configure the following parameters:
- Admission Control (ACM)—Select the check box to enable admission control.

For end users to experience acceptable audio quality during a VoIP phone call, packets must be delivered from one endpoint to another with low latency and low packet loss. To maintain QoS under differing network loads, Call Admission Control (CAC) is required. CAC on an access point allows it to maintain controlled QoS when the network is experiencing congestion and keep the maximum allowed number of calls to an acceptable quantity.

- **CAC Method**—If Admission Control (ACM) is enabled, specify the CAC method as either load-based or static.

Load-based CAC incorporates a measurement scheme that takes into account the bandwidth consumed by all traffic types from itself, from co-channel access points, and by co-located channel interference. Load-based CAC also covers the additional bandwidth consumption resulting from PHY and channel impairment.

In load-based CAC, the access point periodically measures and updates the utilization of the RF channel, channel interference, and the additional calls that the access point can admit. The access point admits a new call only if the channel has enough unused bandwidth to support that call. By doing so, load-based CAC prevents over-subscription of the channel and maintains QoS under all conditions of WLAN loading and interference.

- **Maximum Bandwidth Allowed**—Specify the percentage of maximum bandwidth allowed. This option is only available when CAC is enabled. The valid range is 5 to 85.
- **Reserved Roaming Bandwidth**—Specify the percentage of reserved roaming bandwidth. This option is only available when CAC is enabled. The valid range is 0 to 25.
- **Expedited Bandwidth**—Select the check box to enable expedited bandwidth as an extension of CAC for emergency calls.

You must have an expedited bandwidth that is CCXv5 compliant so that a TSPEC request is given higher priority.

- **SIP CAC**—Select the check box to enable SIP CAC.

SIP CAC should be used only for phones that support status code 17 and do not support TSPEC-based admission control.

- **SIP Codec**—Specify the codec name you want to use on this radio. The available options are G.711, G.729, and User Defined.
- **SIP Call Bandwidth**—Specify the bandwidth in kilobits per second that you want to assign per SIP call on the network. This field can be configured only when the SIP Codec selected is User Defined.
- **SIP Sample Interval**—Specify the sample interval in milliseconds that the codec must operate in.
- **Max Voice Calls per Radio**—Indicates the maximum number of voice calls that can be made per Radio. You cannot set the value of Max Voice Calls per Radio. This is automatically calculated based on the selected CAC method, Max BW allowed, and Roaming Bandwidth.
- **Max Roaming Reserved Calls per Radio**—Indicates the maximum number roaming calls that can be reserved per Radio. The Max Voice Calls per Radio and Max Roaming Reserved Calls per Radio options are available only if the CAC Method is specified as Static and SIP CAC is enabled.
- **Metric Collection**—Select the check box to enable metric collection.

Traffic stream metrics are a series of statistics about VoIP over your wireless LAN which inform you of the QoS of the wireless LAN. For the access point to collect measurement values, traffic stream metrics must be enabled. When this is enabled, the controller begins collecting statistical data every 90 seconds for the 802.11b/g interfaces from all associated access points. If you are using VoIP or video, this feature should be enabled.

**Step 5** In the **Video** tab, configure the following parameters:

- Admission Control (ACM)—Select the check box to enable admission control.
- Maximum Bandwidth—Specify the percentage of maximum bandwidth allowed. This option is only available when CAC is enabled. For controller versions 6.0.188.0 and earlier, the valid range is 0 to 100. For controller versions 6.0.188.1 and later, the valid range is 5 to 85.
- Reserved Roaming Bandwidth—Specify the percentage of reserved roaming bandwidth. This option is only available when CAC is enabled. The valid range is 0 to 25.
- Unicast Video Redirect—Select the **Unicast Video Redirect** check box to enable all non-media stream packets in video queue are redirected to the best effort queue. If disabled, all packets with video marking are kept in video queue.
- Client Minimum Phy Rate—Specify the physical data rate required for the client to join a media stream from the Client Minimum Phy Rate drop-down list.
- Multicast Direct Enable—Select the **Multicast Direct Enable** check box to set the Media Direct for any WLAN with Media Direct enabled on a WLAN on this radio.
- Maximum Number of Streams per Radio—Specify the maximum number of streams per Radio to be allowed.
- Maximum Number of Streams per Client—Specify the maximum number of streams per Client to be allowed.
- Best Effort QOS Admission—Select the **Best Effort QOS Admission** check box to redirect new client requests to the best effort queue. This happens only if all the video bandwidth has been used. If disabled and maximum video bandwidth has been used, then any new client request is rejected.

**Step 6** On the **General** tab, configure the following field:

- Maximum Media Bandwidth (0 to 85%)—Specify the percentage of maximum of bandwidth allowed. This option is only available when CAC is enabled.

**Step 7** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM DCA](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters

The EDCA parameters (EDCA profile and Streaming MAC Enable settings) for 802.11a/n and 802.11b/g/n can be configured either by individual controller or through a controller template to improve voice QoS support.

To configure 802.11a/n or 802.11b/g/n EDCA parameters for an individual controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11a/n > EDCA Parameters** or **802.11b/g/n > EDCA Parameters**.
- Step 4** Choose the EDCA Profile from the drop-down list.  
Profiles include Wi-Fi Multimedia (WMM), Spectralink Voice Priority (SVP), Voice Optimized, and Voice & Video Optimized. WMM is the default EDCA profile. You must shut down radio interface before configuring EDCA Parameters.
- Step 5** Select the **Enable Streaming MAC** check box to enable this feature.  
Only enable Streaming MAC if all clients on the network are WMM compliant.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM DCA](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters

To configure 802.11a/n or 802.11b/g/n EDCA parameters for an individual controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11a/n > Roaming Parameters** or **802.11b/g/n > Roaming Parameters**.
- Step 4** From the Mode drop-down list, choose **Default values** or **Custom values**.
  - Default values—The default values (read-only) are automatically displayed in the text boxes.
  - Custom values—Activates the text boxes to enable editing of the roaming parameters.
- Step 5** In the Minimum RSSI text box, enter a value for the minimum Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) required for the client to associate to an access point.

- Range: -80 to -90 dBm
- Default: -85 dBm



**Note** If the client average received signal power dips below this threshold, reliable communication is typically impossible; clients must already have found and roamed to another access point with a stronger signal before the minimum RSSI value is reached.

**Step 6** In the Hysteresis text box, enter a value to indicate how strong the signal strength of a neighboring access point must be in order for the client to roam to it.

This field is intended to reduce the amount of “ping ponging” between access points if the client is physically located on or near the border between two access points.

- Range: 2 to 4 dB
- Default: 3 dB

**Step 7** In the Adaptive Scan Threshold text box, enter the RSSI value, from a client associated access point, below which the client must be able to roam to a neighboring access point within the specified transition time.

This field provides a power-save method to minimize the time that the client spends in active or passive scanning. For example, the client can scan slowly when the RSSI is above the threshold and scan more rapidly when below the threshold.

- Range: -70 to -77 dB
- Default: -72 dB

**Step 8** In the Transition Time text box, enter the maximum time allowed for the client to detect a suitable neighboring access point to roam to and to complete the roam, whenever the RSSI from the client associated access point is below the scan threshold.

The Scan Threshold and Transition Time parameters guarantee a minimum level of client roaming performance. Together with the highest expected client speed and roaming hysteresis, these parameters make it possible to design a wireless LAN network that supports roaming simply by ensuring a certain minimum overlap distance between access points.

- Range: 1 to 10 seconds
- Default: 5 seconds

**Step 9** Click **Save**.

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM DCA](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters](#)



- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11b/g/n High Throughput (802.11n) Parameters

To configure 802.11a/n or 802.11b/g/n high throughput parameters, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11a/n > High Throughput** or **802.11b/g/n > High Throughput**.
- Step 4** Select the **802.11n Network Status Enabled** check box to enable high throughput.
- Step 5** In the MCS (Data Rate) Settings, choose which level of data rate you want supported. MCS is modulation coding schemes which are similar to 802.11a data rate. As a default, 20 MHz and short guarded interval is used.
- When you select the Supported check box, the chosen numbers appear in the Selected MCS Indexes page.
- Step 6** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM DCA](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n CleanAir Parameters](#)

## Configuring 802.11b/g/n CleanAir Parameters

To configure 802.11b/g/n CleanAir parameters, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **802.11b/g/n > CleanAir** to view the following information.

- CleanAir—Select the check box to enable CleanAir functionality on the 802.11b/g/n network, or unselect to prevent the controller from detecting spectrum interference. The default value is selected.
- Reporting Configuration—Use the parameters in this section to configure the interferer devices you want to include for your reports.
  - Report—Select the **report interferers** check box to enable CleanAir system to report and detect sources of interference, or unselect it to prevent the controller from reporting interferers. The default value is selected.
  - Make sure that any sources of interference that need to be detected and reported by the CleanAir system appear in the Interferences to Detect text box and any that do not need to be detected appear in the Interferers to Ignore text box. Use the > and < buttons to move interference sources between these two text boxes. By default, all interference sources are detected.
  - Select the **Persistent Device Propagation** check box to enable propagation of information about persistent devices that can be detected by CleanAir. Persistent device propagation enables designating information about interference types and propagating this information to the neighboring access points. Persistent interferers are present at a location and interfere with the WLAN operations even if they are not detectable at all times.
- Alarm Configuration—This group box enables you to configure triggering of air quality alarms.
  - Air Quality Alarm—Select the **Air Quality Alarm** check box to enable the triggering of air quality alarms, or unselect the text box to disable this feature. The default value is selected.
  - Air Quality Alarm Threshold—If you selected the Air Quality Alarm check box, enter a value between 1 and 100 (inclusive) in the Air Quality Alarm Threshold text box to specify the threshold at which you want the air quality alarm to be triggered. When the air quality falls below the threshold level, the alarm is triggered. A value of 1 represents the worst air quality, and 100 represents the best. The default value is 35.
  - Air Quality Unclassified category Alarm—Select **Air Quality Unclassified category Alarm** check box to enable the alarms to be generated for unclassified interference category. Cisco CleanAir can detect and monitor unclassified interferences. Unclassified interference are interference that are detected but do not correspond to any of the known interference types.  
The Unclassified category alarm is generated when the unclassified severity goes above the configured threshold value for unclassified severity or when the air quality index goes below the configured threshold value for Air Quality Index.
  - Air Quality Unclassified Category Severity Threshold—If you selected the Air Quality Unclassified category Alarm check box, enter a value between 1 and 99 (inclusive) in the Air Quality Unclassified Severity Threshold text box to specify the threshold at which you want the unclassified category alarm to be triggered. The default is 20.
  - Interferers For Security Alarm—Select the **Interferers For Security Alarm** check box to trigger interferer alarms when the controller detects specified device types, or unselect it to disable this feature. The default value is selected.
  - Make sure that any sources of interference that need to trigger interferer alarms appear in the Interferers Selected for Security Alarms text box and any that do not need to trigger interferer alarms appear in the Interferers Ignored for Security Alarms text box. Use the > and < buttons to move interference sources between these two text boxes. By default, all interference sources trigger interferer alarms.
- Event Driven RRM—To trigger spectrum event-driven Radio Resource Management (RRM) to run when a CleanAir-enabled access point detects a significant level of interference, use the following parameters:

- Event Driven RRM—Displays the current status of spectrum event-driven RRM.
- Sensitivity Threshold—If Event Driven RRM is enabled, this text box displays the threshold level at which event-driven RRM is triggered. It can have a value of either Low, Medium, or High. When the interference for the access point rises above the threshold level, RRM initiates a local Dynamic Channel Allocation (DCA) run and changes the channel of the affected access point radio if possible to improve network performance. Low represents a decreased sensitivity to changes in the environment while High represents an increased sensitivity.

**Step 4** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n General Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Thresholds](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Intervals](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Transmit Power Control](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM DCA](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n RRM Radio Grouping](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Media Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n EDCA Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n Roaming Parameters](#)
- [Configuring 802.11b/g/n High Throughput \(802.11n\) Parameters](#)

## Configuring Mesh Parameters

To configure Mesh parameters for an individual controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Mesh > Mesh Settings**.
- Step 4** View or edit the following mesh parameters:
- RootAP to MeshAP Range —By default, this value is 12,000 feet. You can enter a value between 150 and 132,000 feet. Enter the optimum distance (in feet) that exists between the root access point and the mesh access point. This global field applies to all access points when they join the controller and all existing access points in the network.
  - Client Access on Backhaul Link—Enabling this feature lets mesh access points associate with 802.11a wireless clients over the 802.11a backhaul. This is in addition to the existing communication on the 802.11a backhaul between the root and mesh access points. This feature is applicable only to the access points with two radios. Changing Backhaul Client Access reboots all the mesh access points. See the “Client Access on 1524SB Dual Backhaul” in the Related Topics for more information.

- **Mesh DCA Channels**— Enabling this option lets the backhaul channel to deselect on the controller using the DCA channel list. Any change to the channels in the Controller DCA list is pushed to the associated access points. This option is only applicable for 1524SB mesh access points. See the “Backhaul Channel Deselection in PI” in the Related Topics for more information.
- **Background Scanning**—Select the **Background Scanning** check box to enable background scanning or unselect it to disable the feature. The default value is disabled. Background scanning allows Cisco Aironet 1510 Access Points to actively and continuously monitor neighboring channels for more optimal paths and parents.
- **Global Public Safety**— Enabling this option indicates that 4.9 Ghz can be used on backhaul link by selecting channel on the 802.11a backhaul radio. 4.9Ghz considered to be public safety band and is limited to some service providers. This setting applies at the controller level.
- **Security Mode**—Choose **EAP** (Extensible Authentication Protocol) or **PSK** (Pre-Shared Key) from the Security Mode drop-down list. Changing Security reboots all mesh access points.

**Step 5** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Client Access on 1524SB Dual Backhaul](#)
- [Backhaul Channel Deselection in PI](#)

## Client Access on 1524SB Dual Backhaul

The 1524 Serial Backhaul (SB) access point consists of three radio slots.

- Radio in slot-0 operates in 2.4 GHz frequency band and is used for client access.
- Radios in slot-1 and slot-2 operate in 5.8 GHz band and are primarily used for backhaul.

The two 802.11a backhaul radios use the same MAC address. There might be instances where the same WLAN maps to the same BSSID in more than one slot.

By default, client access is disabled over both the backhaul radios.

The guidelines must be followed to enable or disable a radio slot:

- You can enable client access on slot-1 even if client access on slot-2 is disabled.
- You can enable client access on slot-2 only when client access on slot-1 is enabled.
- If you disable client access on slot-1, then client access on slot-2 is automatically disabled.
- All the Mesh Access Points reboot whenever the client access is enabled or disabled.

The Universal Client Access feature allows client access over both the slot-1 and slot-2 radios. You can configure client access over backhaul radio from either one of the following:

- The Controller command-line interface (CLI)
- The Controller Graphical User Interface (GUI)
- Prime Infrastructure GUI. See the “Configuring Client Access in PI” in the Related Topics for more information.

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Client Access in PI](#)
- [Backhaul Channel Deselection in PI](#)

- [Configuring Mesh Parameters](#)

## Configuring Client Access in PI

To configure client access on the two backhaul radios, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Mesh > Mesh Settings**.
  - Step 4** Select the **Client Access on Backhaul Link** check box.
  - Step 5** Select the **Extended Backhaul Client Access** check box.
  - Step 6** Click **Save**.

A warning message is displayed:

Enabling client access on both backhaul slots will use same BSSIDs on both the slots.  
Changing Backhaul Client Access will reboot all Mesh APs.

- Step 7** Click **OK**.
- The Universal Client access is configured on both the radios.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Backhaul Channel Deselection in PI](#)
- [Configuring Mesh Parameters](#)
- [Client Access on 1524SB Dual Backhaul](#)

## Backhaul Channel Deselection in PI

To configure backhaul channel deselection, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Configure the Mesh DCA channels flag on the controllers. See the “Configuring Mesh DCA Channel Flag on Controllers Using PI” for more information.
  - Step 2** Change the channel list using configuration groups. See the “Changing the Channel List Using Configuration Groups” for more information.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Mesh DCA Channel Flag on Controllers Using PI](#)
- [Changing the Channel List Using Configuration Groups](#)
- [Configuring Client Access in PI](#)
- [Client Access on 1524SB Dual Backhaul](#)
- [Configuring Mesh Parameters](#)

## Configuring Mesh DCA Channel Flag on Controllers Using PI

You can configure the Mesh DCA Channel flag to push each channel change on one or more controllers to all the associated 1524SB access points. To configure this feature, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Mesh > Mesh Settings**.
  - Step 4** Select the **Mesh DCA Channels** check box to enable channel selection. This option is unselected by default.

Now the channel changes in the controllers are pushed to the associated 1524SB access points.

---

## Changing the Channel List Using Configuration Groups

You can use controller configuration groups to configure backhaul channel deselection. You can create a configuration group and add the required controllers to the group and use the Country/DCA tab to select or deselect channels for the controllers in that group.

To configure backhaul channel deselection using configuration groups, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Controller Configuration Groups**.
  - Step 2** Select a configuration group to view its configuration group details.
  - Step 3** From the Configuration Group detail page, click the **Country/DCA** tab.
  - Step 4** Select or unselect the **Update Country/DCA** check box.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Mesh DCA Channel Flag on Controllers Using PI](#)
- [Client Access on 1524SB Dual Backhaul](#)
- [Backhaul Channel Deselection in PI](#)
- [Configuring Mesh Parameters](#)

## Configuring Port Parameters

To configure Port parameters for an individual controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click an applicable device.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Ports > Port Settings**.
  - Step 4** Click the applicable Port Number to open the Port Settings Details page. The following parameters are displayed:
    - General Parameters:

- Port Number—Read-only.
- Admin Status—Choose Enabled or Disabled from the drop-down list.
- Physical Mode— Auto Negotiate (Read-only)
- Physical Status— Full Duplex 1000 Mbps (Read-only).
- STP Mode—Choose 802.1D, Fast, or Off.
- Link Traps—Choose Enabled or Disabled.
- Power Over Ethernet
- Multicast Application Mode—Select Enabled or Disabled.
- Port Mode SFP Type— Read-only
- Spanning Tree Protocol Parameters:
  - Priority—The numerical priority number of the ideal switch.
  - Path Cost—A value (typically based on hop count, media bandwidth, or other measures) assigned by the network administrator and used to determine the most favorable path through an internetwork environment (lower the cost, better the path).

**Step 5** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Mesh Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Controller Management Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Location Configurations](#)
- [Configuring IPv6](#)
- [Configuring Proxy Mobile IPv6](#)
- [Configuring mDNS](#)
- [Configuring Application Visibility and Control Parameters](#)
- [Configuring NetFlow](#)

## Configuring Controller Management Parameters

The following management parameters of the controllers can be configured:

- Trap Receivers
- Trap Control
- Telnet and SSH
- Multiple Syslog servers
- Web Admin
- Local Management Users
- Authentication Priority

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Trap Receivers](#)

- [Configuring Trap Control Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Telnet SSH Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Multiple Syslog Servers](#)
- [Configuring Web Admin](#)
- [Configuring Local Management Users](#)
- [Configuring Authentication Priority](#)

## Configuring Trap Receivers

The trap receiver parameter can be configured for individual wireless controllers. This parameter can be added / deleted from the wireless controller. A trap receiver can be added by creating a template under **Configuration > Features & Technologies**.

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Trap Receivers for an Individual Controller](#)
- [Deleting a Receiver](#)

### Configuring Trap Receivers for an Individual Controller

To configure trap receivers for an individual controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Management > Trap Receiver**.
  - Step 4** The following parameters are displayed for current trap receivers:
    - Community Name— Name of the trap receiver.
    - IP Address—The IP address of the server.
    - Admin Status—Status must be enabled for the SNMP traps to be sent to the receiver.
  - Step 5** Click a receiver Name to access its details.
  - Step 6** Select the **Admin Status** check box to enable the trap receiver. Unselect the check box to disable the trap receiver.
  - Step 7** Click **Save**.
- 

### Deleting a Receiver

To delete a receiver / receivers, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Select the applicable receiver / receivers check-box.
  - Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Delete Receivers**.
  - Step 3** Click **Go**.



**Step 4** Click **OK** in the confirmation message.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Trap Receivers](#)
- [Configuring Trap Control Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Telnet SSH Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Multiple Syslog Servers](#)
- [Configuring Web Admin](#)
- [Configuring Local Management Users](#)
- [Configuring Authentication Priority](#)

## Configuring Trap Control Parameters

To configure trap control parameters for an individual controller, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Management > Trap Control**.
- Step 4** The following traps can be enabled for this controller:
- Miscellaneous Traps:
    - SNMP Authentication—The SNMPv2 entity has received a protocol message that is not properly authenticated. When a user who is configured in SNMP V3 mode tries to access the controller with an incorrect password, the authentication fails and a failure message is displayed. However, no trap logs are generated for the authentication failure.
    - Link (Port) Up/Down—Link changes status from up or down.
    - Multiple Users—Two users login with the same login ID.
    - Spanning Tree—Spanning Tree traps. See the STP specifications for descriptions of individual parameters.
    - Rogue AP—Whenever a rogue AP is detected this trap is sent with its MAC address; For a rogue AP that was detected earlier and it no longer exists, this trap is sent.
    - Config Save—Notification sent when the controller configuration is modified.
    - RFID Limit Reached Threshold— The maximum permissible value for RFID limit.
  - Client Related Traps:
    - 802.11 Association—The associate notification is sent when the client sends an association frame.
    - 802.11 Disassociation—The disassociate notification is sent when the client sends a disassociation frame.
    - 802.11 Deauthentication—The deauthenticate notification is sent when the client sends a deauthentication frame.

- 802.11 Failed Authentication—The authenticate failure notification is sent when the client sends an authentication frame with a status code other than 'successful'.
- 802.11 Failed Association—The associate failure notification is sent when the client sends an association frame with a status code other than 'successful'.
- Excluded—The associate failure notification is sent when a client is excluded.
- 802.11 Authenticated— The authenticate notification is sent when the client sends an authentication frame with a status code 'successful'.
- MaxClients Limit Reached Threshold— The maximum permissible number of clients allowed.
- Cisco AP Traps:
  - AP Register—Notification sent when an access point associates or disassociates with the controller.
  - AP Interface Up/Down—Notification sent when access point interface (802.11a or 802.11b/g) status goes up or down.
- Auto RF Profile Traps:
  - Load Profile—Notification sent when Load Profile state changes between PASS and FAIL.
  - Noise Profile—Notification sent when Noise Profile state changes between PASS and FAIL.
  - Interference Profile—Notification sent when Interference Profile state changes between PASS and FAIL.
  - Coverage Profile—Notification sent when Coverage Profile state changes between PASS and FAIL.
- Auto RF Update Traps:
  - Channel Update—Notification sent when access point dynamic channel algorithm is updated.
  - Tx Power Update—Notification sent when access point dynamic transmit power algorithm is updated.
- AAA Traps
  - User Auth Failure—This trap is to inform that a client RADIUS Authentication failure has occurred.
  - RADIUS Server No Response—This trap is to indicate that no RADIUS server(s) are responding to authentication requests sent by the RADIUS client.
- 802.11 Security Traps:
  - WEP Decrypt Error—Notification sent when the controller detects a WEP decrypting error.
  - Signature Attack— Notification sent when a signature attack is detected in the wireless controller that uses RADIUS Authentication.

**Step 5** After selecting the applicable parameters, click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Trap Receivers](#)
- [Configuring Telnet SSH Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Multiple Syslog Servers](#)
- [Configuring Web Admin](#)

- [Configuring Local Management Users](#)
- [Configuring Authentication Priority](#)

## Configuring Telnet SSH Parameters

To configure Telnet SSH (Secure Shell) parameters for an individual controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Management > Telnet SSH**.

The following parameters can be configured:

- **Session Timeout**—Indicates the number of minutes a Telnet session is allowed to remain inactive before being logged off. A zero means there is no timeout. Might be specified as a number from 0 to 160. The factory default is 5.
- **Maximum Sessions**—From the drop-down list, choose a value from 0 to 5. This object indicates the number of simultaneous Telnet sessions allowed.
- **Allow New Telnet Sessions**—Indicates that new Telnet sessions are not allowed on the DS Port when set to no. The factory default value is no. New Telnet sessions can be allowed or disallowed on the DS (network) port. New Telnet sessions are always allowed on the Service port.
- **Allow New SSH Sessions**—Indicates that new Secure Shell Telnet sessions are not allowed when set to no. The factory default value is yes.

- Step 4** After configuring the applicable parameters, click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Trap Receivers](#)
- [Configuring Trap Control Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Multiple Syslog Servers](#)
- [Configuring Web Admin](#)
- [Configuring Local Management Users](#)
- [Configuring Authentication Priority](#)

## Configuring Multiple Syslog Servers

For Release 5.0.148.0 controllers or later, you can configure multiple (up to three) syslog servers on the WLAN controller. With each message logged, the controller sends a copy of the message to each configured syslog host, provided the message has severity greater than or equal to the configured syslog filter severity level.

To enable syslogs for an individual controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.

- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Management > Multiple Syslog**.  
The applied template is identified:  
Syslog Server Address—Indicates the server address of the applicable syslog.
- Step 4** Click **Save**.
- 

## Deleting a Syslog Server

To delete syslog server(s), follow these steps:

- Step 1** Select the syslog server(s) check-box.
- Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Delete Syslog Servers**.
- Step 3** Click **Go**.
- Step 4** Click **OK** in the confirmation message.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Trap Receivers](#)
- [Configuring Trap Control Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Telnet SSH Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Web Admin](#)
- [Configuring Local Management Users](#)
- [Configuring Authentication Priority](#)

## Configuring Web Admin

This section provides instructions for enabling the distribution system port as a web port (using HTTP) or as a secure web port (using HTTPS). You can protect communication with the GUI by enabling HTTPS. HTTPS protects HTTP browser sessions by using the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol. When you enable HTTPS, the controller generates its own local web administration SSL certificate and automatically applies it to the GUI. You can download an externally generated certificate.

To enable WEB admin parameters for an individual controller, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Management > Web Admin**.  
The following parameters can be configured:
- **WEB Mode**—Choose **Enable** or **Disable** from the drop-down list. When enabled, users can access the controller GUI using *http:ip-address*. The default is Disabled. Web mode is not a secure connection.

- Secure Web Mode—Choose **Enable** or **Disable** from the drop-down list. When enabled, users can access the controller GUI using *https://ip-address*. The default is Enabled.
  - Certificate Type— The Web Admin certificate must be downloaded. The controller must be rebooted for the new Web Admin certificate to take effect.
    - Download Web Admin Certificate—Click to access the Download Web Admin Certificate to Controller page. See “[Downloading Web Auth or Web Admin Certificate to the Controller](#)” for more information.
- 

## Downloading Web Auth or Web Admin Certificate to the Controller

To download a Web Auth or Web Admin Certificate to the controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Click the **Download Web Admin Certificate** or **Download Web Auth Certificate** link.
  - Step 2** In the **File is located on** field, specify Local machine or TFTP server. If the certificate is located on the TFTP server, enter the server filename. If it is located on the local machine, click **Browse** and enter the local filename.
  - Step 3** Enter the TFTP server name in the **Server Name** text box. The default is the Prime Infrastructure server.
  - Step 4** Enter the server IP address.
  - Step 5** In the **Maximum Retries** text box, enter the maximum number of times that the TFTP server attempts to download the certificate.
  - Step 6** In the **Time Out** text box, enter the amount of time (in seconds) that the TFTP server attempts to download the certificate.
  - Step 7** In the **Local File Name** text box, enter the directory path of the certificate.
  - Step 8** In the Server File Name text box, enter the name of the certificate.
  - Step 9** Enter the password in the **Certificate Password** text box.
  - Step 10** Re-enter the above password in the **Confirm Password** text box.
  - Step 11** Click **OK**.
  - Step 12** Click **Regenerate Cert** to regenerate the certificate.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Web Admin](#)
- [Configuring Trap Receivers](#)
- [Configuring Trap Control Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Telnet SSH Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Multiple Syslog Servers](#)
- [Configuring Local Management Users](#)
- [Configuring Authentication Priority](#)

## Configuring Local Management Users

This page lists the names and access privileges of the local management users. You can also delete the local management user.

To access the Local Management Users page, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Management > Local Management Users**.
  - Step 4** Click a username.
    - User Name (read-only)—Name of the user.
    - Access Level (read-only)—Read Write or Read Only.
- 

## Deleting the Local Management User

To delete the Local Management User, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Select the user(s) check-box.
  - Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-list, choose **Delete Local Management Users**.
  - Step 3** Click **Go**.
  - Step 4** Click **OK** in the confirmation message.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Authentication Priority](#)
- [Configuring Trap Receivers](#)
- [Configuring Trap Control Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Telnet SSH Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Multiple Syslog Servers](#)
- [Configuring Web Admin](#)

## Configuring Authentication Priority

Authentication Priority is configured to control the order in which authentication servers are used to authenticate controller management users.

To access the Authentication Priority page, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.

- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Management > Authentication Priority**.
- Step 4** The local database is searched first. Choose either RADIUS or TACACS+ for the next search. If authentication using the local database fails, the controller uses the next type of server.
- Step 5** Click **Save**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Controller Management Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Mesh Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Port Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Location Configurations](#)
- [Configuring IPv6](#)
- [Configuring Proxy Mobile IPv6](#)
- [Configuring mDNS](#)
- [Configuring Application Visibility and Control Parameters](#)
- [Configuring NetFlow](#)

## Configuring Location Configurations

Currently WiFi clients are moving towards lesser probing to discover an AP. Smartphones do this to conserve battery power. The applications on a smartphone have difficulty generating probe request but can easily generate data packets and hence trigger enhanced location for the application. Hyperlocation is configured from WLC 8.1MR and Prime Infrastructure 3.0. It is ultra-precise in locating beacons, inventory, and personal mobile devices. Some networks use multiple access points to get location coordinates within 5 to 7 meters of accuracy, but Hyperlocation can track locations to within a single meter.

To configure location configurations for an individual controller, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Location > Location Configuration**.  
The Location Configuration page displays two tabs: **General** and **Advanced**.
- Step 4** Add or modify the General parameters:
- **RFID Tag Data Collection**—Select the check box to enable the collection of data on tags.  
Before the location server can collect asset tag data from controllers, you must enable the detection of active RFID tags using the CLI command **config rfid status enable** on the controllers.
  - **Location Path Loss Configuration**

- Calibrating Client—Select the check box to enable calibration for the client. Controllers send regular S36 or S60 requests (depending on the client capability) by way of the access point to calibrate clients. Packets are transmitted on all channels. All access points gather RSSI data from the client at each location. These additional transmissions and channel changes might degrade contemporaneous voice or video traffic.
- Normal Client—Select the check box to have a non-calibrating client. No S36 requests are transmitted to the client. S36 is compatible with CCXv2 or later whereas S60 is compatible with CCXv4 or later.
- Measurement Notification Interval (in secs)
  - Tags, Clients, and Rogue APs/Clients—Allows you to set the NMSP measurement notification interval for clients, tags, and rogues. Specify how many seconds should elapse before notification of the found element (tags, clients, and rogue access points/clients).  
  
Setting this value on the controller generates an out-of-sync notification which you can view in the Synchronize Servers page. When different measurement intervals exist between a controller and the mobility services engine, the largest interval setting of the two is adopted by the mobility services engine.  
  
Once this controller is synchronized with the mobility services engine, the new value is set on the mobility services engine. Synchronization to the mobility services engine is required if changes are made to measurement notification interval.
- RSS Expiry Timeout (in secs)
  - For Clients—Enter the number of seconds after which RSSI measurements for normal (non-calibrating) clients must be discarded.
  - For Calibrating Clients—Enter the number of seconds after which RSSI measurements for calibrating clients must be discarded.
  - For Tags—Enter the number of seconds after which RSSI measurements for tags must be discarded.
  - For Rogue APs—Enter the number of seconds after which RSSI measurements for rogue access points must be discarded.

**Step 5** Add or modify the Advanced parameters:

- RFID Tag Data Timeout (in secs)—Enter a value (in seconds) to set the RFID tag data timeout setting.
- Location Path Loss Configuration
  - Calibrating Client Multiband—Select the **Enable** check box to send S36 and S60 packets (where applicable) on all channels. Calibrating clients must be enabled in the general tab as well. To use all radios (802.11a/b/g/n) available, you must enable multiband.
- Hyperlocation Config Parameters
  - Hyperlocation— By enabling this option, all the APs associated to that controller which have the Hyperlocation module will be enabled.
  - Packet Detection RSSI Minimum—Adjust this value to filter out weak RSSI readings from location calculation.
  - Scan Count Threshold for Idle Client Detection—The maximum permissible count of the idle clients detected while scanning.
  - NTP Server IP Address—Enter the valid NTP server IP address. This IP address is used by all APs for time synchronization.



**Step 6** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring IPv6](#)
- [Configuring Mesh Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Port Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Controller Management Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Proxy Mobile IPv6](#)
- [Configuring mDNS](#)
- [Configuring Application Visibility and Control Parameters](#)
- [Configuring NetFlow](#)

## Configuring IPv6

IPv6 can be configured with Neighbor Binding Timer and Router Advertisements (RA) parameters.

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Neighbor Binding Timers](#)
- [Configuring RA Throttle Policy](#)
- [Configuring RA Guard](#)

## Configuring Neighbor Binding Timers

To configure the Neighbor Binding Timers, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **IPv6 > Neighbor Binding Timers**.
- Step 4** The applied template will be displayed. Add or modify the following parameters:
- **Down Lifetime Interval**— This indicates the maximum time, in seconds. The range is 0 to 86,400 seconds, and the default value is 0.
  - **Reachable Lifetime Interval**—This indicates the maximum time, in seconds. The range is 0 to 86,400 seconds, and the default value is 0.
  - **Stale Lifetime Interval**—This indicates the maximum time, in seconds. The range is 0 to 86,400 seconds, and the default value is 0.
- Step 5** Click **Save**.
-

## Configuring RA Throttle Policy

The RA Throttle Policy allows you to limit the amount of multicast Router Advertisements (RA) circulating on the wireless network.

To configure RA Throttle Policy, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **IPv6 > RA Throttle Policy**.
- Step 4** If you want to enable the RA Throttle Policy, select the **Enable** check box and configure the following parameters:
- Throttle Period—Duration of the throttle period in seconds. The range is 10 to 86,400 seconds.
  - Max Through—The number of RA that passes through over a period or over an unlimited period. If the **No Limit** check-box is not enabled, the maximum pass-through number can be specified.
  - Interval Option—Indicates the behavior in case of RA with an interval option.
    - Ignore
    - Passthrough
    - Throttle
  - Allow At-least—Indicates the minimum number of RA not throttled per router.
  - Allow At-most—Indicates the maximum or unlimited number of RA not throttled per router. If the **No Limit** check-box is not enabled, the maximum number of RA not throttled per router can be specified.
- Step 5** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring RA Guard](#)
- [Configuring Neighbor Binding Timers](#)

## Configuring RA Guard

RA Guard is a Unified Wireless solution to drop RA from wireless clients. It is configured globally, and by default it is enabled. You can configure IPv6 Router Advertisement parameters.

To configure RA Guard, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **IPv6 > RA Guard**.
- Step 4** If you want to enable the Router Advertisement Guard, select the **Enable** check box.

**Step 5** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring IPv6](#)
- [Configuring Proxy Mobile IPv6](#)
- [Configuring mDNS](#)
- [Configuring Application Visibility and Control Parameters](#)
- [Configuring NetFlow](#)
- [Configuring Mesh Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Port Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Controller Management Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Location Configurations](#)

## Configuring Proxy Mobile IPv6

Proxy Mobile IPv6 is a network-based mobility management protocol that supports a mobile node by acting as the proxy for the mobile node in any IP mobility-related signaling. The mobility entities in the network track the movements of the mobile node and initiate the mobility signaling and set up the required routing state.

The main functional entities are the Local Mobility Anchor (LMA) and Mobile Access Gateway (MAG). The LMA maintains the reachability state of the mobile node and is the topological anchor point for the IP address of the mobile node. The MAG performs the mobility management on behalf of a mobile node. The MAG resides on the access link where the mobile node is anchored. The controller implements the MAG functionality.

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring PMIP Global Configurations](#)
- [Configuring LMA Configurations](#)
- [Configuring PMIP Profile](#)

## Configuring PMIP Global Configurations

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** Choose **PMIP > Global Config** from the left sidebar menu.
- Step 4** Configure the following fields:
- Domain Name—Read-only.
  - MAG Name—Read-only.
  - MAG Interface—Read-only.

- **Maximum Bindings Allowed**—Maximum number of binding updates that the controller can send to the MAG. The valid range is between 0 to 40000.
- **Binding Lifetime**—Lifetime of the binding entries in the controller. The valid range is between 10 to 65535 seconds. The default value is 65535. The binding lifetime should be a multiple of 4 seconds.
- **Binding Refresh Time**—Refresh time of the binding entries in the controller. The valid range is between 4 to 65535 seconds. The default value is 300 seconds. The binding refresh time should be a multiple of 4 seconds.
- **Binding Initial Retry Timeout**—Initial timeout between the proxy binding updates (PBUs) when the controller does not receive the proxy binding acknowledgments (PBAs). The valid range is between 100 to 65535 seconds. The default value is 1000 second.
- **Binding Maximum Retry Timeout**—Maximum timeout between the proxy binding updates (PBUs) when the controller does not receive the proxy binding acknowledgments (PBAs). The valid range is between 100 to 65535 seconds. The default value is 32000 seconds.
- **Replay Protection Timestamp**—Maximum amount of time difference between the timestamp in the received proxy binding acknowledgment and the current time of the day. The valid range is between 1 to 255 milliseconds. The default value is 7 milliseconds.
- **Minimum BRI Retransmit Timeout**—Minimum amount of time that the controller waits before retransmitting the BRI message. The valid range is between 500 to 65535 seconds.
- **Maximum BRI Retransmit Timeout**—Maximum amount of time that the controller waits before retransmitting the Binding Revocation Indication (BRI) message. The valid range is between 500 to 65535 seconds. The default value is 2000 seconds.
- **BRI Retries**—Number of BRI retries.
- **MAG APN**— Name of the Access Point Node of MAG.

**Step 5** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring LMA Configurations](#)
- [Configuring PMIP Profile](#)
- [Configuring Proxy Mobile IPv6](#)

## Configuring LMA Configurations

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** Choose **PMIP > LMA Config** from the left sidebar menu.
- Step 4** Configure the following fields:
- **LMA Name**—Name of the LMA connected to the controller.
  - **LMA IP Address**—IP address of the LMA connected to the controller.

**Step 5** Click **Save**.

---

## Deleting LMA Configurations

To delete the LMA configurations, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Select the applicable LMA config check-box.
- Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-list, choose **Delete PMIP Local Configs**.
- Step 3** Click **Go**.
- Step 4** Click **OK** in the confirmation message.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring LMA Configurations](#)
- [Configuring PMIP Profile](#)
- [Configuring PMIP Global Configurations](#)
- [Configuring Proxy Mobile IPv6](#)

## Configuring PMIP Profile

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** Choose **PMIP > PMIP Profile** from the left sidebar menu.
- Step 4** Enter the profile name.
- Step 5** Click **Add** and then configure the following fields:
- Network Access Identifier—Name of the Network Access Identifier (NAI) associated with the profile.
  - LMA Name—Name of the LMA to which the profile is associated.
  - Access Point Node—Name of the access point node connected to the controller.
- Step 6** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring PMIP Global Configurations](#)
- [Configuring LMA Configurations](#)
- [Configuring Proxy Mobile IPv6](#)

## Deleting PMIP Profiles

To delete the PMIP profiles, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Select the required PMIP profiles check-box.
- Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-list, choose **Delete PMIP Local Configs**.
- Step 3** Click **Go**.
- Step 4** Click **OK** in the confirmation message.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring mDNS](#)
- [Configuring Application Visibility and Control Parameters](#)
- [Configuring NetFlow](#)
- [Configuring Mesh Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Port Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Controller Management Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Location Configurations](#)
- [Configuring IPv6](#)

## Configuring mDNS

Multicast DNS (mDNS) service discovery provides a way to announce and discover services on the local network. mDNS perform DNS queries over IP multicast and supports zero configuration IP networking.

You can configure mDNS so that the controller can learn about the mDNS services and advertise these services to all clients.

There are two tabs in mDNS—Services and Profiles.

- **Services tab**—This tab enables you to configure the global mDNS parameters and update the Master Services database.
- **Profiles tab**—This tab enables to view the mDNS profiles configured on the controller and create new mDNS profiles. After creating a new profile, you must map the profile to an interface group, an interface, or a WLAN. Clients receive service advertisements only for the services associated with the profile. The controller gives the highest priority to the profiles associated to interface groups, followed by the interface profiles, and then the WLAN profiles. Each client is mapped to a profile based on the order of priority. By default, the controller has an mDNS profile, default-mdns-profile which cannot be deleted.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** Choose **mDNS > mDNS** from the left sidebar menu.
- Step 4** On the Services tab, configure the following parameters:
- **Template Applied**—The name of the template applied to this controller.
  - **mDNS Global Snooping**—Check box that you select to enable snooping of mDNS packets. The controller does not support IPv6 mDNS packets even when you enable mDNS snooping.

- Query Interval(10-120)—mDNS query interval, in minutes that you can set. This interval is used by WLC to send periodic mDNS query messages to services which do not send service advertisements automatically after they are started. The range is from 10 to 120 minutes. The default value is 15 minutes.
- Master Services—Click **Add Row** and then configure the following fields:
  - Master Service Name—Drop-down list from which you can choose the supported services that can be queried. To add a new service, enter or choose the service name, enter the service string, and then choose the service status. The following services are available:
    - AirTunes
    - AirPrint
    - AppleTV
    - HP Photosmart Printer1
    - HP Photosmart Printer2
    - Apple File Sharing Protocol (AFP)
    - Scanner
    - Printer
    - FTP
    - iTunes Music Sharing
    - iTunes Home Sharing
    - iTunes Wireless Device Syncing
    - Apple Remote Desktop
    - Apple CD/DVD Sharing
    - Time Capsule Backup
- Master Service Name—Name of the mDNS service.
- Service String—Unique string associated to an mDNS service. For example, `_airplay._tcp.local.` is the service string associated to AppleTV.
- Query Status—Check box that you select to enable an mDNS query for a service. Periodic mDNS query messages will be sent by WLC at configured Query Interval for services only when the query status is enabled; otherwise, service should automatically advertised for other services where the query status is disabled (for example AppleTV).

**Step 5** On the Profiles tab, configure the following parameters:

- Profiles—Click **Add Profile** and then configure the following fields:
  - Profile Name—Name of the mDNS profile. You can create a maximum of 16 profiles.
  - Services—Select the services (using the check boxes) that you want to map to the mDNS profile.
- You can edit or delete the existing profile by clicking on **Edit** and **Delete** respectively.

**Step 6** Click **Save**.

---

## Configuring mDNS Policies

By default, the controller creates an access policy, default-mdns-policy which cannot be deleted. This is displayed with the **Group Name** and **Description**. Select the policy to view its **Service Group** details.

Click **Save** after editing the fields.

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Application Visibility and Control Parameters](#)
- [Configuring NetFlow](#)
- [Configuring Mesh Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Port Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Controller Management Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Location Configurations](#)
- [Configuring IPv6](#)
- [Configuring Proxy Mobile IPv6](#)

## Configuring Application Visibility and Control Parameters

Application Visibility and Control (AVC) uses the Network Based Application Recognition (NBAR) deep packet inspection technology to classify applications based on the protocol they use. Using AVC, the controller can detect more than 1400 Layer 4 to Layer 7 protocols. AVC enables you to perform real-time analysis and create policies to reduce network congestion, expensive network link usage, and infrastructure upgrades.

AVC is supported only on the Cisco 2500 and 5500 Series Controllers, and Cisco Flex 7500 and Cisco 8500 Series Controllers.

## Configuring AVC Profiles

To configure the AVC profile, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
  - Step 3** Choose **Services > Application Visibility And Control > AVC Profile** from the left sidebar menu.
  - Step 4** Click the AVC Profile Name that you want to configure.
  - Step 5** To create AVC rules, click **Add**.
  - Step 6** Configure the following parameters:
    - Application Name—Name of the application.
    - Application Group Name—Name of the application group to which the application belongs.
    - Action—Drop-down list from which you can choose the following:
      - Drop—Drops the upstream and downstream packets corresponding to the chosen application.



- **Mark**— Marks the upstream and downstream packets corresponding to the chosen application with the DSCP value that you specify in the Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) drop-down list. The DSCP value helps you provide differentiated services based on the QoS levels.
- **Rate Limit**—If you select Rate Limit as an action, you can specify Average Rate Limit per client and Burst data rate limit. The number of rate limit applications is limited to 3.

The default action is to permit all applications.

- **DSCP**—Packet header code that is used to define quality of service across the Internet. The DSCP values are mapped to the following QoS levels:
  - **Platinum (Voice)**—Assures a high QoS for Voice over Wireless.
  - **Gold (Video)**—Supports the high-quality video applications.
  - **Silver (Best Effort)**—Supports the normal bandwidth for clients.
  - **Bronze (Background)**— Provides lowest bandwidth for guest services.
  - **Custom**—Specify the DSCP value. The range is from 0 to 63.
- **DSCP Value**—This value can be entered only when **Custom** is chosen from the **DSCP** drop-down list.
- **Avg. Rate Limit (in Kbps)**—If you select Rate Limit as an action, you can specify Average Rate Limit per client which is the average bandwidth limit of that application.
- **Burst Rate Limit (in Kbps)**—If you select Rate Limit as an action, you can specify Burst Rate limit which is the peak limit of that application.

**Step 7** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring NetFlow](#)
- [Configuring Mesh Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Port Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Controller Management Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Location Configurations](#)
- [Configuring IPv6](#)
- [Configuring Proxy Mobile IPv6](#)
- [Configuring mDNS](#)

## Configuring NetFlow

NetFlow is a protocol that provides valuable information about network users and applications, peak usage times, and traffic routing by collecting IP traffic information from network devices. The NetFlow architecture consists of the following components:

- **Collector**—An entity that collects all the IP traffic information from various network elements.
- **Exporter**—A network entity that exports the template with the IP traffic information. The controller acts as an exporter.

## Configuring NetFlow Monitor

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** Choose **NetFlow > Monitor** from the left sidebar menu.
- Step 4** Configure the following parameters:.
- **Monitor Name**—Name of the NetFlow monitor. The monitor name can be up to 127 case-sensitive alphanumeric characters. You can configure only one monitor in the controller.
  - **Record Name**—Name of the NetFlow record. A NetFlow record in the controller contains the following information about the traffic in a given flow:
    - Client MAC address
    - Client Source IP address
    - WLAN ID
    - Application ID
    - Incoming bytes of data
    - Outgoing bytes of data
    - Incoming Packets
    - Outgoing Packets
    - Incoming DSCP
    - Outgoing DSCP
    - Name of last AP
- Step 5** **Exporter Name**—Name of the exporter. You can configure only one monitor in the controller.
- Step 6** **Exporter IP**—IP address of the collector.
- Step 7** **Port Number**—UDP port through which the NetFlow record is exported from the controller.
- Step 8** Click **Save**.
- 

## Configuring NetFlow Exporter

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the applicable controller.
- Step 3** Choose **NetFlow > Exporter** from the left sidebar menu.
- Step 4** Configure the following parameters:.
- **Exporter Name**—Name of the exporter.
  - **Exporter IP** —IP address of the exporter.
  - **Port Number**—The UDP port through which the Netflow record is exported.
-

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring Mesh Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Port Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Controller Management Parameters](#)
- [Configuring Location Configurations](#)
- [Configuring IPv6](#)
- [Configuring Proxy Mobile IPv6](#)
- [Configuring mDNS](#)
- [Configuring Application Visibility and Control Parameters](#)

## Configuring Third-Party Controllers and Access Points

Prime Infrastructure enables you to add third-party controllers and access points. As part of this feature you can perform the following functions:

- Add third-party controllers to the Prime Infrastructure.
- Monitor the state of the third-party controllers.
- Get inventory information for the third-party controllers and their associated access points.
- Use the background tasks to view the operations status third-party controllers and access points.

**Related Topics**

- [Adding a Third-Party Controller](#)
- [Viewing Third-Party Controller Operational Status](#)
- [Viewing the Details of Third-Party Access Points](#)
- [Removing Third-Party Access Points](#)
- [Viewing Third-Party Access Point Operational Status](#)

## Adding a Third-Party Controller

To add a third-party controller, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network Devices > Third Party Wireless Controller**.
  - Step 2** Click **Add Device**.
  - Step 3** In the Add Device page, enter the required parameters in the following tabs:
    - General
    - SNMP
    - Telnet/SSH
    - HTTP/HTTPS
    - IPSec

**Step 4** Click **Add**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing Third-Party Controller Operational Status](#)
- [Viewing the Details of Third-Party Access Points](#)
- [Removing Third-Party Access Points](#)
- [Viewing Third-Party Access Point Operational Status](#)

## Viewing Third-Party Controller Operational Status

To view the Third Party Controller Operational Status page, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Administration > Settings > Background Tasks**.

**Step 2** In this page, perform one of the following:

- Execute the task now.  
Select the **Third Party Controller Operational Status** check box. From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Execute Now**, and click **Go**. You see the status change in the Enabled column.
- Enable the task.  
Select the **Third Party Controller Operational Status** check box. From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Enable Tasks**, and click **Go**. The task converts from dimmed to available in the Enabled column.
- Disable the task.  
Select the **Third Party Controller Operational Status** check box. From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Disable Tasks**, and click **Go**. The task is dimmed in the Enabled column after the disabling is complete.

**Step 3** To modify the task, click the **Third Party Controller Operational Status** link in the Background Tasks column.

The Third Party Controller Operational Status page displays the following information:

- Last Execution Information
  - Start Time.
  - End Time.
  - Elapsed Time (in seconds) of the task.
  - Result—Success or error.
  - Message—Text message regarding this task.

**Step 4** View or modify the following in the Task Details section:

- Description—Display only. Displays the name of the task.
- Enabled—Select the check box to enable this task.
- Interval—Indicates the frequency (in minutes) of the task. The default is 3 hours.

**Step 5** When finished, click **Save** to confirm task changes.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Viewing the Details of Third-Party Access Points](#)
- [Adding a Third-Party Controller](#)
- [Removing Third-Party Access Points](#)
- [Viewing Third-Party Access Point Operational Status](#)

## Viewing the Details of Third-Party Access Points

The third-party access points are discovered when you add a third-party controller.

To view the configurations of a third-party access point, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network Devices > Third Party Access Points**.

**Step 2** Click the AP Name link to display the details. The General tab for that third-party access point appears.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Removing Third-Party Access Points](#)
- [Adding a Third-Party Controller](#)
- [Viewing Third-Party Controller Operational Status](#)
- [Viewing Third-Party Access Point Operational Status](#)

## Removing Third-Party Access Points

To remove third-party access points, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network Devices > Third Party Access Points**.

**Step 2** Select the check boxes of the access points you want to remove.

**Step 3** Click **Delete**.

**Step 4** A confirmation message appears.

**Step 5** Click **Yes**.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Viewing Third-Party Access Point Operational Status](#)
- [Adding a Third-Party Controller](#)
- [Viewing Third-Party Controller Operational Status](#)
- [Viewing the Details of Third-Party Access Points](#)

## Viewing Third-Party Access Point Operational Status

To view the Third Party Access Point Operational Status page, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Settings > Background Tasks**.
- Step 2** In this page, perform one of the following:
- Execute the task now.  
Select the **Third Party Access Point Operational Status** check box. From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Execute Now**, and click **Go**. You see the status change in the Enabled column.
  - Enable the task.  
Select the **Third Party Access Point Operational Status** check box. From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Enable Tasks**, and click **Go**. The task converts from dimmed to available in the Enabled column.
  - Disable the task.  
Select the **Third Party Access Point Operational Status** check box. From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Disable Tasks**, and click **Go**. The task is dimmed in the Enabled column after the disabling is complete.
- Step 3** To modify the task, click the **Third Party Access Point Operational Status** link in the Background Tasks column.
- The Third Party Controller Operational Status page displays the following information:
- Last Execution Information
    - Start Time.
    - End Time.
    - Elapsed Time (in seconds) of the task.
    - Result—Success or error.
    - Message—Text message regarding this task.
- Step 4** View or modify the following in the Edit Task group box:
- Description—Display only. Displays the name of the task.
  - Enabled—Select the check box to enable this task.
  - Interval—Indicates the frequency (in minutes) of the task. The default is 3 hours.
- Step 5** When finished, click **Save** to confirm task changes.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Adding a Third-Party Controller](#)
- [Viewing Third-Party Controller Operational Status](#)
- [Viewing the Details of Third-Party Access Points](#)
- [Removing Third-Party Access Points](#)

# Configuring Switches

You can add switches to Prime Infrastructure database to view overall switch health and endpoint monitoring and to perform switchport tracing. The following switched can be configured:

- 3750
- 3560
- 3750E
- 3560E
- 2960.

The switch functionality appears on the configuration menu in Prime Infrastructure however you cannot configure switch features using Prime Infrastructure. You can only configure Prime Infrastructure system.

Prime Infrastructure allows you to do the following:

- Add switches in the **Configuration > Network > Network Devices > Device Type > Wireless Controller** page and specify CLI and SNMP credentials.
- Add a location-capable switch for tracking wired clients by mobility services engine and Prime Infrastructure in the **Configuration > Network > Network Devices > Device Type > Wireless Controller** page.
- Monitor Switches by choosing Monitor > Network Devices.
- Run switch-related reports using the Reports menu.

## Related Topics

- [Features Available by Switch Type](#)
- [Adding Switches](#)

## Features Available by Switch Type

When you add a switch to Prime Infrastructure, you specify how the switch is to be managed, based on this, Prime Infrastructure determines the features that are available:

- Monitored switches—You can add switches (choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices > Device Type > Wireless Controller**) and monitor switch operation (choose **Monitor > Network Devices**). Each switch counts as a single device against the total device count for your license. If you have unused device counts available in your license engine, you can add a switch to Prime Infrastructure. If you have no remaining device counts available, you cannot add additional switches to Prime Infrastructure.
- Switch Port Tracing (SPT) only switches—Switches perform switch port tracing only. SPT-only switches appear in the **Configuration > Network > Network Devices > Device Type > Switches and Hubs** page and in inventory reports. Licensing does not apply to SPT switches.

## Related Topics

- [Viewing Switches](#)
- [Viewing Switch Details](#)

## Viewing Switches

Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices > Device Type > Switches and Hubs** to see a summary of all switches in the Prime Infrastructure database. Click any column heading to sort the information by that column. You can switch between ascending and descending sort order by clicking the column heading more than once.

### Related Topics

- [Features Available by Switch Type](#)
- [Viewing Switch Details](#)

## Viewing Switch Details

Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices > Device Type > Switches and Hubs** to see a summary of all switches in the Prime Infrastructure database. Click a Device Name to see detailed information about that switch.

### Related Topics

- [Features Available by Switch Type](#)
- [Viewing Switches](#)
- [Example: Configuring SNMPv3 on Switches](#)

## Modifying SNMP Parameters

To modify SNMP parameters for a switch, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices > Device Type > Switches and Hubs**, then click the checkbox next to the switch for which you want to change SNMP credentials.
- Step 2** Click **Edit**.
- Step 3** Modify the necessary SNMP Parameters fields, then click one of the following:
- **Reset** to restore the previously saved parameters.
  - **Save** to save and apply the changes you made.
  - **Cancel** to exit without saving your changes and return to the previous screen.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Features Available by Switch Type](#)
- [Viewing Switches](#)
- [Viewing Switch Details](#)
- [Modifying Telnet/SSH Parameters](#)



## Modifying Telnet/SSH Parameters

To modify Telnet or SSH parameters for a switch, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices > Device Type > Switches and Hubs**, then click the checkbox next to the switch for which you want to change Telnet or SSH credentials.
- Step 2** Click **Edit**.
- Step 3** Modify the necessary Telnet/SSH Parameters fields, then click one of the following:
- **Reset** to restore the previously saved parameters.
  - **Save** to save and apply the changes you made.
  - **Cancel** to exit without saving your changes and return to the previous screen.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Features Available by Switch Type](#)
- [Viewing Switches](#)
- [Viewing Switch Details](#)
- [Modifying SNMP Parameters](#)

## Adding Switches

When you add a switch to the Prime Infrastructure database, by default, Prime Infrastructure verifies the SNMP credentials of the switch. If the device credentials are not correct, you receive an SNMP failure message but the switch is added to the Prime Infrastructure database.

To add a switch to Prime Infrastructure, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices > Device Type > Switches and Hubs**, then click **Add Device**.
- Step 2** Enter the appropriate information in the fields displayed.
- Step 3** Click **Add** to add the switch or click **Cancel** to cancel the operation and return to the list of switches.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Example: Configuring SNMPv3 on Switches](#)
- [Importing Switches Using a CSV File](#)
- [Configure > Switches > Add Switches](#)

## Example: Configuring SNMPv3 on Switches

The following is an example for configuring SNMPv3 on the switch:

```
snmp-server view v3default iso included
snmp-server group v3group v3 auth write v3default snmp-server user <username>
<v3group> v3 auth <md5 or sha> <authentication password>
```

If the switch has VLANs, you must configure each VLAN, otherwise switch porting tracing fails. The following is an example if the switch has VLANs 1 and 20.

```
snmp-server group v3group v3 auth context vlan-1 write v3default
snmp-server group v3group v3 auth context vlan-20 write v3default
snmp-server group v3group v3 auth context vlan-20 write v3default
```

When you create SNMP v3 view, make sure you include all of the OIDs.

#### Related Topics:

- [Importing Switches Using a CSV File](#)

## Importing Switches Using a CSV File

You can import switches into the Prime Infrastructure database using a CSV file. The first row of the CSV file is used to describe the columns included. The IP Address column is mandatory.

### Example: Importing Switches Using a CSV File

The following example shows a sample CSV file.

```
ip_address, network_mask, snmp_version, snmp_community, snmpv3_user_name,
snmpv3_auth_type, snmpv3_auth_password, snmpv3_privacy_type, snmpv3_privacy_password,
snmp_retries,
snmp_timeout, protocol, telnet_username, telnet_password, enable_password, telnet_timeout
16.1.1.3,255.255.255.0,v2,public,,,,,3,10,telnet,cisco,cisco,cisco,60
16.1.1.4,255.255.255.0,v2,public,,,,,3,10,ssh2,cisco,cisco,cisco,60
16.1.1.5,255.255.255.0,v2,public,,,,,3,10,,cisco,cisco,cisco,60
16.1.1.6,255.255.255.0,v2,public,,,,,3,10,telnet,cisco,cisco,cisco,60
3.3.3.3,255.255.255.0,v3,,default,HMAC-MD5,default,DES,default,3,4
4.4.4.4,255.255.255.0,v3,,default,HMAC-MD5,default,DES,default,3,4,telnet,cisco,cisco,
cisco,60
```

#### Related Topics

- [Example: Configuring SNMPv3 on Switches](#)
- [Adding Switches](#)
- [CSV File Fields](#)

The fields in the Civic Location pane are populated after the civic information is imported.

## Removing Switches

When you remove a switch from the Prime Infrastructure database, the following functions are performed:

- Inventory information for that switch is removed from the database.
- Alarms for the switch remain in the database with a status of Clear. By default, cleared alarms are not displayed in the Prime Infrastructure interface.

- Saved reports remain in the database even if the switch on which the report was run is removed.

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Switches](#)
- [Removing a Switch from Prime Infrastructure](#)

## Removing a Switch from Prime Infrastructure

To remove a switch from Prime Infrastructure, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices > Device Type > Switches and Hubs**, then click the checkbox next to the switch for which you want to remove.
- Step 2** Click **Delete**.
- Step 3** Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Switches](#)

# Enabling Traps and Syslogs on Switches for Wired Client Discovery

This section describes how to configure switches to send traps and syslogs to Prime Infrastructure to discover the clients as they connect/disconnect.

## Example: MAC Notification for Traps (Used for Non-Identity Client Discovery)

The following Cisco IOS configuration example shows how this Cisco IOS switch feature forwards SNMP traps from the switch to Prime Infrastructure server for MAC notifications (for on-802.1x clients):

```
snmp-server enable traps mac-notification change move threshold
snmp-server host<IP address of Prime Infrastructure server> version 2c <community-string>
mac-notification
mac address-table notification change interval 5
mac address-table notification change history-size 10
mac address-table notification change

interface <interface>
description non-identity clients
switchport access vlan <VLAN ID>
switchport mode access
snmp trap mac-notification change added <- interface level config for MAC Notification
snmp trap mac-notification change removed <- interface level config for MAC Notification
```

The debug command is:

```
debug snmp packets
```

The show command is:

```
show mac address-table notification change
```

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring MAC Change Notification Traps](#)

## Syslog Configuration

The syslog configuration forwards syslog messages from a Catalyst switch to the Prime Infrastructure server. This feature is used for identity clients discovery.

### Example: Cisco IOS configuration

```
archive
 log config
  notify syslog contenttype plaintext
 logging facility auth
 logging <IP address of Prime Infrastructure server>
```

#### Related Topics

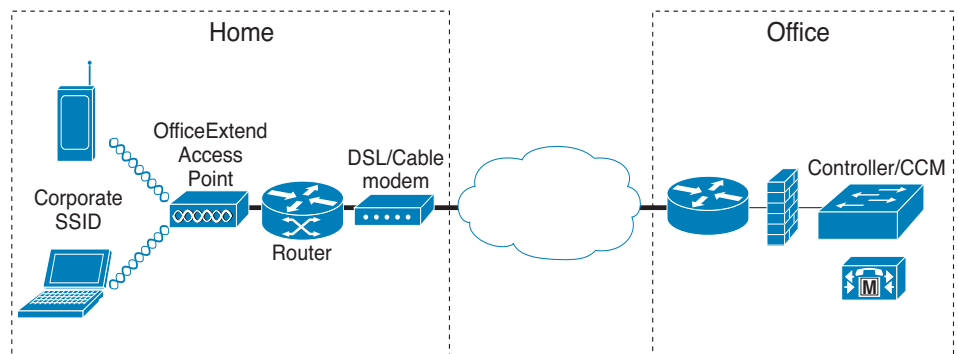
- [Configuring System Message Logging](#)

## OfficeExtend Access Point

An OfficeExtend access point provides secure communications from a controller to an access point at a remote location, seamlessly extending the corporate WLAN over the Internet to the residence of an employee. The experience of a teleworker at the home office is exactly the same as it is at the corporate office. Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) encryption between the access point and the controller ensures that all communications have the highest level of security.

Figure 21-5 illustrates a typical OfficeExtend access point setup.

**Figure 21-5** Typical OfficeExtend Access Point Setup



OfficeExtend access points are designed to work behind a router or other gateway device that is using network address translation (NAT). NAT allows a device, such as a router, to act as an agent between the Internet (public) and a personal network (private), thereby enabling an entire group of computers to be represented by a single IP address. In controller release 6.0, only one OfficeExtend access point can be deployed behind a single NAT device.

Currently, only Cisco Aironet 1130 series and 1140 series access points that are joined to a Cisco 5500 series controller with a WPlus license can be configured to operate as OfficeExtend access points.

Your firewall must be configured to allow traffic from access points using CAPWAP. Make sure that UDP ports 5246 and 5247 are enabled and are not blocked by an intermediate device that could prevent an access point from joining the controller.

## Licensing for an OfficeExtend Access Point

Make sure that the WPlus license is installed on the 5500 series controller. After the license is installed, you can enable the OfficeExtend mode on an 1130 series or 1140 series access point.

The operating system software automatically detects and adds an access point to the Prime Infrastructure database as it associates with existing controllers in the Prime Infrastructure database.

## Link Latency Settings for Access Points

You can configure link latency on the controller to measure the link between an access point and the controller. This feature can be used with all access points joined to a controller but is especially useful for FlexConnect access points, for which the link could be a slow or unreliable WAN connection.

Link latency is supported for use only with FlexConnect access points in connected mode. FlexConnect access points in standalone mode are not supported.

Link latency monitors the round-trip time of the CAPWAP heartbeat packets (echo request and response) from the access point to the controller and back. This time can vary due to network link speed and controller processing loads. The access point timestamps the outgoing echo requests to the controller and the echo requests received from the controller. The access point sends this delta time to the controller as the system round-trip time. The access point sends heartbeat packets to the controller at a default interval of 30 seconds.

Link latency calculates the CAPWAP response time between the access point and the controller. It does not measure network latency or ping responses.

The controller displays the current round-trip time as well as a running minimum and maximum round-trip time. The minimum and maximum times continue to run as long as the controller is up or can be cleared and allowed to restart.

### Related Topic

- [Configuring Link Latency](#)

## Configuring Link Latency

To configure link latency, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices > Device Type > Unified AP**, then click on a Device Name,

- Step 2** Select the **Enable Link Latency** check box to enable link latency for this access point or unselect it to prevent the access point from sending the round-trip time to the controller after every echo response is received. The default value is unselected.
- Step 3** Click **Save** to save your changes.
- The link latency results appear below the Enable Link Latency check box:
- **Current**—The current round-trip time (in milliseconds) of CAPWAP heartbeat packets from the access point to the controller and back.
  - **Minimum**—Because link latency has been enabled or reset, the minimum round-trip time (in milliseconds) of CAPWAP heartbeat packets from the access point to the controller and back.
  - **Maximum**—Because the link latency has been enabled or reset, the maximum round-trip time (in milliseconds) of CAPWAP heartbeat packets from the access point to the controller and back.
- Step 4** To clear the current, minimum, and maximum link latency statistics on the controller for this access point, click **Reset Link Latency**. The updated statistics appear in the Minimum and Maximum fields.
- 

## Configuring Unified Access Points

You can use the **Configuration > Network > Network Devices > Device Type > Unified AP** page to view and configure unified access points.

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the **Device Groups** menu on the left, select **Device Type > Unified AP**.
- Step 2** Click an applicable IP address to view the following parameters:
- **AP Name**—Click an access point name to view or configure access point details.
  - **Base Radio MAC**
  - **Admin Status**
  - **AP Mode**
  - **Software Version**
  - **Primary Controller Name**
- Step 3** Click an access point name to view or configure the access point details. The displayed information might vary depending on the access point type.
- 

## Using the Sniffer Feature

When the sniffer feature is enabled on an access point, the access point functions as a sniffer and captures and forwards all the packets on a particular channel to a remote machine that runs AiroPeek. The packets contain information on timestamp, signal strength, packet size, and so on.

The sniffer feature can be enabled only if you are running AiroPeek, which is a third-party network analyzer software that supports decoding of data packets. For more information on AiroPeek, see the following URL: [www.wildpackets.com/products/airopeek/overview](http://www.wildpackets.com/products/airopeek/overview)

## Prerequisites for using the Sniffer Feature

Before using the sniffer feature, you must complete the following:

- Configure an access point in sniffer mode at the remote site. For information on how to configure an access point in sniffer mode, see *Configuring an AP in Sniffer Mode Using the Web User Interface* in Related Topics.
- Install AiroPeek Version 2.05 or later on a Windows XP machine.
  - You must be a WildPackets Maintenance Member to download the following dll files. See the following URL:

[https://wpsniffer.wildpackets.com/view\\_submission.php?id=30](https://wpsniffer.wildpackets.com/view_submission.php?id=30)

- Copy the following dll files:
  - socket.dll file to the Plugins folder (Example: C:\ProgramFiles\WildPackets\AiroPeek\Plugins)
  - socketres.dll file to the PluginRes folder (Example:C:\ProgramFiles\WildPackets\AiroPeek\1033\PluginRes)

### Related Topic

- [802.11 Parameters](#)

## Configuring AiroPeek on the Remote Machine

To configure AiroPeek on the remote machine, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Start the AiroPeek application and click **Options** on the Tools tab.
  - Step 2** Click **Analysis Module** in the Options page.
  - Step 3** Right-click inside the page and select **Disable All** option.
  - Step 4** Find the Cisco remote module column and enable it. Click **OK** to save the changes.
  - Step 5** Click **New capture** to bring up the capture option page.
  - Step 6** Choose the remote Cisco adapter and from the list of adapter modules.
  - Step 7** Expand it to locate the new remote adapter option. Double-click it to open a new page, enter a name in the text box provided and enter the controller management interface IP in the IP address column.
  - Step 8** Click **OK**. The new adapter is added to the remote Cisco adapter.
  - Step 9** Select the new adapter for remote airopeek capture using the access point.
  - Step 10** Click **start socket capture** in the capture page to start the remote capture process.
  - Step 11** From the controller CLI, bring up an access point, and set it to sniffer mode by entering the **config ap mode sniffer ap-name** command.  
The access point reboots and comes up in sniffer mode.
- 

## Configuring an AP in Sniffer Mode Using the Web User Interface

To configure an AP in Sniffer mode using the web user interface, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then click an item in the AP Name column to navigate to this page.
- Step 2** In the General group box, set the AP mode to Sniffer using the drop-down list, and click **Apply**.
- Step 3** Click a protocol (802.11a/802.11b/g) in the Protocol column in the Radio Interfaces group box. This opens the configuration page.
- Step 4** Select the **Sniff** check box to bring up the Sniff parameters. Select the channel to be sniffed and enter the IP address of the server (The remote machine running AiroPeek).
- Step 5** Click **Save** to save the changes.
- 

## Configuring Controller Redundancy

“Controller Redundancy” refers to the High Availability (HA) framework embedded in controllers. Redundancy in wireless network controllers allows you to reduce network downtime. In a redundancy architecture, one controller is in the Active state and a second controller is in the Standby state. The Standby controller monitors the health of the Active controller continuously, using a redundant port. Both controllers share the same configurations including the IP address of the management interface.

The Standby or Active state of a controller is based on the redundancy stock keeping unit (SKU), which is a manufacturing-ordered unique device identifier (UDI). A controller with a redundancy SKU UDI is in the Standby state for the first time when it boots and pairs with a controller that runs a permanent count license. For controllers that have permanent count licenses, you can manually configure whether the controller is in the Active state or the Standby state.

Prime Infrastructure supports stateful switchover of access points (also known as “AP SSO”). AP SSO ensures that AP sessions remain intact despite controller switchovers. For more details on controller redundancy, see “Configuring Wireless Redundancy” in Related Topics.

Controller redundancy is similar to, but separate from, the Prime Infrastructure HA framework used to reduce Prime Infrastructure server downtime. For more information on this, see “Configuring High Availability” in Related Topics.

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Wireless Redundancy](#)
- [Configuring High Availability](#)

## Configuring Cisco Adaptive wIPS Profiles

Prime Infrastructure supports Cisco Adaptive Wireless Intrusion Prevention System (Cisco Adaptive wIPS, or wIPS), which uses profiles to quickly activate wireless threat protection features.

Prime Infrastructure provides a list of pre-defined wIPS profiles based on customer types, building types, and industry types, such as “Education”, “Financial”, “Military”, “Tradeshaw”, and so on. You can use these profiles “as is” or customize them to better meet your needs. You can then apply them to the Mobility Services Engines and controllers you select.

Cisco Adaptive wIPS does not support the Prime Infrastructure partitioning feature.



**Related Topics**

- [Accessing wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Adding wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Editing wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Applying wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Deleting wIPS Profiles](#)
- [wIPS Policy Alarm Encyclopedia](#)

## Accessing wIPS Profiles

Prime Infrastructure's wIPS Profiles List page provides access to wIPS profiles. You can use it to view, edit, apply or delete current wIPS profiles, and to create new wIPS profiles.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > wIPS Profiles**. The wIPS Profiles List displays the list of current wIPS profiles. It gives the following information for each existing profile:
- **Profile Name**—The user-defined name for the wIPS profile.  
To view or edit a wIPS profile, click the Profile Name. Then follow the steps in “Editing wIPS Profiles” in Related Topics
  - **Profile ID**—The profile's unique identifier.
  - **Version**— The version of the profile.
  - **MSE(s) Applied To**—Indicates the number of Mobility Services Engines (MSEs) to which this profile is applied. Click the MSE number to view profile assignment details.
  - **Controller(s) Applied To**—Indicates the number of controllers to which this profile is applied. Click the controller number to view profile assignment details.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring Cisco Adaptive wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Adding wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Editing wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Applying wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Deleting wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Creating SSID Groups](#)

## Adding wIPS Profiles

You can create new wIPS profiles using the default profile or any of the currently pre-configured profile.

- 
- Step 1** Select **Services > Mobility Services > wIPS Profiles**.
- Step 2** Choose **Select a command > Add Profile > Go**.
- Step 3** Type a profile name in the Profile Name text box of the Profile Parameters page.

**Step 4** Select the applicable pre-defined profile, or choose **Default** from the drop-down list. Pre-defined profiles include the following:

- Education
- EnterpriseBest
- EnterpriseRogue
- Financial
- HealthCare
- HotSpotOpen
- Hotspot8021x
- Military
- Retail
- Tradeshow
- Warehouse

**Step 5** Click:

- **Save** to save the wIPS profile with no changes and no assignments. The profile appears in the profile list. You can access the profile for edits and assignment later, as explained in “Accessing wIPS Profiles” in Related Topics.
  - **Save and Edit** to save the profile, edit its settings, and assign it to Mobility Services Engines and Controllers. For details, see “Editing wIPS Profiles” in Related Topics.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Cisco Adaptive wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Accessing wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Editing wIPS Profiles](#)

## Editing wIPS Profiles

The wIPS profile editor allows you to configure profile details, including the following:

- SSID groups—Select the SSID groups to which the wIPS profile will be applied.
  - Policy inclusion—Determine which policies are included in the profile.
  - Policy level settings—Configure settings for each policy included in the profile, such as threshold, severity, notification type, and ACL/SSID groups.
  - MSE/controller applications—Select the MSEs and controllers to which you want to apply the profile.
- 

**Step 1** Access the wIPS profile editor by:

- Create a new wIPS profile and then click **Save and Edit**.
- Choose **Services > Mobility Services > wIPS Profiles** and then click the Profile Name of the wIPS profile you want to edit.

Prime Infrastructure displays the SSID Group List page. Using this page, you can edit and delete current SSID groups or add a new group. You can also select from the global list of SSID groups. For details, see “Associating SSID Groups With wIPS Profiles” in Related Topics.

**Step 2** Select the SSID groups you want to associate with the wIPS profile, then click **Save**.

**Step 3** Click **Next**. The Profile Configuration page displays.

**Step 4** In the Select Policy pane’s policy tree, select the check boxes of the policies you want to enable or disable in the current profile.

You can enable or disable an entire branch or an individual policy by selecting the check box for the applicable branch or policy.

By default, all policies are selected.

**Step 5** In the Profile Configuration page, click an individual policy to display the policy description and to view or modify current policy rule settings. The following options are available for each policy:

- **Add**—Click **Add** to access the Policy Rule Configuration page to create a new rule for this policy.
- **Edit**—Select the check box of the applicable rule, and click **Edit** to access the Policy Rule Configuration page to edit the settings for this rule.
- **Delete**—Select the check box of the rule you want to delete, and click **Delete**. Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.

There must be at least one policy rule in place. You cannot delete a policy rule if it is the only one in the list.

- **Move Up**—Select the check box of the rule you want to move up in the list. Click **Move Up**.
- **Move Down**—Select the check box of the rule you want to move down in the list. Click **Move Down**.

The following settings can be configured at the policy level:

- **Threshold** (not applicable to all policies)—Indicates the threshold or upper limit associated with the selected policy. When the threshold is reached for a policy, an alarm is triggered.

Because every policy must contain at least one threshold, default thresholds are defined for each based on standard wireless network issues.

Threshold options vary based on the selected policy.

Alarms from Cisco Adaptive wIPS DoS and security penetration attacks are classified as security alarms. A summary of these attacks is located in the Security Summary page. Choose **Monitor > Security** to access this page. The wIPS attacks are located in the Threats and Attacks section.

- **Severity**—Indicates the level of severity of the selected policy. Parameters include critical, major, info, and warning. The value of this field might vary depending on the wireless network.
- **Notification**—Indicates the type of notification associated with the threshold.
- **ACL/SSID Group**—Indicates the ACL or SSID Group(s) to which this threshold is be applied.

Only selected groups trigger the policy.

**Step 6** When the profile configuration is complete, click **Save** to save your changes to the profile.

**Step 7** Click **Next** to display the MSE/Controller(s) page.

**Step 8** In the Apply Profile page, select the check boxes of the MSEs and controllers to which you want to apply the current profile.

**Step 9** When you are finished, click **Apply** to apply the current profile to the selected MSEs and controllers.

You can also apply a newly created profile directly from the Profile List page. See “Applying wIPS Profiles” in Related Topics.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring Cisco Adaptive wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Applying wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Associating SSID Groups With wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Configuring Cisco Adaptive wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Creating SSID Groups](#)

## Applying wIPS Profiles

---

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > wIPS Profiles**.
- Step 2** Select the check boxes of the wIPS profiles you want to apply.
- Step 3** Choose **Select a command > Apply Profile > Go**.
- Step 4** Select the mobility services engines and controllers to which you want the profile applied.  
If the new profile assignment is different from the current assignment, you are prompted to save the profile with a different name.
- Step 5** Click **Apply**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring Cisco Adaptive wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Creating SSID Groups](#)

## Deleting wIPS Profiles

Profiles currently applied to MSEs and controllers cannot be deleted.

---

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > wIPS Profiles**.
- Step 2** Select the check boxes of the wIPS profiles you want to delete.
- Step 3** Choose **Select a command > Delete Profile > Go**.
- Step 4** Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring Cisco Adaptive wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Editing wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Associating SSID Groups With wIPS Profiles](#)

## Associating SSID Groups With wIPS Profiles

The SSID (Service Set Identifier) is a token or key which identifies an 802.11 (Wi-Fi) network. Users must either know or be able to discover the SSID to join an 802.11 network.

You can associate SSIDs with a wIPS profile by adding the SSIDs to an SSID group, then associating the SSID group with the wIPS profile.

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Cisco Adaptive wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Creating SSID Groups](#)
- [Editing SSID Groups](#)
- [Editing SSID Groups](#)
- [Deleting SSID Groups](#)

## Creating SSID Groups

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > wIPS Profiles**.
  - Step 2** Click the Profile Name of any wIPS profile. Prime Infrastructure displays the SSID Group List page.
  - Step 3** Choose **Select a command > Add Group > Go**.
  - Step 4** Enter the SSID Group Name in the text box.
  - Step 5** Enter the SSIDs in the SSID List text box. Enter multiple SSIDs with a carriage return after each SSID.
  - Step 6** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Associating SSID Groups With wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Configuring Cisco Adaptive wIPS Profiles](#)

## Editing SSID Groups

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > wIPS Profiles**.
  - Step 2** Click the Profile Name of any wIPS profile. Prime Infrastructure displays the SSID Group List page.
  - Step 3** Select the check box of the SSID group that you want to edit.
  - Step 4** Choose **Select a command > e Edit Group > Go**.
  - Step 5** Make the necessary changes to the SSID Group Name or the SSID List.
  - Step 6** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Associating SSID Groups With wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Configuring Cisco Adaptive wIPS Profiles](#)

## Deleting SSID Groups

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > wIPS Profiles**.
  - Step 2** Click the Profile Name of any wIPS profile. Prime Infrastructure displays the SSID Group List page.
  - Step 3** Select the check boxes of the SSID groups that you want to delete.
  - Step 4** Choose **Select a command > Delete Group > Go**.
  - Step 5** Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Associating SSID Groups With wIPS Profiles](#)
- [Configuring Cisco Adaptive wIPS Profiles](#)

## Managing MSE High Availability Using Prime Infrastructure

You can use Prime Infrastructure to pair and manage Cisco Mobility Services Engine (MSE) devices that have been configured for MSE High Availability (HA). The following related topics explain how to perform these and related tasks.

### Related Topics

- [Configuring MSE High Availability](#)
- [Adding MSEs to Prime Infrastructure](#)
- [MSE HA Automatic vs Manual Failover and Failback](#)
- [Pairing MSE HA Servers](#)
- [Viewing Configured Parameters for MSE HA Devices](#)
- [Viewing MSE High Availability Status](#)
- [Triggering MSE HA Manual Failover or Failback](#)
- [Enabling Automatic MSE HA Failover and Failback](#)
- [Enabling Automatic MSE HA Failover and Failback](#)

## MSE HA Automatic vs Manual Failover and Failback

The MSE HA feature is intended to permit continued access to MSE services even when the primary MSE fails. The secondary MSE maintains a complete copy of the primary MSE's data, serving as its backup. Health Monitor and "heartbeat" processes running on both the primary and secondary keep each server informed about the state of the other.

Whenever the primary MSE fails, a "failover" to the secondary MSE is triggered. Prime Infrastructure will then use the secondary's mobility services instead of the primary until the problems with the primary are fixed.

When the primary is back in service, a "failback" is triggered, returning control to the primary MSE, and replicating data about the intervening state of the network back to the primary from the secondary MSE.

When configuring MSE HA, you can choose to have failovers triggered either automatically or manually. You have the same options for failbacks.

Configuring MSE HA for manual failover or failback means these operations must be triggered by a user, in response to critical alarms sent when the primary fails or is restored to service.

Configuring MSE HA for automatic failover reduces the need for network administrators to manage MSE HA. It also reduces the time taken to respond to the conditions that provoked the failover, since it brings up the secondary server automatically, within approximately 10 seconds (the default) of detection of failure on the primary. If MSE HA is configured for automatic failback, the system will trigger the failback only after successful receipt of 30 ping messages sent once per minute.

#### Related Topics

- [Pairing MSE HA Servers](#)
- [Enabling Automatic MSE HA Failover and Failback](#)
- [Managing MSE High Availability Using Prime Infrastructure](#)

## Pairing MSE HA Servers

In order to activate High Availability for MSE devices, you must create a pairing, where one MSE serves as the primary MSE device, and another acts as the secondary MSE.

Note that you can only pair MSE devices that are:

- Properly configured for use with MSE High Availability, as explained in the related topic “Configuring MSE High Availability”.
- Added to Prime Infrastructure, as explained in the related topic “Adding MSEs to Prime Infrastructure”.

#### Before You Begin

To create the pairing, you will need to know:

- The device name of the primary MSE server.
- The device name of the secondary MSE server. This can be a previously assigned device name, or a new name you assign at the moment you pair the servers.
- The secondary MSE HA server’s IP address. This is the IP address of the HA Health Monitor, which was assigned when configuring the MSE server for HA use.
- The secondary MSE HA server’s password. This is the Prime Infrastructure communication password, which was assigned when configuring the MSE server for HA use.

You must also decide if you want to configure the MSE HA servers for manual or automatic failback. For guidelines, see the related topic “MSE HA Automatic vs Manual Failover and Failback”.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**. A list of the existing MSEs is displayed.
  - Step 2** In the list, find the MSE you want to act as the primary MSE HA server.
  - Step 3** The “Secondary Server” column for the MSE listing displays the message “N/A (Click here to configure)”. Click on the link to display the HA configuration page for the primary MSE.
  - Step 4** Enter the secondary MSE’s device name, Health Monitor IP address, and Prime Infrastructure communication password in the appropriate fields.
  - Step 5** Specify the failover and failback types. You can choose either **Manual** or **Automatic**

- Step 6** Specify the Long Failover Wait. This is the maximum time the system will wait to trigger automatic failover after detection of primary MSE failure. The default is 10 seconds; the maximum is 120 seconds.
- Step 7** Click **Save**. Prime Infrastructure prompts you to confirm that you want to pair these MSEs. Click OK to confirm.

Prime Infrastructure conducts the pairing and synchronization automatically. These processes can take up to 20 minutes to complete, depending on network bandwidth and many other factors. To check on the progress of these processes, select **Services > Mobility Services Engine > System > Services High Availability > HA Status**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring MSE High Availability](#)
- [Adding MSEs to Prime Infrastructure](#)
- [MSE HA Automatic vs Manual Failover and Failback](#)
- [Enabling Automatic MSE HA Failover and Failback](#)
- [Managing MSE High Availability Using Prime Infrastructure](#)

## Viewing Configured Parameters for MSE HA Devices

---

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** To see the HA parameters for the:
- Primary MSE HA server: Click the name of the server in the **Device Name** column.
  - Secondary MSE HA server: Click the name of the server in the **Secondary Server** column.
- Prime Infrastructure displays the Mobility Services Engines configuration page for the server you selected.
- Step 3** In the left sidebar menu, choose **HA Configuration**. The HA Configuration page provides the following information:
- Primary Health Monitor IP
  - Secondary Device Name
  - Secondary IP Address
  - Secondary Password
  - Secondary Platform UDI
  - Secondary Activation Status
  - Failover Type
  - Failback Type
  - Long Failover Wait

---

#### Related Topics

- [Pairing MSE HA Servers](#)



- [Viewing MSE High Availability Status](#)
- [Triggering MSE HA Manual Failover or Failback](#)
- [Enabling Automatic MSE HA Failover and Failback](#)
- [Enabling Automatic MSE HA Failover and Failback](#)
- [Managing MSE High Availability Using Prime Infrastructure](#)

## Viewing MSE High Availability Status

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** To see the HA status of the:
- Primary MSE HA server: Click the name of the server in the **Device Name** column.
  - Secondary MSE HA server: Click the name of the server in the **Secondary Server** column.
- Prime Infrastructure displays the Mobility Services Engines configuration page for the server you selected.
- Step 3** In the left sidebar menu, choose **HA Status**. The Current High Availability Status page shows the following information:
- Status—Shows whether the MSE HA server is active and correctly synchronized.
  - Heartbeats—Shows whether the MSE HA server is exchanging heartbeat signals with its partner.
  - Data Replication—Shows whether MSE HA server is replicating data with its partner.
  - Mean Heartbeat Response Time—Shows the mean heartbeat response time between servers.
  - Events Log—Shows the last 20 events that the MSE server has generated.
- Step 4** Click **Refresh Status** to update the MSA server's HA status information and Events Log.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Pairing MSE HA Servers](#)
- [Viewing Configured Parameters for MSE HA Devices](#)
- [Enabling Automatic MSE HA Failover and Failback](#)
- [Managing MSE High Availability Using Prime Infrastructure](#)

## Triggering MSE HA Manual Failover or Failback

Manual failover and failback are enabled by default. Manual configuration requires that the Prime Infrastructure administrator trigger failovers and failbacks manually, in response to system alarms. You can also configure paired MSE HA servers for automatic failover and failback (see Related Topics).

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** To trigger a:
- Failover from the primary to the secondary: Click the name of the primary MSE HA server in the **Device Name** column.

- Failback from the secondary to the primary: Click the name of the secondary MSE HA server in the **Secondary Server** column.

Prime Infrastructure displays the Mobility Services Engines configuration page for the server you selected.

- Step 3** In the left sidebar menu, choose **HA Configuration**. The HA Configuration page displays the HA configuration information for the server you chose.
- Step 4** Click **Switchover** to initiate the failover or failback.
- Step 5** Click **OK** to confirm that you want to initiate the switchover.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [MSE HA Automatic vs Manual Failover and Failback](#)
- [Enabling Automatic MSE HA Failover and Failback](#)
- [Managing MSE High Availability Using Prime Infrastructure](#)

## Enabling Automatic MSE HA Failover and Failback

Manual failover and failback are enabled by default. If you configure paired MSE HA servers for automatic failover and failback, the change will occur automatically, as follows:

- Failover from primary to secondary: Triggered immediately, as soon as the secondary detects a failure on the primary.
  - Failback from secondary to primary: Triggered after 30 successful ping messages from the secondary to the primary. Ping requests are sent once per minute.
- 

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > MSE High Availability**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the primary MSE HA server in the **Device Name** column.  
Prime Infrastructure displays the HA Configuration page for the primary MSE HA server.
- Step 3** In the **Failover Type** and **Failback Type** list boxes, select **Automatic**.
- Step 4** If needed: Change the value in **Long Failover Wait** to control the maximum delay between detection of a failure on the primary and automatic failover. The default is 10 seconds.
- Step 5** Click **Save** to save your changes.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [MSE HA Automatic vs Manual Failover and Failback](#)
- [Triggering MSE HA Manual Failover or Failback](#)
- [Managing MSE High Availability Using Prime Infrastructure](#)

## Unpairing MSE HA Servers

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > MSE High Availability**.
-

- Step 2** Click the name of the primary MSE HA server in the **Device Name** column. Prime Infrastructure displays the HA Configuration page for the Primary MSE HA server.
- Step 3** Click **Delete** to unpair the MSE servers.
- Step 4** Click **OK** to confirm that you want to unpair the MSE HA servers.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Pairing MSE HA Servers](#)
- [Managing MSE High Availability Using Prime Infrastructure](#)

## Auto Provisioning for Controllers

Auto provisioning allows Prime Infrastructure to automatically configure a new or replace a current wireless LAN controller (WLC). Prime Infrastructure auto provisioning feature can simplify deployments for customers with a large number of controllers.

For Auto Provisioning privileges, you must have Admin, Root, or SuperUser status.

To allow or disallow a user Auto Provisioning privileges, edit the permitted tasks using Administration Settings > Users, Roles, and AAA > User Groups > *group name* > List of Tasks Permitted in Prime Infrastructure. Select or unselect the check box to allow or disallow these privileges.

A controller radio and b/g networks are initially disabled by the Prime Infrastructure downloaded startup configuration file. If desired, you might turn on those radio networks by using a template, which should be included as one of the automated templates.

To specify the Auto Provision filter contents, you can directly enter the details in the application or import the details from a CSV file. The auto provisioning feature supports the 5500 and non-5500 series controllers. The non-5500 series controllers have AP manager interface configuration information defined, whereas 5500 series controllers do not have this information.

To access the Auto Provisioning feature, choose **Configuration > Plug and Play > WLC Auto Provisioning >**





## Creating Controller Configuration Groups

---

This chapter describes how to create controller configuration groups and mobility groups.

- [Adding Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Configuring Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Adding or Removing Controllers from a Configuration Group](#)
- [Adding or Removing Templates from the Configuration Group](#)
- [Applying or Scheduling Configuration Groups](#)
- [Auditing Configuration Groups](#)
- [Rebooting Configuration Groups](#)
- [About Mobility](#)
- [About Mobility Groups](#)
- [Mobility Anchors](#)

### Adding Controller Configuration Groups

To add new controller configuration groups, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**.
  - Step 2** From the **Select a command drop-down** list, choose **Add Configuration Group**, and click **Go**. The Add New Group page appears.
  - Step 3** Enter the new configuration group name. It must be unique across all groups.
  - Step 4** Other templates created in Prime Infrastructure can be assigned to a configuration group. The same WLAN template can be assigned to more than one configuration group. Choose from the following:
    - Click **Select and add later** to add a template at a later time.
    - Click **Copy templates from a controller** to copy templates from another controller. Choose a controller from a list of current controllers to copy its applied template to the new configuration group. Only the templates are copied.

The order of the templates is important when dealing with radio templates. For example, if the template list includes radio templates that require the radio network to be disabled prior to applying the radio parameters, the template to disable the radio network must be added to the template first.

**Step 5** Click **Save**. The Configuration Groups page appears.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Applying or Scheduling Configuration Groups](#)
- [Auditing Configuration Groups](#)
- [Rebooting Configuration Groups](#)
- [Configuring Controller Mobility Groups: Workflow](#)
- [Configuring Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Adding or Removing Controllers from a Configuration Group](#)
- [Adding or Removing Templates from the Configuration Group](#)
- [Applying or Scheduling Configuration Groups](#)
- [Auditing Configuration Groups](#)
- [Rebooting Configuration Groups](#)

## Configuring Controller Configuration Groups

To configure a controller configuration group, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**, and click a group name in the Group Name column. The Configuration Group page appears.

**Step 2** Click the **General** tab. The following options for the configuration group appear:

- Group Name: Name of the configuration group
  - Enable Background Audit—If selected, all the templates that are part of this group are audited against the controller during network and controller audits.
  - Enable Enforcement—If selected, the templates are automatically applied during the audit if any discrepancies are found.

The audit and enforcement of the configuration group template happens when the selected audit mode is *Template based audit*.

- Enable Mobility Group—If selected, the mobility group name is pushed to all controllers in the group.
- Mobility Group Name: Mobility Group Name that is pushed to all controllers in the group. The Mobility Group Name can also be modified here. A controller can be part of multiple configuration groups.
- Last Modified On: Date and time configuration group was last modified.
- Last Applied On: Date and time last changes were applied.

**Step 3** You must click the **Apply/Schedule** tab to distribute the specified mobility group name to the group controllers and to create mobility group members on each of the group controllers.

**Step 4** Click **Save**.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Applying or Scheduling Configuration Groups](#)
- [Auditing Configuration Groups](#)
- [Rebooting Configuration Groups](#)
- [Configuring Controller Mobility Groups: Workflow](#)
- [Adding Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Adding or Removing Controllers from a Configuration Group](#)
- [Adding or Removing Templates from the Configuration Group](#)
- [Applying or Scheduling Configuration Groups](#)
- [Auditing Configuration Groups](#)
- [Rebooting Configuration Groups](#)

## Adding or Removing Controllers from a Configuration Group

To add or remove controllers from a configuration group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**, and click a group name in the Group Name column.
- Step 2** Click the **Controllers** tab. The columns in the table display the IP address of the controller, the configuration group name the controller belongs to, and the mobility group name of the controller.
- Step 3** Click to highlight the row of the controller you want to add to the group.
- Step 4** Click **Add**.
- If you want to remove a controller from the group, highlight the controller in the Group Controllers box and click **Remove**.
- Step 5** You must click the **Apply/Schedule** tab, and click **Apply** to add or remove the controllers to the configuration groups.
- Step 6** Click **Save Selection**.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Applying or Scheduling Configuration Groups](#)
- [Auditing Configuration Groups](#)
- [Rebooting Configuration Groups](#)
- [Configuring Controller Mobility Groups: Workflow](#)
- [Adding Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Configuring Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Adding or Removing Templates from the Configuration Group](#)
- [Applying or Scheduling Configuration Groups](#)

- [Auditing Configuration Groups](#)
- [Rebooting Configuration Groups](#)

## Adding or Removing Templates from the Configuration Group

To add or remove templates from the configuration group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**, and click a group name in the Group Name column.
  - Step 2** Click the **Templates** tab. The Remaining Templates table displays the item number of all available templates, the template name, and the type and use of the template.
  - Step 3** Click to highlight the row of the template you want to add to the group.
  - Step 4** Click **Add** to move the highlighted template to the Group Templates column.  
If you want to remove a template from the group, highlight the template in the Remaining Templates box, and click **Remove**.
  - Step 5** You must click the **Apply/Schedule** tab, and click **Apply** to add or remove the templates to the configuration groups.
  - Step 6** Click **Save Selection**.
- 

### Related topics

- [Configuring Controller Mobility Groups: Workflow](#)
- [Adding Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Configuring Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Adding or Removing Controllers from a Configuration Group](#)
- [Applying or Scheduling Configuration Groups](#)
- [Auditing Configuration Groups](#)
- [Rebooting Configuration Groups](#)

## Applying or Scheduling Configuration Groups

The scheduling function allows you to schedule a start day and time for provisioning.

Make sure that any other configuration group functions are not performed during the apply provisioning.

To apply the mobility groups, mobility members, and templates to all the controllers in a configuration group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**, and click a group name in the Group Name column.
  - Step 2** Click the **Apply/Schedule** tab to access this page.



- Step 3** Click **Apply** to start the provisioning of mobility groups, mobility members, and templates to all the controllers in the configuration group. After you apply, you can leave this page or log out of Prime Infrastructure. The process continues, and you can return later to this page to view a report.
- A report is generated and appears in the Recent Apply Report page. It shows which mobility group, mobility member, or template were successfully applied to each of the controllers.
- If you want to print the report as shown on the page, you must choose landscape page orientation.
- Step 4** Enter a starting date in the text box or use the calendar icon to choose a start date.
- Step 5** Choose the starting time using the hours and minutes drop-down lists.
- Step 6** Click **Schedule** to start the provisioning at the scheduled time.
- 

**Related topics**

- [Configuring Controller Mobility Groups: Workflow](#)
- [Adding Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Configuring Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Adding or Removing Controllers from a Configuration Group](#)
- [Adding or Removing Templates from the Configuration Group](#)
- [Auditing Configuration Groups](#)
- [Rebooting Configuration Groups](#)

## Auditing Configuration Groups

The Configuration Groups Audit page allows you to verify if the configuration of the controller complies with the group templates and mobility group.

When auditing the Configuration Groups:

1. You can leave this screen or log out of Prime Infrastructure. The process continues, and you can return to this page later to view a report.
2. Do not perform any other configuration group functions during the audit verification.
3. This audit does not enforce the Prime Infrastructure configuration to the device. It only identifies the discrepancies

To perform a configuration group audit, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**, and click a group name in the Group Name column.
- Step 2** Click the **Audit** tab to access this page.
- Step 3** Click to highlight a controller from the **Controllers** tab, choose **>> (Add)**, and **Save Selection**.
- Step 4** Click to highlight a template from the **Templates** tab, choose **>> (Add)**, and **Save Selection**.
- Step 5** Click **Audit** to begin the auditing process.

A report is generated and the current configuration on each controller is compared with that in the configuration group templates. The report displays the audit status, the number of templates in sync, and the number of templates out of sync.

- Step 6** Click **Details** to view the Controller Audit Report details.
  - Step 7** Double-click a line item to open the Attribute Differences page. This page displays the attribute, its value in Prime Infrastructure, and its value in the controller.
  - Step 8** Click **Retain Prime Infrastructure Value** to push all attributes in the Attribute Differences page to the device.
  - Step 9** Click **Close** to return to the Controller Audit Report page.
- 

**Related topics**

- [Configuring Controller Mobility Groups: Workflow](#)
- [Adding Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Configuring Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Adding or Removing Controllers from a Configuration Group](#)
- [Adding or Removing Templates from the Configuration Group](#)
- [Applying or Scheduling Configuration Groups](#)
- [Rebooting Configuration Groups](#)

## Rebooting Configuration Groups

To reboot a configuration group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**, and click a group name in the Group Name column.
  - Step 2** Click the **Reboot** tab.
  - Step 3** Check the **Cascade Reboot** check box if you want to reboot one controller at a time, waiting for that controller to come up before rebooting the next controller.
  - Step 4** Click **Reboot** to reboot all controllers in the configuration group at the same time. During the reboot, you can leave this page or logout of Prime Infrastructure. The process continues, and you can return later to this page and view a report.

The Recent Reboot Report page shows when each controller was rebooted and what the controller status is after the reboot. If Prime Infrastructure is unable to reboot the controller, a failure is shown.

If you want to print the report as shown on the page, you must choose landscape page orientation.

---

**Related topics**

- [Configuring Controller Mobility Groups: Workflow](#)
- [Adding Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Configuring Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Adding or Removing Controllers from a Configuration Group](#)
- [Adding or Removing Templates from the Configuration Group](#)
- [Applying or Scheduling Configuration Groups](#)

- [Auditing Configuration Groups](#)

## Viewing Configuration Group Reports

To display all recently applied reports under a specified group name, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**, and click a group name in the Group Name column.
- Step 2** Click the **Report** tab. The Recent Apply Report page displays all recently applied reports including the apply status, the date and time the apply was initiated, and the number of templates. The following information is provided for each individual IP address:
- **Apply Status**—Indicates success, partial success, failure, or not initiated.
  - **Successful Templates**—Indicates the number of successful templates associated with the applicable IP address.
  - **Failures**—Indicates the number of failures with the provisioning of mobility group, mobility members, and templates to the applicable controller.
  - **Details**—Click **Details** to view the individual failures and associated error messages.
- Step 3** If you want to view the scheduled task reports, click the **click here** link at the bottom of the page. You are then redirected to the **Configure > Scheduled Configuration Tasks > Configuration Group** menu where you can view reports of the scheduled configuration groups.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Adding Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Applying or Scheduling Configuration Groups](#)
- [Auditing Configuration Groups](#)

## Downloading Software to Configuration Groups

To download software to all controllers in the selected groups after you have established a configuration group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**.
- Step 2** Select the check box to choose one or more configuration groups names on the Configuration Groups page.
- Step 3** Choose **Download Software** from the **Select a command** drop-down list, and click **Go**.
- Step 4** The Download Software to Controller page appears. The IP address of the controller to receive the bundle and the current status are displayed. Choose **local machine** from the **File is Located On** field.
- Step 5** Enter the maximum number of times the controller should attempt to download the signature file in the **Maximum Retries** field.
- Step 6** Enter the maximum amount of time in seconds before the controller times out while attempting to download the signature file in the **Timeout** field.

- Step 7** The signature files are uploaded to the c:\tftp directory. Specify the local filename in that directory or click **Browse** to navigate to it. The controller uses this local filename as a base name and then adds `_custom.sgi` as a suffix.
- If the transfer times out for some reason, you can simply choose the TFTP server option in the **File Is Located On** field, and the server filename is populated for you and retried.
- Step 8** Click **OK**.
- 

**Related topics**

- [Downloading IDS Signatures to Configuration Groups](#)
- [Downloading Customized WebAuth to Configuration Groups](#)

## Downloading IDS Signatures to Configuration Groups

To download Intrusion Detection System (IDS) signature files from your configuration group to a local TFTP server, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**.
- Step 2** Select the check box to choose one or more configuration groups on the Configuration Groups page.
- Step 3** Choose **Download IDS Signatures** from the **Select a command** drop-down list, and click **Go**.
- Step 4** The Download IDS Signatures to Controller page appears. The IP address of the controller to receive the bundle and the current status are displayed. Choose **local machine** from the **File is Located On** field.
- Step 5** Enter the maximum number of times the controller should attempt to download the signature file in the **Maximum Retries** field.
- Step 6** Enter the maximum amount of time in seconds before the controller times out while attempting to download the signature file in the **Timeout** field.
- Step 7** The signature files are uploaded to the c:\tftp directory. Specify the local filename in that directory or click **Browse** to navigate to it. The controller uses this local filename as a base name and then adds `_custom.sgi` as a suffix.
- If the transfer times out for some reason, you can simply choose the TFTP server option in the **File Is Located On** field, and the server filename is populated for you and retried.
- Step 8** Click **OK**.
- 

**Related topics**

- [Downloading Software to Configuration Groups](#)
- [Downloading Customized WebAuth to Configuration Groups](#)

## Downloading Customized WebAuth to Configuration Groups

To download customized web authentication, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**.
- Step 2** Select the check box to choose one or more configuration groups on the Configuration Groups page.
- Step 3** Choose **Download Customized WebAuth** from the **Select a command** drop-down list, and click **Go**.
- Step 4** The Download Customized Web Auth Bundle to Controller page appears. The IP address of the controller to receive the bundle and the current status are displayed.
- Step 5** Choose **local machine** from the **File is Located On** field.
- 

**Related topics**

- [Downloading Software to Configuration Groups](#)
- [Downloading IDS Signatures to Configuration Groups](#)

## About Mobility

Mobility, or roaming, is an ability of a wireless client to maintain its association seamlessly from one access point to another, securely and with as little latency as possible, in a wireless network. When a wireless client is associated to and authenticated by an access point, a controller places an entry for that client in its client database. This entry includes the MAC and IP addresses of the client, security context and associations, quality of service (QoS) contexts, the WLANs, and the associated access point. The controller uses this information to forward frames and manage traffic to and from the wireless client.

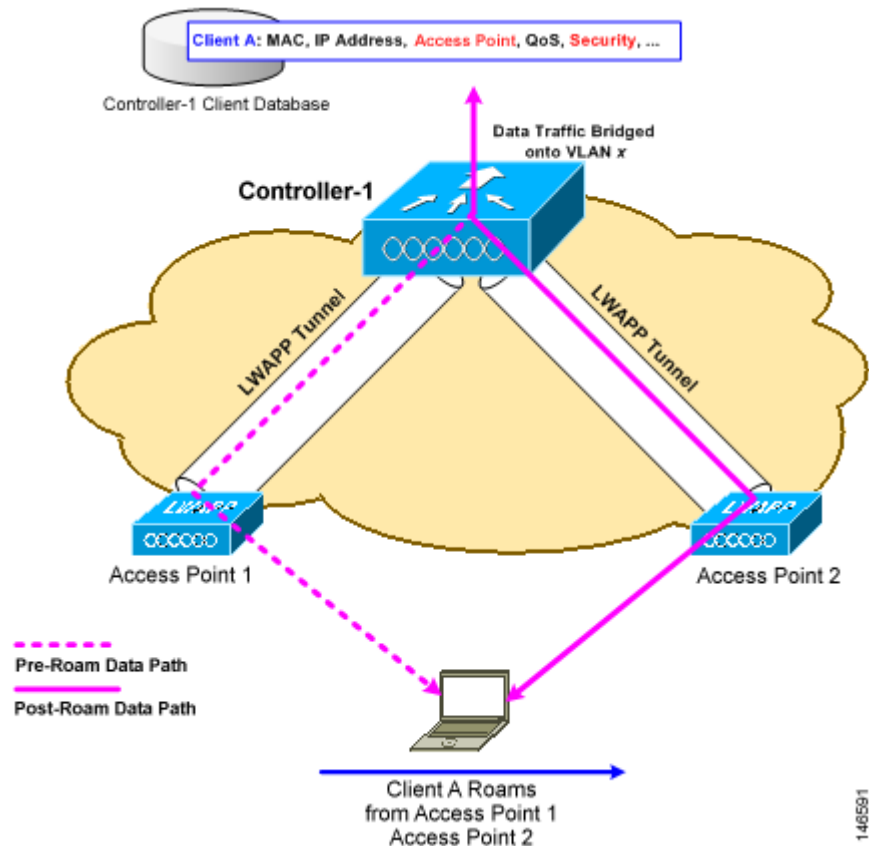
**Related Topics**

- [Intra-Controller Roaming](#)
- [Inter-Controller Roaming](#)
- [Inter-Subnet Roaming](#)
- [Working with Wireless Mobility](#)

## Intra-Controller Roaming

When the wireless client moves its association from one access point to another, the controller simply updates the client database with the newly associated access point. If necessary, new security context and associations are established as well. [Figure 22-1](#) illustrates a wireless client roaming from one access point to another when both access points are connected to the same controller.

Figure 22-1 Intra-Controller Roaming



**Related Topics**

- [About Mobility](#)
- [About Mobility Groups](#)
- [Inter-Controller Roaming](#)
- [Inter-Subnet Roaming](#)

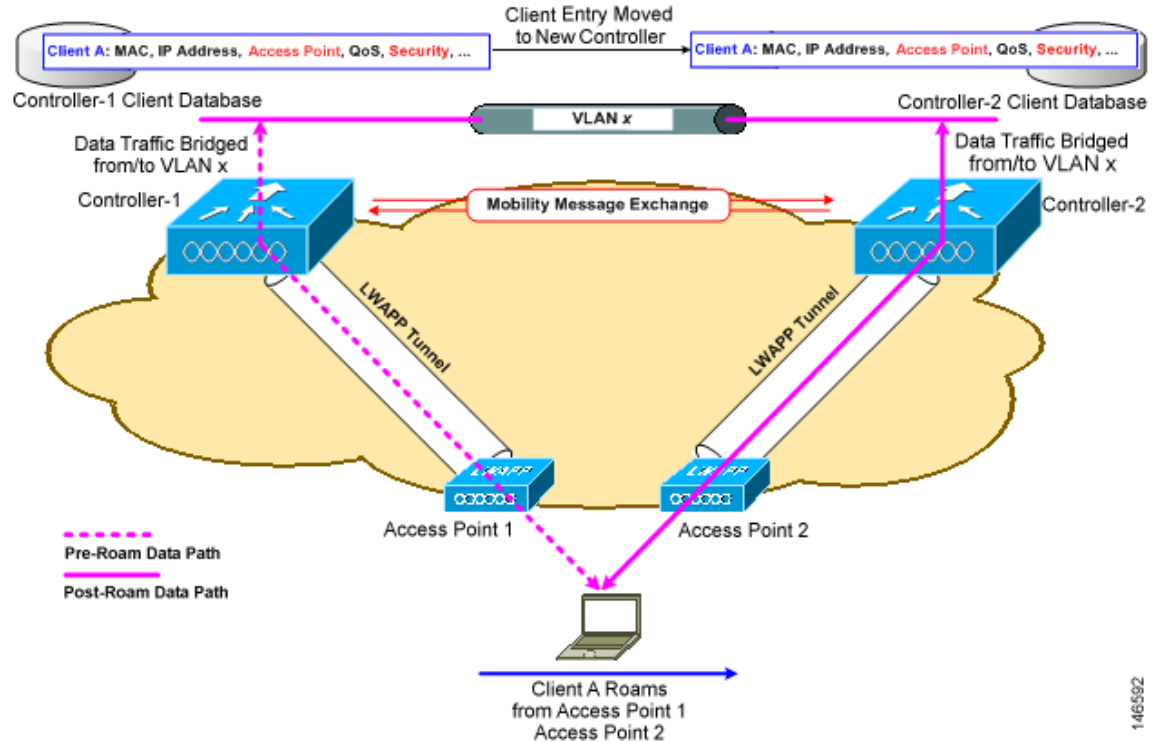
## Inter-Controller Roaming

When a client roams from an access point connected to one controller to an access point connected to a different controller, the process also varies based on whether the controllers are operating on the same subnet. Figure 22-2 illustrates *inter-controller roaming*, which occurs when the wireless LAN interfaces of a controller are on the same IP subnet.

When the client is associated to an access point connected to a new controller, the new controller exchanges mobility messages with the original controller, and the client database entry is moved to the new controller. New security context and associations are established if necessary, and the client database entry is updated for the new access point. This process remains invisible to the user.

All clients configured with 802.1X/Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) security complete a full authentication to comply with the IEEE standard.

Figure 22-2 Inter-Controller Roaming

**Related topics**

- [About Mobility](#)
- [About Mobility Groups](#)
- [Intra-Controller Roaming](#)
- [Inter-Subnet Roaming](#)
- [When to Include Controllers in a Mobility Group](#)

## Inter-Subnet Roaming

Inter-subnet roaming is similar to inter-controller roaming in that the controllers exchange mobility messages on how the client roams. However, instead of moving the client database entry to the new controller, the original controller marks the client with an “Anchor” entry in its own client database. The database entry is copied to the new controller client database and marked with a “Foreign” entry in the new controller. The roam remains invisible to the wireless client, and the client maintains its original IP address.

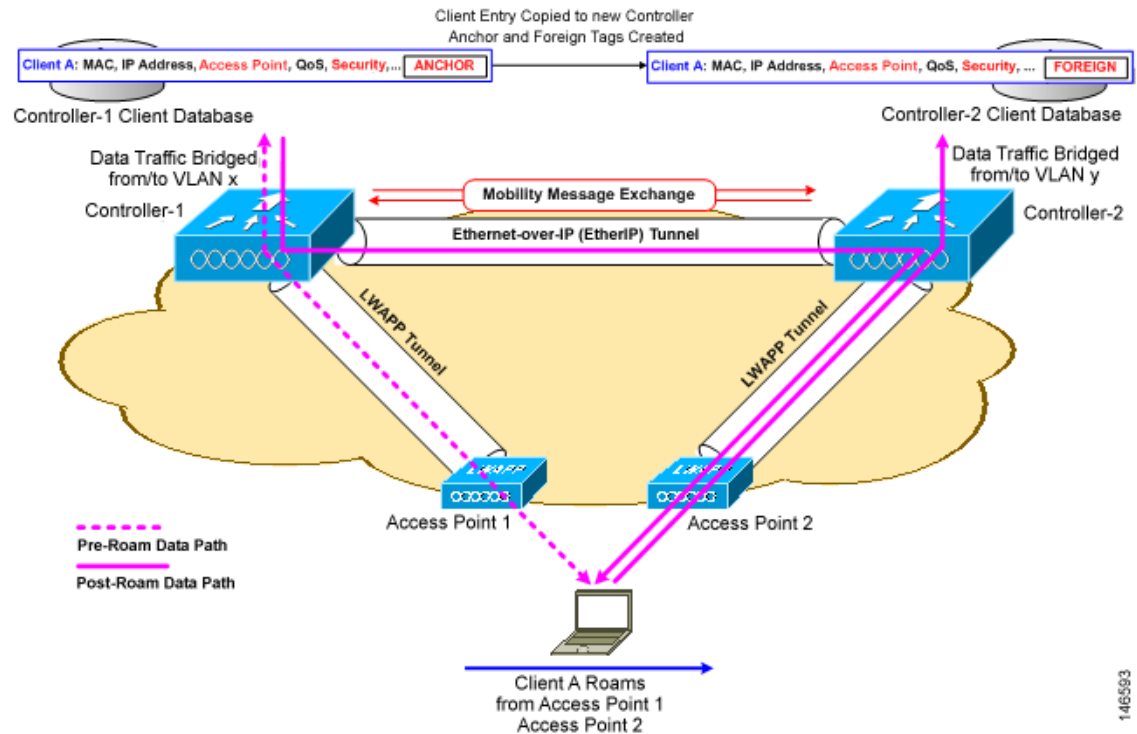
After an inter-subnet roam, data flows in an asymmetric traffic path to and from the wireless client. Traffic from the client to the network is forwarded directly into the network by the foreign controller. Traffic to the client arrives at the anchor controller, which forwards the traffic to the foreign controller in an EtherIP tunnel. The foreign controller then forwards the data to the client. If a wireless client roams to a new foreign controller, the client database entry is moved from the original foreign controller to the new foreign controller, but the original anchor controller is always maintained. If the client moves back to the original controller, it becomes local again.

In inter-subnet roaming, WLANs on both anchor and foreign controllers need to have the same network access privileges and no source-based routing or source-based firewalls in place. Otherwise, the clients might have network connectivity problems after the handoff.

Inter-subnet roaming does not support multicast traffic such as one used by Spectralink phones while using push-to-talk.

Figure 22-3 illustrates *inter-subnet roaming*, which occurs when the wireless LAN interfaces of a controller are on different IP subnets.

**Figure 22-3 Inter-Subnet Roaming**



#### Related topics

- [About Mobility](#)
- [About Mobility Groups](#)
- [Intra-Controller Roaming](#)
- [Inter-Controller Roaming](#)
- [When to Include Controllers in a Mobility Group](#)

## Symmetric Tunneling

With symmetric mobility tunneling, the controller provides inter-subnet mobility for clients roaming from one access point to another within a wireless LAN. The client traffic on the wired network is directly routed by the foreign controller. If a router has Reverse Path Filtering (RPF) enabled (which provides additional checks on incoming packets), the communication is blocked. Symmetric mobility tunneling allows the client traffic to reach the controller designated as the anchor, even with RPF enabled. All controllers in a mobility group should have the same symmetric tunneling mode.



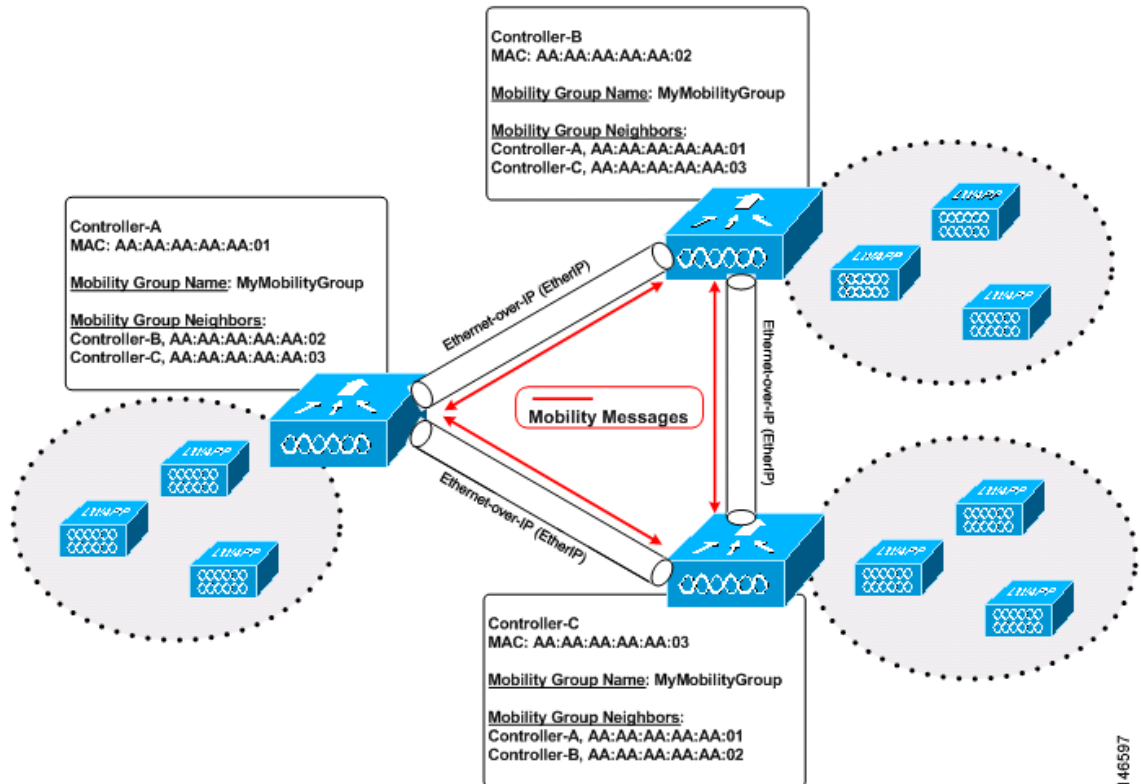
With this feature, the time it takes for a client to join another access point following a controller failure is decreased because a failure is quickly identified, the clients are moved away from the problem controller, and the clients are anchored to another controller.

## About Mobility Groups

A set of controllers can be configured as a mobility group to allow seamless client roaming within a group of controllers. This enables multiple controllers to dynamically share information and forward data traffic when inter-controller or inter-subnet roaming occurs. Controllers can share the context and state of clients and controller loading information. With this information, the network can support inter-controller wireless LAN roaming and controller redundancy. Clients do not roam across mobility groups.

Figure 22-4 shows an example of a mobility group.

**Figure 22-4** A Single Mobility Group



As shown in Figure 22-4, each controller is configured with a list of the other members of the mobility group. Whenever a new client joins a controller, the controller sends out a unicast message to all of the controllers in the mobility group. The controller to which the client was previously connected passes on the status of the client. All mobility exchange traffic between controllers is carried over a CAPWAP tunnel.

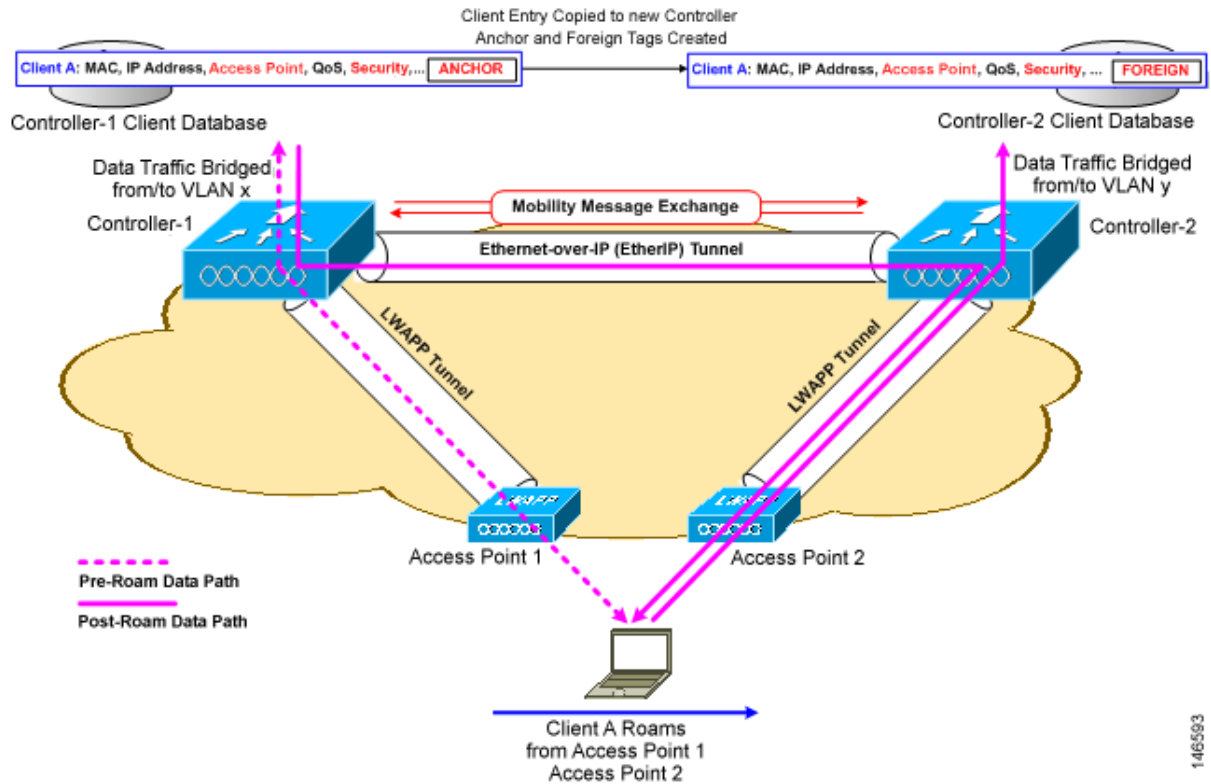
Examples:

1. A 4404-100 controller supports up to 100 access points. Therefore, a mobility group consisting of 24 4404-100 controllers supports up to 2400 access points ( $24 * 100 = 2400$  access points).

2. A 4402-25 controller supports up to 25 access points, and a 4402-50 controller supports up to 50 access points. Therefore, a mobility group consisting of 12 4402-25 controllers and 12 4402-50 controllers supports up to 900 access points ( $12 * 25 + 12 * 50 = 300 + 600 = 900$  access points).

Mobility groups enable you to limit roaming between different floors, buildings, or campuses in the same enterprise by assigning different mobility group names to different controllers within the same wireless network. Figure 22-5 shows the results of creating distinct mobility group names for two groups of controllers.

**Figure 22-5 Two Mobility Groups**



The controllers in the ABC mobility group recognize and communicate with each other through their access points and through their shared subnets. The controllers in the ABC mobility group do not recognize or communicate with the XYZ controllers, which are in a different mobility group. Likewise, the controllers in the XYZ mobility group do not recognize or communicate with the controllers in the ABC mobility group. This feature ensures mobility group isolation across the network. Clients might roam between access points in different mobility groups, provided they can detect them. However, their session information is not carried between controllers in different mobility groups.

#### Related Topics

- [When to Include Controllers in a Mobility Group](#)
- [Messaging Among Mobility Groups](#)

## When to Include Controllers in a Mobility Group

If it is possible for a wireless client in your network to roam from an access point joined to one controller to an access point joined to another controller, both controllers should be in the same mobility group.

**Related Topics**

- [About Mobility Groups](#)
- [Messaging Among Mobility Groups](#)

## Messaging Among Mobility Groups

The controller provides inter-subnet mobility for clients by sending mobility messages to other member controllers. There can be up to 72 members in the list with up to 24 in the same mobility group. In Prime Infrastructure and controller software releases 5.0, two improvements have been made to mobility messaging, each of which is especially useful when sending messages to the full list of mobility members:

- Sending Mobile Announce messages within the same group first and then to other groups in the list

The controller sends a Mobile Announce message to members in the mobility list each time a new client associates to it. In the software releases prior to 5.0, the controller sends this message to all members in the list irrespective of the group to which they belong. However, in the software release 5.0, the controller sends the message only to those members that are in the same group as the controller and then includes all of the other members while sending retries.

- Sending Mobile Announce messages using multicast instead of unicast

In Prime Infrastructure and controller software releases prior to 5.0, the controller might be configured to use multicast to send the mobile announce messages, which requires sending a copy of the messages to every mobility member. This behavior is not efficient because many messages (such as Mobile Announce, Pairwise Master Key (PMK) Update, AP List Update, and Intrusion Detection System (IDS) Shun) are meant for all members in the group. In Prime Infrastructure and controller software releases 5.0, the controller uses multicast mode to send the Mobile Announce messages. This behavior allows the controller to send only one copy of the message to the network, which destines it to the multicast group containing all the mobility members. To derive the maximum benefit from multicast messaging, We recommend that it be enabled or disabled on all group members.

**Related Topics**

- [About Mobility Groups](#)
- [When to Include Controllers in a Mobility Group](#)
- [Configuring Mobility Groups: Workflow](#)

## Configuring Mobility Groups: Workflow

Whenever you configure a Mobility Group, follow this workflow:

1. Make sure you have gathered the information you need and that the participating controller are properly configured, as explained in “Before You Begin Configuring Mobility Groups”.
2. Add individual controllers to the Mobility Group. You may need to add them manually if no Mobility Groups exist or no controllers are listed when you try to add them from the **Configuration > Network > Network Devices** page.
3. Set the scale and messaging parameters for the Mobility Group.

**Related Topics**

- [Before You Begin Configuring Mobility Groups](#)
- [Adding Controllers to Mobility Groups](#)
- [Adding Controllers to Mobility Groups Manually](#)
- [Setting Mobility Scalability Parameters](#)

## Before You Begin Configuring Mobility Groups

Before you add controllers to a mobility group, you must verify that the following requirements have been met for all controllers that are to be included in the group:

- All controllers must be configured for the same LWAPP transport mode (Layer 2 or Layer 3). Verify and change the LWAPP transport mode by navigating to **Administration > Settings > System Settings > General** page.
- Verify IP connectivity by pinging the controllers and make sure IP connectivity exists between the management interfaces of all devices.
- All controllers must be configured with the same mobility group name for seamless routing among the access points.
- All devices must be configured with the same virtual interface IP address, else client loses connectivity for a period of time, though inter-controller roaming appears to be working.
- You must have gathered the MAC address and IP address of every controller that is to be included in the mobility group. This information is necessary because you configure all controllers with the MAC address and IP address of all the other mobility group members.

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring Mobility Groups: Workflow](#)
- [Adding Controllers to Mobility Groups](#)
- [Adding Controllers to Mobility Groups Manually](#)
- [Setting Mobility Scalability Parameters](#)

## Adding Controllers to Mobility Groups

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click on a Device Name for a controller. This allows you to access the controller templates interface for the controller you are managing.
- Step 3** Choose **System > Mobility Groups** from the left sidebar menu. The existing Mobility Group members are listed in the page.
- Step 4** You see a list of available controllers. From the **Select a command** drop-down list in the upper right-hand corner, choose **Add Group Members** and then click **Go**.
- Step 5** Enter the multicast group IP address to be used for multicast mobility messages in the Multicast Address text box. The group address of the local mobility member must be the same as the group address of the local controller.
- Step 6** In the Group Name text box, enter the name of the mobility group.

- Step 7** Click **Save**.
- Step 8** Repeat steps 1 through 8 for the remaining controllers.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring Mobility Groups: Workflow](#)
- [Before You Begin Configuring Mobility Groups](#)
- [Adding Controllers to Mobility Groups Manually](#)
- [Setting Mobility Scalability Parameters](#)

## Adding Controllers to Mobility Groups Manually

You can add controllers to Mobility Groups manually if you cannot display a list of existing Mobility Groups and available controller.

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click on a Device Name for a controller. This allows you to access the controller templates interface for the controller you are managing.
- Step 3** The Wireless Controller page appears. Click **Configuration** tab.
- Step 4** Choose **System > Mobility Groups** from the left sidebar menu. The existing Mobility Group members are listed in the page.
- Step 5** You see a list of available controllers. From the **Select a command** drop-down list in the upper right-hand corner, choose **Add Group Members** and then click **Go**.
- Step 6** If you don't see a list of controllers, click the “To add members manually to the Mobility Group click here” link. The Mobility Group Member page appears.
- Step 7** In the Member MAC Address text box, enter the MAC address of the controller to be added.
- Step 8** In the Member IP Address text box, enter the management interface IP address of the controller to be added.
- If you are configuring the mobility group in a network where Network Address Translation (NAT) is enabled, enter the IP address sent to the controller from the NAT device rather than the management interface IP address of the controller. Otherwise, mobility fails among controllers in the mobility group.
- Step 9** Enter the multicast group IP address to be used for multicast mobility messages in the Multicast Address text box. The group address of the local mobility member must be the same as the group address of the local controller.
- Step 10** In the Group Name text box, enter the name of the mobility group.
- Step 11** Click **Save**.
- Step 12** Repeat steps 1 through 12 for the remaining controllers.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Configuring Mobility Groups: Workflow](#)

- [Before You Begin Configuring Mobility Groups](#)
- [Adding Controllers to Mobility Groups](#)
- [Setting Mobility Scalability Parameters](#)

## Setting Mobility Scalability Parameters

Complete the procedure of Adding Controllers To Mobility Groups before setting the mobility message parameters.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Network > Network Devices**, then from the Device Groups menu on the left, select **Device Type > Wireless Controller**.
- Step 2** Click on a Device Name for a controller whose software version is 5.0 or later.
- Step 3** The Wireless Controller page appears. Click **Configuration** tab.
- Step 4** Choose **System > Multicast** from the left sidebar menu. The Multicast page appears.
- Step 5** Choose **Multicast** or **Unicast** from the **Ethernet Multicast Support** drop-down list.
- Step 6** Enter the group IP address at the Multicast Group Address field, if you chose multicast in Step 4, to begin multicast mobility messaging. You must also configure this IP address for the local mobility group, but it is optional for other groups within the mobility list. If you do not configure the IP address for other (non-local) groups, the controllers use unicast mode to send mobility messages to those members.
- Step 7** Select the **Global Multicast Mode** check box to make the multicast mode available globally.
- Step 8** Choose **Enable** from the **Multicast Mobility Mode** drop-down list, and enter the mobility group multicast address.
- Step 9** Select the **Multicast Direct** check box to enable videos to be streamed over a wireless network.
- Step 10** Specify the Session Banner information, which is the error information sent to the client if the client is denied or dropped from a Media Stream. All media streams on a controller share this configuration.
- State—Select the check box to activate the Session Banner. If not activated, the Session Banner is not sent to the client
  - URL—A web address reported to the client
  - Email—An e-mail address reported to the client
  - Phone—A telephone number reported to the client
  - Note—A note reported to the client
- Step 11** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Mobility Groups: Workflow](#)
- [Before You Begin Configuring Mobility Groups](#)
- [Adding Controllers to Mobility Groups](#)
- [Adding Controllers to Mobility Groups Manually](#)

# Mobility Anchors

Mobility anchors are a subset of a mobility group specified as the anchor controllers for a WLAN. This feature can be used to restrict a WLAN to a single subnet, regardless of the entry point of a client into the network. In this way, users can access a public or guest WLAN throughout an enterprise but still be restricted to a specific subnet. Guest WLAN can also be used to provide geographic load balancing because WLANs can represent a particular section of a building (such as a lobby, a restaurant, and so on).

## Related Topic

- [Mobility Anchors](#)
- [Configuring Multiple Country Codes](#)
- [Adding Multiple Controllers And Setting DCA Channels](#)

## Adding Multiple Controllers And Setting DCA Channels

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**.
  - Step 2** Choose **Add Configuration Groups** from the Select a command drop-down list, and click **Go**.
  - Step 3** Create a configuration group by entering the group name and mobility group name.
  - Step 4** Click **Save**. The Configuration Groups page appears.
  - Step 5** Click the **Controllers** tab. The Controllers page appears.
  - Step 6** Highlight the controllers you want to add, and click **Add**. The controller is added to the Group Controllers page.
  - Step 7** Click the **Country/DCA** tab. The Country/DCA page appears. Dynamic Channel Allocation (DCA) automatically selects a reasonably good channel allocation amongst a set of managed devices connected to the controller.
  - Step 8** Check the **Update Country/DCA** check box to display a list of countries from which to choose.
  - Step 9** Those DCA channels that are currently configured on the controller for the same mobility group are displayed in the Select Country Codes page. The corresponding 802.11a/n and 802.11b/n allowable channels for the chosen country is displayed as well. You can add or delete any channels in the list by selecting or deselecting the channel and clicking **Save Selection**.
- 

## Configuring Controller Mobility Groups: Workflow

By creating a configuration group, you can group controllers that should have the same mobility group name and similar configuration. You can assign templates to the group and push templates to all the controllers in a group. You can add, delete, or remove configuration groups, and download software, IDS signatures, or a customized web authentication page to controllers in the selected configuration groups. You can also save the current configuration to nonvolatile (flash) memory to controllers in selected configuration groups.

**Before You Begin**

- Bear in mind that a controller cannot be a member of more than one mobility group. Adding a controller to one mobility group removes that controller from any other mobility group to which it is already a member.
- By choosing **Configuration > Templates > Controller Configuration Groups**, you can view a summary of all configuration groups in the Prime Infrastructure database. When you choose Add Configuration Groups from the **Select a command** drop-down list, the page displays a table with the following columns:
  - Group Name: Name of the configuration group.
  - Templates: Number of templates applied to configuration group.

**Related topics**

- [Adding Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Configuring Controller Configuration Groups](#)
- [Adding or Removing Controllers from a Configuration Group](#)
- [Adding or Removing Templates from the Configuration Group](#)
- [Applying or Scheduling Configuration Groups](#)
- [Auditing Configuration Groups](#)
- [Rebooting Configuration Groups](#)





## Configuring Wireless Technologies

---

- [Chokepoints](#)
- [Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers](#)

### Chokepoints

Chokepoints are low frequency transmitting devices. When a tag passes within range of placed chokepoint, the low-frequency field awakens the tag that in turn sends a message over the Cisco Unified Wireless Network including the chokepoint device ID. The transmitted message includes sensor information (such as temperature and pressure). A chokepoint location system provides room level accuracy (ranging from few inches to 2 feet depending on the vendor).

Chokepoints are installed and configured as recommended by the Chokepoint vendor. After the chokepoint installation is complete and operational, the chokepoint can be entered into the location database and plotted on a the Prime Infrastructure map.

#### Related Topics

- [Adding Chokepoints](#)
- [Editing Chokepoints](#)

### Adding Chokepoints

To add a chokepoint, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless Technologies > Chokepoints**.
  - Step 2** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Chokepoints**, then click **Go**.
  - Step 3** Enter the MAC address and name for the chokepoint.
  - Step 4** Select the check box to indicate that it is an Entry/Exit Chokepoint.
  - Step 5** Enter the coverage range for the chokepoint.  
  
Chokepoint range is a visual representation only. It is product-specific. The actual range must be configured separately using the applicable chokepoint vendor software.
  - Step 6** Click **OK**.

After the chokepoint is added to the database, it can be placed on the appropriate the Prime Infrastructure floor map.

---

## Removing Chokepoints

To remove a chokepoint, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless Technologies > Chokepoints**.
  - Step 2** Select the check box of the chokepoint that you want to delete.
  - Step 3** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Remove Chokepoints**, then click **Go**.
  - Step 4** Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Editing Chokepoints](#)

## Adding Chokepoints to Maps

To add a chokepoint to a map, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Wireless Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Click the link that corresponds to the floor location of the chokepoint.
- Step 3** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Chokepoints**.
- Step 4** Click **Go**.  
The Add Chokepoints summary page lists all recently-added chokepoints that are in the database but not yet mapped.
- Step 5** Select the check box next to the chokepoint that you want to place on the map.
- Step 6** Click **OK**.  
A map appears with a chokepoint icon located in the top-left hand corner. You are now ready to place the chokepoint on the map.
- Step 7** Left-click the chokepoint icon and drag and place it in the proper location. The MAC address, name, and coverage range of the chokepoint appear in the selected chokepoints detail page when you click the chokepoint icon for placement.
- Step 8** Click **Save**.

You are returned to the floor map and the added chokepoint appears on the map.

The newly created chokepoint icon might or might not appear on the map depending on the display settings for that floor.

The rings around the chokepoint icon indicate the coverage area. When a CCX tag and its asset passes within the coverage area, location details are broadcast, and the tag is automatically mapped on the chokepoint coverage circle. When the tag moves out of the chokepoint range, its location is calculated as before and is no longer mapped on the chokepoint rings.

MAC address, name, entry/exit chokepoint, static IP address, and range of the chokepoint display when you pass a mouse over its map icon

**Step 9** If the chokepoint does not appear on the map, select the **Chokepoints** check box located in the Floor Settings menu.

Do not select the **Save Settings** check box unless you want to save this display criteria for all maps.

**Step 10** You must synchronize network design to the mobility services engine or location server to push chokepoint information.

---

## Removing Chokepoints from Maps

To remove an chokepoint from the map, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Maps > Wireless Maps > Site Maps**.

**Step 2** In the Maps page, choose the link that corresponds to the floor location of the chokepoint.

**Step 3** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Remove Chokepoints**.

**Step 4** Click **Go**.

**Step 5** Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.

---

## Editing Chokepoints

To edit a current chokepoint, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless Technologies > Chokepoints**. The following information is displayed for each current chokepoint: MAC address, chokepoint name, entry/exit chokepoint, range, static IP address, and map location for the chokepoint.

**Step 2** Click the chokepoint you want to edit in the MAC Address column.

**Step 3** Edit the following parameters, as necessary:

- Name
- Entry/Exit Chokepoint—Click to enable.
- Range—Coverage range for the chokepoint.

The chokepoint range is product-specific and is supplied by the chokepoint vendor.

- Static IP Address

**Step 4** Click **Save**.

---

## Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers

- [Using Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers to Enhance Tag Location Reporting, page 23-4](#)

- [Adding Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers, page 23-4](#)
- [Editing Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers, page 23-6](#)

## Using Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers to Enhance Tag Location Reporting

The Wi-Fi TDOA receiver is an external system designed to receive signals transmitted from a tagged, tracked asset. These signals are then forwarded to the mobility services engine to aid in the location calculation of the asset. TDOA receivers use the method of Time Difference of Arrival (TDOA) to calculate tag location. This method uses data from a minimum of three TDOA receivers to generate a tagged asset location.



### Note

- If a TDOA receiver is not in use and the partner engine software is resident on the mobility service engine, then the location calculations for tags are generated using RSSI readings from access points.
- The Cisco Tag engine can calculate the tag location using the RSSI readings from access points.

Before using a TDOA receiver within the Cisco Unified Wireless Network, you must perform the following steps:

1. Have a mobility services engine active in the network. See [Adding MSEs to Prime Infrastructure](#) for details on adding a mobility services engine.
2. Add the TDOA receiver to the Prime Infrastructure database and map. See [Adding Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers](#) for details on adding the TDOA receiver to the Prime Infrastructure.
3. Activate or start the partner engine service on the MSE using the Prime Infrastructure.
4. Synchronize the Prime Infrastructure and mobility services engines. See [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and a Mobility Services Engine](#) for details on synchronization.
5. Set up the TDOA receiver using the AeroScout System Manager.

See the *AeroScout Context-Aware Engine for Tags, for Cisco Mobility Services Engine User's Guide* for configuration details at the following URL:

<http://support.aeroscout.com>.

### Related Topics

- [Adding Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers](#)
- [Editing Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers](#)
- [Editing Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers](#)

## Adding Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers

After the Wi-Fi TDOA receiver is installed and configured by the AeroScout System Manager and the partner software is downloaded on the mobility services engine, you are ready to add the TDOA receiver to the mobility services engine database and position it on an Prime Infrastructure map.

After adding TDOA receivers to the Prime Infrastructure maps, you continue to make configuration changes to the TDOA receivers using the AeroScout System Manager application rather than the Prime Infrastructure.

For more details on configuration options, see the *AeroScout Context-Aware Engine for Tags, for Cisco Mobility Services Engine User Guide* at the following URL:  
<http://support.aeroscout.com>.

To add a TDOA receiver to the Prime Infrastructure database and appropriate map, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless Technologies > WiFi TDOA Receivers** to open the All WiFi TDOA Receivers summary page.
- To view or edit current WiFi TDOA receiver details, click the MAC Address link to open the details page.
- Step 2** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add WiFi TDOA Receivers**, then click **Go**.
- Step 3** Enter the MAC address, name and static IP address of the TDOA receiver.
- Step 4** Click **OK** to save the TDOA receiver entry to the database.

After you add the TDOA receiver to the database, you can place the TDOA receiver on the appropriate Prime Infrastructure floor map.

A WiFi TDOA Receiver must be configured separately using the receiver vendor software.

---

#### Related Topic

- [Editing Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers](#)

## Adding Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers to Maps

---

- Step 1** To add the TDOA receiver to a map, choose **Maps > Wireless Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** In the Maps page, select the link that corresponds to the floor location of the TDOA receiver.
- Step 3** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add WiFi TDOA receivers**, then click **Go**.
- Step 4** Select the check box next to each TDOA receiver to add it to the map.
- Step 5** Click **OK**. A map appears with a TDOA receiver icon located in the top-left hand corner. You are now ready to place the TDOA receiver on the map.
- Step 6** Left-click the TDOA receiver icon and drag and place it in the proper location on the floor map.
- The MAC address and name of the TDOA receiver appear in the left pane when you click the TDOA receiver icon for placement.
- Step 7** Click **Save** when the icon is placed correctly on the map. The added TDOA receiver appears on the floor heat map.
- The icon for the newly added TDOA receiver might or might not appear on the map depending on the display settings for that floor.
- Step 8** If the TDOA receiver does not appear on the map, click **Layers** to collapse a selection menu of possible elements to display on the map.
- Step 9** Select the **WiFi TDOA Receivers** check box. The TDOA receiver appears on the map.
- When you place your cursor over a TDOA receiver on a map, configuration details display for that receiver.
- Step 10** Click **X** to close the Layers page.

Do not choose **Save Settings** from the Layers menu unless you want to save this display criteria for all maps.

- Step 11** You can now download the partner engine software to the mobility services engine.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Using Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers to Enhance Tag Location Reporting](#)
- [Editing Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers](#)

## Editing Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers

To view a current TDOA receiver to the Prime Infrastructure database, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless Technologies > WiFi TDOA Receivers** to open the All WiFi TDOA Receivers summary page.
- Step 2** Click the MAC Address link to view the TDOA receiver details including MAC address, name, and static IP address.
- Step 3** Make the necessary changes to the receiver name or IP address, then click **Save** to confirm these changes. A WiFi TDOA Receiver must be configured separately using the receiver vendor software.
- 

## Removing Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers

You can remove one or multiple WiFi TDOA receivers at a time. If you remove a TDOA receiver from a map it remains in the Prime Infrastructure database but is labeled as unassigned.

To delete a TDOA receiver from the Prime Infrastructure, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless Technologies > WiFi TDOA Receivers**.
- Step 2** Select the check box next to each TDOA receiver to be deleted.
- Step 3** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Remove WiFi TDOA Receivers**, then click **Go**.
- Step 4** To confirm TDOA receiver deletion, click **OK** in the dialog box.

In the **All WiFi TDOA Receivers** page, a message confirms the deletion. The deleted TDOA receiver is no longer listed in the page.

---



## Scheduling Configuration Tasks

---

- [Managing AP Template Tasks](#)
- [Viewing WLAN Configuration Scheduled Task Results](#)
- [Managing Software Downloads](#)

### Managing Scheduled Configuration Tasks

The Scheduled Configuration Tasks page allows you to navigate to any templates, configuration tasks, or software download tasks that have been scheduled earlier and provides a filtered view of these tasks. This page displays the summary information about a task. The information includes the template name, last time the task was run, next time the task is scheduled to run, and a link to view the results of previous runs. You can also edit the template, modify the schedule, enable, disable, or delete a scheduled task.

After you create and schedule a configuration template, configuration group, or a software download task, the scheduled task or template is listed in the Scheduled Configuration Tasks page.

You cannot create any new scheduled task or template in this page. You can only edit the scheduled task or template that is already created.

You can modify, enable, disable, or delete the following scheduled configuration tasks:

- AP Template
- Configuration Group
- WLAN Configuration
- Download Software

### Managing AP Template Tasks

The AP Template Tasks page allows you to manage current access point template tasks.

#### Before You Begin

At least one lightweight access point task must exist (see [Creating Lightweight AP Configuration Templates](#)).

To modify a current access point template task:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Scheduled Configuration Task**.

- Step 2** Select the template name of the applicable task.
- Step 3** In the AP Radio/Template page, click the **Apply/Schedule** tab.
- Step 4** Make any necessary changes to the current schedule or access point template, and click **Schedule**.
- 

To enable a current access point template task:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Scheduled Configuration Task**.
- Step 2** Select the check box of the scheduled task to be enabled.
- Step 3** Choose **Enable Schedule** from the **Select a command** drop-down list, then click **Go**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Managing Scheduled Configuration Tasks](#)
- [Managing AP Template Tasks](#)
- [Viewing WLAN Configuration Scheduled Task Results](#)

## Viewing WLAN Configuration Scheduled Task Results

To view and manage all scheduled WLAN tasks in Cisco Prime Infrastructure:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Scheduled Configuration Task**.
- Step 2** From the left sidebar menu, choose **WLAN Configuration**.
- Step 3** Select the Task Name link to open the WLAN Schedule Detail page. In this page, you can modify the date and time of the scheduled task.
- Step 4** Select the check box of the scheduled task and use the **Select a command** drop-down list to enable, disable, or delete selected tasks.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Managing Scheduled Configuration Tasks](#)
- [Managing AP Template Tasks](#)

## Managing Software Downloads

Use this feature to manage the software download tasks.

- [Adding a Download Software Task](#)
- [Modifying a Download Software Task](#)
- [Selecting Controllers for the Download Software Task](#)



## Adding a Download Software Task

To add a download software task:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Scheduled Configuration Task**, then from the left sidebar menu, choose **Download Software**.
- Step 2** Choose **Add Download Software Task** from the **Select a command** drop-down list, then click **Go**.
- Step 3** Configure the following information:
- General
    - Task Name—Enter a Scheduled Task Name to identify this scheduled software download task.
  - Schedule Details
    - Download Type—Select the download type. Select the **Download software to controller** check box to schedule download software to controller or select the **Pre-download software APs** check box to schedule the pre-download software APs. If you select Download software to controller, specify the image details.




---

**Note** The pre-download option is displayed only when all selected controllers are using the Release 7.0.x.x or later.

---

To see Image Predownload status per AP, enable the task in the **Administration > Dashboards > Job Dashboard > System Jobs > Wireless Poller > AP Image Pre-Download Status**, and run an AP Image Predownload report from the Report Launch Pad.

- Reboot Type—Indicates whether the reboot type is manual, automatic, or scheduled.




---

**Note** Reboot Type Automatic can be set only when the **Download software to controller** option is selected.

---

- Download date/time—Enter a date in the provided text box or click the calendar icon to open a calendar from which you can choose a date. Select the time from the hours and minutes drop-down lists.

- Reboot date/time—This option appears only if select the reboot type “Scheduled”. Enter a date in the provided text box or click the calendar icon to open a calendar from which you can choose a date to reboot the controller. Choose the time from the hours and minutes drop-down lists.

Schedule enough time (at least 30 minutes) between Download and Reboot so that all APs can complete the software pre-download.

If any one of the AP is in pre-download progress state at the time of scheduled reboot, the controller does not reboot. In such a case, wait for the pre-download to finish for all of the APs and reboot the controller manually.

- Notification (Optional)—Enter the email address of recipient to send notifications via email.

To receive email notifications, configure Prime Infrastructure mail server in the **Administration > Settings > Mail Server Configuration** page.

- Image Details—Specify the TFTP or FTP Server Information:

Complete these details if you selected the Download software to controller option in Schedule Details area.

TFTP—Specify the TFTP Server Information:

- From the File is Located on drop-down list, choose **Local machine** or **TFTP server**.  
If you choose TFTP server, choose **Default Server** or **add a New server** from the Server Name drop-down list.
- Specify the IP address of the TFTP server. This is automatically populated if the default server is selected.
- Specify the local filename or click **Browse** to navigate to the appropriate file.
- If you selected TFTP server previously, specify the filename.

FTP—Specify the FTP Server Information:

- FTP Credentials Information—Enter the FTP username, password, and port if you selected the FTP radio button.
- From the File is Located on drop-down list, choose **Local machine** or **FTP server**.  
If you choose FTP server, choose **Default Server** or **add a New server** from the Server Name drop-down list.
- Specify the IP address of the FTP server. This is automatically populated if the default server is selected.
- Specify the local filename, or click **Browse** to navigate to the appropriate file.
- If you selected FTP server previously, specify the filename.

**Step 4** Click **Save**.

---

## Modifying a Download Software Task

### Before You Begin

At least one download software task must exist (see [Adding a Download Software Task](#)).

To modify a download software task:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Scheduled Configuration Task**.
  - Step 2** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Download Software**.
  - Step 3** Click the Task Name link to open the Download Software Task page, make any changes, then click **Save**.  
Any changes in Download Type (Download/Pre-download) or Server Type (FTP/TFTP) for the task in *Enabled* state sets the task to *Disabled* state, and all existing controllers are disassociated from the task.
- 

## Selecting Controllers for the Download Software Task

This page lists all the supported controllers that can be selected for the scheduled image download/pre-download task.

To select a controller for scheduled image download:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Scheduled Configuration Task**.

- Step 2** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Download Software**.
- Step 3** Click the Controller to open the Download Software Task details page, then click **Select Controller** to view the controller list.



---

**Note** If the pre-download option is chosen for the task, then only the controllers with software Release 7.0.x.x or later are listed.

---

The Select Controllers page can also be accessed by choosing **Configuration > Scheduled Configuration Task > Download Software**, then clicking the hyperlink in the Select Controller column for any download task that is in the Enabled, Disabled or Expired state.

You cannot download software to any controllers with the Reachability Status of *Unreachable*.

- Step 4** Make any necessary changes, then click **Save**.
-





# Auditing Device Configurations to Ensure Compliance

---

Prime Infrastructure allows you to define device configuration baselines and audit policies so you can find and correct any configuration deviations in your network devices. You can schedule a compliance audit against multiple configuration files and get an audit report that indicates if any configurations deviate from the specified baseline.

To perform a compliance audit against the devices in your network, complete the following steps:

1. Define a compliance policy, which includes rules, conditions, and fixes.
2. Group policies into policy profiles.
3. Run the policy against the specified device(s), either immediately or at a specified time.

Prime Infrastructure compares the device's running configuration, or any show commands, with the content specified in the policy, detects any violations, and creates a report.

4. View the audit compliance report to view and fix any violations.

## Related Topics

- [Prerequisites to Using Compliance Auditing](#)
- [Enabling Compliance Auditing](#)
- [Creating Compliance Policies](#)
- [Grouping Policies into Compliance Profiles](#)
- [Running Compliance Profiles Against Devices](#)
- [Viewing Compliance Audit Results](#)
- [Fixing Compliance Violations on Devices](#)

## Prerequisites to Using Compliance Auditing

The Compliance feature is available only on the following Prime Infrastructure installation options:

- The Professional deployment configuration. See the [System Requirements](#) section in the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Quick Start Guide](#) for more information.
- Prime Infrastructure Physical Appliance (Gen 2, UCS Based).

**Related Topic**

- [Enabling Compliance Auditing](#)

## Enabling Compliance Auditing

By default, the Compliance feature is not enabled.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Settings > System Settings**.
  - Step 2** Select **General > Server**, then under **Compliance Service**, click **Enable**.
  - Step 3** Click **Save**.
  - Step 4** Log out and then log back in to view the **Configuration > Compliance** menu option.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Prerequisites to Using Compliance Auditing](#)
- [Creating Compliance Policies](#)

## Creating Compliance Policies

A compliance policy is a set of CLI commands that define a desired baseline or expected configuration.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Compliance > Policies**.
  - Step 2** Click the **Create Compliance Policy** icon.
  - Step 3** Enter a title and description, then click **Create**.  
You can now create policy rules for the policy.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Prerequisites to Using Compliance Auditing](#)
- [Creating Compliance Policy Rules](#)

## Creating Compliance Policy Rules

After you create a compliance policy, you must specify rules within the policy and define the conditions and the relevant fixes for any violations. Rules are platform-specific. Each policy must contain at least one rule; however, there is no limitation on the number of rules you can define for a policy.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Compliance > Policies**.
  - Step 2** From the left navigation pane, select the policy to which you want to add rules.
  - Step 3** From the work area pane, click **New**. A **New Rule** window opens.

- Step 4** Complete the required information in the **Rule Information, Platform Selection, Rule Inputs and Conditions and Actions** areas. See [Table 25-1](#) for field descriptions. Prime Infrastructure supports all standard Java-based RegEx. See <http://www.regex.com/regex-quickstart.html> for more information.
- Step 5** Click **Create**.
- Step 6** To duplicate an existing rule and add it to a policy, select the rule, then click **Duplicate**.
- Step 7** Enter the appropriate fields, then click **Save**.
- After you complete adding rules to the policy, you must create a profile. See [Creating Compliance Policies](#).

**Table 25-1** Configuration > Compliance > Policies > New Rule Fields

Field	Description
<b>Rule Information</b>	
All information entered in this section is free text and does not impact the conditions and the subsequent violations.	
Rule Title	Enter a name for the rule.
Description	Enter a brief description
Impact	Enter a brief note on the impact of the violation that the rule will generate.
Suggested Fix	Enter a brief description of the fix that will help you decide to choose or to not choose the rule against a specific policy. This description appears when you check the rule in the Rule Selector pane.
<b>Platform Selection</b>	
Available Platforms	Check the platforms on which the condition must be run. If you select Cisco Devices, all of Cisco platforms specified in the list are included. The platforms checked in this section impacts the ignore count of an audit job. For example, if you run a rule on all the devices within your scope, including devices not selected in the Available Platforms pane, such devices are not audited and are marked against Ignore count.

Table 25-1 Configuration &gt; Compliance &gt; Policies &gt; New Rule Fields

Field	Description
<b>Rule Inputs</b>	
New Rule Input	<p>Click <b>New</b> to add inputs for the new rule. The input you create in this pane reflects in the Policy Profile page. You must provide rule inputs for the rule you have selected. For example, you can create an input to be IP Address. Any user who wants to run this rule can enter an IP address specific to the rule and add it to a specific profile. Enter the required details:</p> <p>For Identifier, Enter your own Identifier, or click the <b>Generate</b> button to generate an identifier based on the title.</p> <p>The following fields appear based on the option that you choose in the Data Type field:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Is List of Values—Check this check box to add multiple values to be associated with the rule input. A table appears where you can add, edit, and delete values. You can also set a default value.</li> <li>• Accept Multiple Values—Check this check box if you want to provide more than one value at the time of audit. This is applicable only for the execution type rule input.</li> <li>• Min Value—Enter a minimum integer value for the rule input. This is applicable only for the integer data type.</li> <li>• Max Value—Enter a maximum integer value for the rule input. This is applicable only for the integer data type.</li> <li>• Default Value—Enter a default value for the rule input. The format of the value that you enter in this field depends on the data type that you choose in the Data Type field. For example, if you choose Integer as the data type, you can enter an integer value only.</li> <li>• Max Length—Enter the maximum length that is applicable for the rule input.</li> <li>• Val RegExp—Enter a valid regular expression that will be used for execution or fix.</li> </ul>
<b>Conditions and Actions</b>	
New Conditions and Actions	Click <b>New</b> to create conditions and actions for the new rule.
<b>New Conditions and Actions—Conditions Details Tab</b>	



**Table 25-1 Configuration > Compliance > Policies > New Rule Fields**

Field	Description
Condition Scope Details	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Condition Scope—Select the scope of the conditions from one of the below: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Configuration—Checks the complete running configuration.</li> <li>– Device Command Outputs—Checks the output of show commands.</li> <li>– Device Properties—Checks against the device properties and not the running configuration.</li> <li>– Previously Matched Blocks—Runs the conditions against blocks that have been defined in previous conditions. To run the condition with this option, you must have checked Parse as Block option in one of the previous conditions. You cannot select this option for the first condition of a rule.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Device Property—Select one of the following device properties: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device Name</li> <li>– IP Address</li> <li>– OS Name</li> <li>– OS Version</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is enabled only if you selected Device Properties in the Condition Scope drop-down list.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Show Commands—Select the required show command that is applicable for the platform selected. You can also enter a show command against which the audit must be performed.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is enabled only if you selected Device Command Outputs in the Condition Scope drop-down list.</p>
<b>Block Options</b>	
Parse as Blocks	Checking this option enables you to run conditions on specific blocks (as defined in this section) in running configuration files. This option can be for show commands is enabled only if you selected Configuration in the Condition Scope option.
Block Start Expression	This field is mandatory if Parse as Blocks option is enabled. This must be a regular expression. Rule inputs and Grep outputs can be used here.
Block End Expression	This field is optional. By default, blocks end when the top-level or a sub-level command begins. If you prefer to break the block earlier, enter the value as a regular expression.
Rule Pass Criteria	Check the option, as required. If you select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All Sub Blocks—The rule is marked a success only if all the blocks fulfill the specified condition.</li> <li>• Any Sub Block—The rule is marked a success even if one of the sub blocks fulfill the condition.</li> <li>• Raise One Violation for Each Failing Instance—If you check this option, the violation count specified in the Job view increases by as many number of violations as the condition encounters in each block.</li> </ul>
<b>Condition Match Criteria</b>	
Operator	Choose an option based on the value you will enter in the subsequent fields.
Operator Function	Click Edit. The Select Operator Function page appears. Select a predefined function and enter the function parameters based on the predefined function that you have selected. <p><b>Note</b> This field is available only if you selected the option, Execute a Function from the Operator field.</p>

Table 25-1 Configuration &gt; Compliance &gt; Policies &gt; New Rule Fields

Field	Description
Value	The value must be a regular expression. Rule inputs and Grep outputs can be used here. This variable can be grepped for use in the subsequent conditions. It follows the convention of condition <number.value number> such as, <2.1> <2.2>... This numerical identifier can be used from the next condition as input parameter for Operator selected in the previous field.
Rule Pass Criteria	Check the option, as required. If you select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All Sub Blocks—The rule is marked a success only if all the blocks fulfill the specified condition.</li> <li>Any Sub Block—The rule is marked a success even if one of the sub blocks fulfill the condition.</li> <li>Raise One Violation for Each Failing Instance—If you check this option, the violation count specified in the Job view increases by as many number of violations as the condition encounters in each block.</li> </ul>
<b>New Conditions and Actions—Action Details Tab</b>	
Select Action	Select one of the following actions that Compliance Audit must perform upon detecting a violation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Continue—If the condition is met or not met, the rule continues to run based on the condition number specified in the field. If a condition number is not specified, the rule skips to the next immediate condition.</li> <li>Does Not Raise a Violation—Does not raise a violation; stops further execution of rule.</li> <li>Raise a Violation—Raises a violation and stops further execution of rule.</li> <li>Raise a Violation and Continue—Raises a violation and continues execution of rule.</li> </ul>
Condition Number	Specify the condition number to which the rule must continue with in case the condition is met or is not met. You cannot specify a condition number that is lesser than or equal to the current condition number. This field is available only if you selected the option Continue from the Select Action field. If the Condition Number field is blank, the next available condition is used.
Violation Severity	Specify a severity that Compliance Audit must flag if a violation is detected. This field is available only if you selected the option, Raise a Violation from the Select Action field.
Violation Message Type	Select one of the following message type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default Violation Message—Select this option if you determine a violation as not fixable (or requiring manual intervention).</li> <li>User defined Violation Message—Select this option to enter a comment and provide a CLI fix to fix a violation.</li> </ul> <p>This field is available only if you selected the option, Raise a Violation from the Select Action field.</p>
Violation Message	<b>Note</b> This field is available only if you selected User defined Violation Message in the Violation Message Type field. <p>Enter a violation message that will be displayed in the Job View window. Rule inputs can be used here.</p>

Table 25-1 Configuration &gt; Compliance &gt; Policies &gt; New Rule Fields

Field	Description
Fix CLI	<p><b>Note</b> This field is available only if you selected User defined Violation Message in the Violation Message Type field.</p> <p>Enter a relevant CLI fix if the device does not meet the condition specified. Do not enter <b>config t</b>, <b>configure</b>, and its <b>exit</b> commands. Rule inputs and Grep outputs can be used here.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The <b>exit</b> command is allowed in main and sub-level commands.</p> <p>Following are the formats for the CLI fix that you enter in this field:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For an execution type input, enter &lt;Rule input ID&gt;</li> <li>• For a fix type input, enter ^&lt;Rule input ID&gt;^</li> <li>• For a grep type output, enter &lt;n.m&gt;, where n is the condition number and m is the output number.</li> </ul>

## Importing and Exporting Policies

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Compliance > Policies**.
- Step 2** From the left navigation pane, select the policy which needs to be imported or exported.
- Step 3** To export policy—Hover the mouse over the required policy and click **Export Policy as XML** and click **Save**.
- Step 4** To import policy—In the left navigation pane, hover the mouse over the **Import Policy as XML** icon and click. Click **Choose Files** and click **Import**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Prerequisites to Using Compliance Auditing](#)
- [Creating Compliance Policies](#)
- [Configuration > Compliance > Policies](#)

## Sample Compliance Policy Rules

The following sections contain sample compliance policies and the rules contained in each of them.

### DNS Servers Configured on Device

This compliance policy checks if either **IP name-server 1.2.3.4** or **IP name-server 2.3.4.5** is configured on the device, and raises a violation if neither of them are configured.

You must enter the following settings in the appropriate fields of the **Configuration > Compliance > Policies > New Rule** form.

Field	Value
Condition Scope Details	Configuration
Block Options (optional)	

Field	Value
Operator	Matches the expression
Value	ip name-server (1.2.3.4 2.3.4.5)\$
Match Action	Do not raise a violation and exit this rule
Does Not Match Action	Raise a violation and exit this rule
Violation Text	DNS Server must be configured as either 1.2.3.4 or 2.3.4.5.

### NTP Server Redundancy

This compliance policy checks if the command **ntp server** appears at least twice on the device.

You must enter the following settings in the appropriate fields of the **Configuration > Compliance > Policies > New Rule** form.

Field	Value
Condition Scope Details	Configuration
Operator	Matches the expression
Value	(ntp server.*\n){2,}
Match Action	Continue
Does Not Match Action	Raise a violation and exit this rule
Violation Text	At least two NTP servers must be configured.

### Community Strings

This compliance policy checks if either **snmp-server community public** or **snmp-server community private** is configured on the device. If configured, Prime Infrastructure raises a violation.

You must enter the following settings in the appropriate fields of the **Configuration > Compliance > Policies > New Rule** form.

Field	Value
Condition Scope Details	Configuration
Operator	Matches the expression
Value	snmp-server community (public private)
Match Action	Raise a violation and exit this rule.
Does Not Match Action	Continue
Violation Text	Community string <I.I> configured.  In the violation text, <I.I> is replaced with the actual community string configured on the device at runtime. In this example, <I.I> indicates the first captured group in the current condition.

### IOS Software Version

This compliance policy checks if Cisco IOS software version 15.0(2)SE7 is installed on a device.

You must enter the following settings in the appropriate fields of the **Configuration > Compliance > Policies > New Rule** forms.

Field	Value
Condition Scope Details	Device Command Outputs
Show Commands	show version
Operator	contains the string
Value	15.0(2)SE7
Match Action	Continue
Does Not Match Action	Raise a Violation
Violation Text	Output of show version must contain the string '15.1(1)SY2'.

## Policy Group Details

Table 25-2 describes the policy group details.

**Table 25-2** List of Policy Groups

Policy Group Name	Policies
AAA Services	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• AAA</li> <li>• AAA Accounting—Connections</li> <li>• AAA Accounting—Exec</li> <li>• AAA Accounting—Network</li> <li>• AAA Accounting—System</li> <li>• AAA Authentication—Enable</li> <li>• AAA Authentication—Login</li> <li>• AAA Authorization—Configuration</li> <li>• AAA Authorization—Exec</li> <li>• AAA Authorization—Network</li> </ul>
Audit and Management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Banners</li> <li>• Console Access</li> <li>• DHCP</li> <li>• Domain Name</li> <li>• Host Name</li> <li>• Logging and Syslog</li> <li>• Terminal Access</li> <li>• User Passwords</li> </ul>

**Table 25-2** *List of Policy Groups (continued)*

<b>Policy Group Name</b>	<b>Policies</b>
Global Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ACLs</li> <li>• CDP</li> <li>• Clock</li> <li>• FTP</li> <li>• NTP Configuration</li> <li>• Traceroute</li> </ul>
Network Access Services	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Loopback Interfaces</li> <li>• Remote Commands</li> </ul>
Network Protocols	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Control Plane Policing</li> <li>• Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP)</li> <li>• ICMP</li> <li>• Miscellaneous Services</li> <li>• Routing and Forwarding</li> <li>• TCP Parameters</li> </ul>
Others	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Device Version Checks</li> </ul>
Routing Protocols	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• BGP</li> <li>• EIGRP</li> <li>• OSPF</li> <li>• RIP</li> </ul>
Security	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ACL on Interfaces</li> <li>• Distributed DoS Attacks</li> <li>• Firewall Traffic Rules</li> <li>• Land Attack</li> <li>• Martian Traffic</li> <li>• Null (Black Hole) Routing</li> <li>• Risky Traffic</li> <li>• SMURF Attack</li> <li>• Traffic Rules</li> </ul>

**Table 25-2** List of Policy Groups (continued)

Policy Group Name	Policies
Switching	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DHCP Snooping</li> <li>• Dynamic Trunking Protocol</li> <li>• IEEE 802.1x Port-Based Authentication</li> <li>• IEEE 802.3 Flow Control</li> <li>• IP Phone + Host Ports</li> <li>• IP Phone Ports</li> <li>• Management VLAN</li> <li>• Port Security</li> <li>• Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)</li> <li>• Unidirectional Link Detection (UDLD)</li> <li>• Unused Ports</li> <li>• VLAN 1</li> </ul>
Compliance Policies	All user-defined policies are listed under this policy group.

## Grouping Policies into Compliance Profiles

After you have created compliance policies, you can create a policy profile that contains a set of policies.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Compliance > Profiles**.
- Step 2** From the Compliance Policy Selector, click **Add**. The default system-defined policy groups and any policy groups you create appear.
- Step 3** Choose the required policies.
- Step 4** Select the rules and inputs within the selected policies for which you want to audit the devices. If applicable, enter values for rule inputs. The option to enter rule inputs is available only if you entered input parameters when you created a new rule in Policies page.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Running Compliance Profiles Against Devices](#)
- [Viewing Compliance Audit Results](#)
- [Prerequisites to Using Compliance Auditing](#)
- [Viewing Violation Summary Details](#)

# Running Compliance Profiles Against Devices

After you create a compliance profile, you choose the devices on which to run it. Prime Infrastructure creates a job with the name of the compliance profile.

- 
- Step 1** After you create a compliance profile, click the **Run Compliance Audit** icon.
- Step 2** Select the devices which you wish to audit. Click **Next**.
- Step 3** In the Schedule Audit page, enter the schedule details. In the Choose Configuration option, select one of the following:
- Use Latest Archived Configuration—If you choose this option, Prime Infrastructure uses the latest backup configuration in the archive. If the backup configuration is not available, the device is not audited and is marked against non-audited devices.
  - Use Current Device Configuration—Prime Infrastructure polls for the latest configuration from the device and then performs the audit. If a Show command is used in the compliance policy, the output of the Show command is taken from the current device configuration.
- Step 4** Click **Audit**. An audit job is scheduled. To view the status of the audit job, choose **Configuration > Compliance > Jobs**.
- 

## Related Topics

- [Creating Compliance Policies](#)
- [Grouping Policies into Compliance Profiles](#)
- [Viewing Compliance Audit Results](#)
- [Viewing Violation Summary Details](#)

# Viewing Compliance Audit Results

Choose **Configuration > Compliance > Jobs** to view the status of scheduled jobs and view any violations. There might be several different compliance policies running on a single device.

After a job is created, you can set the following preferences for the job:

- Pause Series—Can be applied only on jobs that are scheduled in the future. You cannot suspend a job that is running.
- Resume Series—Can be applied only on jobs that have been suspended.
- Edit Schedule—Reschedule a job that has been scheduled for a different time.

The Last Run Result column indicates the result of the compliance job as described in [Table 25-3](#).

**Table 25-3** Compliance Job Result Descriptions

Last Run Result Value	Description
Failure	One or more devices audited have a violation in the policies specified in the profile.



**Table 25-3 Compliance Job Result Descriptions**

Last Run Result Value	Description
Partial Success	The compliance job contains a mix of both audited and non-audited devices, and the compliance status of audited devices is successful.
Success	All devices audited conform to the policies specified in the profile.

To view the details of a job, click the hyperlinked result displayed against each job.

#### Related Topics

- [Fixing Compliance Violations on Devices](#)
- [Viewing Violation Summary Details](#)

### Configuration > Compliance > Jobs

[Table 25-4](#) displays the information about the audited/non-audited devices, rules that you selected for the compliance audit, compliance state, violation count, instance count, highest severity and ignore count.

**Table 25-4 Configuration > Compliance > Jobs Details and Violations Summary Fields**

Field	Description
Audited/Non-Audited Devices	This displays the number of audited and non-audited devices. For more details on devices, click the hyperlinked count of audited and non-audited devices. The device name and audit status are displayed when you click the hyperlinked count of audited devices. Non-audited devices include the count of the following. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The devices that were within the scope of the user while scheduling the job, but has since changed. At the time job ran, these devices were not within the scope of the user.</li> <li>• The devices that were down or were not reachable when the job ran.</li> <li>• CPT device not in IOS mode. These devices are not audited because they do not contain running configuration, which is required for Compliance Manager.</li> <li>• Third Party Devices.</li> <li>• Device not in sync with Compliance server—that is, the device element type is not available in the Compliance server.</li> </ul>
Selected Rules	Number of rules selected in a policy at the time the policy profile was created. This may be subset of the total number of rules defined for the policy.
Compliance State	Displays Pass or Fail. All rules in policy for all devices must confirm for the state to display Pass.
Violation Count	This lists the number of distinct violations (for a particular policy, for the number of devices) that were observed in each job. For example, if a particular policy is violated in 100 devices, the violation count is only 1.
Instance Count	Summation of the violation count for all the device. For example, if a particular policy is violated in 100 devices, the instance count is 100.

Table 25-4 Configuration &gt; Compliance &gt; Jobs Details and Violations Summary Fields (continued)

Field	Description
Highest Severity	The highest severity of the various rules comprising the policy. The highest (as decided at the time of creating rules) is shown. This overrides the lower severity items.
Ignore Count	This is the count of rules ignored due to devices falling outside the scope of platforms defined against the rule.

## Fixing Compliance Violations on Devices

Prime Infrastructure allows you to fix any compliance violations that appear on devices.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Compliance > Jobs**, then click the **Audit Jobs** tab to view the status of the jobs.
- Step 2** Click **Failure** under the Last Run Result column for any job in which compliance violations were found. Prime Infrastructure displays the status of all policies that were run as part of the compliance audit.
- The Ignore Count column indicates the number of devices for which the specified policy is not applicable and therefore, was not validated against.
- Step 3** Click **Next** to view the devices on which the compliance violation appears.
- Step 4** Click the down arrow to expand the device name to view the policy for which there is a violation. When a device's configuration contains a compliance violation, a check box appears when:
- There is an available CLI fix for the device.
  - There is no job currently running to fix the violation.
- Step 5** Select the box next to the policy for which you have defined and want to apply a fix, then click **Next**.
- Step 6** Preview the fix commands that were previously defined in the policy, then click **Next**.
- Step 7** Select the schedule for applying the configuration changes to the device, then click **Schedule Fix Job**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Creating Compliance Policies](#)
- [Grouping Policies into Compliance Profiles](#)
- [Viewing Compliance Audit Results](#)
- [Viewing Violation Summary Details](#)

## Viewing Violation Summary Details

You can run a report to display the violation summarized details for all the audit jobs that failed. To generate the report, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Compliance > Jobs**, then click the **Violation Summary** tab.
- Step 2** The report displays the summarized details of the job failure.

**Step 3** You can download the reports in PDF and CSV formats.

---

## Viewing Device Security Vulnerabilities

You can run a report to determine if any devices in your network have security vulnerabilities as defined by the Cisco Product Security Incident Response Team (PSIRT). You can also view documentation about the specific vulnerability that describes the impact of a vulnerability and any potential steps needed to protect your environment.

---

**Step 1** Choose **Reports > PSIRT and EoX**.

**Step 2** You need to sync the devices prior to scheduling the job. Choose **Configuration > Network Devices > Select all Devices**. Click **Sync**.

**Step 3** Click **Schedule Job**. A job is created in which Device PSIRT, Device Hardware EOX, Device Software EOX, and Field Note information is gathered and reported. You do not create separate jobs on each of the tabs.

**Step 4** Click **View Job Details** to view the current status of the PSIRT report. On completion of the job, you can see **COMPLETED\_WITH\_SUCCESS** as the operation status with the execution log details.

**Step 5** Click the **Device PSIRT** tab to view PSIRT information.

**Step 6** In the PSIRT Title column, click the hyperlink to view the full description of the security vulnerability.

**Step 7** You can download the PSIRT report in PDF and CSV formats.

---

## Viewing End-of-Life Reports

You can run a report to determine if any Cisco device hardware or software in your network have reached its end of life (EOX). This can help you determine product upgrade and substitution options.

---

**Step 1** Choose **Reports > PSIRT and EoX**.

**Step 2** Click **Schedule Job**. A job is created in which Device PSIRT, Device Hardware EOX, Device Software EOX, and Field Note information is gathered and reported. You do not create separate jobs on each of the tabs.

**Step 3** After the job completes, click one of the following EOX tabs to view the report information specific to that tab:

- Device Hardware EOX
  - Device Software EOX
-

## Viewing Field Notices for Devices

You can run a report to determine if any Cisco devices that are managed and have completed a full inventory collection have any field notices. Field Notices are notifications that are published for significant issues, other than security vulnerability-related issues, that directly involve Cisco products and typically require an upgrade, workaround, or other customer action.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Reports > PSIRT and EoX**.
  - Step 2** Click **Schedule Job**. A job is created in which Device PSIRT, Device Hardware EOX, Device Software EOX, *and* Field Note information is gathered and reported. You do not create separate jobs on each of the tabs.
  - Step 3** Click the **Field Notice** tab to view field notice information.
  - Step 4** Click on the hyperlink in the Field Notice Name column to view more information on cisco.com.
-



## Configuring Plug and Play

---

Prime Infrastructure helps automate the deployment of new devices on the network by obtaining and applying the necessary software image and configuration on a new network device. Using features such as Cisco Network Services (CNS) call-home, APIC-EM (Application Policy Infrastructure Controller) call-home and Cisco IOS auto-install (which uses DHCP and TFTP), Prime Infrastructure reduces the time a new device takes to join the network and become functional.

The Plug and Play feature of Prime Infrastructure allows you to create templates to define features and configurations that you can reuse and apply to new devices. You can streamline new device deployment by creating bootstrap templates, which define the necessary initial configuration, to communicate with Prime Infrastructure. You can specify (and *predeploy*) software images and configurations that will be added to the devices in the future.

### Plug and Play Workflow

Prime Infrastructure allows you to perform an initial provisioning of a software image and configuration on a new device. To automate the deployment of a new device on your network, follow this workflow:

1. Specify which of the following servers Prime Infrastructure uses for Plug and Play:
  - CNS gateway—You use the CNS gateway that is bundled with Prime Infrastructure by default, or use an external CNS gateway.
  - APIC-EM—You can specify that Prime Infrastructure uses APIC-EM for Plug and Play. See [Integrating APIC-EM with Prime Infrastructure](#) for information about setting up APIC-EM.
2. Create a Plug and Play profile for your devices. See [Plug and Play Profiles](#).
3. Power on the device.
4. Apply a bootstrap configuration to the device. The bootstrap configuration is a minimal configuration that is required for devices to establish a connection to the Prime Infrastructure gateway (CNS or APIC-EM). See [Bootstrap Configuration](#).

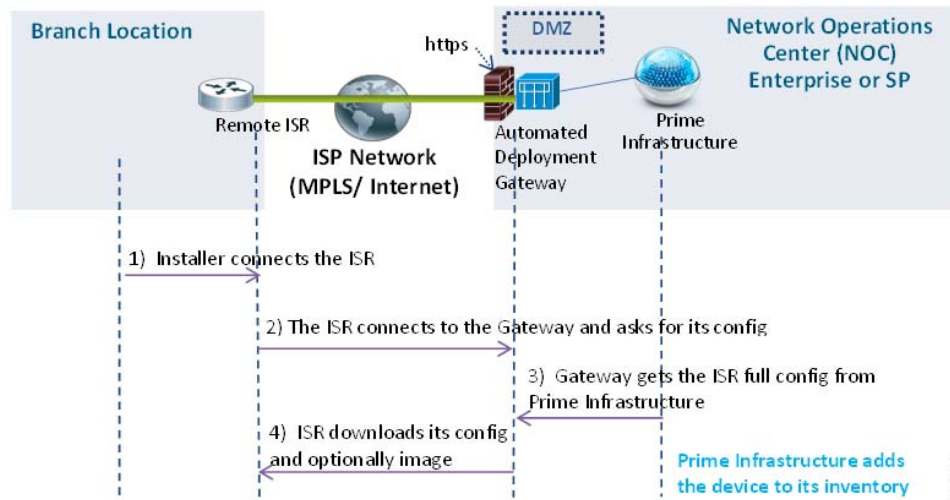
After you apply the bootstrap configuration:

1. The device uses the call-home agent capability to connect to the server you configured (either CNS or APIC-EM).
2. The Plug and Play Profile deployment is initiated.
3. The Prime Infrastructure server receives the Device Plug and Play ID / serial number of the new device and verifies if this matches with the device ID in any of the Plug and Play preprovisioning definitions. If there is no match for the device ID, Prime Infrastructure matches the device type with any of the existing type-based Plug and Play preprovisioning definitions.

- If there is a match, Prime Infrastructure applies the software image and the configuration specified in the matched Plug and Play profile on the device and adds the device to its inventory.

After the bootstrap configuration is applied to the device, the installer connects the device to a WAN at the remote site. The device connects to the Plug and Play gateway using its serial number, and downloads the full configuration and (optional) Cisco IOS image (see [Figure 26-1](#)).

**Figure 26-1 Plug and Play Branch Deployment**



#### Related Topics

- [Exporting the Bootstrap Configuration](#)
- [Integrating APIC-EM with Prime Infrastructure](#)

## APIC-EM and Plug and Play

You can specify to have Prime Infrastructure use the APIC-EM for Plug and Play. You must preconfigure a profile which determines what is deployed on the devices (configurations, images, PKI certificates, etc.). When the device calls home, based on the device's serial number, the profile is matched and the device is provisioned with the same pre-configured image and configuration (including the PKI certificate) from Prime Infrastructure using APIC-EM's Plug and Play and PKI services.

With APIC-EM Plug and Play integration, devices can be provisioned with http/https. When the profile is created, you can also choose to install PKI certificates on the device to use PKI based authentication.

#### Related Topics

- [Integrating APIC-EM with Prime Infrastructure](#)
- [Bootstrap Configuration](#)

## Integrating APIC-EM with Prime Infrastructure

Prime Infrastructure communicates with APIC-EM via HTTPs and REST API's exposed by APIC-EM. To integrate APIC-EM controller to Prime Infrastructure, follow these steps:.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Servers > APIC-EM Controller**.
- Step 2** Enter the APIC-EM controller IPv4 address.
- Step 3** Enter the HTTPS port number to connect with APIC-EM.
- Step 4** Enter your user name.
- Step 5** Enter your password and confirm it.

The polling interval is not editable. The APIC-EM controller is polled periodically (every 5 minutes) to check the status of its connection / integration with Prime Infrastructure.

After the APIC-EM controller is added to Prime Infrastructure, you can view the reachability status of the APIC controller in same page. You can select a specific APIC-EM controller to view the history of the connection polling status. Make sure the APIC-EM connection is successful before using the service.

The global option in **Administration > Servers > APIC-EM Controller > Global PnP/ZTD Settings** is automatically set to APIC-EM when you add a valid APIC-EM controller into Prime Infrastructure.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Plug and Play Profiles](#)
- [Using PKI with IWAN-DMVPN Service](#)

## Plug and Play Profiles

Prime Infrastructure helps you create a Plug and Play Profile that allows any newly connected device to “call home” to the Prime Infrastructure server so that the device can be discovered, added to the inventory, and configured. This profile, also known as a Bootstrap Profile, places credentials on the device, eliminating the need to “console” into every device to setup before the device can be managed by Prime Infrastructure.

You can create Plug and Play profiles that contain:

- Software images only.
- Configurations only.
- Both software images and configurations.
- PKI certificates (For APIC-EM only.)

#### Related Topic

- [Creating Plug and Play Profiles](#)

## Creating Plug and Play Profiles

A Plug and Play profile must have *at least one* of the following:

- A bootstrap configuration—Prime Infrastructure provides a standard bootstrap configuration, or you can create your own. See [Bootstrap Configuration](#).
- Software image—See [Importing Software Images for Plug and Play Profiles](#).
- Configuration CLI template—See [Creating CLI Templates](#).

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Plug and Play > PnP Profiles**, then click **Add**.
- Step 2** Provide the required information.
- Step 3** Click **Save as New Plug and Play Profile**.
- Step 4** (Optional) If you selected APIC-EM for Plug and Play, in the Profile Detail section, check the **Enable PKI** check box to provision devices with PKI certificates. PKI certificates are installed on the device after the Image provision and configuration are complete. See [Cisco Open Plug-n-Play Agent Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Release 3E](#) for more information.
- This option is available for users who have selected APIC-EM as the Plug and Play server. You cannot select this option if you selected CNS as the Plug and Play server.
- If the **Enable PKI** check box is unchecked, the device is not provisioned with PKI certificates.
- Step 5** From the **Bootstrap Template** drop-down list, select the bootstrap templates. You can also create a customized bootstrap template, but you must use the same tag names as specified in the standard bootstrap configuration provided by Prime Infrastructure.
- Step 6** (Optional) From the **Software Image** drop-down list, select the required software images. This step is required only if you want to provision the device with images. See [Importing Software Images for Plug and Play Profiles](#).
- The **Image Location** text box is disabled if you selected APIC-EM for Plug and Play.
- Step 7** (Optional) From the **Configuration Template** drop-down list, select a previously created configuration template.
- Step 8** Click on **Device Details for Profile**.
- Step 9** Click **Add** to add details for the devices for which you want to pre-provision the Plug and Play Profile. See [Importing Device Profiles into Plug and Play Profiles](#) for importing device information in bulk.
- Step 10** After completing the required fields, click **OK**.

After you save the profile, the same configurations are added to the Plug and Play server you selected (either CNS or APIC-EM). The bootstrap configuration is for the devices to reach the Plug and Play server. When the device calls home, it discovers either the CNS or APIC-EM IP address and based on the device type (CNS only) and/or serial number (for CNS and APIC-EM), the profile is matched and the device gets provisioned based on the parameters defined in the Plug and Play profile.

After the device is provisioned successfully, the device is added to the Prime Infrastructure inventory so that the device can be managed. The device is added to the Prime Infrastructure inventory based on the management parameters provided in the Plug and Play Profile. If there is a mismatch in credentials, the device is added to the inventory, but it will not have “Managed” status.

---

#### Related Topic

- [Plug and Play Profile Field Descriptions](#)
- [Importing Device Profiles into Plug and Play Profiles](#)
- [Deploying Plug and Play Profiles](#)
- [Cisco Open Plug-n-Play Agent Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Release 3E](#)

## Importing Software Images for Plug and Play Profiles

You can import a software image to include it as part of a Plug and Play profile.



- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Software Images**.
- Step 2** Click **Import**, then specify the source from which the software image is to be imported.
- Step 3** Specify the collection options and when to import the image file. You can run the job immediately or schedule it to run at a later time.
- The image import job will run only once.
- Step 4** Click **Submit**.
- Step 5** To view the details of image management job, choose **Administration > Dashboards > Job Dashboard**.
- 

## Importing Device Profiles into Plug and Play Profiles

You can import device profiles in bulk from a spreadsheet that lists all of your devices and their attributes. Instead of adding devices and specifying their attributes one at a time, you can import a CSV file that includes all the devices and their attributes.

Prime Infrastructure provides a sample CSV which you can export, enter the required values, and then import back into Prime Infrastructure.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Plug and Play > PnP Profiles**.
- Step 2** Select the device profile from the list and click **Left Shift** and select **Export** from the drop down list.
- The csv file with the device properties will be exported. You can add devices or edit the properties of the existing devices in the spreadsheet. A blank csv file will be exported if there are no device profiles found in the deploy page.



**Note** Do not change the attribute names while editing the spreadsheet.

---

- Step 3** Click **Import** and choose the CSV file in which you entered the device details.
- All the devices in the spreadsheet are imported.
- 

## Deploying Plug and Play Profiles

To deploy a Plug and Play profile based on the device ID:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Plug and Play > PnP Profiles**.
- Step 2** In the Plug and Play Profiles page, select a profile and click **Device details for Profile**.
- Step 3** In the Device Provisioning Profiles page, click **Add**.
- One profile can have multiple provisioning settings that can be applied for different devices.
- Step 4** Provide the required information.

**Step 5** Click **OK**, then click **Close**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Plug and Play Profile Field Descriptions](#)
- [Exporting the Bootstrap Configuration](#)

## Deployment Based on Device Type

If you are using a CNS gateway only for Plug and Play, to deploy a Plug and Play profile based on the device type, you do not have to associate the device ID with the deployment profile. Device type-based deployment is useful primarily for switches that use the same set of images and configurations. Matching profiles are identified by the device type (PID) of the incoming device that is specified in the profile during the design phase.

During device type-based deployment:

1. The device type is matched hierarchically; Prime Infrastructure searches for a profile with the same device type as that of the incoming device. If the profile does not match the device type, Prime Infrastructure searches for a profile that is defined for a higher level of the device type in the hierarchy.

For example:

- If the 'switch\_profile' in Prime Infrastructure is defined for 'Switches and Hubs' and the incoming device is of type Switches and Hubs > Catalyst 2928 Series Switches > Catalyst 2928-24TC-C switch, and
  - If there is no profile defined specifically for this switch (Catalyst 2928-24TC-C or Catalyst 2928 Series Switches), then the 'switch\_profile' is considered for deployment.
2. If Prime Infrastructure has multiple matching deployment profiles for a given device type, then Prime Infrastructure chooses the deployment profile that is created or has been recently updated.

## Deleting Plug and Play Profiles

If you are using APIC-EM for Plug and Play, you might need to delete a plug and play profile that is incorrect or outdated.

---

- Step 1** Execute the following command from the router CLI to remove the Plug and Play profile from the router:
- ```
no pnp profile plug_and_play_profile_name
```
- Step 2** From Prime Infrastructure, choose **Configuration > Plug and Play > PnP Status**, select the Plug and Play profile you want to delete, then click **Delete**.
- Step 3** Delete the provisioning profile by choosing **Configuration > Plug and Play > PnP Profiles**, select a Plug and Play profile, click **Device Details**, then delete the provisioning profile.
- Step 4** Choose **Configuration > Plug and Play > PnP Profiles**, select the Plug and Play profile you want to delete, then click **Delete**.
-

# Bootstrap Configuration

A bootstrap configuration is a minimal configuration that is required for devices to establish a connection to the Prime Infrastructure gateway (CNS or APIC-EM). Prime Infrastructure provides a standard bootstrap configuration that you can use.

If you are using the DCHP option, you do not need to create a bootstrap configuration. See [Using DHCP to Export Bootstrap Configurations](#).

You can also use the **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > CLI Templates > System Templates-CLI > Plug And Play Bootstrap** to create a customized bootstrap template.

The bootstrap configurations that Prime Infrastructure provides have the following content:

- CNS HTTP Bootstrap

```
ip host OVA-VM-176 10.104.118.176
cns trusted-server all-agents OVA-VM-176
cns trusted-server all-agents 10.104.118.176
cns id Hardware-Serial
cns id Hardware-Serial event
cns id Hardware-Serial image
cns event OVA-VM-176 encrypt keepalive 120 2 reconnect-time 300
cns exec encrypt 443
cns image server https://OVA-VM-176:443/cns/HttpMsgDispatcher status
https://OVA-VM-176:443/cns/HttpMsgDispatcher
cns config partial OVA-VM-176 encrypt 443
cns config initial OVA-VM-176 encrypt 443
```

- APIC-EM HTTP Bootstrap

```
pnpprofile network-pnp
transport http ipv4 <APIC-EM server IP>
```

- APIC-EM HTTPS Bootstrap

```
crypto ca trustpoint <APIC-EM Server IP>.cisco.com
enrollment mode ra
enrollment terminal
usage ssl-client
exit
crypto ca authenticate <APIC-EM Server IP>.cisco.com
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
Certificate detail
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
pnpprofile network-pnp
transport https ipv4 <APIC-EM Server IP> port 443
!
```

After you create a deployment profile and export it, you can download this certificate directly from Prime Infrastructure. If executing the bootstrap in a device, only the last two commands are required because the APIC-EM server will install certificates directly on the device.

## Methods of Installing Bootstrap Configurations

A bootstrap configuration is a minimal configuration that is required for devices to establish a connection to the Prime Infrastructure gateway (CNS or APIC-EM). The bootstrap configuration can be installed on the devices using any of the bootstrap delivery methods that Prime Infrastructure supports:

- Export and download the bootstrap—If you have access to the device console, you can export the bootstrap, and then copy and paste the bootstrap configuration to the device. See [Exporting the Bootstrap Configuration](#).
- Export and save the bootstrap to a USB flash drive—You can save the bootstrap configuration to a USB drive with the file name *ciscotr.cfg*. Connect the USB drive to the device, and then boot the device. The device will retrieve the bootstrap configuration from the USB drive. See [Exporting the Bootstrap Configuration](#).
- Email the bootstrap. See [Emailing the Bootstrap Configuration](#).
- DHCP options based on the server you specified. See [Using DHCP to Export Bootstrap Configurations](#).
  - For CNS gateway—DHCP option 150
  - For APIC-EM—DHCP option 43. You can configure option 43 on the APIC-EM server IP under DHCP Configuration. When a device gets its IP address from DHCP, it will get the bootstrap configuration also.
- Mobile application—You can use the Cisco Network Plug and Play mobile application.

## Exporting the Bootstrap Configuration

You can export a bootstrap configuration and then manually apply the bootstrap on the device. After the bootstrap configuration is applied, the Plug and Play deployment is initiated and the administrator can view the configuration status on Prime Infrastructure.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Plug and Play > PnP Profiles**.
  - Step 2** From the Plug and Play Profiles page, select a profile from the list.
  - Step 3** Click **Device Details for Profile**.
  - Step 4** Click **Export Bootstrap > Download Bootstrap**, then click **OK**.
  - Step 5** After the bootstrap configuration is downloaded and applied, the Plug and Play deployment is initiated. To check on the status, choose **Configuration > Plug and Play > PnP Status**.
- 

### Related Topic

- [Plug and Play Profile Field Descriptions](#)

## Exporting the Bootstrap Configuration Using TFTP

If you are using a CNS gateway only for Plug and Play, you can use the TFTP protocol to deliver the bootstrap configuration to the Prime Infrastructure TFTP server. You can specify the file name that should be created on the TFTP server; this file is used by the auto-install enabled devices to get the IP address and other Prime Infrastructure details through the DHCP. In the DHCP server, the TFTP server must be configured as the Prime Infrastructure TFTP server. For more information, please see [Cisco Open Plug-n-Play Agent Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Release 3E](#).

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Plug and Play > PnP Profiles**.

- Step 2** From the Plug and Play Profiles page, select a profile from the list.
- Step 3** Click **Device Details for Profile**.
- Step 4** Click **Export Bootstrap > TFTP**.
- Step 5** After the bootstrap configuration is downloaded and applied, the Plug and Play deployment is initiated. To check on the status, choose **Configuration > Plug and Play > PnP Status**.
- 

#### Related Topic

- [Plug and Play Profile Field Descriptions](#)

## Emailing the Bootstrap Configuration

You can email the bootstrap configuration and then manually apply the bootstrap on the device. After the bootstrap configuration is applied, the automated deployment is initiated. The administrator can view the configuration status on Prime Infrastructure.



#### Note

Before you can email the bootstrap configuration, you must set the email settings under **Administration > Settings > System Settings > Mail and Notification > Mail Server Configuration**.

---

To email the bootstrap configuration to the operator:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Plug and Play > PnP Profiles**.
- Step 2** From the Plug and Play Profiles page, select a profile from the list.
- Step 3** Click **Device Details for Profile**.
- Step 4** Click **Export Bootstrap > Email Bootstrap**.
- Step 5** Enter the email address to which the bootstrap configuration is to be sent, then click **OK**.
- Step 6** After the bootstrap configuration is downloaded and applied, the Plug and Play deployment is initiated. To check on the status, choose **Configuration > Plug and Play > PnP Status**.
- 

## Emailing the PIN for the Bootstrap Configuration

Prime Infrastructure generates a random Personal Identification Number (PIN) per device. This PIN can be used to identify the device and the Plug and Play profile (bootstrap configuration) associated with it. After the pre-provisioning tasks are complete, the administrator must use the **Email PIN** option (available in the pre-provisioning task of the Prime Infrastructure) to email the unique PIN to the deployment engineer. During installation, the deployment engineer uses this PIN to download the bootstrap configuration from the server.

To deliver the PIN for the bootstrap configuration:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Plug and Play > PnP Profiles**.
- Step 2** From the Plug and Play Profiles page, select a profile from the list.

- Step 3** Click **Device Details for Profile**.
- Step 4** Click **CNS Email PIN**.
- Step 5** Enter the email address to which the PIN should be sent and click **OK**.
- Step 6** Use one of the following methods to apply the bootstrap configuration:
- If you are applying the bootstrap configuration using the *deployment application*, the Prime Infrastructure Plug and Play deployment application communicates to the Prime Infrastructure and applies the bootstrap configuration on the device.
  - If you are *manually* applying the bootstrap configuration using the PIN:
    - Use the PIN to download the bootstrap configuration from the Prime Infrastructure Plug and Play gateway: <https://<pnp-gateway-server>/cns/PnpBootstrap.html>. You can also register the ISR's serial number during this process.
    - Apply the bootstrap configuration on the device manually, using a console or USB flash.
- For detailed information about Plug and Play deployment, see the [Cisco Plug and Play Application User Guide](#).
- Step 7** After the bootstrap configuration is applied, the Plug and Play deployment is initiated. To check on the status, choose **Configuration > Plug and Play > PnP Status**.
- 

## Using DHCP to Export Bootstrap Configurations

To use the DHCP option to export a bootstrap configuration, you must have the following configuration on your devices:

- For CNS gateway—DHCP option 150
 

```
ip dhcp pool <DHCP pool name>
network <subnet> <subnet mask>
default-router <default gateway>
option 150 ip <prime_infrastructure_server_IP>
```
- For APIC-EM—DHCP option 43
 

```
ip dhcp pool <DHCP pool name>
network <subnet> <subnet mask>
default-router <default gateway>
option 43 ascii "5A1D;B2;K4;I<APIC-EM_server_IP>;J80"
```

## Getting Help Setting Up and Configuring Devices

Cisco Prime Infrastructure provides step-by-step guidance for the following tasks:

- Preconfiguring devices that will be added to your network in the future—See [Preconfiguring Devices to be Added Later](#).
- Setting up access switches after they have been added to Prime Infrastructure—See [Getting Help Setting Up Access Switches](#).

## Preconfiguring Devices to be Added Later

You can preconfigure devices that will be added to your network in the future. For example, if you are going to be adding a new branch office, you can use the Plug and Play Setup workflow to create an initial configuration for the branch router and switches. When the new device is added to your network, Prime Infrastructure can quickly discover, inventory, and configure the new device based on settings that you specify in a Plug and Play profile.



### Note

The **Bootstrap** and **Initial Device Setup** menus appear for users with the following privileges only: root, super users, and Config Managers.

The Plug and Play Setup workflow is similar in functionality to **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Plug and Play Profiles**; however, the workflow, designed more for access switches than routers, provides more guidance to set up new devices.



### Note

The Plug and Play Setup workflow is most helpful in setting up and configuring Cisco IOS switches and access devices. Cisco IOS devices that support auto DHCP install options can be booted up using the Plug and Play Setup workflow. All other devices (for example, routers that do not have direct network connectivity in the branch, legacy controllers, and APs) must use the Plug and Play feature.

You need to complete the Plug and Play Setup only *once*. After you complete the steps, when a new switch or access device is connected to the network, the device automatically uses the Plug and Play profile, boots up, and then Prime Infrastructure begins managing the device.

### Related Topic

- [Prerequisites for Delivering Plug and Play Profiles](#)

## Supported Devices and Software Images for Plug and Play Setup Workflow

[Table 26-1](#) lists the devices and corresponding software images supported for **Configuration > Plug and Play > Initial Device Setup** for CNS gateway.

[Table 26-2](#) lists the devices and corresponding software images supported for **Configuration > Plug and Play > Initial Device Setup** for APIC-EM.

**Table 26-1** Supported Devices and Image Versions for Configuration > Plug and Play > Initial Device Setup for CNS Gateway

| Supported Devices for Plug and Play     | Minimum Software Image Version Supported | Verified Image Version                   |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Catalyst 2960, 2960S                    | Cisco IOS Release 12.2(55)SE and later   | Cisco IOS Release 12.2(55)SE5 and later  |
| Catalyst 2960C                          | Cisco IOS Release 12.2.55(EX) and later  | Cisco IOS Release 12.2.55(EX3) and later |
| Catalyst 2960-SF                        | Cisco IOS Release 15.0(2)SE and later    | Cisco IOS Release 15.0(2)SE and later    |
| Catalyst 3560V2, 3750v2, 3560-X, 3750-X | Cisco IOS Release 12.2(55)SE and later   | Cisco IOS Release 12.2(55)SE and later   |

**Table 26-1** Supported Devices and Image Versions for Configuration > Plug and Play > Initial Device Setup (continued)for CNS Gateway

| Supported Devices for Plug and Play                                                                               | Minimum Software Image Version Supported   | Verified Image Version                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Catalyst 3560C                                                                                                    | Cisco IOS Release 12.2.55(EX) and later    | Cisco IOS Release 12.2.55(EX) and later    |
| Catalyst 4503, 4506, 4507, and 4510 switches and 4000 Series supervisor cards supported: Sup 6E, Sup 6LE          | Cisco IOS Release 151-2.SG and later       | Cisco IOS Release 151-2.SG and later       |
| Catalyst 4503, 4506, 4507, and 4510 switches and 4000 Series supervisor cards supported: Sup 7E, Sup 7LE (IOS XE) | Cisco IOS XE Release 03.04.00.SG and later | Cisco IOS XE Release 03.04.00.SG and later |
| Catalyst 3650, 3850 switches (IOS XE)                                                                             | Cisco IOS XE Release 03.02.02.SE and later | Cisco IOS XE Release 03.02.02.SE and later |
| Cisco 5760 Wireless LAN Controllers (IOS XE)                                                                      | Cisco IOS XE Release 03.02.02.SE and later | Cisco IOS XE Release 03.02.02.SE and later |

**Table 26-2** Supported Devices and Image Versions for Configuration > Plug and Play > Initial Device Setup for APIC-EM

| Platform                     | Plug and Play Agent Support                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Recommended Cisco IOS Release                      |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| Access Switches              | Cisco Catalyst 4500E Switches (Sup8-E, 7-E/7L-E, 6-E/6L-E)<br>Cisco Catalyst 4500-X, 4900 Series Switches<br>Cisco Catalyst 3850, 3650, 3750-X, 3560-X Series Switches<br>Cisco Catalyst 2960-C, 3560-C Series Compact Switches<br>Cisco Catalyst 2960-S/SF Series Switches<br>Cisco Catalyst 2960-X/XR Series Switches | IOS 15.2(2)E1<br>IOS-XE 3.6.0E1                    |
| Core Switches                | Cisco Catalyst 6500 Series Switches: Sup2T/Sup720<br>Cisco Catalyst 6880-X, 6807-XL Series Switches                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | IOS 15.2(1)SY                                      |
| Access Routers               | Cisco 4300/4400 Integrated Services Routers<br>Cisco ASR 1000 Series Aggregation Services Routers<br>Cisco Cloud Services Router 1000V Series<br>Cisco 800, 1900, 2900, 3900 Series Integrated Services Routers (ISR G2)                                                                                                | PI25/IOS-XE 3.13<br>IOS 15.4(3)M2<br>IOS 15.4(3)S2 |
| Industrial Ethernet Switches | Cisco Industrial Ethernet 2000 Series Switches<br>Cisco Industrial Ethernet 3000 Series Switches                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | IOS 15.2(2)E                                       |

For more Details on all the supported devices and the corresponding sysObjectIDs, see [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Supported Devices](#).



## Getting the Configuration to New Devices

You can choose how to get the bootstrap configuration that is created during the Plug and Play Setup workflow to your new devices:

- **DHCP Auto Install**—If you select the DHCP-based auto install method to deliver the Plug and Play Profile, you must have a distribution network or a network that already has an existing connection to your corporate network. See [Sample DHCP Server Settings for Auto Install](#).
- **Prime Utilities**—If you select the Prime Utilities method to deliver the Plug and Play Profile, after connecting the new devices to the distribution layer, you must use the laptop utility to download the configuration from Prime Infrastructure and apply the configuration to the devices. You must have internet connectivity to the Prime Infrastructure server.
- **File Transfer**—If you select the File Transfer method to deliver the Plug and Play Profile, you can download the TXT file and manually apply the configuration to the devices.

## Prerequisites for Delivering Plug and Play Profiles

Based on the method that you select to deliver the Plug and Play profile to new devices, you must make sure that you have completed the necessary prerequisites.

- Configure DHCP with the appropriate settings in the network as described in [Sample DHCP Server Settings for Auto Install](#). If DHCP is not available in the network, you can use a different method to apply the bootstrap configuration to your new devices as explained in [Sample DHCP Server Settings for Auto Install](#).
- You must have an existing network connection (distribution/core) available in the branch or campus to where the new device is connecting.
- The branch must have direct connectivity to the Prime Infrastructure server, or you must use the Plug and Play external server to connect to Prime Infrastructure.
- Ensure TFTP is enabled on the Prime Infrastructure server by choosing **Administration > Settings > System Settings > Server**, then clicking **Enable** under TFTP. TFTP is enabled by default.

## Sample DHCP Server Settings for Auto Install

If you select the DHCP-based auto install method to deliver the Plug and Play Profile, you must configure the DHCP server to redirect the switch to the TFTP server by entering the commands described in [Table 26-3](#).

The auto install method is not supported for HTTPS with the Encrypt CNS commands. It is supported with the HTTP CNS commands.

The DHCP-based auto install method follows these steps:

1. The new switch contacts the DHCP server. You must configure the DHCP server to redirect the switch to the TFTP server. See [Table 26-3](#) for more information.
2. The DHCP server points the switch to the new TFTP server where the Plug and Play bootstrap profile resides.
3. The switch loads the bootstrap configuration file, boots up, and then contacts the Plug and Play Gateway.

**Table 26-3** *DHCP Server Settings for Auto Install*

| Command to Enter                                      | Description                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>ip dhcp pool PNP</code>                         | Creates a DHCP pool named PNP.                                                                                                                   |
| <code>network 10.106.190.0<br/>255.255.255.224</code> | Defines the network 10.106.190.0 and subnet mask 255.255.255.224. DHCP uses this pool of IP addresses to assign an IP address to the new device. |
| <code>default-router 10.106.190.17</code>             | Configures the default route 10.106.190.17 on the new device.                                                                                    |
| <code>option 150 ip 10.77.240.224</code>              | Specifies that the TFTP server IP address 10.77.240.224 is the Prime Infrastructure server IP address.                                           |

## Specifying Device Credentials

The **Configuration > Plug and Play > Bootstrap > Create Profile** window is where you provide SNMP, Telnet, and SSH credentials that will be configured on the devices. Prime Infrastructure uses these credentials to contact the devices. By default, Telnet is enabled, but you can enable SSH if applicable.

The following configurations are set by the Plug and Play profile, but you can modify them using the [Getting Help Setting Up Access Switches](#) workflow:

- **SNMPv2 and SSH Credentials**—The SNMP, Telnet, and SSH credentials you specify will be configured on *all* devices that use the Plug and Play profile. You can consider these temporary credentials necessary to allow Prime Infrastructure to contact the devices. You can use the [Getting Help Setting Up Access Switches](#) workflow later to modify the device credentials. You can enable Telnet, SSH, or both. If you specify SSH, ensure the device has the K9 image.

For security purposes, we recommend that do not use “public” or “private” for your community strings.

- **Plug and Play Gateway Location**—By default, the Prime Infrastructure server acts as the Plug and Play gateway server. You can modify the server by providing the external Plug and Play gateway IP address.

## Saving the Plug and Play Profile

As explained in [Sample DHCP Server Settings for Auto Install](#), make sure that you have satisfied the necessary requirements before you specify how you want to apply or export the Plug and Play profile.

- **via TFTP**—The profile remains active on the TFTP server and whenever a new switch or access device is connected to the network, the device will automatically use the Plug and Play profile, boot up, and then “call home” to Prime Infrastructure for additional configuration.
- **Email to other operators**—You can email the bootstrap configuration file to an appropriate network engineer who can provision the bootstrap configuration manually to the device, or email the PIN to an appropriate network operator who can use the Prime Infrastructure iPad or laptop utility to provision the configurations on the devices.



**Note** If you are going to use email to deliver either the bootstrap configuration or the PIN, you must have previously configured the mail server settings under **Administration > Settings > System Settings > Mail Server Configuration**.

- Export the bootstrap configuration file (in TXT format) that was created and then manually apply the bootstrap configuration to the devices.

After you save the Plug and Play Profile, choose **Monitor > Workflow Status** to view newly registered devices and any devices on which the workflow failed.

Now that your devices will be able to contact the Prime Infrastructure server, you can specify further configurations that can be applied to the devices. See [Getting Help Setting Up Access Switches](#).

## Prerequisites for Deploying Bootstrap Configuration into a Device

To deploy bootstrap configuration into a device in a Prime Infrastructure Server:

- Enable Cipher in Admin mode of the server by entering the following command.  
**ncs run pnp-ciphers enable**
- Click **Enable** in the HTTP Forward section of the Administration > Settings > System Settings > Server Settings page.
- Restart the Prime Infrastructure Server

For HTTPS, select the **Create Profile for https** check box in the Configuration > Plug and Play > Bootstrap page.

## Sample Output from Plug and Play Setup (HTTPS)

When you complete the steps in **Configuration > Plug and Play > Bootstrap**, Prime Infrastructure creates a bootstrap configuration file, which includes the following commands to allow new Cisco IOS devices to “call home” to Prime Infrastructure.

In the following example, *pi-hateast-151* is the Prime Infrastructure server hostname.

```
crypto pki trustpoint pi-hateast-151
enrollment mode ra
enrollment terminal
usage ssl-client
revocation-check crl
exit
crypto pki certificate chain pi-hateast-151
certificate ca 4CAAA6BE
30820399 30820281 A0030201 0202044C AAA6BE30 0D06092A 864886F7 0D010105
0500307D 310B3009 06035504 06130255 53310B30 09060355 04081302 43413111
300F0603 55040713 0853616E 204A6F73 65311630 14060355 040A130D 43697363
6F205379 7374656D 73311D30 1B060355 040B1314 574E4255 20286175 746F6765
6E657261 74656429 31173015 06035504 03130E70 692D6861 74656173 742D3135
31301E17 0D313430 38303530 36313432 355A170D 31363038 30343036 31343235
5A307D31 0B300906 03550406 13025553 310B3009 06035504 08130243 41311130
0F060355 04071308 53616E20 4A6F7365 31163014 06035504 0A130D43 6973636F
20537973 74656D73 311D301B 06035504 0B131457 4E425520 28617574 6F67656E
65726174 65642931 17301506 03550403 130E7069 2D686174 65617374 2D313531
30820122 300D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 01050003 82010F00 3082010A 02820101
00877EEC 985CFD97 92BAE4C4 E611B089 E4453714 844F2DEC C944F907 D53BB92A
016CA25C 007F2EF5 51CAA930 8EADF3BA 165D3A25 004FCFE3 2D0A9A92 B8165508
C4642DFA F1A0DFEE F8F1C958 7CBE7ED7 6D74195A F1E7133A 5A7EFF36 0AF8ADC1
8A829515 D91EF557 CE9F4915 B4C04FD0 F461C211 FB70A375 AA7204DC 4C025FED
72896754 53FB1F7A 9F30CC0D A0443D50 9DDB7A90 3544F345 0CAB8FDB A8009718
F8D49347 741493AD 746B3DC3 0E41D2FF 72B51816 7968D924 1F42536A 1C7B29F2
C569E111 3D126FBF 4B23F2A5 96AA446E BA9F5A94 68F1F7A3 E8C4994F BCF4B2FB
ED5589BF D222DD29 2EACFE48 DDA45116 EA2C42BA 9E37B6DA 05E7582E 1521512A
B1020301 0001A321 301F301D 0603551D 0E041604 14C05AA1 1AF06B2A D5AA67BD
226B487B 0518343B 5B300D06 092A8648 86F70D01 01050500 03820101 00741493
7B6360D5 34F7ED04 2078A847 788ACDFE A143162B 1736AB2C A8E3EA2B 1CE54E9E
AEFB5E62 21D8F70E 3AD9EF0E ED782A7D 362D4D1A 9275C791 96F19584 C873DAF1
16108A59 186FD2E1 BD00F61C 2C57D6A0 0DE5E42B B76210BE EAB8C9F2 2C476091
B5F0B661 E8C8277F 5F673547 0404C863 0BE127B2 9E3FDE18 139F9BAD F5EC945A
30715BDF B72565F0 D25DBA40 216091F0 98BDB241 993662F9 248C1423 8F5417B2
69672F32 6212D37F 008A4B86 CDF280E9 2C89F1CF 9E63311D 2B349C07 43D8D02D
F9770607 9F14DF51 896BF1EF 8B2A3EC5 3B1E564E 4E079B4A CC684745 11372D92
377407E8 194EF897 5B62B38B 16B6F1EF F080A3E4 512508B8 4322C2DD 86
```

```

quit
exit
ip host pi-hateast-151 10.104.119.151
cns trusted-server all-agents pi-hateast-151
cns trusted-server all-agents 10.104.119.151
cns id hardware-serial
cns id hardware-serial event
cns id hardware-serial image
cns event pi-hateast-151 encrypt keepalive 120 2 reconnect-time 60
cns exec encrypt 443
cns image server https://pi-hateast-151/cns/HttpMsgDispatcher status
https://pi-hateast-151/cns/HttpMsgDispatcher
cns config partial pi-hateast-151 encrypt 443
cns config initial pi-hateast-151 encrypt 443
end

```

The bootstrap configuration file is delivered based on the method you specified:

- **via TFTP**—Prime Infrastructure copies the bootstrap configuration file, *cisconet.cfg*, and the *config* credentials file to the Prime Infrastructure TFTP server.
- **Email to other operators**—Prime Infrastructure emails the bootstrap configuration file to the specified email address and copies the *config* credentials file to the Prime Infrastructure TFTP server.




---

**Note** If you are going to use email to deliver either the bootstrap configuration or the PIN, you must have previously configured the mail server settings under **Administration > Settings > System Settings > Mail Server Configuration**.

---

- **Export the bootstrap configuration file**—Prime Infrastructure exports the bootstrap configuration file to the client and saves it as *Day-0 Bootstrap Configuration\_NEW.txt* and copies the *config* credentials file to the Prime Infrastructure TFTP server.

## Verifying Plug and Play Provisioning Status

Choose **Configuration > Plug and Play > PnP Status** to view the Plug and Play status of any devices.

## Getting Help Setting Up Access Switches

After your devices are added to Prime Infrastructure, you can use the Initial Device Setup workflow to help you configure wired and wireless features on the following devices:

- Supported devices for **wired** features: See [Table 26-1](#).
- Supported devices for **wireless** features:
  - Catalyst 3650 switches
  - Catalyst 3850 switches

- Cisco 5760 Wireless LAN Controllers

**Related Topics**

- [Before You Begin](#)
- [Assign Devices to Location](#)

## Before You Begin

You must create a location before you use the Initial Device Setup by choosing **Inventory > Grouping > Location & Device**. See [Using Location Groups](#) for more information.

**Related Topic**

- [Assign Devices to Location](#)

## Assign Devices to Location

The **Configuration > Plug and Play > Initial Device Setup > Assign to Location** window allows you to specify a location to which the devices you want to configure belong. *Unassigned* devices discovered using the Plug and Play Setup workflow (see [Preconfiguring Devices to be Added Later](#)) and any discovered devices that were not previously assigned are listed on this window. You must assign each device to a location.

The Initial Device Setup workflow is location-specific. To configure devices in a different location, you repeat the Initial Device Setup workflow and select that appropriate location.

To get details about any device, hover your mouse cursor over a device IP address, then click the icon that appears. See [Getting Device Details from Device 360° View](#) for more information.

If the Status column for any device is *N/A*, either the device was manually added to Prime Infrastructure (without using the Plug and Play Setup workflow), or the Plug and Play Setup workflow completed, but the synchronization took longer than 10 minutes after the device was added to Prime Infrastructure.

## Choose Devices

The **Configuration > Plug and Play > Initial Device Setup > Choose Other Devices** window displays all new devices you assigned to the specified location, any devices previously assigned to the same location, and any devices that were added to Prime Infrastructure using discovery. This allows you to configure wired and wireless features on new and existing devices at the same time.

Choose whether you want to configure wired or wireless features. The devices displayed correspond to the option that you select.

If you select **Add wired features to my device(s)**, only applicable devices in the selected location on which you can configure wired features are displayed. After you select the devices, check the Device Readiness column and see [Device Readiness Explanation](#) for more information.

Choose a configuration mode:

- **Guided mode**—Gives you step-by-step guidance in creating Cisco-recommended device configurations. See [Configuring Wired Features Using Guided Mode](#).

- **Advanced mode**—Uses templates in which you can modify and customize the device configurations. You should be comfortable with CLI templates. See [Configuring Wired Features Using Advanced Mode](#).

If you select **Add wireless features to my device(s)**, applicable devices in the selected location on which you can configure wireless features are displayed. After you select the devices, you can choose to configure guest access as part of the wireless device configuration. Enter the number of access points and select a mobility group. See [Configuring Wireless Features](#) for step-by-step guidance in configuring wireless features.

### Device Readiness Explanation

The Readiness column indicates whether the devices that you selected are ready to be configured. A device can be “not ready” for the following reasons:

- The device is not running the required Cisco IOS version. [Table 26-4](#) lists the required versions.
- Prime Infrastructure was unable to collect inventory details. Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices** and make sure the Admin Status for the device is *Managed* and the Inventory Collection Status is *Completed*.

**Table 26-4** Required Cisco IOS/IOS XE Releases for Switches to Be in Ready State

| Switch Series                         | Required Cisco IOS/IOS XE Releases                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Catalyst 2960, 2960s                  | 12.2(55) and later, or 15.0.1.SE and later                                                                        |
| Catalyst 2960-SF                      | 15.0(2)SE and later                                                                                               |
| Catalyst 3560v2, 3560X, 3750v2, 3750X | 12.2(55) and later, or 15.0.1.SE and later                                                                        |
| Catalyst 3560c, 2960c                 | 12.2(55)-EX4 and later                                                                                            |
| Catalyst 3650, 3850                   | IOS XE 03.02.02 SE and later                                                                                      |
| Catalyst 4500                         | When running Sup7E and Sup7LE: IOS XE 03.03.02.SG and later<br>When running Sup6E or Sup6LE: 12.2(54)SG and later |
| 5760 Wireless LAN Controller          | IOS XE 03.02.02 SE and later                                                                                      |

#### Related Topics

- [Configuring Wired Features Using Guided Mode](#)
- [Configuring Wired Features Using Advanced Mode](#)
- [Configuring Wireless Features](#)

## Configuring Wired Features Using Guided Mode

When you choose to configure wired features using the Guided Mode, you are guided step-by-step through configuring the following settings:

1. [IP Address Options](#)
2. [Device Credentials](#)
3. [VLAN and Switching Parameters](#)
4. [Auto Smartports and Uplinks](#)

## 5. Confirmation

# IP Address Options

During the **Configuration > Plug and Play > Initial Device Setup** workflow (see [Preconfiguring Devices to be Added Later](#)), the DHCP server assigned IP addresses to the devices. The IP Management Options page is where you can modify the IP addresses. Select **Change Device(s) IP Management Address**, enter the necessary values for the device(s) in the Device Management Option table, then click **Save**.

You can edit IP address, hostname, subnet, and gateway values only; you cannot modify the device type and serial number.

If you have a large number of devices, you can simplify this task by exporting a CSV file of all devices, editing the file, then importing the CSV file to overwrite the Device Management Option table.

# Device Credentials

During the **Configuration > Plug and Play > Initial Device Setup** workflow (see [Preconfiguring Devices to be Added Later](#)), the same SNMP, Telnet and SSH credentials you specified were be configured on *all* devices. The Credentials page is where you can modify the credentials and specify different credentials for various devices. Select **Specify new credentials** and enter the necessary values.

Click **Save Credentials** to save the credentials you entered. When you have new devices that you want to set up and you use the Initial Device Setup workflow again, you can select the credentials that you saved from the **Use Credentials** list. The fields are populated with the values that you previously saved.

When you complete the Initial Device Setup workflow, the device credentials are updated on the devices and in Prime Infrastructure.

# VLAN and Switching Parameters

The VLAN and Switching page allows you to configure VLANs and switching parameters. Default VLAN values are provided. Default switching features are selected. The following options are enabled by default and you cannot modify them because they are required by Prime Infrastructure:

- Enable CDP
- Rapid PVST

By default, Spanning Tree is also enabled.

# Auto Smartports and Uplinks

By default, the Initial Device Setup workflow enables Cisco Auto Smartports and quality of service (QoS) on switch downlink ports. Auto Smartport macros dynamically configure ports based on the device type detected on the port. You cannot disable Auto Smartports.

The Before You Begin page includes a link to download the supported devices for uplink configuration.

We recommend that you enable uplink-specific features such as EtherChannel and Trunking by selecting one of the options from the pulldown menu:

- Enable Layer 2 Trunking



- Enable Layer 2 Trunking with Etherchannel (PagP)
- Enable Layer 2 Trunking with Etherchannel (LACP)
- Enable Layer 2 Trunking with Etherchannel (Static)

## Confirmation

The Confirmation screen is the last step in the Initial Device Setup workflow in which you can view the settings you specified. Click Deploy to deploy the configuration. A job is created and the job status information is displayed.

To view the deployed jobs, choose **Administration > Jobs** to view the status and details about the job.

If the deployment fails, the number of devices on which the deployment failed appears in the Failed column of the **Monitor > Workflow Status** window. Click the number displayed to go directly to the Choose Other Devices screen to view the device(s) that failed. You can modify necessary settings and repeat the workflow for that device.

## Configuring Wired Features Using Advanced Mode

If you want to customize the configuration settings applied to your devices, select **Advanced mode** in The Choose Other Devices page. The Advanced mode uses templates in which you can modify and customize the device configurations. You should be comfortable with CLI templates.

You use the following templates to specify configuration settings:

- **System**—Allows you to specify new IP addresses to replace the IP addresses that were previously assigned by the DHCP server. You can edit IP address, hostname, subnet, and gateway values only; you cannot modify the device type and serial number.  
  
If you have many devices, it might be easier to edit these values in a spreadsheet. You can export the list of devices as a CSV file, edit the file, and then import the file to overwrite the table.
- **Security**—Allows you to specify authentication credentials. Whatever you select as the authentication type, your primary authentication server must match. For example, if you select RADIUS as the authentication method, the primary authentication method must be RADIUS. If you select None as the authentication type, your primary authentication method must be LOCAL. The secondary and other methods can be any authentication type.
- **Layer 2**—Allows you to configure Spanning Tree, VTP, LLDP, and CDP. By default, Rapid PVST and CDP are enabled because they are required by Prime Infrastructure.
- **High Availability**—Allows you to configure power and system redundancy. If the High Availability check box is unchecked, redundancy is disabled on the device.
- **Interfaces**—Allows you to configure VLANs. You can check how many ports your devices have and based on that information, you can split the interfaces into interface patterns.
- **Other**—Allows you to configure any other commands in the terminal configuration mode.

# Configuring Wireless Features

When you choose to configure wireless features, you are guided step-by-step through configuring the following settings:

1. [Create Groups](#)
2. [Wireless Parameters](#)
3. [Wireless LAN Security](#)
4. [Guest Access](#)
5. [Confirmation](#)

## Create Groups

The Create Groups page is where the Mobility Architecture group is automatically defined for the wireless devices that you selected in the Choose Other Devices page. The Mobility Group consists of Mobility Controller, Switch Peer Group, and Mobility Agents. You cannot modify the Mobility Controller and the Mobility Agent that were previously configured. Whereas, you can add Switch Peer Groups. You can configure the selected devices as Mobility Controller/Mobility Agent or delete the Mobility Controller/Mobility Agent from the mobility group.

## Wireless Parameters

The Wireless Parameters page allows you to assign Wireless Management IP, Mask, and Wireless VLAN ID for the selected wireless devices. You can also choose to export the list of devices as a CSV file, edit the values, and import the file to overwrite the values for the devices. Then, click **Save**.

## Wireless LAN Security

The Wireless LAN Security page allows you to add secure wireless for LAN connectivity. Default values are displayed for the Secure wireless LAN Properties. Based on the security profile and the authentication method that you choose, you must enter the primary and secondary Radius server details.

## Guest Access

The Guest Access page is displayed only if you have chosen to configure guest access as part of the wireless device configuration in the Choose Other Devices page. Default values are displayed for the guest WLAN and VLAN fields. Based on the security profile and the authentication method that you select for your guest, you must enter the primary and secondary Radius server details.

## Confirmation

The Confirmation page is the last step in the Guided workflow for wireless features in which you can view the settings you specified. Click Deploy to deploy the configuration. For more information about the confirmation job status and the workflow status, see the [Confirmation](#).

# Configuring Plug and Play Controller Auto Provisioning

Prime Infrastructure simplifies WLAN deployments with support for auto-provisioning. Auto provisioning allows Prime Infrastructure to automatically configure a new or replace a current Cisco Wireless LAN Controller (WLC). Prime Infrastructure auto provisioning feature can simplify deployments for customers with a large number of controllers.



## Note

The controller radio and b/g networks are initially disabled by the Prime Infrastructure startup configuration file. You can turn on those radio networks by using a template, which should be included as one of the automated templates.

## Using the Auto Provisioning Filter List

The Auto Provision Filters page allows you to create and edit auto provisioning filters that define the list of allowable devices to be auto provisioned or auto monitored by Prime Infrastructure.

For Auto Provisioning privileges, you must have Admin, Root, or SuperUser status. To allow or disallow a user Auto Provisioning privileges, edit the permitted tasks using **Administration > Users, Roles, & AAA > User Groups > group name > List of Tasks Permitted** in Prime Infrastructure. Select or unselect the check box to allow or disallow these privileges.

Filter parameters include:

| Parameter         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Filter Name       | Identifies the name of the filter.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Filter Enable     | Indicates whether or not the filter is enabled.<br>Only enabled filters can participate in the Auto Provisioning process.                                                                                            |
| Monitor Only      | If selected, the Cisco WLC defined in this filter is managed by Prime Infrastructure but not configured by Prime Infrastructure if the Cisco WLC contacts Prime Infrastructure during the auto provisioning process. |
| Filter Mode       | Indicates the search mode for this filter (Host Name, MAC Address, or Serial Number).                                                                                                                                |
| Config Group Name | Indicates the Configuration Group name.<br>All Config-Groups used by auto provision filters should not have any controller defined in them.                                                                          |

## Adding an Auto Provisioning Filter

To specify the Auto Provision filter contents, you can directly enter the details in the application or import the details from a CSV file. The auto provisioning feature supports the 5500 and non-5500 series controllers. The non-5500 series controllers have AP manager interface configuration information defined, whereas 5500 series controllers do not have this information.

To add an Auto Provisioning Filter:

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless Technologies > Controller Auto Provisioning**.
- Step 2** Choose **Add Filter** from the **Select a command** drop-down list, then click **Go**.

- Step 3** Enter the required parameters.
- You can specify the Dynamic Interface configuration and Device Specific configuration details only when you input a CSV file. These two configurations cannot be performed using the graphical user interface.
- Step 4** Click **Save**.
- The default username and password for the device auto provisioning is **admin/Public123**. To change the default username and password, you need to delete and then recreate the admin user and explained in Steps 5 through Step 8.
- Step 5** To change the default username and password, you need to create a new read/write user on the controller using the Local Management User Template. See [Creating Local Management User Templates](#). You must create this new user so that you can delete the default admin user as shown in Step 6.
- Step 6** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices > All Devices**, click on the controller name, click the **Configuration** tab, then select **Management > Local Management User**, select the admin user, then from the **Select a command** drop-down list, select **Delete Local Management User** and click **Go**.
- Step 7** Create a new admin user on the controller using the Local Management User Template. See [Creating Local Management User Templates](#).
- Step 8** Delete the user you created in Step 5.
- 

**Related Topic**

- [Creating Local Management User Templates](#)

## Auto Provisioning Primary Search Key Settings

Use the Primary Search Key Setting to set the matching criteria search order.

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Plug and Play > Controller Auto Provisioning**, then from the left sidebar menu, choose **Setting**.
- Step 2** Click to highlight the applicable search key, then use the **Move Up** or **Move Down** buttons to move the search key to a higher or lower priority.
- Step 3** Click **Save** to confirm the changes.
-



## **PART 6**

### **Managing Device Inventory**

This part contains the following sections:

- [Viewing Devices](#)
- [Updating Device Inventory](#)
- [Managing and Monitoring Compute Resources](#)
- [Maintaining Software Images](#)
- [Working with Device Configurations](#)
- [Grouping Devices, Ports and Data Center](#)





# Viewing Devices

- [Viewing Network Devices](#)
- [Viewing Compute Devices](#)

## Viewing Network Devices

From the **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices** page, you can view device inventory and device configuration information. The Network Devices page contains general administrative functions and configuration functions as described in [Table 27-1](#).

**Table 27-1**      **Network Devices Tasks**

| <b>Task</b>                                         | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                                                          | <b>Location in Inventory &gt; Device Management &gt; Network Devices</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Manage devices                                      | You can add, edit, delete, sync, and export devices, add and delete devices from groups and sites, and perform a bulk import.                                                                               | Buttons are located at the top of the Device Work Center. For more details, see <i>Adding Devices Manually</i> , <i>Exporting Devices</i> , and <i>Importing Devices from Another Source</i> in Related Topics.                                                                                                                                      |
| View basic device information and collection status | View basic device information such as reachability status, IP address, device type, and collection status.                                                                                                  | Hover your mouse cursor over icon in the IP Address column and click the icon to access the 360° view for that device (see <i>Getting Device Details from the Device 360° View</i> in Related Topics).<br><br>Hover your mouse cursor over the Last Inventory Collection cell and click the icon to view errors related to the inventory collection. |
| Manage device groups                                | By default, Cisco Prime Infrastructure creates dynamic device groups and assigns devices to the appropriate Device Type folder. You can create new device groups that appear under the User Defined folder. | Displayed in the left pane of the Network Devices Page.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

Table 27-1 Network Devices Tasks (continued)

| Task                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Location in Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Add devices to site groups                | <p>After you set up a site group profile, you can add devices to it.</p> <p>To add devices to site groups in Network Devices page, add them to Group and then select site group.</p> <p>To add devices to site maps, go to the Maps &gt; Site Map.</p> <p><b>Note</b> A device can belong to one site group hierarchy only.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The devices added to a site group in the Network Devices page do not add devices in the Maps &gt; Site Map page. Similarly, the devices added in the Site Map Design page are not added to site groups in the Network Devices page.</p> | <p><b>Add to Group</b> button located at the top of the Network Devices page under Groups &amp; Sites.</p>                                                                                           |
| View device details                       | <p>View device details such as memory, port, environment, chassis view and interface information.</p> <p>View device information and status, and associated modules, alarms, neighbors, and interfaces. For more information, see <i>Getting Device Details from the Device 360° View</i>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <p>Click on a Device Name to view the <b>Device Details</b> page for that device.</p> <p>Hover your mouse cursor over a device IP address and click the icon that appears.</p>                       |
| Create and deploy configuration templates | <p>You can configure device features on the selected device. You can also view the list of applied and scheduled feature templates that were deployed to the device.</p> <p><b>Note</b> From the Network Devices page, it may not be possible to add configuration for a few controller features. In this case, use the Design page and create a new Template and deploy to the device.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                            | <p>Click on a Device Name, then click the <b>Configuration</b> tab.</p> <p>For more information about configuring features on a device, see <i>Configuring Device Features</i> in Related Topics</p> |
| View device configurations                | View archived configurations, schedule configuration rollbacks, and schedule archive collections.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Click on a Device Name, then click the <b>Configuration Archive</b> tab.                                                                                                                             |



Table 27-1 Network Devices Tasks (continued)

| Task                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Location in Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| View software images                   | You can view the recommended software image for a single device, and then import or distribute that image. If you want to distribute a software image to multiple devices, see <i>Deploying Software Images to Devices</i> in Related Topics. | Click on a Device Name, then click the <b>Image</b> tab.<br><br>Scroll down to Recommended Images to view the recommended image for the device that you selected. Prime Infrastructure gathers the recommended images from both Cisco.com and the local repository.<br><br>You can import the recommended image (see <i>Importing Software Images</i> in Related Topics) or distribute (see <i>Deploying Software Images to Devices</i> in Related Topics) the recommended image. |
| View interface details                 | You can view the description, admin status, and operational status of the interface.                                                                                                                                                          | Click on a Device Name, then click the <b>Configuration</b> tab. Click <b>Interfaces</b> to view the interface details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| View and modify TrustSec configuration | You can view and modify the TrustSec configuration of a TrustSec-based device.                                                                                                                                                                | Click on a Device Name, then click the <b>Configuration</b> tab. Click <b>Security &gt;TrustSec &gt; Wired 802_1x</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

**Related Topics**

- [Viewing Compute Devices](#)

## Viewing Compute Devices

Compute Devices provide a consolidated view of all the devices that provide compute capability within a Data Center. You can manage Cisco UCS devices in the same way other network devices are managed, see *Viewing Network Devices* in Related Topics. From the **Inventory > Device Management > Compute Devices** page, you can view device inventory information for the physical devices such as UCS B-series and C-series devices that support data center virtualization and the data center components as described in [Table 27-2](#).

Table 27-2 Compute Devices Tasks

| Task             | List View                                                                                                                                                   | Detailed View                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| View Data Center | The list view shows the number of clusters, number of hosts, total number of VMs, status of VMs, discovery source and monitoring status of the data center. | <p>Click the data center name in the <b>List View</b> to view the properties of the data center.</p> <p>In the detailed view, you can see General, Clusters, Hosts, and VMs tabs.</p> <p>The <b>General</b> tab shows the properties of data center displayed in the list view. The <b>Clusters</b> tab shows the number of clusters available in this data center. The <b>Hosts</b> and <b>Virtual Machines</b> tabs shows the details of operational status, CPU usage, memory usage, CPU contention, and swap rate of the hosts and VMs, respectively. The Host section displays the details of hosts available in the selected data center and additional information on the installed operating systems. The Virtual Machine section shows the details of the virtual machines available in the selected data center and additional information on the memory granted and disk rate.</p> |
| View Clusters    | The list view shows the hosts count, number of VMs, power on/off status of VMs and discovery sources.                                                       | <p>Click the cluster name in the <b>List View</b> to view the properties of the cluster.</p> <p>In the detailed view, you can see General, Alarms, Hosts, and Virtual Machines tabs.</p> <p>The <b>General</b> tab shows the properties of clusters displayed in the list view. The Alarms tab shows the alarms associated with the Cluster. The Hosts and Virtual Machines tabs show the operational status, CPU usage and memory usage of the hosts and VMs, respectively.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

Table 27-2 Compute Devices Tasks (continued)

| Task                  | List View                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Detailed View                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| View Hosts            | <p>The list view shows the hosts count, number of VMs, power on/off status of VMs, discovery sources, host name, physical server, physical device name, alarm, and alarm count.</p> <p>If the host is installed on a UCS blade server that is managed by Prime Infrastructure then the <b>Physical Server</b> shows the blade server name and the <b>Physical Device Name</b> shows the UCS device name.</p> <p>To view the above details, choose <b>Columns</b> in the <b>Settings</b> icon and select the columns to be shown in the List View.</p> | <p>Click the host name in the list view to view the properties of the host.</p> <p>You can view the performance metrics of host and its parent cluster. The performance metrics shows a graphical representation of CPU utilization, memory usage and network performance.</p> <p>In the detailed view, you can also see the General, Virtual Machine, Alarm and User Defied Field tabs.</p> <p>The <b>General</b> tab shows the blade server name and UCS device name if the host is installed on a UCS blade server managed by Prime Infrastructure. The <b>Virtual Machine</b> tab shows the operational status, CPU and memory usage details of VMs that belong to the host. The <b>User Defined Field</b> tab allows you to update the user defined values.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| View Virtual Machines | <p>The list view shows the operational status, host name, operating system, monitoring status, discovery source, alarm (maximum severity) and alarm count of the VM.</p> <p>To view the above details, choose <b>Columns</b> in the <b>Settings</b> icon and select the columns to be shown in the List View.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <p>Click the VM name in the List View to view the properties of the VM.</p> <p>You can view the performance metrics of VM and its parent host and cluster. The performance metrics of VM shows a graphical representation of CPU, memory, disk and network usage. The performance metrics of parent host shows a graphical representation of CPU, memory and network usage. The performance metrics of parent cluster shows a graphical representation of CPU and memory usage.</p> <p>In the detailed view, you can also see the Virtual Machine General, Hosts General, Alarm and User Defied Field tabs.</p> <p>The <b>Virtual Machine General</b> tab shows the properties of VM. The <b>Host General</b> tab shows physical server details if the host is installed on a UCS blade server. The <b>Alarm</b> tab shows the operational status, CPU and memory usage details of the VM. The <b>User Defined Field</b> tab allows you to update the user defined attributes that store additional information about devices, such as device location attributes.</p> |

Table 27-2 Compute Devices Tasks (continued)

| Task                   | List View                                                                                                                              | Detailed View                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| View Physical Servers  | This view shows UCS blade server information such as server ID, device name, device IP address, operational status, cores, and memory. | Click the arrow near the server ID to view the blade server details.                                                                                                               |
| View Cisco UCS Servers | View basic device information such as device name, device type, IP address, reachability status, and alarm count.                      | Click the arrow near the UCS device name to open the schematic that shows the inter-connections of the UCS chassis and blades and the up/down status of chassis and blade servers. |

**Related Topics**

- [Creating User Defined UCS Groups](#)
- [Creating User Defined Hosts and VMs](#)

## Creating User Defined UCS Groups

In addition to viewing the compute device details, you can also create user defined UCS sub-groups. Hover your mouse over the expand icon next to User Defined UCS and click **Add SubGroup**. See *Creating Device Groups* in Related Topics. However, these User Defined UCS group is not reflected in **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms and Events**.

**Related Topics**

- [Creating User Defined Hosts and VMs](#)

## Creating User Defined Hosts and VMs

You can create user defined Hosts and VMs Sub-groups similar to device groups. Hover your mouse over the expand icon next to User Defined Hosts and VMs and click **Add SubGroup**. See *Creating Device Groups* in Related Topics. However, these User Defined Hosts and VMs group are reflected in **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms and Events** to monitor the alarms or events from any member of this group.

**Related Topics**

- [Creating User Defined UCS Groups](#)



## Updating Device Inventory

---

Cisco Prime Infrastructure provides two ways to discover the devices in your network:

- **Quick**—Allows you to quickly discover the devices in your network based on the SNMP community string, seed IP address, and subnet mask you specify. Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Discovery**, then click **Quick Discovery**. See [Running Quick Discovery](#).
- **Regular**—Allows you to specify protocol, credential, and filter settings, and schedule the discovery job. You can also apply to the added devices any credential profiles you have created. See [Changing Discovery Settings](#) and [Using Credential Profiles](#).

## Changing Discovery Settings

To change the discovery settings, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management**, then click **Discovery Settings**.
  - Step 2** Click **New**. Enter the settings as described in [Table 3-1](#).
  - Step 3** Click one of the following:
    - **Save** to save the settings.
    - **Run Now** to save the settings and immediately start the discovery job.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Running Quick Discovery](#)
- [Running Discovery](#)
- [Scheduling Discovery Jobs](#)
- [Monitoring the Discovery Process](#)
- [Updating Device Inventory Manually](#)
- [Using Credential Profiles](#)

# Scheduling Discovery Jobs

To create a discovery job and then schedule it to run at a future time, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management**, click **Discovery Settings**, then click **New**.
  - Step 2** Enter the required settings, then click **Save**.
  - Step 3** In the Discovery Settings, select the discovery job that you just created, then click **Schedule**.
  - Step 4** Enter the schedule information, then click **Save**.
- 

## Related Topics

- [Running Quick Discovery](#)
- [Running Discovery](#)
- [Monitoring the Discovery Process](#)
- [Updating Device Inventory Manually](#)
- [Using Credential Profiles](#)

# Monitoring the Discovery Process

To monitor the discovery process, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Discovery**.
  - Step 2** Select the running discovery job for which you want to see details.
- 

# Discovery Protocols and CSV File Formats

Prime Infrastructure uses the following protocols to discover devices:

- Ping Sweep
- Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP)
- Routing Table
- Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)
- Border Gateway Protocol (BGP)
- Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)

You can import a CSV file to add data for the protocols. [Table 28-1](#) describes the CSV file format for each of the protocols.



## Note

---

You can import a CSV file if you are using a supported version of Mozilla Firefox only.

---

**Table 28-1** Discovery Protocols and CSV File Formats

| Protocol                          | CSV File Format                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ping sweep                        | Any valid IP address and subnet mask, separated by a comma. You can specify multiple networks in a single discovery by adding additional rows. |
| Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP)    | Any valid IP address and the hop count, separated by a comma.                                                                                  |
| Routing table                     | Any valid IP address and the hop count, separated by a comma.                                                                                  |
| Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) | Any valid IP address and the hop count, separated by a comma.                                                                                  |
| Border Gateway Protocol (BGP)     | Seed device IP address for any device that is BGP enabled.                                                                                     |
| Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)   | Seed device IP address for any device that is OSPF enabled.                                                                                    |

## Updating Device Inventory Manually

We recommend that you run discovery to update your device inventory. However, you can also add devices manually, if needed.

To update the device inventory manually, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, then click **Add**.
  - Step 2** Enter the required parameters.
  - Step 3** Click **Add** to add the device with the settings that you specified.



### Note

As part of the SNMP read-write credential verification on the device, a log message appears in the managed device indicating there was a configuration change from the IP address of the Prime Infrastructure server during the inventory task.

---

## Editing Device Inventory Manually

To edit any parameters in the devices that are already added, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Select the device that you need to edit and click **Edit**.
  - Step 3** Enter the required parameters.
  - Step 4** Click **Update** or **Update & Sync** to update the device with the required settings.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Running Quick Discovery](#)
- [Running Discovery](#)
- [Scheduling Discovery Jobs](#)

# Importing Device Inventory

If you have another management system to which your devices are to be imported or if you want to import a spreadsheet that contains all your devices and their attributes, you can import device information in bulk into Prime Infrastructure.

To import device inventory, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, then click **Bulk Import**.
  - Step 2** Click the link to download a sample file that contains all of the fields and descriptions for the information that must be contained in your imported file.
  - Step 3** Click **Browse** to navigate to your file, then click **Import** and wait for the import to complete. (To check the status of the import, choose **Administration > Job Dashboard > Jobs > User Jobs > Import**).
- 

# Using Credential Profiles

Credential profiles are collections of device credentials. The credentials stored in a credential profile can include SNMP, Telnet, SSH and HTTP/HTTPS credentials. Credential profiles allow you to apply a set of credentials to a device or a group of devices, instead of entering them manually for each device.

Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Credential Profiles** to add, edit, delete or copy credential profiles. You can apply a credential profile during device discovery, when manually adding a device, or during bulk import of devices.

## Related Topics

- [Changing Discovery Settings](#)
- [Updating Device Inventory Manually](#)
- [Importing Device Inventory](#)
- [Adding Credential Profiles](#)
- [Editing Credential Profiles](#)
- [Deleting Credential Profiles](#)
- [Copying Credential Profiles](#)

# Adding Credential Profiles

To add a credential profile, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Go to **Inventory > Device Management > Credential Profiles**.
  - Step 2** Click **Add**.
  - Step 3** Enter the Profile Name and Description under the **General Parameters**.
  - Step 4** Enter valid credentials and other values in the SNMP, Telnet/SSH and HTTP/HTTPS fields.

You cannot apply a credential profile to a device unless the profile has at least an SNMP read credential.



**Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Using Credential Profiles](#)
- [Editing Credential Profiles](#)
- [Deleting Credential Profiles](#)
- [Copying Credential Profiles](#)

## Editing Credential Profiles

To edit a credential profile:

- 
- Step 1** Go to **Inventory > Device Management > Credential Profiles**.
- Step 2** Choose the profile and Click **Edit**.
- Step 3** Click **Profile Details** and enter valid credentials and other values in the SNMP, Telnet/SSH and HTTP/HTTPS fields.
- Step 4** (Optional) Click **Device List** to view the devices associated with the selected profile.
- Step 5** Click **Save** to update the profile of all associated devices or Click **Save and Sync** to update and synchronize the devices with the updated profile.
- 



**Note** During bulk edit of devices:

- The credential profile associated with the devices with different credential profile will get lost.
  - The manually updated parameters like Telnet and HTTP parameters will be applied to all of the selected devices.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Using Credential Profiles](#)
- [Adding Credential Profiles](#)
- [Deleting Credential Profiles](#)
- [Copying Credential Profiles](#)
- [Viewing Devices Associated with a Credential Profile](#)

## Deleting Credential Profiles

To delete a credential profile:

- 
- Step 1** Go to **Inventory > Device Management > Credential Profiles**.

**Step 2** Select the credential profile to be deleted.

**Step 3** Click **Delete**.

You cannot delete a credential profile until you have removed all device-to-profile associations. You can remove these associations using the device edit page under **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Using Credential Profiles](#)
- [Adding Credential Profiles](#)
- [Editing Credential Profiles](#)
- [Copying Credential Profiles](#)
- [Viewing Devices Associated with a Credential Profile](#)

## Copying Credential Profiles

To copy a credential profile:

---

**Step 1** Go to **Inventory > Device Management > Credential Profiles**.

**Step 2** Choose a credential profile, then click **Copy**.

**Step 3** Enter the Profile Name and Description under the **General Parameters**.

**Step 4** Enter valid values in SNMP, Telnet/SSH and HTTP/HTTPS fields.

**Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Using Credential Profiles](#)
- [Adding Credential Profiles](#)
- [Editing Credential Profiles](#)
- [Deleting Credential Profiles](#)
- [Viewing Devices Associated with a Credential Profile](#)

## Viewing Devices Associated with a Credential Profile

To view the credential profile associated with a device:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Credential Profiles**.

**Step 2** Choose a credential profile, then click **Edit**.

**Step 3** Click the Device List to view the devices associated with the selected profile.

---

# Troubleshooting Unmanaged Devices

A device can be unmanaged by Prime Infrastructure, as indicated in the Admin Status column in the **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, if any of the following are true:

- You have exceeded the maximum number of managed devices allowed for your license. If you need additional information about licensing, see the following:
  - *Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Quick Start Guide*—contains descriptions of the different licenses, how to order licenses, and license entitlement.
  - *Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Administrator Guide*—contains information about managing licenses, troubleshooting licensing issues, and verifying license details.
- The device is enabled for switch path tracing only.
- The wrong device credentials were entered into Prime Infrastructure so that Prime Infrastructure was unable to contact the device. In this case, the Reachability column in **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices** is red and indicates the device is unreachable.

If the Device Type column in the **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, displays *Unknown* for a device, Prime Infrastructure does not support the device. You can check if support for that device type has been added to Prime Infrastructure by choosing **Administration > Software Update**, then clicking **Check for Updates**.





# Managing and Monitoring Compute Resources

---

## Managing VMware Vcenter Server

You can add, delete, edit, sync, and bulk import VMware Vcenter servers and also view the complete inventory of compute resources like data center, cluster, hosts and virtual machines (VMs).

### Related Topics

- [Adding VMware Vcenter Servers](#)
- [CSV File Requirements for Importing Vcenter](#)

## Adding VMware Vcenter Servers

You can manage a Vcenter server by manually adding a Vcenter server.

### Before you Begin

You must add Data Center Hypervisor license for collecting the inventory of Vcenter server. For adding Data Center Hypervisor license, see *Adding a License to Access Features* in Related Topics.

To add a Vcenter Server:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Compute Devices > Discovery Sources**.
  - Step 2** Click **Add Device**.
  - Step 3** Enter the following parameters in the **Add Discovery Source** page.
    - Protocol—HTTP/HTTPS.
    - Server—Host Name/IP address of Vcenter.
    - Port—443 for HTTPS; 80 for HTTP.
    - User Name/Password—Vcenter credentials.
  - Step 4** (optional) Click **Verify Credentials** to confirm the Vcenter credentials before adding Vcenter.
  - Step 5** Click **Add**.

You can view the inventory collection status of the manually added Vcenter server in the Discovery Sources page. Add the Data Center Vcenter license, if the **Virtual Inventory Collection Status** shows “No License”.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Adding a License to Access Features](#)
- [CSV File Requirements for Importing Vcenter](#)

## CSV File Requirements for Importing Vcenter

To use a CSV file to import Vcenter from another source into Prime Infrastructure, you can download a sample template by choosing **Inventory > Compute Devices > Discover Sources**, then clicking **Bulk Import**. Click the link to download a bulk virtual discovery sample template.

For full inventory collection in Prime Infrastructure, you must provide the following values in the CSV file:

- Discovery Source
- Discovery Source Password
- Discovery Source Port
- Discovery Source User Name
- Protocol

**Related Topics**

- [Adding VMware Vcenter Servers](#)

## Monitoring Performance of Compute Resources

Prime Infrastructure monitors the managed compute resources by periodically polling the devices.

Prime Infrastructure supports periodic polling of a predefined set of key performance indicators (KPIs) related to CPU, memory, disk and network for monitoring the health of the virtual elements. Prime Infrastructure does not poll the VM directly, but it gets the data periodically from the Vcenter via the application programming interfaces (APIs). The default polling interval is 5 minutes. You can change the polling interval as described below.

**Related Topics**

- [Setting Polling Interval for Monitoring Compute Resources](#)
- [Monitoring Clusters](#)

## Setting Polling Interval for Monitoring Compute Resources

To set the polling interval:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Settings > System Settings > Datacenter Settings**.
  - Step 2** Choose the Polling Interval from the drop-down list.
  - Step 3** Click **Save**.
-

Polling can be enabled/disabled on data center, cluster and host. The children of the entity selected for polling would be automatically selected for polling. For example, if polling is enabled on a cluster, then all the hosts and VM belonging to that host would be automatically selected for polling. Click the **Start Monitoring** button on Data Center, Cluster and Hosts list view in **Compute Device** screen to enable polling.

**Related Topics**

- [Monitoring Clusters](#)

## Monitoring Clusters

If monitoring is enabled from parent (data center or cluster) then it cannot be stopped from child (host or cluster). But you can stop the monitoring enabled from child (host, cluster) by clicking **Stop Monitoring** from parent (data center, cluster).

To monitor a cluster:

- 
- |               |                                                                       |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Step 1</b> | Choose <b>Inventory &gt; Device Management &gt; Compute Devices</b> . |
| <b>Step 2</b> | Click <b>Clusters</b> in the <b>Compute Resources</b> pane.           |
| <b>Step 3</b> | Choose the clusters and click <b>Start Monitoring</b> .               |
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Setting Polling Interval for Monitoring Compute Resources](#)







## Maintaining Software Images

---

- [Setting Image Management and Distribution Preferences](#)
- [Managing Software Images](#)
- [Importing Software Images](#)
- [Changing Software Image Requirements](#)
- [Deploying Software Images to Devices](#)
- [Supported Image Format for Stack Devices](#)
- [Viewing Recommended Software Images from Cisco.com](#)
- [Analyzing Software Image Upgrades](#)

Manually upgrading your devices to the latest software version can be error prone and time consuming. Cisco Prime Infrastructure simplifies the version management and routine deployment of software updates to your devices by helping you plan, schedule, download, and monitor software image updates. You can also view software image details, view recommended software images, and delete software images.

Prime Infrastructure stores all of the software images for the devices in your network. The images are stored according to the image type and version.

Before you can upgrade software images, you must configure your devices with SNMP read-write community strings that match the community strings entered when the device was added to Prime Infrastructure.

[Table 30-1](#) describes the different processes involved in managing software images and whether the processes are supported in the Unified Wireless LAN Controllers and devices.

Table 30-1 Software Image Management Processes and Supported Devices

| Software Image Management Processes | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Unified WLCs                                                                   | 3850 Cisco IOS XE 3.2.2                                                                                                                                                                                      | 5760 Cisco IOS XE 3.2.2                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Image import from device            | Ability to import software image from devices that are already managed by Prime Infrastructure. The software image can then be distributed to other devices.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Not supported because the software image cannot be reassembled into a package. | Supported<br><b>Note</b> When the device is running in install mode, the running image will be “packages.conf”. Prime Infrastructure does not support importing of image in this format in the install mode. | Supported<br><b>Note</b> When the device is running in install mode, the running image will be “packages.conf”. Prime Infrastructure does not support importing of image in this format in the install mode. |
| Image import from file              | Ability to import software image from known location on a file server to Prime Infrastructure. The software image can then be distributed to other devices.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Supported                                                                      | Supported                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Supported                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Image import from URL               | Ability to import software image from network accessible locations (URI/URL) to Prime Infrastructure. The software image can then be distributed to other devices.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Supported                                                                      | Supported                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Supported                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Image import from Protocol          | Ability to import software image from an FTP location to Prime Infrastructure. The software image can then be distributed to other devices.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Supported                                                                      | Supported                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Supported                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Image upgrade/distribution          | Ability to upgrade software image on the managed devices from Prime Infrastructure. This allows you to upgrade the software image for multiple devices based on demand or at a later point in time as scheduled. The feedback and status are displayed during the upgrade and devices can be restarted, if required. In large deployments, you can stagger reboots so that the service at a site is not completely down during the upgrade window. | Supported                                                                      | Supported                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Supported                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

Table 30-1 Software Image Management Processes and Supported Devices (continued)

| Software Image Management Processes | Description                                                                                                                       | Unified WLCs                                                                                                                                 | 3850 Cisco IOS XE 3.2.2 | 5760 Cisco IOS XE 3.2.2 |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Image recommendation                | Ability to recommend a compatible image for the devices that are managed from Prime Infrastructure and downloaded from Cisco.com. | Not supported because the flash requirement is not available.                                                                                | Supported               | Supported               |
| Image upgrade analysis              | Ability to analyze the software images to determine the hardware upgrades required before you can perform the software upgrade.   | Not supported because there is no minimum requirement for RAM or ROM. The newly upgraded image replaces the existing image after an upgrade. | Supported               | Supported               |

## Setting Image Management and Distribution Preferences

By default, Prime Infrastructure does not collect and store device software images when it gathers inventory data from devices.

To set image management and distribution preferences:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Settings > System Settings > Image Management**.
  - Step 2** To have Prime Infrastructure automatically retrieve and store device images when it collects device inventory data, check **Collect images along with inventory collection**.
  - Step 3** Select other options as necessary. Hover your mouse cursor over on the information icon to view details about the options.  
  
The Config Protocol Order field specifies the order in which the protocol is used. For example, if SSH is listed before Telnet, SSH is used first, and Telnet is used next.
  - Step 4** Click **Save**.

- Step 5** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Software Images** and click the **Image Dashboard** icon in the top-right corner of Software Image page to view all of the software images retrieved by Prime Infrastructure. The images are organized by image type and stored in the corresponding software image group folder.
- 

## Managing Software Images

The software image dashboard displays the top software images used in your network and allows you to change image requirements, see the devices on which an image is running, and distribute images.

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Software Images** and click **Image Dashboard** in the top-right corner of Software Image page.
- Step 2** Click a software image name to display details about the image.
- Step 3** Do any of the following:
- Change image requirements. See [Changing Software Image Requirements](#).
  - View the devices on which the software image is running.
  - Distribute the image. See [Deploying Software Images to Devices](#).
- 

## Importing Software Images

It can be helpful to have a baseline of your network images by importing images from the devices in your network. You can also view recommended software images from Cisco.com.

By default, Prime Infrastructure does not automatically retrieve and store device images when it collects device inventory data. (You can change this preference as described in [Setting Image Management and Distribution Preferences](#).)

Based on a device's capabilities, Prime Infrastructure can use different protocols (SCP, TFTP, FTP) to import images from devices. For better reliability and security, we recommend you use secure protocols only (SFTP, SCP) for importing software images. We do not recommend using TFTP or FTP.

To import a software image:

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Software Images**.
- Step 2** Click **Import**.
- Step 3** Enter the source from where to import the software image. You can specify any one of the following sources:
- Device—An existing device. For Cisco Catalyst 3850 Ethernet Stackable Switch and Cisco 5760 Series Wireless Controller there are two modes for importing the software images.
    - Install mode—When the device is running in install mode, the running image will be “packages.conf”. Prime Infrastructure does not support importing of any image in install mode
    - Bundle mode—When the device is running in Bundle mode, the running image will be in “.bin” format. Prime Infrastructure supports importing of any image in bundle mode.
-

- You can check the running image in one of the following ways:
  - Choose **Inventory > Network Devices**, click the device name and click **Image** tab in the device page.
  - Use Show version command in device CLI.
- Cisco.com—Prime Infrastructure displays the recommended software images for the device type you specify, but it does not allow you to download software images directly from cisco.com. You must manually download the software image from cisco.com and then import the downloaded image file. Prime Infrastructure does not display deferred software images.
- URL—Specify the FTP URL from where you can import the software image. You can use an HTTP URL where user credentials are not required.
- Protocol—Specify the FTP location from where you want to import a software image. User credentials are required. The FTP protocol only is supported.
- File—A local file on the client machine.




---

**Note** Currently Prime Infrastructure Supports \*.bin, \*.tar, \*.aes, \*.ros, \*.pie, \*.img, \*.pkg, \*.ova and \*.gz image extensions.

---




---

**Note** For wireless LAN controllers, you can import software images from a file or a URL or using FTP Protocol only. For more information about Software Image Management Processes and Supported Devices, see [Table 30-1](#).

---

**Step 4** Specify **Collection Options** and enter the required information.

**Step 5** Specify the **Schedule** when to import the image file. You can run the job immediately or schedule it to run at a later time.




---

**Note** The image import job is non-repetitive, except for importing image from file.

---

**Step 6** Click **Submit**.

**Step 7** Choose **Administration > Dashboards > Jobs Dashboard > User Jobs > SWIM Collection** to view the status about the image collection job. The Duration field is updated after the job completes.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Deploying Software Images to Devices](#)

## Changing Software Image Requirements

To change the RAM, flash, and boot ROM requirements that a device must meet for a software image to be distributed to the device:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Software Images**.


- Step 2** Navigate to and select the software image for which you want to change requirements, then click **Image Details**.
- Step 3** Modify the necessary fields, then click **Save**. Your changes are saved in the software version in which you made the change.
- 

## Deploying Software Images to Devices

You can distribute a software image to a device or set of similar devices in a single deployment. Prime Infrastructure verifies that the device and software image are compatible.

Based on a device's capabilities, Prime Infrastructure can use different transport protocols (SCP, TFTP, FTP, SFTP) to distribute images to devices. For better reliability and security, we recommend you to use secure protocols only (SFTP, SCP) for distributing software images. We do not recommend using TFTP or FTP.

---

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Software Images**.
- Step 2** Select the software images that you want to distribute, then click **Distribute**.  
By default, the devices for which the selected image is applicable are shown.
- Step 3** Choose the image name in the Distribute Image Name field to change your selection and pick a new image, then click **Save**.
- Step 4** To change the location on the device in which to store the software image, choose the value displayed in the Distribute Location field, select a new location, then click **Save**.  
The Status and Status Message fields display the validity of the selections you made. For example, if the status is green, there is adequate space available to store the image on the specified location on the device.
- Step 5** Check the **Insert Boot Command** check box and choose **Sequentially** or **Parallely** from **Activate** drop-down list from Image Deployment options, for the scheduled device to run the new distributed image.
-  **Note** If you do not select one of these options, the device will continue to run the older image version even after the job completes successfully.
- 
- Step 6** Specify schedule options, then click **Submit**.  
The distribute image job is non-repetitive.
- Step 7** Choose **Administration > Dashboards > Job Dashboard > User Jobs > SWIM distribution** to view details about the image distribution job. The Duration field is updated after the job completes.
- 

### Device Upgrade Mode option for Cisco 5760 Series Wireless Controller and Cisco Catalyst 3850 Ethernet Stackable Switch

You can view the **Device Upgrade Mode** option only during image upgrade for Cisco 5760 Series Wireless Controller and Cisco Catalyst 3850 Ethernet Stackable Switch. [Table 30-2](#) describes the possible device upgrade options and the corresponding image format for Cisco 5760 Series Wireless Controller and Cisco Catalyst 3850 Ethernet Stackable Switch.

**Table 30-2** Upgrade/ Downgrade Mode Options

| Device Upgrade Mode                            | Device Image Format Before Distribution | Device Image Format After Distribution |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Change Install mode to Bundle mode             | packages.conf                           | .bin                                   |
| Change Install mode to Currently Existing mode | packages.conf                           | packages.conf                          |
| Change Bundle mode to Currently Existing mode  | .bin                                    | .bin                                   |
| Change Bundle mode to Install mode             | .bin                                    | packages.conf                          |

If the image distribution status is “Success”, you can check the new image version using any of the following options:

- Choose **Inventory > Network > Network Devices**.
  - View the **Software Version** column in the Network Devices page.
  - Click the device name and click the **Image** tab.
- Use the **show version** command in the device CLI.

## Supported Image Format for Stack Devices

Prime Infrastructure supports only .tar images for upgrade and downgrade for stacked devices. Stack device do not support .bin format. The list of supported stack devices are:

- Stack of CBS3100 switch modules
- Cisco Catalyst Switch Module 3110X for IBM Blade Center
- Cisco Catalyst Blade Switch 3120X for HP
- Cisco Catalyst Blade Switch 3130X for Dell M1000E
- Cisco Catalyst 2975 Switch
- Cisco 3750 Stackable Switches
- Cisco Catalyst 29xx Stack-able Ethernet Switch
- Cisco ME 3600X-24FS-M Switch
- Cisco ME 3600X-24TS-M Switch
- Cisco ME 3800X-24FS-M Switch Router



**Note** Cisco Catalyst 3650 and 3850 switches do not have .tar images on Cisco.com. For these switches, Prime Infrastructure supports .bin format.

## Viewing Recommended Software Images from Cisco.com

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Software Images**.
- Step 2** Navigate to and select the software image for which you want to change requirements, then click **Image Details**.

- Step 3** Choose one of the following image sources:
- **Recommend Image from Cisco.com** to select an image available on Cisco.com. Specify options, click **Start Recommendation**, then skip ahead to Step 5.  
Prime Infrastructure displays recommended software images for your specific device types, but it does not allow you to download software images directly from cisco.com. You must manually download software images from cisco.com and then import the downloaded image file. Prime Infrastructure does not display deferred software images.
  - **Select Image from Local Repository** to select an image stored locally. Then, under Local Repository:
    - Select the **Show All Images** check box to display all images available in the Prime Infrastructure repository.
    - Unselect the **Show All Images** check box to display the software images applicable to the selected device.
- Step 4** Select the image to distribute, then click **Apply**.
- Step 5** Choose the image name in the Distribute Image Name field to change your selection and pick a new image, then click **Save**.
- Step 6** Specify Distribution Options. You can change the default options in **Administration > Settings > System Settings > Image Management**.
- Step 7** Specify schedule options, then click **Submit**.
- 

## Analyzing Software Image Upgrades

Prime Infrastructure can generate an Upgrade Analysis report to help you determine prerequisites for a new software image deployment. These reports analyze the software images to determine the hardware upgrades (boot ROM, flash memory, RAM, and boot flash, if applicable) required before you can perform the software upgrade.

The Upgrade Analysis report answers the following questions:

- Does the device have sufficient RAM to hold the new software?
- Is the device's flash memory large enough to hold the new software?

To analyze software image upgrades:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Software Images**.
- Step 2** Click **Upgrade Analysis**.
- Step 3** Choose the source of the software image that you want to analyze.
- Step 4** Select the devices on which to analyze the software image.
- Step 5** Select the images to analyze for the selected devices.
- Step 6** Click **Run Report**.
-





## CHAPTER 31

# Working with Device Configurations

---

Cisco Prime Infrastructure archives device configurations and provides information such as the date of last configuration change, status of the configuration jobs, and allows you to compare current and previous configurations. Prime Infrastructure also allows you to roll back to a previously saved configuration in the archive if a configuration deployment fails.

- [Configuration Archives](#)
- [Changing Prime Infrastructure Device Configuration Settings](#)
- [Comparing Current and Previous Device Configurations](#)
- [Scheduling Configuration Archive Tasks](#)
- [Overview of Device Configurations](#)
- [Configuration Rollbacks](#)
- [Rolling Back Device Configuration Versions](#)
- [Deleting Device Configurations](#)

## Configuration Archives

Prime Infrastructure attempts to collect and archive the following device configuration files:

- Startup configuration
- Running configuration
- VLAN configuration, if configured

A configuration archive is created if there is a change between the last archived configuration and the current running configuration only. You can specify how Prime Infrastructure archives the configurations:

- **On demand**—You can have Prime Infrastructure collect the configurations of selected devices by choosing **Inventory > Configuration Archive** and selecting the option to schedule the archive immediately.
- **Scheduled**—You can schedule when Prime Infrastructure collects the configurations of selected devices and specify recurring collections by choosing **Inventory > Device Configuration Archive**, then clicking **Schedule Archive**.

You can schedule to have Prime Infrastructure copy the running configuration to the startup configuration by choosing **Inventory > Device Configuration Archive**, then clicking **Schedule Overwrite**.

- During inventory—You can have Prime Infrastructure collect device configurations during the inventory collection process. See [Changing Prime Infrastructure Device Configuration Settings](#) for more information.
- Based on Syslogs— If device is configured to send syslogs, when there is any device configuration change, Prime Infrastructure collects and stores the configuration.

## Changing Prime Infrastructure Device Configuration Settings

By default, Prime Infrastructure has the following configuration settings:

- Does not back up the running configuration before pushing configuration changes to a device.
- Does not attempt to roll back to the previously saved configuration in the archive if the configuration deployment fails
- When pushing CLI to a device, uses 5 thread pools.

To change the default configuration settings:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Settings > System Settings**, then click **Configuration**.
- Click **Backup Running Configuration** to have Prime Infrastructure back up the running configuration before pushing configuration changes to a device.
  - Click **Rollback Configuration** to have Prime Infrastructure attempt to roll back to the previously saved configuration in the archive if the configuration deployment fails.
- Step 2** Click **Save**.
- 

## Changing Prime Infrastructure Configuration Archive Collection Settings

By default, Prime Infrastructure has the following Configuration Archive collection settings:

- Collects device configuration after Inventory Sync.
- Does not collect device configuration based on syslog events.

To change the default configuration settings:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Settings > System Settings**, then click **Configuration Archive**.
- Step 2** Select the **Archive Configuration on receiving configuration change events** check box so that Prime Infrastructure can collect and store the configuration based on syslog configuration change events. For more information about the supported Syslog formats, see [Supported Syslog Formats for Configuration Archive Collection Settings](#).
- Step 3** Click **Save**.
-

## Supported Syslog Formats for Configuration Archive Collection Settings

The following are the supported Syslog formats. Prime Infrastructure collects the configuration details if the device syslog matches any one of the following conditions:

- Message Type is any one of the following:  
OIR-6-INSCARD, SNMP-5-COLDSTART, SYS-5-RELOAD,  
CPU\_REDUN-6-BOOTED\_AS\_ACTIVE, CPU\_REDUN-5-SWITCHOVER, SYS-5-ONLINE,  
OIR-6-INSCARD, CPU\_REDUN-6-RUNNING\_CONFIG\_CHG,  
CPU\_REDUN-5-RCSF\_SYNCED, CPU\_REDUN-6-STARTUP\_CONFIG\_CHG,  
CPU\_REDUN-5-STARTUP\_CONFIG\_SYNCED, PIX-5-111005, SYS-5-CONFIG\_L,  
SYS-5-CONFIG\_M, SYS-5-CONFIG\_NV, SYS-5-CONFIG\_NV\_M, SYS-6-CFG\_CH,  
SYS-3-CPUHOG, IP-4-DUPADDR, FW-3-FTP\_SESSION\_NOT\_AUTHENTICATED,  
FW-3-FTP\_PRIV\_PORT, FW-3-SMTP\_INVALID\_COMMAND, FW-3-HTTP\_JAVA\_BLOCK,  
FW-4-ALERT\_ON, FW-4-ALERT\_OFF, FW-4-HOST\_TCP\_ALERT\_ONLOG\_WARNING,  
FW-4-UNBLOCK\_HOST, FW-2-BLOCK\_HOST, SYS-2-MALLOCFAIL, LINK-3-UPDOWN,  
FW-6-SESS\_AUDIT\_TRAIL, PIX-6-302001, PIX-6-302002, PIX-6-304001,  
LINEPROTO-5-UPDOWN, LINK-5-CHANGED, LINK-5-UPDOWN, CHAS-0-FATAL,  
CHAS-3-ERROR, CHAS-4-WARN, SNMP-5-CONF, PORT-5-CONF, CHAS-5-CONF,  
DIAG-5-CONF, RTT-6-SAATHRESHOLD, ILPOWER-3-SHUT\_OVERDRAWN,  
ILPOWER-4-LOG\_OVERDRAWN
- FACILITY is any one of the following:  
RESTART, CONFIG, ENV, ENVM, FLASH, HA\_EM, AUTOSMARTPORT, SMI
- MNEMONIC is any one of the following:  
RESTART, CONFIG\_I, CONFIG, OIR, PSECURE\_VIOLATION,  
PSECURE\_VIOLATION\_VLAN, VLAN\_REMOVED, ADDRESSES\_REMOVED,  
VLAN\_FULL, DHCP\_SNOOPING\_ERRDISABLE\_WARNING,  
DHCP\_SNOOPING\_RATE\_LIMIT\_EXCEEDED, DHCP\_SNOOPING\_UNTRUSTED\_PORT,  
DHCP\_SNOOPING\_MATCH\_MAC\_FAIL, INVALID\_ARP, ACL\_DENY,  
DHCP\_SNOOPING\_DENY, ACL\_PERMIT, DHCP\_SNOOPING\_PERMIT,  
PACKET\_RATE\_EXCEEDED, PACKET\_BURST\_RATE\_EXCEEDED,  
IP\_SOURCE\_GUARD\_DENY\_PACKET
- Message Type is Nodemgr-5-CE and message text contains 'REBOOT'.
- Message Type is SYS-6-CFG\_CHG and message text contains 'telnet', 'Console', 'SNMP', or 'ssh'.
- FACILITY is ACE and MNEMONIC is 111008.
- FACILITY is FWSM and MNEMONIC is 111008 and Message text contains 'configure terminal'.
- FACILITY is ASA and MNEMONIC is 111010.
- FACILITY is PIX and MNEMONIC is either one of the following:  
106010, 307001, 106001, 106006, 106002, 106003, 106004, 106005, 106008, 106009, 106011,  
106012.
- FACILITY ends with DIAG.
- FACILITY is VSHD and MNEMONIC is VSHD\_SYSLOG\_CONFIG\_I.

## Comparing Current and Previous Device Configurations

To compare a current device configuration with a previous version:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Configuration Archive**.
- Step 2** Click the expand icon for the device whose configuration you want to view. Then click the expand icon again to view the specific configuration version that you want to compare.
- Step 3** In the Compare With column, choose the configuration for which you want to compare the configuration that you selected in the previous step.
- The color key at the bottom of the report shows the differences between the configurations you selected.
- 

## Scheduling Configuration Archive Tasks

When you choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, click on a device name, then click the **Configuration Archive** tab, Prime Infrastructure allows you to schedule the following configuration archive tasks:

- Schedule Rollback—Specify when to roll back the running configuration, startup configuration, or both configurations.
- Schedule Overwrite—Specify when to copy the running configuration to the startup configuration.
- Schedule Archive—Specify when to archive the configuration.
- Schedule Deploy—You can schedule when to deploy the configuration and also specify to:
  - Overwrite the startup configuration. This option is applicable for devices that have a startup configuration only.
  - Merge the configuration with the running configuration

## Overview of Device Configurations

You can change a device's configuration in two ways:

- **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**—To change the configuration of a single device. See [Changing a Single Device Configuration](#).
- **Configuration > Templates**—To change the configuration of more than one device and apply a common set of changes, use a configuration template to make the changes.

Prime Infrastructure provides the following default configuration templates:

- CLI templates—CLI templates are user-defined and created based on your own parameters. CLI templates allow you to select the elements in the configurations. Prime Infrastructure provides variables which you replace with actual values and logic statements. You can also import templates from Cisco Prime LAN Management System. See [Creating CLI Templates](#).
- Feature and technology templates—Feature templates are configurations that are specific to a feature or technology in a device's configuration. See [Creating Features and Technologies Templates](#).
- Composite templates—Composite templates are two or more feature or CLI templates grouped together into one template. You specify the order in which the templates contained in the composite template are deployed to devices. See [Creating Composite Templates](#).

## Changing a Single Device Configuration

---

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, then click a device name.  
The device details appear in the lower part of the page.
- Step 2** Click the **Configuration** tab.  
The Feature Selector displays the values, organized into features, for the device that you selected.
- Step 3** Select the feature that you want to change, then make the necessary changes.
- Step 4** Click **Save** to save your configuration changes in the Prime Infrastructure database. (To view the status of the configuration change, choose **Administration > Jobs**.)
- 

## Adding a Wireless LAN Controller

The Cisco Unified Wireless Network (CUWN) solution is based on Wireless LAN Controllers running Aireospace Operating System. The wireless LAN controller models include 2100, 2500, 4400, WiSM/WiSM2 (6500 service module), 5500, 7500, 8500. In this solution, access points tunnel the wireless traffic to the controllers through CAPWAP.

The Cisco Unified Access (UA) Wireless Solution is new architecture that provides a converged model where you can manage your wired and wireless network configurations in the same place. This solution includes the 3850 series switch with integrated wireless support. The solution also includes the 5760 series wireless controller, which can act as an aggregation point for many 3850 switches. This platform is based on IOS-XE, so the command structure is similar to other IOS products. In this solution, the wireless traffic can terminate directly on the 3850 switch, so that it can be treated in a similar mode to a wired connection on the switch.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
- Step 2** Click **Add Device**. The Add Device page appears.
- Step 3** In the Add Device page, enter the necessary parameters.
- Step 4** Click **Add**.
- 

## Changing Wireless LAN Controller Configuration Settings

---

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
- Step 2** Expand Device Type, and then click **Wireless Controller**.
- Step 3** Select the controller that you want to change. The Network Devices page contains configuration functions at the bottom of the page. For details, see [Monitoring Network Devices](#).
- Step 4** Click the **Configure** tab, then make the necessary changes.
- Step 5** Click **Save**.
-

## Rebooting Controllers

**Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.

**Step 2** Expand Device Type, and then click **Wireless Controller**.

**Step 3** Select the check box(es) of the applicable controller(s).

**Step 4** From the Reboot drop-down list, choose **Reboot Controllers**.



**Note** Save the current controller configuration prior to rebooting.

**Step 5** Select the Reboot Controller options that must be applied.

- Save Config to Flash—Data is saved to the controller in non-volatile RAM (NVRAM) and is preserved in the event of a power cycle. If the controller is rebooted, all applied changes are lost unless the configuration has been saved.
- Reboot APs—Select the check box to enable a reboot of the access point after making any other updates.
- Swap AP Image—Indicates whether or not to reboot controllers and APs by swapping AP images. This could be either Yes or No.



**Note** Options are disabled unless the Reboot APs check box is selected.

**Step 6** Click **OK** to reboot the controller with the optional configuration selected.

## Configuration Rollbacks

You can change the configuration on a device with a configuration stored in Prime Infrastructure. You can select a single archived version to which you want to “rollback.”

During the configuration rollback process, the configuration is converted into a set of commands which are then executed sequentially on the device.

When rolling back a configuration file you can specify the following options:

- The type of configuration file to which to rollback, for example running or startup configuration
- Whether to sync the running and startup configurations after rolling back the running configuration
- If rolling back a startup configuration only, specify to reboot the device so that startup configuration becomes the running configuration
- Before rolling back the configuration, specify whether to create new archived versions. You can also specify whether to continue the rollback if the archived configuration fails.

## Rolling Back Device Configuration Versions

You can use Prime Infrastructure to rollback a device’s configuration to a previous version of the configuration.

To roll back a configuration change.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Configuration Archive**.
  - Step 2** Click the expand icon for the device whose configuration you want to roll back.
  - Step 3** Click the specific configuration version that you want to roll back, then click **Schedule Rollback**.
  - Step 4** Specify the rollback and scheduling options.
  - Step 5** Click **Submit**.
- 

## Deleting Device Configurations

By default, Prime Infrastructure archives up to five device configuration versions for each device for seven days after:

- Every inventory collection
- Prime Infrastructure receives a configuration change event

You cannot delete configuration versions, but older configuration versions are replaced by newer configuration versions.

To change the number of configurations that Prime Infrastructure retains:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Settings > System Settings**, then click **Configuration Archive**.
  - Step 2** Enter a new value in the Number of Versions field. To archive an unlimited number of configuration versions, unselect the **Number of version to retain** and **Number of days to retain** check boxes.
  - Step 3** Click **Save**.
-







## Grouping Devices, Ports and Data Center

---

You can create your own logical grouping of devices, ports and data center to enable efficient update and management of your device and data center. For example, you can create a device group that includes devices with a particular module. If you later want to configure a feature related specifically to that module, you use the device group that you created to push the configuration change to all of the devices contained in the group.

### Types of Groups

You can use groups to filter views of devices and their associated alarms, control which network topology to view, and perform bulk operations (such as configuration changes and software updates) on sets of devices. Grouping not only saves you time when configuring multiple devices, but it also ensures that configuration settings are applied consistently across your network.

Prime Infrastructure provides the following types of grouping:

- **Device type groups**—By default, Prime Infrastructure creates rule-based device groups and assigns devices to the appropriate Device Type folder. You cannot edit these device groups. You can view the rules for a device group by hovering your mouse cursor over the device group folder. The device type groups are not used for network topology maps.
- **User defined groups**—Create your own device groups based. These groups can be static or dynamic.
- **Location groups**—Create location-based groups. For example, if you have devices that reside in different time zones, you can create location groups based on geographic regions so that the devices in one group can have a different time zone setting from the devices in another group.
- **Port groups**—Create port groups to simplify monitoring and configuring ports.

In smaller deployments where all devices can be configured with the same settings, you may only need to create one general device group. This setup allows you to configure settings for the group, and then apply those settings consistently across all of your devices.

You cannot control which users have access to which device groups. All users can see all device groups. For role-based access control (RBAC), you need to create sites and virtual domains.

#### Related Topics

- [Creating Device Groups](#)
- [Using Location Groups](#)
- [Creating Location Groups](#)
- [Creating Groups of Ports](#)

# Creating Device Groups

You can create the following device groups:

- **Static**—Create and name a new device group to which you can add devices from **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices** or from **Inventory > Group Management > Network Device Groups**.
- **Dynamic**—Create and name a new device group and specify the rules to which devices must comply before they are added to this device group. You can select one of the rules such as Description (sysDescr), Location (sysLocation), Management address, Device name, Product Family, Product Series, Product type, Software type and Software version. You do not add devices to dynamic groups. Prime Infrastructure adds devices that match the specified rules to the dynamic group from **Inventory > Group Management > Network Device Groups** or from **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
- **Mixed**—Create and name a new device group to which you can add devices manually and specify the rules to which devices must comply before they are added to this device group from **Inventory > Group Management > Network Device Groups** or from **Inventory > Device Management > Network Device**.

Before you create a device group, make sure that you understand the unique properties that you want the group to contain. For example, you may want to set up two device groups that have different authentication settings or different time zone settings.

**Note**

---

While there is no limit to the number of rules that you can specify for a dynamic group, as the number of rules increases, the group update performance could become slower.

---

To create a device group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices** or **Inventory > Group Management > Network Device Groups**.
  - Step 2** In the **Device Groups** pane on the left, perform one of the following tasks:
    - Click the expand icon next to **User Defined** and click **Add SubGroup**.
    - Click the add icon and choose **Create User Defined Group** from the drop-down list.
  - Step 3** Enter the group name and group description, and select a parent group, if applicable.
  - Step 4** Specify whether you want to create a dynamic or static group:
  - Step 5** To create a dynamic group, in the **Add Devices Dynamically** group box, specify the rules that you want to apply to the devices in the group. Click **Preview** to view the devices that are automatically added to the group based on the specified rule and the manually added devices.

You can create a rule using the UDF labels defined in **Administration > Settings > System Settings > User Defined Field**.

To create a static group, in the **Add Devices Manually** group box, click **Add**, then choose the devices that you want to assign to the group.
  - Step 6** Click **Save** to add the device group with the settings that you specified.

The device group that you created appears under the user-defined groups.
-

**Related Topics**

- [Types of Groups](#)
- [Using Location Groups](#)
- [Creating Location Groups](#)
- [Creating Groups of Ports](#)

## Using Location Groups

Location groups allow you to group devices by location. You can create a hierarchy of location groups (such as theater, country, region, campus, building, and floor) by adding devices manually or by adding devices dynamically.

A device should appear in one location group only, though a higher level “parent” group will also contain that device. For example, a device that belongs to a *building* location group might also indirectly belong to the parent *campus* group.

By default, the top location of the hierarchy is the **All Locations** group. All devices that have not been assigned to a location appear under the Unassigned group under All Locations.

**Related Topics**

- [Types of Groups](#)
- [Using Location Groups](#)
- [Creating Location Groups](#)
- [Creating Groups of Ports](#)

## Creating Location Groups

To create a location groups, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Group Management > Network Device Groups** or **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** In the **Device Groups** pane on the left, perform one of the following tasks:
    - Click the expand icon next to **Location** and click **Add SubGroup**.
    - Click the add icon and choose **Create Location Group** from the drop-down list.
  - Step 3** In the **Device Groups** pane on the left, click the expand icon next to **Location** and click **Add SubGroup**.
  - Step 4** Enter the group name and group description, and select a parent group, if applicable.
  - Step 5** In the **Add Devices Dynamically** group box, specify the rules that you want to apply to the devices in the group.
  - Step 6** In the **Add Devices Manually** group box, choose the devices that you want to assign to the group.
  - Step 7** Click **Preview** to view the devices that are automatically added to the group based on the specified rule and the manually added devices.
  - Step 8** Click **Save** to add the device group with the settings that you specified.
-

**Related Topics**

- [Types of Groups](#)
- [Creating Device Groups](#)
- [Using Location Groups](#)
- [Creating Groups of Ports](#)

## Location Groups and Wireless Maps

The location groups you create are separate and independent from wireless maps (**Maps > Wireless Maps > Site Maps**), though you'll want to make sure they are similar in structure. Therefore, if you add a new site under **Maps > Wireless Maps > Site Maps**, you should create a new location group (**Inventory > Group Management > Network Device Groups**) with the same name and devices.

## Editing User Defined and Location Groups

You can change the parent group, add devices, and modify device rules using the edit option.

To edit a group follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Group Management > Network Device Groups**.
  - Step 2** In the **Device Groups** pane on the left, click on the name of the group you want to edit.
  - Step 3** Click **Edit** and modify the details.
  - Step 4** Click **Preview** to view the updated device details.
  - Step 5** Click **Save** to save the updated device details.
- 

## Duplicating User Defined and Location Groups

You can duplicate a group using the **Duplicate Group** option in quick view. The duplicated group contains all of the values entered by the user in the UI for a group. The populated group name will have a prefix of 'CopyOf' by default. You can change the name, if required.

If you duplicate a child group, a copy of child group is created under the same parent group.

To duplicate a group follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Group Management > Network Device Groups**.
  - Step 2** In the **Device Groups** pane on the left, click the icon next to the name of the group you want to duplicate.
  - Step 3** Click **Duplicate Group** and update the device details.
  - Step 4** Click **Preview** to view the updated device details.
  - Step 5** Click **Save** to save the updated device details.
-

## Deleting User Defined and Location Groups

You can delete a group using **Delete Group** option in quick view. You can delete a group only if the group does not have any immediate child group.

To delete a location group follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Group Management > Network Device Groups** or **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** In the **Device Groups** pane on the left, click the expand icon next to name of the group you want to delete, and click **Delete Group**.
  - Step 3** Click **OK** in the popup window to delete the selected group.
- 

## Device Accessibility in Parent-Child Device and Location Groups

The device inheritance in parent-child user defined and location groups are as follows:

- User Defined Group—When you create a child group under a parent device group, the devices accessible to the child group depend on the device group that you create:
  - If the parent and child group are both dynamic device groups, the child group can access the devices available in the parent group only.
  - If the parent group is a static device group and the child group is a dynamic group, the child group is not limited to the devices available in the parent group.
  - In dynamic and mixed device groups the child group “inherits” its devices from the parent device group.
- Location Group—The parent group is a superset of all the child groups and inherits the child group devices.

## Hiding Empty Groups

A device or port group might be empty if:

- You created a group in which no devices are added manually or dynamically.
- You created a static group and have not added devices to the group.
- You created a dynamic group in which no devices matched the rules that you specified for the dynamic group.

By default, Prime Infrastructure displays empty groups. If you do not want to display empty groups, choose **Administration > Settings > System Settings > Inventory > Grouping**, then unselect **Display groups with no members** check box.

## Creating Groups of Ports

Creating a port group helps you simplify monitoring and configuration tasks. For example, you might want to create a port group that contains all WAN ports so that you can easily monitor these key ports. By default, port groups are based on interface type.

A port group that you create can be one of three types:

- **Static**—Create and name a new port group to which you can add interfaces using the **Add to Group** from **Inventory > Group Management > Port Groups**.
- **Dynamic**—Create and name a new port group. Specify rules to which ports or interfaces must comply before they can be added to this port group.
- **Mixed**—Create and name a new port group to which you can add interfaces manually. Specify rules such as Name, Speed, Description and Type to which the interfaces must comply before they are added to this port group from **Inventory > Group Management > Port Groups**.



**Note** While there is no limit on the number of rules that you can specify for a dynamic group, as the number of rules increases, the group update performance could become slower.

To create a port group follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Group Management > Port Groups**.
  - Step 2** In the Port Groups pane on the left, mouse hover the expand icon next to the **User Defined** group and click **Add SubGroup**.
  - Step 3** Enter the name, description, and parent group if applicable.
  - Step 4** Select whether the group is static or dynamic:
    - **Static**—Click **Add** under **Add Ports Manually**. The ports of the selected device is displayed. Choose the ports for adding to the group based on your needs.
    - **Dynamic**—You must specify rules to which ports must comply before they are added to this port group. You do not add ports to dynamic groups. Prime Infrastructure adds ports that match the specified rules to the dynamic group.
  - Step 5** Click **Save**.
- 

## Creating Device Context or Group Context Port Groups

The Device Context Selection option enables you to group ports for a specific device group.

To create a port group for a specific device or group:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Group Management > Port Groups**.
  - Step 2** In the Port Groups pane on the left, mouse hover the expand icon next to the **User Defined** group and click **Add SubGroup**.
  - Step 3** Enter the name, description, and parent group if applicable.
  - Step 4** Click the **Device Selection** drop-down arrow.

- Step 5** For creating port groups in device context:
- Click the **Device** radio button and select any one of the devices from the list of devices displayed.
  - Adding Port Statically—Click **Add** under **Add Ports Manually**. The ports of the selected device is displayed. Choose the ports for adding to the group based on your needs.  
Adding Port Dynamically—Specify the rules to which ports of the selected device must comply before they are added to this port group. You do not add ports to dynamic group. Prime Infrastructure adds ports that match the specified rules to the dynamic group
  - Click **Preview** to view the ports that are automatically added based on the specified rule and the manually added ports, and click **Save**.
- Step 6** For creating port groups in Device Group context:
- Click the **Device Group** radio button and select any one of the device groups from the list of device and location groups displayed.
  - Adding Port Statically—Click **Add** under **Add Ports Manually**. The ports of the selected device is displayed. Choose the ports for adding to the group based on your needs.  
Adding Port Dynamically—Specify the rules to which ports of the selected device must comply before they are added to this port group. You do not add ports to dynamic groups. Prime Infrastructure adds ports that match the specified rules to the dynamic group
  - Click **Preview** to view the ports that are automatically added based on the specified rule and the manually added ports, and click **Save**.
- 

## Understanding System Defined Port Groups

Prime Infrastructure supports four types of system defined port groups. As and when new devices are added to the system, the ports of the devices are automatically assigned to the respective groups.

- **Trunk Ports**—Ports that are connected to a Cisco device or other network devices (Switch/Router/Firewall/Third party devices) and operating on “Trunk” mode in which they carry traffic for all VLANs.
- **Link Ports**—Ports that are connected to another Cisco device or other network devices and are operating on “VLAN” mode and are assigned to a VLAN.
- **Access Ports**—Ports that are connected to an end host, IP phone, servers, Access Points (AP) or video end points and operating on “Access” mode in which they carry traffic for only one particular VLAN.
- **Unconnected Ports**—Ports are unconnected if any or all of the below are valid:
  - Not connected to any device.
  - Operational status is down.
  - Administrative status is down.



**Note** The ports in this group can not be deleted and neither can this group be created as a sub group. If the status of a port goes down, it is automatically added to Unconnected Port group.

---

## Adding Access Points (AP) to Device Group or Location Group

You can add AP under the Device or Location group.

To Add AP to device group:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Group Management > Network Device Groups**.
- Step 2** In the Device Groups pane on the left, mouse hover the expand icon next to the **User Defined** and click **Add SubGroup**.
- Step 3** Enter the name, description, and parent group if applicable.
- Step 4** Add APs in one of the following ways:
- **Static**—Click **Add** under **Add Devices Manually** and select APs to be added to the group, based on your need.
  - **Dynamic**—Specify rules to which APs must comply before they are added to this port group. You do not add APs to dynamic groups. Prime Infrastructure adds APs that match the specified rules to the dynamic group.
- Step 5** Click **Preview** to view the APs that are automatically added to the group based on the specified rule and the manually added APs.
- Step 6** Click **Save**.
- If the group has 'Unified AP' or 'Third Party AP' as its member, a new tab is added in the right hand table in the Device Work Center, to display the APs.
- 

## Creating Customized Port Groups

You can create a customized, user-defined port group that contains devices or interfaces on which you want to apply configuration changes in one operation.

To create a customized port group follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Group Management > Port Groups**.
- Step 2** In the Device Groups pane on the left, mouse hover the expand icon next to the **User Defined** and click **Add SubGroup**.
- Leave the default Parent Group text box entry as **User Defined**.
- Step 3** Enter a group name and description, then select whether the group is static or dynamic:
- **Static**—Click **Add** under **Add Ports Manually**. The ports of the selected device is displayed. Choose the ports for adding to the group based on your needs.
  - **Dynamic**—You must specify rules to which ports must comply before they are added to this port group. You do not add ports to dynamic groups. Prime Infrastructure adds ports that match the specified rules to the dynamic group.
- The port group that you created appears under the User Defined folder.
- Step 4** Click **Save**.
-



# Grouping Integration with Data Center

In addition to the out-of-box groups for data center and cluster, you can create multiple user-defined groups for VMs and hosts.

To create user defined Hosts and VMs groups, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Compute Devices > User Defined Hosts and VMs**.
  - Step 2** Hover your mouse over the expand icon and click **Add SubGroup**.
  - Step 3** Enter the group name and group description, and select a parent group, if applicable.
  - Step 4** In the **Add Devices Dynamically** pane, specify the rules that you want to apply to the devices in the group.
  - Step 5** In the **Add Devices Manually** pane, choose the devices that you want to assign to the group.
  - Step 6** Click **Preview** to view the devices that are automatically added to the group based on the specified rule and the manually added devices.
  - Step 7** Click **Save** to add the device group with the settings that you specified.
-





## **PART 7**

### **Visualizing the Network**

This part contains the following sections:

- [Using Network Topology Maps](#)
- [Using Wireless Maps](#)





## Using Network Topology Maps

---

Cisco Prime Infrastructure provides a visual map of your network's physical topology, including the network devices and the links that connect them. The topology maps have indicators that show the current alarm status of network devices and links. Using these network topology maps, you can easily monitor your network by viewing alarms in the context of the interconnection between devices.

- [Network Topology Overview](#)
- [Viewing Detailed Tables of Alarms and Links](#)
- [Determining What is Displayed in the Topology Map](#)
- [Getting More Information About Devices](#)
- [Getting More Information About Links](#)
- [Viewing Fault Information for Devices and Links](#)
- [Creating a Topology Dashlet](#)
- [Changing the Topology Map Layout](#)
- [Saving the Topology Map Layout](#)
- [Saving the Topology Map as an Image File](#)
- [Creating a Topology Dashlet](#)

# Network Topology Overview

Prime Infrastructure topology maps are based on Location and User Defined groups (see “Types of Groups” in Related Topics). Topology maps show the devices in the group as well as any links between the devices.

The links between devices are discovered using the Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP). If Prime Infrastructure is unable to discover some links, for example, if CDP is disabled on an interface, you can manually add the link to the topology map, and the associate the link with a specific interface on the appropriate managed device.

You can also add “unmanaged devices” or “unmanaged network” icons to a topology map and add links between these unmanaged objects and managed devices in the topology map (see “Adding Unmanaged Devices and Links to Topology Maps” in Related Topics).

You can add autonomous APs to Prime Infrastructure topology maps, but you cannot add Unified APs.

The Network Topology window presents a graphical, topological map view of the devices, the links between them, and the active alarms on the devices or links. The Network Topology window also provides access to information and functions relating to device groups, alarms, and links, and allows you to drill down to get detailed information about the devices displayed in the topology map.

The Network Topology window is accessed from the left sidebar (**Maps > Network Topology**) and consists of the following panes:

- **Device Groups**—Lists the device groups that exist in the system, both Location-based groups and custom, user-defined Device groups. The groups pane is critical because the content of all the other panes in the Network Topology window (as shown in the figure below) is determined by the group that is selected in the Groups pane. From the Groups pane you can access the central device grouping functionality to create new groups, add devices to groups, and so on. For more information, see “Creating Device Groups” and “Creating Location Groups” in Related Topics.
- **Alarm Summary**—Shows all the current alarms for the selected group, categorized by alarm severity. You can access more detailed alarm information by clicking the Show Alarms Table link at the bottom of the pane or by clicking on an alarm severity category, in which case the alarms table is filtered by the selected severity.
- **Links**—Provides access to the Link Table that lists all the links between devices that relevant to the selected group and provides additional link information. Selecting a link in the table highlights the link in the topology map.
- **Topology Map**—The central, largest pane in the Network Topology window displays the topology of the selected device group in graphical form. It displays the group’s devices and sub-groups (if any) and the links between them. It also displays the active alarms on the devices or links so that you can easily identify problems in the network. You can drill down from the topology map to detailed information about a device or link in order to troubleshoot problems. You can customize, filter and manipulate the topology map to show exactly the information you need.

404590

|   |                                                                                        |   |                                                      |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Topology toolbar                                                                       | 2 | Device Groups pane                                   |
| 3 | Topology Map pane                                                                      | 4 | Detach icon. Click the icon to open a detail window. |
| 5 | Alarm Summary pane. Click <b>Show Alarms Table</b> to display the alarm detail window. | 6 | Links pane                                           |

### Related Topics

- [Types of Groups](#)
- [Creating a Topology Dashlet](#)
- [Creating Device Groups](#)
- [Creating Location Groups](#)
- [Understanding Topology Map Functions and Icons](#)
- [Navigating in Topology Maps](#)
- [Topology Map Icons](#)
- [Before Using Topology Maps](#)

## Understanding Topology Map Functions and Icons

From the Device Group selector on the left, expand the Location or User Defined group and click on a group. By default, the **Location > All Locations > Unassigned** group contains all network devices that you have not assigned to any other location group.

When you select a network device group, the topology map for the devices contained in that group is displayed, including any discovered links connecting the devices. Links to devices outside the map are not displayed.

The following options at the of the topology pane provide additional features:

- **Overview**—Displays an overview window in lower right corner of the topology window, which shows the full map and, if you have zoomed in on the map, the currently viewable portion of the map.
- **Search**—To find a specific device in your network topology, enter a device hostname or IP address, or substring, for the device in the topology Search field. If a device was moved from its initial deployed location but is still on the network, you can use the network topology search to locate the device.
- **Layout**—Choose a layout option or specify one of these options:
  - **Incremental Layout**—Choose this option when creating a manual or custom layout to re-render links and clean up overlaps before saving it as a Manual Layout.
  - **Save Current Layout**—Choose this option to save the selected layout for the map.
  - **Load Saved Layout**—Choose this option to load a previously saved layout for this map
- **Create Element**—You can create an unmanaged device (represented by a generic icon) or an unmanaged network (represented by a cloud icon). You can also create links between objects.

To show the interface and link status for a created link, click on the created link that connects one more managed devices, then click **Edit Interface Assignment** to assign the link to the appropriate interface on the managed device.

### Related Topics

- [Navigating in Topology Maps](#)
- [Network Topology Overview](#)

## Navigating in Topology Maps

In a topology map, icons represent network devices or groups of devices. You can click on the icon for a group to bring up the information summary, which shows the group name and alarm summary. You can view the contents of a group in two ways:

- Click on a device group icon, then in the summary panel that appears, click **Drill Down Group**.
- From the Device Group navigation pane, find the group in the hierarchy and click on the group name.

In addition to the summary information, you can also click on a device or group icon, or a link to get additional tools, such as the device 360° view.

### Related Topics

- [Understanding Topology Map Functions and Icons](#)
- [Network Topology Overview](#)



## Topology Map Icons

In topology maps, device icons reflect the device alarm state and correspond to the most severe alarm currently active for the device, which can be minor, major, or critical. Similarly, group icons indicate whether any devices within the group have active alarms.

Click on a device or group icon, or a link to display summary information and additional tools, such as the Device 360° View.

Icons on the topology maps display network fault information:

- If a device is currently down or unreachable, the device icon is gray.
- If a device has an alarm associated with it, an alarm badge is displayed on the device icon on the topology map. The color of the alarm badge corresponds with the alarm severity—minor (yellow), major (orange), or critical (red)—and matches the alarms displayed in the Alarm Browser.
- A *link down* alarm generates an alarm badge on the associated link in the topology map. After the *link up* alarm is received, the alarms and corresponding badges are cleared.
- The alarm badges on group icons represent the most severe alarm currently active for any object in the group.

### Related Topics

- [Network Topology Overview](#)
- [Viewing Fault Information for Devices and Links](#)

## Before Using Topology Maps

Before you create or view topology maps:

1. Make sure your devices were successfully added to Prime Infrastructure, as explained in “Validating That Devices Were Added Successfully”.
2. You have created one or more device or location groups. Any devices that you do not assign to a group will appear under the Unassigned device group.

### Related Topics

- [Validating That Devices Were Added Successfully](#)
- [Types of Groups](#)
- [Creating Device Groups](#)
- [Creating Location Groups](#)
- [Network Topology Overview](#)

## Viewing Detailed Tables of Alarms and Links

From the Network Topology window, you can access extended tables that list and provide more information about alarms and links. These extended tables open in a separate browser window.

To open the extended details tables, click the **Detach** icon below the Groups pane or click on the **Show Table** link in a specific pane.

The window displaying the extended tables has two tabs: Alarms and Links.

Be aware of the following when working with the extended tables:

- When the extended tables window is open, the Alarms and Links panes in the Network Topology window are disabled. If you click on a disabled pane, the extended tables window is brought to the front. When you close the extended tables window, the panes in the Network Topology window become fully functional again.
- There is synchronization between the data in the extended tables and the data in the corresponding panes in the Network Topology window.
- Alarms in both the Network Topology window and in the extended tables are refreshed based on user preference settings (see “Changing Alarm Display Behavior” and “Customizing the Alarm Summary” in Related Topics).

### Related Topics

- [Changing Alarm Display Behavior](#)
- [Customizing the Alarm Summary](#)
- [Network Topology Overview](#)

## Determining What is Displayed in the Topology Map

You have control over the elements displayed in the network topology map, and can customize it to show just the information you want, as explained in the following related topics.

### Related Topics

- [Displaying Network Elements in the Topology Map](#)
- [Viewing the Contents of a Sub-Group in the Topology Map](#)
- [Manually Adding Links to the Topology Map](#)
- [Adding Unmanaged Devices and Links to Topology Maps](#)
- [Changing the Link and Device Types Shown in the Topology Map](#)
- [Showing and Hiding Alarms, Links, and Labels in the Topology Map](#)
- [Isolating Specific Sections of a Large Topology Map](#)

## Displaying Network Elements in the Topology Map

The topology map enables you to visualize the topology of a selected device group, which might cover a specific network segment, a customer network, or any other combination of network elements. To determine what is displayed in the topology map, you must select a group in the Groups pane to the left of the topology map. Since grouping is hierarchical, a group might be a “parent group,” meaning that it contains sub-groups. If the selected group contains sub-groups, icons representing the sub-groups are shown in the topology map. These icons can be expanded to display the devices within them.

The topology map only displays devices for which the logged in user has access privileges, based on the virtual domains assigned to that user.

If you encounter topology issues, such as topology components not rendering as expected or component data not being displaying on the map, we recommend that you clear your browser cache and try again.

---

**Step 1** Choose **Maps > Network Topology**.

**Step 2** In the Groups pane on the left, click on the group you want to display in the topology map.

**Step 3** Customize the topology map to show specific device/link types, add manual links, and so on, as explained in these related topics: “Change Which Link and Device Types are Shown in the Topology Map”, “Manually Add Links to the Topology Map” and “Change the Topology Map Layout”.

After you have displayed the required group in the topology map, you can access additional information about any device or link, as explained in these related topics: “Getting More Information About Devices” and “Getting More Information About Links”.

---

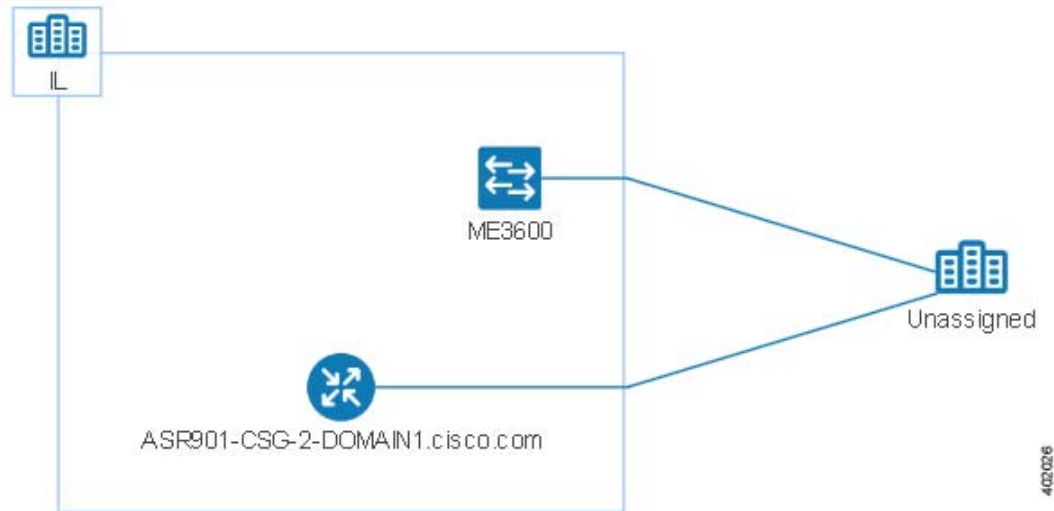
### Related Topics

- [Changing the Link and Device Types Shown in the Topology Map](#)
- [Manually Adding Links to the Topology Map](#)
- [Changing the Topology Map Layout](#)
- [Getting More Information About Devices](#)
- [Getting More Information About Links](#)
- [Determining What is Displayed in the Topology Map](#)

## Viewing the Contents of a Sub-Group in the Topology Map

You can expand a sub-group to show its contents within the current context or you can drill down to see the contents of the sub-group independently of the current map context.

In the diagram below, the IL group is expanded.



When expanding sub-groups, be aware that if a device belongs to more than one group, the device will appear in one of the expanded groups only. It will not appear in all of the groups to which it belongs. If your setup has devices that belong to multiple groups, rather view the groups individually in the topology map by selecting them in the Groups pane. This will ensure that you will always see all the devices that belong to a specific group.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Network Topology**.
- Step 2** In the Groups pane on the left, click on the group you want to display in the topology map.
- Step 3** Click on a sub-group in the topology map.
- Step 4** In the displayed popup, click one of the following:
- Drill down group—Displays the sub-group on its own in the topology map, meaning that the currently displayed group is replaced with the selected sub-group. Note that the sub-group name is selected in the Groups pane.
  - Expand group—Adds the contents of the sub-group to the current topology map display.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Determining What is Displayed in the Topology Map](#)

## Manually Adding Links to the Topology Map

If you have a link in your network that Prime Infrastructure cannot discover, you can manually draw the link in your topology map. The manually created link is considered a managed link. This is because Prime Infrastructure retrieves the link status from the managed device interfaces to which it is connected.

After you have manually added a link to the topology map, the link will be shown by default whenever the relevant group is selected. The manual link cannot be hidden using the link type filter.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Network Topology**.
- Step 2** Click on **Create** in the topology toolbar and choose **Create Link**.
- Step 3** Click and hold down the mouse on the first device in the topology map and drag it to the second device. A dotted line is created between the two devices indicating a manual link.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Network Topology Overview](#)
- [Changing the Link and Device Types Shown in the Topology Map](#)
- [Adding Unmanaged Devices and Links to Topology Maps](#)
- [Determining What is Displayed in the Topology Map](#)

## Adding Unmanaged Devices and Links to Topology Maps

You can add unmanaged devices and links to your topology maps in order to get a complete view of the network. For example, you can add an “unmanaged device” icon to your topology map to represent a network device that is not managed by Prime Infrastructure but is connected to a managed device, and then manually draw the link in your network topology. You can then assign the manually created link to a specific interface on the managed device so you can see the interface alarm status in the topology map.

### Related Topics

- [Manually Adding Links to the Topology Map](#)
- [Determining What is Displayed in the Topology Map](#)

## Changing the Link and Device Types Shown in the Topology Map

You can choose to display only certain types of links or devices in the topology map. Click the Filter icon to see a full list of link and device types and select the ones you want to display. If you want to temporarily show or hide links, alarms, or labels, see the related topics.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Network Topology**.
- Step 2** Select the required device group from the Groups pane on the left.
- Step 3** Click the Filter icon in the topology toolbar and choose **Link Types** or **Device Families**.
- Step 4** In the Show Link Types or Show Device Families dialog, select the types of links/devices that you want displayed in the topology map, for example, physical layer links, Ethernet layer links, routers, and so on.
- If a device or link type exists in your network, it will be displayed in the dialog. However, it will be disabled if it is not relevant to the currently selected group.
  - If a device or link type does not exist in your network, it will not appear in the dialog.
- Step 5** Click **OK**. Your settings are saved and only the link/device types you selected are displayed.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Network Topology Overview](#)
- [Showing and Hiding Alarms, Links, and Labels in the Topology Map](#)
- [Determining What is Displayed in the Topology Map](#)

## Showing and Hiding Alarms, Links, and Labels in the Topology Map

Use the Show/Hide settings to temporarily add or remove labels, links, and alarm information to your map.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Network Topology**.
- Step 2** Click the **Show** button in the topology toolbar.
- Step 3** Select the items you want displayed in the topology map:
- Labels—Labels associated devices, such as device names.
  - Links—Single links between devices.
  - Aggregated Links—Links that represent more than one underlying link. They are represented by dotted lines.
  - Faults—You can choose to hide fault information altogether, show all fault information or show only faults of a certain severity or higher, as it is a slider widget.
- Step 4** Close the Show dialog. Your selections are applied to the topology map.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Changing the Link and Device Types Shown in the Topology Map](#)
- [Determining What is Displayed in the Topology Map](#)

## Isolating Specific Sections of a Large Topology Map

In cases where a topology map is displaying thousands of devices, you may want to focus on specific devices or sets of devices. The Overview pane shows you the entire topology map in miniature and lets you select the area you want to display in the large topology map. It also provides an at-a-glance view of the alarm status of the elements in the topology map.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Network Topology**.
- Step 2** Click the Overview icon in the topology toolbar. The Overview pane appears at the bottom right of the topology map and displays the following:
- **Dot**— indicates any network element. The color of the dot indicates the severity of alarms associated with the network element.
  - **Line**— indicates a link. The color of the line indicates the severity of the associated alarm.
  - **Blue rectangle**— indicates the selection area. The area within the rectangle is displayed in the map pane. Handles on the corners enable you to resize the selection area.
  - **Pan mode cursor**— cursor displayed within the selection area. Use this cursor to move the selection area, and thereby view different elements in the map pane.
  - **Zoom mode cursor**— displayed outside the selection area. Use this cursor to define a new selection area or to zoom in on an existing selection area.
- Step 3** Draw a rectangle by dragging the mouse over the area you want to see in the topology map.
- Step 4** Click the 'x' in the upper right corner to close the Overview pane.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Changing the Link and Device Types Shown in the Topology Map](#)
- [Determining What is Displayed in the Topology Map](#)

## Getting More Information About Devices

From the topology map, you can drill down to get more information about a device.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Network Topology**.
- Step 2** Click on the required device in the topology map. A popup appears showing basic device information and alarm information for the device.
- Step 3** Click **View 360** to access the Device 360 view for detailed information about the device.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Getting More Information About Links](#)
- [Viewing Fault Information for Devices and Links](#)

## Getting More Information About Links

The representation of links in the topology map provides some information about the link:

- A solid line represents any type of discovered link between two elements in the topology map.
- A dotted line represents an unmanaged link that has been manually drawn in the topology map.
- A dot-dash line represents an aggregated link (if Aggregated Links is selected in the Show popup).
- An alarm severity badge indicates the highest severity alarm currently affecting the link.

From the topology map, you can drill down to get more information about a link by clicking on the required link in the topology map.

- For simple links, the displayed popup shows the link type and the A-side and Z-side of the link.
- For aggregated links, the displayed popup shows a table listing all the underlying links.

### Related Topics

- [Getting More Information About Devices](#)
- [Viewing Fault Information for Devices and Links](#)

## Viewing Fault Information for Devices and Links

You can use the network topology maps to see the device and link faults in your network. Viewing the physical topology helps you understand the potential impact of the fault on the rest of the network and helps you troubleshoot and fix the issues. Network topology maps also help you see the interconnection between network devices and view details about the interconnections, such as link speed and link types.

If a device or link has an alarm associated with it, an alarm badge is displayed on the device icon or on the link in the topology map. The color of the alarm badge corresponds with the alarm severity—minor (yellow), major (orange), or critical (red)—and matches the alarms displayed in the Alarm Browser.

For groups, the alarm badge represents the most severe alarm that is currently active for any of the group members.

Link-related alarms, such as Link Down, generate an alarm badge on the relevant link in the topology map. After the link up alarm is received, the link alarms and corresponding badges are cleared.

See [Topology Map Icons](#) for more information about the alarm information that is provided by the icons.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Network Topology**.
- Step 2** Select the device group, in either the Locations folder or the Custom folder, which you want to view the network topology. If you did not previously create device groups, all devices will appear in the Locations > Unassigned folder.
- Icons appear on the devices and links indicating critical, major, minor alarms associated with that device or link.
- Step 3** Click on a device to view the device summary information (such as host name, IP address, and alarm summary). You can also launch the Device 360° view for additional device information.



- Step 4** Click on a link to view the summary information about the link, showing the devices and ports or interface to which the link is connected.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Getting More Information About Devices](#)
- [Getting More Information About Links](#)
- [Topology Map Icons](#)

## Using Device 360° to View a Device's Network Topology

You can use the Device 360° view to see the local, or *N-hop*, topology for a device. This lets you visualize where in the network the device is located and see its context within the overall network. This can be helpful if you are viewing the Alarm Browser and want to see more information about a specific device associated with an alarm. By launching the Device 360° view, you can see the local topology for that selected device.

---

- Step 1** From the Device 360° view, click the **Topology** icon.
- By default, Prime Infrastructure displays all devices within two hops of the device and the alarm status of all displayed devices and links.
- Step 2** To modify the hop count, click the **Edit** icon and select a new value from the Hops pulldown menu.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Network Topology Overview](#)
- [Determining What is Displayed in the Topology Map](#)
- [Getting More Information About Devices](#)
- [Getting More Information About Links](#)
- [Viewing Fault Information for Devices and Links](#)

# Changing the Topology Map Layout

You can specify how the devices and other network elements (such as labels, nodes, and the connections between them) are arranged in the topology map:

- Symmetrical (default)—Maintains the symmetry that is inherent in the topology. This ensures that adjacent nodes are closer to each other and prevents node overlapping.
- Circular—Arranges the network elements in a circular style highlighting the clusters inherent in the network topology.
- Hierarchical—Ensures that the dependencies on the relationships and flows between elements are maintained.
- Orthogonal—Creates a compact view of the topology using horizontal and vertical lines to represent the edge routing elements and links. This style minimizes edge route lengths, provides overlap-free label placement, and ensures that edge crossings can be clearly viewed.
- Incremental—Maintains the relative positions of specific elements while adjusting the positions of newly added elements. Use this layout to re-render nodes/links and to clean up overlaps.

When you choose a map layout, the elements align accordingly. You can also drag and drop elements to change the layout manually. After you have changed the layout, you can save it so that it will be preserved when you next open the Network Topology window. See [Saving the Topology Map Layout](#).

- 
- Step 1** In the left sidebar, choose **Maps > Network Topology**.
- Step 2** Select the required device group from the Groups pane on the left.
- Step 3** Click the Layout icon in the topology toolbar and choose the required layout. The topology map display will be adjusted accordingly.
- 

## Related Topics

- [Network Topology Overview](#)
- [Determining What is Displayed in the Topology Map](#)
- [Saving the Topology Map Layout](#)

# Saving the Topology Map Layout

Prime Infrastructure retains your layout changes and your selections for the current browser session only. Therefore, after you have changed the topology map layout to suit your needs, it is highly recommended that you save the layout so that you do not have to manually rearrange the topology map each time.

Choose **Layout > Save Current Layout** from the Topology toolbar. You can reload the layout at any time by choosing **Layout > Load Saved Layout**.

## Related Topics

- [Network Topology Overview](#)
- [Saving the Topology Map as an Image File](#)

# Saving the Topology Map as an Image File

You can save the entire topology map or selected objects from the topology map as an image file. This will enable you to store copies of the topology map in a specific state which you can use as a point of reference in the future when multiple changes are made to the topology.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Network Topology**.
  - Step 2** Select the required device group from the Groups pane on the left.
  - Step 3** Make content and layout changes to the topology map as required.
  - Step 4** Click the Save Image icon in the topology toolbar.
  - Step 5** In the Save As Image dialog box, select the file type for the saved image.
  - Step 6** Choose whether you want to save the entire topology or only the items currently selected in the topology map.
  - Step 7** Choose a size setting for the image file.
  - Step 8** Click **Save**. The image is saved in your local Temp folder and you return to the Network Topology screen.
- 

## Related Topics

- [Network Topology Overview](#)
- [Determining What is Displayed in the Topology Map](#)
- [Changing the Topology Map Layout](#)
- [Saving the Topology Map Layout](#)

# Creating a Topology Dashlet

You can add a topology dashlet to the Overview dashboard to make it easier to view your physical network.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Dashboard**, then select the dashboard to which you want to add the topology dashlet.
  - Step 2** Click the Settings icon, then choose **Add Dashlet(s)**.
  - Step 3** Click **Add** next to the Network Topology dashlet. You can drag and drop the topology dashlet to the desired location in the dashboard.
  - Step 4** Edit the dashlet to enter a title and select the device group for which you want to display its topology.
- 

## Related Topics

- [Network Topology Overview](#)
- [Changing the Topology Map Layout](#)
- [Saving the Topology Map Layout](#)





## Using Wireless Maps

---

### About Prime Infrastructure Site Maps

Prime Infrastructure site maps represent the geographical locations and physical structures where your organization maintains network assets and provides network services to its staff and guests.

Maps are a familiar way to visualize networks and services. Prime Infrastructure uses them to support many tasks, including:

- Displaying the physical locations of network devices, including wired routers, wireless access points and controllers, and client devices like laptops, tablets and mobile phones.
- Showing wireless network coverage, including “heatmap” displays of signal strength and quality, the locations of RF interferers, chokepoints, and so on.
- Diagramming the network topology.

#### Related Topics

- [Site Map Hierarchy](#)
- [Site Map Graphics](#)
- [Network Elements on Site Maps](#)
- [Preparing Image Files for Use with Prime Infrastructure Maps](#)
- [Working With Site Maps](#)
- [Creating Campus Maps](#)
- [Associating Endpoints with a Site](#)

### Site Map Hierarchy

Prime Infrastructure maps have a predetermined hierarchy:

- **Campus (or site) maps** are the highest level in the map hierarchy and represent a single business location or site. Typically, a campus map will consist of at least one building, with one or more floor areas, and any outside areas adjacent to the buildings that are served by your organization’s network devices.
- **Buildings** represent single structures within a campus, serving to organize related floor-area maps. You can add as many buildings as you like to a single campus map. A building can have one or more floor and outside areas associated with it, but can only be added to one campus map.

- **Floor areas** map the levels within a building interior, including working areas, cubicles, walled offices, wiring closets, and the like. Floor areas can only be added to building maps. You can add up to 100 floor areas and up to 100 basement levels to each building map you create.
- **Outside areas** map exterior locations served by your organization's network (usually by its wireless network). Although they are typically associated with buildings, outside areas must be added directly to campus maps, at the same level as buildings. You can add as many outside areas to a campus map as you want.

Within these restrictions, you can create as many site maps as you need, arranged as you choose.

#### Related Topics

- [Site Map Graphics](#)
- [Network Elements on Site Maps](#)
- [Wireless Coverage Areas, Inclusion/Exclusion Regions and Rail Lines on Maps](#)
- [Working With Site Maps](#)

## Site Map Graphics

When you create your site maps, you can import them into aerial photos, map images, architectural layouts, and other graphics, specifying dimension and position information with the imported file. Prime Infrastructure scales imported map image files automatically, so that they fit the specified dimensions and position information. You can also specify contact data, civic address, and geographic longitude and latitude information for every campus and building.

#### Related Topics

- [About Prime Infrastructure Site Maps](#)
- [Adding Floor Plans to a Standalone Building](#)

## Network Elements on Site Maps

Once you have created your maps, you can assign network elements to them. You normally do this manually, selecting individual devices and assigning them to campuses, buildings, floors and outside areas as needed. In the case of wireless access points and access controllers, you can also add them to your maps automatically, using your organization's AP/WAC naming hierarchy.

#### Related Topics

- [About Prime Infrastructure Site Maps](#)
- [Working With Site Maps](#)

## Wireless Coverage Areas, Inclusion/Exclusion Regions and Rail Lines on Maps

In addition to the basic site map hierarchy, Prime Infrastructure's floor and outside area maps allow you to place the following features, which help you map wireless coverage more usefully:

- **Coverage Areas:** Any floor area or outside area defined as part of a building map is by default considered a wireless coverage area. Assuming that you have enabled

- **Inclusion regions** define areas within a floor or outside area map where wireless coverage data, such as signal strength, will be either mapped (included) or ignored (excluded). Defining inclusion and exclusion regions can help you focus Prime Infrastructure processing to just those areas of the map where you want to manage your wireless coverage, and ignores others.
- **Exclusion regions** define areas within a floor or outside area map where wireless coverage data, such as signal strength, will be ignored. Defining an exclusion region can help you focus Prime Infrastructure processing to just those areas of the map where you want to manage your wireless coverage, and ignores others.
- **Rail lines** act as collection points for clients who are constantly roaming within a floor or outside area map. Wireless clients within a specified distance of a rail line will be shown as connected at the rail line, rather than at their actual location. This is handy for conveyor belts, internet cafes and other areas within a floor or outside area where many wireless clients cluster while remaining mobile.

#### Related Topics

- [About Prime Infrastructure Site Maps](#)
- [Working With Site Maps](#)

## Preparing Image Files for Use with Prime Infrastructure Maps

As explained in the topic “Site Map Concepts”, you can import image files into any Prime Infrastructure campus, building, floor or outside area map. These image files will usually show:

- For campus/site maps: An aerial view or overhead diagram of the campus, showing all of the buildings on that campus or site.
- For floors, basements, and outside areas: Architectural layout diagrams.

Follow these guidelines when preparing map image files for import:

- Create the campus/site, floor, or outside area map image using any graphics application that saves to the raster image file formats PNG, JPG, JPEG or GIF.
- For floor and outside area maps only: You can also create the images as DXF or DWG CAD files, or as Qualcomm MET files. Prime Infrastructure will automatically convert these files to your choice of PNG, JPG, JPEG or GIF file formats.
- Always ensure that the dimensions of any campus/site map image are larger than the combined dimensions of all the buildings and outside areas you plan to add to the campus map.
- Your map image files can be of any size. Prime Infrastructure imports the original image to its database at full definition, but during display, automatically resizes them to fit the workspace.
- To make it easier to browse to select image files, copy them to a location in the file system of the client you use to access Prime Infrastructure before you import them. You can delete the image files from the client once they have been imported, as Prime Infrastructure makes them part of its image database.
- Gather the horizontal and vertical dimensions of the entire site, in feet or meters, so that you can specify these dimension during import.
- If you plan on entering campus, building, floor or outside area dimensions in meters, change the default map measurement unit to meters. For details, see “Changing Default Map Measurement Units” in Related Topics.

**Related Topics**

- [About Prime Infrastructure Site Maps](#)
- [Troubleshooting Problems With CAD Image File Imports](#)
- [Changing Default Map Measurement Units](#)

## Troubleshooting Problems With CAD Image File Imports

Prime Infrastructure uses a native image-conversion library to convert CAD and MET vector files into raster format. You must select one of the following supported target raster formats during the CAD or MET file import: PNG, JPEG or (JPG), and GIF.

If for some reason Prime Infrastructure cannot load the native image-conversion library, it will display an “unable to convert the autocad file” error message. If you receive this error, make sure all the required dependencies are met for the native library, using the Linux `ldd` command. The following four DLLs must be present under the Prime Infrastructure installation directory `/webnms/rfdlls`: `LIBGFL254.DLL`, `MFC71.DLL`, `MSVCR71.DLL`, and `MSVCP71.DLL`. If dependency problems exist, you may need to install the required libraries and then restart the Prime Infrastructure server.

Floor and outside area map images imported from CAD files are enhanced for zooming and panning. Without zoom, the image clarity will be close to that of the original CAD file. But an imported CAD file can appear blurred during zoom. If you are having problems with blurred floor map images, first make sure all relevant parts of the image are clearly visible in the original CAD file. Then import the CAD file again, and choose PNG or GIF as the target conversion file format, instead of JPEG or JPG.

Large floor map images can take time to import. While the conversion is going on, not all of the image will be visible on the map. For example, if you have a high-resolution image (e.g., an image with a resolution of 180 megapixels and a file size of 60 MB), it may take two minutes or more for the imported image to appear on the map.

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Floor Plans to a Standalone Building](#)
- Administrator Guide restart link

## Default Campus Maps

Prime Infrastructure comes with two default campus maps:

- **System Campus:** This is the default campus map. If you create any building, floor or outside area map, but do not create your own campus map, these subordinate maps are automatically created as children of the System Campus map.
- **Unassigned:** This is the default map for all network endpoints and hosts not assigned to any other map (including the System Campus).

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Floor Plans to a Standalone Building](#)



## Disabling Next Generation Maps

Starting with version 2.0, Prime Infrastructure introduced Next Generation maps. These maps offer better performance and larger, more detailed map information than in previous versions of the product. Next Generation maps are enabled by default.

- 
- Step 1** Select **Settings > My Preferences**.
- Step 2** Click the **Use Next Generation Maps** checkbox to unselect it.
- Step 3** Click **Save**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Adding Floor Plans to a Standalone Building](#)

## Working With Site Maps

You can choose to organize your site maps any way you wish. The workflow you will follow is similar:

1. Create a new campus map. Choose **Maps > Site Maps**, then from the **Select a command** list, choose **New Campus**.
2. Add a building to the campus map. Choose **Maps > Site Maps**, then from the **Select a command** list, choose **New Building**.
3. Add a floor to the building map. Choose **Maps > Site Maps**, then **Select a command > New Floor Area > Go**.
4. Add an outside area to the campus map. Choose **Maps > Site Maps**, then **Select a command > New Outside Area > Go**.
5. Use Map Editor to draw inclusion/exclusion regions and rail lines on your floor and outside areas. Choose **Maps > Site Maps**, select the floor or outside area, then choose **Map Editor**.

### Related Topics

- [Adding Floor Plans to a Standalone Building](#)
- [Adding Floor Areas to Buildings](#)
- [Adding Floor Plans to a Standalone Building](#)
- [Configuring Floor Settings](#)
- [Import Map and AP Location Data](#)
- [Placing Access Points](#)

## Creating Campus Maps

You must enter a unique name for the campus when you create it. Optionally, you can also:

- Specify an email, telephone, or other contact to be used for inquiries about the campus.
- Import a map image file into the campus map.

- Specify location information for the campus, including its mailing or street address and its longitude and latitude.

Once you have created a campus map, you will want to make it more useful by:

- Adding an image file showing an overview of the campus site.
- Add location information for the campus.
- Adding buildings to the campus.

For details on these tasks, see [Related Topics](#).

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Choose **Select a command > New Campus > Go**.
- Step 3** On the **Maps > New Campus** page, enter the campus name and (optionally) a campus contact name.
- Step 4** Click **OK** to add the campus map. Prime Infrastructure adds a hyperlink to the campus map in the Map Tree View.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Adding Floor Plans to a Standalone Building](#)
- [Adding Image Files to Campus Maps](#)
- [Adding Location Information to Campus Maps](#)
- [Adding Buildings to Campus Maps](#)
- [Changing Default Map Measurement Units](#)

## Adding Image Files to Campus Maps

Importing a map image file into the background of a campus map helps you visualize and recognize the campus and its layout. When added with accurate location and dimension data, it also serves to locate your buildings and devices exactly.

To import a map image file into a previously created campus map, follow the steps below. Note that you can also import map image files when creating a campus map, by clicking **Image File** and specifying the campus map image file you want to import.

Before you begin, be sure you have prepared your campus map image as explained in “Preparing Image Files for User With Prime Infrastructure Maps”.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the campus map to which you want to import the image file. The Site Maps > *Campus Name* page appears.
- Step 3** From the **Select a command** list, choose **Edit Campus/Site** and click **Go**.
- Step 4** Next to **Image File Name**, click **Choose File**.
- Step 5** Browse to and choose the file containing the campus map image, then click **Open**.
- Step 6** Click **Next**.
- Step 7** Select the **Maintain Aspect Ratio** check box.

Selecting this setting prevents distortion when Prime Infrastructure resizes the imported map image.

- Step 8** Enter the campus site's horizontal and vertical dimensions, in feet or meters.
- Step 9** Click **OK**. Prime Infrastructure displays the Campus/Site View page for the selected campus map, with the image file in the background.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Adding Floor Plans to a Standalone Building](#)
- [Creating Campus Maps](#)
- [Adding Location Information to Campus Maps](#)

## Adding Location Information to Campus Maps

Location information for a campus map includes the site's mailing or street address and its geographical longitude and latitude. Adding this information is optional.

---

- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the desired campus map. The Site Maps > *Campus Name* page appears.
- Step 3** From the **Select a command** list, choose **Edit Campus/Site** and click **Go**.
- Step 4** Click **Next**.
- Step 5** Enter the site's address and longitude/latitude information.
- Step 6** Click **OK**. Prime Infrastructure displays the Campus/Site View page for the selected campus map.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Creating Campus Maps](#)
- [Adding Image Files to Campus Maps](#)

## Changing Default Map Measurement Units

The default unit of measurement for all Prime Infrastructure maps is feet. You can change this to meters.

---

- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** From the **Select a command** list, choose **Properties** and click **Go**.
- Step 3** In **Units of Measure**, select the unit you want to use as the default unit (feet or meters) for all maps.
- Step 4** Click **OK**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Creating Campus Maps](#)

- [Adding Image Files to Campus Maps](#)

## Adding Buildings to Campus Maps

You can only add buildings to a campus map. If you do not add them to a campus map you created, Prime Infrastructure adds them to the default System Campus map automatically.

You must specify a unique name for the building. To create a useful building map, you will also want to specify:

- An email or telephone contact for the building.
- The number of floors and basements in the building.
- a. The building's horizontal and vertical position on the campus map. The building's horizontal position is the distance from the corner of the building rectangle to the left edge of the campus map. The vertical position is the distance from the corner of the building rectangle to the top edge of the campus map. You can enter these dimensions in feet or meters.
- b. The building's approximate span — its horizontal and vertical “footprint”, or width and depth on the map — in feet or meters. The footprint you specify for the building should be equal to or larger than the span of any floors you plan to add to the same building.
- Location information for the building, including its mailing or street address and its geographical longitude and latitude.

Once you have created a building map, you will want to make it more useful by adding floor, basement and outdoor areas. For details on these tasks, see [Related Topics](#).

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**
- Step 2** Click the name of the campus to which you want to add the building. The Site Maps > *Campus Name* page appears.
- Step 3** Choose **Select a command > New Building > Go**.
- Step 4** Complete the fields on the *Campus Name > New Building* page as needed. As you do so, be aware that:
- You must enter a name for the building. The name must be unique among the other building names you plan to add to the same campus map.
  - Although you can specify the building's exact position and span using the input fields, you can also specify its position and span using the mouse and keyboard:
    - **For Position changes:** Click and drag the blue bounding box in the upper left corner of the campus map to the desired position. As you drag, the values in the Horizontal Position and Vertical Position fields change to match your actions.
    - **For Span changes:** Ctrl+click and drag the blue bounding box to change the building's span. As you drag, the values in the Horizontal Span and Vertical Span fields change to match your actions.
- Step 5** When you are satisfied, click **Place** to put the building on the campus map. Prime Infrastructure creates a building rectangle scaled and positioned as you specified.
- Step 6** Click **Save** to save the building. Prime Infrastructure places the building on the campus map, and the Site Maps Tree View displays a hyperlink for the building.
-

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Floor Plans to a Standalone Building](#)
- [Creating Campus Maps](#)
- [Default Campus Maps](#)
- [Adding Location Information to Campus Maps](#)
- [Adding Image Files to Campus Maps](#)
- [Adding Floor Areas to Buildings](#)

## Moving Buildings and Floors to Another Campus

You can move any building from one campus to another without having to recreate it. Any floor areas you have created for the building will move with it. The destination campus must already exist before you attempt to move a building to it.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Click the selection box next to the name of each building you want to move to another campus.
- Step 3** From the **Select a command** list, choose **Move Buildings** and click **Go**.
- Step 4** In the **Target Campus/Site** list, choose the name of the campus map to which you want to move the selected buildings.
- Step 5** Click **OK**.
- On the Results page, click the **Edit Building** link to reposition the moved buildings on the new campus.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Creating Campus Maps](#)
- [Adding Buildings to Campus Maps](#)
- [Adding Image Files to Campus Maps](#)

## Adding Floor Areas to Buildings

You can add floor and basement areas to any building you have added to a campus map. When doing so, bear in mind that:

- You can only add floor and basement areas to building maps.
- You can only add floor and basement areas up to the number of floors and basements you specified when you added the building to the campus map. If you made a mistake with these, you will need to edit the building map first.

When creating the floor area, you must specify at least the following:

- The floor area name. The floor name is distinct from the floor number, and must be unique not only to the building, but across all buildings on your campus maps.
- The floor number, which you can pick from a list.

To create a useful floor or basement area, you will also want to specify:

- An email or telephone contact for the floor or basement area.
  - The RF model for the floor or basement (for example: “Drywall”). The model selected is used to calculate wireless signal strength, heat maps, and other wireless-related features for the floor or basement area.
  - The floor-to-floor height, in meters or feet.
  - The floor’s approximate span — its horizontal and vertical “footprint”, or width and depth on the map — in feet or meters. The footprint you specify for the floor should be equal to or less than the span of the building containing the floor.
- c. The floor’s horizontal and vertical position, or coordinates, within the campus. The floor’s horizontal position is the distance from the top left corner of the floor area rectangle to the left edge of the campus map. The floor’s vertical position is the distance from the top left corner of the floor area rectangle to the top edge of the campus map.
- The total floor area, in square meters or feet.

---

**Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.

**Step 2** In the Maps Tree view, click the name of the campus containing the building to which you want to add a floor area.

**Step 3** Click the building name to display the building map.

**Step 4** Choose **Select a command > New Floor Area > Go**. The New Floor Area page appears.

**Step 5** Complete the New Floor Area fields as needed.

**Step 6** In the New Floor Area page, follow these steps to add floors to a building in which to organize related floor plan maps:

d. Select the **Image or CAD File** check box.

e. Browse to and choose the desired floor or basement image or CAD filename, and click **Open**.

If you are importing a CAD file, use the Convert CAD File drop-down list to determine the image file for conversion.

We do not recommend a .JPEG (.JPG) format for an auto-cad conversion. Unless a JPEG is specifically required, use .PNG or .GIF format for higher quality images.

f. Click **Next**. At this point, if a CAD file was specified, a default image preview is generated and loaded.

Prime Infrastructure uses a native image conversion library to convert auto-cad files into raster formats like .PNG. When there are issues loading the native library, Prime Infrastructure displays the following error: “Unable to convert the auto-cad file. Reason: Error while loading the auto-cad image conversion library.” For more information see the Prime Infrastructure online help or Prime Infrastructure documentation.

The names of the CAD file layers are listed with check boxes to the right side of the image indicating which are enabled.

When you choose the floor or basement image filename, Prime Infrastructure displays the image in the building-sized grid.

g. If you have CAD file layers, you can select or deselect as many as you want and click **Preview** to view an updated image. Click **Next** when you are ready to proceed with the selected layers.

Enter the remaining parameters for the floor area.

h. Either leave the **Maintain Aspect Ratio** check box selected to preserve the original image aspect ratio or unselect the check box to change the image aspect ratio.

- i. If applicable, enter the horizontal position (distance from the corner of the outdoor area rectangle to the left edge of the campus map) and vertical position (distance from the corner of the outdoor area rectangle to the top edge of the campus map) in feet or meters.

Use **Ctrl-click** to resize the image within the building-sized grid.

- j. If desired, select the **Launch Map Editor after floor creation** check box to rescale the floor and draw walls.
- k. Click **OK** to save this floor plan to the database. The floor is added to the Maps Tree View and the Maps > Site Maps list.

Use different floor names in each building. If you are adding more than one building to the campus map, do not use a floor name that exists in another building. This overlap causes incorrect mapping information between a floor and a building.

**Step 7** Click any of the floor or basement images to view the floor plan or basement map.

You can zoom in or out to view the map at different sizes and you can add access points.

---

## Adding Image Files to Floor Areas

To import a floor plan image file into a previously created floor area map, follow the steps below. Note that you can also import map image files when creating a floor area map, by clicking **Image File** and specifying the floor plan image file you want to import.

Before you begin, be sure you have prepared your floor area image as explained in “Preparing Image Files for User With Prime Infrastructure Maps”.

---

**Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.

**Step 2** Click the name of the campus map containing the building in which the floor area exists. The Site Maps > *Campus Name* page appears.

**Step 3** Click the name of the building containing the floor area to which you want to import the image file. The Site Maps > *Building* page appears.

**Step 4** Choose **Select a command > Edit Floor > Go**.

**Step 5** Next to **Image File Name**, click **Choose File**.

**Step 6** Browse to and choose the file containing the floor area image, then click **Open**.

**Step 7** Click **Next**.

**Step 8** Select the **Maintain Aspect Ratio** check box.

Selecting this setting prevents distortion when Prime Infrastructure resizes the imported image.

**Step 9** Enter the floor area’s horizontal and vertical dimensions, in feet or meters.

**Step 10** Click **OK**. Prime Infrastructure displays the View page for the selected floor area, with the image file in the background.

---

### Related Topics

- [Adding Floor Plans to a Standalone Building](#)
- [Creating Campus Maps](#)

- [Adding Location Information to Campus Maps](#)

## Adding Floor Plans to a Standalone Building

After you have added a standalone building to the Prime Infrastructure database, you can add individual floor plan maps to the building.

To add floor plans to a standalone building, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Save your floor plan maps in .PNG, .JPG, or .GIF format.
- The maps can be any size because the Prime Infrastructure automatically resizes the maps to fit the workspace.
- Step 2** Browse to and import the floor plan maps from anywhere in your file system. You can import CAD files in DXF or DWG formats or any of the formats you created in Step 1.
- If there are problems converting the auto-cad file, an error message is displayed. Prime Infrastructure uses a native image conversion library to convert auto-cad files into raster formats like .PNG. If the native library cannot be loaded, the Prime Infrastructure displays an “unable to convert the auto-cad file” message. If you receive this error, make sure all the required dependencies are met for the native library. To find any dependency problems, use ldd on Linux platforms. The following DLLs must be present under the /webnms/rfdlls Prime Infrastructure installation directory: LIBGFL254.DLL, MFC71.DLL, MSVCR71.DLL, and MSVCP71.DLL. If dependency problems occur, you might need to install the required libraries and restart Prime Infrastructure.
- Step 3** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 4** From the Maps Tree View or the Maps > Site Maps left sidebar menu, choose the desired building to display the Building View page.
- Step 5** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **New Floor Area**.
- Step 6** Click **Go**.
- Step 7** In the New Floor Area page, add the following information:
- Enter the floor area and contact names.
  - Choose the floor or basement number from the Floor drop-down list.
  - Choose the floor or basement type (RF Model).
  - Enter the floor-to-floor height in feet.
  - Select the **Image or CAD File** check box.
  - Browse to and choose the desired floor or basement Image or CAD file, and click **Open**.




---

**Note** If you are importing a CAD file, use the Convert CAD File drop-down list to determine the image file for conversion.

---




---

**Tip** A .JPEG (.JPG) format is not recommended for an auto-cad conversion. Unless a .JPEG is specifically required, use a .PNG or .GIF format for higher quality images.

---

- Step 8** Click **Next**. At this point, if a CAD file was specified, a default image preview is generated and loaded.



**Note**

Prime Infrastructure uses a native image conversion library to convert auto-cad files into raster formats like .PNG. When there are issues loading the native library, Prime Infrastructure displays the following error: “Unable to convert the auto-cad file. Reason: Error while loading the auto-cad image conversion library. For more information, see the Prime Infrastructure online help or Prime Infrastructure documentation.”

The names of the CAD file layers are listed with check boxes to the right side of the image indicating which are enabled.

When you choose the floor or basement image filename, Prime Infrastructure displays the image in the building-sized grid.

The maps can be any size because Prime Infrastructure automatically resizes the maps to fit the workspace.

**Note**

The map must be saved in .PNG, .JPG, .JPEG, or .GIF format.

If you have CAD file layers, you can select or deselect as many as you want and click **Preview** to view an updated image. Click **Next** when you are ready to proceed with the selected layers.

**Step 9** Enter the remaining parameters for the floor area.

- Either leave the **Maintain Aspect Ratio** check box selected to preserve the original image aspect ratio or unselect the check box to change the image aspect ratio.
- Enter an approximate floor or basement horizontal and vertical span (width and depth on the map) in feet.

The horizontal and vertical spans should be smaller than or the same size as the building horizontal and vertical spans in the Prime Infrastructure database.

- If applicable, enter the horizontal position (distance from the corner of the outdoor area rectangle to the left edge of the campus map) and vertical position (distance from the corner of the outdoor area rectangle to the top edge of the campus map) in feet or meters.

**Tip**

Use **Ctrl-click** to resize the image within the building-sized grid.

- Adjust the floor characteristics with the Prime Infrastructure map editor by selecting the check box next to Launch Map Editor. See the [Using the Map Editor](#) for more information regarding the map editor feature.

**Step 10** Click **OK** to save this floor plan to the database. The floor is added to the Maps Tree View and the Maps > Site Maps list.

**Step 11** Click any of the floor or basement images to view the floor plan or basement map.

You can zoom in or out to view the map at different sizes and you can add access points.

## Configuring Floor Settings

You can modify the appearance of the floor map by selecting or unselecting various floor settings check boxes. The selected floor settings appears in the map image.

The Floor Settings options include the following:

- Access Points
- AP Heatmaps
- AP Mesh Info
- Clients
- 802.11 Tags
- Rogue APs
- Rogue Adhocs
- Rogue Clients
- Coverage Areas
- Location Regions
- Rails
- Markers
- Chokepoints
- Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers
- Interferers

Use the blue arrows to access floor setting filters for access points, access point heatmaps, clients, 802.11 tags, rogue access points, rogue adhocs, and rogue clients. When filtering options are selected, click **OK**.

Use the Show MSE data within last drop-down list to choose the timeframe for mobility services engine data. Choose to view mobility services engine data from a range including the past two minutes up to the past 24 hours. This option only appears if a mobility services engine is present on Prime Infrastructure.

Click **Save Settings** to make the current view and filter settings your new default for all maps.

### Defining Inclusion and Exclusion Regions on a Floor

To further refine location calculations on a floor, you can define the areas that are included (inclusion areas) in the calculations and those areas that are not included (exclusion areas).

For example, you might want to exclude areas such as an atrium or stairwell within a building but include a work area (such as cubicles, labs, or manufacturing floors).

**Note**

---













If the MSE to which the floor is synchronized is running the Aeroscout tag engine, then inclusion and exclusion regions are not calculated for tags.

---




## Viewing Floor Component Details

To view details regarding the components displayed on the Floor View, hover your mouse cursor over the applicable icon. A dialog box containing detailed information is displayed. [Table 34-1](#) displays the floor map icons.

**Table 34-1** Floor Map Icons

| Icon                                                                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | <p>Access point icon. The color of the circle indicates the alarm status of the Cisco Radios.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Each access point contains two Cisco Radios. When a single protocol is selected in the Access Point filter page, the entire icon represents this radio. If both protocols are selected, the top half of the icon represents the state of the 802.11a/n radio and the bottom half represents the state of the 802.11b/g/n radio.</p> <p><b>Note</b> If a Cisco Radio is disabled, a small “x” appears in the middle of the icon.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Monitor mode access points are shown with a gray label to distinguish these from other access points.</p> |
|    | AP heatmaps icon.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|    | Client icon. Hover your mouse cursor over the icon to view client details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|  | Tag icon. Hover your mouse cursor over the icon to view tag details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|  | <p>Rogue access point icon. The color of the icon indicates the type of rogue access point. For example, red indicates a malicious rogue access point and blue indicates an unknown type.</p> <p>Hover your mouse cursor over the icon to view rogue access point details.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|  | <p>Rogue adhoc icon.</p> <p>Hover your mouse cursor over the icon to view rogue adhoc details.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|  | <p>Rogue client icon.</p> <p>Hover your mouse cursor over the icon to view rogue client details.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|  | Coverage icon.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|  | Location regions icon.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|  | Rails icon.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|  | Marker icon.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|  | Chokepoint icon.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

**Table 34-1** Floor Map Icons (continued)

| Icon                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Wi-Fi TDOA receiver icon.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|  | Interferer device icon.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|  | Indicates a guest client that is configured through web auth WLAN on Prime Infrastructure.<br><b>Note</b> If you create a Guest WLAN on controller and assign that controller to MSE, only then the guests from that controller will show as guest icons. |

### Cisco 1000 Series Lightweight Access Point Icons

The icons indicate the present status of an access point. The circular part of the icon can be split in half horizontally. The more severe of the two Cisco Radio colors determines the color of the large triangular pointer.







#### Note








When the icon is representing 802.11a/n and 802.11b/n, the top half displays the 802.11a/n status, and the bottom half displays the 802.11b/g/n status. When the icon is representing only 802.11b/g/n, the whole icon displays the 802.11b/g/n status. The triangle indicates the more severe color.

Table 34-2 shows the icons used in the Prime Infrastructure user interface Map displays.



**Table 34-2** Access Points Icons Description

| Icon                                                                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | The green icon indicates an access point (AP) with no faults. The top half of the circle represents the optional 802.11a Cisco Radio. The bottom half of the circle represents the state of the 802.11b/g Cisco Radio.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|  | The yellow icon indicates an access point with a minor fault. The top half of the circle represents the optional 802.11a Cisco Radio. The bottom half of the circle represents the state of the 802.11b/g Cisco Radio.<br><b>Note</b> A flashing yellow icon indicates that there has been an 802.11a or 802.11b/g interference, noise, coverage, or load Profile Failure. A flashing yellow icon indicates that there have been 802.11a and 802.11b/g profile failures. |
|  | The red icon indicates an access point (AP) with a major or critical fault. The top half of the circle represents the optional 802.11a Cisco Radio. The bottom half of the circle represents the state of the 802.11b/g Cisco Radio.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|  | The dimmed icon with a question mark in the middle represents an unreachable access point. It is gray because its status cannot be determined.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

**Table 34-2** Access Points Icons Description (continued)

| Icon                                                                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | The dimmed icon with no question mark in the middle represents an unassociated access point.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|    | The icon with a red “x” in the center of the circle represents an access point that has been administratively disabled.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|    | The icon with the top half green and the lower half yellow indicates that the optional 802.11a Cisco Radio (top) has no faults, and the 802.11b/g Cisco Radio (bottom) has a minor fault. The more severe of the two Cisco Radio colors determines the color of the large triangular pointer.                          |
|    | The icon with the top half green and the lower half red indicates that the optional 802.11a Cisco Radio (top) is operational with no faults, and the 802.11b/g Cisco Radio (bottom) has a major or critical fault. The more severe of the two Cisco Radio colors determines the color of the large triangular pointer. |
|    | The icon with the top half yellow and the lower half red indicates that the optional 802.11a Cisco Radio (top) has a minor fault, and the 802.11b/g Cisco Radio (bottom) has a major or critical fault. The more severe of the two Cisco Radio colors determines the color of the large triangular pointer.            |
|  | The icon with the top half yellow and the lower half green indicates that the optional 802.11a Cisco Radio (top) has a minor fault, and the 802.11b/g Cisco Radio (bottom) is operational with no faults. The more severe of the two Cisco Radio colors determines the color of the large triangular pointer.          |
|  | The icon with the top half red and the lower half green indicates that the optional 802.11a Cisco Radio (top) has a major or critical fault, and the 802.11b/g Cisco Radio (bottom) is operational with no faults. The more severe of the two Cisco Radio colors determines the color of the large triangular pointer. |




**Table 34-2** Access Points Icons Description (continued)

| Icon                                                                               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|   | The icon with the top half red and the lower half yellow indicates that the optional 802.11a Cisco Radio (top) has major or critical faults, and the 802.11b/g Cisco Radio (bottom) has a minor fault. The more severe of the two Cisco Radio colors determines the color of the large triangular pointer. |
|  | The icon with a red “x” on the top half (optional 802.11a) shows that the indicated Cisco Radio has been administratively disabled. There are six color coding possibilities as shown.                                                                                                                     |

Each of the access point icons includes a small black arrow that indicates the direction in which the internal Side A antenna points.

Table 34-3 shows some arrow examples used in the Prime Infrastructure user interface map displays.

**Table 34-3** Arrows

| Arrow Examples                                                                      | Direction                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
|  | Zero degrees, or to the right on the map.     |
|  | 45 degrees, or to the lower right on the map. |
|  | 90 degrees, or down on the map.               |

These examples show the first three 45-degree increments allowed, with an additional five at 45-degree increments.

## Filtering Access Point Floor Settings

If you enable the access point floor setting and then click the blue arrow to the right of the floor settings, the Access Point Filter dialog box appears with filtering options.

Access point filtering options include the following:

- **Show**—Select this radio button to display the radio status or the access point status.



**Note** Because the access point icon color is based on the access point status, the icon color might vary depending on the status selected. The default on floor maps is radio status.

- **Protocol**—From the drop-down list, choose which radio types to display (802.11a/n, 802.11b/g/n, or both).

The displayed heatmaps correspond to the selected radio type(s).

- **Display**—From the drop-down list, choose what identifying information is displayed for the access points on the map image.
  - **Channels**—Displays the Cisco Radio channel number or Unavailable (if the access point is not connected).
  - **TX Power Level**—Displays the current Cisco Radio transmit power level (with 1 being high) or Unavailable (if the access point is not connected).

The power levels differ depending on the type of access point. The 1000 series access points accept a value between 1 and 5, the 1230 access points accept a value between 1 and 7, and the 1240 and 1100 series access points accept a value between 1 and 8.

Table 34-4 lists the transmit power level numbers and their corresponding power setting.

**Table 34-4** *Transmit Power Level Values*

| Transmit Power Level Number | Power Setting                                  |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 1                           | Maximum power allowed per country code setting |
| 2                           | 50% power                                      |
| 3                           | 25% power                                      |
| 4                           | 12.5 to 6.25% power                            |
| 5                           | 6.25 to 0.195% power                           |



**Note** The power levels are defined by the country code setting and are regulated by country. See the following URL for more information:  
[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/prod/collateral/wireless/ps5679/ps5861/product\\_data\\_sheet0900aecd80537b6a\\_ps430\\_Products\\_Data\\_Sheet.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/prod/collateral/wireless/ps5679/ps5861/product_data_sheet0900aecd80537b6a_ps430_Products_Data_Sheet.html)

- **Channel and Tx Power**—Displays both the channel and transmit power level (or Unavailable if the access point is not connected).
- **Coverage Holes**—Displays a percentage of clients whose signal has become weaker until the client lost its connection, Unavailable for unconnected access points, or MonitorOnly for access points in monitor-only mode.



**Note** Coverage holes are areas in which clients cannot receive a signal from the wireless network. When you deploy a wireless network, you must consider the cost of the initial network deployment and the percentage of coverage hole areas. A reasonable coverage hole criterion for launch is between 2 and 10 percent. This means that between two and ten test locations out of 100 random test locations might receive marginal service. After launch, Cisco Unified Wireless Network Solution Radio Resource Management (RRM) identifies these coverage hole areas and reports them to the IT manager, who can fill holes based on user demand.

- MAC Addresses—Displays the MAC address of the access point, whether or not the access point is associated to a controller.
- Names—Displays the access point name. This is the default value.
- Controller IP—Displays the IP address of the controller to which the access point is associated or Not Associated for disassociated access points.
- Utilization—Displays the percentage of bandwidth used by the associated client devices (including receiving, transmitting, and channel utilization). Displays Unavailable for disassociated access points and MonitorOnly for access points in monitor-only mode.
- Profiles—Displays the load, noise, interference, and coverage components of the corresponding operator-defined thresholds. Displays Okay for thresholds not exceeded, Issue for exceeded thresholds, or Unavailable for unconnected access points.

Use the Profile Type drop-down list to choose Load, Noise, Interference, or Coverage.

- CleanAir Status—Displays the CleanAir status of the access point and whether or not CleanAir is enabled on the access point.
- Average Air Quality—Displays the average air quality on this access point. The details include the band and the average air quality.
- Minimum Air Quality—Displays the minimum air quality on this access point. The details include the band and the minimum air quality.
- Average and Minimum Air Quality—Displays the average and minimum air quality on this access point. The details include the band, average air quality, and minimum air quality.
- Associated Clients—Displays the number of associated clients, Unavailable for unconnected access points or MonitorOnly for access points in monitor-only mode.
- Bridge Group Names
- RSSI Cutoff—From the drop-down list, choose the RSSI cutoff level. The RSSI cutoff ranges from -60 dBm to -90 dBm.
- Show Detected Interferers—Select the check box to display all interferers detected by the access point.
- Max. Interferers/label—Choose the maximum number of interferers to be displayed per label from the drop-down list.

Click **OK** when all applicable filtering criteria are selected.

### Filtering Access Point Heatmap Floor Settings

An RF heatmap is a graphical representation of RF wireless data where the values taken by variables are represented in maps as colors. The current heatmap is computed based on the RSSI prediction model, Antenna Orientation, and AP transmit power.



If you enable the Access Point Heatmap floor setting and click the blue arrow to the right of the Floor Settings, the Contributing APs dialog appears with heatmap filtering options.

Prime Infrastructure introduces dynamic heatmaps. When dynamic heatmaps are enabled, the Prime Infrastructure recomputes the heatmaps to represent changed RSSI values.

Access point heatmap filtering options include the following:

- **Heatmap Type**—Select Coverage, or Air Quality. If you choose Air Quality, you can further filter the heat map type for access points with average air quality or minimum air quality. Select the appropriate radio button.

If you have monitor mode access points on the floor plan, you have a choice between IDS or coverage heatmap types. A coverage heatmap excludes monitor mode access points.



---

**Note** Only APs in Local, FlexConnect, or Bridge mode can contribute to the Coverage and Air Quality Heatmap.

---

- **Total APs**—Displays the number of access points positioned on the map.
- Select the access point check box(es) to determine which heatmaps are displayed on the image map.

Click **OK** when all applicable filtering criteria are selected.

### Filtering AP Mesh Info Floor Settings

The AP Mesh Info check box only appears when bridging access points are added to the floor.

When this check box is selected, Prime Infrastructure initiates a contact with the controllers and displays information about bridging access points. The following information is displayed:

- Link between the child and the parent access point.
- An arrow that indicates the direction from the child to parent access point.
- A color-coded link that indicates the signal-to-noise ratio (SNR). A green link represents a high SNR (above 25 dB), an amber link represents an acceptable SNR (20-25 dB), and a red link represents a very low SNR (below 20 dB).

If you enable the AP Mesh Info floor setting and click the blue arrow to the right of the floor settings, the Mesh Parent-Child Hierarchical View page appears with mesh filtering options.

You can update the map view by choosing the access points you want to see on the map. From the Quick Selections drop-down list, choose to select only root access point, various hops between the first and the fourth, or select all access points.



---

**Note** For a child access point to be visible, its parent must also be selected.

---

Click **OK** when all applicable filtering criteria are selected.

### Filtering Client Floor Settings

The Clients option only appears if a mobility server is added in Prime Infrastructure.

If you enable the Clients floor setting and click the blue arrow to the right, the Client Filter dialog box appears.

Client filtering options include the following:

- **Show All Clients**—Select the check box to display all clients on the map.

- **Small Icons**—Select the check box to display icons for each client on the map.



**Note** If you select the **Show All Clients** check box and **Small Icons** check box, all other drop-down list options are dimmed.

If you unselect the **Small Icons** check box, you can choose if you want the label to display the MAC address, IP address, username, asset name, asset group, or asset category.

If you unselect the **Show All Clients** check box, you can specify how you want the clients filtered and enter a particular SSID.

- **Display**—Choose the client identifier (IP address, username, MAC address, asset name, asset group, or asset category) to display on the map.
- **Filter By**—Choose the parameter by which you want to filter the clients (IP address, username, MAC address, asset name, asset group, asset category, or controller). Once selected, type the specific device in the text box.

If there are multiple IPv6 addresses for a client, then you can specify any one IP address to uniquely identify the client.

- **SSID**—Enter the client SSID in the available text box.
- **Protocol**—Choose All, 802.11a/n, or 802.11b/g/n from the drop-down list.
  - All—Displays all the access points in the area.
  - 802.11a/n—Displays a colored overlay depicting the coverage patterns for the clients with 802.11a/n radios. The colors show the received signal strength from red (–35 dBm) through dark blue (–85 dBm).
  - 802.11b/g/n—Displays a colored overlay depicting the coverage patterns for the clients with 802.11b/g/n radios. The colors show the received signal strength from red (–35 dBm) through dark blue (–85 dBm). This is the default value.
- **State**—Choose All, Idle, Authenticated, Probing, or Associated from the drop-down list.

Click **OK** when all applicable filtering criteria are selected.

### Filtering 802.11 Tag Floor Settings

If you enable the 802.11 Tags floor setting and then click the blue arrow to the right, the Tag Filter dialog appears.

Tag filtering options include the following:

- **Show All Tags**—Select the check box to display all tags on the map.
- **Small Icons**—Select the check box to display icons for each tag on the map.



**Note** If you select the Show All Tags check box and Small Icons check box, all other drop-down list options are dimmed.

If you unselect the Small Icons check box, you can choose if you want the label to display MAC address, asset name, asset group, or asset category.

If you unselect the Show All Tags check box, you can specify how you want the tags filtered.

- **Display**—Choose the tag identifier (MAC address, asset name, asset group, or asset category) to display on the map.
- **Filter By**—Choose the parameter by which you want to filter the clients (MAC address, asset name, asset group, asset category, or controller). Once selected, type the specific device in the text box.

Click **OK** when all applicable filtering criteria are selected.

### Filtering Rogue AP Floor Settings

If you enable the Rogue APs floor setting and then click the blue arrow to the right, the Rogue AP filter dialog box appears.

Rogue AP filtering options include the following:

- **Show All Rogue APs**—Select the check box to display all rogue access points on the map.
- **Small Icons**—Select the check box to display icons for each rogue access point on the map.



---

**Note** If you select the **Show All Rogue APs** check box and **Small Icons** check box, all other drop-down list options are dimmed.

If you unselect the **Show All Rogue APs** check box, you can specify how you want the rogue access points filtered.

---

- **MAC Address**—If you want to view a particular MAC address, enter it in the MAC Address text box.
- **State**—Use the drop-down list to choose from Alert, Known, Acknowledged, Contained, Threat, or Unknown contained states.
- **On Network**—Use the drop-down list to specify whether or not you want to display rogue access points on the network.

Click **OK** when all applicable filtering criteria are selected.

### Filtering Rogue Adhoc Floor Settings

If you enable the Rogue Adhocs floor setting and then click the blue arrow to the right, the Rogue Adhoc filter dialog appears.

Rogue Adhoc filtering options include the following:

- **Show All Rogue Adhocs**—Select the check box to display all rogue adhoc on the map.
- **Small Icons**—Select the check box to display icons for each rogue adhoc on the map.



---

**Note** If you select the **Show All Rogue Adhocs** check box and **Small Icons** check box, all other drop-down list options are dimmed.

If you unselect the **Show All Rogue Adhocs** check box, you can specify how you want the rogue adhocs filtered.

---

- **MAC Address**—If you want to view a particular MAC address, enter it in the MAC Address text box.
- **State**—Use the drop-down list to select from Alert, Known, Acknowledged, Contained, Threat, or Unknown contained states.

- On Network—Use the drop-down list to specify whether or not you want to display rogue adhoc on the network.

Click **OK** when all applicable filtering criteria are selected.

### Filtering Rogue Client Floor Settings

If you enable the Rogue Clients floor setting and then click the blue arrow to the right, the Rogue Clients filter dialog appears.

Rogue Clients filtering options include the following:

- Show All Rogue Clients—Select the check box to display all rogue clients on the map.
- Small Icons—Select the check box to display icons for each rogue client on the map.  
If you select the **Show All Rogue Clients** check box and **Small Icons** check box, all other drop-down list options are dimmed. If you unselect the **Show All Rogue Clients** check box, you can specify how you want the rogue clients filtered.
- Assoc. Rogue AP MAC Address—If you want to view a particular MAC address, enter it in the MAC Address text box.
- State—Use the drop-down list to choose from Alert, Contained, Threat, or Unknown contained states.

Click **OK** when all applicable filtering criteria are selected.

### Filtering Interferer Settings

If you enable Interferer floor setting and then click the blue arrow to the right, the Interferers filter dialog box appears.

Interferer filtering options include the following:

- Show active interferers only—Select the check box to display all active interferers.
- Small Icons—Select the check box to display icons for each interferer on the map.
- Show Zone of Impact—Displays the approximate interference impact area. The opacity of the circle denotes its severity. A solid red circle represents a very strong interferer that likely disrupts Wi-Fi communications, a light pink circle represents a weak interferer.
- Click **OK** when all applicable filtering criteria are selected.

## Import Map and AP Location Data

When converting from autonomous to lightweight access points and from the WLSE to Prime Infrastructure, one of the conversion steps is to manually reenter the access point-related information into Prime Infrastructure. To speed up this process, you can export the information about access points from the WLSE and import it into Prime Infrastructure.



#### Note

Prime Infrastructure expects a .tar file and checks for a .tar extension before importing the file. If the file you are trying to import is not a .tar file, Prime Infrastructure displays an error message and prompts you to import a different file.

**Note**

For more information on the WLSE data export functionality (WLSE Version 2.15), see the following URL:  
[http://<WLSE\\_IP\\_ADDRESS>:1741/debug/export/exportSite.jsp](http://<WLSE_IP_ADDRESS>:1741/debug/export/exportSite.jsp).

To map properties and import a tar file containing WLSE data using the Prime Infrastructure web interface, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.

**Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Import Maps**, and click **Go**.

**Step 3** Choose the **WLSE Map and AP Location Data** option, and click **Next**.

**Step 4** In the Import WLSE Map and AP Location Data page, click **Browse** to select the file to import.

**Step 5** Find and select the .tar file to import and click **Open**.

Prime Infrastructure displays the name of the file in the Import From text box.

**Step 6** Click **Import**.

Prime Infrastructure uploads the file and temporarily saves it into a local directory while it is being processed. If the file contains data that cannot be processed, Prime Infrastructure prompts you to correct the problem and retry. Once the file has been loaded, Prime Infrastructure displays a report of what is added to Prime Infrastructure. The report also specifies what cannot be added and why.

If some of the data to be imported already exists, Prime Infrastructure either uses the existing data in the case of campuses or overwrites the existing data using the imported data in the cases of buildings and floors.

**Note**

If there are duplicate names between a WLSE site and building combination and Prime Infrastructure campus (or top-level building) and building combination, Prime Infrastructure displays a message in the Pre Execute Import Report indicating that it will delete the existing building.

**Step 7** Click **Import** to import the WLSE data.

Prime Infrastructure displays a report indicating what was imported.

**Step 8** Choose **Monitor > Site Maps** to view the imported data.

## Monitoring Floor Areas

The floor area is the area of each floor of the building measured to the outer surface of the outer walls including the area of lobbies, cellars, elevator shafts, and in multi-dwelling buildings, all the common spaces.

- [Panning and Zooming with Next Generation Maps, page 34-26](#)
- [Adding Access Points to a Floor Area, page 34-26](#)
- [Placing Access Points, page 34-28](#)

## Panning and Zooming with Next Generation Maps

### Panning

To move the map, click and hold the left mouse button and drag the map to a new place.

You can also move the map North, South, East or West using the pan arrows. These can be found in the top left hand corner of the map (see [Figure 34-1](#)).

**Figure 34-1** Panning Control




---

**Note** You can also perform the panning operations using the arrow keys on a keyboard.

---

### Zooming in and out - changing the scale

The zooming levels depend upon the resolution of an image. A high resolution image may provide more zoom levels. Each zoom level is made of a different style map shown at different scales, each one showing more or less detail. Some maps will be of the same style, but at a smaller or larger scale.

To see a map with more detail you need to zoom in. You can do this using the zoom bar on the left hand side of the map (see [Figure 34-2](#)). Click the + sign on the top of the zoom bar. To center and zoom in on a location, double click the location. To see a map with less detail you need to zoom out. To do this, click the - sign on the bottom of the zoom bar.

**Figure 34-2** Zooming Control




---

**Note** You can perform zooming operations using mouse or keyboard. With keyboard, click the + or - signs to zoom in or zoom out. With mouse, use the mouse scroll wheel to zoom in or zoom out or double click to zoom in.

---

## Adding Access Points to a Floor Area

After you add the .PNG, .JPG, .JPEG, or .GIF format floor plan and outdoor area maps to the Prime Infrastructure database, you can position lightweight access point icons on the maps to show where they are installed in the buildings. To add access points to a floor area and outdoor area, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
  - Step 2** From the Maps Tree View or the Maps > Site Maps left sidebar menu, select the applicable floor to open the Floor View page.
  - Step 3** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Add Access Points**, and click **Go**.

- Step 4** In the Add Access Points page, select the check boxes of the access points that you want to add to the floor area.
- To search for access points, enter AP name or MAC address (Ethernet/Radio)/IP in the Search AP [Name/MacAddress (Ethernet/Radio)/IP] text box, and then click **Search**. The search is case-insensitive. Only access points that are not yet assigned to any floor or outdoor area appear in the list.
- Select the check box at the top of the list to select all access points.
- Step 5** When all of the applicable access points are selected, click **OK** located at the bottom of the access point list.
- The Position Access Points page appears.
- Each access point you have chosen to add to the floor map is represented by a gray circle (differentiated by access point name or MAC address) and is lined up in the upper left part of the floor map.
- Step 6** Click and drag each access point to the appropriate location. Access points turn blue when selected.
- When you drag an access point on the map, its horizontal and vertical position appears in the Horizontal and Vertical text boxes.
- The small black arrow at the side of each access point represents Side A of each access point, and each access point arrow must correspond with the direction in which the access points were installed. Side A is clearly noted on each 1000 series access point and has no relevance to the 802.11a/n radio. To adjust the directional arrow, choose the appropriate orientation from the Antenna Angle drop-down list.
- When selected, the access point details are displayed on the left side of the page. Access point details include the following:
- AP Model—Indicates the model type of the selected access point.
  - Protocol—Choose the protocol for this access point from the drop-down list.
  - Antenna—Choose the appropriate antenna type for this access point from the drop-down list.
  - Antenna/AP Image—The antenna image reflects the antenna selected from the Antenna drop-down list. Click the arrow at the top right of the antenna image to expand the image size.
  - Antenna Orientation—Depending on the antenna type, enter the Azimuth and the Elevation orientations in degrees.
- The Azimuth option does not appear for Omnidirectional antennas because their pattern is nondirectional in azimuth.



---

**Note** For internal antennas, the same elevation angle applies to both radios.

---

The antenna angle is relative to the map X axis. Because the origin of the X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) axes is in the upper left corner of the map, 0 degrees points side A of the access point to the right, 90 degrees points side A down, 180 degrees points side A to the left, and so on.

The antenna elevation is used to move the antenna vertically, up or down, to a maximum of 90 degrees.



---

**Note** Make sure each access point is in the correct location on the map and has the correct antenna orientation. Accurate access point positioning is critical when you use the maps to find coverage holes and rogue access points.

---

See the following URL for further information about the antenna elevation and azimuth patterns:  
[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/hw/wireless/ps469/tsd\\_products\\_support\\_series\\_home.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/hw/wireless/ps469/tsd_products_support_series_home.html)

**Step 7** When you are finished placing and adjusting each access point, click **Save**.



**Note** Clicking Save causes the antenna gain on the access point to correspond to the selected antenna. This might cause the radio to reset.

Prime Infrastructure computes the RF prediction for the entire map. These RF predictions are popularly known as *heat maps* because they show the relative intensity of the RF signals on the coverage area map.

This display is only an approximation of the actual RF signal intensity because it does not take into account the attenuation of various building materials, such as drywall or metal objects, nor does it display the effects of RF signals bouncing off obstructions.



**Note** Antenna gain settings have no effect on heatmaps and location calculations. Antenna gain is implicitly associated to the antenna name. Because of this, the following apply:

- If an antenna is used and marked as “Other” in Prime Infrastructure, it is ignored for all heatmap and location calculations;
- If an antenna is used and marked as a Cisco antenna in Prime Infrastructure, that antenna gain setting (internal value on Prime Infrastructure) is used no matter what gain is set on the controller.

See the [“Placing Access Points” section on page 34-28](#) for more information on placing access points on a map.

You can change the position of access points by importing or exporting a file. See the [“Positioning Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers” section on page 34-44](#) for more information.

## Placing Access Points

To determine the best location of all devices in the wireless LAN coverage areas, you need to consider the access point density and location.

Ensure that no fewer than 3 access points, and preferably 4 or 5, provide coverage to every area where device location is required. The more access points that detect a device, the better. This high level guideline translates into the following best practices, ordered by priority:

1. Most importantly, access points should surround the desired location.
2. One access point should be placed roughly every 50 to 70 linear feet (about 17 to 20 meters). This translates into one access point every 2,500 to 5000 square feet (about 230 to 450 square meters).



**Note** The access point must be mounted so that it is under 20 feet high. For best performance, a mounting at 10 feet would be ideal.

Following these guidelines makes it more likely that access points detect tracked devices. Rarely do two physical environments have the same RF characteristics. Users might need to adjust these parameters to their specific environment and requirements.



**Note**

Devices must be detected at signals greater than  $-75$  dBm for the controllers to forward information to the location appliance. No fewer than three access points should be able to detect any device at signals below  $-75$  dBm.

**Note**

If you have a ceiling-mounted AP with an integrated omni-directional antenna, the antenna orientation does not really need to be set in Prime Infrastructure. However, if you mount that same AP on the wall, you must set the antenna orientation to 90 degrees.

Table 34-5 describes the orientation of the access points.

**Table 34-5**      **Antenna Orientation of the Access Points**

| Access Point                | Antenna Orientation                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1140 mounted on the ceiling | The Cisco logo should be pointing to the floor. Elevation: 0 degrees.                                                                                                                                      |
| 1240 mounted on the ceiling | The antenna should be perpendicular to the access point.<br>Elevation: 0 degrees.                                                                                                                          |
| 1240 mounted on the wall    | The antenna should be parallel to the access point.<br>Elevation: 0 degrees.<br>If the antenna is perpendicular to the AP then the angle is 90 degrees (up or down does not matter as the dipole is omni). |

## Using the Automatic Hierarchy to Create Maps

Automatic Hierarchy Creation is a way for you to quickly create maps and assign access points to maps in Prime Infrastructure. You can use Automatic Hierarchy Creation to create maps, once you have added wireless LAN controllers to Prime Infrastructure and named your access points. Also, you can use it after adding access points to your network to assign access points to maps in Prime Infrastructure.

**Note**

To use the Automatic Hierarchy Creation feature, you must have an established naming pattern for your wireless access points that provides the campus, building, floor, or outdoor area names for the maps.

For example, San Jose-01-GroundFloor-AP3500i1.

- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Automatic Hierarchy Creation** to display the Automatic Hierarchy Creation page.
- Step 2** In the text box, enter the name of an access point on your system. Or, you can choose one from the list. This name is used to create a regular expression to create your maps.




---

**Note** To update a previously created regular expression, click **Load and Continue** next to the expression and update the expression accordingly. To delete a regular expression, click **Delete** next to the expression.

---

**Step 3** Click **Next**.

**Step 4** If your access point's name has a delimiter, enter it in the text box and click **Generate basic regex based on delimiter**. The system generates a regular expression that matches your access point's name based on the delimiter.

For example, using the dash (-) delimiter in the access point name San Jose-01-GroundFloor-AP3500i1, produces the regular expression `/(.*)-(.*)-(.*)-(.*)/`.

If you have a more complicated access point name, you can manually enter the regular expression.

You are not required to enter the leading and trailing slashes.

As a convention, Prime Infrastructure displays regular expressions in slashes.

**Step 5** Click **Test**. The system displays the maps that will be created for the access point name and the regular expression entered.

**Step 6** Using the Group fields, assign matching groups to hierarchy types.

For example, if your access point is named: SJC14-4-AP-BREAK-ROOM

In this example, the campus name is SJC, the building name is 14, the floor name is 4, and the AP name is AP-BREAK-ROOM.

Use the regular expression: `/([A-Z]+)(\d+)-(\d+)-(.*)/`

From the AP name, the following groups are extracted:

1. SJC
2. 14
3. 4
4. AP-BREAK-ROOM

The matching groups are assigned from left to right, starting at 1.

To make the matching groups match the hierarchy elements, use the drop-down list for each group number to select the appropriate hierarchy element.

This enables you to have almost any ordering of locations in your access point names.

For example, if your access point is named: EastLab-Atrium2-3-SanFrancisco

If you use the regular expression: `/(.*)-(.*)-(.*)-(.*)/`

with the following group mapping:

1. Building
2. Device Name
3. Floor
4. Campus

Automatic Hierarchy Creation produces a campus named SanFrancisco, a building under that campus named EastLab, and a floor in EastLab named 3.

**Note**

The two hierarchy types, Not in device name and Device have no effect, but enable you to skip groups in case you need to use a matching group for some other purpose.

Automatic Hierarchy Creation requires the following groups to be mapped in order to compute a map on which to place the access point:

| Campus group present in match? | Building group present in match? | Floor group present in match? | Resulting location                              |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Yes                            | Yes                              | Yes                           | Campus > Building > Floor                       |
| Yes                            | Yes                              | No                            | Failed match                                    |
| Yes                            | No                               | Yes                           | Campus > Floor (where Floor is an outdoor area) |
| Yes                            | No                               | No                            | Failed match                                    |
| No                             | Yes                              | Yes                           | System Campus > Building > Floor                |
| No                             | Yes                              | No                            | Failed match                                    |
| No                             | No                               | Yes                           | Failed match                                    |
| No                             | No                               | No                            | Failed match                                    |

Automatic Hierarchy Creation attempts to guess the floor index from the floor name. If the floor name is a number, AHC will assign the floor a positive floor index. If the floor name is a negative number or starts with the letter B (for example, b1, -4, or B2), AHC assigns the floor a negative floor index. This indicates that the floor is a basement.

When searching for an existing map on which to place the access point, AHC considers floors in the access point's building with the same floor index as the access point's name.

For example, if the map SF > MarketStreet > Sublevel1 exists and has a floor index of -1, then the access point SF-MarketStreet-b1-MON1 will be assigned to that floor.

**Step 7** Click **Next**. You can test against more access points. You may test your regular expression and matching group mapping against more access points by entering the access point names in the Add more device names to test against field, and clicking **Add**.

You then click **Test** to test each of the access points names in the table. The result of each test is displayed in the table.

If required, return to the previous step to edit the regular expression or group mapping for the current regular expression.

**Step 8** Click **Next**, then click **Save and Apply**. This applies the regular expression to the system. The system processes all the access points that are not assigned to a map.

**Note**

You can edit the maps to include floor images, correct dimensions, and so on. When Automatic Hierarchy Creation creates a map, it uses the default dimensions of 20 feet by 20 feet. You will need to edit the created maps to specify the correct dimensions and other attributes.

Maps created using Automatic Hierarchy Creation appear in the maps list with an *incomplete* icon. Once you have edited a map, the *incomplete* icon disappears. You may hide the column for incomplete maps by clicking the Edit View link.

---

## Using the Map Editor

You use the Map Editor to define, draw, and enhance floor plan information. The map editor allows you to create obstacles so that they can be taken into consideration while computing RF prediction heatmaps for access points. You can also add coverage areas for location appliances that locate clients and tags in that particular area.

The planning mode opens the map editor in the browser window from which the planning tool is launched. If the original browser window has navigated away from the floor page, you need to navigate back to the floor page to launch the map editor.

- [Guidelines for Using the Map Editor](#)
- [Guidelines for Placing Access Points](#)
- [Guidelines for Inclusion and Exclusion Areas on a Floor](#)
- [Opening the Map Editor](#)
- [Map Editor Icons](#)
- [Using the Map Editor to Draw Coverage Areas](#)
- [Using the Map Editor to Draw Obstacles](#)
- [Defining an Inclusion Region on a Floor](#)
- [Defining an Exclusion Region on a Floor](#)
- [Defining a Rail Line on a Floor](#)

## Guidelines for Using the Map Editor

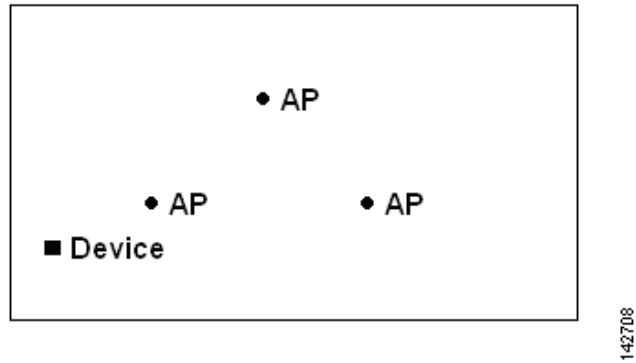
Consider the following when modifying a building or floor map using the map editor:

- We recommend that you use the map editor to draw walls and other obstacles rather than importing an .FPE file from the legacy floor plan editor.
  - If necessary, you can still import .FPE files. To do so, navigate to the desired floor area, choose **Edit Floor Area** from the **Select a command** drop-down list, click **Go**, select the **FPE File** check box, and browse to choose the .FPE file.
- You can add any number of walls to a floor plan with the map editor; however, the processing power and memory of a client workstation might limit the refresh and rendering aspects of Prime Infrastructure.
  - We recommend a practical limit of 400 walls per floor for machines with 1 GB RAM or less.
- All walls are used by Prime Infrastructure when generating RF coverage heatmaps.

## Guidelines for Placing Access Points

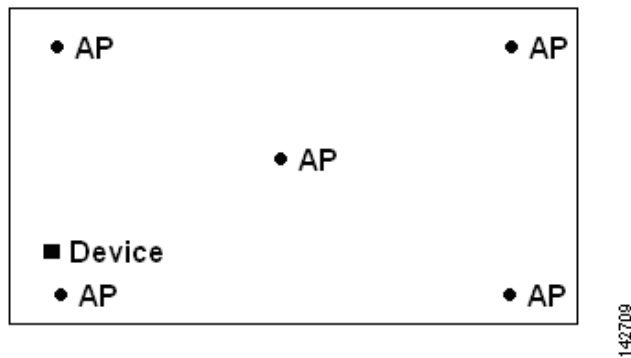
Place access points along the periphery of coverage areas to keep devices close to the exterior of rooms and buildings. Access points placed in the center of these coverage areas provide good data on devices that would otherwise appear equidistant from all other access points.

**Figure 34-3** Access Points Clustered Together



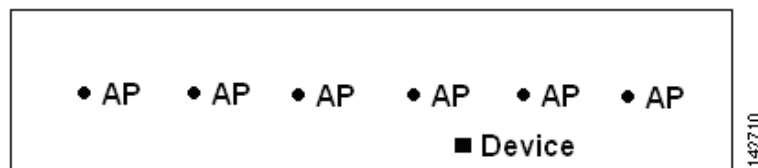
By increasing overall access point density and moving access points towards the perimeter of the coverage area, location accuracy is greatly improved.

**Figure 34-4** Improved Location Accuracy by Increasing Density



In long and narrow coverage areas, avoid placing access points in a straight line. Stagger them so that each access point is more likely to provide a unique snapshot of a device location.

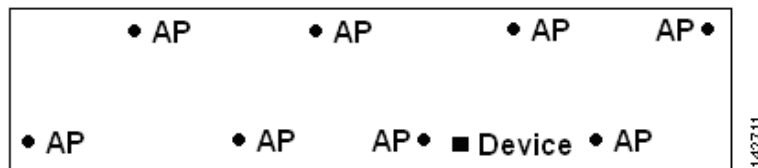
**Figure 34-5** Refrain From Straight Line Placement



Although the design in might provide enough access point density for high bandwidth applications, location suffers because each access point view of a single device is not varied enough; therefore, location is difficult to determine.

Move the access points to the perimeter of the coverage area and stagger them. Each has a greater likelihood of offering a distinctly different view of the device, resulting in higher location accuracy.

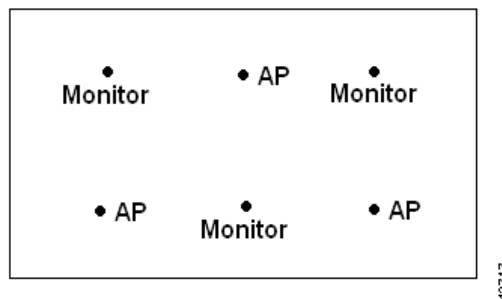
**Figure 34-6** Improved Location Accuracy by Staggering Around Perimeter



Most current wireless handsets support only 802.11b/n, which offers only three non-overlapping channels. Therefore, wireless LANs designed for telephony tend to be less dense than those planned to carry data. Also, when traffic is queued in the Platinum QoS bucket (typically reserved for voice and other latency-sensitive traffic), lightweight access points postpone their scanning functions that allow them to peak at other channels and collect, among other things, device location information. The user has the option to supplement the wireless LAN deployment with access points set to monitor-only mode. Access points that perform only monitoring functions do not provide service to clients and do not create any interference. They simply scan the airwaves for device information.

Less dense wireless LAN installations, such as voice networks, find their location accuracy greatly increased by the addition and proper placement of monitor access points.

**Figure 34-7** Less Dense Wireless LAN Installations



Verify coverage using a wireless laptop, handheld, or phone to ensure that no fewer than three access points are detected by the device. To verify client and asset tag location, ensure that the Prime Infrastructure reports client devices and tags within the specified accuracy range (10 m, 90%).



**Note** If you have a ceiling-mounted AP with an integrated omni-directional antenna, the antenna orientation does not really need to be set in Prime Infrastructure. However, if you mount that same AP on the wall, you must set the antenna orientation to 90 degrees.

## Guidelines for Inclusion and Exclusion Areas on a Floor

Inclusion and exclusion areas can be any polygon shape and must have at least three points.

You can only define one inclusion region on a floor. By default, an inclusion region is defined for each floor when it is added to Prime Infrastructure. The inclusion region is indicated by a solid aqua line, and generally outlines the region.

You can define multiple exclusion regions on a floor.

Newly defined inclusion and exclusion regions appear on heatmaps only after the mobility services engine recalculates location.

## Opening the Map Editor

Follow these steps to use the map editor:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Map Design**.
  - Step 2** Click the desired campus. The Site Maps > Campus Name page appears.
  - Step 3** Click a campus and then click a building.
  - Step 4** Click the desired floor area. The Site Maps > Campus Name > Building Name > Floor Area Name page appears.
  - Step 5** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Map Editor**, and click **Go**. The Map Editor page appears.
- 

## Map Editor Icons

**Table 34-6** Next Generation Maps Icons












| Icon                                                                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Scale Floor—Click anywhere on the map to start drawing line. Double click to finish the line and enter the new line length in the popup shown. This will modify the floor dimensions to the new dimensions.                                                                                                                                     |
|  | Measure Distance—Click anywhere on the map to start drawing line. Double click to finish the line. Measured line length in ft/meters is shown on the top.                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|  | Copy/Move Obstacles—Select obstacles either by drawing a box on the map or by clicking the obstacles. To copy obstacles, click <b>Copy</b> . This will create new obstacles just above the selected obstacles. To move the obstacles, drag the selected obstacles to new position. Clicking anywhere on the map will unselect all the elements. |
|  | Delete Mode—Select the elements to be deleted either by drawing a box on the map or clicking each element. Use Shift key to select multiple elements. Use the Ctrl key to toggle selection of elements, one at a time. Clicking anywhere on the map will unselect all the elements. Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the selected elements         |
|  | Modify Mode—Click an element and click the vertices to reshape or drag the element to move to a new position. Clicking anywhere on the map will unselect the selected element.                                                                                                                                                                  |
|  | Draw Coverage Area                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

Table 34-6 Next Generation Maps Icons (continued)

| Icon                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Draw Location Region                                                                                                                                                      |
|  | Draw Rail                                                                                                                                                                 |
|  | Draw Obstacle—Click anywhere on the map to start drawing. Double click to finish drawing. Use Ctrl-z to undo, Ctrl-y to redo and 'Esc' key to cancel the current drawing. |
|  | Place Marker                                                                                                                                                              |
|  | Navigation—Remove any selected modes such as drawing or editing and switches to navigation mode where you can view the map and perform zooming or panning.                |

## Using the Map Editor to Draw Coverage Areas

If you have a building that is non-rectangular or you want to mark a non-rectangular area within a floor, you can use the map editor to draw a coverage area.







- 
- Step 1** Add the floor plan if it is not already represented in Prime Infrastructure.
- Step 2** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 3** Click the Map Name that corresponds to the outdoor area, campus, building, or floor you want to edit.
- Step 4** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Map Editor**, and click **Go**.
- Step 5** In the Map Editor page, click the **Draw Coverage Area** icon on the toolbar.  
A pop-up appears.
- Step 6** Enter the name of the area that you are defining. Click **OK**.  
A drawing tool appears.
- Step 7** Move the drawing tool to the area you want to outline.
- Click the left mouse button to begin and end drawing a line.
  - When you have completely outlined the area, double-click the left mouse button and the area is highlighted in the page.
- The outlined area must be a closed object to appear highlighted on the map.
- Step 8** Click the disk icon on the toolbar to save the newly drawn area.
-



## Using the Map Editor to Draw Obstacles

Table 34-7 describes the obstacle color coding.

**Table 34-7** Obstacle Color Coding

| Type of obstacle | Color coding                                                                      | Loss (in dB) |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Thick wall       |  | 13           |
| Light wall       |  | 2            |
| Heavy door       |  | 15           |
| Light door       |  | 4            |
| Cubicle          |  | 1            |
| Glass            |  | 1.5          |

## Defining an Inclusion Region on a Floor

To define an inclusion area, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the appropriate floor area.
- Step 3** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Map Editor**.
- Step 4** Click **Go**.
- Step 5** At the map, click the aqua box on the toolbar.  
A message box appears reminding you that only one inclusion area can be defined at a time. Defining a new inclusion region automatically removes the previously defined inclusion region. By default, an inclusion region is defined for each floor when it is added to Prime Infrastructure. The inclusion region is indicated by a solid aqua line and generally outlines the region.
- Step 6** Click **OK** in the message box that appears. A drawing icon appears to outline the inclusion area.
- Step 7** To begin defining the inclusion area, move the drawing icon to a starting point on the map and click once.
- Step 8** Move the cursor along the boundary of the area you want to include and click to end a border line. Click again to define the next boundary line.
- Step 9** Repeat [Step 8](#) until the area is outlined and then double-click the drawing icon. A solid aqua line defines the inclusion area.
- Step 10** Choose **Save** from the Command menu or click the **disk** icon on the toolbar to save the inclusion region.




---

**Note** If you made an error in defining the inclusion area, click the area. The selected area is outlined by a dashed aqua line. Next, click the **X** icon on the toolbar. The area is removed from the floor map.

---

**Step 11** Select the **Location Regions** check box if it is not already selected. If you want it to apply to all floor maps, click **Save settings**. Close the Layers configuration page.

**Step 12** To resynchronize Prime Infrastructure and MSE databases, choose **Services > Synchronize Services**.




---

**Note** If the two DBs are already synchronized then a resynchronization happens automatically every time there is a change. There is no need for an explicit resynch.

---

**Step 13** In the Synchronize page, choose **Network Designs** from the Synchronize drop-down list and then click **Synchronize**.

You can confirm that the synchronization is successful by viewing two green arrows in the Sync. Status column.




---

**Note** Newly defined inclusion and exclusion regions appear on heatmaps only after the mobility services engine recalculates location.

---

## Defining an Exclusion Region on a Floor

To further refine location calculations on a floor, you can define areas that are excluded (exclusion areas) in the calculations. For example, you might want to exclude areas such as an atrium or stairwell within a building. As a rule, exclusion areas are generally defined within the borders of an inclusion area.

To define an exclusion area, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
  - Step 2** Click the name of the appropriate floor area.
  - Step 3** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Map Editor**.
  - Step 4** Click **Go**.
  - Step 5** At the map, click the purple box on the toolbar.
  - Step 6** Click **OK** in the message box that appears. A drawing icon appears to outline the exclusion area.
  - Step 7** To begin defining the exclusion area, move the drawing icon to the starting point on the map, and click once.
  - Step 8** Move the drawing icon along the boundary of the area you want to exclude. Click once to start a boundary line, and click again to end the boundary line.
  - Step 9** Repeat [Step 8](#) until the area is outlined and then double-click the drawing icon. The defined exclusion area is shaded in purple when the area is completely defined. The excluded area is shaded in purple.
  - Step 10** To define additional exclusion regions, repeat [Step 5](#) to [Step 9](#).

- Step 11** When all exclusion areas are defined, choose **Save** from the Command menu or click the **disk** icon on the toolbar to save the exclusion region.
- To delete an exclusion area, click the area to be deleted. The selected area is outlined by a dashed purple line. Next, click the **X** icon on the toolbar. The area is removed from the floor map.
- Step 12** Select the **Location Regions** check box if it is not already selected, click **Save settings**, and close the Layers configuration page when complete.
- Step 13** To resynchronize Prime Infrastructure and location databases, choose **Services > Synchronize Services**.
- Step 14** In the Synchronize page, choose **Network Designs** from the Synchronize drop-down list and then click **Synchronize**.
- You can confirm that the synchronization is successful by viewing two green arrows in the Sync. Status column.

## Defining a Rail Line on a Floor

You can define a rail line on a floor that represents a conveyor belt. Additionally, you can define an area around the rail area known as the snap-width to further assist location calculations. This represents the area in which you expect clients to appear. Any client located within the snap-width area is plotted on the rail line (majority) or just outside of the snap-width area (minority).



**Note** Rail line configurations do not apply to tags.

The snap-width area is defined in feet or meters (user-defined) and represents the distance that is monitored on either side (east and west or north and south) of the rail.

To define a rail with a floor, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the appropriate floor area.
- Step 3** Choose **Map Editor** from the **Select a command** drop-down list.
- Step 4** Click **Go**.
- Step 5** In the map, click the **rail** icon (to the right of the purple exclusion icon) on the toolbar.
- Step 6** In the message dialog box that appears, enter a snap-width (feet or meters) for the rail and then click **OK**. A drawing icon appears.
- Step 7** Click the **drawing** icon at the starting point of the rail line. Click again when you want to stop drawing the line or change the direction of the line.
- Step 8** Click the **drawing** icon twice when the rail line is completely drawn on the floor map. The rail line appears on the map and is bordered on either side by the defined snap-width region.
- To delete a rail line, click the area to be deleted. The selected area is outlined by a dashed purple line. Next, click the **X** icon on the toolbar. The area is removed from the floor map.
- Step 9** At the floor map, choose the **Layers** drop-down list.
- Step 10** Select the **Rails** check box for if it is not already selected, click **Save settings**, and close the Layers configuration pane when complete.

- Step 11** To resynchronize Prime Infrastructure and mobility services engine, choose **Services > Synchronize Services**.
- Step 12** In the Synchronize page, choose **Network Designs** from the Synchronize drop-down list and then click **Synchronize**.

You can confirm that the synchronization is successful by viewing two green arrows in the Sync. Status column.

---

## Adding an Outdoor Area

You can add an outdoor area to a campus map in the Prime Infrastructure database regardless of whether you have added outdoor area maps to the database.

To add an outdoor area to a campus map, follow these steps:

- Step 1** If you want to add a map of the outdoor area to the database, save the map in .PNG, .JPG, .JPEG, or .GIF format. Then browse to and import the map from anywhere in your file system.



**Note** You do not need a map to add an outdoor area. You can simply define the dimensions of the area to add it to the database. The map can be any size because Prime Infrastructure automatically resizes the map to fit the workspace.

---

- Step 2** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 3** Click the desired campus to display the Monitor > Site Maps > Campus View page.
- Step 4** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **New Outdoor Area**.
- Step 5** Click **Go**. The Create New Area page appears.
- Step 6** In the New Outdoor Area page, enter the following information:
- Name—The user-defined name of the new outdoor area.
  - Contact—The user-defined contact name.
  - Area Type (RF Model)—Cubes And Walled Offices, Drywall Office Only, Outdoor Open Space (default).
  - AP Height (feet)—Enter the height of the access point.
  - Image File—Name of the file containing the outdoor area map. Click **Browse** to find the file.
- Step 7** Click **Next**.
- Step 8** Click **Place** to put the outdoor area on the campus map. Prime Infrastructure creates an outdoor area rectangle scaled to the size of the campus map.
- Step 9** Click and drag the outdoor area rectangle to the desired position on the campus map.
- Step 10** Click **Save** to save this outdoor area and its campus location to the database.  
A hyperlink associated with the outdoor area takes you to the corresponding Maps page.
- Step 11** (Optional) To assign location presence information for the new outdoor area, choose **Edit Location Presence Info**, and click **Go**.

By default, the Override Child Element Presence Info check box is selected. There is no need to alter this setting for outdoor areas.

---

## Using Chokepoints to Enhance Tag Location Reporting

Installation of chokepoints provides enhanced location information for RFID tags. When an active Cisco-compatible Extensions Version 1-compliant RFID tag enters the range of a chokepoint, it is stimulated by the chokepoint. The MAC address of this chokepoint is then included in the next beacon sent by the stimulated tag. All access points that detect this tag beacon then forward the information to the controller and location appliance.

Using chokepoints in conjunction with active compatible extensions compliant tags provides immediate location information on a tag and its asset. When a Cisco-compatible Extension tag moves out of the range of a chokepoint, its subsequent beacon frames do not contain any identifying chokepoint information. Location determination of the tag defaults to the standard calculation methods based on RSSIs reported by the access point associated with the tag.

- [Adding a Chokepoint to a Prime Infrastructure Map](#)
- [Positioning Chokepoints](#)
- [Adding Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers to Prime Infrastructure](#)
- [Adding Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers to a Map](#)
- [Positioning Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers](#)
- [Managing RF Calibration Models](#)

## Adding Chokepoints to Prime Infrastructure

Chokepoints are installed and configured as recommended by the Chokepoint vendor. After the chokepoint installation is complete and operational, the chokepoint can be entered into the location database and plotted on an Prime Infrastructure map.

To add a chokepoint to the Prime Infrastructure database, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configure > Chokepoints**.
  - Step 2** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Chokepoints**.
  - Step 3** Click **Go**.
  - Step 4** Enter the MAC address and name for the chokepoint.
  - Step 5** Select the **Entry/Exit Chokepoint** check box.
  - Step 6** Enter the coverage range for the chokepoint.  
  
The Chokepoint range is a visual representation only. It is product-specific. The actual range must be configured separately using the applicable chokepoint vendor software.
  - Step 7** Click **OK**.

After the chokepoint is added to the database, it can be placed on the appropriate Prime Infrastructure floor map.

## Adding a Chokepoint to a Prime Infrastructure Map

To add the chokepoint to a map, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.

**Step 2** In the Maps page, choose the link that corresponds to the floor location of the chokepoint.

**Step 3** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Add Chokepoints**.

**Step 4** Click **Go**.

The Add Chokepoints summary page lists all recently added chokepoints that are in the database but are not yet mapped.

**Step 5** Select the check box next to the chokepoint that you want to place on the map.

**Step 6** Click **OK**.

A map appears with a chokepoint icon located in the top left-hand corner. You are now ready to place the chokepoint on the map.

**Step 7** Left-click the chokepoint icon and drag it to the proper location.

The MAC address, name, and coverage range of the chokepoint appear in the dialog box in the left when you click the chokepoint icon for placement.

**Step 8** Click **Save**.

You are returned to the floor map and the added chokepoint appears on the map.



**Note** The newly created chokepoint icon might or might not appear on the map depending on the display settings for that floor.



**Note** The rings around the chokepoint icon indicate the coverage area. When a CCX tag and its asset passes within the coverage area, location details are broadcast, and the tag is automatically mapped on the chokepoint coverage circle. When the tag moves out of the chokepoint range, its location is calculated as before and is no longer mapped on the chokepoint rings.



**Note** The MAC address, name, entry/exit chokepoint, static IP address, and range of the chokepoint appear when you hover your mouse cursor over its map icon.

**Step 9** If the chokepoint does not appear on the map, select the **Chokepoints** check box located in the Floor Settings menu.



**Note** Do not click **Save Settings** unless you want to save this display criteria for all maps.

You must synchronize the network design to the mobility services engine or location server to push chokepoint information.

---

## Positioning Chokepoints

To position chokepoints on the map, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Left-click the **Chokepoint** icon and drag it to the proper location.  
The MAC address, name, and coverage range of the chokepoint appear in the dialog box in the left when you click the chokepoint icon for placement.
- Step 2** Click **Save** when the icon is correctly placed on the map.
- Step 3** The newly created chokepoint icon might or might not appear on the map depending on the display settings for that floor.



**Note** The rings around the chokepoint icon indicate the coverage area. When a Cisco-compatible Extensions tag and its asset passes within the coverage area, location details are broadcast, and the tag is automatically mapped on the chokepoint coverage circle. The chokepoint range is provided as a visual only, but chokepoint vendor software is required to actually configure the range. When the tag moves out of the chokepoint range, its location is calculated as before and is no longer mapped on the chokepoint rings.

---



**Note** The MAC address, name, and range of a chokepoint are displayed when you hover your mouse cursor over its map icon.

---

- Step 4** If the chokepoint does not appear on the map, choose **Layers** to view a drop-down list of possible elements to display on the map. Select the **Chokepoints** check box.



**Note** Do not click **Save Settings** unless you want to save this display criteria for all maps.

---



**Note** You can change the position of chokepoints by importing or exporting a file.

---

## Configuring Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers

- [Adding Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers to Prime Infrastructure](#)
- [Adding Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers to a Map](#)
- [Positioning Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers](#)
- [Managing RF Calibration Models](#)

- [Managing Location Presence Information](#)

## Adding Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers to Prime Infrastructure

To add Wi-Fi TDOA receivers to the Prime Infrastructure database, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configure > WiFi TDOA Receivers**.
- Step 2** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add WiFi TDOA Receivers**.
- Step 3** Click **Go**.
- Step 4** Enter the MAC address, name, and static IP address for the Wi-Fi TDOA receiver.



**Note** Wi-Fi TDOA receivers are configured separately using the Wi-Fi TDOA receiver vendor software.

---

- Step 5** Click **OK** to save the Wi-Fi TDOA receiver entry to the database.

After the Wi-Fi TDOA receiver is added to the database, place it on the appropriate Prime Infrastructure floor map. See the [“Adding Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers to Prime Infrastructure”](#) section on page 34-44 for more information.

---

## Adding Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers to a Map

To add a **WiFi TDOA** receiver to a map, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Choose the link that corresponds to the floor location of the Wi-Fi TDOA receiver.
- Step 3** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add WiFi TDOA Receivers**.
- Step 4** Click **Go**.

The Add WiFi TDOA Receivers summary page lists all recently added Wi-Fi TDOA receivers that are in the database but are not yet mapped.

- Step 5** Select the check box next to the Wi-Fi TDOA receiver to be added to the map.
- Step 6** Click **OK**.

A map appears with a green WiFi TDOA receiver icon located in the top left-hand corner. You are now ready to position the Wi-Fi TDOA receiver on the map.

---

## Positioning Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers

To position Wi-Fi TDOA receivers on the map, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Left-click the **WiFi TDOA receiver** icon and drag it to the proper location.



The MAC address and name of the Wi-Fi TDOA receiver appear in the left pane when you click the WiFi TDOA receiver icon for placement.

**Step 2** Click **Save** when the icon is correctly placed on the map.

The MAC address of the Wi-Fi TDOA receiver appears when you hover your mouse cursor over its map icon.

**Step 3** If the chokepoint does not appear on the map, click **Layers** to view a drop-down list of possible elements to display on the map. Select the **WiFi TDOA Receivers** check box.



---

**Note** Do not select **Save Settings** unless you want to save this display criteria for all maps.

---



---

**Note** You can change the position of Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers by importing or exporting a file.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Adding Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers to Prime Infrastructure](#)
- [Adding Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers to a Map](#)
- [Positioning Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers](#)

## Managing RF Calibration Models

If the provided RF models do not sufficiently characterize the floor layout, you can create a calibration model that is applied to the floor and better represents the attenuation characteristics of that floor. The calibration models are used as RF overlays with measured RF signal characteristics that can be applied to different floor areas. This enables the Cisco WLAN solution installation team to lay out one floor in a multi-floor area, use the RF calibration tool to measure, save the RF characteristics of that floor as a new calibration model, and apply that calibration model to all the other floors with the same physical layout.

You can collect data for a calibration using one of two methods:

- Point mode data collection—Calibration points are selected and their coverage area is calculated one location at a time.
- Linear mode data collection—A series of linear paths are selected and then calculated as you traverse the path. This approach is generally faster than the point mode data collection. You can also employ point mode data collection to augment data collection for locations missed by the linear paths.



---

**Note** Calibration models can only be applied to clients, rogue clients, and rogue access points. Calibration for tags is done using the Aeroscout System Manager. See the following URL for details on tag calibration at: <http://support.aeroscout.com>.

---



---

**Note** We recommend client device that supports both 802.11a/n and 802.11b/g/n radios to expedite the calibration process for both spectrums.

---

Use a laptop or other wireless device to open a browser to Prime Infrastructure server and perform the calibration process.

- [Accessing Current Calibration Models](#)
- [Applying Calibration Models to Maps](#)
- [Viewing Calibration Model Properties](#)
- [Viewing Calibration Model Details](#)
- [Creating New Calibration Models](#)
- [Starting Calibration Process](#)
- [Calibrating](#)
- [Apply the Model to the Floor](#)
- [Deleting Calibration Models](#)

## Accessing Current Calibration Models

To access current calibration models, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **RF Calibration Models**. The Model Name and Status for each calibration model are listed.
- Step 3** Click the model name to access a specific calibration model.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Accessing Current Calibration Models](#)
- [Applying Calibration Models to Maps](#)
- [Viewing Calibration Model Properties](#)
- [Viewing Calibration Model Details](#)
- [Creating New Calibration Models](#)
- [Starting Calibration Process](#)
- [Apply the Model to the Floor](#)
- [Deleting Calibration Models](#)

## Applying Calibration Models to Maps

To apply a current calibration model to a map, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **RF Calibration Models**.
- Step 3** Click the model name to access the applicable calibration model.
- Step 4** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Apply to Maps**.

**Step 5** Click **Go**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Accessing Current Calibration Models](#)
- [Viewing Calibration Model Properties](#)
- [Viewing Calibration Model Details](#)
- [Creating New Calibration Models](#)
- [Starting Calibration Process](#)
- [Apply the Model to the Floor](#)
- [Deleting Calibration Models](#)

## Viewing Calibration Model Properties

To view or edit current calibration models, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **RF Calibration Models**.
- Step 3** Click the model name to access the applicable calibration model.
- Step 4** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Properties**.
- Step 5** Click **Go** to view or edit calibration model details. See the [Viewing Calibration Model Properties](#) for more information.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Accessing Current Calibration Models](#)
- [Applying Calibration Models to Maps](#)
- [Viewing Calibration Model Details](#)
- [Creating New Calibration Models](#)
- [Starting Calibration Process](#)
- [Apply the Model to the Floor](#)
- [Deleting Calibration Models](#)

## Viewing Calibration Model Details

To edit calibration model details, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **RF Calibration Models**.
- Step 3** Click the model name to access the applicable calibration model.
- Step 4** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Properties**.

**Step 5** Click **Go**.

**Step 6** The following parameters might be edited:

- Sweep Client Power for Location—Click to enable. You might want to enable this if a high density of access points exists and transmit power is reduced or unknown. The sweeping range of client transmit power might improve accuracy but scalability is negatively affected.
- HeatMap Binsize—Choose **4**, **8**, **16**, or **32** from the drop-down list.
- HeatMap Cutoff—Determine the heatmap cutoff. We recommend a low heatmap cutoff especially if the access point density is high and RF propagation conditions are favorable. A higher cutoff value increases scalability but might cause difficulty when locating clients.

**Step 7** When any necessary changes have been made or to exit the page, click **OK**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Accessing Current Calibration Models](#)
- [Applying Calibration Models to Maps](#)
- [Viewing Calibration Model Properties](#)
- [Creating New Calibration Models](#)
- [Starting Calibration Process](#)
- [Apply the Model to the Floor](#)
- [Deleting Calibration Models](#)

## Creating New Calibration Models

To create a new calibration model, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.

**Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **RF Calibration Models**.

**Step 3** Click **Go**.

**Step 4** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Create New Model**.

**Step 5** Click **Go**.

**Step 6** Enter a model name, and click **OK**.

The new model appears along with the other RF calibration models with a status of Not Yet Calibrated.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Accessing Current Calibration Models](#)
- [Applying Calibration Models to Maps](#)
- [Viewing Calibration Model Properties](#)
- [Viewing Calibration Model Details](#)
- [Starting Calibration Process](#)
- [Apply the Model to the Floor](#)

- [Deleting Calibration Models](#)

## Starting Calibration Process

To start the calibration process, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Click the model name to open the Calibration Model > Model Name page.
- Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Add Data Points**.
- Step 3** Click **Go**.
- Step 4** Enter the MAC address of the device being used to perform the calibration. Manually-entered MAC addresses must be delimited with colons (such as FF:FF:FF:FF:FF:FF).



**Note** If this process is being performed from a mobile device connected to Prime Infrastructure through the Cisco Centralized architecture, the MAC address text box is automatically populated with the device address.

- Step 5** Choose the appropriate campus, building, floor, or outdoor area where the calibration is performed.



**Note** The calibration in the outdoor area is supported in Release 1.0.x and later. You can use this option to add the calibration data points to the outdoor area. The data points can be added to the outdoor area using the same procedure for calibration.

- Step 6** Click **Next**.

- Step 7** When the chosen floor map and access point locations appear, a grid of plus marks (+) indicates the locations where data collection for calibration is performed.

Using these locations as guidelines, you can perform either a point or linear collection of data by appropriate placement of either the Calibration Point pop-up (point) or the Start and Finish pop-ups (linear) that appear on the map when the respective options are displayed.

If you want to perform a point collection of data for the calibration, do the following:

- Choose **Point** from the Collection Method drop-down list and select the **Show Data points** check box if not already selected. A calibration point pop-up appears on the map.
- Position the tip of the calibration point pop-up at a data point (+), and click **Go**. A dialog box appears showing the progress of the data collection.



**Note** Rotate the calibrating client laptop during data collection so that the client is heard evenly by all access points in the vicinity.

- When the data collection is complete for a selected data point and the coverage area is plotted on the map, move the calibration point pop-up to another data point, and click **Go**.



**Note** The coverage area plotted on the map is color-coded and corresponds with the specific wireless LAN standard used to collect that data. Information on color-coding is provided in legend on the left side of the page. Additionally, the progress of the calibration process is indicated by two status bars above the legend, one for 802.11a/n and one for 802.11b/g/n.



**Note** To delete data points for locations selected in error, click **Delete** and move the black square that appears over the appropriate data points. Resize the square as necessary by pressing **Ctrl** and moving the mouse.

- d. Repeat point collection Steps a. to c. until the calibration status bar of the relevant spectrums (802.11a/n, 802.11b/g/n) display as ‘done.’



**Note** The calibration status bar indicates data collection for the calibration as done after roughly 50 distinct locations and 150 measurements have been gathered. For every location point saved in the calibration process, more than one data point is gathered. The progress of the calibration process is indicated by two status bars above the legend, one for 802.11b/g/n and one for 802.11a/n.

If you want to perform a linear collection of data for the calibration, do the following:

- a. Choose **Linear** from the Collection Method drop-down list, and select the **Show Data points** check box if not already selected. A line appears on the map with both Start and Finish pop-ups.
- b. Position the tip of the Start pop-up at the starting data point.
- c. Position the Finish pop-up at the ending data point.
- d. Position yourself with your laptop at the starting data point, and click **Go**. Walk steadily towards the end point along the defined path. A dialog box appears to show that data collection is in process.



**Note** Do not stop data collection until you reach the end point even if the data collection bar indicates completion.



**Note** Only Intel and Cisco adapters have been tested. Make sure Enable Cisco-compatible Extensions and Enable Radio Management Support are enabled in the Cisco-compatible Extension Options.

- e. Press the space bar (or Done on the data collection panel) when you reach the end point. The collection pane displays the number of samples taken before it closes to reveal the map. The map displays all the coverage areas where data was collected.



**Note** To delete data points for locations selected in error, click **Delete** and move the black square that appears over the appropriate data points. Resize the square as necessary by pressing the **Ctrl** and moving the mouse.



**Note** The coverage area is color-coded and corresponds with the specific wireless LAN standard used to collect that data. Information on color-coding is provided in legend on the left-hand side of the page.

- f. Repeat linear collection Steps b to e until the status bar for the respective spectrum is filled in (done).



---

**Note** You can augment linear collection with point mode data collection to address missed coverage areas.

---

- Step 8** Click the name of the calibration model at the top of the page to return to the main page for that model to calibrate the data points.
- Step 9** Choose **Calibrate** from the Select a command drop-down list, and click **Go**.
- Step 10** Click the **Inspect Location Quality** link when calibration completes. A map displays showing RSSI readings displays.
- Step 11** To use the newly created calibration model, you must apply the model to the floor on which it was created (and on any other floors with similar attenuation characteristics as well). Choose **Monitor > Site Maps** and find the specific floor to which the model is applied. At the floor map interface, choose **Edit Floor Area** from the drop-down list, and click **Go**.
- Step 12** From the Floor Type (RF Model) drop-down list, choose the newly created calibration model. Click **OK** to apply the model to the floor.

This process can be repeated for as many models and floors as needed. After a model is applied to a floor, all location determination performed on that floor is done using the specific collected attenuation data from the calibration model.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Accessing Current Calibration Models](#)
- [Applying Calibration Models to Maps](#)
- [Viewing Calibration Model Properties](#)
- [Viewing Calibration Model Details](#)
- [Creating New Calibration Models](#)
- [Apply the Model to the Floor](#)
- [Deleting Calibration Models](#)

## Calibrating

To compute the collected data points, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Click the model name to open the Calibration Model > Model Name page.
- Step 2** In the Calibration Model > Model Name page, choose **Calibrate** from the **Select a command** drop-down list.
- Step 3** Click **Go**.
- 

## Apply the Model to the Floor

To use the newly created calibration model, you must apply the model to the floor on which it was created (along with other floors with similar attenuation characteristics).

To apply the model to the floor, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
  - Step 2** Locate the specific floor to which the model is applied.
  - Step 3** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Edit Floor Area**.
  - Step 4** Click **Go**.
  - Step 5** From the Floor Type (RF Model) drop-down list, choose the newly-created calibration model.
  - Step 6** Click **OK** to apply the model to the floor.

This process can be repeated for as many models and floors as needed. After a model is applied to a floor, all location determination performed on that floor is done using the specific collected attenuation data from the calibration model.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Accessing Current Calibration Models](#)
- [Applying Calibration Models to Maps](#)
- [Viewing Calibration Model Properties](#)
- [Viewing Calibration Model Details](#)
- [Creating New Calibration Models](#)
- [Starting Calibration Process](#)
- [Deleting Calibration Models](#)

## Deleting Calibration Models

To delete a calibration model, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Click the model name to open the Calibration Model > Model Name page.
  - Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Delete Model**.
  - Step 3** Click **Go**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Accessing Current Calibration Models](#)
- [Applying Calibration Models to Maps](#)
- [Viewing Calibration Model Properties](#)
- [Viewing Calibration Model Details](#)
- [Creating New Calibration Models](#)
- [Starting Calibration Process](#)
- [Apply the Model to the Floor](#)



## Managing Location Presence Information

You can enable location presence through mobility services engine to provide expanded Civic (city, state, postal code, country) and GEO (longitude, latitude) location information beyond the Cisco default setting (campus, building, floor, and X, Y coordinates). This information can then be requested by clients on a demand basis for use by location-based services and applications.

To view or edit current location presence information for a current map, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
  - Step 2** Select the check box of the map.
  - Step 3** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Location Presence**.
  - Step 4** Click **Go**.

The Location Presence page appears.

To view the current map location information (Area Type, Campus, Building, and Floor) see the map you selected in the **Maps > Site Maps** page. To select a different map, use the Select a Map to Update Presence Information drop-down lists to choose the new map location.

- Step 5** Click the **Civic Address**, **GPS Markers**, or **Advanced** tab.
  - **Civic Address**—Identifies the campus, building, or floor by name, street, house number, house number suffix, city (address line2), state, postal code, and country.
  - **GPS Markers**—Identify the campus, building, or floor by longitude and latitude.
  - **Advanced**—Identifies the campus, building, or floor with expanded civic information such as neighborhood, city division, county, and postal community name.

Each selected field is inclusive of all of those above it. For example, if you select Advanced, it can also provide GPS and Civic location information upon client demand. The selected setting must match what is set on the mobility services engine level.

If a client requests location information such as GPS Markers for a campus, building, floor, or outdoor area that is not configured for that field, an error message appears.

By default, the Override Child Element Presence Info check box is selected.

---

## Searching Maps

You can use the following parameters in the Search Maps page:

- Search for
- Map Name
- Search in
- Save Search
- Items per page

After you click **Go**, the map search results page appears (see [Table 34-8](#)).

**Table 34-8** Map Search Results

| Field        | Options                                                                                                                    |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name         | Clicking an item in the Name column provides a map of an existing building with individual floor area maps for each floor. |
| Type         | Campus, building, or floor area.                                                                                           |
| Total APs    | Displays the total number of Cisco Radios detected.                                                                        |
| a/n Radios   | Displays the number of 802.11a/n Cisco Radios.                                                                             |
| b/g/n Radios | Displays the number of 802.11b/g/n Cisco Radios.                                                                           |

**Related Topics**

- [Adding Floor Plans to a Standalone Building](#)
- [Using the Map Editor](#)
- [Using Planning Mode](#)

## Using the Map Editor

You can use the Prime Infrastructure map editor to define, draw, and enhance floor plan information.

- [Opening the Map Editor](#)
- [Defining a Rail Line on a Floor](#)
- [Defining an Inclusion Region on a Floor](#)
- [Defining an Exclusion Region on a Floor](#)
- [Defining a Rail Line on a Floor](#)

### Opening the Map Editor

Follow these steps to use the map editor:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps** to display the Maps page.
  - Step 2** Click the desired campus. The Site Maps > Campus Name page appears.
  - Step 3** Click a campus and then click a building.
  - Step 4** Click the desired floor area. The Site Maps > Campus Name > Building Name > Floor Area Name page appears.
  - Step 5** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Map Editor**, and click **Go**. The Map Editor page appears.



**Note** Make sure that the floor plan images are properly scaled so that all white space outside of the external walls is removed. To make sure that floor dimensions are accurate, click the **compass tool** on the toolbar.

---


- Step 6** Position the reference length. When you do, the Scale menu appears with the line length supplied. Enter the dimensions (width and height) of the reference length, and click **OK**.
  - Step 7** Determine the propagation pattern from the Antenna Mode drop-down list.
  - Step 8** Make antenna adjustments by sliding the antenna orientation bar to the desired degree of direction.
  - Step 9** Choose the desired access point.
  - Step 10** Click **Save**.
- 

## Related Topics

- [Defining a Rail Line on a Floor](#)
- [Defining an Inclusion Region on a Floor](#)
- [Defining an Exclusion Region on a Floor](#)
- [Defining a Rail Line on a Floor](#)

## Using the Map Editor to Draw Polygon Areas

If you have a building that is non-rectangular or you want to mark a non-rectangular area within a floor, you can use the map editor to draw a polygon-shaped area.

- 
- Step 1** Add the floor plan if it is not already represented in Prime Infrastructure (see the [Adding Floor Areas to Buildings](#)).
  - Step 2** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
  - Step 3** Click the Map Name that corresponds to the outdoor area, campus, building, or floor you want to edit.
  - Step 4** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Map Editor**, and click **Go**.
  - Step 5** In the Map Editor page, click the **Add Perimeter** icon on the toolbar.  
A pop-up appears.
  - Step 6** Enter the name of the area that you are defining. Click **OK**.  
A drawing tool appears.
  - Step 7** Move the drawing tool to the area you want to outline.
    - Click the left mouse button to begin and end drawing a line.
    - When you have completely outlined the area, double-click the left mouse button and the area is highlighted in the page.The outlined area must be a closed object to appear highlighted on the map.
  - Step 8** Click the disk icon on the toolbar to save the newly drawn area.
  - Step 9** Choose **Command > Exit** to close the window. You are returned to the original floor plan.
-  **Note** When you return to the original floor plan view after exiting the map editor, the newly drawn area is not visible; however, it appears in the Planning Model page when you add elements.
- 

- Step 10** Choose **Planning Mode** from the Select a command drop-down list to begin adding elements to the newly defined polygon-shaped area. See [Table 34-7](#) for the obstacle color coding.

**Note**

The RF prediction heatmaps for access points approximates of the actual RF signal intensity. It takes into account the attenuation of obstacles drawn using the Map Editor but it does not take into account the attenuation of various building materials, such as drywall or metal objects, nor does it display the effects of RF signals bouncing off obstructions. The thick wall (color-coded orange) with a loss of 13 dB might not be enough to contain the RF signal beyond the walls of the heatmap.

**Related Topics**

- [Opening the Map Editor](#)
- [Defining an Inclusion Region on a Floor](#)
- [Defining an Exclusion Region on a Floor](#)
- [Defining a Rail Line on a Floor](#)

## Defining an Inclusion Region on a Floor

To define an inclusion area, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the appropriate floor area.
- Step 3** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Map Editor**.
- Step 4** Click **Go**.
- Step 5** At the map, click the aqua box on the toolbar.  
  
A message box appears reminding you that only one inclusion area can be defined at a time. Defining a new inclusion region automatically removes the previously defined inclusion region. By default, an inclusion region is defined for each floor when it is added to Prime Infrastructure. The inclusion region is indicated by a solid aqua line and generally outlines the region.
- Step 6** Click **OK** in the message box that appears. A drawing icon appears to outline the inclusion area.
- Step 7** To begin defining the inclusion area, move the drawing icon to a starting point on the map and click once.
- Step 8** Move the cursor along the boundary of the area you want to include and click to end a border line. Click again to define the next boundary line.
- Step 9** Repeat [Step 8](#) until the area is outlined and then double-click the drawing icon. A solid aqua line defines the inclusion area.
- Step 10** Choose **Save** from the Command menu or click the **disk** icon on the toolbar to save the inclusion region.

**Note**

If you made an error in defining the inclusion area, click the area. The selected area is outlined by a dashed aqua line. Next, click the **X** icon on the toolbar. The area is removed from the floor map.

- Step 11** To return to the floor map to enable inclusion regions on heatmaps, choose **Exit** from the Command menu.
- Step 12** Select the **Location Regions** check box if it is not already selected. If you want it to apply to all floor maps, click **Save settings**. Close the Layers configuration page.

**Step 13** To resynchronize Prime Infrastructure and MSE databases, choose **Services > Synchronize Services**.



**Note** If the two DBs are already synchronized then a resynchronization happens automatically every time there is a change. There is no need for an explicit resynch.

**Step 14** In the Synchronize page, choose **Network Designs** from the Synchronize drop-down list and then click **Synchronize**.

You can confirm that the synchronization is successful by viewing two green arrows in the Sync. Status column.

Newly defined inclusion and exclusion regions appear on heatmaps only after the mobility services engine recalculates location.

#### Related Topics

- [Opening the Map Editor](#)
- [Defining a Rail Line on a Floor](#)
- [Defining an Exclusion Region on a Floor](#)
- [Defining a Rail Line on a Floor](#)

## Defining an Exclusion Region on a Floor

To further refine location calculations on a floor, you can define areas that are excluded (exclusion areas) in the calculations. For example, you might want to exclude areas such as an atrium or stairwell within a building. As a rule, exclusion areas are generally defined within the borders of an inclusion area.

To define an exclusion area, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.

**Step 2** Click the name of the appropriate floor area.

**Step 3** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Map Editor**.

**Step 4** Click **Go**.

**Step 5** At the map, click the purple box on the toolbar.

**Step 6** Click **OK** in the message box that appears. A drawing icon appears to outline the exclusion area.

**Step 7** To begin defining the exclusion area, move the drawing icon to the starting point on the map, and click once.

**Step 8** Move the drawing icon along the boundary of the area you want to exclude. Click once to start a boundary line, and click again to end the boundary line.

**Step 9** Repeat [Step 8](#) until the area is outlined and then double-click the drawing icon. The defined exclusion area is shaded in purple when the area is completely defined. The excluded area is shaded in purple.

**Step 10** To define additional exclusion regions, repeat [Step 5](#) to [Step 9](#).

**Step 11** When all exclusion areas are defined, choose **Save** from the Command menu or click the **disk** icon on the toolbar to save the exclusion region.



**Note** To delete an exclusion area, click the area to be deleted. The selected area is outlined by a dashed purple line. Next, click the **X** icon on the toolbar. The area is removed from the floor map.

- Step 12** To return to the floor map to enable exclusion regions on heatmaps, choose **Exit** from the Command menu.
- Step 13** Select the **Location Regions** check box if it is not already selected, click **Save settings**, and close the Layers configuration page when complete.
- Step 14** To resynchronize Prime Infrastructure and location databases, choose **Services > Synchronize Services**.
- Step 15** In the Synchronize page, choose **Network Designs** from the Synchronize drop-down list and then click **Synchronize**.

You can confirm that the synchronization is successful by viewing two green arrows in the Sync. Status column.

#### Related Topics

- [Opening the Map Editor](#)
- [Defining a Rail Line on a Floor](#)
- [Defining an Inclusion Region on a Floor](#)
- [Defining a Rail Line on a Floor](#)

## Defining a Rail Line on a Floor

You can define a rail line on a floor that represents a conveyor belt. Additionally, you can define an area around the rail area known as the snap-width to further assist location calculations. This represents the area in which you expect clients to appear. Any client located within the snap-width area is plotted on the rail line (majority) or just outside of the snap-width area (minority).



**Note** Rail line configurations do not apply to tags.

The snap-width area is defined in feet or meters (user-defined) and represents the distance that is monitored on either side (east and west or north and south) of the rail.

To define a rail with a floor, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the appropriate floor area.
- Step 3** Choose **Map Editor** from the Select a command drop-down list.
- Step 4** Click **Go**.
- Step 5** In the map, click the **rail** icon (to the right of the purple exclusion icon) on the toolbar.
- Step 6** In the message dialog box that appears, enter a snap-width (feet or meters) for the rail and then click **OK**. A drawing icon appears.
- Step 7** Click the **drawing** icon at the starting point of the rail line. Click again when you want to stop drawing the line or change the direction of the line.

**Step 8** Click the **drawing** icon twice when the rail line is completely drawn on the floor map. The rail line appears on the map and is bordered on either side by the defined snap-width region.



**Note** To delete a rail line, click the area to be deleted. The selected area is outlined by a dashed purple line. Next, click the X icon on the toolbar. The area is removed from the floor map.

**Step 9** To return to the floor map to enable rails on heatmaps, choose **Exit** from the Command menu.

**Step 10** At the floor map, choose the **Layers** drop-down list.

**Step 11** Select the **Rails** check box for if it is not already selected, click **Save settings**, and close the Layers configuration panel when complete.

**Step 12** To resynchronize Prime Infrastructure and mobility services engine, choose **Services > Synchronize Services**.

**Step 13** In the Synchronize page, choose **Network Designs** from the Synchronize drop-down list and then click **Synchronize**.

You can confirm that the synchronization is successful by viewing two green arrows in the Sync. Status column.

#### Related Topics

- [Opening the Map Editor](#)
- [Defining a Rail Line on a Floor](#)
- [Defining an Inclusion Region on a Floor](#)
- [Defining an Exclusion Region on a Floor](#)

## Inspecting Location Readiness and Quality

You can configure Prime Infrastructure to verify the ability of the existing access point deployment to estimate the true location of a client, rogue client, rogue access point, or tag within 10 meters at least 90% of the time. The location readiness calculation is based on the number and placement of access points.

You can also check the location quality and the ability of a given location to meet the location specification (10 m, 90%) based on data points gathered during a physical inspection and calibration.

## Inspecting Location Readiness

The Inspect Location Readiness feature is a distance-based predictive tool that can point out problem areas with access point placement.

To access the Inspect Location Readiness tool, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.

**Step 2** Click the applicable floor area name to view the map.




---

**Note** If RSSI is not displayed, you can enable AP Heatmaps by selecting the AP Heatmaps check box on the left sidebar menu.

---




---

**Note** If clients, tags, and access points are not displayed, verify that their respective check boxes are selected on the left sidebar menu. Licenses for both clients and tags must also be purchased for each to be tracked.

---

**Step 3** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Inspect Location Readiness**.

**Step 4** Click **Go**.

A color-coded map appears showing those areas that meet (indicated by Yes) and do not meet (indicated by No) the ten meter, 90% location specification.

---

## Inspecting Location Quality Using Calibration Data

After completing a calibration model based on data points generated during a physical tour of the area, you can inspect the location quality of the access points.

To inspect location quality based on calibration, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.

**Step 2** Choose **RF Calibration Model** from the Select a command list. Click **Go**.

A list of calibration models appears.

**Step 3** Click the appropriate calibration model.

Details on the calibration including date of last calibration, number of data points by signal type (802.11a, 802.11 b/g) used in the calibration, location, and coverage are displayed.

**Step 4** In the same page, click the **Inspect Location Quality** link found under the Calibration Floors heading.

A color-coded map noting percentage of location errors appears.




---

**Note** You can modify the distance selected to see the effect on the location errors.

---

### Related Topics

- [Using Planning Mode](#)
- [Accessing Planning Mode](#)
- [Using Planning Mode to Calculate Access Point Requirements](#)



## Inspecting VoWLAN Readiness

The VoWLAN Readiness (voice readiness) tool allows you to check the RF coverage to determine if it is sufficient for your voice needs. This tool verifies RSSI levels after access points have been installed.

To access the VoWLAN Readiness Tool (VRT), follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Click the applicable floor area name.
- Step 3** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Inspect VoWLAN Readiness**.
- Step 4** Choose the applicable **Band**, **AP Transmit Power**, and **Client** parameters from the drop-down lists.



---

**Note** By default, the region map displays the b/g/n band for Cisco Phone-based RSSI threshold. The new settings cannot be saved.

---

- Step 5** Depending on the selected client, the following RSSI values might not be editable:
- Cisco Phone—RSSI values are not editable.
  - Custom—RSSI values are editable with the following ranges:
    - Low threshold between -95dBm to -45dBm
    - High threshold between -90dBm to -40dBm

- Step 6** The following color schemes indicate whether or not the area is voice ready:
- Green—Yes
  - Yellow—Marginal
  - Red—No



---

**Note** The accuracy of the Green/Yellow/Red regions depends on the RF environment and whether or not the floor is calibrated. If the floor is calibrated, the accuracy of the regions is enhanced.

---

## Troubleshooting Voice RF Coverage Issues

- Floors with either calibration or no calibration data are treated as follows:
  - Set the AP Transmit field to **Max** (the maximum downlink power settings). If the map still shows some yellow or red regions, more access points are required to cover the floor.
  - If the calibrated model shows red or yellow regions (where voice is expected to be deployed) with the AP Transmit field set to Current, increasing the power level of the access points might help.

# Monitoring Mesh Networks Using Maps

You can access and view details for the following elements from a mesh network map in Prime Infrastructure:

- Mesh Link Statistics
- Mesh Access Points
- Mesh Access Point Neighbors

Details on how this information is accessed and displayed for each of these items is detailed in this section.

- [Monitoring Mesh Link Statistics Using Maps](#)
- [Monitoring Mesh Access Points Using Maps](#)
- [Monitoring Mesh Access Point Neighbors Using Maps](#)
- [Viewing the Mesh Network Hierarchy Using Maps](#)
- [Using Mesh Filters to Modify Map Display of Maps and Mesh Links](#)

## Monitoring Mesh Link Statistics Using Maps

You can view the SNR for a specific mesh network link, view the number of packets transmitted and received on that link, and initiate a link test in the **Maps > Site Maps** page.

To view details on a specific mesh link between two mesh access points or a mesh access point and a root access point, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
  - Step 2** Click the map name that corresponds to the outdoor area, campus, building, or floor you want to monitor.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, click the arrow to the right of AP Mesh Info. The Mesh Filter dialog box appears.
  - Step 4** Move the cursor over the colored dot next to each mesh access point child to view details on the link between it and its parent. [Table 34-9](#) summarizes the parameters that appear.

The color of the dot also provides a quick reference point of the SNR strength as follows:

- A green dot represents a high SNR (above 25 dB).
- An amber dot represents an acceptable SNR (20-25 dB).
- A red dot represents a low SNR (below 20 dB).
- A black dot indicates a root access point.

The Bridging Link information appears.

**Table 34-9** Bridging Link Information

| Field                  | Description                                  |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Information fetched on | Date and time that information was compiled. |
| Link SNR               | Link signal-to-noise ratio (SNR).            |
| Link Type              | Hierarchical link relationship.              |

**Table 34-9** Bridging Link Information (continued)

| Field              | Description                                        |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| SNR Up             | Signal-to-noise ratio for the uplink (dB).         |
| SNR Down           | Signal-to-noise ratio for the downlink (dB).       |
| PER                | The packet error rate for the link.                |
| Tx Parent Packets  | The TX packets to a node while acting as a parent. |
| Rx Parent Packets  | The RX packets to a node while acting as a parent. |
| Time of Last Hello | Date and time of last hello.                       |

**Step 5** Click either Link Test, Child to Parent or Link Test, Parent to Child. After the link test is complete, a results page appears.



**Note** A link test runs for 30 seconds.



**Note** You cannot run link tests for both links (child-to-parent and parent-to-child) at the same time.

**Step 6** To view a graphical representation of SNR statistics over a period of time, click the arrow on the link. A page with multiple SNR graphs appears.

The following graphs are displayed for the link:

- SNR Up—Plots the RSSI values of the neighbor from the perspective of the access point.
- SNR Down—Plots the RSSI values that the neighbor reports to the access point.
- Link SNR—Plots a weighed and filtered measurement based on the SNR Up value.
- The Adjusted Link Metric—Plots the value used to determine the least cost path to the root access point. This value represents the ease of getting the rooftop access point and accounts for the number of hops. The lower the ease value, the less likely the path is used.
- The Unadjusted Link Metric—Plots the least cost path to get to the root access point unadjusted by the number of hops. The higher the value for the unadjusted link, the better the path.

## Monitoring Mesh Access Points Using Maps

You can view the following summary information for a mesh access point from a mesh network map:

- Parent
- Number of children
- Hop count
- Role
- Group name
- Backhaul interface
- Data Rate

- Channel



**Note** This information is in addition to the information shown for all access points (MAC address, access point model, controller IP address, location, height of access point, access point uptime, and LWAPP uptime).

You can also view detailed configuration, and access alarm, and event information from the map.

To view summary and detailed configuration information for a mesh access point from a mesh network map, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Click the map name that corresponds to the outdoor area, campus, building, or floor location of the access point you want to monitor.
- Step 3** To view summary configuration information for an access point, hover your mouse cursor over the access point that you want to monitor. A dialog box with configuration information for the selected access point appears.
- Step 4** To view detailed configuration information for an access point, double-click the access point appearing on the map. The configuration details for the access point appear.



**Note** For more details on the View Mesh Neighbors link in the access point dialog box, see the [Monitoring Mesh Access Point Neighbors Using Maps](#). If the access point has an IP address, a Run Ping Test link is also visible at the bottom of the mesh access point dialog box.

- Step 5** In the Access Point Details configuration page, follow these steps to view configuration details for the mesh access point:
- Click the **General** tab to view the overall configuration of the mesh access point such as the AP name, MAC address, AP Up time, associated controllers (registered and primary) operational status, and software version.



**Note** The software version for mesh access points is appended with the letter *m* and the word *mesh* appears in parentheses.

- Click the **Interface** tab to view configuration details for the interfaces supported on the mesh access point. Interface options are radio and Ethernet.
  - Click the **Mesh Links** tab to view parent and neighbor details (name, MAC address, packet error rate, and link details) for the mesh access point. You can also initiate link tests from this page.
  - Click the **Mesh Statistics** tab to view details on the bridging, queue, and security statistics for the mesh access point.
- 

## Monitoring Mesh Access Point Neighbors Using Maps

To view details on neighbors of a mesh access point from a mesh network map, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Click the map name that corresponds to the outdoor area, campus, building, or floor you want to monitor.
- Step 3** To view detailed information on mesh links for a mesh access point, click the arrow portion of the access point label. The Access Points page appears.
- Step 4** Click the **Mesh Links** tab.



**Note** You can also view mesh link details for neighbors of a selected access point by clicking the **View Mesh Neighbors** link on the Mesh tab of the access point configuration summary dialog box, which appears when you hover your mouse cursor over an access point on a map.



**Note** Signal-to-noise (SNR) appears in the View Mesh Neighbors dialog box.



**Note** In addition to listing the current and past neighbors in the dialog box that appears, labels are added to the mesh access points map icons to identify the selected access point, the neighbor access point, and the child access point. Click the **clear** link of the selected access point to remove the relationship labels from the map.



**Note** The drop-down lists at the top of the mesh neighbors page indicate the resolution of the map (100%) displayed and how often the information displayed is updated (every 5 mins). You can modify these default values.

---

## Viewing the Mesh Network Hierarchy

You can view the parent-child relationship of mesh access points within a mesh network in an easily navigable display. You can also filter which access points are displayed in the map view by selecting only access points of interest.

To view the mesh network hierarchy for a selected network, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Click the map name you want to display.
- Step 3** Select the **AP Mesh Info** check box in the left sidebar menu if it is not already selected.



**Note** The AP Mesh Info check box is only selectable if mesh access points are present on the map. It must be selected to view the mesh hierarchy.

- Step 4** Click the blue arrow to the right of the AP Mesh Info to display the Mesh Parent-Child Hierarchical View.
- Step 5** Click the **plus (+)** sign next to a mesh access point to display its children.

All subordinate mesh access points are displayed when a negative (-) sign appears next to the parent mesh access point entry. For example, the access point, *indoor-mesh-45-rap2*, has only one child, *indoor-mesh-44-map2*.

- Step 6** Hover your mouse cursor over the colored dot next to each mesh access point child to view details on the link between it and its parent. [Table 34-10](#) summarizes the parameters that appear.

The color of the dot also provides a quick reference point of the SNR strength:

- A green dot represents a high SNR (above 25 dB).
- An amber dot represents an acceptable SNR (20-25 dB).
- A red dot represents a low SNR (below 20 dB).
- A black dot indicates a root access point.

**Table 34-10 Bridging Link Information**

| Field                  | Description                                        |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| Information fetched on | Date and time that information was compiled.       |
| Link SNR               | Link signal-to-noise ratio (SNR).                  |
| Link Type              | Hierarchical link relationship.                    |
| SNR Up                 | Signal-to-noise ratio for the uplink (dB).         |
| SNR Down               | Signal-to-noise ratio for the downlink (dB).       |
| PER                    | The packet error rate for the link.                |
| Tx Parent Packets      | The TX packets to a node while acting as a parent. |
| Rx Parent Packets      | The RX packets to a node while acting as a parent. |
| Time of Last Hello     | Date and time of last hello.                       |

## Using Mesh Filters to Modify Map Display of Maps and Mesh Links

In the mesh hierarchical page, you can also define mesh filters to determine which mesh access points display on the map based on hop values as well as what labels display for mesh links.

Mesh access points are filtered by the number of hops between them and their root access point.

To use mesh filtering, follow these steps:

- Step 1** To modify what label and color displays for a mesh link, follow these steps:
- a. In the Mesh Parent-Child Hierarchical View, choose an option from the Link Label drop-down list. Options are None, Link SNR, and Packet Error Rate.
  - b. In the Mesh Parent-Child Hierarchical View, choose an option from the Link Color drop-down list to define which parameter (Link SNR or Packet Error Rate) determines the color of the mesh link on the map.



**Note** The color of the link provides a quick reference point of the SNR strength or Packet Error Rate. [Table 34-16](#) defines the different link colors.

**Table 34-11** Definition for SNR and Packet Error Rate Link Color

| Link Color | Link SNR                                                 | Packet Error Rate (PER)                                                                |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Green      | Represents a SNR above 25 dB (high value)                | Represents a PER of one percent (1%) or lower                                          |
| Amber      | Represents a SNR between 20 and 25 dB (acceptable value) | Represents a PER that is less than ten percent (10%) and greater than one percent (1%) |
| Red        | Represents a SNR below 20 dB (low value)                 | Represents a PER that is greater than ten percent (10%)                                |



**Note** The Link label and color settings are reflected on the map immediately. You can display both SNR and PER values simultaneously.

- Step 2** To modify which mesh access points display based on the number of hops between them and their parents, do the following:
- a. In the Mesh Parent-Child Hierarchical View, choose the appropriate options from the Quick Selections drop-down list. A description of the options is provided in [Table 34-17](#).

**Table 34-12** Quick Selection Options

| Field                 | Description                                                                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Select only Root APs  | Choose this setting if you want the map view to display root access points only. |
| Select up to 1st hops | Choose this setting if you want the map view to display 1st hops only.           |
| Select up to 2nd hops | Choose this setting if you want the map view to display 2nd hops only.           |
| Select up to 3rd hops | Choose this setting if you want the map view to display 3rd hops only.           |
| Select up to 4th hops | Choose this setting if you want the map view to display 4th hops only.           |
| Select All            | Select this setting if you want the map view to display all access points.       |

- b. Click **Update Map View** to refresh the screen and display the map view with the selected options.



**Note** Map view information is retrieved from the Prime Infrastructure database and is updated every 15 minutes.

**Note**

You can also select or unselect the check boxes of access points in the mesh hierarchical view to modify which mesh access points are displayed. For a child access point to be visible, the parent access point to root access point must be selected.

**Note**

If you want to have the MAC address appear with the client logo in the Monitor > Site Maps page, follow these steps:

- Go to the Maps Tree View.
- Click the > beside Clients.
- Unselect the **Small Icons** check box.

## Monitoring Tags Using Maps

On an Prime Infrastructure map, you can review the name of the access point that generated the signal for a tagged asset, its strength of signal and when the location information was last updated for the asset. This information is displayed by simply hovering the mouse cursor over the asset tag icon on the map.

To enable tag location status on a map, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Choose **Campus > Building > Floor** for the applicable mobility services engine and tag.
- Step 3** Select the **802.11 Tags** check box in the Floor Settings pane (left), if not already selected.

**Note**

Do not click **Save Settings** unless you want to save changes made to the Floor Settings across all maps.

- Step 4** Hover the mouse cursor over a tag icon (yellow tag) and a summary of its configuration appears in a dialog box.
- Step 5** Click the **tag** icon to see tag details in a new window.

## Using Planning Mode

You can calculate the recommended number and location of access points based on whether data and/or voice traffic and/or location are active.

**Note**

Based on the throughput specified for each protocol (802.11a or 802.11 b/g), planning mode calculates the total number of access points required that would provide optimum coverage in your network.



## Accessing Planning Mode

To access the Planning Mode feature, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
  - Step 2** Select the desired campus or building from the Name list.
  - Step 3** Click the desired floor area in the Building.
  - Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Planning Mode**.
  - Step 5** Click **Go**.

**Note**

Planning mode does not use AP type or Antenna pattern information for calculating the number of access points required. The calculation is based on the access point coverage area or the number of users per access point.

---

Planning Mode options:

- **Add APs**—Enables you to add access points on a map. See the [Using Planning Mode to Calculate Access Point Requirements](#) for details.
- **Delete APs**—Deletes the selected access points.
- **Map Editor**—Opens the Map Editor window. See the [Using the Map Editor](#) for more details.
- **Synchronize with Deployment**—Synchronizes your planning mode access points with the current deployment scenario.
- **Generate Proposal**—View a planning summary of the current access points deployment.
- **Planned AP Association Tool**—Allows you to perform add, delete or import an AP Association from an excel or CSV file. Once an access point is defined, it can be associated to a base radio MAC address using the Planned AP Association Tool. If the AP is not discovered they get pushed into a standby bucket and get associated when discovered.

**Note**

AP association is subjected to a limitation that AP should not belong to any floor or outdoor area. If the AP is already assigned to a floor or outdoor area, then the standby bucket holds the AP and when removed from the floor or outdoor, get positioned to the given floor. One Mac address cannot be put into bucket for multiple floor or outdoor areas.

---

**Note**

The map synchronizations works only if the AP is associated to a base radio MAC address and not to its Ethernet MAC address.

---

### Related Topics

- [Using Planning Mode](#)
- [Using Planning Mode to Calculate Access Point Requirements](#)

## Using Planning Mode to Calculate Access Point Requirements

Prime Infrastructure planning mode enables you to calculate the number of access points required to cover an area by placing fictitious access points on a map and allowing you to view the coverage area. Based on the throughput specified for each protocol (802.11a/n or 802.11b/g/n), planning mode calculates the total number of access points required to provide optimum coverage in your network. You can calculate the recommended number and location of access points based on the following criteria:

- traffic type active on the network: data or voice traffic or both
- location accuracy requirements
- number of active users
- number of users per square footage

To calculate the recommended number and placement of access points for a given deployment, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.

The Site Map page appears.

**Step 2** Select the appropriate location link from the list that appears.

A color-coded map appears showing placement of all installed elements (access points, clients, tags) and their relative signal strength.

**Step 3** Choose **Planning Mode** from the Select a command drop-down list (top-right), and click **Go**. A blank floor map appears.

**Step 4** Click **Add APs**.

**Step 5** In the page that appears, drag the dashed-line rectangle over the map location for which you want to calculate the recommended access points.



---

**Note** Adjust the size or placement of the rectangle by selecting the edge of the rectangle and holding down the **Ctrl** key. Move the mouse as necessary to outline the targeted location. When you use the next-generation maps mode, the rectangle is resizable by dragging on the handles on its edges and corners.

---

**Step 6** Choose **Automatic** from the Add APs drop-down list.

**Step 7** Choose the **AP Type** and the appropriate antenna and protocol for that access point.

**Step 8** Choose the target throughput for the access point.

**Step 9** Select the check box(es) next to the **service(s)** that is used on the floor. Options are Data/Coverage (default), Voice, Location, and Location with Monitor Mode APs. (see [Table 34-18](#)).



---

**Note** You must select at least one service or an error occurs.

---



---

**Note** If you select the **Advanced Options** check box, two additional access point planning options appear: Demand and Override Coverage per AP. Additionally, a Safety Margin field appears for the Data/Coverage and Voice safety margin options.

---

Table 34-13 Definition of Services Option

| Service Options      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                  |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|-----------------------|------------------|----------------|---------|------|-------|------|---------|------|-------|------|---------|------|-------|------|---------|------|-------|------|----------|------|---|------|----------|------|---|------|----------|------|---|------|----------|------|---|------|
| <b>Data/Coverage</b> | <p>Select this check box if data traffic is transmitted on the wireless LAN. The following densities are used depending on the band and data rates:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Band</th> <th>Path Loss Model (dBm)</th> <th>Data Rate (Mb/s)</th> <th>Area (Sq. ft.)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>802.11a</td> <td>-3.3</td> <td>10-12</td> <td>6000</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11a</td> <td>-3.3</td> <td>15-18</td> <td>4500</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11a</td> <td>-3.5</td> <td>10-12</td> <td>5000</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11a</td> <td>-3.5</td> <td>15-18</td> <td>3250</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11bg</td> <td>-3.3</td> <td>5</td> <td>6500</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11bg</td> <td>-3.3</td> <td>6</td> <td>4500</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11bg</td> <td>-3.5</td> <td>5</td> <td>5500</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11bg</td> <td>-3.5</td> <td>6</td> <td>3500</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>If you select the <b>Advanced Options</b> check box, you can select the desired safety margin (aggressive, safe, or very safe) of the signal strength threshold for data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aggressive = Minimum (-3 dBm)</li> <li>• Safe = Medium (0 dBm)</li> <li>• Very Safe = Maximum (+3 dBm)</li> </ul> | Band             | Path Loss Model (dBm) | Data Rate (Mb/s) | Area (Sq. ft.) | 802.11a | -3.3 | 10-12 | 6000 | 802.11a | -3.3 | 15-18 | 4500 | 802.11a | -3.5 | 10-12 | 5000 | 802.11a | -3.5 | 15-18 | 3250 | 802.11bg | -3.3 | 5 | 6500 | 802.11bg | -3.3 | 6 | 4500 | 802.11bg | -3.5 | 5 | 5500 | 802.11bg | -3.5 | 6 | 3500 |
| Band                 | Path Loss Model (dBm)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Data Rate (Mb/s) | Area (Sq. ft.)        |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| 802.11a              | -3.3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 10-12            | 6000                  |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| 802.11a              | -3.3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 15-18            | 4500                  |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| 802.11a              | -3.5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 10-12            | 5000                  |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| 802.11a              | -3.5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 15-18            | 3250                  |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| 802.11bg             | -3.3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 5                | 6500                  |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| 802.11bg             | -3.3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 6                | 4500                  |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| 802.11bg             | -3.5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 5                | 5500                  |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| 802.11bg             | -3.5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 6                | 3500                  |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| <b>Voice</b>         | <p>Select the Voice check box if voice traffic is transmitted on the wireless LAN.</p> <p>If you select the <b>Advanced Options</b> check box, you can select the desired safety margin (aggressive, safe, very safe or 7920-enabled) of the signal strength threshold for voice.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aggressive = Minimum [-78 dBm (802.11a/b/g)]</li> <li>• Safe = Medium [-75 dBm (802.11a/b/g)]</li> <li>• Very Safe = Maximum [-72 dBm (802.11a/b/g)]</li> <li>• 7920_enabled = [(-72 dBm (802.11a); -67 dBm (802.11b/g)]</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                  |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| <b>Location</b>      | <p>Select this check box to ensure that the recommended access point calculation provides the true location of an element within 10 meters at least 90% of the time.</p> <p>To meet the criteria, access points are collocated within 70 feet of each other in a hexagonal pattern employing staggered and perimeter placement.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Each service option includes all services that are listed above it. For example, if you select the Location check box, the calculation considers data/coverage, voice, and location in determining the optimum number of access points required.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                  |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |

Table 34-14 Definition of Advanced Services

| Service Options                                                                                                                                                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------|----------------|---------|------|-------|------|---------|------|-------|------|---------|------|-------|------|---------|------|-------|------|----------|------|---|------|----------|------|---|------|----------|------|---|------|----------|------|---|------|
| <b>Data/Coverage</b>                                                                                                                                                      | Select this check box, if data traffic is transmitted on the wireless LAN. The following densities are used depending on the band and data rates:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Band</th> <th>Path Loss Model (dBm)</th> <th>Date Rate (Mb/s)</th> <th>Area (Sq. ft.)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>802.11a</td> <td>-3.3</td> <td>10-12</td> <td>6000</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11a</td> <td>-3.3</td> <td>15-18</td> <td>4500</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11a</td> <td>-3.5</td> <td>10-12</td> <td>5000</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11a</td> <td>-3.5</td> <td>15-18</td> <td>3250</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11bg</td> <td>-3.3</td> <td>5</td> <td>6500</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11bg</td> <td>-3.3</td> <td>6</td> <td>4500</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11bg</td> <td>-3.5</td> <td>5</td> <td>5500</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11bg</td> <td>-3.5</td> <td>6</td> <td>3500</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Band                  | Path Loss Model (dBm) | Date Rate (Mb/s) | Area (Sq. ft.) | 802.11a | -3.3 | 10-12 | 6000 | 802.11a | -3.3 | 15-18 | 4500 | 802.11a | -3.5 | 10-12 | 5000 | 802.11a | -3.5 | 15-18 | 3250 | 802.11bg | -3.3 | 5 | 6500 | 802.11bg | -3.3 | 6 | 4500 | 802.11bg | -3.5 | 5 | 5500 | 802.11bg | -3.5 | 6 | 3500 |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | Band                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Path Loss Model (dBm) | Date Rate (Mb/s)      | Area (Sq. ft.)   |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | -3.3                  | 10-12                 | 6000             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | -3.3                  | 15-18                 | 4500             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | -3.5                  | 10-12                 | 5000             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | -3.5                  | 15-18                 | 3250             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11bg                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | -3.3                  | 5                     | 6500             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11bg                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | -3.3                  | 6                     | 4500             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11bg                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | -3.5                  | 5                     | 5500             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| 802.11bg                                                                                                                                                                  | -3.5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 6                     | 3500                  |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| If you select the <b>Advanced Options</b> check box, you can select the desired safety margin (aggressive, safe, or very safe) of the signal strength threshold for data. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aggressive = Minimum (-3 dBm)</li> <li>Safe = Medium (0 dBm)</li> <li>Very Safe = Maximum (+3 dBm)</li> </ul>                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| <b>Voice</b>                                                                                                                                                              | Select the voice check box if voice traffic is transmitted on the wireless LAN.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | If you select the <b>Advanced Options</b> check box, you can select the desired safety margin (aggressive, safe, very safe or 7920-enabled) of the signal strength threshold for voice.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aggressive = Minimum [-78 dBm (802.11a/b/g)]</li> <li>Safe = Medium [-75 dBm (802.11a/b/g)]</li> <li>Very Safe = Maximum [(-72 dBm (802.11a/b/g)]</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 7920_enabled = [(-72 dBm (802.11a); -67 dBm (802.11b/g)]                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| <b>Location</b>                                                                                                                                                           | Select this check box to ensure that the recommended access point calculation provides the true location of an element within 10 meters at least 90% of the time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | To meet the criteria, access points are collocated within 70 feet of each other in a hexagonal pattern employing staggered and perimeter placement.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | <b>Note</b> Each service option includes all services that are listed above it. For example, if you select the Location check box, the calculation considers data/coverage, voice, and location in determining the optimum number of access points required.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| <b>Demand</b>                                                                                                                                                             | Select this check box if you want to use the total number of users or user ratio per access point as a basis for the access point calculation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |

**Table 34-14** Definition of Advanced Services (continued)

| Service Options          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Override Coverage per AP | Select this check box if you want to specify square foot coverage as the basis for access point coverage.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Safety Margin            | Select this check box to qualify relative signal strength requirements for data and voice service in the access point calculation. Options are: Aggressive, Safe, Very Safe, and 7920-enabled (voice only). Select <b>Aggressive</b> to require minimal signal strength requirements in the calculation and <b>Very Safe</b> to request the highest signal strength. |

**Step 10** Click **Calculate**.

The recommended number of access points given the selected services appears.



**Note** Recommended calculations assume the need for consistently strong signals unless adjusted downward by the **safety margin** advanced option. In some cases, the recommended number of access points is higher than what is required.



**Note** Walls are not used or accounted for in planning mode calculations.

**Step 11** Click **Apply** to generate a map that shows proposed deployment of the recommended access points in the selected area based on the selected services and parameters.

**Step 12** Choose **Generate Proposal** to display a textual and graphical report of the recommended access point number and deployment based on the given input.

## Wireless Map Refresh Options

Prime Infrastructure provides various refresh options for wireless maps:

- **Load**—Refreshes map data from the Prime Infrastructure database on demand.
- **Auto Refresh**—Provides an interval drop-down list to set how often to refresh the map data from the database.
- **Refresh from network**—Refreshes the map status and statistics directly from the controller through an SNMP fetch rather than polled data from the Prime Infrastructure database.

If you have monitor mode access points on the floor plan, you have a choice between IDS or coverage heatmap types. A coverage heatmap excludes monitor mode access points, and an IDS heatmap includes them.

- **Refresh browser**—Refreshes the complete page, or refreshes the map and its status and statistics if you are on a map page.

## Understanding RF Heatmap Calculation

A radio frequency heat map is a graphical representation of the strength of the RF signals. Because WLANs are very dynamic and nondeterministic in nature, administrators can never be certain of the coverage at a particular moment. To help combat this challenge, Prime Infrastructure provides a map of your floor plan along with visual cues as to the Wi-Fi coverage of the floor. These maps are called heatmaps because they are similar to the colored maps used to show varying levels of heat in oceanography or geographical sciences. Color is used to show the various levels of signal strength. The different shades in the “heatmap” reflect differing signal strengths.

This color visualization provides a quick view of the current state of coverage (without having to walk around measuring it), the signal strength, and any gaps or “holes” in the WLAN. This enhances the speed and ease with which you support your organization and troubleshoot specific problems.

The RF heatmap calculation is based on an internal grid. Depending on the exact positioning of an obstacle in that grid, the RF heatmap, within a few feet or meters of the obstacle, might or might not account for the obstacle attenuation. The RF prediction heatmaps for access points approximates of the actual RF signal intensity. It takes into account the attenuation of obstacles drawn using the Map Editor but it does not take into account the attenuation of various building materials, such as drywall or metal objects, nor does it display the effects of RF signals bouncing off obstructions. The thick wall (color-coded orange) with a loss of 13 dB might not be enough to contain the RF signal beyond the walls of the heatmap.

In detail, grid squares partially affected by an obstacle crossing the grid square might or might not incorporate the obstacle attenuation according to the geometry of the access point, obstacle, and grid.

For example, consider a wall crossing one grid square. The midpoint of the grid square is behind the wall from the AP, so the whole grid square is colored with attenuation, including (unfortunately) the top left corner that is actually in front of the wall.

The midpoint of the grid square is on the same side of the wall as the AP, so the whole grid square is not colored with attenuation, including (unfortunately) the bottom right corner that is actually behind the wall from the AP.

## Dynamic Heatmap Calculation

The RF heatmap calculation can be static or dynamic. By default, it is dynamic. The main purpose of the dynamic heatmap feature is to recompute the RF heatmaps due to obstacles. The Prime Infrastructure server maintains a current list of all APs’ RSSI strengths. Prime Infrastructure uses neighboring APs’ RSSI strength to modify the RF heatmaps for all APs.

To configure static heatmap calculation, you must disable the dynamic heatmap option in the map properties page.

## Drawing Polygon Areas in Wireless Maps

If you have a building that is non-rectangular or you want to mark a non-rectangular area within a floor, you can use the map editor to draw a polygon-shaped area.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
  - Step 2** Click the outdoor area, campus, building, or floor you want to edit.
  - Step 3** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Map Editor**, and click **Go**.

- Step 4** On the Map Editor page, click the **Add Perimeter** icon.
- Step 5** Enter the name of the area that you are defining, then click **OK**.  
A drawing tool appears.
- Step 6** Move the drawing tool to the area you want to outline.
- Click the left mouse button to begin and end drawing a line.
  - When you have completely outlined the area, double-click the left mouse button and the area is highlighted in the page.
- The outlined area must be a closed object to appear highlighted on the map.
- Step 7** Click the disk icon to save the newly drawn area.
- Step 8** Choose **Command > Exit** to close the window. You return to the original floor plan.



---

**Note** When you return to the original floor plan view after exiting the map editor, the newly drawn area is not visible; however, it appears in the Planning Model page when you add elements.

---

- Step 9** Choose **Planning Mode** from the Select a command drop-down list to begin adding elements to the newly defined polygon-shaped area.

## Floor View in Wireless Maps

The main Floor View navigation pane provides access to multiple map functions and includes the following functionality:

- **Zoom In/Zoom Out**—Click the magnifying glass icon with the plus sign (+) to enlarge the map view. Click the magnifying glass icon with the minus sign (-) to decrease the size of the map view.
- **Map Size**—See “Panning and Zooming with Next Generation Maps” in Related Topics.
- **Show Grid**—Click to show or hide the grid that displays distance in feet on the map.
- **RSSI Legend**—Hover your mouse cursor over the RSSI Legend icon to display the RSSI color scheme (ranging from red/-35 dBm to dark blue/-90 dBm).
- **Add Access Points**—Click to open the Add Access Points page. For more information, see “Adding Access Points to a Floor Area” in Related Topics.
- **Remove Access Points**—Click to open the Remove Access Points page. Select the access points that you want to remove and click **OK**.
- **Position Access Points**—Click to open the Position Access Points page.
- **Add Chokepoints**—Click to open the Add Chokepoints page. For more information, see the *Cisco Context-Aware Services Configuration Guide*.
- **Add WiFi TDOA Receivers**—Click to open the Add Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers page. For more information, see the *Cisco Context-Aware Services Configuration Guide*.
- **Auto Refresh**—From the drop-down list, choose the length of time between each system refresh.
- **Refresh from Network**—Click to initiate an immediate refresh of the current data.
- **Planning Mode**—Click to open the Planning Mode window. For more information, see “Using Planning Mode” in Related Topics.

- Map Editor—Click to open the Map Editor.
- Full Screen—Click to increase the size of the map to full screen. Once there, click **Exit Full Screen** to return to the normal view.

#### Related Topics

- [Panning and Zooming with Next Generation Maps](#)
- [Adding Access Points to a Floor Area](#)
- [Using Planning Mode](#)

## Associating Endpoints with a Site

Endpoint-Site association rules allow you to associate all of the devices on particular subnet to a site, or location, and (optionally) to specify the monitoring data source for the devices on that subnet. This allows you to associate the logical structure of your network with your organizational sites, enabling troubleshooting using Prime Infrastructure's multi-segment analysis features.

You can specify multiple rules for the same subnet, allowing you to (for example) specify multiple monitoring data sources.

To associate endpoints with a site:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Application Visibility & Control > Endpoint Association**.
- Step 2** Click **Add Row** to add an Endpoint-Site association rule.
- Step 3** Enter the required parameters in the following fields:
- From the **Location Group** drop-down list, select an existing campus to associate with this subnet. This field can be used to display the filter and search results.
  - In the **Subnet** field, enter the routing prefix (and optional Data Source) of the subnetwork to be associated with this site. The entry must be in Classless Inter-Domain Routing notation.
  - From the **Data Source** drop-down list, select the edge router or NAM monitoring traffic to and from the devices in the specified subnetwork.
- Step 4** Click **Save**.
- 

## Viewing Google Earth Maps in Prime Infrastructure

You must have Google Earth installed on your computer and configured to auto-launch when data is sent from the server.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Google Earth**. The Google Earth Maps page displays all folders and the number of access points included within each folder.
- Step 2** Click **Launch** for the map you want to view. Google Earth opens in a separate page and displays the location and its access points.
-



**Related Topics**

- [Viewing Google Earth Map Details](#)
- [Creating Outdoor Locations using Geographical Coordinates](#)
- [Required Geographical Coordinates](#)
- [Creating a KML File with Geographical Coordinates](#)
- [Creating a CSV File with Geographical Coordinates](#)
- [Importing Geographical Coordinates Files into Prime Infrastructure](#)
- [Adding Google Earth Location Launch Points to Access Point Pages](#)
- [Configuring Google Earth Settings for Access Points](#)

## Viewing Google Earth Map Details

To view details for a Google Earth Map folder, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Google Earth**.
  - Step 2** Click the folder name to open the details page for this folder. The Google Earth Details provide the access point names and MAC or IP addresses.
  - Step 3** To delete an access point, select the applicable check box and click **Delete**.
  - Step 4** To delete a folder, select the check box next to the folder name, then click **Delete**. Deleting a folder also deletes all subfolders and access points inside the folder.
  - Step 5** Click **Cancel** to close the details page.
- 

## Creating Outdoor Locations using Geographical Coordinates

To group access points together into outdoor locations, use the Latitude/Longitude geographical coordinates for each access point. You first need to create the required access point geographical coordinates, which you can then import into Prime Infrastructure. You can create either of the following file types to provide the coordinates:

- A KML (Google Keyhole Markup Language) File
- A CSV File (Spreadsheet format with comma-separated values)

**Related Topics**

- [Required Geographical Coordinates](#)
- [Creating a KML File with Geographical Coordinates](#)
- [Creating a CSV File with Geographical Coordinates](#)
- [Importing Geographical Coordinates Files into Prime Infrastructure](#)

## Required Geographical Coordinates

You must provide the following geographical information for each access point. You can create the geographical coordinates in Google Earth and then import them into Prime Infrastructure. If you add an AP to a Google Earth map without having the AP associated on a standard map, you will not see a heatmap when you view the AP in Google Earth.

- Longitude (East or West)—Angular distance in degrees relative to Prime Meridian. Values west of Meridian range from  $-180$  to  $0$  degrees. Values east of Meridian range from  $0$  to  $180$  degrees. The default is  $0$ .

Coordinates in degrees, minutes, seconds, direction:

- Degrees ( $-180$  to  $180$ )
- Minutes ( $0$  to  $59$ )
- Seconds ( $00.00$  to  $59.99$ )
- Direction—East or West (E, W)

Decimal format (converted from degrees, minutes, and seconds):

- Longitude can range from  $-179.59.59.99$  W to  $179.59.59.99$  E

- Latitude (North or South)—Angular distance in degrees relative to the Equator. Values south of the Equator range from  $-90$  to  $0$  degrees. Values north of the Equator range from  $0$  to  $90$  degrees. The default is  $0$ .

Coordinates in degrees, minutes, seconds, direction:

- Degrees ( $-90$  to  $90$ )
- Minutes ( $0$  to  $59$ )
- Seconds ( $00.00$  to  $59.99$ )
- Direction—North or South (N, S)

Decimal format (converted from degrees, minutes, and seconds):

- Latitude can range from  $-89.59.59.99$  S to  $89.59.59.99$  N

- Altitude—Height or distance of the access point from the surface of the earth in meters. If not provided, value defaults to  $0$ . Values range from  $0$  to  $99999$ .
- Tilt—Values range from  $0$  to  $90$  degrees (cannot be negative). A tilt value of  $0$  degrees indicates viewing from directly above the access point. A tilt value of  $90$  degrees indicates viewing along the horizon. Values range from  $0$  to  $90$ . The default azimuth angle is  $0$ .
- Range—Distance in meters from the point specified by longitude and latitude to the point where the access point is being viewed (the Look At position) (camera range above sea level). Values range from  $0$  to  $999999$ .
- Heading—Compass direction in degrees. The default is  $0$  (North). Values range from  $0$  to  $\pm 180$  degrees.
- Altitude Mode—Indicates how the <altitude> specified for the Look At point is interpreted.
  - Clamped to ground—Ignores the <altitude> specification and places the Look At position on the ground. This is the default.
  - Relative to ground—Interprets the <altitude> as a value in meters above the ground.
  - Absolute—Interprets the <altitude> as a value in meters above sea level.
- Extend to ground—Indicates whether or not the access point is attached to a mast.

## Creating a KML File with Geographical Coordinates

You can create the geographical coordinates in Google Earth and then import them into Prime Infrastructure. You can create either a folder or individual placemarks. Creating a folder helps group all the Placemarks into a single folder and allows you to save the folder as a single KML (a.k.a. XML) file. KML is a file format used to display geographic data in Google Earth. If you create individual Placemarks, you must save each Placemark individually.

Using a KML file, folders can be created hierarchically to any depth. For example, you can create folders and placemarks organized by country, city, state, zip. In CSV files, there is one level of hierarchy only

- 
- Step 1** Launch Google Earth.
  - Step 2** In the Places page on the left sidebar menu, choose **My Places** or **Temporary Places**.
  - Step 3** Right-click **Temporary Places** and select **Add > Folder** from the drop-down lists.
  - Step 4** Enter the required information.

If you specify View coordinates (latitude, longitude, range, heading, and tilt), this information is used to “fly” or advance to the correct location when Google Earth is first loaded. If you do not specify View coordinates, the latitude and longitude information is derived using the minimum and maximum latitude and longitude of all access points within the specified group or folder.

- Step 5** Click **OK**.

After the folder is created, you can select it from the Places page to create Placemarks.

---

### Related Topics

- [Creating Placemarks for KML Files](#)
- [Required Geographical Coordinates](#)

## Creating Placemarks for KML Files

To create Placemarks, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Launch Google Earth.
  - Step 2** In the Places page on the left sidebar, select **My Places** or **Temporary Places**.
  - Step 3** Select the folder that you previously created.
  - Step 4** Right-click your created folder and select **Add > Placemark** from the drop-down lists.
  - Step 5** Complete the required fields. For more information regarding Google Earth, see to the Google Earth online help.  
  
The Placemark name must contain the name, MAC address (the radio MAC *not* Ethernet MAC), or IP address of the appropriate access point.
  - Step 6** Click **Snapshot current view** or click **Reset** to return the coordinates to the original settings.
  - Step 7** Click **OK**.
  - Step 8** Repeat these steps for all placemarks you want to add.

- Step 9** When all placemarks are created, save the folder as a .kmz file (KML Zip file) or as a .kml file. You can import both .kmz and .kml files into Prime Infrastructure.

**Related Topic**

[Required Geographical Coordinates](#)

## Creating a CSV File with Geographical Coordinates

You can create a CSV file that contains the required access point geographical coordinates, and then import the CSV file into Prime Infrastructure.

- Step 1** Using a text editor, create a new file that provides the necessary fields, separated by commas, as described in [Table 34-15](#).

**Table 34-15** Sample Fields for Geographical Coordinates CSV File

|                    |                  |                              |
|--------------------|------------------|------------------------------|
| “FolderName”       | “Value Optional” | Max Length: 32               |
| “FolderState”      | “Value Optional” | Permitted Values: true/false |
| “FolderLongitude”  | “Value Optional” | Range: 0 to $\pm 180$        |
| “FolderLatitude”   | “Value Optional” | Range: 0 to $\pm 90$         |
| “FolderAltitude”   | “Value Optional” | Range: 0 to 99999            |
| “FolderRange”      | “Value Optional” | Range: 0 to 99999            |
| “FolderTilt”       | “Value Optional” | Range: 0 to 90               |
| “FolderHeading”    | “Value Optional” | Range: 0 to $\pm 180$        |
| “FolderGeoAddress” | “Value Optional” | Max Length: 128              |
| “FolderGeoCity”    | “Value Optional” | Max Length: 64               |
| “FolderGeoState”   | “Value Optional” | Max Length: 40               |
| “FolderGeoZip”     | “Value Optional” | Max Length: 12               |
| “FolderGeoCountry” | “Value Optional” | Max Length: 64               |
| “AP_Name”          | “Value Required” | Max Length: 32               |
| “AP_Longitude”     | “Value Required” | Range: 0 to $\pm 180$        |
| “AP_Latitude”      | “Value Required” | Range: 0 to $\pm 90$         |

- Step 2** Save the file with a .csv file extension.

**Related Topic**

[Required Geographical Coordinates](#)

## Importing Geographical Coordinates Files into Prime Infrastructure

To group access points together into outdoor locations, use the Latitude/Longitude geographical coordinates for each access point. You first need to create the required access point geographical coordinates, which you can then import into Prime Infrastructure. You can import either a Google KML or a CSV file containing access point geographical coordinates into Prime Infrastructure.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Google Earth**.
- Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Import Google KML** or **Import CSV**, then click **Go**.
- Step 3** Navigate to the .kml, .kmz, or .csv file on your computer, then click **Next**.  
The input file is parsed and validated for the following:
- Access points specified in the uploaded file are validated (the specified access points must be available within Prime Infrastructure).
  - Range validations are performed for tilt, heading, range, and other geographical coordinates fields. If longitude and latitude are provided, range validations are performed; if not, the value is defaulted to 0.
- Step 4** After the files pass all validation checks, review the file details and click **Save**.  
If the uploaded information was previously saved, the information is overwritten as follows:
- If the folder was uploaded previously, the coordinates are updated for the folder.
  - If access points were uploaded previously, the coordinates are updated for the access points.
  - Existing access points in the folder are not removed.
  - New folders are created as needed and access points are placed accordingly.
- 

## Adding Google Earth Location Launch Points to Access Point Pages

You can expand the number of Google Earth Location launch points within Prime Infrastructure by adding launch points to the Access Point summary and detail pages.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios**.
- Step 2** In the Access Point summary page, click the **Edit View** link next to page heading.
- Step 3** In the Edit View page, highlight **Google Earth Location** in the left-hand column, then click **Show**.  
The Google Earth Location column heading moves into the View Information column.
- Step 4** To change the display order of the columns, highlight the Google Earth Location entry and click the **Up** and **Down** buttons as needed, then click **Submit**.  
You are returned to the Access Points summary page, and a Google Earth launch link appears. The launch link also appears in the general summary page of the Access Points details page (Monitor > Wireless Technologies > Access Point Radios > *AP Name*).
-

## Configuring Google Earth Settings for Access Points

You can configure access point settings for the Google Earth Maps feature:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Maps > Google Earth**.

**Step 2** Configure the following parameters:

- **Refresh Settings**—Select the **Refresh from Network** check box to enable on-demand refresh. This option is applied only once and then disabled. Based on the number of access points in your network, the refresh can take a long period of time.
- **Layers**—Layer filters for access points, access point heat maps, and access point mesh information can be selected and saved. Select the check box to activate the applicable layer and click > to open the filter page. These settings apply when Google Earth sends the request for the next refresh.

- **Access Points**—From the AP Filter drop-down list, choose to display channels, Tx power level, coverage holes, MAC addresses, names, controller IP, utilization, profiles, or clients.

If the access point layer is not checked, no data is returned, and an error message is returned to Google Earth as a Placemark without an icon.

- **AP Heatmap**—From the Protocol drop-down list, choose 802.11a/n, 802.11b/g/n, 802.11a/n & 802.11b/g/n, or None. Select the cutoff from the RSSI Cutoff drop-down list (- 60 to - 90 dBm).

If you chose both 802.11a/n and 802.11b/g/n, the heat maps are generated for both and overlaid on top of each other. The order cannot be defined. To prevent this overlay, you must turn off individual overlay in Google Earth or change it in the Google Earth Settings in Prime Infrastructure.

- **AP Mesh Info**—Choose Link SNR, Packet Error Rate, or none. Choose Link SNR or Packet Error Rate from the Link Color drop-down list. When you select AP Mesh Info, Mesh Links are also automatically shown.

**Step 3** Click **Save Settings** to confirm these changes or **Cancel** to close the page without saving the changes.

---

## Editing Wireless Maps

## Editing Floors

---

## Editing Wireless Maps

Follow these steps to use the wireless map editor:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Select the desired campus, building and floor area.
- Step 3** Click the desired floor area. The Site Maps > Campus Name > Building Name > Floor Area Name page appears.
- Step 4** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Map Editor**, and click **Go**. The Map Editor page appears.
- Make sure that the floor plan images are properly scaled so that all white space outside of the external walls is removed. To make sure that floor dimensions are accurate, click the **compass tool**.
- Step 5** Position the reference length. The Scale menu appears with the line length supplied. Enter the dimensions (width and height) of the reference length, then click **OK**.
- Step 6** Determine the propagation pattern from the Antenna Mode drop-down list.
- Step 7** Make antenna adjustments by sliding the antenna orientation bar to the desired degree of direction.
- Step 8** Choose the desired access point.
- Step 9** Click **Save**.
- 

## Location Accuracy

Prime Infrastructure allows you to check the location quality and the ability of a given location to meet the location specification (10 m, 90%) based on data points gathered during a physical inspection and calibration.

### Related Topics

- [Viewing Location Accuracy and Readiness](#)
- [Inspecting Location Quality Using Calibration Data](#)
- [Viewing VoWLAN Readiness](#)

## Viewing Location Accuracy and Readiness

You can configure Prime Infrastructure to verify the existing access point deployment to estimate the true location of a client, rogue client, rogue access point, or tag within 10 meters at least 90% of the time. The location readiness calculation is based on the number and placement of access points.

The Inspect Location Readiness feature is a distance-based predictive tool that can point out problem areas with access point placement.

To access the Inspect Location Readiness tool, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Click the applicable floor area name to view the map.
- If RSSI is not displayed, you can enable AP Heatmaps by selecting the AP Heatmaps check box on the left sidebar menu.

If clients, tags, and access points are not displayed, verify that their respective check boxes are selected on the left sidebar menu. Licenses for both clients and tags must be purchased for each to be tracked.

**Step 3** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Inspect Location Readiness**.

**Step 4** Click **Go**.

A color-coded map appears showing those areas that meet (indicated by Yes) and do not meet (indicated by No) the ten meter, 90% location specification.

---

## Inspecting Location Quality Using Calibration Data

After completing a calibration model based on data points generated during a physical tour of the area, you can inspect the location quality of the access points based on calibration.

**Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.

**Step 2** Choose **RF Calibration Model** from the Select a command list, then click **Go**.

A list of calibration models appears.

**Step 3** Click the desired calibration model.

**Step 4** Click the **Inspect Location Quality** link found under the Calibration Floors heading.

Prime Infrastructure displays a color-coded map noting percentage of location errors. You can modify the distance selected to see the effect on the location errors.

---

## Viewing VoWLAN Readiness

The VoWLAN Readiness (voice readiness) Tool allows you to check the RF coverage to determine if it is sufficient for your voice needs. This tool verifies RSSI levels after access points have been installed.

**Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.

**Step 2** Click the applicable floor area name.

**Step 3** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Inspect VoWLAN Readiness**.

**Step 4** Choose the applicable **Band**, **AP Transmit Power**, and **Client** parameters from the drop-down lists.

By default, the region map displays the b/g/n band for Cisco Phone-based RSSI threshold. The new settings cannot be saved.

Depending on the selected client, the following RSSI values might not be editable:

- Cisco Phone—RSSI values are not editable.
- Custom—RSSI values are editable with the following ranges:
  - Low threshold between -95dBm to -45dBm
  - High threshold between -90dBm to -40dBm

The following color schemes indicate whether or not the area is voice ready:

- Green—Yes



- Yellow—Marginal
- Red—No

The accuracy of the Green/Yellow/Red regions depends on the RF environment and whether or not the floor is calibrated. If the floor is calibrated, the accuracy of the regions is enhanced.

---

## Using Chokepoints to Enhance Tag Location Reporting

### Adding Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers

### Defining Inclusion Regions on Floors

To further refine locations on a floor, you can define the areas that are included (inclusion areas) and those areas that are not included (exclusion areas). For example, you might want to exclude areas such as an atrium or stairwell within a building, but include a work area (such as cubicles, labs, or manufacturing floors).

By default, Prime Infrastructure defines an inclusion region for each newly added floor. When you define a new inclusion region, any previously defined inclusion region is automatically removed. An inclusion region is indicated by a solid aqua line outlining the region.

To define an inclusion area, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
  - Step 2** Click the name of the appropriate floor area.
  - Step 3** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Map Editor**, then click **Go**.
  - Step 4** On the map, click the aqua box on the toolbar.
  - Step 5** Click **OK** in the message box that appears. A drawing icon appears to outline the inclusion area.
  - Step 6** To begin defining the inclusion area, move the drawing icon to a starting point on the map and click once.
  - Step 7** Move the cursor along the boundary of the area you want to include and click to end a border line. Click again to define the next boundary line.
  - Step 8** Repeat [Step 7](#) until the area is outlined and then double-click the drawing icon. A solid aqua line defines the inclusion area.
  - Step 9** Choose **Save** from the Command menu or click the **disk** icon to save the inclusion region.  
If you made an error defining the inclusion area, click the area. The selected area is outlined by a dashed aqua line. Next, click the **X** icon on the toolbar. The area is removed from the floor map.
  - Step 10** To return to the floor map to enable inclusion regions on heatmaps, choose **Exit** from the Command menu.
  - Step 11** Select the **Location Regions** check box if it is not already selected. To apply the changes to all floor maps, click **Save settings**.

- Step 12** To resynchronize Prime Infrastructure and MSE databases, choose **Services > Synchronize Services**. If the two DBs are already synchronized then a resynchronization happens automatically every time there is a change. There is no need for an explicit resynch.
- Step 13** In the Synchronize page, choose **Network Designs** from the Synchronize drop-down list, then click **Synchronize**. You can confirm that the synchronization is successful by viewing two green arrows in the Sync Status column.
- Newly defined inclusion and exclusion regions appear on heatmaps only after the mobility services engine recalculates location.
- 

## Defining Exclusion Regions on Floors

To further refine location calculations on a floor, you can define areas that are excluded (exclusion areas). For example, you might want to exclude areas such as an atrium or stairwell within a building. As a rule, exclusion areas are generally defined within the borders of an inclusion area.

To define an exclusion area, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the appropriate floor area.
- Step 3** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Map Editor**.
- Step 4** Click **Go**.
- Step 5** On the map, click the purple box on the toolbar.
- Step 6** Click **OK** in the message box that appears. A drawing icon appears to outline the exclusion area.
- Step 7** To begin defining the exclusion area, move the drawing icon to the starting point on the map, and click once.
- Step 8** Move the drawing icon along the boundary of the area you want to exclude. Click once to start a boundary line, and click again to end the boundary line.
- Step 9** Repeat [Step 8](#) until the area is outlined and then double-click the drawing icon. The defined exclusion area is shaded in purple when the area is completely defined. The excluded area is shaded in purple.
- Step 10** To define additional exclusion regions, repeat [Step 5](#) to [Step 9](#).
- Step 11** When all exclusion areas are defined, choose **Save** from the Command menu or click the **disk** icon on the toolbar to save the exclusion region.
- Step 12** To delete an exclusion area, click the area to be deleted. The selected area is outlined by a dashed purple line. Then click the **X** icon on the toolbar.
- Step 13** To return to the floor map to enable exclusion regions on heatmaps, choose **Exit** from the Command menu.
- Step 14** Select the **Location Regions** check box if it is not already selected, click **Save settings**, and close the Layers configuration page when complete.
- Step 15** To resynchronize Prime Infrastructure and location databases, choose **Services > Synchronize Services**.
- Step 16** In the Synchronize page, choose **Network Designs** from the Synchronize drop-down list, then click **Synchronize**.

You can confirm that the synchronization is successful by viewing two green arrows in the Sync. Status column.

---

## Defining a Rail Line on a Floor

You can define a rail line on a floor that represents a conveyor belt. Additionally, you can define an area around the rail area known as the snap-width to further assist location calculations. This represents the area in which you expect clients to appear.

Any client located within the snap-width area is plotted on the rail line (majority) or just outside of the snap-width area (minority). The snap-width area is defined in feet or meters (user-defined) and represents the distance that is monitored on either side (east and west or north and south) of the rail.

Rail line configurations do not apply to tags.

---

- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the appropriate floor area.
- Step 3** Choose **Map Editor** from the **Select a command** drop-down list.
- Step 4** Click **Go**.
- Step 5** In the map, click the **rail** icon (to the right of the purple exclusion icon) on the toolbar.
- Step 6** Enter a snap-width (feet or meters) for the rail and then click **OK**. A drawing icon appears.
- Step 7** Click the **drawing** icon at the starting point of the rail line. Click again when you want to stop drawing the line or change the direction of the line.
- Step 8** Click the **drawing** icon twice when the rail line is completely drawn on the floor map. The rail line appears on the map and is bordered on either side by the defined snap-width region.
- Step 9** To delete a rail line, click the area to be deleted. The selected area is outlined by a dashed purple line. Then, click the X icon on the toolbar.
- Step 10** To return to the floor map to enable rails on heatmaps, choose **Exit** from the Command menu.
- Step 11** On the floor map, choose the **Layers** drop-down list.
- Step 12** Select the **Rails** check box if it is not already selected, then click **Save settings**.
- Step 13** To resynchronize Prime Infrastructure and mobility services engine, choose **Services > Synchronize Services**.
- Step 14** In the Synchronize page, choose **Network Designs** from the Synchronize drop-down list and then click **Synchronize**.

You can confirm that the synchronization is successful by viewing two green arrows in the Sync. Status column.

---

# Using Maps to Monitor Your Network

## Monitoring Mesh Networks Using Maps

Prime Infrastructure allows you to access and view details for the following elements from a mesh network map:

- Mesh Link Statistics
- Mesh Access Points
- Mesh Access Point Neighbors

## Monitoring Mesh Link Statistics Using Maps

You can view the signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) for a specific mesh network link, view the number of packets transmitted and received on that link, and initiate a link test in the **Maps > Wireless Maps > Site Maps** page.

To view details on a specific mesh link between two mesh access points or a mesh access point and a root access point, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Click the map name that corresponds to the outdoor area, campus, building, or floor you want to monitor.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, click the arrow to the right of AP Mesh Info. The Mesh Filter dialog box appears.
- Step 4** Move the cursor over the colored dot next to each mesh access point child to view details on the link between it and its parent.
- The color of the dot provides a quick-reference indicator of the SNR strength, as follows:
- A green dot represents a high SNR (above 25 dB).
  - An amber dot represents an acceptable SNR (20-25 dB).
  - A red dot represents a low SNR (below 20 dB).
  - A black dot indicates a root access point.
- Step 5** Click on a link test. You cannot run link tests for both links (child-to-parent and parent-to-child) at the same time.
- The link test takes 30 seconds to complete.
- Step 6** To view a graphical representation of SNR statistics over a period of time, click the arrow on the link. The following graphs are displayed for the link:
- SNR Up—Plots the RSSI values of the neighbor from the perspective of the access point.
  - SNR Down—Plots the RSSI values that the neighbor reports to the access point.
  - Link SNR—Plots a weighed and filtered measurement based on the SNR Up value.
  - The Adjusted Link Metric—Plots the value used to determine the least cost path to the root access point. This value represents the ease of getting the rooftop access point and accounts for the number of hops. The lower the ease value, the less likely the path is used.
  - The Unadjusted Link Metric—Plots the least cost path to get to the root access point unadjusted by the number of hops. The higher the value for the unadjusted link, the better the path.
-

## Monitoring Mesh Access Points Using Maps

You can view summary information for a mesh access point from a mesh network map. This information is in addition to the information shown for all access points (MAC address, access point model, controller IP address, location, height of access point, access point uptime, and LWAPP uptime).

To view summary and detailed configuration information for a mesh access point from a mesh network map, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
  - Step 2** Click the map name that corresponds to the outdoor area, campus, building, or floor location of the access point you want to monitor.
  - Step 3** To view summary configuration information for an access point, hover your mouse cursor over the access point that you want to monitor. A dialog box appears with configuration information for the selected access point.
  - Step 4** To view detailed configuration information for an access point, double-click the access point appearing on the map. The configuration details for the access point appear.

If the access point has an IP address, a Run Ping Test link is also visible at the bottom of the mesh access point dialog box.

---

### Related Topic

- [Viewing Mesh Access Point Configuration Details](#)

## Viewing Mesh Access Point Configuration Details

To view detailed configuration information for a mesh access point from a mesh network map, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
  - Step 2** Click the map name that corresponds to the outdoor area, campus, building, or floor location of the access point you want to monitor.
  - Step 3** Double-click the access point for which you want to view detailed configuration information. T
  - Step 4** Click any of the following tabs to get the required information:
    - **General**—Displays the overall configuration of the mesh access point such as the AP name, MAC address, AP Up time, associated controllers (registered and primary) operational status, and software version.

The software version for mesh access points is appended with the letter *m* and the word *mesh* appears in parentheses.
    - **Interface**—Displays configuration details for the interfaces supported on the mesh access point. Interface options are radio and Ethernet.
    - **Mesh Links**—Displays parent and neighbor details (name, MAC address, packet error rate, and link details) for the mesh access point. You can also initiate link tests from this page.

- **Mesh Statistics**—Displays details on the bridging, queue, and security statistics for the mesh access point.
- 

#### Related Topic

- [Monitoring Mesh Access Point Neighbors Using Maps](#)

## Monitoring Mesh Access Point Neighbors Using Maps

To view details on neighbors of a mesh access point from a mesh network map, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
  - Step 2** Click the map name that corresponds to the outdoor area, campus, building, or floor you want to monitor.
  - Step 3** To view detailed information on mesh links for a mesh access point, click the arrow portion of the access point label. The Access Points page appears.
  - Step 4** Click the **Mesh Links** tab.
  - Step 5** To view mesh link details for neighbors of a selected access point, click **View Mesh Neighbors** on the Mesh tab of the access point configuration summary dialog box, which appears when you hover your mouse cursor over an access point on a map.  
Signal-to-noise (SNR) appears in the View Mesh Neighbors dialog box.  
Labels identify the selected access point, the neighbor access point, and the child access point.
  - Step 6** To remove the relationship labels from the map, click the **clear** link of the selected access point.  
The drop-down lists at the top of the mesh neighbors page indicate the resolution of the map (100%) displayed and how often the information displayed is updated (every 5 mins).
- 

## Viewing the Mesh Network Hierarchy Using Maps

You can view parent-child relationship of mesh access points within a mesh network. You can also filter which access points are displayed in the map view by selecting only access points of interest.

To view the mesh network hierarchy for a selected network, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
  - Step 2** Click the map name you want to display.
  - Step 3** Select the **AP Mesh Info** check box if it is not already selected.  
The AP Mesh Info check box is only selectable if mesh access points are present on the map.
  - Step 4** Click the blue arrow to the right of the AP Mesh Info to display the Mesh Parent-Child Hierarchical View.
  - Step 5** Click the **plus (+)** sign next to a mesh access point to display its children.  
All subordinate mesh access points are displayed when a negative (-) sign appears next to the parent mesh access point entry. For example, the access point, *indoor-mesh-45-rap2*, has only one child, *indoor-mesh-44-map2*.

**Step 6** Hover your mouse cursor over the colored dot next to each mesh access point child to view details on the link between it and its parent.

The color of the dot provides a quick reference point of the SNR strength:

- A green dot represents a high SNR (above 25 dB).
  - An amber dot represents an acceptable SNR (20-25 dB).
  - A red dot represents a low SNR (below 20 dB).
  - A black dot indicates a root access point.
- 

## Using Mesh Filters to Modify Map Display of Maps and Mesh Links

In the mesh hierarchical page, you can define mesh filters to determine which mesh access points appear on the map. Mesh access points are filtered by the number of hops between them and their root access point.

Prime Infrastructure updates map view information every 15 minutes.

To use mesh filtering, follow these steps in the Mesh Parent-Child Hierarchical View:

- 
- Step 1** To modify what label and color displays for a mesh link, select an option from the Link Label drop-down list.
  - Step 2** To choose which parameter determines the color of the mesh link on the map, choose an option from the Link Color drop-down list.
  - Step 3** To modify which mesh access points are displayed based on the number of hops between them and their parents, choose the appropriate options from the Quick Selections drop-down list.
  - Step 4** A description of the options is provided in [Table 34-17](#).
  - Step 5** Click **Update Map View** to refresh the screen and display the map view with the selected options. For a child access point to be visible, the parent access point to root access point must be selected.
- 

### Related Topics

- [SNR and Packet Error Rate Link Colors](#)
- [Quick Selection Options](#)

## SNR and Packet Error Rate Link Colors

The color of the SNR and Packet Error Rate link provides a quick reference point of the SNR strength as described in [Table 34-16](#).

**Table 34-16** Definition for SNR and Packet Error Rate Link Color

| Link Color | Link SNR                                                 | Packet Error Rate (PER)                                                                |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Green      | Represents a SNR above 25 dB (high value)                | Represents a PER of one percent (1%) or lower                                          |
| Amber      | Represents a SNR between 20 and 25 dB (acceptable value) | Represents a PER that is less than ten percent (10%) and greater than one percent (1%) |
| Red        | Represents a SNR below 20 dB (low value)                 | Represents a PER that is greater than ten percent (10%)                                |

## Quick Selection Options

To specify which mesh access points are displayed based on the number of hops between them and their parents, select any of the Quick Selections options described in [Table 34-17](#).

**Table 34-17** Quick Selection Options

| Field                 | Description                                                                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Select only Root APs  | Choose this setting if you want the map view to display root access points only. |
| Select up to 1st hops | Choose this setting if you want the map view to display 1st hops only.           |
| Select up to 2nd hops | Choose this setting if you want the map view to display 2nd hops only.           |
| Select up to 3rd hops | Choose this setting if you want the map view to display 3rd hops only.           |
| Select up to 4th hops | Choose this setting if you want the map view to display 4th hops only.           |
| Select All            | Select this setting if you want the map view to display all access points.       |

## Monitoring Tags Using Maps

When you enable tag location status on a map, you can review the name of the access point that generated the signal for a tagged asset, its strength of signal and when the location information was last updated for the asset. To display this information, hover your cursor over the asset tag icon on the map.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
  - Step 2** Choose **Campus > Building > Floor** for the applicable mobility services engine and tag.
  - Step 3** Select the **802.11 Tags** check box in the Floor Settings pane (left), if not already selected.  
Do not click **Save Settings** unless you want to save changes made to the Floor Settings across all maps.



- Step 4** Hover your cursor over a tag icon (yellow tag) and a summary of its configuration appears in a dialog box.
- Step 5** Click the **tag** icon to see tag details in a new window.
- 

## Viewing Device Details Using Maps

Hover your cursor over any device icon in a map to view details about that device.

Monitor mode access points are shown with gray labels to distinguish them from other access points.

# Using Maps to Plan Your Network Design

## Using Planning Mode

You can calculate the recommended number and location of access points based on whether data and/or voice traffic and/or location are active.

Based on the throughput specified for each protocol (802.11a or 802.11 b/g), planning mode calculates the total number of access points required that would provide optimum coverage in your network.

Planning mode does not use AP type or Antenna pattern information for calculating the number of access points required. The calculation is based on the access point coverage area or the number of users per access point.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Select the desired campus or building.
- Step 3** Click the desired floor area in the Building.
- Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Planning Mode**.
- Step 5** Click **Go**.
- Step 6** Select a planning mode option

The Planned AP Association Tool allows you to add, delete, or import an AP Association from an excel or CSV file. After an access point is defined, it can be associated to a base radio MAC address using the Planned AP Association Tool. If the AP is not discovered, it is placed in a standby bucket and is associated after it is discovered.

AP association requires that the AP does not belong to any floor or outdoor area. If the AP is already assigned to a floor or outdoor area, then the standby bucket holds the AP and when removed from the floor or outdoor, is positioned on the specified floor. One MAC address cannot be used for multiple floor or outdoor areas.

The map synchronization works only if the AP is associated to a base radio MAC address and not to its Ethernet MAC address.

---

## Using Planning Mode to Calculate Access Point Requirements

Prime Infrastructure planning mode enables you to calculate the number of access points required to cover an area by placing fictitious access points on a map and viewing the coverage area. Based on the throughput specified for each protocol (802.11a/n or 802.11b/g/n), planning mode calculates the total number of access points required to provide optimum coverage in your network. You can calculate the recommended number and location of access points based on the following criteria:

- Traffic type active on the network: data or voice traffic or both
- Location accuracy requirements
- Number of active users
- Number of users per square footage

---

**Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.

**Step 2** Select the desired campus or building.

**Step 3** Click the desired floor area in the Building.

A color-coded map appears showing all elements (access points, clients, tags) and their relative signal strength.

**Step 4** Choose **Planning Mode** from the Select a command drop-down list (top-right), then click **Go**. A blank floor map appears.

**Step 5** Click **Add APs**.

**Step 6** In the page that appears, drag the dashed-line rectangle over the map in the location for which you want to calculate the recommended access points.

Adjust the size or placement of the rectangle by selecting the edge of the rectangle and holding down the **Ctrl** key. The rectangle is resizable by dragging on the handles on its edges and corners.

**Step 7** From the Add APs drop-down list, choose **Automatic**.

**Step 8** Choose the **AP Type** and the appropriate antenna and protocol for the selected access point.

**Step 9** Choose the target throughput for the access point.

**Step 10** Select the check box(es) next to the **service(s)** used on the floor. You must select at least one service.

**Step 11** Select the **Advanced Options** check box to select the following access point planning options:

- Demand and Override Coverage per AP.
- Safety Margin (for the Data/Coverage and Voice safety margin options)

**Step 12** Click **Calculate**.

The recommended number of access points given the selected services appears. Recommended calculations assume the need for consistently strong signals unless adjusted downward by the **safety margin** advanced option. In some cases, the recommended number of access points is higher than what is required.

Walls are not used or accounted for in planning mode calculations.

**Step 13** Click **Apply** to generate a map that shows proposed deployment of the recommended access points in the selected area based on the selected services and parameters.

**Step 14** Choose **Generate Proposal** to display a textual and graphical report of the recommended access point number and deployment based on the given input.

---

**Related Topic**[Services Options for Planning Mode](#)**Services Options for Planning Mode**

Table 34-18 describes the access point planning options.

**Table 34-18** Definition of Services Option for Planning Mode

| Service Options                                                                                                                                                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------|----------------|---------|------|-------|------|---------|------|-------|------|---------|------|-------|------|---------|------|-------|------|----------|------|---|------|----------|------|---|------|----------|------|---|------|----------|------|---|------|
| <b>Data/Coverage</b>                                                                                                                                                      | Select this check box if data traffic is transmitted on the wireless LAN. The following densities are used depending on the band and data rates:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Band</th> <th>Path Loss Model (dBm)</th> <th>Data Rate (Mb/s)</th> <th>Area (Sq. ft.)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>802.11a</td> <td>-3.3</td> <td>10-12</td> <td>6000</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11a</td> <td>-3.3</td> <td>15-18</td> <td>4500</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11a</td> <td>-3.5</td> <td>10-12</td> <td>5000</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11a</td> <td>-3.5</td> <td>15-18</td> <td>3250</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11bg</td> <td>-3.3</td> <td>5</td> <td>6500</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11bg</td> <td>-3.3</td> <td>6</td> <td>4500</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11bg</td> <td>-3.5</td> <td>5</td> <td>5500</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11bg</td> <td>-3.5</td> <td>6</td> <td>3500</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Band                  | Path Loss Model (dBm) | Data Rate (Mb/s) | Area (Sq. ft.) | 802.11a | -3.3 | 10-12 | 6000 | 802.11a | -3.3 | 15-18 | 4500 | 802.11a | -3.5 | 10-12 | 5000 | 802.11a | -3.5 | 15-18 | 3250 | 802.11bg | -3.3 | 5 | 6500 | 802.11bg | -3.3 | 6 | 4500 | 802.11bg | -3.5 | 5 | 5500 | 802.11bg | -3.5 | 6 | 3500 |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | Band                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Path Loss Model (dBm) | Data Rate (Mb/s)      | Area (Sq. ft.)   |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | -3.3                  | 10-12                 | 6000             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | -3.3                  | 15-18                 | 4500             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | -3.5                  | 10-12                 | 5000             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | -3.5                  | 15-18                 | 3250             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11bg                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | -3.3                  | 5                     | 6500             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11bg                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | -3.3                  | 6                     | 4500             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11bg                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | -3.5                  | 5                     | 5500             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| 802.11bg                                                                                                                                                                  | -3.5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 6                     | 3500                  |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| If you select the <b>Advanced Options</b> check box, you can select the desired safety margin (aggressive, safe, or very safe) of the signal strength threshold for data. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aggressive = Minimum (-3 dBm)</li> <li>• Safe = Medium (0 dBm)</li> <li>• Very Safe = Maximum (+3 dBm)</li> </ul>                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| <b>Voice</b>                                                                                                                                                              | Select the Voice check box if voice traffic is transmitted on the wireless LAN.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | If you select the <b>Advanced Options</b> check box, you can select the desired safety margin (aggressive, safe, very safe or 7920-enabled) of the signal strength threshold for voice.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aggressive = Minimum [-78 dBm (802.11a/b/g)]</li> <li>• Safe = Medium [-75 dBm (802.11a/b/g)]</li> <li>• Very Safe = Maximum [(-72 dBm (802.11a/b/g)]</li> <li>• 7920_enabled = [(-72 dBm (802.11a); -67 dBm (802.11b/g)]</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| <b>Location</b>                                                                                                                                                           | Select this check box to ensure that the recommended access point calculation provides the true location of an element within 10 meters at least 90% of the time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | To meet the criteria, access points are collocated within 70 feet of each other in a hexagonal pattern employing staggered and perimeter placement.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | <b>Note</b> Each service option includes all services that are listed above it. For example, if you select the Location check box, the calculation considers data/coverage, voice, and location in determining the optimum number of access points required.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |

Table 34-19 Definition of Advanced Services

| Service Options                                                                                                                                                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------|----------------|---------|------|-------|------|---------|------|-------|------|---------|------|-------|------|---------|------|-------|------|----------|------|---|------|----------|------|---|------|----------|------|---|------|----------|------|---|------|
| Data/Coverage                                                                                                                                                             | Select this check box, if data traffic is transmitted on the wireless LAN. The following densities are used depending on the band and data rates:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Band</th> <th>Path Loss Model (dBm)</th> <th>Data Rate (Mb/s)</th> <th>Area (Sq. ft.)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>802.11a</td> <td>-3.3</td> <td>10-12</td> <td>6000</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11a</td> <td>-3.3</td> <td>15-18</td> <td>4500</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11a</td> <td>-3.5</td> <td>10-12</td> <td>5000</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11a</td> <td>-3.5</td> <td>15-18</td> <td>3250</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11bg</td> <td>-3.3</td> <td>5</td> <td>6500</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11bg</td> <td>-3.3</td> <td>6</td> <td>4500</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11bg</td> <td>-3.5</td> <td>5</td> <td>5500</td> </tr> <tr> <td>802.11bg</td> <td>-3.5</td> <td>6</td> <td>3500</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Band                  | Path Loss Model (dBm) | Data Rate (Mb/s) | Area (Sq. ft.) | 802.11a | -3.3 | 10-12 | 6000 | 802.11a | -3.3 | 15-18 | 4500 | 802.11a | -3.5 | 10-12 | 5000 | 802.11a | -3.5 | 15-18 | 3250 | 802.11bg | -3.3 | 5 | 6500 | 802.11bg | -3.3 | 6 | 4500 | 802.11bg | -3.5 | 5 | 5500 | 802.11bg | -3.5 | 6 | 3500 |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | Band                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Path Loss Model (dBm) | Data Rate (Mb/s)      | Area (Sq. ft.)   |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | -3.3                  | 10-12                 | 6000             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | -3.3                  | 15-18                 | 4500             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | -3.5                  | 10-12                 | 5000             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11a                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | -3.5                  | 15-18                 | 3250             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11bg                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | -3.3                  | 5                     | 6500             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11bg                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | -3.3                  | 6                     | 4500             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 802.11bg                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | -3.5                  | 5                     | 5500             |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| 802.11bg                                                                                                                                                                  | -3.5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 6                     | 3500                  |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| If you select the <b>Advanced Options</b> check box, you can select the desired safety margin (aggressive, safe, or very safe) of the signal strength threshold for data. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aggressive = Minimum (-3 dBm)</li> <li>• Safe = Medium (0 dBm)</li> <li>• Very Safe = Maximum (+3 dBm)</li> </ul>                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| Voice                                                                                                                                                                     | Select the voice check box if voice traffic is transmitted on the wireless LAN.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | If you select the <b>Advanced Options</b> check box, you can select the desired safety margin (aggressive, safe, very safe or 7920-enabled) of the signal strength threshold for voice.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aggressive = Minimum [-78 dBm (802.11a/b/g)]</li> <li>• Safe = Medium [-75 dBm (802.11a/b/g)]</li> <li>• Very Safe = Maximum [(-72 dBm (802.11a/b/g)]</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                           | 7920_enabled = [(-72 dBm (802.11a); -67 dBm (802.11b/g)]                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| Location                                                                                                                                                                  | <p>Select this check box to ensure that the recommended access point calculation provides the true location of an element within 10 meters at least 90% of the time.</p> <p>To meet the criteria, access points are collocated within 70 feet of each other in a hexagonal pattern employing staggered and perimeter placement.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Each service option includes all services that are listed above it. For example, if you select the Location check box, the calculation considers data/coverage, voice, and location in determining the optimum number of access points required.</p>                                                                                                                                             |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| Demand                                                                                                                                                                    | Select this check box if you want to use the total number of users or user ratio per access point as a basis for the access point calculation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| Override Coverage per AP                                                                                                                                                  | Select this check box if you want to specify square foot coverage as the basis for access point coverage.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |
| Safety Margin                                                                                                                                                             | Select this check box to qualify relative signal strength requirements for data and voice service in the access point calculation. Options are: Aggressive, Safe, Very Safe, and 7920-enabled (voice only). Select <b>Aggressive</b> to require minimal signal strength requirements in the calculation and <b>Very Safe</b> to request the highest signal strength.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                       |                       |                  |                |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |         |      |       |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |          |      |   |      |

## Network Design

A *network design* is a representation within Prime Infrastructure of the physical placement of access points throughout your facilities. A hierarchy of a single campus, the buildings that comprise that campus, and the floors of each building constitute a single network design.

## Designing a Network

After access points have been installed and have joined a controller, and you've configured Prime Infrastructure to manage the controllers, you can create a network design.

The location appliance must be set to poll the controllers in that network, as well as be configured to synchronize with that specific network design, to track devices in that environment. The concept and steps to perform synchronization between Prime Infrastructure and the mobility service engine are explained in the *Cisco 3350 Mobility Services Engine Configuration Guide*.

- 
- Step 1** Log in to Prime Infrastructure with SuperUser, Admin, or ConfigManager access privileges.
  - Step 2** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
  - Step 3** Create a new Campus and/ or building as explained in XXX <Add xref.>
  - Step 4** Create a new floor area.
  - Step 5** Select the access points to be placed on the specific floor map  
Each access point you add to the floor map is represented by a gray circle (differentiated by access point name or MAC address) and is lined up in the upper left part of the floor map.
  - Step 6** Drag each access point to the appropriate location. (Access points turn blue when you click them to relocate them.) The small black arrow at the side of each access point represents Side A of each access point, and each arrow of the access point must correspond with the direction in which the access points were installed. (Side A is clearly noted on each 1000 series access point and has no relevance to the 802.11a/n radio.)
  - Step 7** To adjust an access point's directional arrow, choose the appropriate orientation on the Antenna Angle drop-down list.  
Access point placement and direction must directly reflect the actual access point deployment or the system cannot pinpoint the device location.
  - Step 8** Click **Save** when you are finished placing and adjusting each direction of the access point.
  - Step 9** Repeat these steps to create additional campuses, buildings, and floors until each device location is properly detailed in the network design.
- 

## Importing or Exporting WLSE Map Data

When you convert an access point from autonomous to CAPWAP and from the WLSE to Prime Infrastructure, you must manually re-enter the access point information in Prime Infrastructure. This can be a time-consuming step. To convert access point information more quickly, you can export the information about access points from WLSE and import it into Prime Infrastructure.

Prime Infrastructure supports importing access point information from a .tar file only.

For more information on the WLSE data export functionality (WLSE version 2.15), see [http://<WLSE\\_IP\\_ADDRESS>:1741/debug/export/exportSite.jsp](http://<WLSE_IP_ADDRESS>:1741/debug/export/exportSite.jsp).

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Maps > Site Maps**.
- Step 2** Choose **Properties** from the Select a command drop-down list, then click **Go**.
- Step 3** In the Export/Import AP/LS/SP Placement, click **Browse** to select the file to import.
- Step 4** Find and select the .tar file to import, then click **Open**.
- Step 5** Click **Import**.

Prime Infrastructure uploads the file and temporarily saves it into a local directory while it is being processed. If the file contains data that cannot be processed, Prime Infrastructure prompts you to correct the problem and retry. After the file has been loaded, Prime Infrastructure displays a report of what was and was not added to Prime Infrastructure.

If some of the data to be imported already exists, Prime Infrastructure either uses the existing data in the case of campuses, or overwrites the existing data in the cases of buildings and floors.

If there are duplicate names between a WLSE site and building combination and a Prime Infrastructure campus (or top-level building) and building combination, Prime Infrastructure displays a message in the Pre Execute Import Report indicating that it will delete the existing building.

Because a WLSE file has no floor number information, the floors are imported in descending order when imported into Prime Infrastructure.

- Step 6** Choose **Maps > Site Maps** to verify the imported data.
- 

## Troubleshooting Voice RF Coverage Issues

- Floors with either calibration or no calibration data are treated as follows:
  - Set the AP Transmit field to **Max** (the maximum downlink power settings). If the map still shows some yellow or red regions, more access points are required to cover the floor.
  - If the calibrated model shows red or yellow regions (where voice is expected to be deployed) with the AP Transmit field set to Current, increasing the power level of the access points might help.



## **PART 8**

### **Ensuring Network Services**

This part contains the following sections:

- [Configuring and Monitoring IWAN](#)
- [Using Converged Access Workflow](#)
- [Configuring Application Visibility and Control](#)
- [Ensuring Consistent Application Experiences](#)
- [Troubleshooting Applications](#)
- [Monitoring Microsoft Lync Traffic](#)
- [Using Mediatrace](#)
- [Cisco Mobility Services Engine and Services](#)
- [Configuring the Cisco AppNav Solution](#)
- [Configuring the Cisco WAAS Container](#)
- [Working with Wireless Mobility](#)







## Configuring and Monitoring IWAN

---

Cisco Intelligent WAN (IWAN) is a system that enhances collaboration and cloud application performance while reducing the operating cost of the WAN. This system leverages low-cost, high-bandwidth Internet services to increase bandwidth capacity without compromising the performance, availability, or security of cloud-based applications. Organizations can use IWAN to leverage the Internet as WAN transport, as well as for direct access to Public Cloud applications.

Prime Infrastructure positions the IWAN wizard workflow mostly for green field customers where the IWAN services need to be enabled for the first time. The enabled IWAN service cannot be modified for brown field customers. But customers can always overwrite the last-configured service by rewriting any of these services on required sites.

You can use Prime Infrastructure to design, configure, and monitor the IWAN services for an enterprise. Cisco IWAN requires the configuration of DMVPN, PFR, AVC and QOS as part of enabling IWAN services on different devices.

### Related Topics

- [Cisco Intelligent WAN \(IWAN\) Design Guide](#)
- [Prerequisites for Enabling IWAN Services](#)
- [Using the IWAN Wizard](#)

## Prerequisites for Enabling IWAN Services

When designing or deploying IWAN services, configurations need to be decided. A network administrator needs to plan the branches on which the IWAN has to be enabled or reconfigured. In Prime Infrastructure, you can access a set of CVD validated out of the box IWAN templates by navigating to **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Feature Templates**. All the templates under this feature technology are tagged “IWAN”, and any new template that a user creates will automatically carry this tag and will appear in the IWAN workflow.

The tags that are automatically used for the templates are as follows:

- DMVPN: IWAN-DMVPN
- PFR: IWAN-PFR
- QOS: IWAN-QOS
- AVC: IWAN-AVC

The tags that are used for the IWAN Hub and IWAN Branch Categories based on the Device roles are as follows:

- Hub Category:
  - Master Controller: IWAN-HUB-Master-Controller
  - MPLS Hub: IWAN-HUB-MPLS
  - Internet Hub: IWAN-HUB-Internet
- Branch Category
  - Single Router Branch: IWAN-Branch-Single-Router
  - Dual Router Branch-MPLS: IWAN-Branch-Dual-MPLS
  - Dual Router Branch-Internet: IWAN-Branch-Dual-Internet

Users can create their own templates from the bundle templates or modify the out of the box design templates, which can be recreated from the CVD templates and displayed in the IWAN workflow.

Therefore, enabling the complete IWAN services through Prime Infrastructure is done based on two categories, SITE and ROLE. SITE can be HUB or SPOKE, and ROLE can be X, Y, Z, and so on. Depending on this selection, the templates will be organized and displayed in sequence for users to fill in the values. At the end of the workflow, the summary of the configurations to be deployed on the network is displayed. When the **Deploy** button is clicked, the configurations are pushed to the network.

#### Important Notes

- Ensure that the interface loopback 0 IP address is configured on all Master Controllers before deployment.
- The loopback IP of the Master Controller should be permitted in the DC-LOCAL-ROUTES prefix-list in HUB-Border-MPLS and HUB-Border-Internet routers for Border routers to reach MC.

Example:

```
ip prefix-list DC-LOCAL-ROUTES seq 40 permit <MC loopback0 ip>/32
```

- The DC\_Prefix1 field in CVD-DMVPN-MPLS and CVD-DMVPN-Internet templates should match the DC subnet. If there is more than one subnet in DC, then the suffix “le 32” can be used to include all the subnets.

Example:

- Subnet A–172.29.10.0/30
- Subnet B–172.29.10.4/30
- Subnet C–172.29.10.8/30
- DC\_Prefix1(x.x.x.x/x)–172.29.10.0/24 le 32

- In CVD-DMVPN, CVD-DMVPN-Dual-Internet, and CVD-DMVPN-Dual-MPLS templates, the subnet mask of the Loopback interface needs to be entered in the Loopback-Subnet field.
- %IPSEC-3-REPLAY\_ERROR: IPsec SA receives an anti-replay error.

If this error message is seen on the HUB-Border-MPLS router, you may be able to resolve this by increasing the window size.

Example:

```
crypto ipsec security-association replay window-size 1024
```

**Related Topics**

- [Cisco Intelligent WAN \(IWAN\) Design Guide](#)
- [Using the IWAN Wizard](#)

## Using the IWAN Wizard

Prime Infrastructure provides a wizard to help you design and deploy IWAN services.

- 
- Step 1** Select **Services > Network Services > IWAN Enablement**.
- Step 2** Click **Next** to choose the configuration.
- Step 3** Select a category to deploy IWAN:
- Branch
  - Hub
- Step 4** Select the features you wish to configure, then click **Next**.
- Step 5** Select the devices on which you want to configure the specified features. To configure IWAN on multiple branches at the same time, select multiple devices and enter the values for each variable.
- Step 6** Depending on the features you selected to configure in [Step 4](#), the wizard guides you through entering the necessary values.
- The templates are configured as part of the IWAN wizard, and you can access them by navigating to **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Feature Templates**.
- Step 7** After entering the necessary configuration values, click **Next** or click **CLI Summary** to confirm the device and template configuration values.
- Step 8** Schedule the deployment job using **Prepare and Schedule** tab, if required.
- Step 9** Click **Next** or click **Confirmation** tab to deploy the template.

Post deployment, ensure that you enable routing between Master Controllers and Hub Border Routers and include the subnet of the loopback 0 interface as part of the routing domain.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Using PKI with IWAN-DMVPN Service](#)
- [Cisco Intelligent WAN \(IWAN\) Design Guide](#)
- [Prerequisites for Enabling IWAN Services](#)

## Using PKI with IWAN-DMVPN Service

To use PKI certificates (for DMVPN only) in the IWAN workflow, you must first add a valid APIC-EM controller to Prime Infrastructure. See [Integrating APIC-EM with Prime Infrastructure](#). The PKI option cannot be enabled if the CNS gateway is selected in the Global PnP/ZTD Settings (**Administration > Servers > APIC-EM Controller > Global PnP/ZTD Settings**). This is optional when you want to use a pre-shared key for IWAN DMVPN.

In the IWAN work flow, when the PKI option is enabled, in the back-end, the device is added to the APIC-EM Inventory and the PKI service is triggered to install the PKI certification on the device. The device can download the certificate in HTTP.

When the device is in the managed state, it can be used for IWAN provisioning. Here, PKI certificate-based authentication is done instead of using a pre-shared key.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Network Services > IWAN Enablement**.
- Step 2** In the **Before You Begin** section, click **Next**.
- Step 3** In the **Choose Configuration** section, select a category, device role from the drop-down lists. DMVPN, PFR, QOS, AVC values are auto-populated once the device role is selected. But these values can be edited. DMVPN is for PKI certificates only.
- Step 4** Check the **Deploy PKI** check box so that the user can enable PKI certificate-based authentication for DMVPN Tunnels. Click **Next**.
- Step 5** In the **Select Devices** section, select the devices and click **Next**.
- Step 6** In the **Demo\_DMVPN\_TEMP** section, enter the values in the fields under **Loopback, MPLS Tunnel** and **EDGRP**. Click **Apply** and then click **Next**.
- Step 7** In the **CLI Summary** section, the CLI commands in the DMVPN template are displayed along with the values that were entered by the user in the **Demo\_DMVPN\_TEMP** section. Click **Next**.
- Step 8** In the **Prepare and Schedule** section, click **Next** if you want the job to start now and not recur. If you want the IWAN job to run at a later time in a recurring pattern, then specify the time and recurrence under **Schedule**. Specify the **Job Option**, if required.
- Step 9** In the **Confirmation** section, click **Deploy** to configure the device.
- Step 10** The confirmation message appears. Click **OK**. The **User Jobs** pane under **Administration / Jobs** appears. The status of the IWAN DMVNP configuration and PKI certificate provisioning on the device can be tracked in the Job dashboard.

When either of the IWAN DMVPN config or PKI fail, the overall status of the IWAN provisioning will be displayed as “Failed” and the details will display whether the IWAN DMVPN configuration or the PKI failed.

For example, if there is any failure in the PKI IWAN service, an error message “Failed to install PKI certificate on device” will be displayed on the Job page of IWAN. When PKI service fails, all jobs will fail.

#### Related Topics

- [Cisco Intelligent WAN \(IWAN\) Design Guide](#)
- [Using the IWAN Wizard](#)
- [Integrating APIC-EM with Prime Infrastructure](#)



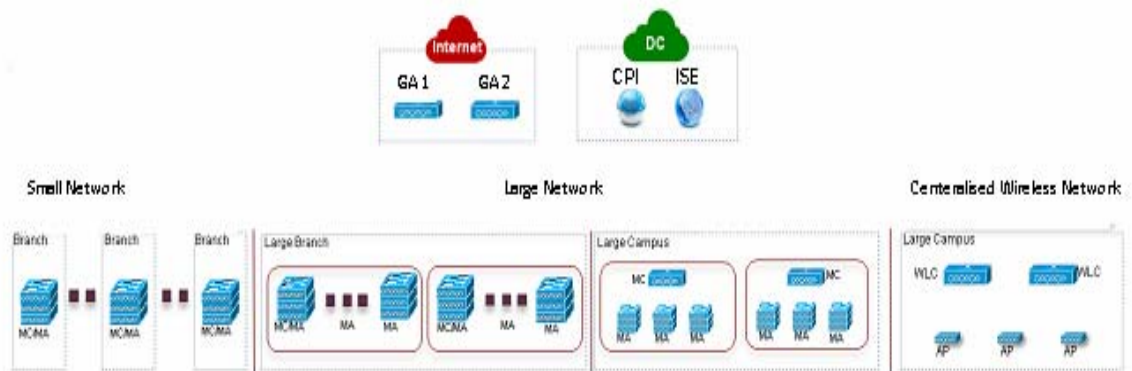
# Using Converged Access Workflow

## Converged Access Workflow Overview

The Converged Access workflow simplifies, automates and optimizes deployment of various enterprise-class next generation wireless deployment models for campus and branch networks. Cisco Prime Infrastructure can automate the converged access deployment of wireless networks using converged access components such as Catalyst 3650, 3850, 4500 SUP 8-E switches, and Cisco 5760 Wireless LAN controller (WLC). The catalyst switches can be deployed as Mobility Agent (MA), Mobility Controller (MC), and Guest Anchor controller (GA).

Figure 36-1 illustrates the wireless converged access deployment models.

**Figure 36-1** Converged Access Workflow Overview



- WLAN : 4 SSID Support – WPA2-Ent/WPA2-Personal/Open/Guest-CWA, 802.11 AC, Captive Bypass-Portal, Fast SSID-Change etc.
- Application Experience : Wireless Flexible Netflow, Application Visibility and Per-SSID BW allocation
- Security : Radius, 802.1X, CWA, AAA-Override, Client Timeout, NAC, DHCP Snooping, ARP Inspection, Clear Password Encryption etc.
- Wireless Best Practices : Band-Select, RRM, CleanAir, DCA Channel, Radius Timeout, WiFi Direct Policy etc.

**Single-switch Small Network Deployment Model**

This deployment model assumes single Catalyst 3650, 3850 or 4500 SUP 8-E switch deployed in Access layer in combined MA and MC roles. The Catalyst switches can be deployed in individual standalone system mode or in stackwise redundant supervisor mode.

**Controller-less Large Wireless Deployment Model**

This deployment model consists of multiple sub-domains and allows inter-domain MC peering for end-to-end seamless roaming across sub-domains. The MA switches are deployed in Access layer while the MC switches can be placed in Distribution layer.

**Controller-based Large Wireless Deployment Model**

A large scale converged access campus building is deployed with external 5760 WLC as MC. The Access layer switches are deployed as MA across multiple buildings with centralized 5760 MC. In such large network, multiple 5760 WLCs may co-exist for better load balancing and redundancy. Depending on the roaming requirement across different buildings, the inter-domain mobility peering between 5760 WLCs can be established.

**Centralized Wireless Campus Deployment Model**

In this deployment model, the switches in Access layer remain in traditional switching mode and wireless communication between Access Point (AP) and WLC is built as overlay network. In large scale campus deployments, multiple 5760 WLCs can be deployed for better load balancing and redundancy. To provide seamless large mobility domains, the inter-domain mobility peering 5760 WLCs can be established.

**Key Benefits**

- **Simple Automated Deployment**—Simplifies the converged access deployment by automating the device configuration process. Requires only a few deployment specific inputs from the network administrator and pushes the complete converged access configurations to the network devices.
- **Error Free Deployment**—The template based configuration used by Cisco Prime Infrastructure avoids manual misconfigurations, making it easier to build/maintain enterprise-wide standardized configurations that are well understood by the network administrator.
- **Optimized Deployment**—The configuration templates used by Cisco Prime Infrastructure incorporates a large number of Cisco best practice guidelines, improving the deployment quality. Some of the best practice wireless technologies/features that are automatically included in the template are Band-Select, Radio Resource Management (RRM), Fast SSID-Change, CleanAir, and Wireless QoS.
- **High Scalability**—Supports large enterprises with thousands of branches. It not only reduces efforts to deploy greenfield branches, but also simplifies large scale conversion of traditional Ethernet based branch networks to converged access branches in an error-free way.

**Related Topics**

- [Supported IOS-XE Platforms](#)
- [Prerequisites for Converged Access Deployment](#)
- [Converged Access Template Based Deployment](#)
- [Guidelines for Entering Configuration Values](#)

# Supported IOS-XE Platforms

The following tables describe the supported IOS-XE platforms for small, large, and centralized network deployment models.

**Table 36-1 Supported IOS-XE for Small Network Deployment Mode**

| Device Role                                        | IOS-XE Platform       | System Mode         | Software Version |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| Mobility Agent/Mobility Controller (Single-Switch) | Catalyst 3650         | Single or StackWise | 3.6.0 and later  |
|                                                    | Catalyst 3850         | Single or StackWise | 3.6.0 and later  |
|                                                    | Catalyst 4500 SUP 8-E | Single or Dual-SUP  | 3.7.0 and later  |
| Guest Anchor WLC                                   | CT5760 WLC            | Single or StackWise | 3.6.0 and later  |

**Table 36-2 Supported IOS-XE for Large Network Deployment Model**

| Device Role             | IOS-XE Platform       | System Mode         | Software Version |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| Mobility Agent          | Catalyst 3650         | Single or StackWise | 3.6.0 and later  |
|                         | Catalyst 3850         | Single or StackWise | 3.6.0 and later  |
|                         | Catalyst 4500 SUP 8-E | Single or Dual-SUP  | 3.7.0 and later  |
| Mobility Controller     | Catalyst 3650         | Single or StackWise | 3.6.0 and later  |
|                         | Catalyst 3850         | Single or StackWise | 3.6.0 and later  |
|                         | Catalyst 4500 SUP 8-E | Single or Dual-SUP  | 3.7.0 and later  |
|                         | CT5760 WLC            | Single or StackWise | 3.6.0 and later  |
| Guest Anchor Controller | CT5760 WLC            | Single or StackWise | 3.6.0 and later  |

**Table 36-3 Supported IOS-XE for Centralized Wireless Deployment Mode**

| Device Role         | IOS-XE Platform | System Mode         | Software Version |
|---------------------|-----------------|---------------------|------------------|
| Mobility Controller | CT5760 WLC      | Single or StackWise | 3.6.0 and later  |
| Guest Anchor WLC    | CT5760 WLC      | Single or StackWise | 3.6.0 and later  |

**Related Topics**

- [Converged Access Workflow Overview](#)
- [Prerequisites for Converged Access Deployment](#)
- [Converged Access Template Based Deployment](#)
- [Guidelines for Entering Configuration Values](#)

## Prerequisites for Converged Access Deployment

To successfully deploy the Converged Access solution using the Converged Access Workflow, the wired infrastructure of the network should be set for further configuration required for converged access. This section describes the prerequisite configurations for Converged Access Workflow based deployment.

You can view the prerequisites using the **click here** link in the **Before you Begin** page in the Converged Access Workflow (**Services > Network Services > Converged Access**).

**Related Topics**

- [Prerequisites for Layer 2 and Layer 3](#)
- [Converged Access Workflow Overview](#)
- [Supported IOS-XE Platforms](#)
- [Converged Access Template Based Deployment](#)
- [Guidelines for Entering Configuration Values](#)

## Prerequisites for Layer 2 and Layer 3

Table 36-4 describes the Layer 2 and Layer 3 prerequisites, and sample configuration for the Converged Access Workflow. In the sample configuration, the following nomenclature is used to represent the various wireless management VLANs in the MA and MC.

- WM\_VLAN - Name of the Wireless Management VLAN
- WM\_VLAN\_id - ID of the Wireless Management VLAN
- WLAN1\_Client\_VLAN\_Name - VLAN name of WLAN 1
- WLAN2\_Client\_VLAN\_Name - VLAN name of WLAN 2
- WLAN3\_Client\_VLAN\_Name - VLAN name of WLAN 3
- WLAN1\_Client\_VLAN\_id - VLAN ID of WLAN 1
- WLAN2\_Client\_VLAN\_id - VLAN ID of WLAN 2
- WLAN3\_Client\_VLAN\_id - VLAN ID of WLAN 3

**Note**


---

WLANx\_Client\_VLAN\_id represents all the three client VLAN Ids.

---



Table 36-4 Layer 2 and Layer 3 Prerequisites for Converged Access Switches for Device Roles MA and MC

| Task on Converged Access Switch                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Sample Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Wireless Management VLAN</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create wireless management VLAN with a network wide unique name.</li> <li>• Configure access ports connected to APs under this VLAN.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                   | <pre>! Mgmt VLAN on Access Switch vlan &lt;WM_VLAN_id&gt; name &lt;WM_VLAN&gt; ! Apply VLAN to access ports connected to Access Points interface GigabitEthernet 1/0/x description Connected to Access-Points switchport mode access switchport access vlan &lt;WM_VLAN_id&gt;</pre>                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Create Wireless Client VLANs</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create wireless client VLANs in VLAN database. The VLAN names are common across campus and branches.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                               | <pre>! Create the wireless Client VLANs on Access Switch vlan &lt;WLAN1_Client_VLAN_id&gt; name &lt;WLAN1_Client_VLAN_Name&gt; vlan &lt;WLAN2_Client_VLAN_id&gt; name &lt;WLAN2_Client_VLAN_Name&gt; vlan &lt;WLAN3_Client_VLAN_id&gt; name &lt;WLAN3_Client_VLAN_Name&gt;</pre>                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>DHCP Snooping /ARP Inspection</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enable DHCP snooping and ARP inspection on each WLAN client VLANs in the access switch (for static or dynamic VLAN).</li> <li>• Configure upstream Layer 2 trunk as trusted for ARP inspection and DHCP snooping.</li> </ul>                                 | <pre>! Enable DHCP Snooping &amp; ARP Inspection on all WLAN ! Client VLANs (Static or Dynamic) ip dhcp snooping ip dhcp snooping vlan name &lt;WLANx_Client_VLAN_id&gt; no ip dhcp snooping information option ip arp inspection vlan &lt;WLANx_Client_VLAN_id&gt; ip arp inspection validate source destination allow-zeros interface Port-Channel &lt;id&gt; description L2 Trunk to Upstream Router/Switch ip dhcp snooping trust ip arp inspection trust</pre> |
| <b>Switch Trunk Ports</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configure trunk ports to the WAN router(s). The trunk must allow WM_VLAN and the Client VLANs, and must be a trusted port for DHCP snooping or ARP inspection.</li> <li>• Ensure that the other ends of the trunk ports are properly configured (not shown).</li> </ul> | <pre>! Configure trunk port to other connected switches/router interface Port-channel1 description Connected to Upstream System switchport trunk allowed vlan add &lt;WM_VLAN_id&gt;, &lt;WLAN1_Client_VLAN_id&gt;,&lt;WLAN2_Client_VLAN_id&gt;, &lt;WLAN3_Client_VLAN_id&gt;, ip arp inspection trust ip dhcp snooping trust</pre>                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Default Gateway</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure that default gateway is configured.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | <pre>! Configure default-gateway &lt;ip default-gateway&gt;</pre>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Wireless Mobility Controller</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you want Catalyst 3650, 3850, and 4500 SUP 8-E switches to be deployed as MC then configure the switches as MC, and reload them to make the configuration effective.</li> </ul>                                                                            | <pre>wireless mobility controller write memory reload</pre>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

| Task on Converged Access Switch                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Sample Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>AP Licenses</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>MC must have sufficient AP licenses to support all APs in its sub-domain, and activate the licenses on the APs. The activation does not require a reboot.</li> <li>The GA does not require AP license.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <pre>! Activate AP license on branch converged access switch license right-to-use activate ap-count &lt;count&gt; slot &lt;ID&gt; acceptEULA</pre>                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <p><b>Security</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Convert relevant authentication commands on the access switches to their Class-Based Policy Language (CPL) equivalents.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <pre>authentication convert-to new-style</pre> <p>This command permanently converts the legacy configuration on the switch to identity-based networking services. On entering this command, a message is displayed for your permission to continue. Permit the conversion.</p>                                              |
| <p><b>Update AP Interface Template</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Add wireless management VLAN to the AP interface template LAP_INTERFACE_TEMPLATE.</li> <li>Apply the updated template to each switch port connected to an AP.</li> <li>Verify that the VLANs are applied using the following command:</li> </ul> <pre>show derived-config interface &lt;interface id&gt;</pre> <p>This step is not necessary if <b>autoconf enable</b> command is globally configured. In this case, the switch automatically detects the device types of the connected devices, and applies appropriate interface templates.</p> | <pre>template LAP_INTERFACE_TEMPLATE switchport access vlan &lt;Wireless_Mgmt_VLAN_id&gt; ! Associate the LAP_INTERFACE_TEMPLATE to switch ! ports connected to APs. This puts the interface ! in shutdown state; so issue a "no shut" command interface Gig 1/0/x source template LAP_INTERFACE_TEMPLATE no shutdown</pre> |

Table 36-5 describes the Layer 2 and Layer 3 prerequisites, and sample configuration for GA. In the sample configuration, the following nomenclature is used to represent the wireless management VLAN and Guest VLAN details for GA:

- WM\_VLAN - Name of the Wireless Management VLAN
- WM\_VLAN\_id - ID of the Wireless Management VLAN
- GUEST\_VLAN\_Name - VLAN name of Guest Anchor Controller
- GUEST\_VLAN\_id - VLAN ID of Guest Anchor Controller

Table 36-5 Layer 2 and Layer 3 Prerequisites for Guest Anchor Controller

| Task on Guest Anchor Controller                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Sample Configuration for Guest Access Controller                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Wireless Management VLAN</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Create wireless management VLAN with a network wide unique name.</li> </ul>                                                                                                            | <pre>! Mgmt VLAN on Access Switch vlan &lt;WM_VLAN_id&gt; name &lt;WM_VLAN&gt;</pre>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Create Wireless Guest VLAN</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Create wireless Guest VLANs in VLAN database. The VLAN name must be common across all GAs.</li> </ul>                                                                                | <pre>! Create the wireless guest VLANs on Access Switch vlan &lt;GUEST_VLAN_id&gt; name &lt;GUEST_VLAN_Name&gt;</pre>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>DHCP Snooping / ARP Inspection</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enable DHCP snooping and ARP inspection on the Guest VLAN.</li> <li>Configure Layer 2 trunk connected to the network as trusted for ARP inspection and DHCP snooping.</li> </ul> | <pre>! Enable DHCP Snooping &amp; ARP Inspection on Guest ! VLAN ip dhcp snooping ip dhcp snooping vlan name &lt;GUEST_VLAN_Name&gt; no ip dhcp snooping information option ip arp inspection vlan &lt;GUEST_VLAN_id&gt; ip arp inspection validate source destination allow-zeros interface Port-Channel &lt;id&gt; description L2 Trunk to network ip dhcp snooping trust ip arp inspection trust</pre> |
| <b>Default Gateway</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ensure that default gateway is configured.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                           | <pre>ip default-gateway &lt;ip address&gt;</pre>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Security</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Convert relevant authentication commands on the access switches to their Class-Based Policy Language (CPL) equivalents.</li> </ul>                                                                     | <pre>authentication convert-to new-style</pre> <p>This command permanently converts the legacy configuration on the switch to identity-based networking services. On entering this command, a message is displayed for your permission to continue. Permit the conversion.</p>                                                                                                                            |

**Related Topics**

- [Prerequisites for Converged Access Deployment](#)
- [Prerequisites for Server Configuration](#)

## Prerequisites for Server Configuration

- Cisco Prime Infrastructure
  - All network-wide catalyst switches and 5760 WLCs must be configured with SNMP.
  - The Converged Access switches must be added to the inventory of Cisco Prime Infrastructure. You need to provide SNMP and Telnet credentials to add the devices to the inventory.
  - Link Cisco Prime Infrastructure with Cisco ISE engine as external server to centrally monitor end-to-end client connectivity and policy enforcement details.
- Cisco ISE/ACS
  - All network devices including catalyst switches and Guest Anchor WLC must be configured in Cisco ISE/ACS to enable centralized policy engine function.
  - AAA configuration is not required for converged access on individual network devices as it is automatically generated by Converged Access Workflow.
- DHCP Server—Internal or external DHCP server must be preconfigured with appropriate pool settings for wireless clients.
- DNS Server—Must be preconfigured with appropriate name-lookup process to successfully connect to the network.

### Related Topics

- [Prerequisites for Converged Access Deployment](#)
- [Prerequisites for Layer 2 and Layer 3](#)

## Converged Access Template Based Deployment

Cisco Prime Infrastructure uses different templates for different deployment models. You need to select the appropriate template based on your network topology as explained in [Table 36-6](#):

**Table 36-6** *Network Topology and Configuration Template Mapping*

| Network Topology                       | Configuration Template              |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Single-switch small network            | IOS-XE Controller - Small Network   |
| Controller-less large wireless branch  | IOS-XE Controller - Large Network   |
| Controller-based large wireless branch | IOS-XE Controller - Large Network   |
| Centralized wireless campus            | IOS-XE Centralized Wireless Network |

To deploy a converged access template:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Converged Access**.
- Step 2** Click **Next** to choose the configuration.
- Step 3** From the **Select Deployment Model** drop-down list, choose any one of the following options:
- IOS-XE Controller - Small Network
  - IOS-XE Controller - Large Network
  - IOS-XE Centralized Wireless Network
- Step 4** Click **Next** to choose the devices to be deployed.
- Step 5** Choose all the devices and click **Next** to apply the selected network configuration.
- The selected device will be listed out in the left pane, and in the right pane you can configure the templates by entering the values for the WLANs, Guest WLAN, Security, and Wireless Management.
- Step 6** Check the **All Selected Devices** check box and enter the WLANs, Security and Application Services configuration values that are common to all the selected devices.
- Step 7** Click **Apply**.
- Step 8** Select the individual devices and enter the device specific configuration values such as Guest Controller, Mobility and Wireless Management IP.
- For more details, see *Guidelines for Entering Configuration Values* in Related Topics.
- Step 9** Click **Apply** and then **Next** to view the confirmation screen.
- The confirmation screen allows you to view the device configuration information before deployment.
- Step 10** Click **Deploy**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Prerequisites for Converged Access Deployment](#)
- [Guidelines for Entering Configuration Values](#)

## Guidelines for Entering Configuration Values

This section provides the field descriptions for converged access template and guidelines for entering the global and local configuration values for the following deployment models with specific examples.

- Controller-less single-switch deployment model
- Controller-less large wireless deployment model
- Controller-based large wireless deployment model
- Centralized wireless campus deployment model

### Related Topics

- [Prerequisites for Converged Access Deployment](#)
- [Converged Access Template Field Descriptions](#)
- [Entering Configuration Values for Controller-Less Large Wireless Deployment Model](#)
- [Entering Configuration Values for Controller-Based Large Wireless Deployment Model](#)
- [Entering Configuration Values for Centralized Wireless Campus Deployment Model](#)

## Converged Access Template Field Descriptions

This section contains the field descriptions for converged access template.

**Table 36-7** *WLAN Field Descriptions*

| Field            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SSID             | Name of the wireless LAN.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| ID               | Wireless LAN ID (1 - 16).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Pre-Shared Key   | Wi-Fi Protected Access Pre-Shared Key (WPA2-PSK) is a security mechanism used to authenticate and validate users on a wireless LAN (WLAN) or Wi-Fi connection. This is a mandatory field. The value must be alphanumeric and at least eight characters long. |
| Client VLAN Name | Name of the client VLAN. Can be alphanumeric.                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

**Table 36-8** *Guest Controller Field Descriptions*

| Field                | Description                                                                  |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Anchor Controller IP | Wireless management IP of Guest Anchor device.                               |
| Anchor Group Name    | Group name of Anchor device.                                                 |
| Foreign Controller   | Wireless management IP of MC to which the Guest Anchor device is associated. |

**Table 36-9 Security Field Descriptions**

| Field           | Description                                                   |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Server Protocol | Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) protocol. |
| Server IP       | IP address of the RADIUS server.                              |
| Server Key      | Password of Radius server.                                    |

**Table 36-10 Application Services Field Descriptions**

| Field Name                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Netflow Collectors (IP:Port) | IP—The IP address of the Prime Infrastructure server.<br>Port—The port on which the NetFlow monitor will receive the exported data. For Cisco Prime Infrastructure the default port is 9991.<br>Example: 172.20.114.251:9991 |
| WLAN-1 SSID Bandwidth(%)     | Specify the maximum bandwidth percentage allowed for first WLAN.                                                                                                                                                             |
| WLAN-2 SSID Bandwidth(%)     | Specify the maximum bandwidth percentage allowed for second WLAN.                                                                                                                                                            |
| WLAN-3 SSID Bandwidth(%)     | Specify the maximum bandwidth percentage allowed for third WLAN.                                                                                                                                                             |
| Guest SSID Bandwidth(%)      | Specify the maximum bandwidth percentage allowed for Guest WLAN.                                                                                                                                                             |

**Table 36-11 Wireless Mobility Field Descriptions**

| Field Name             | Description                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Role                   | Mobility Controller or Mobility Agent.                                                                                                        |
| Controller IP          | Wireless Management IP of Controller device.                                                                                                  |
| Switch Peer Group Name | Peer group name in which the Agent is added.                                                                                                  |
| Mobility Agent IP(s)   | Wireless management IP of Mobility Agent devices. If you are entering more than one IP addresses, use semicolon to separate the IP addresses. |
| Peer Controller IP(s)  | Wireless Management IP of peer controller device. If you are entering more than one IP addresses, use semicolon to separate the IP addresses. |
| RF Group Name          | The RG group name used in the deployment.                                                                                                     |

**Table 36-12** *Wireless Management Field Descriptions*

| Field Name  | Description                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------|
| VLAN ID     | VLAN ID of the selected device.                |
| IP          | Wireless management IP of the selected device. |
| Subnet mask | Subnet mask allocated to the selected device.  |

**Related Topics**

- [Prerequisites for Converged Access Deployment](#)
- [Converged Access Template Based Deployment](#)
- [Entering Configuration Values for Controller-Less Large Wireless Deployment Model](#)
- [Entering Configuration Values for Controller-Based Large Wireless Deployment Model](#)
- [Entering Configuration Values for Centralized Wireless Campus Deployment Model](#)

## Entering Configuration Values for Controller-less Single-Switch Deployment Model

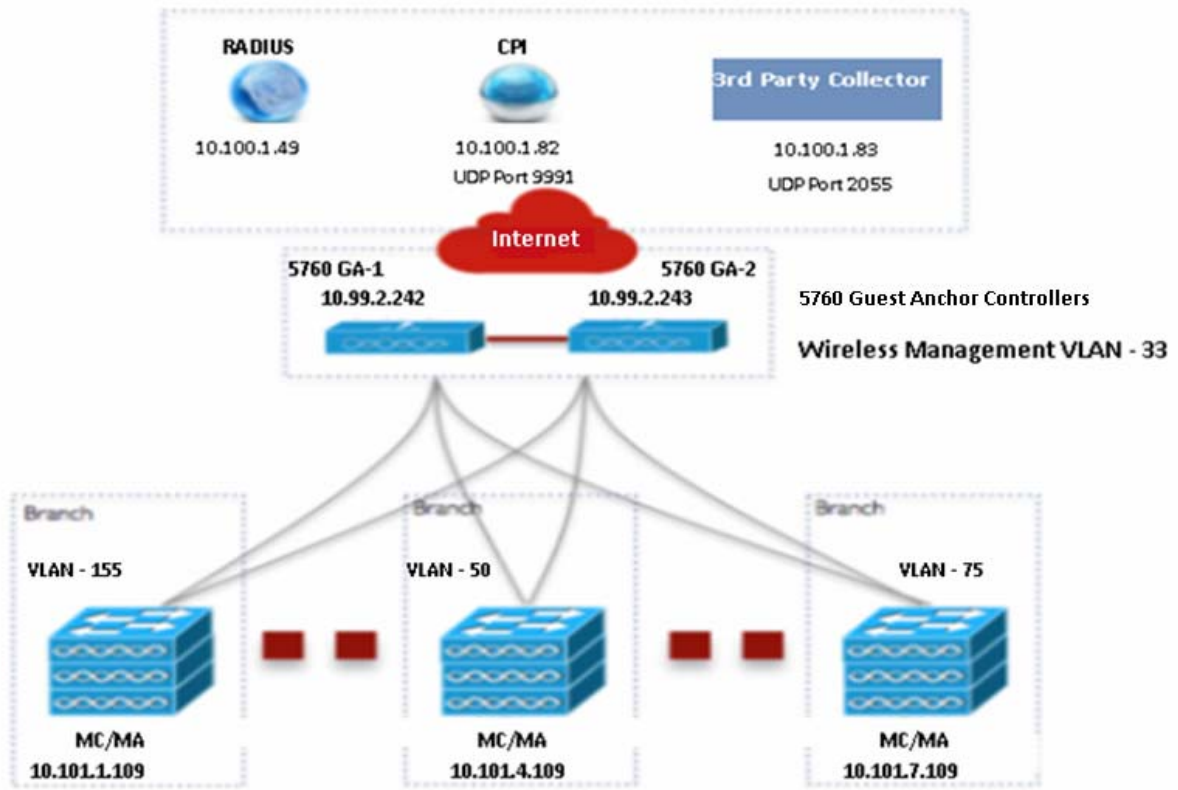
A small-sized remote branch office or retail store may consist of a single converged access switch (standalone or stack) to provide network connectivity to the wired and wireless users.

For such network designs, the switch integrates both MC and MA functions. These networks may need guest wireless services, as well as common security and network access policy enforcement across all deployed sites.

The network administrator can use Cisco Prime Infrastructure IOS-XE Controller Small Network template to deploy converged access. [Figure 36-2](#) illustrates the reference network for single-switch small network that shows three branch offices. Each site can be independently deployed using the workflow. Alternatively, one deployment workflow can deploy multiple sites.



Figure 36-2 Controller-less Single-switch Small Network Model



|            | SSID           | Security         | Client VLAN Name | Guest VLAN Name |
|------------|----------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| WLAN 1     | ABCCorp_802.1X | WPA2-Enterprise  | 8021x-WiFi_VLAN  |                 |
| WLAN 2     | ABCCorp_PSK    | WPA2-Personal    | PSK-WiFi_VLAN    |                 |
| WLAN 3     | ABCCorp-OPEN   | OPEN             | OPEN_WiFi-VLAN   |                 |
| Guest WLAN | ABCCorp_Guest  | WebAuth-External |                  | Guest_WiFi-VLAN |

405448

In [Figure 36-2](#), the wireless client VLAN name is same for all the devices associated to a particular SSID. You can configure the globally significant values (common to all sites) at the same time. The globally significant values include WLANs, Radius parameters, and Application Viability Control (AVC) configuration.

To enter globally significant values for all the devices, see *Converged Access Template Based Deployment* in Related Topics.

[Figure 36-3](#) shows the common configuration values for all the devices in the single-switch small network topology shown in [Figure 36-2](#).

**Figure 36-3** Sample Configuration values for WLAN, Guest WLAN, Security, AVC, and RF

|                  |                     |                                 |                                       |
|------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>WLAN 1</b>    |                     | <b>Guest WLAN</b>               |                                       |
| SSID Name        | ABCCorp_802.1X ?    | SSID Name                       | ABCCorp_Guest ?                       |
| ID               | 1 ?                 | ID                              | 15 ?                                  |
| Security         | WPA2-Enterprise ▾ ? | Security                        | WebAuth-External ▾ ?                  |
| Pre-Shared Key   | ?                   | Client VLAN Name                | GUEST_WiFi_VLAN ?                     |
| Client VLAN Name | 8021X-WiFi_VLAN ?   | Apply WLAN on Anchor Controller | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ? |
| <b>WLAN 2</b>    |                     | <b>Security</b>                 |                                       |
| SSID Name        | ABCCorp_PSK ?       | Server Protocol                 | RADIUS ▾ ?                            |
| ID               | 2 ?                 | Server IP                       | 10.100.1.49 ?                         |
| Security         | WPA2-Personal ▾ ?   | Server Key                      | CISCO ?                               |
| Pre-Shared Key   | CISCO123 ?          | <b>Application Services</b>     |                                       |
| Client VLAN Name | PSK-WiFi_VLAN ?     | Application Visibility          | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ? |
| <b>WLAN 3</b>    |                     | Netflow Collectors (IP:Port)    | 10.100.1.82:9991; 10.100.1.83:2055 ?  |
| SSID Name        | ABCCorp-OPEN ?      | WLAN-1 SSID Bandwidth(%)        | 40 ?                                  |
| ID               | 3 ?                 | WLAN-2 SSID Bandwidth(%)        | 30 ?                                  |
| Security         | OPEN ▾ ?            | WLAN-3 SSID Bandwidth(%)        | 20 ?                                  |
| Pre-Shared Key   | ?                   | Guest SSID Bandwidth(%)         | 10 ?                                  |
| Client VLAN Name | OPEN_WiFi_VLAN ?    | <b>RF Group</b>                 |                                       |
|                  |                     | Name                            | CA-RF ?                               |

After applying the globally significant configuration values, you need to select the devices individually and apply the device specific configuration values such as Anchor Controller and Wireless Management IP addresses.

[Table 36-13](#) describes the sample Guest Controller configuration values for MA/MC 10.100.1.109 and GA based on [Figure 36-2](#).

**Table 36-13** *Sample Guest Controller Configuration Values for MA/MC (10.100.1.109) and GA*

| Data Field           | MA/MC                    | GA                                           |
|----------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Anchor Controller IP | 10.99.2.242; 10.99.2.243 | 10.99.2.242; 10.99.2.243                     |
| Anchor Group Name    | CA-Mobility-SubDomain-3  | CA-Mobility-SubDomain-3                      |
| Foreign Controllers  | 10.101.4.109             | 10.101.1. 109; 10.101.4.109;<br>10.101.7.109 |

[Table 36-14](#) describes the sample Wireless Management configuration values for MA/MC 10.100.1.109 and GA (10.99.2.242) based on [Figure 36-2](#).

**Table 36-14** *Sample Wireless Management Configuration Values for MA/MC (10.100.1.109) and GA*

| Data Field   | MA/MC           | GA              |
|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| VLAN ID      | 155             | 33              |
| IP           | 10.101.1.109    | 10.99.2.242     |
| Subnet Mask  | 255.255.255.240 | 255.255.255.240 |
| Country Code | US              | US              |

Apply the Guest Controller and Wireless Management configuration values for all the MA/MC and GA as described in [Table 36-13](#) and [Table 36-14](#).

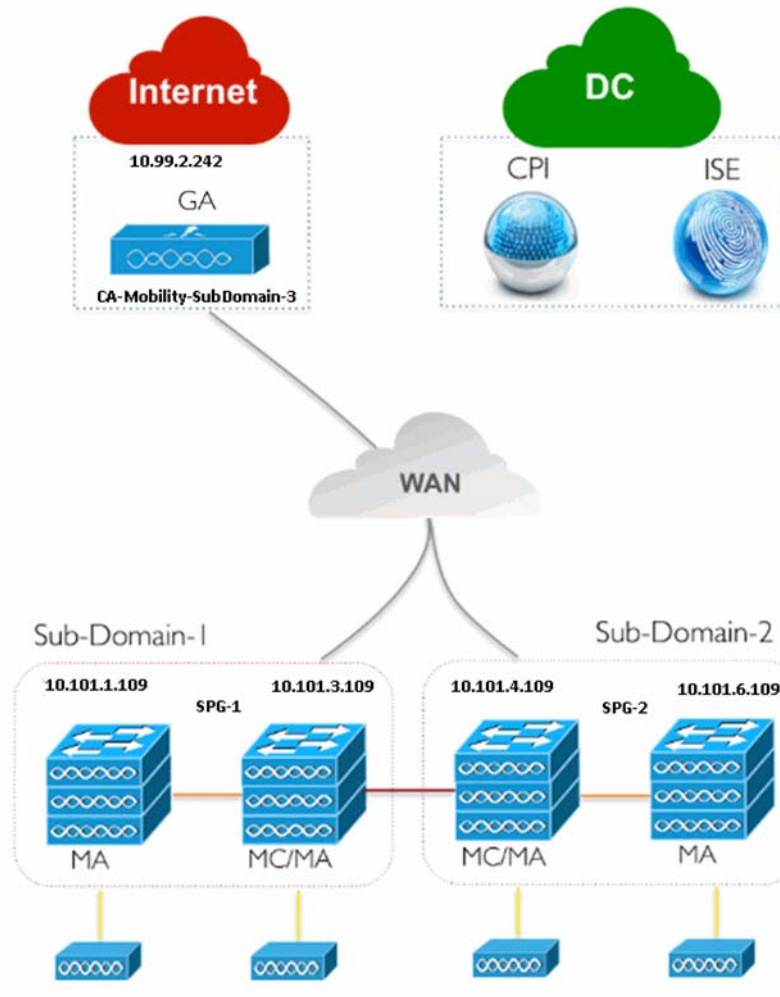
#### Related Topics

- [Prerequisites for Converged Access Deployment](#)
- [Converged Access Template Based Deployment](#)
- [Converged Access Template Field Descriptions](#)
- [Entering Configuration Values for Controller-Less Large Wireless Deployment Model](#)
- [Entering Configuration Values for Controller-Based Large Wireless Deployment Model](#)
- [Entering Configuration Values for Centralized Wireless Campus Deployment Model](#)

## Entering Configuration Values for Controller-Less Large Wireless Deployment Model

Figure 36-4 illustrates the Controller-less deployment model that leverages Catalyst switches for MA and MC roles without depending on an external WLC. This converged access deployment models can be implemented using Cisco Prime Infrastructure IOS-XE Controller Large Network template.

Figure 36-4 Controller-less Large Branch Network Model



405445

Enter the globally significant configuration values such as WLANs, Guest WLAN, Radius Parameters, and AVC for all the selected device at the same time as explained in single-switch small network deployment model. After applying the globally significant values, enter the Wireless Management IP for each device as explained in single-switch small network deployment model.

After applying Wireless Management IP, enter the Guest Controller values for MA, MC and GA. [Table 36-15](#) describes the Guest controller configuration values for MA, MC in SPG-1 and GA shown in [Figure 36-4](#).

**Table 36-15** Sample Guest Controller Configuration Values for MA, MC, and GA

| Data Field           | MA                      | MC                      | GA                      |
|----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Anchor Controller IP | 10.99.2.242             | 10.99.2.242             | 10.99.2.242             |
| Anchor Group Name    | CA-Mobility-SubDomain-3 | CA-Mobility-SubDomain-3 | CA-Mobility-SubDomain-3 |
| Foreign Controller   | 10.101.4.109            | 10.101.3.109            | 10.101.3.109            |

[Table 36-16](#) describes the mobility configuration values for MA, MC in SPG-1, and GA as shown in [Figure 36-4](#).

**Table 36-16** Sample Mobility Configuration Values for MA, MC, and GA

| Data Field             | MA           | MC           | GA         |
|------------------------|--------------|--------------|------------|
| Role                   | Agent        | Controller   | Controller |
| Controller IP          | 10.101.3.109 | 10.101.3.109 | —          |
| Switch Peer Group Name | SPG-1        | SPG-1        | —          |
| Mobility Agent IP(s)   | —            | 10.101.1.109 | —          |
| Peer Controller IP(s)  | —            | 10.101.4.109 | —          |
| RF Group Name          | CA-RF        | CA-RF        | CA-RF      |

Repeat the same procedure for MA and MC in SPG-2 as shown in [Figure 36-4](#).

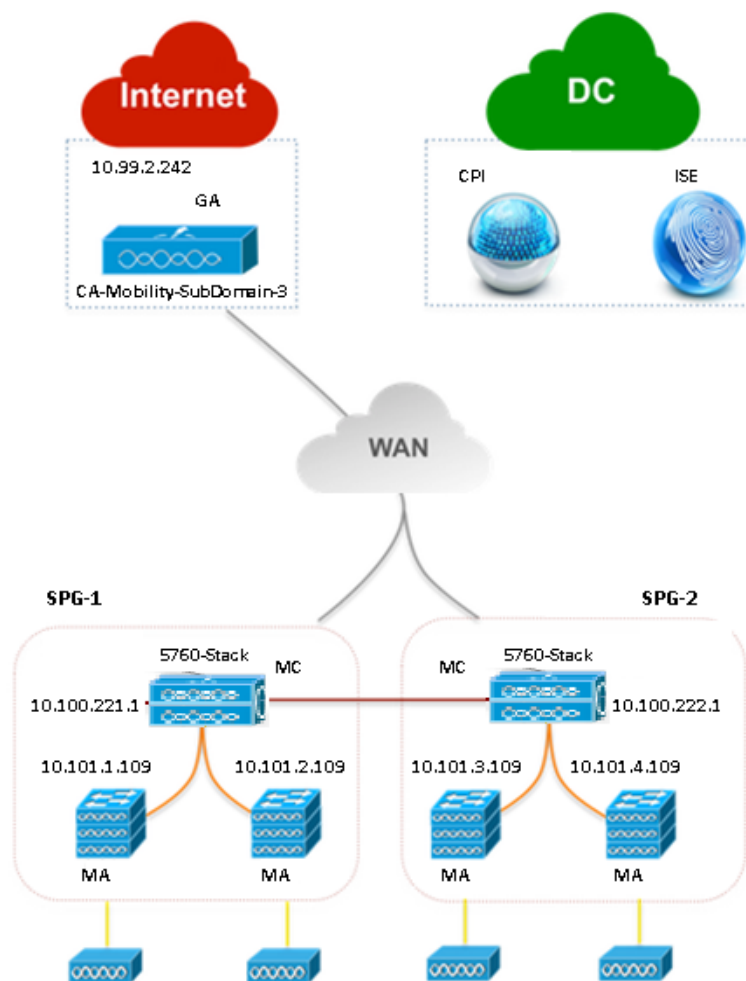
#### Related Topics

- [Prerequisites for Converged Access Deployment](#)
- [Converged Access Template Field Descriptions](#)
- [Entering Configuration Values for Controller-Less Large Wireless Deployment Model](#)
- [Entering Configuration Values for Controller-Based Large Wireless Deployment Model](#)
- [Entering Configuration Values for Centralized Wireless Campus Deployment Model](#)

## Entering Configuration Values for Controller-Based Large Wireless Deployment Model

Figure 36-5 illustrates the controller-based large deployment model that leverages the same IOS-XE Controller Large Network template for deploying converged access with an external 5760 WLC as the MC.

Figure 36-5 Controller-Based Large Campus Model



405444

Enter the globally significant configuration values such as WLANs, Guest WLAN, Radius Parameters, and AVC for all the selected devices at the same time as described in single-switch small network deployment model. After applying the globally significant values, enter the Wireless Management IP for each device as explained in single-switch small network deployment model.

After applying Wireless Management IP, enter the Guest Controller values for MA, MC, and GA. [Table 36-17](#) describes the Guest controller configuration values for MA, MC in SPG-1 and GA shown in [Figure 36-5](#).

**Table 36-17** Sample Guest Controller Configuration values for MA, MC, and GA

| Data Field           | MA                           | MC                           | GA                            |
|----------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Anchor Controller IP | 10.99.2.242                  | 10.99.2.242                  | 10.99.2.242                   |
| Anchor Group Name    | CA-Mobility-SubDomain-3      | CA-Mobility-SubDomain-3      | CA-Mobility-SubDomain-3       |
| Foreign Controller   | 10.99.2.242;<br>10.100.222.1 | 10.99.2.242;<br>10.100.222.1 | 10.100.221.1;<br>10.100.222.1 |

[Table 36-18](#) describes the mobility configuration values for MA, MC in SPG-1 and GA shown in [Figure 36-5](#).

**Table 36-18** Sample Mobility Configuration Values for MA, MC and GA

| Data Field             | MA           | MC                            | GA         |
|------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|------------|
| Role                   | Agent        | Controller                    | Controller |
| Controller IP          | 10.100.221.1 | 10.100.221.1                  | —          |
| Switch Peer Group Name | SPG-1        | SPG-1                         | —          |
| Mobility Agent IP(s)   | —            | 10.101.1.109;<br>10.101.2.109 | —          |
| Peer Controller IP(s)  | —            | 10.100.222.1                  | —          |
| RF Group Name          | CA-RF        | CA-RF                         | CA-RF      |

Repeat the same procedure for MA and MC in SPG-2 shown in [Figure 36-5](#).

#### Related Topics

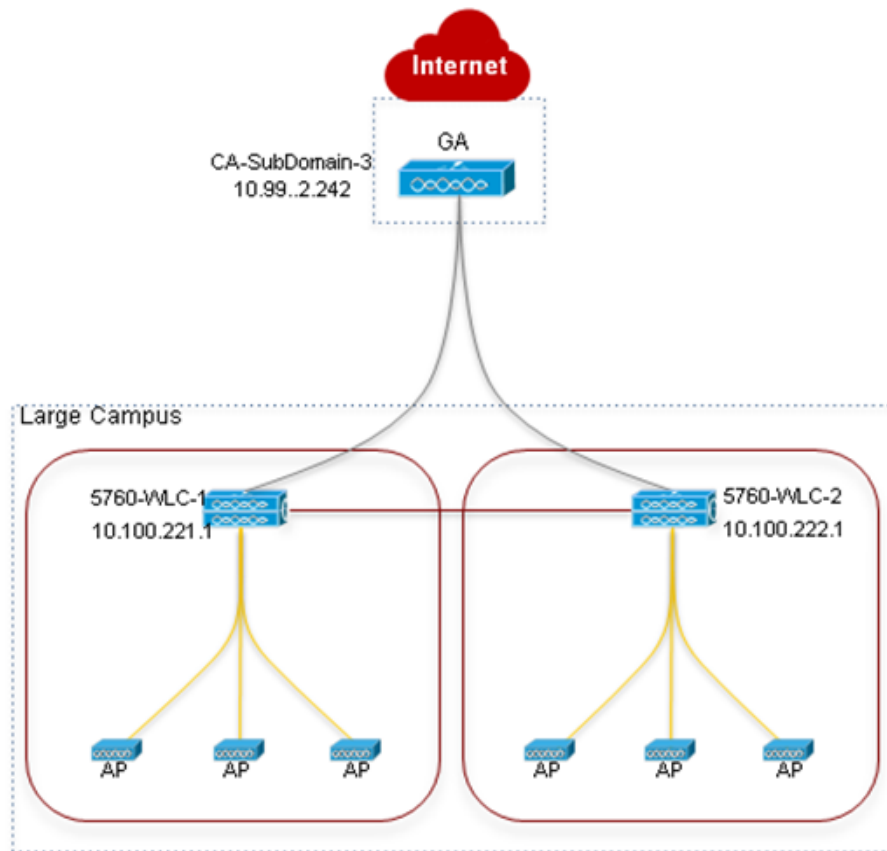
- [Prerequisites for Converged Access Deployment](#)
- [Converged Access Template Field Descriptions](#)
- [Entering Configuration Values for Controller-less Single-Switch Deployment Model](#)
- [Entering Configuration Values for Controller-Less Large Wireless Deployment Model](#)
- [Entering Configuration Values for Centralized Wireless Campus Deployment Model](#)

## Entering Configuration Values for Centralized Wireless Campus Deployment Model

Cisco Prime Infrastructure IOS-XE Centralized Wireless template supports traditional wireless deployment model using next-generation 5760-WLC. In this model, any generation Access layer switches are deployed in traditional Ethernet switch mode over which WLC and the APs build an overlay network using CAPWAP Tunneling mechanism.

Figure 36-6 illustrates 5760-WLC based Centralized Wireless deployment using IOS-XE Centralized template.

Figure 36-6 Centralized Campus Network Model



405443



You can configure the globally significant values such as WLANs, Radius Parameters, and AVC for all the devices at the same time as explained in small network deployment model.

After applying Wireless Management IP, enter the Guest Controller values for 5760 WLC and GA. [Table 36-19](#) describes the Guest controller configuration values for 5760 WLC in SPG-1 and GA for the topology shown in [Figure 36-6](#).

**Table 36-19** Sample Guest Controller Configuration Values for 5760 WLC and GA

| Data Field           | 5760 WLC                | GA                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| Anchor Controller IP | 10.99.2.242             | 10.99.2.242                |
| Anchor Group Name    | CA-Mobility-SubDomain-3 | CA-Mobility-SubDomain-3    |
| Foreign Controllers  | 10.100.222.1            | 10.100.221.1; 10.100.222.1 |

**Table 36-20** Sample Mobility Configuration Values for 5760 WLC and GA

| Data Field            | 5760 WLC     | GA    |
|-----------------------|--------------|-------|
| Peer Controller IP(s) | 10.100.222.1 | —     |
| RF Group Name         | CA-RF        | CA-RF |

Repeat the same procedure for 5760 WLC in SPG-2 shown in [Figure 36-6](#).

#### Related Topics

- [Prerequisites for Converged Access Deployment](#)
- [Converged Access Template Field Descriptions](#)
- [Entering Configuration Values for Controller-less Single-Switch Deployment Model](#)
- [Entering Configuration Values for Controller-Less Large Wireless Deployment Model](#)
- [Entering Configuration Values for Controller-Based Large Wireless Deployment Model](#)





## Configuring Application Visibility and Control

---

Use configuration templates in Cisco Prime Infrastructure to design the set of device configurations that you need to set up the devices in a branch or change the feature configuration for a device from the Device Work Center.

### Related Topics

- [Configuring the Device using WSMA](#)
- [Configuring Application Visibility](#)
- [Managing Data Sources](#)
- [Enabling Data Deduplication](#)
- [Configuring an Easy VPN Server](#)
- [Redirecting HTTP and HTTPS Traffic](#)
- [Configuring Interfaces](#)
- [Configuring Cellular WAN Interfaces](#)
- [Configuring Network Address Translation \(NAT\)](#)
- [Configuring DMVPN](#)
- [Configuring GETVPN](#)
- [Configuring Network Address Translation \(NAT\)](#)
- [Creating a Zone-Based Firewall](#)
- [Creating a Routing Protocol](#)

## Configuring the Device using WSMA

Prime Infrastructure mainly uses the CLI method (over Telnet or SSHv2) to configure the devices. You can use WSMA (over SSHv2) for configuring specific features on the ASR and ISR devices. Cisco Web Services Management Agent is a more efficient and more robust method to configure the devices. Prime Infrastructure supports Zone Based Firewall and Application Visibility configuration via WSMA on the ASR and ISR devices.

To configure Zone Based Firewall or Application Visibility via WSMA, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Add or edit the device in Prime Infrastructure to use SSHv2 (rather than Telnet) as the management transport protocol.
- When you add the device with automatic discovery, enter the SSH credentials.
  - When you add the devices manually, in Step 2, select SSH2 as the protocol.
- Step 2** If the device is also managed by Prime Infrastructure which is not configured to use SSH2, edit the device credentials:
- Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Select the device and click **Edit**.
  - Change the protocol to **SSH2**.
  - Click **Update**.
- Step 3** Activate a WSMA profile on the device by configuring a WSMA configuration profile as follows:

```
#configure terminal
wsma agent config profile PIwsmaConfigServiceSSH
#exit

#wsma profile listener PIwsmaConfigServiceSSH
no wsse authorization level 15
transport ssh subsys wsma-config
#exit
```

- Step 4** Configure a configuration archive, which will be used by WSMA for handling transactional configurations and rollbacks by using the following CLI commands on the device:

```
#configure terminal
archive
log config
hidekeys
path flash:roll
maximum 5
#end
```

---

#### Related Topics

- [Cisco IOS Configuration Fundamentals Command Reference Guide](#)
- [WSMA Configuration Guide](#)

## Configuring Application Visibility

The Application Visibility feature allows you to monitor traffic on specific interfaces and generate performance and bandwidth-statistics reports that supply information to the various dashlets and reports in Prime Infrastructure. Devices send these reports to Prime Infrastructure, and each report supplies information to a subset of the Prime Infrastructure dashlets and reports. Prime Infrastructure can configure Application Visibility either through CLI (over Telnet or SSH) or through WSMA. Application Visibility can be configured through WSMA in a more efficient and robust method and we recommend that you use the WSMA protocols for configuring Application Visibility. For more information on using WSMA with Prime Infrastructure.

The Application Visibility feature is supported on the following platforms:

- ASR 1000 series platform from Cisco IOS-XE Release 15.3(1)S1 or later

- ISR G2 platform from Cisco IOS Release 15.2(4)M2 or later
- ISR 4300 and 4400 series platform from Cisco IOS-XE Release 15.3(2)S or later
- CSR platform from Cisco IOS-XE Release 15.3(2)S or later

Application Visibility is configured differently on different platforms and IOS releases. Newer IOS releases provide new mechanisms with better performance for setting up the Application Visibility and Control (AVC). Thus when upgrading an ASR 1000, CSR or ISR 4400 platforms running IOS-XE release prior to 15.4(1)S to an IOS-XE release 15.4(1)S or later, or when upgrading an ISR-G2 platform running IOS release prior to 15.4(1)T to IOS release 15.4(1)T or later, we recommend that you re-configure the AVC on these devices.

To simplify configuration, the Application Visibility feature is split into four types of metric and NetFlow reports:

| Report                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Traffic Statistics        | Sends the statistics on the bandwidth consumed by each of the NBAR-recognized applications on a per-user and per-interface basis. This report supplies information to the various application bandwidth dashlets and reports in Cisco Prime Infrastructure as “Top N Applications”, “Application Bandwidth reports”, “Top N clients”, and so on. |
| HTTP URL Visibility       | Sends performance and bandwidth reports for HTTP-based traffic, and this report supplies information to various URL dashlets and reports in Cisco Prime Infrastructure as “Top N URL by hits” and “Top N URL by response time”.<br><br><b>Note</b> The HTTP URL Visibility tool is not supported on the ISR-G2 device.                           |
| Application Response Time | Sends performance-related information for TCP traffic, and this report supplies information to various response time dashlets and reports in Cisco Prime Infrastructure as “applications ART analysis”, “worst N clients by transaction time”, and so on.                                                                                        |
| Voice/Video Metrics       | Sends various RTP key-performance indicators for RTP-based voice/video traffic, and supplies information to dashlets and reports in Cisco Prime Infrastructure under the voice/video category as “worst N RTP streams by packet lost.”                                                                                                           |

Activating the Application Visibility feature can impact device performance. To minimize the potential impact, the template allows you to select the traffic interfaces to monitor and the reports to generate.

To configure application visibility in your network:

1. (Optional) Set up WSMA on the devices to assure that the devices is configured via the WSMA protocol, rather than CLI. WSMA provides a more robust configuration mechanism.
2. Make sure that your devices are running an up-to-date NBAR protocol packs.
3. Estimate the potential resources impact on the device (CPU and memory) before activating application visibility on the device.

Activate application visibility on the device, either by creating a template and pushing it across the network, or by enabling AVC on an interface from the Device Work Center.

**Related Topics**[Configuring the Device using WSMA](#)[NBAR Protocol Packs](#)[Activating or Deactivating a Troubleshooting Session](#)[Creating an Application Visibility Template](#)[Enabling Default Application Visibility on an Interface](#)

## Estimating CPU, Memory and NetFlow Resources on ASR Devices

The Readiness Assessment feature allows you to estimate CPU consumption, memory usage, and NetFlow export traffic when you deploy application visibility features on an ASR device. DRE helps you analyze the demands for these resources on ASR devices based on typical predefined traffic profiles and device interface speeds.

DRE is supported on all ASRs running Cisco IOS-XE Release 15.3(1)S1 or later with one or more of these modules installed:

- cevModuleASR1000ESP5
- cevModuleASR1000ESP10
- cevModuleASR1000ESP20
- cevModuleASR1001ESP
- cevModuleASR1002FESP

To estimate the resource utilization on a specific device, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Application Visibility and Control > Readiness Assessment**.
- Step 2** In the Interface column for the device that you want estimates on, click the down arrow icon. The list shows only those interfaces supporting Application Visibility capability.
- Step 3** Select **Internet Profile** or **Enterprise Profile**. The device resource estimation is based on a typical traffic profile. Select “Internet Profile” for typical service-provider traffic, or “Enterprise Profile” for a typical enterprise-traffic.
- Step 4** Select the interfaces for which you want to estimate the resource utilization. Speeds shown are those currently configured for each interface. If you want to base the estimate on a different speed, click **Speed (Mbps)** and enter a different value.
- Step 5** Click **Get Estimates**.
- The Estimated Resource Usage graph displays the current, additional, and total usage of the CPU and memory, along with the threshold limit for these resources. The estimated and maximum NetFlow export traffic are also given. For devices on which AVC is already enabled, only the current and additional usage is shown.

If resource usage is crossing threshold limits, optimize the problem device by:

- Decreasing current CPU utilization
- Increasing configured memory
- Reduce configured interface speed

- Redirecting traffic to another device
- 

## NBAR Protocol Packs

The ability of the device to produce application visibility reports is based on the NBAR technology; NBAR, or Network-Based Application Recognition, is a classification engine that recognizes and classifies a wide variety of protocols and applications, including web-based and other difficult-to-classify applications and protocols that use dynamic TCP/User Datagram Protocol (UDP) port assignments.

NBAR is updated frequently to support new applications and protocols, the software update for an NBAR is called a Protocol Pack.

Further information on NBAR protocol packs and information on how to upgrade NBAR protocol pack.

When you upgrade an NBAR protocol pack on the device, a corresponding Prime Infrastructure update should be performed to update Prime Infrastructure with the supported protocols/applications on the devices.

To achieve that there is a periodic Prime Infrastructure software update (UBF file) issues when new protocol packs are released. Once you upgrade the NBAR protocol pack on the device, you should use Prime Infrastructure software upgrade to make sure Prime is also updated with the latest protocols.

At every point of time the network may contain various platforms (ISR-G2/ASR) running different Cisco IOS software releases and different protocol pack releases. While we do not recommend that you have different protocol pack releases installed on different devices reporting application visibility reports simultaneously, Prime Infrastructure will be able to support this, by configuring only the supported subset of protocols/applications, defined as filtering conditions in your template, on each of the devices, when deploying an application visibility template across multiple devices running different versions of NBAR protocol packs.

### Related Topics

- [NBAR Protocol Packs Guide](#)

## Creating an Application Visibility Template

An application visibility monitoring policy is defined on a selected group of interfaces. When you define the template, ensure that you have defined an interface-role object which matches the group of interfaces on which you would like to monitor the traffic and generate NetFlow reports.

To create an Application Visibility template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Application Visibility > AVC Configuration**.
  - Step 2** In the Template Basic area, enter a unique name and a description in the appropriate fields.
  - Step 3** In the Validation Criteria area, choose a device type from the list and enter the OS version.
  - Step 4** In the Template Detail area, choose an Interface Role from the drop-down list. The interface role designates the group of interfaces on which you can monitor the traffic and produce Application-Visibility reports.

- Step 5** In the Traffic Statistics area, you can determine which traffic should be monitored to produce the traffic statistics reports, select the **Off** radio button if you do not want to collect the statistics on data packets.
- a. Select the IP address/subnets. You can generate the report only on IPv4 traffic. We recommend to configure the required minimal set of filter.
- Step 6** In the HTTP URL Visibility area, you can select the traffic that should be monitored to produce the report. Select the **Off** radio button if you do not want to collect URL statistics.
- a. Select the IP address/subnets. You can select a specific set of IPv4 addresses or subnets to be monitored.
  - b. Select the application from the drop-down list. You can select a specific set of applications that should be monitored (there could be up to 32 monitored applications). By default, all of the enterprise related http-based applications are include in the list.
- Step 7** In the Application Response Time area, you can determine the traffic that should be monitored to produce the application response time reports. Also, optionally set a sampling option for the reports. Select the **Off** radio button if you do not want to collect ART metrics.
- a. Select the IP address/subnets. You can select a specific set of IPv4 addresses or subnets to be monitored.
  - b. Choose the Application from the drop-down list. You can select a specific set of applications that should be monitored (there could be up to 32 monitored applications). By default, all of TCP traffic is monitored.
  - c. In the Advanced Options, choose the Sampling Rate from the drop-down list. In High scale environments, collecting performance indicators for every TCP conversation can lead to high resources consumption on the device. The sampling option provides the ability to further optimize the resource consumption by collecting the performance indicators for “1” out of every “n” TCP conversation. This advanced option can be used to activate sampling and select the sampling rate for the tool. It is not recommended to activate sampling as activating sampling leads to less accurate results. Sampling should be used when it is necessary to limit the resource consumption on the devices.




---

**Note** Sampling option is not applicable for ISR-G2 routers. This option will be ignored for the n ISR-G2.

---

- Step 8** In the Voice/Video metrics area, you can determine the traffic that should be monitored to produce the voice/video reports. Select the **Off** radio button if you do not want to collect the voice/video metrics.
- a. Choose the IP address/subnets. You can choose a specific set of IPv4 addresses or subnets to be monitored.




---

**Note** IP filtering is not supported on the ISR-G2 routers until all UDP traffic is monitored.

---

- b. Choose the Voice/Video Application from the drop-down list. You can choose a specific set of applications that should be monitored (there could be up to 32 monitored applications). By default, all RTP enterprise-related applications are monitored.

- Step 9** Click **Save as New Template**.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Creating an Interface Role](#)



## Enabling Default Application Visibility on an Interface

From the Device Work Center, you can view the reports that are generated on each of the interfaces and enable or disable a default Application Visibility configuration on selected interfaces.

When a device does not have an application visibility configuration deployed on it, or it has a default application visibility configuration deployed on it (if all metrics are collected with a set of default parameters), the Device Work Center allows you to enable or disable a default application visibility configuration on the device by selecting interfaces on the device and enabling or disabling the default configuration on the interfaces.

**Note**

When you deploy an application visibility template to the device, the application visibility template configuration will overwrite the default application visibility configuration that was enabled from the Device Work Center.

The default configuration collects all the possible visibility metrics on all applicable IPv4 traffic.

**Note**

The Application Visibility feature is supported on the following platforms:

- ASR platform from Cisco IOS-XE Release 15.3(1)S1 or later
- ISR G2 platform from Cisco IOS Release 15.2(4)M2 or later
- ISR G3 platform from Cisco IOS-XE Release 15.3(2)S later
- CSR platform from Cisco IOS-XE Release 15.3(2)S later

**Note**

Application Visibility is configured differently on the ASR platform running Cisco IOS-XE15.3(1)S1 in comparison to Cisco IOS-XE15.3(2)S or later releases. After an ASR platform Cisco IOS release is upgraded from Cisco IOS-XE15.3(1)S1 to Cisco IOS-XE Releases 15.3(2)S and later, we recommend that you reconfigure Application Visibility on those devices.

To change the default application visibility configuration profile configured on the device, first disable the Application Visibility policy on all interfaces and then re-enable it on the selected interfaces with the new profile.

To enable or disable the default application visibility configuration on the specific interface, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
- Step 2** After choosing the device from list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
- Step 3** Expand the **App Visibility & control** folder and choose **App Visibility**.
- Step 4** Do one of the following:
  - To activate an out-of-the-box AVC profile on an interface, select one or more interfaces then click **Enable App Visibility** and select the required profile. If at least one of the non-selected interface is attached to a different profile, a warning message will be displayed such that all non-selected interfaces that are attached to a different profile will be detached from that profile.
  - Use the interfaces list to view the current App Visibility configuration on the device. The column **App Visibility Policy** displays the current profile/policy attached to the interface.




---

**Note** The application visibility feature displays the user defined AVC policy per interface on the application visibility interfaces.

---

There are several options that can be displayed:

- If the application visibility control is configured on the interface using the Application Visibility Template, the template-name will be displayed.
- If the application visibility control is configured on interface using the “one-click” option, the name of the AVC Profile that was configured will be displayed.
- If the application visibility control is configured manually out-of-band by the user via CLI, the name of the policy-map or performance monitor context that was configured will be displayed.




---

**Note** A visual indication column (App Visibility Status) provides indication on whether AVC is currently activated on the interface. The column will also indicate cases when the interface is INCAPABLE of running AVC and cases when AVC is mis-configured on the interface (e.g. AVC configured to send netflows to servers other than prime infrastructure).

---

- To Disable any of the Activated AVC profiles on an selected interface, click **Disable App Visibility**, check **Deactivate App Visibility Troubleshooting** if you also wish to deactivate an AVC troubleshooting policy if such is active on the interface.




---

**Note** When Enabling/Disabling AVC a pop up message will appear before the actual provisioning takes place. Selecting the **CLI preview** tab on that popup message will generate the list of CLIs to be pushed to the device.

---

## Application Visibility Troubleshooting Sessions

You can collect application visibility data on every flow that goes through the monitored interface. However, because this can have a significant impact on the device performance, application visibility data is collected in an aggregated manner. To further troubleshoot specific flows, you can activate the Application Visibility troubleshooting sessions on the device. The sessions are activated on specific interfaces and on specific traffic. They allow you to collect the non aggregated information on a flow-based level that supplies a raw-NetFlow report in Prime Infrastructure. This information can be used later to analyze specific flows.

The Application Visibility Troubleshooting feature allows you to:

- Create and activate a troubleshooting session on a specific interface
- Deactivate and delete a troubleshooting session on a specific interface



### Caution

---

To avoid overloading the server, we recommend that you configure no more than ten active troubleshooting sessions. Application troubleshooting is not supported on the ISR-G2 platforms.

---

**Note**

Troubleshooting sessions are configured differently on the ASR platform running Cisco IOS-XE Release 15.3(1)S1 in comparison to Cisco IOS-XE Release 15.3(2)S or later releases. After, an ASR platform Cisco IOS Release is upgraded from Cisco IOS-XE Release 15.3(1)S1 to Cisco IOS-XE Release 15.3(2)S or later, we recommend that you deactivate and reactivate active troubleshooting sessions on those devices.

To troubleshoot Application Visibility, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Application Visibility & Control > Application Troubleshooting**.
  - Step 2** In the AVC Troubleshooting Session page, click **Add** and enter a session name.
  - Step 3** In the Source/Destination IPs field, click **Edit**, and choose the source and destination IP addresses from the drop-down list. You can select the IP traffic and collect Application Visibility troubleshooting information for that specific IP traffic. The options are: on all IPv6 traffic or on all IPv4 traffic or on specific IPv4 addresses/subnets. Also, you can select a list of IP constraint pairs. Each such pair designates a bi-directional symmetric condition on the source and destination IPs of the traffic. For example, the pair: Any IPv4 <=> IPv4 subnet 192.168.0.0/16 matches all of the flows from 192.168.0.0/16 to any other IP and vice-versa (all of the flows from any IP address to 192.168.0.0/16). You can add multiple pair conditions.
  - Step 4** To add more IP constraints in the format of IP source/destination pairs, click the + icon in the Select Source Destination dialog box.

**Note**

The IP addresses on both sides of the pairs should be of the same IP version.

- Step 5** Click **OK**.
  - Step 6** Choose the device from the Device Table list.
  - Step 7** Choose the interface from the Interface Table list.
  - Step 8** Choose the application from the object selector dialog box. When you choose the applications, you can have a combination of Categories, Sub-categories, Encrypted Applications, and Tunneled Applications from the available list. A maximum of 32 applications or categories or attributes can be selected
  - Step 9** Click **Save** to automatically activate the session.
  - Step 10** After the troubleshooting session is activated, click **Launch Report** to generate the Raw NetFlow report.
- 

## Activating or Deactivating a Troubleshooting Session

You can activate an inactive troubleshooting session or deactivate an existing troubleshooting session.

To activate or deactivate a troubleshooting session, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Application Visibility & Control > Application Troubleshooting**.
  - Step 2** Choose a troubleshooting session from the list and click **Activate** or **Deactivate**.
  - Step 3** Click **Save**.
-

## Editing or Deleting a Troubleshooting Session

You can edit or delete an inactive troubleshooting session. (To edit or delete an active session, you must deactivate it first.)

To edit or delete a troubleshooting session, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Services > Application Visibility & Control > Application Troubleshooting**.

**Step 2** Do either of the following:

- a. Choose a session from the list and click **Edit**.



**Caution**

---

To avoid overloading the server, we recommend that you configure no more than ten active troubleshooting sessions.

---

- b. Edit and save the troubleshooting session, then click **Activate**.
  - c. To delete a troubleshooting session, choose a session from the list and click **Delete**.
- 

## Managing Data Sources

Prime Infrastructure depends on a variety of sources for accurate gathering and reporting of device, performance and assurance data. These sources include specialized monitoring devices such as NAMs, and protocols running on normal devices, such as Cisco Medianet, NetFlow, Flexible NetFlow, Network Based Application Recognition (NBAR), Performance Monitoring (PerfMon), and Performance Agent.

You will want to manage these sources to ensure that only the correct data is gathered from active sources. The Data Sources page allows you to review your current data sources, and delete those that are no longer active.

For details on the data sources used in dashlets, see “Advanced Monitoring” in Related Topics. For details on setting up individual data sources, see the data-source configuration sections of “Administrator Setup Tasks”, also listed in Related Topics.

### Related Topics

- [Viewing Current Data Sources](#)
- [Deleting Data Sources](#)
- [Advanced Monitoring](#)
- [Administrator Setup Tasks](#)
- [Configuring Data Sources for Prime Infrastructure With Assurance](#)
- [Enabling Medianet NetFlow](#)
- [Enabling NetFlow and Flexible NetFlow](#)
- [Deploying Network Analysis Modules \(NAMs\)](#)
- [Enabling Performance Agent](#)

## Viewing Current Data Sources

Use the Data Sources page to review Prime Infrastructure's current data sources.

- 
- Step 1** Select **Services > Application Visibility & Control > Data Sources**. Prime Infrastructure displays a summary page that lists each data source's:
- **Device Name**—The host name of the data source
  - **Data Source**—The IP address of the data source.
  - **Type**—The type of data the source is sending to Prime Infrastructure (example, “Netflow”).
  - **Exporting Device**—The IP address of the device exporting the data to Prime Infrastructure.
  - **Last 5 min Flow Read Rate**—The flow rate for the data Prime Infrastructure has received from this source during the last five minutes.
  - **Last Active Time**—The latest date and time that Prime Infrastructure received data from this source.
- Step 2** For additional details on the Data Source's configuration template or for a Device 360 view of the Exporting Device, click the “i” icon shown next to the Data Source or Exporting Device listing.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Managing Data Sources](#)
- [Deleting Data Sources](#)

## Deleting Data Sources

Use the Data Sources page to delete inactive Prime Infrastructure data sources.

Note that you cannot delete a NetFlow data source until seven full days have elapsed without receipt of any data from that source. This delay helps protect the integrity of NetFlow data (which Prime Infrastructure identifies and aggregates according to source) by giving network operators a full week to ensure that the data source has been retired. If the source becomes active again at any time during that seven-day period, its data will still be identified and aggregated properly with other data from the same source. If the source is deleted after seven days, and then becomes active again, all of its data will be identified and aggregated as coming from a new source.

- 
- Step 1** Select **Services > Application Visibility & Control > Data Sources**.
- Step 2** Select the checkbox next to the inactive data source you want to delete.
- Step 3** Click **Delete**.
- Step 4** Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Managing Data Sources](#)
- [Viewing Current Data Sources](#)

## Enabling Data Deduplication

Data deduplication allows you to identify authoritative sources for each of the following classes of application data:

- Application Response Time for TCP applications
- Voice/Video for RTP applications

Prime Infrastructure stores all data it receives about network elements and protocols, including any duplicate data that it may receive from multiple sources. When you specify authoritative data sources, only the data from the specified source is displayed when you view a particular site.

The Data Deduplication page allows you to specify a data source at a specific site. For example, if you have a Network Analysis Module (NAM) at a branch office as well as NetFlow data that is sent from the same branch, you can choose to have Prime Infrastructure display only the NAM or the NetFlow data for that site.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Application Visibility & Control > Data Deduplication**. The Data Deduplication page appears
- Step 2** Select the **Enable Data Deduplication** check box to remove the duplicated information from Prime Infrastructure, then click **Apply**.
- 

## Creating a VPN Component Template

This section describes how to create various VPN component template.

### Creating an IKE Policies Template

To create an IKE policies template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Security > VPN Components > IKE Policies**.
- Step 2** In the Template Basic area, enter a name, description, and tag for your template in the appropriate text boxes.
- Step 3** In the Validation Criteria area, choose a Device Type from the drop-down list and enter the OS version. For more information about the required field descriptions, see the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide](#).
- Step 4** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, apply it to your devices using the procedures in [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#).
- 

### Creating an IKE Settings Template

To create an IKE settings template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Security > VPN Components > IKE Settings**.
- Step 2** In the Template Basic area, enter a name, description, and tag for your template in the appropriate text boxes.
- Step 3** In the Validation Criteria area, choose a device type from the drop-down list and enter the OS version. For more information about the required field descriptions, see the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide](#).
- Step 4** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, apply it to your devices using the procedures in [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#).
- 

## Creating an IPsec Profile Template

To create an IPsec profile template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Security > VPN Components > IPSec Profile**.
- Step 2** In the Template Basic area, enter a name, description, and tag for your template in the appropriate text boxes.
- Step 3** In the Validation Criteria area, choose a device type from the drop-down list and enter the OS version.
- Step 4** In the Template Detail area, click **Add Row** and enter the required information. A transform set represents a certain combination of security protocols and algorithms. During the IPsec negotiation, the peers agree to use a particular transform set for protecting a particular data flow. A transform set describes a particular security protocol with its corresponding algorithms. For more information about the required field descriptions, see the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide](#).
- Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, apply it to your devices using the procedures in [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#).
- 

## Creating a Preshared Keys Template

To create a preshared keys template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Security > VPN Components > Preshared Keys**.
- Step 2** In the Template Basic area, enter a name, description, and tag for your template in the appropriate text boxes.
- Step 3** In the Validation Criteria area, choose a Device Type from the drop-down list and enter the OS Version.
- Step 4** In the Template Detail area, click **Add Row** and enter the required information.
- Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, apply it to your devices using the procedures in [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#).
-

## Creating RSA Keys Template

To create RSA keys template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Security > VPN Components > RSA Keys**.
  - Step 2** In the Template Basic area, enter a name, description, and tag for your template in the appropriate text boxes.
  - Step 3** In the Validation Criteria area, choose a device type from the drop-down list and enter the OS version.
  - Step 4** In the Template Detail area, click **Add** and enter the required information.
  - Step 5** Select the **Exportable** box to generate RSA as an exportable key, then click **OK**.
  - Step 6** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, apply it to your devices using the procedures in [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#).
- 

## Creating a Transform Sets Template

To create a transform sets template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Security > VPN Components > Transform Sets**.
  - Step 2** In the Template Basic area, enter a name, description, and tag for your template in the appropriate text boxes.
  - Step 3** In the Validation Criteria area, choose a device type from the drop-down list and enter the OS version.
  - Step 4** In the Template Detail area, click **Add Row** and enter the required information.



---

**Note** The ESP encryption algorithm is used to encrypt the payload, and the integrity algorithm is used to check the integrity of the payload.

---

- Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, apply it to your devices using the procedures in [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#).
- 

## Configuring an Easy VPN Server

Cable modems, xDSL routers, and other forms of broadband access provide high-performance connections to the Internet, but many applications also require the security of VPN connections that perform a high level of authentication and that encrypt the data between two particular endpoints. However, establishing a VPN connection between two routers can be complicated and typically requires tedious coordination between network administrators to configure the VPN parameters of the two routers.



The Cisco Easy VPN Remote feature eliminates much of this tedious work by implementing Cisco Unity Client Protocol, which allows most VPN parameters to be defined at a Cisco IOS Easy VPN server. This server can be a dedicated VPN device; for example, any of the following:

- Cisco VPN 3000 concentrator
- Cisco PIX Firewall
- Cisco IOS router that supports the Cisco Unity Client Protocol

After the Cisco Easy VPN server is configured, a VPN connection is created with minimal configuration on an Easy VPN remote, such as a Cisco 800 series or 2800 series router. When the Easy VPN remote initiates the VPN tunnel connection, the Cisco Easy VPN server pushes the IPsec policies to the Easy VPN remote and creates the corresponding VPN tunnel connection.

## Creating an Easy VPN Server Proxy Setting Template

The Easy VPN Server Proxy feature allows you to specify the settings for Easy VPN clients. Using this feature, you do not have to manually modify the proxy settings of the web browser when you connect to the corporate network using the Cisco IOS VPN client or manually revert the proxy settings when you disconnect from the network.

To create an Easy VPN Server Proxy template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Security > Easy VPN Server Proxy Setting**.
  - Step 2** Enter the basic template information.
  - Step 3** From the Device Type drop-down list, choose **Routers**.
  - Step 4** In the Template detail area enter a name, and choose the settings that you want to associate with the group.
  - Step 5** Choose the No Proxy Server option or Automatically Detect Proxy Settings option if you want the clients in this group to automatically detect a proxy server when they use the VPN tunnel.
  - Step 6** Choose the Manual Configuration option to manually configure a proxy server for clients in this group. If you choose this option, you should manually configure a proxy server.
  - Step 7** Select the **Bypass proxy server for local addresses** check box to prevent the clients from using the proxy server for local (LAN) addresses.
  - Step 8** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, apply it to your devices using the procedures in [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#).
- 

## Creating an Easy VPN Remote Template

The Cisco Easy VPN Remote feature eliminates much of this tedious work by implementing Cisco Unity Client Protocol, which allows most VPN parameters to be defined at a Cisco IOS Easy VPN server.

### Before You Begin

Create an ACL template and publish the ACL template.

To create an Easy VPN Remote template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Security > Easy VPN Remote**.
- Step 2** Enter the basic template information.
- Step 3** From the Device Type drop-down list, choose **Routers**.
- Step 4** In the Easy VPN Remote Interface Configuration area, enter the required information. For more information about the required field descriptions, see the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide](#).
- Step 5** In the Easy VPN Remote connection characteristics area, enter the required information. For more information about the required field descriptions, see the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide](#).




---

**Note** If you enable identical addressing, you must first configure Easy VPN Remote in network extension mode.

---

- Step 6** In the Remote Authentication Mechanisms area, choose the authentication method.
- Step 7** In the Remote Firewall Settings area, set the firewall settings for the Easy VPN Remote connection.
- Step 8** Click **Save As New Template**.
- Step 9** Navigate to the My Templates folder and choose the template that you just saved.
- Step 10** Click the **Publish** icon in the top-right corner, then click **OK**.
- Step 11** Create a composite template ([Creating Composite Templates](#)), and add the ACL and Easy VPN Remote templates to the composite template.
- Step 12** Use the arrows buttons to arrange the templates in the order in which they should be deployed to the devices. For example, to create an ACL and associate it with an interface, put the ACL template first, followed by the EasyVPN Remote template.
- Step 13** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, apply it to your devices using the procedures in [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#).
- 

## Creating an Easy VPN Server Template

The Easy VPN Server feature introduces server support for the Cisco VPN software client Release 3.x and later and Cisco VPN hardware clients (such as the Cisco 800, Cisco 900, Cisco 1700, VPN 3002, and PIX 501 devices). Using IP Security (IPsec), Easy VPN Server allows a remote end user to communicate with any Cisco IOS Virtual Private Network (VPN) gateway. Also, centrally managed IPsec policies are pushed to the client device by the server and helps the end user to minimize the configuration.

### Before You Begin

Do the following:

- Create AAA method list for the group and the user by using the CLI template
- Create an IPsec Profile template
- If you will use Crypto Map, create a Transform Set template
- (Optional) Create a CLI template for RADIUS server group creation or configure the RADIUS server while creating the AAA method list
- (Optional) Create an ACL template for the split tunnel ACL in the ISAKMP Group configuration

- Create a Browser Proxy template for ISAKMP group configuration

To create an Easy VPN Remote template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Security > Easy VPN Server**.
- Step 2** Enter the basic template information.
- Step 3** From the Device Type drop-down list, choose **Routers**.
- Step 4** In the Interface Configuration area, choose the configuration methods and complete the fields of the interface that is configured on the device.
- Step 5** In VPN Components Assembly area, enter the Transform Set profile name that you created in the Transform Set template ([Configuring Transform Sets](#)) and complete the fields in this area.
- Step 6** In the Group Authorization area, enter the Method List profile name that you created in the CLI template and complete the fields in this area.
- Step 7** In the User Authorization area, enter the same Method List profile name that you created in the CLI template, and complete the fields in this area.
- Step 8** In the ISAKMP Group configuration area, click **Add Row** to add the ISAKMP Group configuration.
- Step 9** In the ISAKMP Group configuration dialog box, enter the ACL profile name that you created in the ACL template and the Browser Proxy profile name that you created in the Browser Proxy template, and complete the fields in this area.
- Step 10** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, apply it to your devices using the procedures in [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#).
- Step 11** Create a composite template ([Creating Composite Templates](#)) and add the AAA Method List and Radius server, IPsec Profile ([Creating an IPsec Profile Template](#)), ACL Browser Proxy ([Creating an Easy VPN Server Proxy Setting Template](#)), and Easy VPN\_ Remote templates in the composite template.
- Step 12** Using the arrow icons to arrange the templates in a order in which they should be deployed to the devices. For example, to create an ACL and associate it with an interface, arrange the ACL template first, followed by the EasyVPN\_Remote template.
- Step 13** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, apply it to your devices using the procedures in [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#).
- 

## Creating a GSM Profile Template

To create a GSM Profile template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Click **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Interfaces > Cellular > GSM Profile**.
- Step 2** Enter the basic template information.
- Step 3** From the Device Type drop-down list, choose **Routers**.
- Step 4** In the Template Detail area, enter an Access Point Name and choose a profile number from the drop-down list.
- Step 5** Choose the type of authentication that your service provider uses. (CHAP authentication is more secure than PAP authentication.)
- Step 6** Enter the username given to you by your ISP or your network administrator, and enter a password.

- Step 7** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, apply it to your devices using the procedures in [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#).
- Step 8** Click **OK**.
- 

## Creating a Cellular Profile Template

To create a Cellular Profile template, follow these steps:



**Note** To deploy the Cellular Profile template on any GSM HSPA, HSPA+R7, and LTE-Verizon modem, you should have the GSM profile ([Creating a GSM Profile Template](#)) created on the router.

---

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Interfaces > Cellular > Cellular Profile**.
- Step 2** Enter the basic template information.
- Step 3** From the Device Type drop-down list, choose **Routers**.
- Step 4** In the Template Detail area, define the interface as Primary WAN Interface or Backup WAN Interface and complete the fields.
- Step 5** In the Dialer Configuration area, choose **Yes** to enable the persistent data connection and complete the fields.
- Step 6** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, apply it to your devices using the procedures in [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#).
- Step 7** Click **OK**.
- 

## Redirecting HTTP and HTTPS Traffic

ScanSafe Software as a Service (SaaS) Web Security allows you to scan the content of HTTP and HTTPS traffic. When ScanSafe Web Security is integrated with a router, selected HTTP and HTTPS traffic is redirected to the ScanSafe cloud for content scanning and malware detection.

When Cisco Integrated Services Router (ISR) Web Security with Cisco ScanSafe is enabled and the ISR is configured to redirect web traffic to ScanSafe, the Integrated Services Router (ISR) transparently redirects HTTP and HTTPS traffic to the ScanSafe proxy servers based on the IP address and port. You can configure the ISR to relay web traffic directly to the originally requested web server without being scanned by ScanSafe.

### Whitelisting Traffic

You can configure the ISR so that some approved web traffic is not redirected to ScanSafe for scanning. When you bypass ScanSafe scanning, the ISR retrieves the content directly from the originally requested web server without contacting ScanSafe. When ISR receives the response from the web server, it sends the data to the client. This is called *whitelisting* traffic.

See the [Cisco ISR Web Security with Cisco ScanSafe Solution Guide](#) for more information about ScanSafe.

### Creating a ScanSafe Template

To create a ScanSafe template, you must specify:

- The ScanSafe server and interface information
- Whitelist information

To create a ScanSafe template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Security > ScanSafe**.
  - Step 2** In the Template Basic area, enter a name and a description in the appropriate fields.
  - Step 3** In the Validation Criteria area, choose a device type from the list and enter the OS version.
  - Step 4** In the Template Detail area, enter the required information. For more information about the required field descriptions, see the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide](#).
  - Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, apply it to your devices using the procedures in [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#).
- 

## Configuring Interfaces

The Interfaces feature helps in setting up physical and logical interfaces. Physical interfaces on a device depend on the device type and its interface processors or port adapters. IPv4 addressing is supported for all interfaces including service modules such as WAN, LAN, and logical interfaces. The following interfaces are supported in this release:

### WAN Interfaces

- [Configuring a Serial Interface](#)
- [Configuring POS Interface](#)
- [Configuring a Service Module](#)
- [Configuring Controllers](#)

### LAN Interfaces

- [Creating a Gigabit Ethernet or Fast Ethernet Interface](#)

### Logical Interfaces

- [Creating a Loopback Interface](#)
- [Creating a VLAN Interface](#)
- [Creating a Tunnel Interface](#)
- [Creating a Virtual Template Interface](#)

## Configuring a Serial Interface

To edit or delete the Serial interface, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.

- Step 2** After choosing the device from list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
- Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Interface folder**, then click **Interfaces**.
- Step 4** In the Interface page, select the serial interface in the Interface Summary area and click **Edit**.
- Step 5** In the Create or Edit Serial Interface page, enter the basic configuration information.
- Step 6** Select the encapsulation type as High Level Data Link Control (**HDLC**) or Point-to-Point Protocol (**PPP**) or **Frame Relay**. Use the Advance Configuration area to configure the encapsulations.




---

**Note** For controller-based serial interfaces, only interface configurations are supported.

---

- Step 7** Enter an IPv4 address.
- Step 8** For Frame Relay encapsulation, use the IETF option to connect to non-Cisco routers. (The Autosense feature is supported only on Frame Relay.)




---

**Note** The Autosense feature allows the router to detect the LMI type that is being used, by communicating with the switch and then uses the same type of LMI.

---

- Step 9** For PPP encapsulation, specify the CHAP and PAP configurations with directions.
  - Step 10** Click **Save**. The Interface Summary page displays the modified interfaces.
  - Step 11** Click **Save** to save the changes in the device.
- 

## Configuring POS Interface

To edit and delete the POS interface, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Interface folder**, then click **Interfaces**.
  - Step 4** In the Interface page, select the POS interface from the Interface Summary area and click **Edit**.
  - Step 5** In the Create or Edit POS Interface page, enter the basic configuration information.
  - Step 6** Select the **Enable SPE Scrambling** check box to enable the SPE scrambling.
  - Step 7** Select the **Send LAIS when Shutdown** check box to send the Line Alarm Indication Signal (LAIS) when the POS interface is in administrative shut down state.
  - Step 8** Select the encapsulation type as **HDLC** or **PPP** or **Frame Relay** and use the Advance Configuration area to configure the encapsulations.
  - Step 9** Enter an IPv4 address.
  - Step 10** In the Advanced Configuration area, select the alarm reporting and alarm reporting threshold options to receive alarms when there is any event.
  - Step 11** Repeat [Step 9](#) through [Step 11](#) in the [Configuring a Serial Interface](#) area.
-

## Configuring a Service Module

To edit or delete the Service Module interface, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Interface folder**, then click **Interfaces**.
  - Step 4** Select the service module interface from the Interface Summary area and click **Edit**.
  - Step 5** In the Fast Ethernet interface pane, complete the basic configuration information.
  - Step 6** Click **OK** to save the changes in the device.
- 

## Configuring Controllers

To create or edit the DSL, SHDSL, and VDSL controllers interface, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Interface folder**, then click **Interfaces**.
  - Step 4** Select the **DSL, SHDSL or VDSL** controller from the interface summary area and click **Edit**.
  - Step 5** In the Edit Controller page, enter the required information.
  - Step 6** Click **OK**. After you configure the controller, you must configure the DSL, SHDSL or VDSL subinterface.
  - Step 7** To configure the DSL subinterface, select an ATM interface in the Interface Summary page, and click **Add Subinterface**.
    - a. In the Create ATM Sub Interface page, choose the encapsulation from the drop-down list.
    - b. Configure the Permanent Virtual Circuit (PVC) settings.
    - c. Select a dialer to be associated to the ATM subinterface by using the **Create** or **Associate** dialer options.
    - d. Click **OK**.
  - Step 8** To configure the SHDL subinterface, select a SHDSL interface in the Interface Summary page, and click **Add Subinterface**.
    - a. In the Create SHDSL subinterface page, add the DSL Group and select the DSL pair.
    - b. Choose the Group Type from the drop-down list.
    - c. Click **OK**.
  - Step 9** To configure the VDSL subinterface, select a VDSL interface in the Interface Summary area, and click **Add Subinterface**.
    - a. In the Create VDSL subinterface page, choose the Operating Mode from the drop-down list.
    - b. Select the **Annex A mode** check box.

- c. Click **OK**.
- 

## Creating a Gigabit Ethernet or Fast Ethernet Interface

To create a Gigabit Ethernet or Fast Ethernet interface, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Interface folder**, then click **Interfaces**.
  - Step 4** Select the Gigabit Ethernet or Fast Ethernet in the Interface Summary area, and click **Edit**.
  - Step 5** In the Edit Ethernet Interface, complete the basic configuration information.
  - Step 6** Choose the Primary IP address from the drop-down list.
  - Step 7** Click **Add Row** and add the Secondary IP address.
  - Step 8** Click **OK** to save the changes in the device.
- 

## Creating a Loopback Interface

To create a Loopback interface, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Interface folder**, then click **Interfaces**.
  - Step 4** On the Interface page, choose **Add Logical Interface > Loopback**.
  - Step 5** In the Create or Edit Loopback Interface area, enter the basic configuration information.
  - Step 6** Enter an IPv4 address.
  - Step 7** Click **OK**.
  - Step 8** Click **Save** to save the changes in the device.
- 

## Creating a VLAN Interface

To create a VLAN interface, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
- Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
- Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Interface folder**, then click **Interfaces**.
- Step 4** In the Interface page, click **Add Logical Interface > VLAN**.



- Step 5** In the Create or Edit VLAN Interface page, complete the basic configuration information.
  - Step 6** Choose the Primary IP address from the drop-down list.
  - Step 7** Click **Add Row** and add the Secondary IP address.
  - Step 8** Click **OK** to save the changes in the device.
- 

## Editing a VLAN Interface

To edit the VLAN interface, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Interface folder**, then click **Interfaces**.
  - Step 4** Select the VLAN interface from the Interface Summary area, and click **Edit**.
  - Step 5** In the Create or Edit VLAN Interface page, complete the basic configuration information.
  - Step 6** Choose the Primary IP address from the drop-down list.
  - Step 7** Click **Add Row** and add the Secondary IP address.
  - Step 8** Click **OK** to save the changes in the device.
- 

## Creating a Tunnel Interface

To create a Tunnel interface, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Choose the device from the list or click **Add** to create a new device, then configure the device.
  - Step 3** After choosing the device, choose **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 4** Expand the **Interface folder**, then choose the **Interfaces**.
  - Step 5** In the Interface page, choose **Add Logical Interface > Tunnel**.
  - Step 6** In the Create or Edit Tunnel Interface page, complete the basic configuration information.
  - Step 7** Choose the Primary IP address from the drop-down list.
  - Step 8** Click **Add Row** and add the Secondary IP address.
  - Step 9** Click **OK** to save the changes in the device.
- 

## Editing an Existing Tunnel Interface

To edit a Tunnel interface, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Interface folder**, then click **Interfaces**.
  - Step 4** Select the Tunnel interface in the Interface Summary page, and click **Edit**.
  - Step 5** In the Create or Edit Tunnel Interface page, complete the basic configuration information.
  - Step 6** Choose the Primary IP address from the drop-down list.
  - Step 7** Click **Add Row** and add the Secondary IP address.
  - Step 8** Click **OK** to save the changes in the device.
- 

## Creating a Virtual Template Interface

To create a Virtual Template interface, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Interface folder**, then click **Interfaces**.
  - Step 4** In the Interface page, click **Add Logical Interface Virtual Template**.
  - Step 5** In the Create or Edit Virtual Template Interface page, complete the basic configuration information.
  - Step 6** Choose the Primary IP address from the drop-down list.
  - Step 7** Click **Add Row** and add the Secondary IP address.
  - Step 8** Click **OK** to save the changes in the device.
- 

## Editing an Existing Virtual Template Interface

To edit a Virtual Template interface, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Interface folder**, then click **Interfaces**.
  - Step 4** Select the Virtual Template interface in the Interface Summary page, and click **Edit**.
  - Step 5** In the Create or Edit Virtual Template Interface page, complete the basic configuration information.
  - Step 6** Choose the Primary IP address from the drop-down list.
  - Step 7** Click **Add Row** and add the Secondary IP address.
  - Step 8** Click **OK** to save the changes in the device.
-

# Configuring Cellular WAN Interfaces

The Cisco ISRs provide a third-generation (3G) wireless interface that can be used over GSM and Code Division Multiple Access (CDMA) networks. Its primary application is WAN connectivity as a backup data link for critical data applications. However, the 3G wireless interface can also function as the primary WAN connection for the router. The 4G wireless interface is supported only on the 4G-LTE-V modem.

## Configuring a CDMA Interfaces

To configure a CDMA interface, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Interface folder**, then click **Cellular WAN Interfaces**.
  - Step 4** For a CDMA Sprint modem:
    - a. Select a cellular interface with CDMA Sprint modem, and click **Manage Modem**.
    - b. In the Manage Modem dialog box, select the **OMA-DM** or **Manual** radio button. If you choose the Manual option, complete the fields to manually configure the CDMA Sprint modem, then click **OK**.
  - Step 5** For a CDMA Verizon modem:
    - a. Select a cellular interface with CDMA Verizon modem, and click **Manage Modem**.
    - b. In the Manage Modem dialog box, enter the **Account Activation Information**, then click **OK**.
  - Step 6** For a CDMA Generic modem:
    - a. Select a cellular interface with CDMA Generic modem, and click **Manage Modem**.
    - b. In the Manage Modem dialog box, complete the fields to configure the CDMA Generic Modem, then click **OK**.
- 

## Configuring a GSM Interfaces

To configure a GSM interface, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Choose the device from the list or click **Add** to add a new device, then configure the device.
  - Step 3** After choosing the device, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 4** Expand the **Interface folder**, then choose **Cellular WAN Interfaces**.
  - Step 5** Select the GSM interface and click **Manage Modem**.
  - Step 6** In the Manage Modem dialog box, click **Add Row**.
  - Step 7** Choose the Profile Number from the drop-down list, and enter the Access Point Name, then click **OK**.
-

# Configuring Network Address Translation (NAT)

Network Address Translation (NAT) is a process where a network device, usually a firewall, assigns a public address to a computer (or group of computers) inside a private network. NAT helps to limit the number of public IP addresses used by an organization or company, for both economy and security purposes.

The NAT feature allows organizations to resolve the problem of IP address depletion when they have existing networks and need to access the Internet. NAT allows the IP network of an organization to use different IP address space for the outside network. Thus, NAT allows an organization that does not have globally routable addresses to connect to the Internet by translating those addresses into globally routable address space. NAT also allows a more graceful renumbering strategy for organizations that are changing service providers or voluntarily renumbering into Classless Inter Domain Routing (CIDR) blocks. NAT is described in RFC 1631.

A router configured with NAT will have at least one interface to the inside network and one to the outside network. In a typical environment, NAT is configured at the exit router between a subdomain and a backbone. When a packet leaves the domain, the NAT translates the locally significant source address into a globally unique address. When a packet enters the domain, NAT translates the globally unique destination address into a local address. If more than one exit point exists, each NAT must have the same translation table. If NAT cannot allocate an address because it has run out of addresses, it drops the packet and sends an Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) host unreachable packet.

For more information on NAT, see [IP Addressing: NAT Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Release 3S](#).

## NAT Types

NAT operates on a router—generally connecting only two networks together—and translates your private (inside local) addresses within the internal network, into public (inside global) addresses before any packets are forwarded to another network. This functionality gives you the option to configure the NAT so that it will advertise only a single address for your entire network to the outside world. Doing this effectively hides the internal network from the world, giving you additional security.

NAT types include:

- **Static Address Translation (SAT)**—Allows one-to-one mapping between local and global addresses.
- **Dynamic Address Translation (DAT)**—Maps unregistered IP addresses to registered IP addresses from a pool of registered IP addresses.
- **Overloading**—A form of dynamic NAT that maps multiple unregistered IP addresses to a single registered IP address (many to one) using different ports. This method is also known as Port Address Translation (PAT). With PAT, thousands of users can be connected to the Internet using only one real global IP address.

## Configuring NAT for IP Address Conservation

To configure NAT, perform the following steps:

1. [Creating NAT IP Pools](#) (required for Dynamic NAT)
2. Create an ACL template and configure the ACL
3. [Creating NAT44 Rules](#)

4. [Configuring Interfaces](#) and assign rules on them
5. [Setting Up NAT MAX Translation](#) (Optional)

**Note**

The NAT feature is supported on the following: ASR platform from Cisco IOS Release 3.5 or later and ISR platform from Cisco IOS Release 12.4(24)T or later.


**Caution**

CLI changes that begin with “EMS\_” are not supported and might cause unexpected behavior.

## Creating NAT IP Pools

The IP Pool is a device object that represents IP ranges to be used with Dynamic NAT. The NAT IP Pools feature allows you to create a new pool that can be used with Dynamic NAT, change the existing pool, and delete the pool from the device.

To create an IP pool, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security**, expand the **NAT** subfolder, and then click **IP Pools**. The NAT Pools page appears.
  - Step 4** Click **Add IP Pool > IP+Prefix** or **IP Range + Prefix**, and enter the Name, IP Address/Range, Prefix Length, and Description. You cannot change the name of the pool after creating the pool.
- 
-  **Note** A valid IPv4 address consists of 4 octets separated by a period (.).
- 
- Step 5** Click **Save** to deploy the IP pool to the device, or **Cancel** to cancel your editing.
  - Step 6** To edit the existing IP Pool, in the NAT IP Pools page do the following:
    - a. Click in the selected IP Pools parameters row, and edit the parameters. or
    - b. Select the IP Pools, and click **Edit**. The selected IP Pools opens for editing. You can edit all of the parameters except the pool name.
  - Step 7** Click **Save** to deploy the changes to the device.

## Creating NAT44 Rules

The NAT44 feature allows you to create, delete, and change NAT44 rules.

There are three types of NAT rules:

- Static
- Dynamic
- Dynamic PAT

To create the NAT44 rule, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
- Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
- Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security**, expand the **NAT** subfolder, and then click **NAT44 Rules**.
- Step 4** In the NAT 44 page, click the down arrow icon next to the **Add NAT Rule** button.
- Click **Static** to create Static Rule. For a description of the elements, see the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide](#).
  - Click **Dynamic** to create Dynamic NAT Rule. For a description of the elements, see the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide](#).
  - Click **Dynamic PAT** to create Dynamic PAT Rule. For a description of the elements, see the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide](#).
- Step 5** Click **Save** to save and deploy the changes to the device.
- Step 6** To edit the existing NAT44 rule in the NAT44 page, do one of the following:
- Click the selected NAT44 rules parameters row, and edit the parameters.
  - Select the NAT44 rule, and click **Edit**. The selected NAT44 rule opens for editing. You can edit all of the parameters.
- Step 7** You can change the Source and Destination according to the creation rules. You can also change the Options selection according to the creation rules.
- Step 8** Click **Save** to save the changes in the server.
- 

## Configuring Interfaces

A virtual interface is a logical interface configured with generic information for a specific purpose or for specific users, plus router-dependent information.

To configure a virtual interface, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
- Step 2** After choosing the device from list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
- Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security**, expand the **NAT** subfolder, and then click **Interfaces**.
- In the Interface page, select the interface that you want to change and choose the association from the drop-down list. The options are: Inside, Outside, and None.
- Step 4** Click **Save** to save the changes in the server.
-

## Setting Up NAT MAX Translation

The NAT MAX Translation feature provides the ability to limit the maximum number of concurrent NAT operations on a router. In addition, the NAT MAX feature gives users additional control to use the NAT addresses. The Rate Limiting NAT Translation feature can be used to limit the effects of viruses, worms, and denial-of-service attacks. For more information on Configuring the Rate Limiting NAT Translation Feature, see [Configuring NAT for IP Address Conservation](#) in *IP Addressing: NAT Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Release 3S*.

The NAT MAX Translation feature allows you to reset the global translation attribute values.

To set up the MAX Translation, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Choose the device from the list or click **Add** to create a new device, then configure the device.
  - Step 3** After choosing the device, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 4** Expand the **Security**, expand the **NAT** subfolder, and then click **Advanced Settings > Max. Translation**.
  - Step 5** Reset the parameter values. Configure the maximum number of NAT entries that are allowed for all of the parameters. A typical range for a NAT rate limit is from 100 to 300 entries.
  - Step 6** Click **Save** to save the changes in the server.
- 

## Configuring DMVPN

The DMVPN feature allows you to scale large and small IP Security (IPsec) VPNs by combining generic routing encapsulation (GRE) tunnels, IPsec encryption, and Next Hop Resolution Protocol (NHRP).

A typical VPN connection is a point-to-point IPsec tunnel connecting two routers. DMVPN enables you to create a network with a central hub that connects other remote routers, referred to as spokes, using a GRE over an IPsec tunnel. IPsec traffic is routed through the hub to the spokes in the network.

See [Dynamic Multipoint IPsec VPNs \(Using Multipoint GRE/NHRP to Scale IPsec VPNs\)](#) for more information about DMVPN (requires a Cisco.com login ID).

Cisco Network Control System allows you to configure your router as a DMVPN hub, DMVPN spoke or cluster. You can configure the router in the following ways:

- [Configuring Hub and Spoke Topology](#)
- [Configuring a DMVPN Fully Meshed Topology](#)
- [Configuring a Cluster Topology](#)

## Creating a DMVPN Tunnel

To create a DMVPN tunnel, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.

- Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** folder, and then click **DMVPN**. Click **Add** to create the DMVPN.
- Step 4** In the Device Role and Topology Type area, select the topology and the device role. The options are: Spoke, Hub, and Dynamic Connection between Spokes.
- Step 5** In the Multipoint GRE Interface Information area, choose the WAN interface that connects to the Internet from the drop-down list.
- Step 6** Enter the IP address of the Tunnel Interface, and Subnet Mask.
- Step 7** Complete the fields in the NHRP and Tunnel Parameters area.

**Note**

The Network ID is a unique 32-bit network identifier from a Non Broadcast Multiaccess (NBMA) network. The tunnel key is used to enable a key ID for a particular tunnel interface. The MTU size of IP packets that are sent on a particular interface.

**Note**

The default MTU value for Ethernet and the serial interface is 1500. The default value varies depending upon the media type. The Tunnel throughput delay is used to set the delay value for a particular interface.

- Step 8** In the Encryption policy field, click the anchored plus button (+) to add the Transform Set Profile (see Security > VPN Components > Transform Sets in the *Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide*).
- Step 9** In the Transform Set Profile dialog box, enter the Name and choose the acceptable combination of security protocols and algorithm from the drop-down list to configure the transform set.
- Step 10** Select the IP Compression check box to enable the IP compression for the transform set.
- Step 11** Choose the mode for the transform set. The options are: Tunnel mode or Transport mode.
- Step 12** In the NHS Server Information area, enter the IP address for the physical interface of the hub and tunnel and the Fallback Time. If the device supports the cluster then add the next hop server information, such as Cluster ID, Max Connection, Hub IP address, and Priority.

**Note**

The NHS server information is required only for spoke configuration. If you select the Use Cluster for NHS check box, add the information, such as Cluster ID, Max Connection, and Next Hub Server. The template with the NHS cluster configuration will be applied only to the device running Cisco IOS Software Release 15.1(2)T or later.

- Step 13** In the Routing Information area, choose the routing information. The options are: EIGR, RIPV2, and Other.

**Note**

The routing information is required only for hub configuration.

- Step 14** Choose the existing EIGRP number from the drop-down list or enter an EIGRP number. Use the Other option to configure the other protocols.
- Step 15** Click **Save** to save the single NHS server entry details and the priority of the server, save the entire group of server, and save the NHS cluster information. when you save the NHS cluster information, the NHS server will be populated in the non-editable field.
- Step 16** Click **OK** to save the configuration to the device.



## Configuring Hub and Spoke Topology

To configure the hub and spoke topology, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** folder, and then click **DMVPN**. Click the **Add** button to create the **DMVPN** tunnel.
  - Step 4** In the Device Type and Topology area, choose Hub and Spoke as the topology, and select either Hub or Spoke as a device role.
  - Step 5** Choose the WAN interface from the drop-down list, and then configure the Multipoint GRE IP Address and the subnet mask for the tunnel interface.
  - Step 6** Configure the NHRP and the Tunnel Interface parameters, such as the IP address, NHRP parameters and map, MTU value, Source of the Tunnel, Tunnel Mode, and Tunnel Key.
  - Step 7** Create the transform-set for protecting the data flow between the devices. You can specify up to four transforms: One Authentication Header (AH), one Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) encryption, one ESP authentication, and one compression. These transforms define the IPsec protocols and the algorithms.
  - Step 8** Configure the routing protocol to be used.
  - Step 9** Click **Save** to save the configuration to the device.
- 

## Configuring a DMVPN Fully Meshed Topology

The dynamic spoke-to-spoke option allows you to configure a DMVPN fully meshed topology. In this topology, you can configure the router as a spoke, capable of establishing a directIPsec tunnel to other spokes in the network.

To configure a DMVPN Fully Meshed topology, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Choose the device from the list or click **Add** to create a new device, then configure the device.
  - Step 3** After selecting the device, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 4** Expand the Security folder, and then click **DMVPN**. Click the **Add** to create the DMVPN tunnel with fully meshed topology.
  - Step 5** In the Create DMVPN Tunnel configuration page, select the **Full Mesh** radio button to configure the network type as full mesh topology.
  - Step 6** Repeat [Step 6](#) through [Step 8](#) in the [Configuring Hub and Spoke Topology](#) section.
  - Step 7** For Fully Mesh spoke topology, in the NHS Server Information area, add the next hub server information, such as the IP Address of Hub's physical interface and the IP address of Hub's tunnel interface.
  - Step 8** Click **Save** to save the configuration to the device.
-

## Configuring a Cluster Topology

To configure a cluster topology, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 3** Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** folder, and then click **DMVPN**. Click **Add** to create the DMVPN tunnel.
  - Step 4** From the Create DMVPN Tunnel configuration page, select **Spoke** radio button to configure the device role as a spoke.
  - Step 5** Repeat **Step 6** through **Step 8** from in the [Configuring Hub and Spoke Topology](#) section.



---

**Note** The device must be running IOS version of 15.1(2)T or later.

---

- Step 6** Click **Add Row** to configure the cluster related information, and add the Cluster-ID and Maximum Connection values.
  - Step 7** Click **Expand Row** (next to the radio button) and click **Add Row** to add the NHS server information.
  - Step 8** Enter the NHS server, the GRE Tunnel IP addresses, and the Priority of this NHS server. Click **Save** to save the NHS server entry configuration.
  - Step 9** Click **Save** to save the NHS server group information.
  - Step 10** Click **Save** again to save the NHS group information with the cluster configuration. This will automatically populate the NHS server IP address in the table.
- 

## Editing a DMVPN

To edit a DMVPN tunnel, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Choose the device from the list or click **Add** to create a new device, then configure the device.
  - Step 3** After selecting the device, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 4** Expand the Security folder, and then click **DMVPN**. The available tunnel is displayed.
  - Step 5** Select the tunnel, and click **Edit**. The Edit DMVPN Tunnel page opens.
  - Step 6** In the Edit DMVPN Tunnel page, you can edit the DMVPN parameters.
  - Step 7** Click **OK** to send the edited DMVPN tunnel configuration to the device.
  - Step 8** Click **Cancel** to close the Edit DMVPN Tunnel page without applying the configuration to the device.
-

## Deleting a DMVPN

To delete a DMVPN tunnel, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Choose the device from the list to delete the DMVPN tunnel. If the device is not added, click **Add** to add the device.
  - Step 3** After selecting the device, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 4** **Expand the Security folder, and then click DMVPN. The available tunnel is displayed.**
  - Step 5** Select the tunnel, and click **Delete**.
  - Step 6** Click **Yes** on the warning message to delete the selected tunnel.
  - Step 7** Click **No** on the warning message if you do not want to delete the selected tunnel.
  - Step 8** Click **Cancel** to cancel all of the changes that you have made without sending them to the router.
- 

## Configuring GETVPN

A Group Encrypted Transport VPN (GETVPN) deployment has three primary components: Group Member, Key Server, and Group Domain of Interpretation protocol. Group Members encrypt and decrypt the traffic, and Key Server distributes the encryption key to all group members. The Key Server decides on a single data encryption key for a given lifetime. Because all Group Members use the same key, any Group Member can decrypt the traffic encrypted by any other Group Member. GDOI protocol is used between the Group Member and Key Server for group key and group Security Association (SA) management. A minimum one Key Server is required for a GETVPN deployment.

Unlike traditional IPsec encryption solutions, GETVPN uses the concept of group SA. All members in the GETVPN group can communicate with each other using a common encryption policy and a shared SA. Therefore, there is no need to negotiate IPsec between Group Members on a peer-to-peer basis, thereby reducing the resource load on the Group Member routers.

### Group Member

The Group Member registers with the Key Server to get the IPsec SA that is necessary to encrypt data traffic within the group. The Group Member provides the group identification number to the Key Server to get the respective policy and keys for this group. These keys are refreshed periodically by the Key Server, before the current IPsec SAs expire, so that there is no traffic loss.

### Key Server

The Key Server is responsible for maintaining security policies, authenticating Group Members and providing a session key for encrypting traffic. Key Server authenticates the individual Group Members at the time of registration. Only after successful registration can the Group Members participate in a group SA.

A Group Member can register at any time and receive the most current policy and keys. When a Group Member registers with the Key Server, the Key Server verifies the group identification number of the Group Member. If this identification number is valid, and the Group Member has provided valid Internet Key Exchange (IKE) credentials, the Key Server sends the SA policy and the keys to the group member.

The keys sends two types to Group Member: the Key Encryption Key (KEK) and the Traffic Encryption Key (TEK). The TEK becomes part of the IPsec SA with which the group members within the same group encrypt the data. The KEK is used to secure rekey messages between the Key Server and the Group Members.

The Key Server sends out rekey messages either because of an impending IPsec SA expiration or because the security policy has changed on the Key Server. Keys can be distributed during rekey using either multicast or unicast transport. the multicast method is more scalable because keys need not be transmitted to each group member individually. Unlike in unicast, The Key Server will not receive acknowledgment from the Group Member about the success of the rekey reception using the multicast rekey method. Using the unicast rekey method, the Key Server will delete a Group Member from its database if the Group Member does not acknowledge three consecutive rekeys.

### Group Domain of Interpretation

Group Domain of Interpretation protocol is used for Group key and group SA management. Group Domain of Interpretation uses Internet Security Association Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP) for authenticating the Group Members and Key Servers. All of the standard ISAKMP authentication schemes like RSA Signature (certificates) and preshared key can be used for GETVPN.

For more information on GETVPN, See

[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/prod/collateral/iosswrel/ps6537/ps6586/ps6635/ps7180/deployment\\_guide\\_c07\\_554713.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/prod/collateral/iosswrel/ps6537/ps6586/ps6635/ps7180/deployment_guide_c07_554713.html).

## Creating a GETVPN Group Member

Use the Add GroupMember configuration page to configure a GETVPN group member.

To create a GETVPN group member, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** folder, and then click **GETVPN-GroupMember**. Click **Add** to create the GET VPN group member.
  - Step 4** In the Add GroupMember dialog box, choose the **General** tab, and enter the Group Name and Group Identity. Choose the Registration Interface from the drop-down list.
  - Step 5** Enter the Primary Key Server and Secondary Key Server IP addresses. Click **Add Row** or **Delete** to add or delete the secondary key server IP addresses.




---

**Note** The primary key server is responsible for creating and distributing group policies to all group members and periodically synchronizes with the secondary key servers. The server with the highest priority is elected as a primary key server.

---

- Step 6** Click the **row** or **field** to edit the secondary key server IP address.
- Step 7** Click **Save** to save the configuration.
- Step 8** In the Add Group Member dialog box, choose the **Advanced** tab, and choose the Local Exception ACL and Fail Close ACL from the drop-down list.

If the Fail Close feature is configured, all of the traffic passing through the group member will be dropped until the group member is registered successfully. Once the group member registers successfully and SAs are downloaded, this feature turns off by itself.

- Step 9** Choose the **Migration** tab, and select the **Enable Passive SA** check box to enable passive SA. Use this option to turn on the Passive SA mode for this group member.
- Step 10** Click **OK** to add the Group member in the table. To display the commands, click **CLI** preview. After the scheduled deploy is completed, the configuration is applied on the device.
- 

## Creating a GETVPN Key Server

Use the Add KeyServer configuration page to configure the GETVPN key server.

To create a GETVPN key server, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
- Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
- Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** folder, and then click **GETVPN-KeyServer**. Click **Add** to create the GETVPN key server.
- Step 4** In the Add Key Server dialog box, choose the **General** tab, and enter the Group Name, Group Identity, WAN IP address, and Priority of this key server.
- Step 5** Enter the Co-operative Key Servers IP address. Click **Add Row** or **Delete** to add or delete the Co-operative key server IP address. Click the **row** or **field**, and edit the IP address.
- Step 6** In the Add KeyServer dialog box, choose the **Rekey** tab, and choose the Distribution method from the drop-down list.
- The distribution method is used to send the rekey information from key server to group members. When you choose the distribution method as multicast, specify the multicast address to which the rekey needs to be transmitted.
- Step 7** In the Add KeyServer dialog box, choose the **GETVPN Traffic** tab, and enter the Traffic to be encrypted, Encryption Policy, and Anti Replay.
- The access list defines the traffic to be encrypted. Only the traffic which matches the “permit” lines will be encrypted. Be sure not to encrypt certain traffic that should always be permitted even if the crypto sessions are not active.
- Step 8** Click **OK** to add the Group member in the table. To display the commands, click **CLI** preview. After the scheduled deployment is completed, the configuration is applied on the device.
- 

## Editing a GETVPN Group Member or Key Server

To edit a GETVPN group member or a GETVPN key server, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
- Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
- Step 3** In Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** folder, and then click **GETVPN-Group Member** or **GETVPN-KeyServer**. The GETVPN-GroupMember or GETVPN-KeyServer summary page opens.

- Step 4** In the GETVPN summary page, select the group name and click **Edit**. The Edit GETVPN-GroupMember or GETVPN-Keyserver page appears.
  - Step 5** In the Edit GETVPN-GroupMember or GETVPN-KeyServer page, you can edit the GETVPN parameters.
  - Step 6** Click **OK** to save the configurations.
- 

## Deleting a GETVPN Group Member or Key Server

To delete a GETVPN group member or GETVPN key server, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Choose the device from the list or click **Add** to add a new device, then configure the device. The device details appear on the lower part of the page.
  - Step 3** After choosing the device, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 4** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** folder, and then click **GETVPN-Group Member** or **GETVPN-KeyServer**. The GETVPN-GroupMember or GETVPN-KeyServer summary page opens.
  - Step 5** In the GETVPN summary page, select the group name and click **Delete**.
  - Step 6** Click **OK** to save the configurations.
- 

## Configuring VPN Components

The Internet Key Exchange (IKE) is a standard method for arranging secure and authenticated communications. The IKE establishes session keys (and associated cryptographic and networking configuration) between two hosts across network. IKE policies protect the identities of peers during authentication.

IKE negotiations must be protected; therefore, each IKE negotiation begins by each peer agreeing on a common (shared) IKE policy. This policy states the security parameters that will be used to protect subsequent IKE negotiations. After the peers agree on a policy, the security parameters of the policy are identified by a security association established at each peer. These security associations are applied to all subsequent IKE traffic during the negotiation.

When negotiation begins, IKE looks for an IKE policy that is the same on both peers. The peer that initiates negotiation sends all of its policies to the remote peer. The remote peer looks for a match by comparing its own highest priority policy against the other peer's received policies. A match is found when policies from both peers contain the same encryption, hash, authentication, and Diffie-Hellman (D-H) parameter values, and when the remote peer's policy specifies a lifetime that is less than or equal to the lifetime of the policy it is being compared to. If the lifetimes are not identical, the shorter lifetime from the remote peer's policy is used.

The VPN components primarily include the following:

- [Configuring IKE Policies](#)
- [Configuring IKE Settings](#)

- [Configuring IPsec Profiles](#)
- [Creating Preshared Keys](#)
- [Creating RSA Keys](#)
- [Configuring Transform Sets](#)

## Configuring IKE Policies

To configure IKE policies, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, Expand the **Security** folder, and then choose **VPN Components > IKE Policies**.
  - Step 4** Click **Add Row** to create the IKE policies.
  - Step 5** In the IKE Policies page, enter the Priority, Authentication, D-H Group, Encryption, Hash, and Lifetime.  
For a description of the elements on the IKE Policies page, see Security > VPN Components > IKE Policies in the *Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide*.
  - Step 6** Click **Save** to save the configuration, then click **Save** again to generate the CLI commands.
- 

## Configuring IKE Settings

The IKE Settings feature allows you to globally enable IKE for your peer router.

To configure IKE settings, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** folder, and then choose **VPN Components > IKE Settings**.
  - Step 4** Select the **Enable IKE** and **Enable Aggressive Mode** check box to enable the IKE policies and the aggressive mode.
  - Step 5** Choose the IKE Identity from the drop-down list.
  - Step 6** Enter the **Dead Peer Detection Keepalive** and **Dead Peer Detection Retry** time in seconds.  
For a description of the elements on the IKE Settings page, see Security > VPN Components > IKE Settings in the *Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide*.
  - Step 7** Click **Save** to save the configuration.
-

## Configuring IPsec Profiles

The IPsec profiles, also called ISAKMP profiles, enable you to define a set of IKE parameters that you can associate with one or more IPsec tunnels. An IPsec profile applies parameters to an incoming IPsec connection identified uniquely through its concept of matching identity criteria. These criteria are based on the IKE identity that is presented by incoming IKE connections and includes IP address, Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN), and group the VPN remote client grouping.

The IKE Profile feature allows you to create an IPsec profile.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** folder, and then choose **VPN Components > IPsec Profile**.
  - Step 4** Click **Add Row** to create the IPsec profile.
  - Step 5** In the IPsec Profile page, enter the information such as Name, Description, and Transform Set, and the IPsec SA Lifetime.



**Note** When you edit a profile, you cannot edit the name of the IPsec profile. A transform set represents a certain combination of security protocols and algorithms. During the IPsec security association negotiation, the peers agree to use a particular transform set for protecting a particular data flow. A transform describes a particular security protocol with its corresponding algorithms

---

- Step 6** Enter the IPsec SA Lifetime in seconds to establish a new SA after the set period of time elapses.
  - Step 7** To edit the IPsec profile parameters, click **Field** and edit the parameter of that IPsec profile.
  - Step 8** To delete the IPsec profile, select the IPsec Profile from the list, and click **Delete**.
  - Step 9** Click **Save** to save the configuration, then click **Save** again to generate the CLI commands.
- 

## Creating Preshared Keys

The preshared Keys feature allows you to share a secret key between two peers. This key is used by the IKE during the authentication phase.

To create a preshared key, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Select a device or click **Add** to add a new device, and then configure the device. The device details appear in the lower part of the page.
  - Step 3** After selecting the device, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 4** Expand the Security folder, and then choose **VPN Components > Preshared Keys**.
  - Step 5** Click **Add Row** to create the preshared key.
  - Step 6** In the Preshared Keys page, enter the IP Address, Host Name, Subnet Mask, and Preshared Keys.
  - Step 7** To edit the preshared key parameters, click the **Field** and edit the parameter of that preshared key.



- Step 8** To delete the preshared key, choose the preshared key from the list, and click **Delete**.
- Step 9** Click **Save** to save the configuration, then click **Save** again to generate the CLI commands.
- 

## Creating RSA Keys

An RSA key pair consists of a public key and a private key. When setting up your Public Key Infrastructure (PKI), you must include the public key in the certificate enrollment request. After the certificate is granted, the public key is included in the certificate so that peers can use it to encrypt the data that is sent to the router. The private key is kept on the router and used both to decrypt the data sent by the peers and to digitally sign transactions when negotiating with the peers.

RSA key pairs contain a key modulus value. The modulus determines the size of the RSA key. The larger the modulus, the more secure the RSA key. However, it takes longer to generate, encrypt, and decrypt keys with large modulus values.

To create an RSA keys, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
- Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
- Step 3** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** folder, and then choose **VPN Components > RSAKeys**.
- Step 4** Click **Add Row** to create the RSA keys.
- Step 5** The Add RSA Keys dialog box appears.
- Step 6** In the Add RSA Keys dialog box, enter the Label, Modulus, and Type.



**Note** For a modulus value between 512 and 1024, enter an integer value that is a multiple of 64. If you want a value higher than 1024, you can enter 1536 or 2048. If you enter a value greater than 512, key generation may take a minute or longer. The modulus determines the size of the key. The larger the modulus, the more secure the key, but keys with a large modulus take longer to generate, and encryption/decryption operations take longer with larger keys.

---

- Step 7** Select the **Make the Key exportable** check box to generate the RSA as a exportable key.
- Step 8** Click **OK** to save the configuration.
- Step 9** To import the RSA key, click **Import**. The Import RSA Key dialog box appears.
- Step 10** In the Import RSA Key dialog box, enter the label of the RSA key, Key type, and password to decrypt the key. If the key type is general-keys, signature or encryption, copy and paste the public and private key data that was saved.
- Step 11** To import usage-key, enter the public and private key data of both the signature and encryption keys.
- Step 12** Click **Import** to import the RSA key.
- Step 13** To export the RSA key, choose the RSA key from the list and click **Export**. The Export RSA Key Pair dialog box appears.
- Step 14** In the Export RSA Key Pair dialog box, enter the password to encrypt the RSA key and choose the encryption algorithm from the drop-down list.
- Step 15** Click **OK** to display the exported keys.

**Step 16** To delete the RSA key, choose the RSA key from the list, and click **Delete**.

---

## Configuring Transform Sets

To define a transform set, specify one to three transforms. Each transform represents an IPsec security protocol (AH or ESP) plus the algorithm that you want to use. When the particular transform set is used during negotiations for IPsec security associations, the entire transform set (the combination of protocols, algorithms, and other settings) must match a transform set at the remote peer.

To configure a transform sets, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.

**Step 2** After choosing the device from the list, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.

**Step 3** **In the** Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** folder, and then choose **VPN Components > Transform Sets**.

**Step 4** Click **Add Row** to create the transform sets.

**Step 5** In the Transform Sets page, enter the Name and select the acceptable combination of security protocols and algorithm to configure the transform set.



**Note** The ESP encryption algorithm is used to encrypt the payload and the integrity algorithm is used to check the integrity of the payload.

---

**Step 6** Specify the mode for a transform set:

- **Transport**—Encrypt data only. Transport mode is used when both endpoints support IPsec. Transport mode places the authentication header or encapsulated security payload after the original IP header; thus, only the IP payload is encrypted. This method allows users to apply network services such as quality-of-service (QoS) controls to encrypted packets.
- **Tunnel**—Encrypt data and IP header. Tunnel mode provides stronger protection than transport mode. Because the entire IP packet is encapsulated within AH or ESP, a new IP header is attached, and the entire datagram can be encrypted. Tunnel mode allows network devices such as a router to act as an IPsec proxy for multiple VPN users; tunnel mode should be used in those configurations.

**Step 7** Click **Save** to save the configuration, then click **Save** again to save the configuration changes.

---

## Creating a Zone-Based Firewall

The Zone-Based Firewall feature allows you to easily manage Cisco IOS unidirectional firewall policy between groups of interfaces known as *zones*.

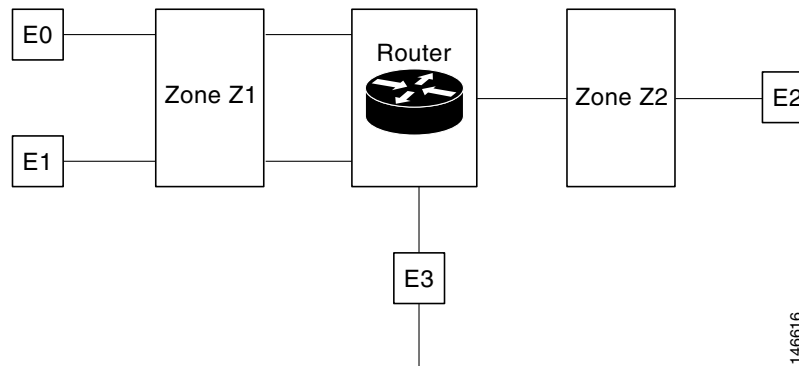
A zone is a group of interfaces that have similar functions or features. For example, on a router, Gigabit Ethernet interface 0/0/0 and Gigabit Ethernet interface 0/0/1 may be connected to the LAN. These two interfaces are similar because they represent the internal network, so they can be grouped into a zone for firewall configurations.

By default, the traffic between interfaces in the same zone is not subjected to any policy. The traffic passes freely.

When an interface is a member of a security zone, all traffic to and from that interface (except traffic going to the router or traffic going to another interface on the same zone) is dropped.

To permit traffic between interfaces that belong to different zones, a firewall policy with concrete rules must be pushed to the device. If the policy permits the traffic between these two zones (through inspect or pass actions) traffic can flow through the zones. [Figure 37-1](#) describes the security zone.

**Figure 37-1 Security Zone Diagram**



The following describe the relationships between the interfaces and security zones shown in [Figure 37-1](#).

- Interfaces E0 and E1 are members of the security zone Z1.
- Interface E2 is a member of the security zone Z2.
- Interface E3 is not a member of any of the security zone.

In this scenario, the following situations exist:

- Traffic flows freely between interfaces E0 and E1 because they are members of the same security zone (Z1).
- If no policies are configured, traffic will not flow between zones (for example, E0 and E2, E1 and E2, E3 and E1, and E3 and E2).
- Traffic can flow between interface E0 or E1 and E2 only when an explicit policy is configured to permit the traffic between zone Z1 and zone Z2.

Traffic can never flow between E3 and interface E0, E1 or E2 because E3 is not a part of any security zone.

Prime Infrastructure supports the zone-based firewall feature on Cisco ASR, ISR, and CSR routers. Using Prime Infrastructure, you can configure a zone-based firewall policy template and deploy it to multiple devices. After you deploy the zone-based configuration, you can navigate to the Device Work Center to view the deployed firewall configuration on a specific device.

To monitor the zone-based firewall, check the Zone-Based Firewall Monitor Hits capability on the Device Work Center or the Prime Infrastructure syslog feature, which supports zone-based firewall syslog messages.

Prime Infrastructure can configure Zone-Based Firewall either through CLI (over Telnet or SSH) or through WSMA. Zone-Based Firewall can be configured through WSMA in a more efficient and robust method and we recommend that you use the WSMA protocols for configuring Zone-Based Firewall. For more information on using WSMA with Prime Infrastructure, see [Configuring the Device using WSMA](#).

## Configuring a Zone-Based Firewall Template

To configure a zone-based firewall on more than one device, use a zone-based template to make the changes. For zone-based firewall templates, you must first design the zone-based firewall in the network by defining the zones in the network. In Prime Infrastructure, zones are represented by interface role global object, which dynamically selects the list of interfaces that belong to the zone. Next, define and create network objects in the firewall environment. The Zone-based firewall feature supports only IPv4 network in Prime Infrastructure. (IPv6 is not supported.)



### Note

The Zone-Based Firewall feature is supported on the following: ASR platform from Cisco IOS-XE Release 15.2(2)S or later, ISR G2 platform from Cisco IOS Release 15.0(1)M or later, ISR G3 platform from Cisco IOS-XE 15.3(2)S Release or later, and CSR platform from Cisco IOS-XE 15.3(1)S Release or later.

To configure a zone-based firewall template:

1. Define the zones. A security zone is defined as an interface role (see [Creating an Interface Role](#)).
2. Define the IPv4 network objects (see [Creating an IPv4 Network Object](#)).



### Note

Cisco Prime Infrastructure 2.0 supports only IPv4 network objects.

3. Design a firewall policy and deploy it to multiple devices (for more information, see [Creating a Policy Rule](#)).
4. Validate the configuration for a specific device (see [Creating a Zone-Based Firewall](#)).
5. Modify the global objects and template configuration (see [Creating a Zone-Based Firewall Policy Rules Template](#)).
6. Monitor the policy rules (see [Monitoring Policy Rules](#)).
7. Monitor the syslog messages (for more information, see [Where to Find Syslogs](#)).

To modify security zones, IPv4 network objects, and firewall policies, edit the firewall policy and redeploy it to the relevant devices.

## Creating an Interface Role

An Interface role allows you to dynamically select a group of interfaces without having to manually define explicitly interfaces on each device. For example, you can use interface roles to define the zones in a zone-based firewall configuration template. You might define an interface role with a naming pattern of DMZ\*. When you include this interface role in a template and deploy the template, the configuration is applied to all interfaces whose names begin with “DMZ” on the selected devices. As a result, you can, for example, assign a policy that enables anti-spoof checking on all DMZ interfaces to all relevant device interfaces with a single action.

For information to create an interface role, see [Creating an Interface Role](#).

## Creating an IPv4 Network Object

Network objects are logical collections of IP addresses or subnets that represent networks. Using network objects simplifies policy management.

For information to create an IPv4 network object, see [Creating Network Objects](#).

## Defining Device Override

Use the device override feature when a specific device is differed from the general network design.

To define the device override, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Shared Policy Objects > Shared > Interface Role** or **IPv4 Network Object**.
  - Step 2** In the Create/Edit Network Object or Interface Role page, select the Allow Value Override Per Device check box and define the values per specific device. The defined values will override the regular values defined for the Interface Role \ Network Object.
  - Step 3** Click **OK** to save the configurations.
- 

## Creating a Zone-Based Firewall Policy Rules Template

After you create a shared policy objects, create a zone-based firewall policy rules template.

To create a Zone-Based Firewall Policy Rules template, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > Security > Zone Based Firewall > Policy Rules**.
  - Step 2** In the Template Basic area, enter a name and a description in the appropriate fields.
  - Step 3** In the Validation Criteria area, choose a Device Type from the list and enter the OS Version.
  - Step 4** Enter the required fields. For descriptions of the template parameters, see the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide](#).
  - Step 5** Click **Save as New Template**. After you save the template, deploy it to your devices using the procedures in [Creating Feature-Level Configuration Templates](#).
- 

## Configuring a Zone-Based Firewall on a Single Device

To configure a zone-based firewall on a single device, use Device Work Center zone-based configuration to make the changes.


### Creating a Security Zone

To create a security zone, follow these steps:

**Note**

The Zone Based Firewall feature is supported on the ASR platform on Cisco IOS-XE Release 15.2 (2)S or later, ISR G2 platform on Cisco IOS release 15.0 (1) M or later, ISR G3 platform on Cisco IOS-XE Release 15.3(2)S or later, and CSR platform on Cisco IOS-XE Release 15.3(1)S.

---

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, then select a device.
- Step 2** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** subfolder.
- Step 3** In the Security subfolder, expand the **Zone Based Firewall > Common Building Blocks**, and then click **Zones**.
- Step 4** Click **Add Zone** to create the security zone.
- Step 5** Select a **Zone Name**.
- Step 6** Select the VRF of the zone.
- Select a VRF before assigning interfaces to the security zone. Only the interfaces that are assigned to the selected VRF can be assigned to the zone.
  - If the user selects the “global VRF”, only interfaces which are not assigned to any VRF can be assigned to the zone.
- Step 7** To assign the interfaces to the security zone, click the down arrow icon. The Interface Object Selector dialog box appears.
- In the Interface selector dialog box, select the **Interface** check box to select the interface from the list (can be multiple selection).
  - Click **OK** to save the configuration or click **Cancel** to cancel all of the changes that you have made without sending them to the router.
- Step 8** In the Advanced options column, click **Configure**. The Advanced Parameters Configuration dialog box appears.
- Step 9** Define a set of advanced parameters which would be applicable for the inspected traffic that goes through the interfaces that belongs to the zone. For each parameter, select the check box to the left of the parameter name to override the default value for the parameter and then select the new value for the parameter. (Optional) In the Advanced Parameters Configuration dialog box, do the following:
-  **Note** Advanced Parameters option is supported only on ASR1K series devices.
- 
- Select the **Alert** check box and select the **On** radio button to set the alert.
  - Select the **Maximum Destination** check box to set the maximum destination.
  - Select the **TCP SYN-Flood Rate per Destination** check box to set the TCP flood rate.
  - Select the **Basic Threat Detection Parameters** check box and select the **On** radio button to configure the FW drop threat detection rate, FW inspect threat detection rate, and FW SYN attack threat detection rate.
- Step 10** Click:
- OK** to save the configuration.
  - Cancel** to exit without saving.
- Step 11** To edit the existing security zone parameters, select the zone, and click **Edit** in the Advance options column. The Advanced Parameters Configuration dialog box appears.
- Step 12** In the Advanced Parameters Configuration dialog box, edit the values and click **Save** to save the changes. When you hover your mouse over the Advanced Options icon, the configured parameters will be displayed in the quick view window.
- Step 13** Enter the description for the zone, then click **Save**.
-

## Editing a Security Zone

To edit a security zone, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, then select a device.
  - Step 2** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** subfolder.
  - Step 3** In the Security subfolder, expand the **Zone Based Firewall > Common Building Blocks**, and then click **Zones**.
  - Step 4** In the Zones page, choose one of the following options:
    - a. Click the Zone parameters row, and edit the parameters. or
    - b. Select the zone, and click **Edit**. The selected Zone entity opens for editing.
  - Step 5** Click the **add** icon to assign the interface to the zone or to un-assign the existing interfaces from the zone. You can also change the Description of the zone and edit the advanced parameters of the zone.
  - Step 6** Click **Save** to save the configuration.
- 

## Configuring a Default-Zone

A default zone is a zone that is automatically assigned to all interfaces that are not assigned to any other zone on device.

To configure a default zone, follow these steps:



---

**Note** The Default-Zone feature is supported only on the ASR platform.

---

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, then select a device.
  - Step 2** From the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** subfolder.
  - Step 3** From the Security subfolder, expand the **Zone Based Firewall > Common Building Blocks**, and then click **Zones**.
  - Step 4** In the Zones page, click **Enable Default** to enable or disable the default security zone in the device. The default zone will host all of the interfaces that are not related to any zone.
  - Step 5** Click **OK** to save the configuration.
- 

## Creating a Policy Rule

To create a policy rule, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, then select a device.
  - Step 2** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** subfolder.
  - Step 3** In the Security subfolder, expand the **Zone Based Firewall** and then click **Policy Rules**. The Policy Rules page appears.

- Step 4** From the Policy Rules page, click **Add Rule** and complete the fields. When you add a rule, you can place a rule at the top or bottom of the policy or after/before an existing rule. Firewall Rules are processed according to their order. To control the order of the rules, select the location of the rule in the table and use Add Top or Add Bottom option to add the rule to the top or the bottom of the table. Select a rule and use Add After or Add Before option to add the rule before or after an existing rule. You can place a rule at any given location and later use drag and drop to change its location.
- Step 5** (Optional) Enter the firewall rule name. If you do not provide the name for the firewall rule, the system generates a name for the firewall rule. You cannot use these formats rule\_<number> or EMS\_rule\_<number> to create the firewall rule name (For example, rule\_1). These are system reserved formats.
- Step 6** Select the source and destination zones for the rule, the rule is applicable only for traffic that flows from the source zone to the destination zone. Note that the source and destination zones must be different.
- Step 7** To add the source and the destination IP address, click the **add** icon. The Source/Destination IP address dialog box appears.
- In the Source/Destination IP address dialog box, select the **Any** check box to set the value to any.
  - Enter the Source/ Destination IP addresses.
  - Click the + button to add the new IP address and the subnet.
  - Click the - button to remove an IP/subnet.
  - Click **OK** to save the configurations or click **Cancel** to cancel all of the changes that you have made without sending them to the router.
- Step 8** (Optional) Set the Service values. To add or remove the service, click the down arrow icon. The Firewall Service dialog box appears. You can also select a predefined Service. For creating services, see [Creating a Service Group](#).
- In the Firewall Service dialog box, select the service or port-based application check box to select the application or the service for the rule.
  - Select specific TCP / UDP ports by selecting TCP or UDP, close the window and enter the list of ports to be used in the text box that appears next to the TCP or UDP icon. For viewing port-based applications, see [Assigning TCP/UDP Ports on an Application](#).
  - Use the navigation arrow buttons to navigate backward.
  - Click **OK** to save the configurations.
- Step 9** Select the appropriate action. The options are: **Drop**, **Drop and Log**, **Inspect**, **Pass**, and **Pass and Log**.
- Step 10** If you select the action to inspect, click **Configure** in the Advance options column. The Advanced Parameters Configuration dialog box appears.
- Step 11** In the Advanced Parameters Configuration dialog box, do the following:
- To customize the device default value, select the Parameter check box and set the new value.
  - To apply the device default value, unselect the Parameter check box.
  - To view the firewall rule default parameters, see [Configuring a Default Parameters Map](#).
  - When you hover your mouse cursor over the Advanced Options icon, the configured parameters are displayed in the quick view window.
- [Table 37-1](#) lists the elements on the policy rule page.
- Step 12** Click **Save** to apply the rule to the device. For description of the elements, see the [Cisco Prime Infrastructure 3.0 Reference Guide](#).



## Monitoring Policy Rules

The monitoring feature allows you to monitor policy rules. You can identify the most-used rules, and you can troubleshoot a specific rule and verify hits for the selected rule.

To monitor policy rules, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, then select a device.
  - Step 2** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** subfolder.
  - Step 3** In the Security subfolder, expand the **Zone Based Firewall** and then click **Policy Rules**. The Firewall Rules page appears.
  - Step 4** In the Firewall Rules page, click **Hit Counters** and use one of the following options to analyze the sessions and packets hit counters for the firewall rules.
  - Step 5** Click the **Show all** option to view the packets and sessions counters for all firewall rules. The packets and sessions counters are displayed in two separate columns.



---

**Note** When you select the **Show all** option, the system will display a warning message stating that it may take more time to complete this operation. Sessions hit counters are not applicable for Drop/Pass rules. Similarly, packet hit counters are not applicable for Inspection rules.

---

- Step 6** To know the time of the last update for the rules, hover the mouse cursor over the column names or click the **Last Update Time** option in the Hit Counters.
  - Step 7** Click the **Show for selected rules** option to show the hit counters for a specific rule or a couple of selected rules. The hit counters would be displayed in a popup dialog box with a refresh button that allows quick refresh of the data.
  - Step 8** Use the predefined filters options available in the top-right corner of the table to display the rules at the top or bottom based on the packets/sessions counts.
  - Step 9** Click **Reset All Counters** to discard all of the rules counters on the device. The application will display a warning message before resetting the rules counters.
- 

## Editing a Policy Rule

To edit a policy rule, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, then select a device.
  - Step 2** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** subfolder.
  - Step 3** In the Security subfolder, expand the **Zone Based Firewall** and then click **Policy Rules**. The Firewall Rules page appears.
  - Step 4** In the Firewall Rules page, choose one of the following options:
    - Click the Rules parameters row and edit the parameters.
    - Select the check box to select the rule, and then click **Edit**. The selected Rule opens for edit. You cannot edit the name of the policy rule.



**Note** You can specify the Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) / User Datagram Protocol (UDP) port range in the firewall rule service. When you add a new rule or edit an existing rule under the Service column, click object selector to assign the TCP / UDP, and click **OK**. You can define the port numbers in the text box that appears near the protocol icon. Also, you can define the port range in the format of <start-port-number>-<end-port-number>, and this range can be configured for that specific protocol (TCP or UDP).

- You can re-order firewall rules by dragging a rule and dropping it in a different location.

**Step 5** Click **Save** to apply the changes in the device.

## Creating a Service Group

You can create, update or delete a service groups. Service group provides an option to group together several port-based applications to logical groups which could be used in firewall policies.

For example, you can define a browsing service-group object and assign both HTTP and HTTPS applications to it. Then you can use this browsing service-group in firewall rules to permit or deny browsing traffic, rather than selecting both HTTP and HTTPS in those rules.

To create a service group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, then select a device.
- Step 2** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** subfolder.
- Step 3** In the Security subfolder, expand the **Zone Based Firewall > Common Building Blocks**, and then click **Service Groups**. The Service Groups page appears.
- Step 4** To create the Service Group:
- In the Service Group page, click **Add Service Group** and enter the Service Group Name. You cannot change the name after creating the Service Group. Also, you cannot create a service group without an application (see [Creating Custom Applications](#)).
  - To assign Applications, click the down arrow icon.
  - In the Applications dialog box, select the **Applications** check box to select one or more applications from the list, then click **OK**.
- Step 5** To edit an existing Service Group, do one of the following:
- In the Service Groups page, click the Service Group parameters row and edit the parameters.
  - Select the service group and click **Edit**. You can add new applications or remove an already selected application.
  - To remove an application from the selected list, hover your mouse cursor over the application name and click **X**.
- Step 6** Click **Save** to apply your changes to the device.
-

## Assigning TCP/UDP Ports on an Application

You can assign or unassign the Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) / User Datagram Protocol (UDP) ports to an application.

**Note**

When you click **Save** in the following procedure, your changes are deployed on the device. You cannot review the requested operation or remove the request from the pending changes queue.

To assign or unassign TCP/UDP ports for an application, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, then select a device.
- Step 2** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** subfolder.
- Step 3** In the Security subfolder, expand the **Zone Based Firewall > Common Building Blocks**, and then click **Port Mappings**. The Port Application Mapping page appears.

**Note**

Displays the application name that is driven from the device.

- Step 4** To assign or unassign the TCP/UDP ports to an application, click the application and update its TCP/UDP ports value. The TCP/UDP Port values are assigned to the specific application.
  - a. Assign port(s) by defining one or more ports separated by comma (For example: 1234, 2222 and so on).
  - b. Assign port(s) by defining the port range (For example: 1111-1118). You can also assign a combination of ports and port ranges.
  - c. Unassign port(s) by deleting the existing port values.
- Step 5** Click **Save** to save the configurations.

## Configuring a Default Parameters Map

To configure a default parameters, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, then select a device.
- Step 2** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** subfolder.
- Step 3** In the Security subfolder, expand the **Zone Based Firewall** and then click **Default Parameters**. The Default Parameters page appears.
- Step 4** In the Default Parameters page, change the parameters value.

**Note**

You can change the default parameters only on ISR devices.

- Step 5** Click **Save** to save the configuration.

## Assigning an Interface for a Zone

The interfaces view gives an overview of the interfaces on the device which are applicable for firewall inspection. The view allows viewing and modifying the assignment of those interfaces to security zones.

To assign or unassign an interface for a zone, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**, then select a device.
  - Step 2** In the Feature Configuration pane, expand the **Security** subfolder.
  - Step 3** In the Security subfolder, expand the **Zone Based Firewall** and then click **Interfaces**.
  - Step 4** In the Interface page, select the interface that you want to change and click the down arrow icon. The Zone dialog box appears.
  - Step 5** In the Zone dialog box, select the new security zone for the interface. If the selected interface is already assigned to a zone, you will get a warning message.
  - Step 6** Click **Yes** on the warning message if you want to change the assignment of that interface.
  - Step 7** To un-assign the interface from the specific zone, select the interface and delete the zone information.
  - Step 8** Click **Save** to save and apply your changes.
- 

## Creating a Routing Protocol

A routing protocol specifies how routers:

- Communicate with other routers in a network
- Select routing paths to transmit data between nodes in a computer network
- Share network information with other routers

The following sections describe the routing protocols supported by Prime Infrastructure.

## Creating a Static Route

Static routing is the simplest form of routing, where the network administrator manually enters routes into a routing table. The route does not change until the network administrator changes it. Static routing is normally used when there are very few devices to be configured and the administrator is very sure that the routes do not change. The main drawback of static routing is that a change in the network topology or a failure in the external network cannot be handled, because routes that are configured manually must be updated to fix any lost connectivity.

To create a static route, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Choose the device from the list or click **Add Device** to create a new device, then configure the device.
  - Step 3** After selecting the device, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 4** Expand the **Routing** folder, and then click **Static**. The Static Routing page appears with options to configure IPv4 static routes.

- Step 5** To configure an IPv4 static route, do the following:
- a. In the **IPv4 Static Routes** page, click **Add Row**, and then complete the fields.  
For Permanent Route, choose either of the following:
    - **True** to specify that the route will not be removed from the routing table, even if the next-hop interface shuts down or the next-hop IP address is not reachable.
    - **False** to specify that the route will be removed from the routing table, even if the next-hop interface shuts down or the next-hop IP address is not reachable.
  - b. Click **Save**.
  - c. Click **Save** to save the configuration.
- 

## Creating a RIP Route

Routing Information Protocol (RIP) is a distance-vector routing protocol that uses hop count as a routing metric. RIP implements a limit of 15 hops in a path from source to a destination, to prevent routing loops. The hop-count limit also limits the size of the networks that RIP supports. RIP sends its routing table every 30 seconds.

The variants of RIP are RIP version 1 (described in RFC1058) and RIP version 2 (described in RFC2453). RIP uses the split horizon, route poisoning, and holddown mechanisms to prevent incorrect routing information from being propagated.

To create a RIP route, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
- Step 2** Choose the device from the list or click **Add Device** to create a new device, then configure the device.
- Step 3** After selecting the device, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
- Step 4** Expand the **Routing** folder, and then click **RIP**. The RIP Routing page appears with options to configure IPv4 RIP routes.
- Step 5** To configure an IPv4 RIP route, do the following:
- a. In the **IPv4 RIP Routes** page, select the RIP version.
  - b. Click **Add Row**, and then complete the fields.
  - c. Click **Save**.
  - d. Click **Passive Interface** to select the passive interface that you want to add.
  - e. Click **Save** to save the configuration.
- 

## Creating an EIGRP Route

In EIGRP (an enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol) when an entry in the routing table changes in any of the routers, it notifies its neighbors of the change only, rather than sending the entire routing table. Every router in the network sends a “hello” packet periodically so that all routers on the network understand the states of their neighbors. If a “hello” packet is not received from a router during a certain period of time, it is assumed that the router is inoperative.

EIGRP uses the Diffusing Update Algorithm (DUAL) to determine the most efficient route to a destination and provides a mechanism for fast convergence. Routers using EIGRP and IGRP can interoperate because the routing metric used with one protocol can be easily translated into the routing metric of the other protocol.

To create an EIGRP route, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Choose the device from the list or click **Add Device** to create a new device, then configure the device.
  - Step 3** After selecting the device, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 4** Expand the **Routing** folder, and then click **EIGRP**. The EIGRP Routing page appears with options to configure IPv4 EIGRP routes.
  - Step 5** To configure an IPv4 EIGRP route, do the following:
    - a. In the **IPv4 EIGRP Routes** page, click **Add Row**, and then complete the fields.
    - b. Click **Save**.
    - c. Click **Add Interface** to select the passive interface that you want to associate to the Autonomous System (AS) number created.
    - d. Click **Save** to save the configuration.
- 

## Creating an OSPF Route

Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) is a standards-based routing protocol that uses the Shortest Path First (SPF) algorithm to determine the best route to its destination. OSPF sends Link State Advertisements (LSAs) to all other routers within the same area. OSPF only sends routing updates for the changes only; it does not send the entire routing table.

To create an OSPF route, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Choose the device from the list or click **Add Device** to create a new device, then configure the device.
  - Step 3** After selecting the device, click **Configuration**. The Feature Configuration pane appears.
  - Step 4** Expand the **Routing** folder, and then click **OSPF**. The OSPF Processes page appears with options to configure IPv4 OSPF processes.
  - Step 5** To configure an IPv4 OSPF process, do the following:
    - a. In the **IPv4 OSPF Processes** page, click **Add Row**, and then complete the fields.
    - b. Click **Save**.
    - c. Click **Passive Interfaces** to select the passive interface that you want to associate to the process created.
    - d. Click **Advanced**. The Advanced OSPF IPv4 Configuration dialog box appears.
    - e. Click **Networks > Add Row**, and then complete the fields.
    - f. Click **Route Summarization > Add Row**, and then complete the fields.
    - g. Click **OK**.

- h. Click **Save** to save the configuration.
- 

## Configuring NAM with Application Servers

Prime Infrastructure supports various features to be configured on NAM, remotely. The NAM Application Servers feature enables you to configure the NAM device with Application servers.

To Configure the parameters of the Application servers, with NAM device, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Application Visibility & Control > NAM Application Servers**.
  - Step 2** Click **Add**.
  - Step 3** Enter the IP address of the server in **Add Servers** dialog box and click **Add** button inside the dialog box. The list of server IP addresses are displayed under **IP address** column.
  - Step 4** Select the IP addresses of the servers to be deployed to the NAM device, then Click **Add to NAM Server lists**.
  - Step 5** Select the IP Address of one or more of the NAM devices in the **Add Server(s) to NAM Server List** dialog box, and click **Add** button within the dialog box.

The selected device IP addresses are displayed under **Part of NAM Server List on** column, and the server parameters get configured on the selected NAM devices.

---







## Ensuring Consistent Application Experiences

---

Prime Infrastructure can help ensure high-quality WAN end-user experiences across applications at multiple sites.

- [Evaluating Service Health](#)
- [Establishing Performance Baselines](#)
- [Identifying Optimization Candidates](#)
- [Validating Optimization ROI](#)
- [Monitoring Optimized Flows](#)



**Note**

---

To use this feature, your Cisco Prime Infrastructure implementation must include Assurance licenses.

---

Network operations staff must share a common data resource that gives them complete visibility into network performance data throughout every stage of the optimization cycle, including:

- Identifying the sites and applications that are candidates for optimization, so that network designers can plan where application optimization is critical (see [Evaluating Service Health](#)).
- Establishing site and application performance baselines (see [Establishing Performance Baselines](#)).

Prime Infrastructure performs baselining for key performance metrics and detects abnormal deviations of baselined values. The key performance metrics include:

- Server Response Time
- Client Transaction Time
- Network Round-Trip Time
- MOS score
- Jitters
- Packet loss
- Bytes sent/received
- Interface utilization
- CPU Utilization
- Memory Utilization

Prime Infrastructure determines the baseline (mean) for each metric by taking the average values of the metric during the last 30 days. Average values are computed separately for each hour of the day for each monitored entity (such as interface, host, site, or application). For example, the baseline for HTTP response time of a given server between 9AM to 10AM today will be different from the baseline of the same server between 7PM to 8PM yesterday.

Prime Infrastructure also computes the metrics' standard deviations using the last 30 days of data. Similar to averages, standard deviations are computed separately for each hour of the day for each monitored entity.

- Post-implementation validation that WAN performance and application stability have actually improved (see [Validating Optimization ROI](#)).

Because the mean and standard deviation of each metric vary over time, Prime Infrastructure continuously reevaluates the thresholds used to compute the health scores (adaptive thresholds). Prime Infrastructure computes baselines and thresholds every hour, and evaluates health scores every five minutes. In each interval:

- a. Health scores are computed for every application-site combination.
- b. These health scores are aggregated to derive the overall health of each business-critical application (across all sites) and overall health of each site (across all business-critical applications).

When aggregating across sites/applications, the worst scores are used. For example, if any business-critical application of a given site is rated “red,” that site is also rated “red” for that interval. See [Health Rules](#) for more information.

- Ongoing monitoring and troubleshooting of the optimized flows (see [Monitoring Optimized Flows](#)).

Using the baseline means and standard deviations, Prime Infrastructure can monitor application and service health issues by detecting abnormal deviations of key metrics from their baselined values and assign a health scores (red, yellow, or green) for each application and site for each monitoring interval.

- A red score indicates a highly abnormal deviation from baseline (deviations from baselines with a probability of less than 0.1%).
- A yellow score indicates a mildly abnormal deviation (deviations with a probability of less than 1%).
- A green score indicates that the metric is within its normal range.
- A gray score indicates there is insufficient data for a site/application.

Cisco Prime Infrastructure offers a consistent data resource for each of these stages in performance optimization.

## Evaluating Service Health

Choose **Services > Application Visibility & Control > Service Health** to view the sites and their business critical applications. Each application for a site is given a score for each of the KPIs (Key Performance Indicators) that are available in the system:

- **Traffic** (megabits per second)
- **Client Experience** (varies based on application type: average transaction time for transaction-based applications such as HTTP, or MOS code for real-time applications such as RTP)
- **Network Performance** (average network time for HTTP, jitter and Package Loss for RTP)

- **Application Response** (applicable only for transaction-based applications such as HTTP)

The KPI scores can come from multiple data sources; scores are computed across all data sources for all of the KPIs, and the overall score in the main dashboard is an aggregate of these scores. Scores are assigned as red, yellow, or green based on the warning and critical threshold values assigned in Health rules page. You can navigate to this page by clicking **Launch Health Rules** in the **Services > Application Visibility & Control > Service Health** page. You can use this option to modify the health rule settings as necessary for your network.

For data to be displayed in Service Health, there must be at least one hour of data. After the first hour, the previous hour's data is overlaid on the data line as the historical data for the next hour. After the first day, standard deviation and mean are based on the hourly data for the previous day.

These scores are stored for seven days. When you view the data for a previous day, the maximum moving time interval is six hours (you can look at up to six hours of data at a time).

## Creating Custom Applications

Choose **Services > Application Visibility & Control > Applications and Services** to create and manage custom applications and services. *Services* are groups of applications. Prime Infrastructure provides a default set of applications and services consistent with the Cisco NBAR standard. (See [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps6616/products\\_ios\\_protocol\\_group\\_home.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps6616/products_ios_protocol_group_home.html) for more information.)

You can create custom applications that contain the definitions you require and which are not available (either from the device or from Prime Infrastructure). After you create an application, you can deploy the application to the supported devices. Deploying the application definition to the device makes Netflow exported data consistent with Prime Infrastructure and other management tools.

If you deploy a custom application to a device and later want to remove it, you must undeploy the application using the **Applications and Services** option. If you delete the custom application from Prime Infrastructure only, the custom application remains active on the device.

Applications without definitions are displayed as “unknown.”

Custom applications are organized under services; services are organized by category and subcategory to align with the Cisco NBAR standard. For more information about NBAR, see [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps6616/products\\_ios\\_protocol\\_group\\_home.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps6616/products_ios_protocol_group_home.html).

To create a custom application, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Application Visibility & Control > Applications and Services**.
  - Step 2** Some applications are already set as “Business Critical”. To view the currently defined business critical applications, click **Configure Business Critical Applications** in the top left corner of the window.
  - Step 3** Enter any additional required fields, then click **Create**.
  - Step 4** Push your new application to a NAM or an ASR/ISR.
    - a. Choose the **User Defined Applications**, from the show drop-down list, and select the new application check box, then click **Deploy**.
    - b. In the Device Selection dialog box, select the NAM device or the ISR/ASR to which this application is to be deployed, then click **Submit**.
    - c. Click **View Jobs** to display the status of the deployment job.

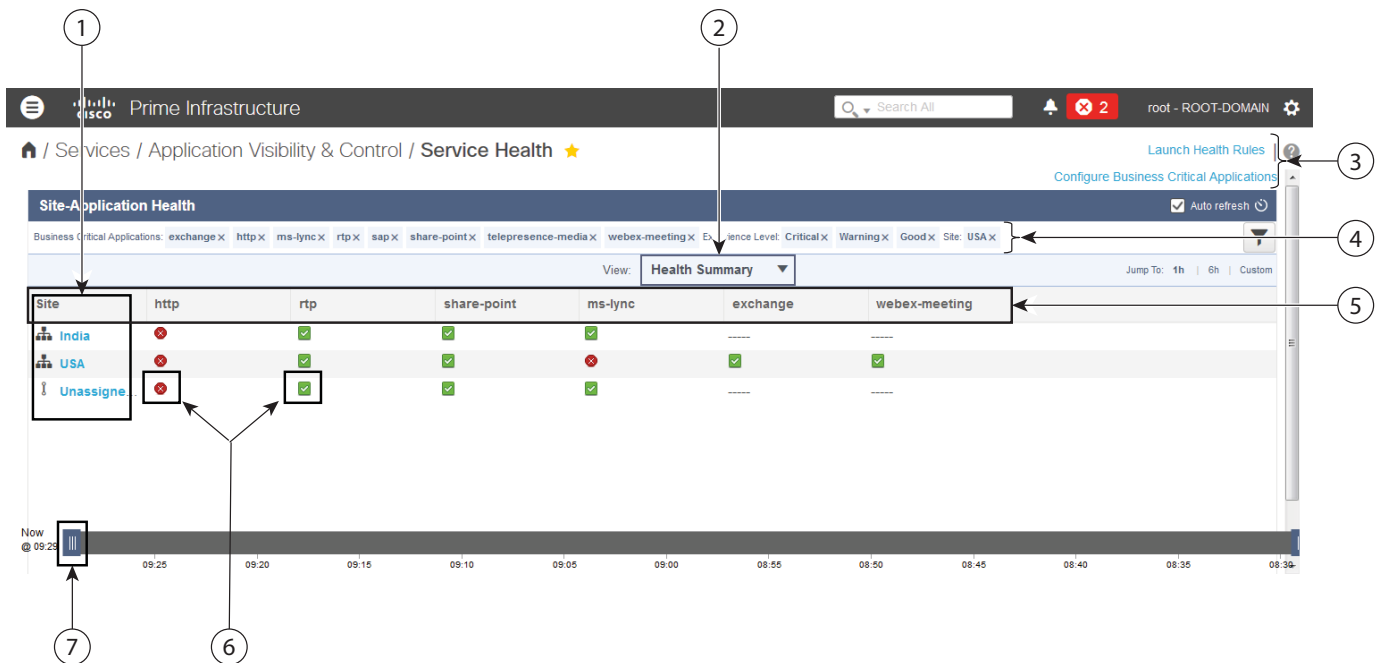


**Note** Custom Application support for ISR G2 is only from Cisco IOS Release 15.3 onwards.

## Service Health Window

The Service Health window allows you to view the information shown in [Figure 38-1](#) and described in

**Figure 38-1** *Services > Application Visibility & Control > Service Health Window*



**Table 38-1** *Services > Application Visibility & Control > Service Health Window Descriptions*

|   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Lists the location groups for the filter you selected.                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 2 | Click to toggle between the Health Summary and the Health Timeline.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 3 | Provides quick links to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Health Rules</b> page, where you can modify the health rule settings as necessary for your network.</li> <li>• View and modify the currently defined business critical applications.</li> </ul> |
| 4 | Displays the filter you're currently viewing. You can click any filter to remove it and refresh the window.                                                                                                                                                          |
| 5 | Lists the business critical applications.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 6 | Colored symbols indicate good, warning, and critical threshold values based on the health rule setting specified in <b>Health Rules</b> page.                                                                                                                        |
| 7 | Move the slider to specify the time range in which you want to view service health information.                                                                                                                                                                      |

403209

## Viewing the Health Timeline

Choose **Services > Application Visibility & Control > Service Health**, then click **Health Summary**. Prime Infrastructure changes to display the health information in a timeline.

## Health Rules

The data displayed in **Services > Application Visibility & Control > Service Health** is computed using health rules. You can customize the health rules by clicking the desired row and editing the Critical and Warning values.

- Critical—turns red when the data value exceeds the specified Critical value.
- Warning—turns yellow when the data value exceeds the Warning value.

If the health rule does not exceed the specified Critical or Warning values, it is green.

For example, for Traffic Rate, you might specify the T1 the baseline value of 100 Mbps for a given site, application, and datasource, and the standard deviation value of 20 Mbps.

If the Traffic Rate exceeds 161.8 Mbps, which is  $100 + (3.09 \times 20)$ , you see a red bar indicating a critical warning.

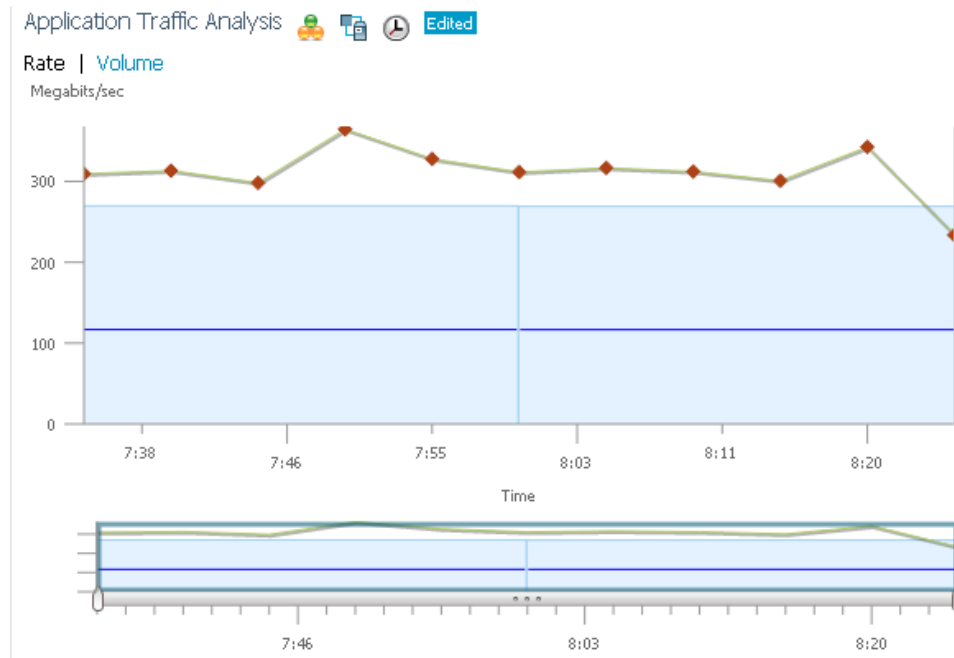
You can click any of the colored bars to get further details.

## Enabling Baselineing

Standard deviation and mean values are used to compute the scores in Service Health. Baselineing is not enabled by default. When baselineing is enabled:

- The blue box indicates the standard deviation.
- The blue line indicates the mean value for that hour.

Figure 38-2 Sample Baseline Values



To enable baselining, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Dashboard > Performance > Application**.

Baselining is supported by these dashlets:

- Application Traffic Analysis—Shows the aggregate bandwidth rate/volume for a site/enterprise one application, service, or set of applications.
- Application ART Analysis—Shows the response times for a transaction.

**Step 2** To enable application traffic analysis baselining:

- Open the **Application Traffic Analysis** dashlet, hover your cursor over the dashlet icons and click **Dashlet Options**.
- Select the **Baseline** check box and save your changes.

**Step 3** To enable application response time analysis baselining:

- Open the **Application ART Analysis** dashlet, hover your cursor over the dashlet icons and click **Dashlet Options**.
- Choose a metric from the **Metric Type** drop-down list.  
If you choose the **Server Response Time** metric, you can select an individual Application Server to see what the response time of that server has been in the past.
- Select the **Baseline** check box and save your changes.

## Establishing Performance Baselines

Follow these steps to establish the standard performance characteristics of your candidate applications and sites before implementing WAN optimizations.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Dashboard > Performance > Application**.
- Step 2** Add the following dashlets (see [Adding Dashlets](#)) to this page:
- Worst N Clients by ART Metrics
  - Worst N Sites by ART Metrics
  - Application Server Performance
  - Application Traffic Analysis
- Step 3** Use these dashlets to establish the performance characteristics of your optimization candidates as currently configured.
- **Worst N Clients by ART Metrics:** For the worst-performing clients and applications: Maximum and average transaction times, and 24-hour performance trend.
  - **Worst N Sites by ART Metrics:** The same information for the worst-performing sites and applications.
  - **Application Server Performance:** For all application servers: the maximum and average server response time, and a 24-hour performance trend.
  - **Application Traffic Analysis:** Gives 24-hour application traffic metrics in bytes per second and packets per second. Calculates statistical mean, minimum, maximum, median, and first and second standard deviation for the period,
- You can sort by any column in any dashlet by clicking the column heading. You can also filter the data in the dashlets by **Time Frame**, **Site**, and **Application**.
- Step 4** Click the **Site** tab and use **Top N Applications**, **Top N Devices with Most Alarms**, **Top N Clients** and **Worst N Clients by ART Metrics** as you did in Step 3.
- 

## Identifying Optimization Candidates

Follow these steps to identify your network's lowest performing applications, clients, servers, and network links.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Dashboard > Performance > WAN Optimization**.
- Step 2** Add the following dashlets (see [Adding Dashlets](#)) to this dashboard.
- Application Traffic
  - Server Traffic
  - Client Traffic
  - Network Links
- Step 3** Using these dashlets, identify the optimization candidates.

- All of the dashlets show the current traffic rate (in bytes per second), average number of concurrent connections, and average transaction time in milliseconds, for every application, client, server, or network link.
- **Network Links** also shows the sites for that client and server endpoints of each link, and the average length of time that the link exists.
- **Server Traffic** shows both the server IP address and the application that it serves.

**Step 4** Sort and filter the performance data as needed.

- To sort on any column in any dashlet, click the column heading.
- To filter the data displayed in all of the dashlets by **Time Frame**, **Site**, or **Application**, enter or select the filter criteria that you want on the **Filters** line and click **Go**.
- To filter within a dashlet, click its Filter icon and specify a Quick or Advanced Filter, or use a Preset Filter.

**Step 5** For a quick report of the same data:

- Choose **Report > Report Launch Pad**.
  - Specify filter and other criteria for the report, then click **Run**.
- 

## Validating Optimization ROI

After you have deployed changes at candidate sites, follow these steps to validate the return on your optimization investment.

**Step 1** Choose **Dashboard > Performance > WAN Optimization**.

The dashlets on this page show:

- **Transaction Time (Client Experience)**—Graphs average client transaction times (in milliseconds) for the past 24 hours, with separate lines for optimized traffic and pass-through traffic (in which optimization is turned off). With optimization enabled, you should see a drop in the optimized traffic time when compared to the pass-through time.
- **Average Concurrent Connections (Optimized vs Passthru)**—Graphs the average number of concurrent client and pass through connections over a specified time period.
- **Traffic Volume and Compression Ratio**—Graphs the bandwidth reduction ratio between the number of bytes before compression and the number of bytes after compression.
- **Multi-Segment Network Time (Client LAN-WAN - Server LAN)**—Graphs the network time between the multiple segments.

**Step 2** You can filter the data in the dashlets by **Time Frame**, **Client Site**, **Server Site**, and **Application**.

**Step 3** To generate a report:

- Choose **Tools > Reports > Report Launch Pad**, then choose **Performance > WAN Application Performance Analysis Summary**.
  - Specify the filter and other settings for the report, then click **Run**.
-



# Monitoring Optimized Flows

Follow these steps to monitor optimized WAN traffic.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Dashboard > Performance > WAN Optimization**.
- Step 2** In the **Multi-Segment Analysis** dashlet, click **View Multi-Segment Analysis**.
- Step 3** Click the **Conversations** tab to see individual client/server sessions, or the **Site to Site** tab to see aggregated site traffic. For each client (or client site) and server (or server site) pair and application in use, these pages show:
- **Average and Max Transaction Time**—The time between the client request and the final response packet from the server. Transaction time will vary with client uses and application types, as well as with network latency. Transaction Time is a key indicator in monitoring client experiences and detecting application performance problems.
  - **Average Client Network Time**—The network time between a client and the local switch or router. In Wide Area Application Services (WAAS) monitoring, Client Network Time from a WAE client data source represents the network RTT between the client and its edge WAE, while Client Network Time from the WAE server data source represents the WAN RTT (between the edge and core WAEs).
  - **Average WAN Network Time**—The time across the WAN segment (between the edge routers at the client and server locations).
  - **Average Server Network Time**—The network time between a server and NAM probing point. In WAAS monitoring, Server Network Time from a server data source represents the network time between the server and its core WAE.
  - **Average Server Response Time**—The average time it takes an application server to respond to a request. This is the time between the client request arriving at the server and the first response packet being returned by the server. Increases in the server response time usually indicate problems with application server resources, such as the CPU, Memory, Disk, or I/O.
  - **Traffic Volume**—The volume of bytes per second in each of the Client, WAN, and Server segments.
- Step 4** Sort and filter the performance data as needed.
- To sort any column, click the column heading.
  - You can filter the data displayed by **Time Frame**, or click the Filter icon and specify a Quick or Advanced Filter, or use a Preset Filter.
-





## Troubleshooting Applications

---

Use the following procedure to determine if there are any problem indications associated with any of the specific applications being run across the network by the end user.

### Before You Begin

This feature requires:

- Integration with an ISE server (to access endpoint information).
- That session information (NetFlow/NAM data, Assurance licenses) is available.

---

**Step 1** To view the applications accessed by the end user and the response time for the applications for the user's devices, open the User 360° View for that user and click the **Applications** tab.

**Step 2** This tab displays the following information:

- Endpoint
- Mac address
- Application
- Last one hour volume (in MB)

To get more information about an application, choose **Dashboard > Performance > Application**.

---





## Monitoring Microsoft Lync Traffic

---

You can use Prime Infrastructure to monitor the Microsoft Lync traffic in your network. The Microsoft Lync Software Defined Network (SDN) API provides an interface for network management systems to access Microsoft Lync network diagnostic data for monitoring Lync network traffic and optimizing Microsoft Lync quality of service. Prime Infrastructure processes and filters Microsoft Lync quality update messages and aggregates Microsoft Lync calls. You can view volume trends over time and get a summary of call types, including filtering based on time and location groups. You can also view individual calls and troubleshoot individual call streams.

### Related Topics

- [Setting Up Lync Monitoring](#)
- [Viewing Microsoft Lync Data](#)
- [Monitoring End-User Microsoft Lync Experience](#)
- [Monitoring Microsoft Lync Data Between Sites](#)

## Setting Up Lync Monitoring

You must register Prime Infrastructure as a receiver of Microsoft Lync data in order to monitor and provide a centralized view of how Microsoft Lync is deployed in your network.

On your SDN server, edit the LyncDialogListener.exe file to add the following lines. The LyncDialogListener.exe.config file is located in the Lync SCN API installation directory at the following default location: C:\Program Files\Microsoft Lync Server\Microsoft Lync SDN API.

```
<add key="submituri" value="https://PI_server_name/webacs/lyncData"/>
```

where *https://PI\_server\_name* is the name of your Prime Infrastructure as specified in the Trusted Root Certification Authorities certificate.

```
<add key="clientcertificateid" value="value"/>
```

where *value* is the certificate value of your Prime Infrastructure server as specified in the Trusted Root Certification Authorities certificate.

Alternately, if you use the Microsoft SDN interface to enter your Prime Infrastructure server details, you must accept the SSL certificate in order to enable XML communication over secure HTTP.

After you register Prime Infrastructure as a receiver of Microsoft Lync data, all Microsoft Lync details are sent to Prime Infrastructure.

## Viewing Microsoft Lync Data

After you register Prime Infrastructure as a receiver of Microsoft Lync data, all Microsoft Lync details are sent to Prime Infrastructure. To monitor Microsoft Lync data:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Application Visibility & Control > Lync Monitoring**.
- Step 2** Click on any of the colored bars, which represent the different call types and the respective call volume over the specified time period, to display additional details. The Lync Conversations table lists the aggregated conversations for the call type you select.
- Step 3** From the Lync Conversations table, click the arrow next to a Caller to expand and view the details of that conversation, from the Caller to the Callee. For example, if you expand a video conversation, there are 4 rows describing the following details:
- Audio details from Caller to Callee
  - Audio details from Callee to Caller
  - Video details from Caller to Callee
  - Video details from Callee to Caller
- Step 4** Click the Filter icon to view a list of conversations in a selected time frame, from a specific caller site, or from a specific callee site.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Setting Up Lync Monitoring](#)
- [Monitoring End-User Microsoft Lync Experience](#)
- [Monitoring Microsoft Lync Data Between Sites](#)

## Monitoring End-User Microsoft Lync Experience

If you receive a call that an end-user is experiencing is having a problem with calls, you can use Prime Infrastructure to view the Microsoft Lync calls for a particular user, and view the list of calls that have the most jitter or packet loss.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Application Visibility & Control > Lync Monitoring**.
- Step 2** Click the Filter icon, and then select the site in which the end-user belongs.  
Prime Infrastructure displays the call volume over the last 6 hours.
- Step 3** If you know the time in which the end-user was experience call problems, click the Filter icon and under Time Filter, enter the parameters for the desired time.
- Step 4** Click on the colored bars that corresponds to Audio call in the time period in which the problems occurred. The Lync Conversations table lists the aggregated conversations for the call type you select.
- Step 5** From the Lync Conversations table, click the arrow next to the end-user who experienced call issues to expand and view the details of that conversation, from the Caller to the Callee. For example, if you expand a video conversation, there are 4 rows describing the following details:
- Audio details from Caller to Callee

- Audio details from Callee to Caller
- Video details from Caller to Callee
- Video details from Callee to Caller

Prime Infrastructure displays the call metrics of the conversation.

#### Related Topics

- [Setting Up Lync Monitoring](#)
- [Viewing Microsoft Lync Data](#)
- [Monitoring Microsoft Lync Data Between Sites](#)

## Monitoring Microsoft Lync Data Between Sites

You can use Prime Infrastructure to view the Microsoft Lync data between sites. For example, you can monitor all Microsoft Lync calls that are placed from a particular site to a particular site.

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Application Visibility & Control > Lync Monitoring**.
- Step 2** Click the Filter icon, and under Caller Site, select a site from where the Microsoft Lync calls are placed.
- Step 3** From the Filter icon, under Callee Site, select a site for where the Microsoft Lync calls are received.
- Prime Infrastructure displays the call volume in 5-minute increments for the previous 6 hours for the total calls of each type—video, voice, and appsharing—between the sites you selected.

## Understanding Voice Quality Value

When you choose **Services > Application Visibility & Control > Lync Monitoring**, then click on a call type (audio, video, or application sharing), Prime Infrastructure displays metrics about the Microsoft Lync conversation. Audio call details include a numerical mean opinion score (MOS) value, for which Prime Infrastructure assigns a value that describes the voice quality of the experience that is being delivered to end users as described in the following table:

MOS Value	Prime Infrastructure Value
Greater than 3.5	Good
2-3.5	Fair
Less than 2	Poor

#### Related Topics

- [Setting Up Lync Monitoring](#)
- [Viewing Microsoft Lync Data](#)
- [Monitoring End-User Microsoft Lync Experience](#)







## Using Mediatrace

---

### Troubleshooting RTP and TCP Flows Using Mediatrace

The Mediatrace troubleshooting tool generates a table that lists the currently active RTP streams or TCP sessions. Using these Mediatrace tables and their associated options, you can:

- Identify and select RTP or TCP flows with problems.
- Troubleshoot problems with RTP or TCP flows.
- Troubleshoot problems with RTP or TCP flows between any two arbitrary endpoints.
- Troubleshoot problems with RTP flows starting from the RTP Conversations dashlet.
- Identify and compare flow performance indicators and data sources.

#### Related Topics

- [Using the Mediatrace Tables](#)
- [Running Mediatrace from Selected RTP or TCP Flows](#)
- [Launching an Ad Hoc Mediatrace From Endpoints](#)
- [Troubleshooting Worst RTP Endpoints Using Dashlets](#)
- [Comparing Flow Data From Multiple Sources](#)
- [Managing Metrics](#)

### Using the Mediatrace Tables

The flow information shown in the RTP Streams and TCP Sessions tables is collected and aggregated from NAM and NetFlow data generated throughout the network.

Many rows in the RTP Streams table are arranged in a tree hierarchy. This will occur whenever an RTP application flow involves more than one data stream. In these cases, the flows between the two application endpoints are aggregated into a single row with a triangle icon.

By default, Prime Infrastructure automatically refreshes the RTP Streams table data every 60 seconds; you can also use one of the preset filters.

Prime Infrastructure refreshes TCP Sessions data once every 300 seconds (5 minutes); you can use the **Filter by Application** filtering option to include or exclude applications from the list.

You can also click either table's **Refresh** button at any time. You can turn off automatic refresh by unselecting the **Enable auto refresh** check box.

To use the Mediatrace tables:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Application Visibility and Control > Mediatrace**.
- Step 2** From the **Application** drop-down list, choose **RTP** or **TCP**. The page shows the corresponding table: RTP Streams or TCP Sessions.
- Step 3** Find the flow that you want to troubleshoot:
- To review all flows with a particular type of issue, click the appropriate column heading to sort on that column.  
  
For example, if you are monitoring RTP performance across the network and want to see the streams with the worst jitter or packet loss, click the Jitter or Packet Loss column headings to sort the streams on these performance indicators. You can then select any of the streams for troubleshooting.
  - To find a particular flow with a problem, click the **Quick Filter** icon and enter a filter criterion under one or more row headings.  
  
For example, an end user having trouble accessing an application might report the IP address and the name of that application. You can do a quick filter on the TCP table for either the Client IP address or Application ID, then select that session for troubleshooting.
  - To spot issues in RTP subflows, click the triangle icon next to any aggregated RTP flow.  
  
For example, an RTP voice/video flow between any two endpoints will appear in the RTP Streams table as a single flow with a triangle icon. Clicking the icon will show you the four subflows: an incoming and outgoing video subflow, and an incoming and outgoing voice subflow.
- Step 4** To troubleshoot the flow, see the Running Mediatrace from Selected RTP or TCP Flows.
- 


#### Related Topics

- [Running Mediatrace from Selected RTP or TCP Flows](#)
- [Using the Mediatrace Tables](#)
- [Running Mediatrace from Selected RTP or TCP Flows](#)
- [Launching an Ad Hoc Mediatrace From Endpoints](#)
- [Troubleshooting Worst RTP Endpoints Using Dashlets](#)
- [Comparing Flow Data From Multiple Sources](#)

## Running Mediatrace from Selected RTP or TCP Flows

To troubleshoot RTP or TCP flows using Mediatrace:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Application Visibility and Control > Mediatrace**. In the **Application** drop-down list, choose **RTP** or **TCP**, then find the flow that you want by using the steps in [Using the Mediatrace Tables](#).
- Step 2** Select the flow and click **Trace Service Path**. Prime Infrastructure displays the RTP or TCP Stream Details page for the selected flow, with all of the routers in the flow's path in the Troubleshooting Status table, in the order of their distance from the flow's source endpoint. Routers that are Medianet-capable are indicated by a filmstrip icon.

- Step 3** To run Mediatrace or Traceroute from a router in the flow's path, click the **Start Mediatrace** or **Start Traceroute** link next to that router in the table.
- The **Start Mediatrace** link is present when the device is Mediatrace-capable; the **Start Traceroute** link is present when the device is not Mediatrace-capable.
- Mediatrace can take a minute or more to run, depending on traffic, congestion, and the total number of hops between the flow endpoints.
- While running Mediatrace or Traceroute, click the **Logs** tab to see useful information, including:
- The progress of the operation.
  - Errors encountered during the operation, including router response timeouts and other steps that did not complete.
  - Where non-Medianet-capable routers were encountered and how they were processed.
  - Medianet-capable routers on which Medianet is not configured.
- Step 4** When the operation is complete, the Troubleshooting tab displays a topology map of all of the devices between the flow's two endpoints. Device icons in the map consist of:
- Alarm Severity—The most severe alarm currently recorded for the device.
  - Flag—The device on which the Mediatrace or Traceroute was initiated.
  - Filmstrip—The device is Medianet-capable.
  - Minus sign on red background—The device is Medianet-capable but not configured as a Medianet responder. RTP/TCP performance statistics will not be available for the device. To remedy this situation, you must configure the device as a Medianet responder as explained in [Troubleshooting RTP and TCP Flows Using Mediatrace](#).
  - Minus sign—The device is unmanaged.
- Step 5** To see key performance metrics, such as CPU and memory utilization, jitter, and packet loss, for all Medianet-capable devices in the RTP or TCP flow's path, click the **Medianet Path View** tab. To see the performance metrics in numerical and graphic form, click the subtabs in the Medianet Path View pane.
-  **Note** The Medianet Path View tab is available only when you are able to start a Mediatrace operation from the Troubleshooting Status table. If you can only trigger Traceroute operations, it will not be shown.
- Step 6** Use the appropriate links in the Troubleshooting Status table to:
- Launch a Mediatrace or Traceroute operation on a different router.
  - Restart a Mediatrace or Traceroute operation that is completed, or stop one in progress.

#### Related Topics

- [Using the Mediatrace Tables](#)
- [Running Mediatrace from Selected RTP or TCP Flows](#)
- [Launching an Ad Hoc Mediatrace From Endpoints](#)
- [Troubleshooting Worst RTP Endpoints Using Dashlets](#)
- [Comparing Flow Data From Multiple Sources](#)

## Launching an Ad Hoc Mediatrace From Endpoints

You can quickly launch a Mediatrace against all RTP or TCP flows between any two endpoints in the network. This can include either specific flows running between any two endpoints on the same or different sites, or between a pair of routers on two different sites.

This is handy if your network lacks NAM monitoring, or when you are in a hurry and you know at least the IP addresses of the two endpoints of the RTP or TCP flow. You must still navigate to and start the trace from the appropriate RTP or TCP Mediatrace table.

To launch an ad hoc Mediatrace from two endpoints:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Application Visibility and Control > Mediatrace**. From the **Application** drop-down list, choose **RTP** or **TCP**.
  - Step 2** Click **Specify Session for Mediatrace**.
  - Step 3** Enter the required information:
    - For an RTP flow:
      - Select the Source Site.
      - Enter the Source Endpoint IP address.
      - Enter the Destination EndPoint IP address.
    - For a TCP flow:
      - Select the Client Site.
      - Enter the Client Endpoint IP address.
      - Enter Server Endpoint IP address.
  - Step 4** Provide any additional endpoint information that you have:
    - For an RTP flow, select or enter the Source Endpoint Port and Destination Endpoint Port.
    - For a TCP flow, select or enter the Server Endpoint Port.
  - Step 5** Click **Trace Service Path** (for an RTP flow) or **OK** (for a TCP flow). Prime Infrastructure displays the RTP or TCP Stream Details page for the specified flow, with all of the routers in the flow’s path in the Troubleshooting Status table, in the order of their distance from the flow’s source or client endpoint. Routers with a “filmstrip” icon next to them are Medianet-capable.
  - Step 6** To run Mediatrace or Traceroute from a router in the flow’s path, click the **Start Mediatrace** or **Start Traceroute** link next to that router in the table.
 

Mediatrace can take a minute or more to run, depending on traffic, congestion, and the total number of hops between the flow endpoints.

While running Mediatrace or Traceroute, click the **Logs** tab to see useful information, including:

    - The progress of the operation.
    - Errors encountered during the operation, including router response timeouts and other steps that did not complete.
    - Where and how non-Medianet-capable routers were encountered and processed.
    - Medianet-capable routers on which Medianet is not configured.
  - Step 7** When the operation is complete, the Troubleshooting tab displays a topology map of the all the devices between the flow’s two endpoints. Device icons in the map will be badged as follows:
    - Alarm Severity—The most severe alarm currently recorded for the device.

- Flag—The device on which the Mediatrace or Traceroute was initiated.
- Filmstrip—The device is Medianet-capable.
- Minus sign on red background—The device is Medianet-capable but not configured as a Medianet responder. RTP/TCP performance statistics will not be available for the device. To remedy this situation, you must configure the device as a Medianet responder.
- Minus sign—The device is unmanaged.

**Step 8** To see key performance metrics for all Medianet-capable devices in the flow's path, click the **Medianet Path View** tab. Click the subtabs in the Medianet Path View pane to see the performance metrics in numerical and graphic form.



**Note** The Medianet Path View tab is available only when you are able to start a Mediatrace operation from the Troubleshooting Status table. If you can only trigger Traceroute operations, it will not be shown.

**Step 9** Use the appropriate links in the Troubleshooting Status table to launch a Mediatrace or Traceroute operation on a different router, restart a Mediatrace or Traceroute operation that is completed, or stop one in progress.

## Troubleshooting Worst RTP Endpoints Using Dashlets

You can quickly launch a Mediatrace against the poorest performing RTP flows in your network using the Worst N RTP End Point Pairs, and RTP Conversation dashlets. This works only for RTP flows.

The RTP Conversations dashlet shows the complete history for a source endpoint, including flows that are no longer active. You will want to select only the most recent flows. If you launch Mediatrace on such an inactive flow, you will receive an error message advising you of this fact.

**Step 1** Choose **Dashboard > Performance > End User Experience**.

**Step 2** In the **Worst N RTP End Point Pairs** dashlet (if this dashlet is not already in the dashboard, see [Adding Dashlets](#)), note the Source Address for your worst performing RTP flows.

**Step 3** In the **RTP Conversations** dashlet in the same page, find the most recent conversation for the same Source Address.

**Step 4** Select that conversation in the RTP Conversations dashlet, then choose **Troubleshoot > Trace Service** path. Prime Infrastructure displays the RTP Stream Details page for the selected flow, with all of the routers in the flow's path in the Troubleshooting Status table, in order of their distance from the flow's source endpoint. Routers that are Medianet-capable are indicated by a filmstrip icon.

**Step 5** To run Mediatrace or Traceroute from a router in the flow's path, click the **Start Mediatrace** or **Start Traceroute** link next to that router in the table.



**Note** The **Start Mediatrace** link is present when the device is Mediatrace-capable; the **Start Traceroute** link is present when the device is not Mediatrace-capable.

Mediatrace can take a minute or more to run, depending on traffic, congestion, and the total number of hops between the flow endpoints.

While running Mediatrace or Traceroute, click the **Logs** tab to see useful information, including:

- The progress of the operation.
- Errors encountered during the operation, including router response timeouts and other steps that did not complete.
- Where and how non-Medianet-capable routers were encountered and processed.
- Medianet-capable routers on which Medianet is not configured.

**Step 6** When the operation is complete, the Troubleshooting tab displays a topology map of the all of the devices between the flow's two endpoints. Device icons in the map will be badged as follows:

- Flag—The device on which the Mediatrace or Traceroute was initiated.
- Filmstrip—The device is Medianet-capable.
- Minus sign—The device is unmanaged.

**Step 7** To see key performance metrics for all Medianet-capable devices in the flow's path, click the **Medianet Path View** tab. To see the performance metrics in numerical and graphic form, click the subtabs in the Medianet Path View pane.




---

**Note** The Medianet Path View tab is available only when you are able to start a Mediatrace operation from the Troubleshooting Status table. If you can only trigger Traceroute operations, it will not be shown.

---

**Step 8** Use the appropriate links in the Troubleshooting Status table to:

- Launch a Mediatrace or Traceroute operation on a different router.
  - Restart a Mediatrace or Traceroute operation that is completed, or stop one in progress.
- 

## Comparing Flow Data From Multiple Sources

When interpreting Mediatrace performance data, you might find it helpful to:

- Identify the NAM, NetFlow, and other sources reporting this performance data.
- If you have multiple NAM or NetFlow data sources, compare how those sources are reporting key performance indicators for a particular flow.

To compare flow data from multiple sources:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Services > Application Visibility and Control > Mediatrace**.

**Step 2** From the **Application** drop-down list, choose **RTP** or **TCP**, then find the flow that you want using the steps in [Using the Mediatrace Tables](#).

**Step 3** Expand a row (for an RTP or TCP flow) to view the details of the key performance indicators appropriate for the selected flow and the data source for each such set of indicators.

**Step 4** When you are finished, click **OK**.

---









## Cisco Mobility Services Engine and Services

---

The Cisco Mobility Services Engine (MSE) supports various services within the overall Cisco Unified Wireless Network (CUWN).

The Cisco MSE currently supports the following services:

- **Location Service**—Also known as Context Aware Service (CAS). This is the core service of the MSE that turns on Wi-Fi client tracking and location API functionality. Allows MSE to simultaneously track thousands of mobile assets and clients by retrieving contextual information such as presence, location, telemetry data, and historical information.
- **Wireless Intrusion Protection Service**—Provides wireless-specific network threat detection and mitigation against malicious attacks, security vulnerabilities, and sources of performance disruption within the CUWN infrastructure. wIPS visualizes, analyzes, and identifies wireless threats, and centrally manages mitigation and resolution of security and performance issues using Cisco monitor mode and Enhanced Local Mode (ELM) Access Points. Proactive threat prevention is also supported to create a hardened wireless network core that is impenetrable by most wireless attacks.
- **Mobile Concierge**—Mobile Concierge enables the Cisco Mobility Services Advertisement Protocol (MSAP). This protocol enables direct communication between the MSE and mobile devices, allowing content to be pushed directly to the mobile device pre-association. This functionality is dependent on the mobile device supporting 802.11u and MSAP.
- **CMX Analytics Service**—The CMX Analytics service analyzes wireless device location information in a particular network. The CMX Analytics service uses the data provided by the MSE to calculate the location of Wi-Fi devices in the Wireless Local Area Network (WLAN). In addition, the FastLocate feature sends information about the RSSI strength of data packets to the Cisco WLC that can be used for location calculations.

When a wireless device is enabled in a network, it transmits probe request packets to identify the wireless network in its neighborhood. Even after connecting to the access point in the WLAN, the client devices continue to transmit probe request packets to identify other access points for better quality of service. The access points gather these request and the associated RSSI from the various wireless devices and forwards them to the Wireless LAN Controller (WLC). The controller then forwards this information to the MSE.

The basic data that is collected from various APs, when analyzed, produces information and knowledge about the movement and behavior patterns of people who are using Wi-Fi devices in the building. For example, the building can be an airport, shopping mall, city center, and so on. The CMX Analytics service helps the airport authorities or the building owners to understand the movement of passengers or customer within their building. This helps them improve the signage, make changes to the under utilized areas, and so on.

**Related Topics**

- [Adding MSEs to Prime Infrastructure](#)
- [Adding a Location Server](#)
- [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and MSE](#)
- [Monitoring with Mobile Concierge Services](#)

## Adding MSEs to Prime Infrastructure

You can add an MSE using the Add Mobility Services Engine dialog box in the Mobility Service page. In this dialog box, you can add licensing files, tracking parameters, and assign maps to the MSE. If you launch the wizard with an existing MSE for configuration, then the Add MSE option appears as Edit MSE Details.

**Before You Begin**

- To learn more about Cisco Adaptive wIPS features and functionality, go to [Cisco.com](http://www.cisco.com) to watch a multimedia presentation. Here you can find the learning modules for a variety of Prime Infrastructure topics. Over future releases, we will add more overview and technical presentations to enhance your learning.
- Prime Infrastructure recognizes and supports the MSE 3355 appropriately. You can access the MSE installation guide at [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/wireless/mse/3355/user/guide/mse\\_qsgmain.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/wireless/mse/3355/user/guide/mse_qsgmain.html).
- The **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines** page is available only in root virtual domain.

To add an MSE to Prime Infrastructure, log in to Prime Infrastructure and follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Verify that you can ping the mobility service engine that you want to add from Prime Infrastructure.
- Step 2** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines** to display the Mobility Services page.
- Step 3** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Mobility Services Engine**, and click **Go**. The Add Mobility Services Engine page appears.
- Step 4** Enter the following information:
- Device Name—User-assigned name for the MSE.
  - IP Address—The IP address of the mobility service engine.

An MSE is added only if a valid IP address is entered. The Device Name helps you distinguish between devices if you have multiple Prime Infrastructures with multiple mobility services engines, but it is not considered when validating an MSE.

- Contact Name (optional)—The mobility service engine administrator.
- Username—The default username is admin. This is the Prime Infrastructure communication username configured for MSE.
- Password—The default password is admin. This is the Prime Infrastructure communication password configured for MSE.

If you changed the username and password during the automatic installation script, enter those values here. If you did not change the default passwords, we recommend that you rerun the automatic installation script and change the username and password.

- Select the **Delete synchronized service assignments** check box if you want to permanently remove all service assignments from the MSE.

This option is applicable for network designs, wired switches, controllers, and event definitions. The existing location history data is retained, however you must use manual service assignments to perform any future location calculations.

**Step 5** Click **Next**. Prime Infrastructure automatically synchronizes the selected elements with the MSE.

After the synchronization, the MSE License Summary page appears. You can use the MSE License Summary page to install a license, add a license, remove a license, install an activation license, and install service license.

### Configuring Services for MSE

**Step 6** To enable a service on the MSE, select the check box next to the service. The different type of services are:

- **Context Aware Service**—If you select the Context Aware Service check box, then you must select a location engine to perform location calculation. You can choose CAS to track clients, rogues, interferers, and tags. You can choose Cisco Context-Aware Engine for Clients and Tag to track tags.
- **WIPS**—The Wireless Intrusion Prevention System check box, it detects wireless and performance threats.
- **Mobile Concierge Service**—The Mobile Concierge Service check box, it provides service advertisements that describe the available services for the mobile devices.
- **CMX Analytics Service**—The CMX Analytics Service check box, it provides a set of data analytic tools packaged for analyzing Wi-Fi device location data that comes from the MSE.
- **CMX Connect & Engage**—The CMX Connect and Engage service provides a guest Wi-Fi onboarding solution, as well as zone and message configuration for the CMX Software Development Kit (SDK).
- **HTTP Proxy Service**—The HTTP Proxy service on the MSE terminates all HTTP traffic intercepted using Policy Based Routing (PBR) and acts as a forward proxy by pulling contents on behalf of wireless clients.

From release 7.5 onward, wIPS service requires a dedicated MSE because it does not support CAS and wIPS on the same MSE.

### Configuring MSE Tracking and History Parameters

**Step 7** After you enable services on the MSE, the Select Tracking & History Parameters page appears.

If you skip configuring the tracking parameters, the default values are selected.

**Step 8** You can select the clients that you want to keep track of by selecting the corresponding Tracking check box(es). The various tracking parameters are as follows:

- Wired Clients
- Wireless Clients
- Rogue Access Points
  - Exclude Adhoc Rogue APs
- Rogue Clients

- Interferers
- Active RFID Tags

**Step 9** You can enable the history tracking of devices by selecting the corresponding devices check box(es). The different history parameters are as follows:

- Wired Stations
- Client Stations
- Rogue Access Points
- Rogue Clients
- Interferers
- Asset Tags

**Step 10** Click **Next** to Assign Maps to the MSE.

#### Assigning Maps to the MSE

The Assigning Maps page is available only if you select CAS as one of the services to be enabled on the MSE.

**Step 11** Once you configure MSE tracking and history parameters, the Assigning Maps page appears.

The Assign Maps page shows the following information:

- Name
- Type (building, floor, campus)
- Status

**Step 12** You can see the required map type by selecting either All, Campus, Building, Floor Area, or Outdoor Area from the Filter option available on the page.

**Step 13** To synchronize a map, select the **Name** check box, and click **Synchronize**.

Upon synchronization of the network designs, the appropriate controllers that have APs assigned on a particular network design are synchronized with the MSE automatically.

**Step 14** Click **Next** to configure mobile app enablement.

#### Mobile App Enablement

Enabling this integration will allow the MSE to send floor maps and wireless client position notification to Meridian. Meridian used this information to provide location-based services to your users without requiring them to connect to your network and access the MSE directly. After enabling Meridian, you will receive an e-mail with instructions on how to activate your account and share access with others in your organization. You can utilize Meridian's platform to provide location services to your visitors either through the Meridian mobile app or your own apps using their mobile SDKs for Android and iOS. The data bandwidth for each wireless client position or zone notification from MSE to Meridian can be maximum of 1 MB/second. For more information, please visit <http://www.meridianapps.com/mse>

**Step 15** Once you assign maps to the MSE, the Mobile App Enablement page appears.

**Step 16** Select the **Enable Mobile App Integration** check box to enable the mobile application integration. You can click an icon to open the Mobile App Enablement Help page.

**Step 17** Enter the name for the location on the Location Name text box. The name you enter here will appear in the Meridian app so that you can try out the location services on your own device.

- Step 18** Enter the email address in the E-mail Address text box to access the Meridian online editor and SDK. Meridian will email these addresses with instructions on how to access your account and share it with others in your organization.
- Step 19** Enter the server where the MSE can register its UDI and send the maps that are synchronized to the MSE in the Registration Endpoint text box.
- Step 20** Enter the server detail where the MSE can send location update notifications in the data format specified in the Notifications Endpoint text box.
- Step 21** Select the Notifications Data Format radio button. This is the data format of the notifications sent from the MSE. The different data formats are: Legacy SOAP/XML, XML, JSON, and Protocol Buffers.
- Step 22** Enter the street address of your location in the Street Address text box.
- Step 23** Enter the phone number where Meridian can reach you for additional information in the Phone Number text box.
- Step 24** Click **Advanced** to open the Advanced pane.
- Step 25** If you want MSE to send real-time notifications to Meridian when ever the wireless clients enter the selected zones, then select the **Enable Zone Notifications for zones** check box and choose floors and zones from the drop-down list.
- The Enable zone notifications for zones drop-down list shows all the floors and zones that are added to Prime Infrastructure and synced to the MSE.
- Step 26** Click **OK** after selecting zones and floors.
- Step 27** Click **Save**.
- Step 28** Click **Done** to save the MSE settings.

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing MSEs](#)
- [Deleting MSE License Files](#)
- [Deleting MSEs from Prime Infrastructure](#)
- [Adding a Location Server](#)

## MSE Licensing

The Cisco MSE provides a wide variety of location-based services. To enable these services, the following are required:

- Cisco MSE hardware or software appliance
  - Physical Appliance—An activation license is not required.
  - Virtual Appliance—Virtual Appliance instance requires an MSE Virtual Appliance Activation license (L-MSE-7.0-K9). It is not sufficient to simply have a service/feature license on an MSE Virtual Appliance.
- Licenses
- Support

There are three types of MSE licenses available:

Table 42-1 MSE License Types

MSE Service License	Provides
Base Location License	Advanced spectrum capability with the ability to detect, track, and trace rogue devices, Cisco CleanAir® interferers, Wi-Fi clients, and RFID tags. The Base Location license also enables customers and partners to use standard MSE APIs.
CMX License	The Base Location license capabilities plus the CMX features: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CMX Analytics, a user-friendly location analytics platform to view and analyze how, where, and when visitors move through a venue.</li> <li>• CMX Connect and Engage for a customizable and location-aware captive portal to on-board guest users to Wi-Fi including:</li> <li>• CMX for Facebook Wi-Fi, helping guests connect to Wi-Fi and use the Internet. Enterprises or merchants gain social demographic data via Facebook Insights.</li> <li>• CMX SDK for enabling organizations to integrate Wi-Fi-based indoor navigation with push notification and auto-launch capabilities into mobile applications.</li> </ul>
wIPS License	Complete wireless threat detection and mitigation in the wireless network infrastructure: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rogue Detection, Classification, and Mitigation</li> <li>• Over-the-Air Attack Detection</li> <li>• Security Vulnerability Monitoring</li> <li>• Performance Monitoring, and Auto-Optimization</li> <li>• Management, Monitoring, and Reporting</li> </ul> <p>Requires a separate MSE running the wIPS service.</p> <p>There are 3 deployment options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enhanced Local mode: Number of wIPS licenses required equals the number of access points in local mode (data serving) deployed in the network.</li> <li>• Monitor mode: Number of wIPS licenses required equals the number of access points configured in the full-time monitor mode.</li> <li>• Wireless Security Module (WSM)/Monitor module: Number of wIPS licenses required equals the number of wireless security and spectrum intelligence modules deployed in the network.</li> </ul>

For complete details on ordering and downloading licenses, see the *Cisco Mobility Services Engine Licensing and Ordering Guide* at the following URL:

[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/prod/collateral/wireless/ps9733/ps9742/data\\_sheet\\_c07-473865.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/prod/collateral/wireless/ps9733/ps9742/data_sheet_c07-473865.html)

## Installing Device and wIPS License Files

You can install device and wIPS licenses from Prime Infrastructure.

- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Licenses and Software Updates > Licenses**.
- Step 2** Choose **Files > MSE Files**.
- Step 3** Click **Add**. The Add a License File dialog appears.
- Step 4** Choose the appropriate MSE name from the MSE Name drop-down list.

- Step 5** Verify that the UDI of the selected MSE matches the one you entered when registering the PAK.
- Step 6** Click **Choose File** to browse and to select the license file.
- Step 7** Click **Upload**. The newly added license appears in the MSE license file list.

## Viewing MSE License Information

The license center allows you to manage Prime Infrastructure, Wireless LAN Controllers, and MSE licenses. To view the license information, follow these steps

- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Licenses and Software Updates > Licenses**.
- Step 2** Choose **Summary > MSE** from the left sidebar menu, to view the summary page.  
The MSE Summary page displays the following information. See [Table 42-2](#).

**Table 42-2** General Parameters

Field	Description
MSE Name	Provides a link to the MSE license file list page.
Service	Type of service using: CAS or wIPS.
Platform Limit by AP	Platform limit.
Type	Specifies the type of MSE.
Installed Limit by AP	Displays the total number of client elements licensed across MSEs.
License Type	The three different types of licenses. They are permanent, evaluation, and extension.
Count by elements	The number of CAS or wIPS elements currently licensed across MSEs.
Unlicensed Count	Displays the number of client elements that are not licensed.
%Used	The percentage of CAS or wIPS elements licensed across MSEs.

## Deleting MSE License Files

To delete an MSE license file, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Service Engine**.  
The Mobility Services page appears.
- Step 2** Click **Device Name** to delete a license file for a particular service.
- Step 3** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Edit Configuration**.
- Step 4** Click **Next** in the Edit Mobility Services Engine dialog box.  
The MSE License Summary page appears.
- Step 5** Choose the MSE license file that you want to delete in the MSE License Summary page.

- Step 6** Click **Remove License**.
- Step 7** Click **OK** to confirm the deletion or **Cancel** to close this page without deleting the license.
- Step 8** Click **Next** to enable services on the MSE.
- 

**Related Topics**

- [Viewing MSEs](#)
- [Adding MSEs to Prime Infrastructure](#)
- [Deleting MSE License Files](#)
- [Deleting MSEs from Prime Infrastructure](#)
- [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and MSE](#)

## Viewing MSEs

To see a list of current Mobility Services, choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.

The Mobility Services Engines page provides device information and features for each device and a Select a command drop-down list.

Location and MSE features of Prime Infrastructure do not support partitioning.

**Related Topics**

- [Adding MSEs to Prime Infrastructure](#)
- [Deleting MSE License Files](#)
- [Deleting MSEs from Prime Infrastructure](#)
- [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and MSE](#)

## Deleting MSEs from Prime Infrastructure

To delete an MSE from the Prime Infrastructure database, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.  
The Mobility Services page appears.
- Step 2** Select the MSE(s) to be deleted by selecting the corresponding **Device Name** check box(es).
- Step 3** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Delete Service(s)**.
- Step 4** Click **Go**.
- Step 5** Click **OK** to confirm that you want to delete the selected MSE from the Prime Infrastructure database.
- Step 6** Click **Cancel** to stop the deletion.
-



**Related Topics**

- [Viewing MSEs](#)
- [Adding MSEs to Prime Infrastructure](#)
- [Deleting MSEs from Prime Infrastructure](#)

## Adding a Location Server

To add a location server, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
  - Step 2** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Location Server**.
  - Step 3** Click **Go**.
  - Step 4** Enter the required information:
  - Step 5** Select the **Delete synchronized service assignments** check box if you want to permanently remove all service assignments from the MSE.  
  
This option is applicable for network designs, wired switches, controllers, and event definitions. The existing location history data is retained, however, you must use manual service assignments to perform any future location calculations.
  - Step 6** Click **Save**.

After adding a location server, it must be synchronized with Prime Infrastructure. See the [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and MSE](#) for more information.

Location and MSE features of Prime Infrastructure do not support partitioning.

---

**Related Topics**

- [Viewing MSEs](#)
- [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and MSE](#)

## Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and MSE

This section describes how to synchronize Prime Infrastructure and MSEs manually and smartly.

After adding an MSE to Prime Infrastructure, you can synchronize network designs (campus, building, floor, and outdoor maps), controllers (name and IP address), specific Catalyst 3000 Series and 4000 switches, and event groups with the MSE.

- **Network Designs**—A logical mapping of the physical placement of access points throughout facilities. A hierarchy of a single campus, the buildings that comprise that campus and the floors of each building constitute a single network design.
- **Controllers**—A selected controller that is associated and regularly exchanges location information with an MSE. Regular synchronization ensures location accuracy.
- **Event Groups**—A group of predefined events that define triggers that generate an event. Regular synchronization ensures that the latest defined events are tracked.

- **Wired Switches**—Wired Catalyst switches that provide an interface to wired clients on the network. Regular synchronization ensures that location tracking of wired clients in the network is accurate.
  - The MSE can be synchronized with Catalyst stackable switches (3750, 3750-E, 3560, 2960, IE-3000 switches), switch blades (3110, 3120, 3130, 3040, 3030, 3020), and switch ports.
  - The MSE can also be synchronized with the following Catalyst series switches 4000: WS-C4948, WS-C4948-10GE, ME-4924-10GE, WS-4928-10GE, WS-C4900M, WS-X4515, WS-X4516, WS-X4013+, WS-X4013+TS, WS-X4516-10GE, WS-X4013+10GE, WS-X45-SUP6-E, and WS-X45-SUP6-LE
- **Third Party Elements**—When you synchronize elements with MSE, there might be event groups on the MSE that have been created by third-party applications. You can either delete the unused elements or mark them as third-party elements.
- **Service Advertisements**—Mobile Concierge Service provides service advertisements on the mobile devices. This shows the service advertisement that has synchronized with the MSE.

Be sure to verify software compatibility between the controller, Prime Infrastructure, and the MSE before synchronizing.

Communication between the MSE, Prime Infrastructure, and the controller is in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). Configuring NTP on each system provides devices with the UTC time. The MSE and its associated controllers must be mapped to the same NTP server and the same Prime Infrastructure server. An NTP server is required to automatically synchronize time between the controller, Prime Infrastructure, and the MSE.

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing MSEs](#)
- [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure Network Designs, Controllers, Wires Switches, or Event Groups](#)
- [Synchronizing Controllers with MSEs](#)
- [Managing Third-Party Elements on MSEs](#)
- [Configuring Smart Mobility Services Engine Database Synchronization](#)
- [Viewing Synchronization History](#)

### Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure Network Designs, Controllers, Wires Switches, or Event Groups

To synchronize Prime Infrastructure network designs, controllers, wired switches, or event groups with the MSE, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Synchronize Services**.
  - Step 2** Choose the appropriate menu option (**Network Designs, Controllers, Event Groups, Wired Switches, Third Party Elements, or Service Advertisements**) from the left sidebar menu.
  - Step 3** To assign a network design to an MSE, from the left sidebar menu, choose **Network Designs**.
  - Step 4** Select all the maps to be synchronized with the MSE by selecting the corresponding **Name** check box.  
Through 6.0, you can assign only up to a campus level to an MSE. Beginning with 7.0 this option is granular to a floor level. For example, you can choose to assign floor1 to MSE 1, floor2 to MSE 2, and floor3 to MSE 3.
  - Step 5** Click **Change MSE Assignment**.

**Step 6** Select the MSE to which the maps are to be synchronized.

A network design might include a floor in a campus or a large campus with several buildings, each monitored by a different MSE. Because of this, you might need to assign a single network design to multiple MSEs.

**Step 7** Click either of the following in the MSE Assignment dialog box:

- **Save**—Saves the MSE assignment. The following message appears in the Messages column of the Network Designs page with a yellow arrow icon:  
“To be assigned - Please synchronize”.
- **Cancel**—Discards the changes to the MSE assignment and return to the Network Designs page.

You can also click **Reset** to undo the MSE assignments.

A network design may include a floor in a campus or a large campus with several buildings, each monitored by a different MSE. Because of this, you may need to assign a single network design to multiple MSEs.

Network design assignments also automatically picks up the corresponding controller for synchronization.

**Step 8** Click **Synchronize** to update the MSE(s) database(s).

When items are synchronized, a green two-arrow icon appears in the Sync.

You can use the same procedure to assign wired switches or event groups to an MSE.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and MSE](#)
- [Viewing Synchronization History](#)
- [Synchronizing Controllers with MSEs](#)
- [Configuring Smart Mobility Services Engine Database Synchronization, page 42-14](#)
- [Out-of-Sync Alarms](#)

## Synchronizing Controllers with MSEs

You can assign an MSE to any wireless controller on a per-service (CAS or wIPS) basis.

To assign an MSE service to wireless controllers, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** In the synchronization page, choose **Controllers**.

**Step 2** Choose the controllers to be assigned to the MSE.

**Step 3** Click **Change MSE Assignment**.

**Step 4** Choose the MSE to which the controllers must be synchronized.

**Step 5** Click either of the following in the dialog box:

- **Save**—Saves the MSE assignment. The following message appears in the Messages column of the Controllers page:  
To be assigned - Please synchronize.
- **Cancel**—Discards the changes to the MSE assignment and returns to the Controllers page.

You can also click **Reset** to undo the yellow button assignments.

- Step 6** Click **Synchronize** to complete the synchronization process.
- Step 7** Verify that the MSE is communicating with each of the controllers for only the chosen service. This can be done by clicking the **NMSP status** link in the status page.

After Synchronizing a controller, verify that the timezone is set on the associated controller. Controller names must be unique for synchronizing with an MSE. If you have two controllers with the same name, only one is synchronized.

---

To unassign a network design, controller, wired switch, or event group from an MSE, follow these steps:

- Step 1** On the respective tabs, click one or more elements, and click **Change MSE Assignment**. The Choose MSE dialog box appears.
- Step 2** Unselect the **Mobility Services Engine** check box if you do not want the elements to be associated with that MSE.
- Step 3** Click **Save** to save the changes to the assignments.
- Step 4** Click **Synchronize**. A two-arrow icon appears in the Sync Status column.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing MSEs](#)
- [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and MSE](#)
- [Viewing Synchronization History](#)
- [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and MSE](#)
- [Configuring Smart Mobility Services Engine Database Synchronization](#)

## Managing Third-Party Elements on MSEs

When you synchronize elements with MSE, there might be event groups on the MSE that have been created by third-party applications. You can either delete the unused elements or mark them as third-party elements.

To delete the elements or mark them as third-party elements, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Synchronize Services**.  
The Network Design page appears.  
In the Network Design page, choose **Third Party Elements** from the left sidebar menu.  
The Third Party Elements page appears.
- Step 2** Select one or more elements.
- Step 3** Click one of the following buttons:
- **Delete Event Groups**—Deletes the selected event groups.

- **Mark as 3rd Party Event Group(s)**—Marks the selected event groups as third-party event groups.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing MSEs](#)
- [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and MSE](#)
- [Viewing Synchronization History](#)
- [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and MSE](#)
- [Configuring Smart Mobility Services Engine Database Synchronization](#)
- [Synchronizing Controllers with MSEs](#)
- [Out-of-Sync Alarms](#)

## Setting and Verifying the Controller Time Zones

For controller Releases 4.2 and later, if an MSE (Release 5.1 or greater) is installed in your network, it is mandatory that the time zone be set on the controller to ensure proper synchronization between the two systems.

Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) is used as the standard for setting the time zone system time of the controller.

You can automatically set the time zone during initial system setup of the controller or manually set it on a controller already installed in your network.

To manually set the time and time zone on an existing controller in your network using the CLI, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Configure the current local time in GMT on the controller by entering the following commands:

```
(Cisco Controller) >config time manual 09/07/07 16:00:00
(Cisco Controller) >config end
```

When setting the time, the current local time is entered in terms of GMT and as a value between 00:00 and 24:00. For example, if it is 8 AM Pacific Standard Time (PST) in the US, you enter 16:00 (4 PM PST) as the PST time zone is 8 hours behind GMT.

- Step 2** Verify that the current local time is set in terms of GMT by entering the following command:

```
(Cisco Controller) >show time
Time..... Fri Sep 7 16:00:02 2007
Timezone delta..... 0:0
```

- Step 3** Set the local time zone for the system by entering the following commands:

When setting the time zone, you enter the time difference of the local current time zone with respect to GMT (+/-). For example, Pacific Standard Time (PST) in the United States (US) is 8 hours behind GMT (UTC) time. Therefore, it is entered as -8.

```
(Cisco Controller) >config time timezone -8
(Cisco Controller) >config end
```

- Step 4** Verify that the controller shows the current local time with respect to the local time zone rather than in GMT by entering the following command:

```
(Cisco Controller) >show time
```

```
Time..... Fri Sep 7 08:00:26 2007
Timezone delta..... -8:0
```

The time zone delta parameter in the **show time** command shows the difference in time between the local time zone and GMT (8 hours). Before configuration, the parameter setting is 0.0.

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing MSEs](#)
- [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and MSE](#)
- [Viewing Synchronization History](#)
- [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and MSE](#)
- [Synchronizing Controllers with MSEs](#)
- [Configuring Smart Mobility Services Engine Database Synchronization](#)
- [Managing Third-Party Elements on MSEs](#)

## Configuring Smart Mobility Services Engine Database Synchronization

Manual synchronization of Prime Infrastructure and MSE databases provides immediate synchronization. However, future deployment changes (such as making changes to maps and access point positions), can yield incorrect location calculations and asset tracking until resynchronization reoccurs.

To prevent out-of-sync conditions, use Prime Infrastructure to carry out synchronization. This policy ensures that synchronization between Prime Infrastructure and MSE databases is triggered periodically and any related alarms are cleared.

Any change to one or more of any synchronized components is automatically synchronized with the MSE. For example, if a floor with access points is synchronized with a particular MSE and then one access point is moved to a new location on the same floor or another floor which is also synchronized with the MSE, then the changed location of the access point is automatically communicated.

To further ensure that Prime Infrastructure and MSE are in sync, smart synchronization happens in the background.

To configure smart synchronization, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Settings > Background Tasks**.  
The Background Tasks summary page appears.
  - Step 2** Select the **Mobility Service Synchronization** check box.
  - Step 3** The Mobility Services Synchronization page appears.
  - Step 4** To set the MSE to send out-of-sync alerts, select the **Enabled** check box in the Out of Sync Alerts group box.
  - Step 5** To enable smart synchronization, select the Smart Synchronization **Enabled** check box.  
Smart synchronization does not apply to elements (network designs, controllers, or event groups) that have not yet been assigned to an MSE. However, out-of-sync alarms are still generated for these unassigned elements. For smart synchronization to apply to these elements, you need to manually assign them to an MSE.

When an MSE is added to Prime Infrastructure, the data in Prime Infrastructure is always treated as the primary copy that is synchronized with the MSE. All synchronized network designs, controllers, event groups and wired switches that are present in the MSE and not in Prime Infrastructure are removed automatically from MSE.

- Step 6** Enter the time interval, in minutes, that the smart synchronization is to be performed.  
By default, smart-sync is disabled.
- Step 7** Click **Submit**.
- 

## Smart Controller Assignment and Selection Scenarios

### Scenario 1

If a floor having at least one access point from a controller is chosen to be synchronized with the MSE from the Network Designs section of the Synchronization page, then the controller to which that access point is connected is automatically selected to be assigned to the MSE for CAS service.

### Scenario 2

When at least one access point from a controller is placed on a floor that is synchronized with MSE, the controller to which the access point is connected is automatically assigned to the same MSE for CAS service.

### Scenario 3

An access point is added to a floor and is assigned to an MSE. If that access point is moved from controller A to controller B, then controller B is automatically synchronized to the MSE.

### Scenario 4

If all access points placed on a floor which is synchronized to the MSE are deleted then that controller is automatically removed from MSE assignment or unsynchronized.

### Related Topics

- [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and MSE](#)
- [Viewing Synchronization History](#)
- [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and MSE](#)
- [Synchronizing Controllers with MSEs](#)
- [Managing Third-Party Elements on MSEs](#)
- [Out-of-Sync Alarms](#)

## Viewing MSE Synchronization Status

You can use the Synchronize Servers command in Prime Infrastructure to view the status of network design, controller, and event group synchronization with an MSE.

To view synchronization status, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Synchronize Services**.
- Step 2** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Network Designs, Controllers, Event Groups, Wired Switches Third Party Elements, or Service Advertisements**.

For each of the elements, the Sync. Status column shows the synchronization status. A green two-arrow icon indicates that its corresponding element is synchronized with the specified server such as an MSE. A gray two-arrow icon with a red circle indicates that its corresponding item is not synchronized with a provided server.

A green two-arrow icon does not indicate the NMSP connection status for a controller.

You can also view the synchronization status at **Monitor > Maps > System Campus > Building > Floor** where *Building* is the building within the campus and *Floor* is a specific floor in that campus building.

The MSE Assignment option on the left sidebar menu shows which MSE the floor is currently assigned to. You can also change MSE assignment from this page.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing MSEs](#)
- [Adding MSEs to Prime Infrastructure](#)
- [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and MSE](#)
- [Synchronizing Controllers with MSEs](#)
- [Viewing Synchronization History](#)
- [Out-of-Sync Alarms](#)

## Viewing Synchronization History

You can view the synchronization history for the last 30 days for an MSE. This is especially useful when automatic synchronization is enabled as alarms are automatically cleared. Synchronization History provides a summary of those cleared alarms.

The Synchronization History page on the Services tab is available only in the root virtual domain in Release 7.3.

To view synchronization history, choose **Services > Synchronization History** and click the column headers to sort the entries.

#### Related Topics

- [Viewing MSEs](#)
- [Synchronizing Prime Infrastructure and MSE](#)
- [Synchronizing Controllers with MSEs](#)
- [Managing Third-Party Elements on MSEs](#)
- [Setting and Verifying the Controller Time Zones](#)
- [Configuring Smart Mobility Services Engine Database Synchronization](#)
- [Out-of-Sync Alarms](#)
- [Viewing MSE Synchronization Status](#)



## Viewing MSE Notification Statistics

You can view the notification statistics for a specific MSE. To view the Notification Statistics for a specific MSE:

Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines > MSE-name > Context Aware Service > Notification Statistics** (where *MSE-name* is the name of an MSE).

Table 42-3 describes the fields in the Notification statistics page.

**Table 42-3 Notification Statistics fields**

Field	Description
<b>Summary</b>	
Destinations	
Total	Total destination count.
Unreachable	Unreachable destination count.
<b>Notification Statistics Summary</b>	
Destination Address	The destination address to which the notifications are sent.
Destination Port	The destination port to which the notifications are sent.
Destination Type	The type of the destination. Example: SOAP_XML
Destination Status	Status of the track definition. Track notification status can be either Enabled or Disabled.
Last Sent	The date and time at which the last notification was sent to the destination device.
Last Failed	The date and time at which the notification failed.
Track Definition (Status)	
Total Count	The total count of notifications sent to the destination. Click the count link to view the notification statistics details of the destination device.

## Editing MSE General Properties for MSE

You can use Prime Infrastructure to edit the general properties of an MSE registered in Prime Infrastructure database. General properties include contact name, username, password, and HTTP.

To edit the general properties of an MSE, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines** to display the Mobility Services page.
- Step 2** Click the name of the MSE that you want to edit. The General Properties page (with a General tab and Performance tab) appears.
- Step 3** In the General Properties page, modify the following Server Details as necessary:
  - Contact Name—Enter a contact name for the mobility service.

- Username—Enter the log in username for the Prime Infrastructure server that manages the mobility service.
- Password—Enter the log in password for the Prime Infrastructure server that manages the mobility service.
- HTTP—Select the **HTTP enable** check box to enable HTTP. When you have a non-default port or HTTPS turned on, you must pass the correct information along with the command. For example, *getserverinfo* must include *-port <<port>> -protocol <<HTTP/HTTPS>>*. Similarly, for stopping the server, *stoplocserver - port <<port>> -protocol <HTTP/HTTPS>>*.
- Legacy Port—8001
- Legacy HTTPS—Select the check box to enable the legacy HTTPS.
- Delete synchronized service assignments and enable synchronization—Select the **Delete synchronized service assignments** check box if you want to permanently remove all service assignments from the MSE. This option shows up only if the delete synchronized service assignments check box was unselected while adding an MSE.

Prime Infrastructure always uses HTTPS to communicate with an MSE.

The following tcp ports are in use on the MSE in Release 6.0: tcp 22: MSE SSH port, tcp 80: MSE HTTP port, tcp 443: MSE HTTPS port, tcp 1411: AeroScout, tcp 1999: AeroScout internal port, tcp 4096: AeroScout notifications port, tcp 5900X: AeroScout (X can vary from 1 to 10), and tcp 8001: Legacy port. Used for location APIs.

The following udp ports are in use on the MSE in Release 6.0: udp 123: NTPD port (open after NTP configuration), udp 162: AeroScout SNMP, udp/tcp 4000X: AeroScout proxy (X can vary from 1 to 5), udp 12091: AeroScout devices (TDOA Wi-Fi Receivers, chokepoints), udp 12092: AeroScout devices (TDOA Wi-Fi Receivers, chokepoints), udp 32768: Location internal port, udp 32769: AeroScout internal port, and udp 37008: AeroScout internal port.

- Step 4** In the Mobility Services dialog box, select the **Admin Status** check box to enable the applicable (Context Aware Service, WIPS, Mobile Concierge Service, Location Analytics Service, Billboard service) service.

If you select Context Aware Service, then you must select a location engine to perform location calculation.

Choose either of the following:

- **Cisco Tag Engine**
- or
- **Partner Tag Engine**




---

**Note** With MSE 6.0, you can enable multiple services (CAS and wIPS) simultaneously. Before Version 6.0, MSEs can only supported one active service at a time.

---

The Mobility Services dialog box also shows the following:

- Service Name
- Service Version
- Service Status
- License Type

Use the **Click here** link to view MSE licensing details.

- Step 5** Click **Save** to update Prime Infrastructure and mobility service databases.

**Step 6** Click the **Performance** tab to view a graph of CPU and memory utilization percentages.

---

## Editing NMSP Parameters for MSE

Network Mobility Services Protocol (NMSP) manages communication between the mobility service and the controller. Transport of telemetry, emergency, and RSSI values between the mobility service and the controller is managed by this protocol.



**Note**

- The NMSP parameter is supported in mobility services installed with Release 3.0 through 7.0.105.0. It is not supported on releases later than 7.0.105.0.
  - NMSP replaces the LOCP term introduced in Release 3.0.
  - Telemetry and emergency information is only seen on controllers and Prime Infrastructure installed with Release 4.1 software or greater and on mobility service engine running release 3.0 or later software.
  - The TCP port (16113) that the controller and mobility service communicate over must be open (not blocked) on any firewall that exists between the controller and mobility service for NMSP to function.
- 

The NMSP Parameters dialog box in Prime Infrastructure enables you to modify NMSP parameters such as echo and neighbor dead intervals as well as response and retransmit periods.

To configure NMSP parameters, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the MSE whose properties you want to edit.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Status > NMSP Parameters**.
- Step 4** Modify the NMSP parameters as appropriate.



**Note** We do not recommend you change the default parameter values unless the network is experiencing slow response or excessive latency.

---

NMSP parameters include the following:

- **Echo Interval**—Defines how frequently an echo request is sent from a mobility service to a controller. The default value is 15 seconds. Allowed values range from 1 to 120 seconds.  
If a network is experiencing slow response, you can increase the values of the echo interval, neighbor dead interval and the response timeout values to limit the number of failed echo acknowledgements.
- **Neighbor Dead Interval**—The number of seconds that the mobility service waits for a successful echo response from the controller before declaring the neighbor dead. This timer begins when the echo request is sent.  
The default values is 30 seconds. Allowed values range from 1 to 240 seconds. This value must be at least two times the echo interval value.

- **Response Timeout**—Indicates how long the mobility service waits before considering the pending request as timed out. The default value is one second. Minimum value is one (1). There is no maximum value.
- **Retransmit Interval**—Interval of time that the mobility service waits between notification of a response time out and initiation of a request retransmission. The default setting is 3 seconds. Allowed values range from 1 to 120 seconds.
- **Maximum Retransmits**—Defines the maximum number of retransmits that are done in the absence of a response to any request. The default setting is 5. Allowed minimum value is zero (0). There is no maximum value.

**Step 5** Click **Save** to update Prime Infrastructure and mobility service databases.

---

## Viewing Active Session Details for MSE

The Active Sessions dialog box in Prime Infrastructure enables you to view active user sessions on the MSE.

**Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.

**Step 2** Click the name of the MSE.

**Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Active Sessions**.

Prime Infrastructure shows a list of active mobility service sessions. For every session, Prime Infrastructure shows the following information:

- Session identifier
  - IP address from which the mobility service is accessed
  - Username of the connected user
  - Date and time when the session started
  - Date and time when the mobility service was last accessed
  - How long the session was idle since the last access
- 

## Viewing Trap Destinations for MSE

The Trap Destinations dialog box of Prime Infrastructure enables you to specify which Prime Infrastructure or Cisco Security Monitoring, Analysis, and Response System (CS-MARS) network management platform is the recipient of SNMP traps generated by the MSE.

To view a trap destination for an MSE, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.

**Step 2** Click the name of the MSE.

**Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Trap Destinations**.

Prime Infrastructure shows a list of current trap destinations including the following information:

- IP address
- Port No.
- Community
- Destination type
- SNMP Version

Use the Select a command drop-down list to add or delete a trap destination.

## Adding Trap Destinations for MSE

To add a trap destination, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the mobility service.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Trap Destinations**.
- Step 4** Choose **Add Trap Destination** from the command drop-down list and click **Go**.  
The New Trap Destination page appears.
- Step 5** Enter the following details (see [Table 42-4](#)).

**Table 42-4** Add Trap Destination Page

Field	Description
IP Address	IP address for the trap destination
Port No.	Port number for the trap destination. The default port number is 162.
Destination Type	This field is not editable and has a value of <b>Other</b> .
Snmp Version	Select either v2c or v3.
The following set of fields appear only if you select v3 as the SNMP version.	
User Name	Username for the SNMP Version 3.
Security Name	Security name for the SNMP Version 3.
Authentication Type	Select one of the following: HMAC-MD5 HMAC-SHA
Authentication Password	Authentication password for the SNMP Version 3.
Privacy Type	Select one of the following: CBC-DES CFB-AES-128 CFB-AES-192 CFB-AES-256
Privacy Password	Privacy password for the SNMP Version 3.

**Step 6** Click **Save** to save the changes or **Cancel** to discard the changes.

---

## Editing Advanced Parameters for MSE

The Advanced Parameters dialog box in Prime Infrastructure enables you to set the number of days events are kept, set session time out values, set an absent data interval cleanup interval, and enable or disable Advanced Debug. You can use Prime Infrastructure to modify troubleshooting parameters for an MSE.

To edit advanced parameters for an MSE, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the mobility service whose properties you want to edit.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Advanced Parameters**.
- Step 4** View or modify the advanced parameters as necessary.
- General Information
  - Advanced Parameters



**Caution** Because advanced debugging slows the mobility service down, enable advanced debugging only under the guidance of Cisco TAC personnel.

---

- Number of Days to keep Events—Enter the number of days to keep logs. Change this value as required for monitoring and troubleshooting.
- Session Timeout—Enter the number of minutes before a session times out. Change this value as required for monitoring and troubleshooting. Currently this option appears dimmed.
- Cisco UDI
  - Product Identifier (PID)—The Product ID of the MSE.
  - Version Identifier (VID)—The version number of the MSE.
  - Serial Number (SN)—Serial number of the MSE.
- Advanced Commands
  - Reboot Hardware—Click to reboot the mobility service hardware. See the [“Rebooting the MSE Hardware” section on page 42-23](#) for more information.
  - Shutdown Hardware—Click to turn off the mobility service hardware. See the [“Shutting Down the MSE Hardware” section on page 42-23](#) for more information.
  - Clear Database—Click to clear the mobility services database. Unselect the **Retain current service assignments in the Prime Infrastructure** check box to remove all existing service assignments from Prime Infrastructure and MSE. The resources have to be reassigned from **Services > Synchronize Services** page. This option is selected by default.

**Step 5** Click **Save** to update Prime Infrastructure and mobility service databases.

---

## Rebooting the MSE Hardware

If you need to restart an MSE, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
  - Step 2** Click the name of the MSE that you want to reboot.
  - Step 3** Click **System**.
  - Step 4** Click **Advanced Parameters**.
  - Step 5** In the Advanced Commands dialog box, click **Reboot Hardware**.
  - Step 6** Click **OK** to confirm that you want to reboot the MSE hardware.
- The rebooting process takes a few minutes to complete.
- 

## Shutting Down the MSE Hardware

If you need to shut down an MSE, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
  - Step 2** Click the name of the MSE that you want to shut down.
  - Step 3** Click **System**.
  - Step 4** Click **Advanced Parameters**.
  - Step 5** In the Advanced Commands dialog box, click **Shutdown Hardware**.
  - Step 6** Click **OK** to confirm that you want to shut down the MSE.
- 

## Clearing the MSE Database

To clear an MSE configuration and restore its factory defaults, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
  - Step 2** Click the name of the MSE you want to configure.
  - Step 3** Click **System**.
  - Step 4** Click **Advanced Parameters**.
  - Step 5** In the Advanced Commands dialog box, unselect the **Retain current service assignments** in the **Prime Infrastructure** check box to remove all existing service assignments from Prime Infrastructure and MSE.  
  
The resources have to be reassigned in the **Services > Synchronize Services** page. By default, this option is selected.
  - Step 6** In the Advanced Commands dialog box, click **Clear Database**.

**Step 7** Click **OK** to clear the MSE database.

## Configuring MSE Logging Options

You can use Prime Infrastructure to specify the logging level and types of messages to log.

To configure logging options, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the MSE that you want to configure.
- Step 3** Choose **System > Logs**. The advanced parameters for the selected MSE appear.
- Step 4** Choose the appropriate options from the Logging Level drop-down list.

There are four logging options: **Off**, **Error**, **Information**, and **Trace**.

All log records with a log level of Error or preceding are logged to a new error log file `locserver-error-%u-%g.log`. This is an additional log file maintained along with the location server `locserver-%u-%g.log` log file. The error log file consists of logs of Error level along with their context information. The contextual information consists of 25 log records prior to the error. You can maintain up to 10 error log files. The maximum size allowed for each log file is 10 MB.



### Caution

Use Error and Trace only when directed to do so by Cisco TAC personnel.

- 
- Step 5** Select the **Enabled** check box next to each element listed in that section to begin logging its events.
- Step 6** Select the **Enable** check box in the Advanced Parameters dialog box to enable advanced debugging. By default, this option is disabled.
- Step 7** To download log files from the server, click **Download Logs**. See the [Downloading MSE Log Files](#) for more information.
- Step 8** In the Log File group box, enter the following:
- The number of log files to be maintained in the MSE. You can maintain a minimum of 5 log files and a maximum of 20 log files in the MSE.
  - The maximum log file size in MB. The minimum log file size is 10 MB and the maximum is 50 MB.
- Step 9** In the MAC Address Based Logging group box, do the following:
- Select the **Enable** check box to enable MAC address logging. By default, this option is disabled.
  - Add one or more MAC addresses for which you want to enable logging. You can also remove MAC addresses that you have already added by selecting the MAC address from the list and clicking **Remove**.
- See the [MAC Address-based Logging](#) for more information on MAC Address-based logging.
- Step 10** Click **Save** to apply your changes.

### MAC Address-based Logging

This feature allows you to create log files that are specific to an entity whose MAC address is specified. The log files are created in the `locserver` directory under the following path:



/opt/mse/logs/locserver

A maximum of 5 MAC addresses can be logged at a time. The Log file format for MAC address aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff is macaddress-debug-aa-bb-cc-dd-ee-ff.log

You can create a maximum of two log files for a MAC Address. The two log files might consist of one main and one backup or rollover log file.

The minimum size of a MAC log file is 10 MB. The maximum size allowed is 20 MB per MAC Address. The MAC log files that are not updated for more than 24 hours are pruned.

## Downloading MSE Log Files

If you need to analyze MSE log files, you can use Prime Infrastructure to download them to your system. Prime Infrastructure downloads a zip file containing the log files.

To download a .zip file containing the log files, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
  - Step 2** Click the name of the MSE to view its status.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Logs**.
  - Step 4** Click **Download Logs**.
  - Step 5** Follow the instructions in the File Download dialog box to open the file or save the zip file to your system.
- 

## Adding MSE Users

To add a users to an MSE, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
  - Step 2** Click the device name of the MSE that you want to edit.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Systems > Accounts > Users**.
  - Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add User**.
  - Step 5** Click **Go**.
  - Step 6** Enter the username in the Username text box.
  - Step 7** Enter a password in the Password text box.
  - Step 8** Enter the name of the group to which the user belongs in the Group Name text box.
  - Step 9** Choose a permission level from the Permission drop-down list.

There are three permission levels to choose from: **Read Access**, **Write Access**, and **Full Access** (required for Prime Infrastructure to access an MSE).



### Caution

Group permissions override individual user permissions. For example, if you give a user full access and add that user to a group with read access, that user is unable to configure MSE settings.

---

- Step 10** Click **Save** to add the new user to the MSE.
- 

## Deleting MSE Users

To delete a user from an MSE, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the MSE that you want to edit.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Systems > Accounts > Users**.
- Step 4** Select the check box(es) of the user(s) that you want to delete.
- Step 5** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Delete User**.
- Step 6** Click **Go**.
- Step 7** Click **OK** to confirm that you want to delete the selected users.
- 

## Editing User Properties

To change user properties, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the MSE that you want to edit.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Systems > Accounts > Users**.
- Step 4** Click the username of the user that you want to edit.
- Step 5** Make the required changes to the Password, Group Name, and Permission text boxes.
- Step 6** Click **Save** to apply your change.
- 

## Adding User Groups

To add a user group to an MSE, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the MSE that you want to edit.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Systems > Accounts > Groups**.
- Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Group**.
- Step 5** Click **Go**.
- Step 6** Enter the name of the group in the Group Name text box.

- Step 7** Choose a permission level from the Permission drop-down list.
- There are three permissions levels to choose from:
- **Read Access**
  - **Write Access**
  - **Full Access** (required for Prime Infrastructure to access mobility services engines)
- Step 8** Click **Save** to add the new group to the MSE.

**Caution**

Group permissions override individual user permissions. For example, if you give a user full access and add that user to a group with read access permission, that user cannot configure MSE settings.

## Deleting User Groups

To delete user groups from an MSE, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the MSE that you want to edit.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Systems > Accounts > Groups**.
- Step 4** Select the check box(es) of the group(s) that you want to delete.
- Step 5** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Delete Group**.
- Step 6** Click **Go**.
- Step 7** Click **OK** to confirm that you want to delete the selected users.

## Editing Group User Permissions

To change user group permissions, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Click the device name of the MSE that you want to edit.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Systems > Accounts > Groups**.
- Step 4** Click the group name of the group that you want to edit.
- Step 5** Choose a permission level from the Permission drop-down list.
- Step 6** Click **Save** to apply your change.

**Caution**

Group permissions override individual user permissions. For example, if you give a user permission for full access and add that user to a group with read access, that user is unable to configure MSE settings.

## Monitoring Status Information for MSEs

The **System > Status** page enables you to monitor server events, Prime Infrastructure alarms and events, and NMSP connection status for the MSE.

### Viewing MSE Server Events

To view a list of server events, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
  - Step 2** Click the name of the applicable MSE.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Status > Server Events**.

The **Status > Server Events** page provides the following information:

- **Timestamp**—Time of the server event.
  - **Severity**—Severity of the server event.
  - **Event**—Detailed description of the event.
  - **Facility**—The facility in which the event took place.
- 

### Viewing MSE Audit Logs

You can view the audit logs for User-triggered operations using the **Audit Logs** option available in an MSE. To view the audit logs, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
  - Step 2** Click the name of the applicable MSE.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Status > Audit Logs**.

The **Status > Audit Logs** page provides the following information:

- **Username**—The Username which has triggered the audit log.
  - **Operation**—The operation that has been performed by the User.
  - **Operation Status**—The status of the operation and it can be **SUCCESSFUL** or **FAILED**.
  - **Invocation Time**—The date and time at which the audit log was recorded for the specified operation.
-

## Viewing MSE Alarms

To view a list of Prime Infrastructure alarms, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
  - Step 2** Click the name of the applicable mobility service.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Status > Prime Infrastructure Alarms**.
- 

## Out-of-Sync Alarms

Out-of-sync alarms are of Minor severity (yellow) and are raised in response to the following conditions:

- Elements have been modified in Prime Infrastructure (the auto-sync policy pushes these elements).
- Elements have been modified in the MSE.
- Elements except controllers exist in the MSE database but not in Prime Infrastructure.
- Elements have not been assigned to any MSE (the auto-sync policy does not apply).

Out-of-sync alarms are cleared when the following occurs:

- The MSE is deleted  
When you delete an MSE, the out-of-sync alarms for that system is also deleted. In addition, if you delete the last available MSE, the alarms for “elements not assigned to any server” are also deleted.
- Elements are synchronized manually or automatically
- User manually clears the alarms (although the alarms might reappear the future when the scheduled task is next executed)

By default, out-of-sync alarms are enabled. You can disable them in Prime Infrastructure by choosing **Administration > System Settings > Alarms and Events > Scheduled Tasks**, clicking **Mobility Service Synchronization**, unselecting the **Auto Synchronization** check box, and clicking **Submit**.

---

## Viewing MSE Events

To view a list of Prime Infrastructure events, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
  - Step 2** Click the name of the applicable mobility service.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Status > Prime Infrastructure Events**.
-

## Viewing MSE NMSP Connection Status

The NMSP Connection Status page allows you to verify the NMSP connection between the MSE and the Cisco controller to which the MSE is assigned.

Network Mobility Services Protocol (NMSP) is the protocol that manages communication between the mobility service and the controller.

---

**Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.

**Step 2** Click the name of the applicable mobility service.

**Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Status > NMSP Connection Status**.

The NMSP Connection Status page shows the following information:

- Summary—The Summary section shows each device type, the total number of connections, and the number of inactive connections.
- NMSP Connection Status—This group box shows the following:
  - IP address—Click the device IP address to view NMSP connection status details for this device. See the [Viewing NMSP Connection Status Details](#) for additional information.
  - Target Type—Indicates the device to which the NMSP connection is intended.
  - Version—Indicates the current software version for the device.
  - NMSP Status—Indicates whether the connection is active or inactive.
  - Echo Request Count—Indicates the number of echo requests that were sent.
  - Echo Response Count—Indicates the number of echo responses that were received.
  - Last Message Received—Indicates the date and time of the most recent message received.

**Step 4** Verify that the NMSP Status is ACTIVE.

- If active, you can view details on wired switches, controllers, and wired clients.
- If not active, resynchronize Prime Infrastructure device and the MSE.

You can launch an NMSP troubleshooting tool for an inactive connection.

---

### Viewing NMSP Connection Status Details

To view NMSP Connection Status details, follow these steps:

---

**Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.

**Step 2** Click the name of the applicable mobility service.

**Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Status > NMSP Connection Status**.

**Step 4** Click the device IP address to open the NMSP Connection Status Details page. The Details page shows the following information:

- Summary
  - IP Address
  - Version—The current software version for the device.
  - Target Type—The device to which the NMSP connection is intended.

- NMSP Status—Indicates whether the connection is active or inactive.
  - Echo Request Count—The number of echo requests that were sent.
  - Echo Response Count—The number of echo responses that were received.
  - Last Activity Time—The date and time of the most recent message activity between the device and the MSE.
  - Last Echo Request Message Received At—The date and time the last echo request was received.
  - Last Echo Response Message Received At—The date and time the last echo response was received.
  - Model—The device model.
  - MAC Address—The MAC address of the device, if applicable.
  - Capable NMSP Services—Indicates the NMSP-capable services for this device such as ATTACHMENT or LOCATION.
  - Subscribed Services—Indicates subservices for each subscribed NMSP service. For example, MOBILE\_STATION\_ATTACHMENT is a subservice of ATTACHMENT.
  - Messages
    - Message Type—Message types might include: ATTACHMENT\_NOTIFICATION, ATTACHMENT\_REQUEST, ATTACHMENT\_RESPONSE, CAPABILITY\_NOTIFICATION, ECHO\_REQUEST, ECHO\_RESPONSE, LOCATION\_NOTIFICATION, LOCATION\_REQUEST, SERVICE\_SUBSCRIBE\_REQUEST, SERVICE\_SUBSCRIBE\_RESPONSE.
    - In/Out—Indicates whether the message was an incoming or outgoing message.
    - Count—Indicates the number of incoming or outgoing messages.
    - Last Activity Time—The date and time of the most recent activity or message.
    - Bytes—Size of the message in Bytes.
- 

## Editing MSE Backup Parameters

To view or edit mobility service backup parameters, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
  - Step 2** Click the name of the mobility service whose properties you want to edit.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Maintenance > Backup**.
    - Backups located at—Indicates the location of the backup file.
    - Enter a name for the Backup—Enter or edit the name of the backup file.
    - Timeout (in secs)—Indicates the length of time (in seconds) before attempts to back up files times out.
-

## Backing Up MSE Historical Data

Prime Infrastructure contains functionality for backing up MSE data.

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
  - Step 2** Click the name of the MSE that you want to back up.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Maintenance > Backup**.
  - Step 4** Enter the name of the backup.
  - Step 5** Enter the time in seconds after which the backup times out.
  - Step 6** Click **Submit** to back up the historical data to the hard drive of the server running Prime Infrastructure.

Status of the backup can be seen on the page while the backup is in process. Three items are displayed on the page during the backup process: (1) Last Status field provides messages noting the status of the backup; (2) Progress field shows what percentage of the backup is complete; and (3) Started at field shows when the backup began noting date and time.

You can run the backup process in the background while working on other MSE operations in another Prime Infrastructure page.

Backups are stored in the FTP directory that you specify during the Prime Infrastructure installation. However, in the Prime Infrastructure installation, the FTP directory is not specified. It might be necessary to provide the full path of the FTP root.

## Restoring MSE Historical Data

To restore a file back into the mobility service, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
  - Step 2** Click the name of the mobility service whose properties you want to edit.
  - Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Maintenance > Restore**.
  - Step 4** Choose the file to restore from the drop-down list.
  - Step 5** Select the **Delete synchronized service assignments** check box if you want to permanently remove all service assignments from the MSE.

This option is applicable for network designs, wired switches, controllers and event definitions. The existing location history data is retained, however you must use manual service assignments to perform any future location calculations.

- Step 6** Click **Submit** to start the restoration process.
- Step 7** Click **OK** to confirm that you want to restore the data from the Prime Infrastructure server hard drive.

When the restoration is complete, Prime Infrastructure shows a message to that effect.

You can run the restore process in the background while working on other MSE operations in another Prime Infrastructure page.

---



## Downloading Software to MSEs

To download software to an MSE using Prime Infrastructure, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Verify that you can ping the location appliance from Prime Infrastructure or an external FTP server, whichever you are going to use for the application code download.
- Step 2** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 3** Click the name of the MSE to which you want to download software.
- Step 4** On the left sidebar menu, choose **Maintenance**.
- Step 5** Click **Download Software** and do one of the following:
- To download software listed in Prime Infrastructure directory, select the **Select from uploaded images to transfer into the Server** check box. Then, choose a binary image from the drop-down list.  
  
Prime Infrastructure downloads the binary images listed in the drop-down list into the FTP server directory you specified during the Prime Infrastructure installation.  
  
In the Prime Infrastructure installation, FTP directory is not specified. It might be necessary to give the full path of the FTP root.
  - To use downloaded software available locally or over the network, select the **Browse a new software image to transfer into the Server** check box and click **Browse**. Locate the file and click **Open**.
- Step 6** Enter the time, in seconds (between 1 and 1800), after which the software download times out.
- Step 7** Click **Download** to send the software to the /opt/installers directory on the MSE.
- 

## Configuring Partner Systems for MSEs

The System > Partner Systems page enables you to do MSE-Qualcomm PDS configuration. This configuration is aimed at providing better navigation capability for the mobile devices. The Partner Discovery Server (PDS) generates encrypted assistance data using the floor plan and AP data which is provided by the MSE. The PDS converts this information into an optimized format that will be used by Qualcomm smart phones.

## Configuring Qualcomm PDS for MSE

To configure Qualcomm PDS for MSE, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the mobility services.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **System > Partner Systems**.  
The Qualcomm PDS Configuration for MSE page appears.
- Step 4** If you want to enable MSE-Qualcomm communication, then select the **Enable Qualcomm** check box.

- Step 5** In the Qualcomm PDS Endpoint text box, enter the Qualcomm PDS server URL. This is the URL of the PDS from where you can fetch data assistance. The default URL is <http://207.114.133.174:8000/AssistanceDataMgr/AssistanceDataMgrSOAP?wsdl>.
- Step 6** In the MSE URL to request assistance data text box, enter the MSE URL. This is the URL at which the MSE is accessible by the devices at the venue.
- Step 7** In the Cisco Mobile Concierge SSID text box, enter the Mobile Concierge SSID information of the venue to which mobile clients should connect. The Qualcomm smart phones will associate this SSID and communicate with MSE.
- Step 8** Enter the venue description in the Venue Description text box.
- Step 9** Enter refresh time period for assistance data for MSE in the Refresh time period for assistance data on MSE text box.
- Step 10** Enter refresh time period for assistance data for mobile clients in the Refresh time period for assistance data on mobile clients text box.
- Step 11** Select the Include Copyright Information check box if the messages/assistance data sent to Qualcomm PDS server and mobile clients should be copyrighted.
- Step 12** In the Copyright Owner text box, enter the copyright owner information that has to be included.
- Step 13** Enter the copyright year to be included in the Copyright Year text box.
- Step 14** Click **Save** to save the configuration and **Cancel** to go back.
- 

## MSE-Qualcomm Configuration

The MSE-Qualcomm configuration involves the following steps:

- Generate Map Extraction Tool (MET) output from CAD file.
- Input MET Output into Prime Infrastructure
- Addition of GPS Markers
- Synchronize the Floor to MSE
- Provide Qualcomm QUIPS/PDS and Copyright Information
- On MSE, perform F2 Interface request to Qualcomm PDS server

Qualcomm's MET is an application that allows you to customize and select various layers from a map file (DXF file) and generates a zip file containing:

- Image file (.PNG format) to be used as floor map on Prime Infrastructure.
- Span.xml file that contains the dimensions of the floor (horizontal and vertical) in meters.
- Qualcomm specific map XML file containing geometric feature information related to walls, doors, points of interest, and so on.



### Note

MET application is independent of Prime Infrastructure and MSE and can reside on any host machine. Only the output of MET is used as MAP related input information on Prime Infrastructure.

---

- Step 1** Start Qualcomm MET tool by following the steps in ReadMe.txt within the MET Tool folder.
- Step 2** Input the DXF File in the Map Extraction Tool.

- Step 3** Select necessary layers from the left sidebar menu.
- Step 4** Save the output of Map Extraction Tool to desired location on the Map Extraction Tool user interface.
- 

## Managing Cisco Adaptive wIPS Service Parameters

The wIPS Service page allows you to view or manage wIPS service administrative settings.



**Note** Cisco Adaptive wIPS functionality is not supported for non-root partition users.

---

To view or manage wIPS service administration settings, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Choose the device name of the applicable MSE.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **wIPS Service**.
- Step 4** View or edit the following parameters:
- Log level—Choose the applicable log level from the drop-down list. Log levels include **Debug**, **Error**, **Important Event**, **Major Debug**, **None**, and **Warning**.
  - Forensic size limit (GB)—Enter the maximum allowable size of forensic files.
  - Alarm ageout (hours)—Enter the age limit, in hours, for each alarm.
  - Device ageout (days)—Enter the age limit, in days, for the device to send alarms.
- Step 5** Click **Save** to confirm the changes or **Cancel** to close the page with no changes applied.
- 

## Managing Context-Aware Service Software Parameters

Context-Aware Service (CAS) software allows an MSE to simultaneously track thousands of mobile assets and clients by retrieving contextual information such as location, temperature and asset availability about a client or tag (Cisco CX version or later) from Cisco access points.

CAS relies on two engines for processing the contextual information it receives. The *Context-Aware Engine for Clients* processes data received from Wi-Fi clients and the *Context-Aware Engine for Tags* processes data received from Wi-Fi tags; these engines can be deployed together or separately depending on the business need.

Mobility services engines do not track or map non-Cisco CX tags.

CAS was previously referred to as Cisco location-based services.

You can modify Context-Aware Service Software properties as to the type and number of clients or tags that are tracked and whether or not locations are calculated for those clients or tags.

You can also modify parameters that affect the location calculation of clients and tags such as Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) measurements.

## Viewing Contextual Information

Before you can use Prime Infrastructure to view contextual information, initial configuration for the MSE is required using a command-line interface (CLI) console session. See the *Cisco 3355 Mobility Services Engine Getting Started Guide* and the *Cisco 3100 MSE Getting Started Guide* at the following URL: [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps9742/tsd\\_products\\_support\\_series\\_home.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps9742/tsd_products_support_series_home.html).

After its installation and initial configuration are complete, the MSE can communicate with multiple Cisco wireless LAN controllers to collect operator-defined contextual information. You can then use the associated Prime Infrastructure to communicate with each MSE to transfer and display selected data.

You can configure the MSE to collect data for clients, rogue access points, rogue clients, mobile stations, interferers, and active RFID asset tags.

## Licensing for Clients and Tags

You must purchase licenses from Cisco to retrieve contextual information on tags and clients from access points.

- Licenses for tags and clients are offered separately.
- The clients license also contains tracking of rogue clients and rogue access points, and interferers (if enabled).
- Licenses for tags and clients are offered in a variety of quantities, ranging from 1,000 to 12,000 units.

The AeroScout Context-Aware Engine for Tags support 100 permanent tag licenses; Context-Aware Services consists of permanent tag licenses.



### Note

See the *Release Notes for Cisco 3300 Series Mobility Services Engine for Software Release 6.0* at the following URL:

[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps9742/tsd\\_products\\_support\\_series\\_home.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps9742/tsd_products_support_series_home.html) for more information on tags and client licenses.

## Context-Aware Service General Parameters

To access the Context Aware Service > General page, choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines > General** from the left sidebar menu. This page provides the following information:

- Version
- Operational Status
- Number of Tracked Wireless Clients
- Number of Traced Tags
- Number of Tracked Rogue APs
- Number of Tracked Rogue Clients
- Number of Tracked Interferers
- Number of Tracked Wired Clients
- Total Elements Tracked
- Tracked Elements (Wireless Clients, Rogue APs, Rogue Clients, Interferers, and Wired Clients) Limit

- Tracked Tags Limit

**Clients** represent a snapshot of client count every 15 minutes. **Peak Clients** is the peak count during that 15-minute time period. For example, in a 15-minute time period, the client count varies from 100 to 300. When Prime Infrastructure polls MSE, MSE returns the client count as the count at that exact time, which could be any number between 100 to 300, and the Peak Client Count as 300.

## Modifying Tracking Parameters for Mobility Services

The MSE can track up to 25,000 clients or up to 25,000 tags (with the proper license purchase). Updates on the locations of elements being tracked are provided to the MSE from the Cisco wireless LAN controller.

Only those elements designated for tracking by the controller are viewable in Prime Infrastructure maps, queries, and reports. No events and alarms are collected for non-tracked elements and none are used in calculating the 25,000 element limit for clients or tags.

You can modify the following tracking parameters using Prime Infrastructure:

- Enable and disable element locations (client stations, active asset tags, interferers, wired clients, rogue clients, and rogue access points) you actively track.
  - Wired client location tracking enables servers in a data center to more easily find wired clients in the network. Servers are associated with wired switch ports in the network.
- Set limits on how many of specific elements you want to track.

For example, given a client license of 12,000 trackable units, you can set a limit to track only 8,000 client stations (leaving 4,000 units available to track rogue clients and rogue access points). Once the tracking limit is met for a given element, the number of elements not being tracked is summarized in the Tracking Parameters page.
- Disable tracking and reporting of ad hoc rogue clients and access points.

To configure tracking parameters for an MSE, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines** to open the Mobility Services page.
  - Step 2** Click the name of the MSE whose properties you want to edit. The General Properties page appears.
  - Step 3** Choose **Context-Aware Software > Tracking Parameters** from the Administration subheading to display the configuration options.
  - Step 4** Modify the following tracking parameters as appropriate (see [Table 42-5](#)).

Table 42-5 Tracking Parameters


Field	Configuration Options
Tracking Parameters	
Wired Clients	<p>1. Select the <b>Enable</b> check box to enable tracking of client stations by the MSE.</p> <p>In 7.0, the client license encompasses all network location service elements and is shared among wireless clients, wired clients, rogue clients, access points, and interferers.</p> <p>The wired client limiting is supported from MSE 7.0 and Prime Infrastructure 1.0. In other words, you can limit wired clients to a fixed number, say 500. This limit is set to ensure that the licenses are not taken up completely by wired clients and some licenses are available for other devices.</p> <p> <b>Caution</b> When upgrading the MSE from 6.0 to 7.0, if any limits have been set on wireless clients or rogues, they reset because of the wired client limit change in 7.0.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Active Value (Display only): Indicates the number of wired client stations currently being tracked.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Not Tracked (Display only): Indicates the number of wired client stations beyond the limit.</p>
Wireless Clients	<p>1. Select the <b>Enable</b> check box to enable tracking of client stations by the MSE.</p> <p>2. Select the <b>Enable Limiting</b> check box to set a limit on the number of client stations to track.</p> <p>3. Enter a Limit Value, if limiting is enabled. The limit entered can be any positive value up to 25,000 which is the maximum number of clients that can be tracked by an MSE.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The actual number of tracked clients is determined by the license purchased.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Active Value (Display only): Indicates the number of client stations currently being tracked.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Not Tracked (Display only): Indicates the number of client stations beyond the limit.</p>
Rogue Access Points	<p>1. Select the <b>Enable</b> check box to enable tracking of rogue clients and asset points by the MSE.</p> <p>2. Select the <b>Enable Limiting</b> check box to set a limit on the number of rogue clients and asset tags stations to track.</p> <p>3. Enter a Limit Value, if limiting is enabled. The limit entered can be any positive value up to 25,000 which is the maximum number of rogue clients and access points that can be tracked by an MSE.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The actual number of tracked rogues (clients and access points) is driven by the client license purchased. The user must consider the number of clients that are being tracked in determining the available quantity to allocate to track rogue clients and access points because clients and rogue clients and access points are addressed by the same license.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Active Value (Display only): Indicates the number of rogue clients and access points currently being tracked.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Not Tracked (Display only): Indicates the number of rogue clients and access points beyond the limit.</p>
Exclude Ad-Hoc Rogues	Select the check box to turn off the tracking and reporting of ad hoc rogues in the network. As a result, ad hoc rogues are not displayed on Prime Infrastructure maps or its events and alarms reported.

Table 42-5 Tracking Parameters (continued)


Field	Configuration Options
Rogue Clients	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the <b>Enable</b> check box to enable tracking of rogue clients by the MSE.</li> <li>2. Select the <b>Enable Limiting</b> check box to set a limit on the number of rogue clients to track.</li> <li>3. Enter a Limit Value, if limiting is enabled. The limit entered can be any positive value up to 25,000 which is the maximum number of rogue clients that can be tracked by an MSE.</li> </ol> <p><b>Note</b> The actual number of tracked rogues (clients and access points) is driven by the client license purchased. The user must consider the number of clients that are being tracked in determining the available quantity to allocate to track rogue clients and access points because clients and rogue clients and access points are addressed by the same license.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Active Value (Display only): Indicates the number of rogue clients being tracked.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Not Tracked (Display only): Indicates the number of rogue clients beyond the limit.</p>
Interferers	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the <b>Enable</b> check box to enable tracking of the interferers by the MSE.</li> </ol> <p>In 7.0, the client license encompasses all network location service elements and is shared among wireless clients, wired clients, rogue clients, access points, and interferers.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Active Value (Display only): Indicates the number of interferers currently being tracked.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Not Tracked (Display only): Indicates the number of interferers beyond the limit.</p>
<b>Asset Tracking Elements</b>	
Active RFID Tags	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the <b>Enable</b> check box to enable tracking of active RFID tags by the MSE.</li> </ol> <p><b>Note</b> The actual number of tracked active RFID tags is determined by the license purchased.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Active Value (Display only): Indicates the number of active RFID tags currently being tracked. It also depends on the tag engine chosen.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Not Tracked (Display only): Indicates the number of active RFID tags beyond the limit.</p>
<b>SNMP Parameters</b> Not applicable to mobility services 7.0.105.0 and later.	
SNMP Retry Count	Enter the number of times to retry a polling cycle the default value is 3. Allowed values are from 1 to 99999. (Configurable in controller Release 4.1 and earlier only.)
SNMP Timeout	Enter the number of seconds before a polling cycle times out, the default value is 5. Allowed values are from 1 to 99999. (Configurable in controller Release 4.1 and earlier only.)
<b>SNMP Polling Interval</b>	
Client Stations	Select the <b>Enable</b> check box to enable client station polling and enter the polling interval in seconds. Default value is 300. Allowed values are from 1 to 99999. (Configurable in controller Release 4.1 and earlier only.)
Active RFID Tags	<p>Select the <b>Enable</b> check box to enable active RFID tag polling and enter the polling interval in seconds. Allowed values are from 1 to 99999.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> Before the mobility service can collect asset tag data from controllers, you must enable the detection of active RFID tags using the <b>config rfid status enable</b> CLI command on the controllers.</p>

Table 42-5 Tracking Parameters (continued)

Field	Configuration Options
Rogue Clients and Access Points	Select the <b>Enable</b> check box to enable rogue access point polling and enter the polling interval in seconds. Default value is 600. Allowed values are from 1 to 99999.(Configurable in controller Release 4.1 and earlier only.)
Statistics	Select the <b>Enable</b> check box to enable statistics polling for the mobility service, and enter the polling interval in seconds. Default value is 900. Allowed values are from 1 to 99999.(Configurable in controller Release 4.1 and earlier only.)

**Step 5** Click **Save** to store the new settings in the MSE database.

## Filtering Parameters for Mobility Services

You can limit the number of asset tags, wired clients, rogue clients, interferers and access points whose location is tracked by filtering on the following:

- MAC addresses

Specific MAC addresses can be entered and labeled as allowed or disallowed from location tracking. You can import a file with the MAC addresses that are to be allowed or disallowed, or you can enter them individually in the Prime Infrastructure GUI page.

The format for entering MAC addresses is xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx. If a file of MAC addresses is imported, the file must follow a specific format as follows:

- Each MAC address should be listed on a single line.
- Allowed MAC addresses must be listed first and preceded by an “[Allowed]” line item. Disallowed MAC addresses must be preceded by “[Disallowed].”
- Wildcard listings can be used to represent a range of MAC addresses. For example, the first entry “00:11:22:33:\*” in the Allowed listing that follows is a wildcard.



**Note** Allowed MAC address formats are viewable in the Filtering Parameters configuration page. See [Table 42-6](#) for details.

EXAMPLE file listing:

```
[Allowed]
00:11:22:33:*
22:cd:34:ae:56:45
02:23:23:34:*
[Disallowed]
00:10:*
ae:bc:de:ea:45:23
```

- Probing clients

Probing clients are clients that are associated to another controller but whose probing activity causes them to be seen by another controller and be counted as an element by the “probed” controller as well as its primary controller.



## Modifying Filtering Parameters

To configure filtering parameters for an MSE, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**. The Mobility Services page appears.
- Step 2** Click the name of the MSE whose properties you want to edit. The General Properties page appears.
- Step 3** From the Context-Aware Software menu, choose **Filtering Parameters** from the Administration subheading to display the configuration options.
- Step 4** Modify the following filtering parameters as appropriate (see [Table 42-6](#)).

**Table 42-6** Filtering Parameters

Field	Configuration Options
Advanced Filtering Parameters	
Duty Cycle Cutoff Interferers	<p>Enter the duty cycle cutoff value for interferers so that only those interferers whose duty cycle meets the specified limits are tracked and counted against the Base location license.</p> <p>The default value for the Duty Cycle Cutoff Interferers is 0% and the configurable range is from 0% to 100%.</p> <p>To better utilize the location license, you can choose to specify a filter for interferers based on the duty cycle of the interferer.</p>
MAC Filtering Parameters	
Exclude Probing Clients	Select the check box to prevent location calculation of probing clients.
Enable Location MAC Filtering	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the check box to enable MAC filtering of specific elements by their MAC address.</li> <li>To import a file of MAC addresses (Upload a file for Location MAC Filtering field), browse for the filename and click <b>Save</b> to load the file. The imported list of MAC addresses auto-populates the Allowed List and Disallowed List based on their designation in the file.</li> </ol> <p><b>Note</b> To view allowed MAC address formats, click the red question mark next to the Upload a file for Location MAC Filtering field.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To add an individual MAC address, enter the MAC addresses (format is xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx) and click either <b>Allow</b> or <b>Disallow</b>. The address appears in the appropriate column.</li> </ol> <p><b>Note</b> To move an address between the Allow and Disallow columns, highlight the MAC address entry and click the button under the appropriate column.</p> <p><b>Note</b> To move multiple addresses, click the first MAC address and press <b>Ctrl</b> to highlight additional MAC addresses. Click <b>Allow</b> or <b>Disallow</b> based on its desired destination.</p> <p><b>Note</b> If a MAC address is not listed in the Allow or Disallow column, by default, it appears in the Blocked MACs column. If you click the <b>Unblock</b> button, the MAC address automatically moves to the Allow column. You can move it to the Disallow column by selecting the Disallow button under the Allow column.</p>

**Step 5** Click **Save** to store the new settings in the MSE database.

## Modifying History Parameters for Mobility Services


You can use Prime Infrastructure to specify how long to store (archive) histories on client stations, rogue clients, and asset tags. These histories are received from those controllers that are associated with the mobility service.

You can also program the mobility service to periodically remove (prune) duplicate data from its historical files to reduce the amount of data stored on its hard drive.

To configure mobility service history settings, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the mobility service whose properties you want to edit.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Context Aware Service > History Parameters**.
- Step 4** Modify the following history parameters as appropriate (see [Table 42-7](#)).

**Table 42-7** History Parameters

Field	Description
Archive for	Enter the number of days for the location appliance to retain a history of each enabled category. The default value is 30. Allowed values are from 1 to 99999.
Prune data starting at	Enter the number of hours and minutes at which the location appliance starts data pruning (between 0 and 23 hours, and between 1 and 59 minutes). Enter the interval, in minutes, after which data pruning starts again (between 0, which means never, and 99900000). The default start time is 23 hours and 50 minutes, and the default interval is 1440 minutes.
Enable History Logging of Location Transitions for	To enable history logging of Location transitions, choose one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Client Stations</li> <li>• Wired Stations</li> <li>• Asset Tags</li> <li>• Rogue Clients</li> <li>• Rogue Access Points</li> <li>• Interferers</li> </ul>
 <b>Note</b>	Before the mobility service can collect asset tag data from controllers, you must enable the detection of RFID tags using the <b>config rfid status enable</b> CLI command.

**Step 5** Click **Save** to store your selections in the location appliance database.

## Enabling Location Presence for Mobility Services

You can enable location presence on the MSE to provide expanded Civic (city, state, postal code, country) and GEO (longitude, latitude) location information beyond the Cisco default setting (campus, building, floor, and X, Y coordinates). This information can then be requested by wireless and wired clients on a demand basis for use by location-based services and applications.

You can also import advanced location information such as the MAC address of a wired client and the wired switch slot and port to which the wired client is attached.

Location Presence can be configured when a new Campus, Building, Floor or Outdoor Area is being added or configured at a later date.

Once enabled, the MSE is capable of providing any requesting Cisco CX v5 client its location.

**Note**

Before enabling this feature, synchronize the MSE.

To enable and configure location presence on an MSE, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Select the MSE to which the campus or building or floor is assigned.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Context Aware Services > Administration > Presence Parameters**.
- Step 4** Select the Service Type **On Demand** check box to enable location presence for Cisco CX clients v5.
- Step 5** Select one of the following Location Resolution options:
  - a. When Building is selected, the MSE can provide any requesting client, its location by building.
    - For example, if a client requests its location and the client is located in Building A, the MSE returns the client address as Building A.
  - b. When AP is selected, the MSE can provide any requesting client, its location by its associated access point. The MAC address of the access point appears.
    - For example, if a client requests its location and the client is associated with an access point with a MAC address of 3034:00hh:0adg, the MSE returns the client address of 3034:00hh:0adg.
  - c. When X,Y is selected, the MSE can provide any requesting client, its location by its X and Y coordinates.
    - For example, if a client requests its location and the client is located at (50, 200) the MSE returns the client address of 50, 200.
- Step 6** Select any or all of the location formats:
  - a. Select the **Cisco** check box to provide location by campus, building and floor and X and Y coordinates. Default setting.
  - b. Select the **Civic** check box to provide the name and address (street, city, state, postal code, country) of a campus, building, floor, or outdoor area.
  - c. Select the **GEO** check box to provide the longitude and latitude coordinates.
- Step 7** By default, the Location Response Encoding check box is selected. It indicates the format of the information when received by the client. There is no need to change this setting.
- Step 8** Select the **Retransmission Rule** check box to allow the receiving client to retransmit the received information to another party.

- Step 9** Enter a Retention Expiration value in minutes. This determines how long the received information is stored by the client before it is overwritten. The default value is 24 hours (1440 minutes).
- Step 10** Click **Save**.
- 

## Importing Asset Information for Mobility Services

To import asset, chokepoint, and TDOA receiver information for the MSE using Prime Infrastructure, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the MSE for which you want to import information.
- Step 3** Choose **Context Aware Service > Administration > Import Asset Information**.
- Step 4** Enter the name of the text file or browse for the filename.
- Specify information in the imported file in the following formats:
- tag format: #tag, 00:00:00:00:00:00, categoryname, groupname, assetname
  - station format: #station, 00:00:00:00:00:00, categoryname, groupname, assetname
- Step 5** When the import filename is located in the Browse text box, click **Import**.
- 

## Exporting Asset Information for Mobility Services

To export asset, chokepoint, and TDOA receiver information from the MSE to a file using Prime Infrastructure, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the MSE from which you want the export information.
- Step 3** Choose **Context Aware Service > Administration > Export Asset Information**.
- Information in the exported file is in the following formats:
- tag format: #tag, 00:00:00:00:00:00, categoryname, groupname, assetname
  - station format: #station, 00:00:00:00:00:00, categoryname, groupname, assetname
- Step 4** Click **Export**.
- Click **Open** (display to screen), **Save** (to external PC or server), or **Cancel** (to cancel the request).
- If you select **Save**, you are asked to select the asset file destination and name. The file is named assets.out by default. Click **Close** in the dialog box when the download is complete.
- 

## Importing Civic Information for Mobility Services

To import civic information for the MSE using Prime Infrastructure, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the MSE for which you want to import asset information.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Context Aware Software**.
- Step 4** From the Administration left sidebar menu, choose **Import Civic Information**.
- Step 5** Enter the name of the text file or browse for the filename.
- Information in the imported file should be one of the following formats:  
Switch IP Address, Slot Number, Port Number, Extended Parent Civic Address, X, Y, Floor ID, Building ID, Network Design ID, ELIN:"ELIN", PIDF-Lo-Tag:"Civic Address Element Value"
- Each entry must appear on a separate line.
- Step 6** Click **Import**.
- 

## Context-Aware Service Wired Parameters

This section describes the Context Aware Service > Wired drop-down list parameters.

### Monitoring Wired Switches

You can review details on the wired switch (IP address, MAC address, serial number, software version, and ELIN), its port, its wired clients (count and status), and its civic information.

Wired switch data is downloaded to the MSE through Prime Infrastructure when the Ethernet switch and the MSE are synchronized (Services > Synchronize Services > Switches). Communication between a location-capable switch and the MSE is over NMSP. Prime Infrastructure and the MSE communicate over XML.

To view details on wired switches, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Click the device name link of the appropriate wired location switch.
- Step 3** Choose **Context Aware Service > Wired > Wired Switches**. A summary of wired switches that are synchronized with the MSE appears.
- Step 4** See the [Wired Switch Details](#) for more information on the switch, its port, its wired clients (count and status), and its civic information click the IP address link.
- 

### Wired Switch Details

To view wired switch details, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Click the device name link of the appropriate MSE.
- Step 3** Choose **Context Aware Service > Wired > Wired Switches**. A summary of wired switches that are synchronized with the MSE appears.

**Step 4** Click the IP address link for the applicable wired switch. The Wired Switch Details page appears. The Wired Switch Details page has four tabs: Switch Information, Switch Ports, Civic, and Advanced. You can export civic information from the switch by choosing that option from the Select a command drop-down list. This option is available in all four dashlets of the Wired Switches page.

The Wired Switch Details tabs shows the following information:

- Switch Information—Displays a total count summary of wired clients connected to the switch along with the state of the client (connected, disconnected, and unknown).
  - Connected clients—Clients that are connected to the wired switch.
  - Disconnected clients—Clients that are disconnected from the wired switch.
  - Unknown clients—Clients are marked as unknown when the NMSP connection to the wired switch is lost.

You can view detailed wired client information by clicking in one of the client count links (total clients, connected, disconnected, and unknown). See the “[Monitoring Wired Clients](#)” section on [page 42-46](#) section for more information.

- Switch Ports—Displays a detailed list of the ports on the switch. You can change the listing order (ascending, descending) of port IP addresses, slot numbers, module number, port type, and port number by clicking in the respective column heading.
- Civic—Displays a detailed list of the civic information for the wired switch.
- Advanced—Displays a detailed list of the additional civic information for the wired switch.

## Monitoring Wired Clients

You can view details on a wired client (MAC address, IP address, username, serial number, UDI, model no., software version, VLAN ID, and VLAN ID), port association, and its civic information.

Wired client data is downloaded to the MSE through Prime Infrastructure when the switch and the MSE are synchronized (Services > Synchronize Services > Switches).

Prime Infrastructure and the MSE communicate over XML.

You can view the details of the wired client on either the wired switches page (Context Aware Service > Wired > Wired Switches) or wired clients page (Context Aware Service > Wired > Wired Clients).

- If you know the IP address, MAC address, VLAN ID, serial number, or username, you can use the search field on the wired clients page.
- If you want to examine wired clients as they relates to a specific switch, you can view that information on the wired switches page. See the [Monitoring Wired Switches](#) section for more information.

To view details on a wired client, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.

**Step 2** Click the device name link of the appropriate MSE.

**Step 3** Choose **Context Aware Service > Wired > Wired Clients**.

In the Wired Clients summary page, clients are grouped by their switch.

A client status is noted as connected, disconnected, or unknown:

- Connected clients—Clients that are active and connected to a wired switch.
- Disconnected clients—Clients that are disconnected from the wired switch.
- Unknown clients—Clients that are marked as unknown when the NMSP connection to the wired switch is lost. See the [Viewing MSE NMSP Connection Status](#) for more information about NMSP connections.

If you know the MAC address of the wired client, you can click that link to reach the detail page of the client or use the search field. See the [Wired Client Details](#) for more information on wired client details.

- You can also search for a wired client by its IP address, username, or VLAN ID.

If you click the IP address of the switch, you are forwarded to the detail page of the switch. See the [Monitoring Wired Switches](#) section for more information.

- Step 4** Click the MAC Address for the applicable client to view wired client details. See the [Wired Client Details](#) for more information on wired client details.
- 

## Wired Client Details

To view wired client details, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Click the device name link of the appropriate MSE.
- Step 3** Choose **Context Aware Service > Wired > Wired Clients**. A summary of wired clients that are synchronized with the MSE appears.
- Step 4** Click the MAC address link for the applicable wired client. The Wired Client Details page appears. The Wired Client Details page has four tabs: Device Information, Port Association, Civic Address, and Advanced.

The Wired Switch Details tabs show the following information:

- Device Information—Display MAC and IP address, username, serial and model number, UDI, software version, VLAN ID, and VLAN name.
- Port Association—Displays the physical location of the switch port/slot/module on which the wired client terminates, the client status (connected, disconnected, unknown), and the switch IP address.
- Civic Address—Displays any civic address information.
- Advanced—Displays extended physical address details for the wired clients, if applicable.

A client takes on the civic address and advanced location information that is configured for the port on which the client terminates. If no civic and advanced information is defined for the its port (port/slot/module) then no location data is displayed.

---

## Context-Aware Service Advanced Parameters

### Modifying Northbound Notifications

Northbound notifications define which tag notifications the MSE sends to third-party applications.

To configure northbound parameters, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
  - Step 2** Click the name of the MSE you want to configure.
  - Step 3** Choose **Context Aware Service > Advanced > Notification Parameters** to display the configuration options.
  - Step 4** Select the **Enable Northbound Notifications** check box to enable the function.
  - Step 5** Select the **Notification Contents** check box to send notifications to third-party applications (northbound).
  - Step 6** Select one or more of the Notification Contents check boxes.
  - Step 7** Select the **Notification Triggers** check box.
  - Step 8** Select one or more of the Notification Triggers check boxes.
  - Step 9** Enter the IP address or hostname and port for the system that is to receive the northbound notifications.
  - Step 10** Choose the transport type from the drop-down list.
  - Step 11** Select the **HTTPS** check box if you want to use HTTPS protocol for secure access to the destination system.
  - Step 12** To modify the notification parameter settings, enter the new value in the appropriate text box in the Advanced tab of this page. See [Table 42-10](#).

**Table 42-8** *User-Configurable Conditional and Northbound Notifications Fields*

Field	Configuration Options
Rate Limit	Enter the rate, in milliseconds, at which the MSE generates notifications. A value of 0 (default) means that the MSE generates notifications as fast as possible (Northbound notifications only).
Queue Limit	Enter the event queue limit for sending notifications. The MSE drops any event above this limit.
Retry Count	Enter the number of times to generate an event notification before the refresh time expires. This parameter can be used for asynchronous transport types which do not acknowledge the receipt of the notification and there is a possibility that the notification may be lost in transit. Default value is 1. <b>Note</b> The MSE does not store events in its database.
Refresh Time	Enter the wait time in minutes that must pass before a notification is resent. For example, if a device is configured for In Coverage Area notification and it is constantly being detected within the Coverage Area. The notification is sent once every refresh time. Default value is 0 minutes.
Drop Oldest Entry on Queue Overflow	(Read-only). The number of event notifications dropped from the queue since startup.
Serialize Events per Mac address per Destination	Select this option if you want the successive events for the same MAC address to be sent to a single destination in a serial manner.

- Step 13** Click **Save**.
-



## Modifying Location Parameters for Mobility Services

You can use Prime Infrastructure to specify whether the mobility service retains its calculation times and how soon the mobility service deletes its collected Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) measurement times. You can also apply varying smoothing rates to manage location movement of an element.

To configure location parameters, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the mobility service whose properties you want to edit.
- Step 3** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Context Aware Service > Location Parameters**.
- Step 4** Modify the location parameters as appropriate (see [Table 42-9](#)).

**Table 42-9** Location Parameters





Field	Description
<b>General</b>	
Enable Calculation Time	Select the check box to enable the calculation of the time required to compute location.   <b>Caution</b> Enable only under Cisco TAC personnel guidance because enabling this field slows down overall location calculations.
Enable OW Location	Select the check box to enable Outer Wall (OW) calculation as part of location calculation.   <b>Note</b> The OW Location parameter is ignored by the location server.
Relative discard RSSI time	Enter the number of minutes since the most recent RSSI sample after which RSSI measurement should be considered stale and discarded. Default value is 3. Allowed values range from 0 to 99999. A value of less than 3 is not recommended.
Absolute discard RSSI time	Enter the number of minutes after which RSSI measurement should be considered stale and discarded, regardless of the most recent sample. Default value is 60. Allowed values range from 0 to 99999. A value of less than 60 is not recommended.
RSSI Cutoff	Enter the RSSI cutoff value, in decibels (dBs) with respect to one (1) mW (dBm), preceding which the mobility service always use the access point measurement. Default value is -75.   <b>Note</b> When 3 or more measurements are available preceding the RSSI cutoff value, the mobility service discards any weaker values and use the 3 (or more) strongest measurements for calculation; however, when only weak measurements following the RSSI cutoff value are available, those values are used for calculation.   <b>Caution</b> Modify only under Cisco TAC personnel guidance. Modifying this value can reduce the accuracy of location calculation.

Table 42-9 Location Parameters (continued)

Field	Description
Enable Location Filtering	If enabled, the location filter is applied only for client location calculation. Enabling location filter allows previous location estimates to be used in estimating current location. This reduces location jitter for stationary clients and improve tracking for mobile clients.
Chokepoint Usage	Select the check box to enable the usage of chokepoint proximity to determine location. Applies to Cisco-compatible Tags capable of reporting chokepoint proximity.
Use Chokepoints for Interfloor conflicts	Allows the use of chokepoints to determine the correct floor during Interfloor conflicts. Choose <b>Never</b> , <b>Always</b> , or <b>Floor Ambiguity</b> .
Chokepoint Out of Range Timeout	After a Cisco-compatible Tag leaves a chokepoint proximity range, this is the timeout (in seconds) after which RSSI information is used again to determine location.
Absent Data Cleanup Interval	Enter the interval period (in minutes) for removing inactive elements from the database.
Use Default Heatmaps for Non Cisco Antennas	Select this check box to enable the usage of default heatmaps for non-Cisco antennas during the Location Calculation. This option is disabled by default.
<b>Movement Detection</b>	
Individual RSSI change threshold	This field specifies the Individual RSSI movement recalculation trigger threshold. Enter a threshold value between 0-127 dBm. Do not modify without Cisco TAC guidance.
Aggregated RSSI change threshold	This field specifies the Aggregated RSSI movement recalculation trigger threshold. Enter a threshold value between 0-127 dBm. It should not be modified without Cisco TAC guidance.
Many new RSSI change percentage threshold	This field specifies Many new RSSI movement recalculation trigger threshold in percentage. It should not be modified without Cisco TAC guidance.
Many missing RSSI percentage threshold	This field specifies Many missing RSSI movement recalculation trigger threshold in percentage. It should not be modified without Cisco TAC guidance.

**Step 5** Click **Save** to store your selections in Prime Infrastructure and mobility service databases.

## Modifying Notification Parameters for Mobility Services

You can use Prime Infrastructure to configure MSE event notification parameters that define such items as how often the notifications are generated or resent by the MSE.

Modify notification parameters only if you expect the MSE to send a large number of notifications or if notifications are not being received.

You can also enable forwarding of northbound notifications for tags to be sent to third-party applications.

The format of northbound notifications sent by the MSE is available on the Cisco developers support portal at the following URL:

[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/svcs/ps3034/ps5408/ps5418/serv\\_home.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/svcs/ps3034/ps5408/ps5418/serv_home.html)

To configure notification parameters, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
  - Step 2** Click the name of the MSE you want to configure.
  - Step 3** From the Context Aware Software left sidebar menu, choose **Notification Parameters** from the Advanced sub-heading to display the configuration options.
  - Step 4** Select the **Enable Northbound Notifications** check box to enable the function.
  - Step 5** Select the **Notification Contents** check box to send notifications to third-party applications (northbound).
  - Step 6** Select one or more of the Notification content options.
  - Step 7** Select the **Notification Triggers** check box.
  - Step 8** Select one or more of the Notification trigger options.
  - Step 9** Enter the IP address and port for the system that is to receive the northbound notifications.
  - Step 10** Choose the transport type from the drop-down list.
  - Step 11** Select **HTTPS** if you want to use HTTPS protocol for secure access to the destination system.
  - Step 12** To modify the notification parameter settings, enter the new value in the appropriate text box in the Advanced tab of the page. [Table 42-10](#) describes each parameter.

**Table 42-10** *User-Configured Conditional and Northbound Notifications Parameters*

Field	Configuration Options
Rate Limit	Enter the rate in milliseconds at which the MSE generates notifications. A value of 0 (default) means that the MSE generates notifications as fast as possible (Northbound notifications only).
Queue Limit	Enter the event queue limit for sending notifications. The MSE drops any event preceding this limit.
Retry Count	Enter the number of times to generate an event notification before the refresh time expires. This field can be used for asynchronous transport types which do not acknowledge the receipt of the notification and there is a possibility that the notification might be lost in transit. Default value is 1.  <b>Note</b> The MSE does not store events in its database.
Refresh Time	Enter the wait time, in minutes, that must pass before a notification is resent. For example if a device is configured for In Coverage Area notification and it is constantly being detected within the Coverage Area. The notification is sent once every refresh time.
Drop Oldest Entry on Queue Overflow	(Read-only). The number of event notifications dropped from the queue since startup.
Serialize Events per Mac address per Destination	Select this option if you want the successive events for the same MAC address to be sent to a single destination in a serial manner.

- Step 13** Click **Save**.
-

## Viewing Partner Engine Status

To access the Partner Engine Status page, choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines > MSE Name > Context Aware Service > Partner Engine > Status**.

If tag licenses are available, then Aeroscout Tag Engine is enabled. Otherwise, Cisco Partner Engine is enabled by default.

If only the evaluation license is available, then the Cisco Partner Engine is enabled by default. The Partner Engine status page shows status based on whether it is a Aeroscout Tag Engine or Cisco Tag Engine.



### Note

The Aeroscout engine fails to start on MSE if the Prime Infrastructure map names have special characters such as '&'.

[Table 42-11](#) describes the fields in the Tag Engine Status page for the Aeroscout Tag Engine.

**Table 42-11** Partner Engine Status Fields

Field	Description
Partner Location Engine Name	The Partner engine name, which is <b>aeroscout</b> .
Version	Version of the Aeroscout Tag Engine.
Description	Description for the Tag Engine.
Registered	Appears as True when the Aeroscout Tag Engine has established communication with the MSE.
Active	Appears as True when the Aeroscout Tag Engine is up and running.
License Information	The maximum tags that are available with the Aeroscout Tag Engine.

If you selected Cisco Tag Engine for Context Aware Service, the Tag Engine Status page displays the following information.

[Table 42-12](#) describes the fields in the Tag Engine Status page for the Cisco Tag Engine.

**Table 42-12** Tag Engine Status Fields

Field	Description
Tag Location Engine Name	The Tag location engine name, which is <b>Cisco</b> .
Version	Version of the Cisco Tag Engine.
Description	Description for the Cisco Tag Engine.
Active	Displays as True when the Cisco Tag Engine is up and running.
License Information	The maximum tags that are available with the Cisco Tag Engine.

## Viewing MSE Notifications Summary

To view the Notification Summary, choose **Services > Mobility Services > Context Aware Notifications > Notification Summary**.

The mobility service sends event notifications and does not store them (fire and forget). However, if Prime Infrastructure is a destination of notification events, it stores the notifications it receives and groups them into the following seven categories:

- **Absence (Missing)**—Generated when the mobility service cannot see the asset in the WLAN for the specified time.
- **Location Change Events**—Generated when client stations, asset tags, rogue clients, and rogue access points move from their previous location.
- **Chokepoint Notifications**—Generated when a tag is seen (stimulated) by a chokepoint. This information is only reported and displayed for CCX v.1-compliant tags.
- **Battery Level**—Generated when a tracked asset tag hits the designated battery level.
- **In/Out Area**—Generated when an asset is moved inside or outside a designated area.

You define a containment area (campus, building, or floor) in the Maps section of Prime Infrastructure. You can define a coverage area using the Map Editor.

- **Movement from Marker**—Generated when an asset is moved beyond a specified distance from a designated marker you define on a map.
- **Emergency**—Generated for a CCX v.1 compliant asset tag when the panic button of the tag is triggered or the tag becomes detached, tampered with, goes inactive or reports an unknown state. This information is only reported and displayed for CCX v.1 compliant tags.

The summary details include the following:

- All Notifications
- Client Stations
- Asset Tags
- Rogue Clients
- Rogue Access Points

To view details for each of the notifications, click the number under the Last Hour, Last 24 Hours, or Total Active column to open the details page for the applicable notification.

## Notifications Cleared

A mobility service sends event notifications when it clears an event condition in one of the following scenarios:

- **Missing (Absence)**—Elements reappear.
- **In/Out Area (Containment)**—Elements move back in or out of the containment area.
- **Distance**—Elements move back within the specified distance from a marker.
- **Location Changes**—Clear state is not applicable to this condition.
- **Battery Level**—Tags are detected again operating with Normal battery level.
- **Emergency**
- **Chokepoint**

In Prime Infrastructure, the Notifications Summary page reflects whether notifications for cleared event conditions have been received.

## Viewing and Managing MSE Notifications

To view the Notification Definitions, choose **Services > Mobility Services > Context Aware Notifications > Notification Definition**. You can add event groups and event definitions to a group in this page. Every groups help you organize your event notifications. An event definition must belong to a particular group.

For more information on adding event groups and event definitions, see [“Adding Event Groups” section on page 42-56](#) and [“Adding Event Definitions” section on page 42-58](#).

The Notification Definition page displays the following parameters only after adding event groups and event definitions:

[Table 42-14](#) lists and describes the fields in the Notification Definition page.

**Table 42-13 Notification Definition Page**

Field	Description
Group Name	Name of the group to which the event definition is added.
Event Definitions	Existing event definitions for the event group.
Created On	Date on which the event groups are created.

## Viewing Notification Statistics

You can view the notification statistics for a specific MSE. To view the Notification Statistics for a specific MSE, choose **Services > Mobility Services > MSE-name > Context Aware Service > Notification Statistics** (where *MSE-name* is the name of an MSE).

[Table 42-14](#) lists and describes the fields in the Notification statistics page.

**Table 42-14 Notification Statistics Fields**

Field	Description
<b>Summary</b>	
Destinations	
Total	Total count of the destinations.
Unreachable	Count of unreachable destinations.
<b>Notification Statistics Summary</b>	
Track Definition Status	Status of the track definition. Track notification status can be either Enabled or Disabled.
Track Definition	Track definition can be either Northbound or CAS event notification.
Destination IP Address	The destination IP address to which the notifications are sent.
Destination Port	The destination port to which the notifications are sent.
Destination Type	The type of the destination. For example, SOAP_XML.
Destination Status	Status of the destination device. The status is either Up or Down.
Last Sent	The date and time at which the last notification was sent to the destination device.

**Table 42-14** Notification Statistics Fields (continued)

Field	Description
<b>Summary</b>	
Last Failed	The date and time at which the notification had failed.
Total Count	The total count of notifications sent to the destination. Click the count link to view the notification statistics details of the destination device.

## Mobile Concierge Service Parameters

### Viewing Configured Service Advertisements

To view the configured service advertisements, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
  - Step 2** Click **Device Name** to view its properties.
  - Step 3** Choose **Mobile Concierge Service > Advertisements** from the left sidebar menu.
- The following information appears in the Mobile Concierge Service page:
- Icon—Displays an icon associated with the service provider.
  - Provide Name—Displays the service providers name.
  - Venue Name—Displays the venue name.
  - Advertisements
    - Friendly Name—Friendly name that is displayed in the handset.
    - Advertisement Type—Type of advertisement that is displayed in the handset.
- 

### Viewing Mobile Concierge Service Statistics

To view Mobile Concierge service statistics, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Services Engines**.
  - Step 2** Click **Device Name** to view its properties.
  - Step 3** Choose **Mobile Concierge service > Statistics** from the left sidebar menu.
- The following information appears in the Mobile Concierge Service page:
- Top 5 Active Mobile MAC addresses—Displays information of the most active mobiles in a given venue.
  - Top 5 Service URIs—Displays information of the usage of the services across a given venue or provider.
-

# Event Groups

To manage events more efficiently, you can use Prime Infrastructure to create event groups. Event groups help you organize your event definitions.

## Adding Event Groups

To add an event group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Context Aware Notifications**.
  - Step 2** Choose **Notification Definitions** from the left sidebar menu.
  - Step 3** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Event Group**.
  - Step 4** Click **Go**.
  - Step 5** Enter the name of the group in the Group Name text box.
  - Step 6** Click **Save**.

The new event group appears in the Event Settings page.

---

## Deleting Event Groups

To delete an event group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Context Aware Notifications**.
  - Step 2** Choose **Notification Definitions** from the left sidebar menu.
  - Step 3** Select the check box of the event group you want to delete.
  - Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Delete Event Group(s)**.
  - Step 5** Click **Go**.
  - Step 6** Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
  - Step 7** Click **Save**.
- 

## Working with Event Definitions

An event definition contains information about the condition that caused the event, the assets to which the event applies, and the event notification destinations. This section describes how to add, delete, and test event definitions.

Prime Infrastructure enables you to add definitions on a per-group basis. Any new event definition must belong to a particular group.

To add an event definition, follow these steps:



- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Context Aware Notifications**.
- Step 2** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Notification Definitions**.
- Step 3** Click the name of the group to which you want to add the event. An event definition summary page appears for the selected event group.
- Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Event Definition**.
- Step 5** Click **Go**.
- Step 6** Enter the name of the event definition in the Event Definition Name text box.  
The event definition name must be unique within the event group.
- Step 7** Click **Save**.
- Step 8** On the General tab, manage the following parameters:
- Admin Status—Enable event generation by selecting the **Enabled** check box (disabled by default).
  - Priority—Set the event priority by choosing a number from the drop-down list. Zero is highest.  
An event definition with higher priority is serviced before event definitions with lower priority.
  - Activate—To continuously report events, choose the **All the Time** check box. To indicate specific days and times for activation, unselect the **All the Time** check box and choose the applicable days and From/Until times. Click **Save**.
- Step 9** On the Conditions tab, add one or more conditions. For each condition, specify the rules for triggering event notification. To add a condition, follow these steps:
- a. Click **Add** to open the Add/Edit Condition page.
  - b. Choose a condition type from the Condition Type drop-down list and configure its associated Trigger If parameters see (Table 42-15).
  - c. In the Apply To drop-down list, choose the type of asset (**Any, Clients, Tags, Rogue APs, Rogue Clients** or **Interferers**) for which an event is generated if the trigger condition is met.

**Table 42-15** Condition Type/Trigger If Parameters

Condition Type	Trigger If
Missing	Missing for Time (mins)—Enter the number of minutes after which a missing asset event is generated. For example, if you enter 10 in this text box, the MSE generates a missing asset event if the MSE has not located the asset for more than 10 minutes.
In/Out	Inside of or Outside of—Click <b>Select Area</b> and choose the area parameters from the Select page. Click <b>Select</b> . The area to monitor can be an entire campus, building within a campus, a floor in a building, or a coverage area (you can define a coverage area using the map editor).
Distance	In the distance of $x$ (feet) from Marker text box—Enter the distance in feet that triggers an event notification if the monitored asset moves beyond the specified distance from a designated marker. Click <b>Select Marker</b> and choose the marker parameters in the Select page. Click <b>Select</b> .
Battery Level	Battery Level Is—Low, Medium, Normal. Select the appropriate battery level that triggers an event.
Location Change	An event is triggered if the location of the asset changes.
Emergency	Select <b>Any, Panic Button, Tampered, or Detached</b> check box.
Chokepoint	In the range of Chokepoints—Click <b>Select Chokepoint</b> check box and choose the chokepoint parameters in the Select page. Click <b>Select</b> .

Emergency and chokepoint events are only applicable to tags (CCXv.1 compliant).

- d. From the Match By drop-down list, choose the matching criteria (**MAC Address**, **Asset Name**, **Asset Group**, or **Asset Category**), the operator (**Equals** or **Like**), and enter the relevant text for the selected Match By element.
- e. Click **Add**.

**Step 10** On the Destination and Transport tab, follow these steps to add one or more destinations to receive event notifications and configure the transport settings:

- a. Click **Add** to open the Add/Edit Destination and Transport page.
- b. To add one or more new destinations, click **Add New**, enter the applicable IP address, and click **OK**.

The recipient system must have an event listener running to process notifications. By default, when you create an event definition, Prime Infrastructure adds its IP address as the destination.

- c. To select a destination to receive notifications, click to highlight one or more IP addresses in the box on the right and click **Select** to add the IP address(es) to the box on the left.
- d. From the Message Format field drop-down list, select **XML** or **Plain Text**.

If you select Prime Infrastructure as the destination, you must select XML format.

- e. Choose one of the following transport types from the Transport Type drop-down list:
  - **SOAP**—Simple Object Access Protocol. Use SOAP to send notifications over HTTP/HTTPS and to be processed by web services on the destination.  
Specify whether to send notifications over HTTPS by selecting its corresponding check box. Enter the destination port number in the Port Number text box.
  - **Mail**—Use this option to send notifications through e-mail.  
Choose the protocol for sending the e-mail from the Mail Type drop-down list. Enter the following: username and password (if Authentication is enabled), name of the sender, prefix to add to the subject line, e-mail address of recipient, and a port number if necessary.
  - **SNMP**—Simple Network Management Protocol. Use this option to send notifications to SNMP-capable devices.  
If you have selected SNMP version v2c then you are prompted to enter the SNMP community string in the SNMP Community text box and the applicable port number in the Port Number text box.  
If you have selected SNMP version v3 then you are prompted to enter the username, security name, choose the authentication type from the drop-down list, enter the authentication password, choose the privacy type from the drop-down list and enter the privacy password.
  - **SysLog**—Specifies the system log on the destination system as the recipient of event notifications.  
Enter the notification priority in the Priority text box, the name of the facility, and the port number on the destination system.
- f. Click **Add**.

## Adding Event Definitions

An event definition contains information about the condition that caused the event, the assets to which the event applies, and the event notification destination.

Prime Infrastructure enables you to add definitions for each group. An event definition must belong to a group. See the *Cisco Content-Aware Software Configuration Guide* for more information on deleting or testing event definitions.

To add an event definition, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Context Aware Notifications**.
  - Step 2** Choose **Notification Definitions** from the left sidebar menu.
  - Step 3** Click the name of the group to which you want to add to the event. An event definition summary page appears for the selected event group.
  - Step 4** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Event Definition**, and click **Go**.
  - Step 5** On the Conditions tab, add one or more conditions. For each condition you add, specify the rules for triggering event notifications.

**Tip**

---

For example, to keep track of heart monitors in a hospital, you can add rules to generate event notifications when a heart monitor is missing for one hour, a heart monitor moves off its assigned floor, or a heart monitor enters a specific coverage area within a floor.

---

To add a condition, follow these steps:

- a. Click **Add** to add a condition that triggers this event.
- b. In the Add/Edit Condition dialog box, follow these steps:
  - 1. Choose a condition type from the Condition Type drop-down list.

If you chose **Missing** from the Condition Type drop-down list, enter the number of minutes after which a missing asset event is generated. For example, if you enter 10 in this text box, the mobility service engine generates a missing asset event if the mobility service engine has not found the asset for more than 10 minutes. Proceed to Step c.

If you chose **In/Out** from the Condition Type drop-down list, choose **Inside of** or **Outside of**, then select **Select Area** to select the area to monitor for assets going into it or out of it. In the Select dialog box, choose the area to monitor, then click **Select**. The area to monitor can be an entire campus, building within a campus, a floor in a building, or a coverage area (you can define a coverage area using the map editor). For example, to monitor part of a floor in a building, choose a campus from the Campus drop-down list, choose a building from the Building drop-down list, and choose the area to monitor from the Floor Area drop-down list. Then click **Select**. Proceed to Step c.

If you chose **Distance** from the Condition Type drop-down list, enter the distance in feet that triggers an event notification if the monitored asset moves beyond the specified distance from a designated marker, then click **Select Marker**. In the Select dialog box, choose the campus, building, floor, and marker from the corresponding drop-down list, and click **Select**. For example, if you add a marker to a floor plan and set the distance in the Trigger. If the text box is set to 60 feet, an event notification is generated if the monitored asset moves more than 60 feet away from the marker. Proceed to Step c.

You can create markers and coverage areas using the Map Editor. When you create marker names, make sure they are unique across the entire system.

If you chose **Battery Level** from the Condition Type drop-down list, select the check box next to the battery level (low, medium, normal) that triggers an event. Proceed to Step c.

If you chose **Location Change** from the Condition Type drop-down list, proceed to Step c.

If you chose Emergency from the Condition Type drop-down list, click the button next to the emergency (any, panic button, tampered, detached) that triggers an event. Proceed to Step c.

If you chose Chokepoint from the Condition Type drop-down list, proceed to Step c. There is only one trigger condition, and it is displayed by default. No configuration is required.

- c. From the Apply To drop-down list, choose the type of asset (Any, Clients, Tags, Rogue APs, Rogue Clients, or Interferers) for which an event is generated if the trigger condition is met.

If you choose the any option from the Apply to drop-down list, the battery condition is applied to all tags, clients, and rogue access points and rogue clients.

Emergency and chokepoint events apply only to Cisco-compatible extension tags Version 1 (or later).

- d. From the Match By drop-down list, choose the matching criteria (**MAC Address**, **Asset Name**, **Asset Group**, or **Asset Category**), the operator (**Equals** or **Like**) from the drop-down list, and enter the relevant text for the selected Match By element.

Some examples of asset matching criteria that you can specify:

- If you choose **MAC Address** from the Match By drop-down list, choose **Equals** from the Operator drop-down list, and enter a MAC address (for example, 12:12:12:12:12:12), the event condition applies to the element whose MAC address is 12:12:12:12:12:12 (exact match).
- If you choose **MAC Address** from the Match By drop-down list, choose **Like** from the Operator drop-down list, and enter **12:12**, the event condition applies to elements whose MAC address starts with 12:12.

- e. Click **Add** to add the condition you have just defined.

If you are defining a chokepoint, you must select the chokepoint after you add the condition.

To select a chokepoint, do the following:

1. Click **Select Chokepoint**. An entry page appears.
2. Choose **Campus**, **Building**, and **Floor** from the appropriate drop-down lists.
3. Choose a Chokepoint from the menu that appears.

You are returned to the Add/Edit Condition page, and the location path (Campus > Building > Floor) for the chokepoint auto-populates the text area next to the Select Checkpoint button.

- Step 6** On the Destination and Transport tab, follow these steps to add one or more destinations to receive event notifications and to configure the transport settings:

- a. To add a new destination, click **Add**. The Add/Edit Destination configuration page appears.

- b. Click **Add New**.

- c. Enter the IP address of the system that receives event notifications, and click **OK**.

The recipient system must have an event listener running to process notifications. By default, when you create an event definition, Prime Infrastructure adds its IP address as the destination.

- d. To select a destination to send event notifications to, highlight one or more IP addresses in the box on the right, and click **Select** to add the IP addresses to the box on the left.

- e. Choose **XML** or **Plain Text** to specify the message format.

- f. Choose one of the following transport types from the Transport Type drop-down list:

- **SOAP**—Specifies Simple Object Access Protocol, a simple XML protocol, as the transport type for sending event notifications. Use SOAP to send notifications over HTTP/HTTPS that are processed by web services on the destination.

If you choose SOAP, specify whether to send notifications over HTTPS by selecting its corresponding check box. If you do not, HTTP is used. Also, enter the destination port number in the Port Number text box.

- **Mail**—Use this option to send notifications through e-mail.

If you choose Mail, you need to choose the protocol for sending the e-mail from the Mail Type drop-down list. You also need to enter the following information: username and password (if Authentication is enabled), name of the sender, prefix to add to the subject line, e-mail address of recipient, and a port number if necessary.

- **SNMP**—Use Simple Network Management Protocol, a very common technology for network monitoring used to send notifications to SNMP-capable devices.

If you choose SNMP, enter the SNMP community string in the SNMP Community text box and the port number to send notifications to in the Port Number text box.

- **SysLog**—Specifies the system log on the destination system as the recipient of event notifications.

If you choose SysLog, enter the notification priority in the Priority text box, the name of the facility in the Facility text box, and the port number of the destination system in the Port Number text box.

- g. To enable HTTPS, select the **Enable** check box next to it.

Port Number auto-populates.

- h. Click **Save**.

**Step 7** On the General tab, follow these steps:

- a. Select the **Enabled** check box for Admin Status to enable event generation (disabled by default).
- b. Set the event priority by choosing a number from the Priority drop-down list. Zero is the highest priority.

An event notification with high priority is serviced before event definitions with lower priority.

- c. To select how often the event notifications are sent:
  1. Select the **All the Time** check box to continuously report events. Proceed to Step g.
  2. Unselect the **All the Time** check box to select the day and time of the week that you want event notifications sent. Days of the week and time fields appear for the selection. Proceed to Step d.
- d. Select the check box next to each day you want the event notifications sent.
- e. Select the time for starting the event notification by selecting the appropriate hour, minute, and AM/PM options from the Apply From heading.
- f. Select the time for ending the event notification by selecting the appropriate hour, minute, and AM/PM options from the Apply Until heading.

- g. Click **Save**.

**Step 8** Verify that the new event notification is listed for the event group (Mobility > Notifications > Settings > Event Group Name).

## Deleting an Event Definition

To delete one or more event definitions from Prime Infrastructure, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Context Aware Notifications**.
  - Step 2** From the left sidebar menu, choose **Settings**.
  - Step 3** Click the name of the group from which you want to delete the event definitions.
  - Step 4** Select the event definition that you want to delete by selecting its corresponding check box.
  - Step 5** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Delete Event Definition(s)**.
  - Step 6** Click **Go**.
  - Step 7** Click **OK** to confirm that you want to delete the selected event definitions.
- 

## Searching for Wireless Client on MSE by IPv6 Address



**Note** Only wireless clients have IPv6 addresses in this release.

---

To search for an MSE located clients using the Prime Infrastructure Advanced search feature, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Click **Advanced Search**.
- Step 2** In the New Search dialog, choose **Clients** as the search category from the Search Category drop-down list.
- Step 3** From the Media Type drop-down list, choose **Wireless Clients**.  
The Wireless Type drop-down list appears only when you choose Wireless Clients as the media type.
- Step 4** From the Wireless Type drop-down list, choose any of the following types: **All, Lightweight or Autonomous Clients**.
- Step 5** From the Search By drop-down list, choose **IP Address**.  
Searching a client by IP address can contain either full or partial IP address. Each client can have up to 16 IPv6 addresses and 4 IPv4 addresses.
- Step 6** From the Clients Detected By drop-down list, choose clients detected by as MSE.  
This displays clients located by Context-Aware Service in the MSE by directly communicating with the controllers.
- Step 7** From the Last detected within drop-down list, choose the time within which the client was detected.
- Step 8** Enter the client IP address in the Client IP Address text box. You can enter wither a partial or full IPv6 address.  
  
If you are searching for the client from Prime Infrastructure on the MSE by IPv4 address, enter the IPv4 address in the Client IP address text box.
- Step 9** From the Client States drop-down list, choose the client states. The possible values for wireless clients are **All States, Idle, Authenticated, Associated, Probing, or Excused**. The possible values for wired clients are **All States, Authenticated, and Associated**.
- Step 10** From the Posture Status drop-down list, choose the posture status to know if the devices are clean or not. The possible values are **All, unknown, Passed, and Failed**.


- Step 11** Select the **CCX Compatible** check box to search for clients that are compatible with Cisco Client Extensions. The possible values are **All Versions**, **V1**, **V2**, **V3**, **V4**, **V5**, and **V6**.
- Step 12** Select the **E2E Compatible** check box to search for clients that are end-to-end compatible. The possible values are **All Versions**, **V1**, and **V2**.
- Step 13** Select the **NAC State** check box to search for clients identified by a certain Network Admission Control (NAC) state. The possible values are **Quarantine**, **Access**, **Invalid**, and **Not Applicable**.
- Step 14** Select the **Include Disassociated** check box to include clients that are no longer on the network but for which Prime Infrastructure has historical records.
- Step 15** From the Items per page drop-down list, choose the number of records to be displayed in the search results page.
- Step 16** Select the **Save Search** check box to save the selected search option.
- Step 17** Click **Go**.

The Clients and Users page appears with all the clients detected by the MSE.

## Viewing Clients Detected by MSE

You can see the clients in probing state on 2.4 GHz on Cisco WLC but in probing state only on “a” radio (in the Monitor > Clients and Users > Client detected by MSE page). None of the clients shows up in probing state on “b/g” radio. This is because when clients are in the probing state, Prime Infrastructure does not get details on the protocol and by default these are shown to be on 5 GHz channel. After they are associated, the INFO messages are received from the controller which contain details on the protocol and the channel. But when they are probing with Measurement messages, Prime Infrastructure does not have this information and defaults it to 5 GHz.

To view all the clients detected by the MSE, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users** to view both wired and wireless clients information.
- The Clients and Users table displays a few column by default. If you want to display the additional columns that are available, click  -, and then click **Columns**. The available columns appear. Select the columns that you want to show in the Clients and Users table. When you click anywhere in a row, the row is selected and the client details are shown.
- Step 2** Filter the current list to choose all the clients that are detected by the MSE by choosing **Clients detected by MSE** from the Show drop-down list.

All the clients detected by MSE including wired and wireless appear.

The following different parameters are available in the Clients Detected by MSE table:

- MAC Address—Client MAC address.
- IP Address—Client IP address.

The IP Address that appears in the IP Address column is determined by a predefined priority order. The first IP address available in the following order appears in the IP address text box:




- IPv4 address



**Note** Only wireless clients have IPv6 addresses in this release. Each client can have up to 16 IPv6 addresses and 4 IPv4 addresses.

- IPv6 global unique address. If there are multiple addresses of this type, most recent IPv6 address that the client received is shown, because a user could have two Global IPv6 addresses but one might have been from an older Router Advertisement that is being aged out.
- IPv6 local unique address. If there are multiple IPv6 local unique addresses, then the most recent address appears.
- IPv6 link local address. For an IPv6 client it always have at least a link local address.

The following are the different IPv6 address types:

- Link-local Unicast—The link-local addresses are designed to be used for addressing on a single link for purposes such as auto-address configuration, neighbor discovery, or when no routers are present.
- Site-local Unicast—The site-local addresses are designed to be used for addressing inside of a site without the need for a global prefix.
- Aggregatable Global Unicast—The aggregatable global unicast address uniquely identifies the client in global network and equivalent to public IPv4 address. A client can have multiple aggregatable global unicast addresses.
- IP Type—The IP address type can be IPv4 and IPv6.
  - Global Unique
  - Unique Local
  - Link Local
- User Name—Username based on 802.1x authentication. Unknown is displayed for client connected without a username.
- Type—Indicates the client type.
  -  indicates a lightweight client
  -  indicates a wired client
  -  indicates an autonomous client
- Vendor—Device vendor derived from OUI.
- Device Name—Network authentication device name. For example, WLC and switch.
- Location—Map location of the connected device.
- VLAN—Indicates the access VLAN ID for this client.
- Status—Current client status.
  - Idle—Normal operation; no rejection of client association requests.
  - Auth Pending—Completing a AAA transaction.
  - Authenticated—802.11 authenticated complete.
  - Associated—802.11 association complete. This is also used by wired clients to represent that a client is currently connected to the network.
  - Disassociated—802.11 disassociation complete. This is also used by wired clients to represent that a client is currently not on the network.



- To Be Deleted—The client is deleted after disassociation.
- Excluded—Automatically disabled by the system due to perceived security threat.
- Interface—Controller interface (wireless) or switch interface (wired) that the client is connected to.
- Protocol
  - 802.11—wireless
  - 802.3—wired
- Association Time—Last association start time (for wireless client). For a wired client, this is the time when a client is connected to a switch port. This is blank for a client which is associated but has problems being on the network.
- CCX—Lightweight wireless only.

**Step 3** Select the radio button next to MAC Address in the Client and User page to view the associated client information.

## Viewing MSE Alarm Details

In the Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Alarms and Events page, click an MSE item under Failure Source column to access the alarms details for a particular MSE.

Alternatively, you can choose **Services > Mobility Services Engines > MSE Name > System > Status > Prime Infrastructure Alarms** page and click a particular MSE item under Failure Source column to access the alarms details for a particular MSE.

Table 42-16 describes the various fields in the Alarm Detail page for an MSE.

**Table 42-16** General Parameters

Field	Description
Failure Source	The MSE that generated the alarm.
Owner	Name of person to which this alarm is assigned, or blank.
Acknowledged	Displays whether or not the alarm is acknowledged by the user.
Category	The category of the alarm. The Alarm category is Mobility Services for MSEs.
Created	Month, day, year, hour, minute, second, AM or PM alarm created.
Modified	Month, day, year, hour, minute, second, AM or PM alarm last modified.
Generated By	This field displays MSE.
Severity	Level of security: Critical, Major, Minor, Warning, Clear, Info, Color coded.
Previous Severity	Critical, Major, Minor, Warning, Clear, Info. Color coded.

The General information might vary depending on the type of alarm. For example, some alarm details might include location and switch port tracing information.

- Related Alarm List—Displays all the alarms related to a particular attack.
- Rogue Client Details—Displays information about the rogue clients.
- Annotations—Enter any new notes in this text box and click **Add** to update the alarm. Notes appear in the “Annotations” display page.

- Messages—Displays information about the alarm.
- Device Details—
- Switch Port Tracing
- Location Notification
- Map Location
- Device Events
- Related History
- Audit Report—Click to view config audit alarm details. This report is only available for Config Audit alarms.

Configuration audit alarms are generated when audit discrepancies are enforced on config groups. If enforcement fails, a critical alarm is generated on the config group. If enforcement succeeds, a minor alarm is generated on the config group. The alarms have links to the audit report where you can view a list of discrepancies for each controller.

- Event History—Opens the MSE Alarm Events page to view events for this alarm. When there are multiple alarm pages, the page numbers appear at the top of the page with a scroll arrow on each side. Use these scroll arrows to view additional alarms.

## Monitoring with Mobile Concierge Services

The Mobile Concierge service allows the venue owners and service providers to monitor their WLAN. This solution delivers a unique in-store experience to customers who are using smart phones.

Mobile Concierge service uses wireless smart phones that have been configured with a set of policies for establishing network connectivity. Mobile Concierge service facilitates smartphones to discover network-based services available. Once you are connected to the stores Wi-Fi network, you can join the stores wireless guest network and can access variety of different services including electronic coupons, promotional offers, customer loyalty data, product suggestions, allow you to organize shopping lists, receive unique digital signature based on shopping preferences.

### Related Topics

- [Defining Venues](#)
- [Deleting Venues](#)
- [Defining Providers with Policies](#)
- [Deleting Providers](#)
- [Defining Policies](#)
- [Deleting Policies](#)

## Defining Venues

To define a venue, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobile Concierge**.
  - Step 2** Choose **Mobile Concierge Services > Venues** from the left sidebar menu.

The Venues page appears.

**Step 3** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Define New Venue** and click **Go**.

The Venue Wizard page appears.

**Step 4** Enter the venue name in the **Venue Name** text box and click **Next**.

**Step 5** In the **Floor/Outdoor Association** group box, you can configure the following:

- From the **Area Type** drop-down list, choose the area type where you want to display the service advertisement. The possible values are **Floor Area** and **Outdoor Area**.



**Note** The Building, Floor Area, and Coverage Area drop-down lists are displayed only if you select Floor Area as the area type.

- From the **Campus** drop-down list, choose the campus name where you want to display the service advertisements.
- From the **Building** drop-down list, choose the building name where you want the advertisements to appear.
- From the **Floor** drop-down list, choose the floor type.
- From the **Coverage Area** drop-down list, choose the coverage area within the floor.
- From the **Outdoor Area** drop-down list, choose the outdoor area where you want to display the service advertisements. This field is displayed only if you select Outdoor Area as the Area Type.

**Step 6** Click **Next**. The Audio group box appears.

**Step 7** From the **Audio** group box, click **Choose File** to browse and select the audio file to play the audio notification.

**Step 8** Click **Next**. The Icons group box appears.

**Step 9** From the **Icons** group box, click **Choose File** to browse and select the icon that you want to display on the clients handset.

**Step 10** Click **Next**. The Venue Apps group box appears.

**Step 11** From the **Venue Apps** group box, choose the venue app on which you want to display the service advertisement from the **Web App** drop-down list.

**Step 12** Click **Next**. The Additional Venue Information group box appears.

**Step 13** From the **Additional Information** group box, you can provide any additional information that the venue would like to provide to the mobile application. You can configure the following:

- Enter the location detail in the **Location Detail** text box. This provides details such as store address, zip code, or street address of the venue.
- Enter the GPS latitude and longitude of the venue in the **Latitude** and **Longitude** text box. This helps the applications to identify the venue accurately.
- Enter any other additional information that the venue would like to provide to the mobile application in the **Additional Information** text box.

**Step 14** Click **Save**. This information is applied to the MSE and the synchronization happens automatically.

#### Related Topics

- [Monitoring with Mobile Concierge Services](#)

- [Deleting Venues](#)
- [Defining Providers with Policies](#)
- [Deleting Providers](#)
- [Defining Policies](#)
- [Deleting Policies](#)

## Deleting Venues

To delete a venue, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobile Concierge**.
  - Step 2** Choose **Mobile Concierge Services > Venues** from the left sidebar menu.  
The Venues page appears.
  - Step 3** Select the check box of the venue that you want to delete.
  - Step 4** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Delete Venue**, and click **Go**.  
Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Monitoring with Mobile Concierge Services](#)
- [Defining Venues](#)
- [Defining Providers with Policies](#)
- [Deleting Providers](#)
- [Defining Policies](#)
- [Deleting Policies](#)

## Defining Providers with Policies

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobile Concierge**.
  - Step 2** Choose **Mobile Concierge Services > Providers** from the left sidebar menu.  
The Providers page appears.
  - Step 3** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Define New Provider** and click **Go**.  
The Provider Wizard page appears.
  - Step 4** Enter the providers venue name in the **Provider Name** text box.
  - Step 5** Click **Next**. The Icons group box appears.
  - Step 6** From the **Icons** group box, click **Choose File** to browse and select the icon that you want to display on the clients handset.
  - Step 7** Click **Next**. The Local Services group box appears.
  - Step 8** From the **Local Services** group box, do the following:

- Click the inverted triangle icon location at the left side of the Local Service # name to expand the Local Service and configure the following:
  - Choose the service type from the **Service Type** drop-down list. The possible options are: Directory Info, Sign Up, Discount Coupon, Network Help, and Other.
  - Enter the display name in the **Display Name** text box.
  - Enter the description in the **Description** text box.
  - Choose the service URIs from the **Service URIs** drop-down list.
  - Enter the recommended application for the venue in the **Recommended Apps** text box.

**Step 9** Click **Save**.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Monitoring with Mobile Concierge Services](#)
- [Deleting Providers](#)
- [Defining Venues](#)
- [Deleting Venues](#)
- [Defining Policies](#)
- [Deleting Policies](#)

## Deleting Providers

To delete a provider, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobile Concierge**.
- Step 2** Choose **Mobile Concierge Services > Providers** from the left sidebar menu.  
The Providers page appears.
- Step 3** Select the check box of the provider that you want to delete.
- Step 4** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Delete Provider**, and click **Go**.  
Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
- 

#### Related Topics

- [Monitoring with Mobile Concierge Services](#)
- [Defining Policies](#)
- [Defining Venues](#)
- [Deleting Venues](#)
- [Defining Providers with Policies](#)
- [Deleting Policies](#)

## Defining Policies

To define policies, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobile Concierge**.
- Step 2** Choose **Mobile Concierge Services > Policies** from the left sidebar menu.  
The Policies page appears.
- Step 3** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Define New Policy** and click **Go**.  
The Policy Wizard page appears.
- Step 4** Choose the venue on which you want the policy to be applied from the **Venue** drop-down list.
- Step 5** Click **Next**. The Provider group box appears.
- Step 6** Choose the provider from the **Provider** drop-down list.
- Step 7** Click **Next**. The SSID group box appears.
- Step 8** From the **SSID** drop-down list, choose the SSIDs on which you want to broadcast the service advertisements and click **OK**. You can choose multiple SSIDs.
- Step 9** Click **Next**. The Display Rule group box appears.
- Step 10** From the Display Rule group box, you can do the following:
- Select the **Display Rule** radio button. You can select either **Everywhere** or **Near selected APs** radio button. By default, Display everywhere is selected.
- If you select **Display everywhere**, then it searches for all the Mobile Concierge-supported controllers that provide these SSIDs and assigns these controllers to the MSE.
- If you select **Display near selected APs**, then you can configure the following parameters:
- AP—Select those APs on which you want the advertisements to broadcast.
  - Radio—Select the radio frequency on which you want the advertisements to be broadcasted. The service advertisement is displayed when the mobile device is near the radio band that you have selected. The possible values are 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz.
    - min RSSI—Enter a value for RSSI at which you want the service advertisements to be displayed on the user interface.
- Step 11** Click **Finish**.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Monitoring with Mobile Concierge Services](#)
- [Deleting Policies](#)
- [Defining Venues](#)
- [Deleting Venues](#)
- [Defining Providers with Policies](#)
- [Deleting Providers](#)
- [Defining Policies](#)

## Deleting Policies

To delete a new policy, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobile Concierge**.
- Step 2** Choose **Mobile Concierge Services > Policies** from the left sidebar menu.  
The Policies page appears.
- Step 3** Select the check box of the policy that you want to delete.
- Step 4** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Delete Policy**, and click **Go**.  
Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.
- 

### Related Topics

- [Monitoring with Mobile Concierge Services](#)
- [Defining Venues](#)
- [Deleting Venues](#)
- [Defining Providers with Policies](#)
- [Deleting Providers](#)
- [Defining Policies](#)







## Configuring the Cisco AppNav Solution

---

Cisco AppNav is a hardware and software solution that simplifies network integration of WAN optimization. It also overcomes the challenges related to provisioning, visibility, scalability, asymmetry, and high availability.

- [Overview of Cisco AppNav](#)
- [Components of Cisco AppNav](#)
- [Prerequisites for Configuring Cisco AppNav](#)
- [Configuring Cisco AppNav](#)

### Overview of Cisco AppNav

The Cisco AppNav solution reduces the dependency on the intercepting switch or router by distributing the traffic among Cisco WAAS devices for optimization by using a powerful class and policy mechanism. You can use ISR-WAAS to optimize traffic based on sites or applications. This includes device-level and template-based configurations.

An intelligent load-balancing mechanism in the Cisco IOS-XE software allows the diversion of TCP traffic to various products, including Cisco WAAS and OneFirewall, where Cisco WAAS is the initial target. Router management is performed through the Cisco Prime Infrastructure network management application.

### Components of Cisco AppNav

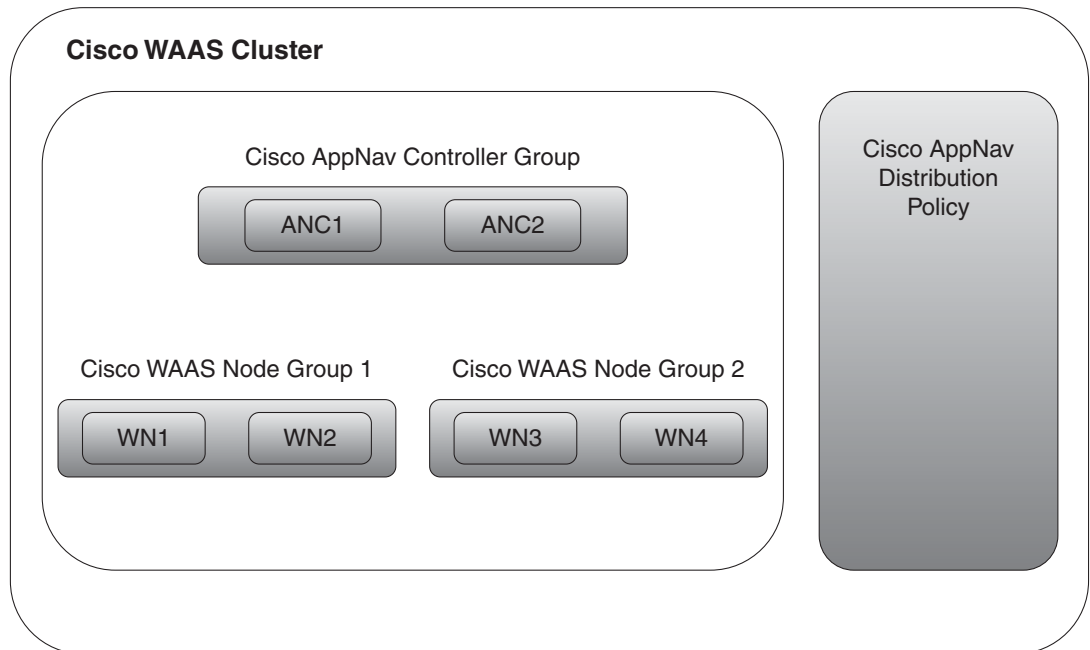
The Cisco AppNav solution, is made up of a distribution unit called the Cisco AppNav Controller (AC), WAAS Service Nodes (SNs). The Cisco AppNav Controller distributes the flow, and the service nodes process the flows. You can group up to four Cisco AppNav-XE (routers) together to form a Cisco AppNav Controller Group (ACG) to support asymmetric flows and high availability. However, must ensure that all of the routers in the ACG are on the same platform and have the same memory capacity.

The Cisco AppNav solution's components perform the following functions:

- **AppNav Controller**—This is component that intelligently distributes traffic from a router to service nodes. The Cisco AppNav Controller is a part of Cisco IOS-XE Release 3.10 on the Cisco ISR-4400, Cisco CSR, and Cisco ASR 1K platforms.
- **Cisco WAAS Service Nodes**—These optimize traffic flows and are available in different form factors, for example, standalone appliances and virtualized ISR-WAAS running in a Cisco IOS-XE container.

- Cisco WAAS Central Manager—This is used to monitor and configure the ISR-WAAS.
- This chapter describes the configuration of the Cisco AppNav Controller functions on routers. [Figure 43-1](#) describes the components of Cisco AppNav.

**Figure 43-1** Components of Cisco AppNav



The advantages of using the Cisco AppNav components are:

- They can intelligently redirect new flows based on the load on each service node. This includes loads of individual application accelerators.
- If the flows do not require any optimization, service nodes can inform the Cisco AppNav Controller to directly pass the packets, thereby minimizing latency and resource utilization.
- There is minimal impact to traffic when adding or removing service nodes.
- The Cisco AppNav components support VRF. The VRF information is preserved when traffic returns from a service node. However, Prime Infrastructure does not support VRF.
- For specific applications, such as Messaging Application Programming Interface (MAPI) and Virtual desktop infrastructure (VDI), the components ensure that a family of flow is redirected to the same service node.
- Asymmetric flows can be optimized in situations where traffic in one direction goes through one Cisco AppNav Controller and the return traffic goes through a different Cisco AppNav Controller. But both redirect the traffic to the same ISR-WAAS. This is achieved using the Cisco AppNav Controller Group.
- Inter-box high availability is also supported using the Cisco AppNav Controller Group, which means that if one router goes down, traffic can be redirected to a different router in the Cisco AppNav Controller Group enabling uninterrupted flow.

- Intra-box high availability of the Cisco AppNav Controller is supported on those Cisco ASR1000 Series platforms that have dual RP, or dual FP, or both. This means that if the active RP fails, the standby RP takes over or if the active FP fails, the standby FP takes over, and the flows continue uninterrupted.

The Cisco AppNav technology allows IP flows to be intercepted on routers and sent to a set of Cisco WAAS Service Node for processing. The initial application of Cisco AppNav which is supported in Cisco IOS-XE Release 3.10, is in Cisco WAAS.

## Prerequisites for Configuring Cisco AppNav

The following are the prerequisites for configuring Cisco AppNav:

- The platform must be Cisco 4451-X ISR, Cisco Integrated Services Routers (ISR) G2, Cisco ASR 1000 Series Aggregation Services Routers, or Cisco Cloud Services Router.
- The software version of above mentioned platforms must be Version 3.10 and later.
- A valid appxk9 license must be enabled on the routers.
- A Cisco WAAS Service Node must be available.

## Configuring Cisco AppNav

You must configure some parameters on the router before redirecting the traffic to the Cisco WAAS Service Node. If the Cisco AppNav configuration is generated as a part of installing the Cisco WAAS virtual appliance, it is transparent to the corresponding user. If it is configured using a template or through the Device Work Center, the user is more directly involved.

The Cisco AppNav can be configured in three ways:

- [Configuring Cisco AppNav from the Device Work Center](#)
- [Configuring Cisco AppNav Using Templates](#)
- [Configuring Cisco AppNav Automatically During ISR-WAAS Container Activation](#)

The Cisco AppNav configuration involves the use of the following:

- **Controllers**—A list of routers that cooperate to redirect traffic. This is a list of IP addresses, exactly one of which must belong to the router on which Cisco AppNav is being configured.
- **Cisco WAAS Service Node Groups (SNGs)**—There must be one or more SNGs that are the target of redirected traffic and are defined as a set of IP addresses.
- **Class Maps**—A set of class maps that classify incoming and outgoing traffic. Class maps consist of a set of match conditions that together specify traffic of interest. They can match traffic based on three types of conditions:
  - An access control list (ACL) that selects traffic based on a source and destination IP address and port.
  - A protocol that is used to select traffic that uses the Microsoft port mapper service rather than depending on fixed port numbers. This includes MAPI and a host of other Microsoft protocols.
  - A remote device that matches the traffic that has traversed a particular Cisco WAAS Service Node on the remote end. The remote device is identified by a MAC address.

- **Policy maps**—A Cisco AppNav policy map is an ordered list of rules, each of which specify what is to be done with some type of traffic. A rule thus consists of a class map and an action. The action is to either redirect to a service node group or to pass through.
- **Clusters**—A Cisco WAAS cluster is the combination of a policy map, controller group, and a set of service node groups used by the policy map. A cluster can be enabled or disabled. Prime Infrastructure allows several clusters to be defined but only one can be enabled at a time. An authentication key is used to secure communication between the controllers and the nodes in a cluster.
- **Cisco WAAS interfaces**—Traffic can be optimized only on interfaces where Cisco WAAS is enabled.

The WAN optimization template and the Device Work Center both have a default policy. The default policy consists of a number of class maps that match different types of traffic (HTTP, CIFS, TCP, and so on) that is optimized by Cisco ISR-WAAS. The template also includes a policy map containing a rule for each of those class maps. By default, all the matched traffic is redirected to a single service node group.

## Configuring Cisco AppNav from the Device Work Center

The Device Work Center allows an administrator to view and modify the configuration of individual devices. The Device Work Center can be used to configure Cisco AppNav when a user has a single or few devices. You can individually edit the configurations that are deployed using a template on the devices.

To configure the Cisco AppNav from the Device Work Center:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Select the device to be configured.
  - Step 3** On the Configuration tab in the bottom pane, and click WAN Optimization.

The Cisco AppNav configuration is divided into the following sections:

- **AppNav controllers**—The Controllers page shows the IP addresses of routers belonging to the same cluster as the router. You must assign one of the addresses to one of the currently selected router's interfaces. Each router's own IP address is shown in a drop-down list. The IP addresses of other routers in the same cluster are listed in a separate table.
- **Cisco WAAS clusters** —The Cisco WAAS Clusters page is the main Cisco AppNav page. It lists the Cisco WAAS clusters configured on the device and allows new ones to be created. To view the detailed configuration for a cluster, including the policy map, select the cluster, and click **Edit**.
  - In this page, cluster settings and policies can be edited. Expand individual rules by clicking the arrow in the third column. This enables the corresponding rule to be edited as well as the class maps and Cisco WAAS service node groups to be viewed, modified, and created. New rules can be added by clicking **Add Policy**. The order of the rules within a policy map is significant and the table allows the order to be modified by dragging rows or selecting a contiguous list of rows and using the Up or Down arrows in the menu bar.
  - To create a new cluster, select **Add WAAS Cluster** on the Cisco WAAS Cluster Overview tab. This launches a wizard that prompts for controllers, Cisco WAAS Service Node, interception interfaces, and some general cluster parameters. After providing the necessary information, click **Finish** for the configuration to take effect.

The wizard creates the cluster with a default policy that works for most small installations. All the TCP flows are redirected to a single node group, with the node group being monitored for overload conditions.

**Note**

Because Prime Infrastructure does not support VRFs; therefore, only one Cisco WAAS cluster can be enabled at a time.

- **Interception**—The Interception page lets the administrator select interfaces on which incoming and outgoing traffic should be redirected (subject to policies). All the WAN interfaces on the router should have Cisco WAAS enabled.
- **Advanced Settings**—The Advanced Settings folder contains pages for Cisco WAAS service node groups, class maps, and policy maps. Most of this information is also available in the Cisco WAAS Clusters page, but it is helpful to be able to view the definition of these objects directly.
  - **Cisco WAAS Node Groups**—The Cisco WAAS Node Groups page allows the existing Cisco WAAS node groups to be edited and new ones to be created.
  - **Class maps and Policy maps**—The Class Maps and Policy Maps page does the same.

## Interface Roles

The Cisco AppNav solution redirects traffic only on interfaces on which it has been explicitly enabled. Routers differ in terms of available interfaces and how they are named. Since the templates are intended to be applied to multiple devices, they refer to interface roles instead of actual interfaces.

Interface roles are logical objects that exist only in Prime Infrastructure. They can be used in templates instead of actual interface names. When a template is deployed to a device, the interface role is resolved to a set of actual interfaces.

You can override, the set of interfaces on which Cisco WAAS is enabled during template deployment on a per-device basis. However, we recommend that you to define one or more interface roles and save them as part of the template to simplify the template deployment process.

You can define interface roles in **Configuration > Templates > Shared Policy Objects > Interface Role**. For more information, see the [Creating Interface Roles](#).

## Configuring Cisco AppNav Using Templates

Prime Infrastructure templates contain reusable chunks of configuration that can be deployed to any number of devices. WAN Optimization templates define a policy and other information that can be applied across AppNav routers.

Templates are defined in design view and can later be deployed to one or more devices. As part of the deployment process, you can fill in the device-specific parameters and preview the final CLIs before the configuration is pushed to the device. When a template is modified, it is necessary to re- to devices for the changes to take effect.

This method of configuring Cisco AppNav is used when a user needs similar Cisco AppNav configurations on multiple devices. A single template, with similar configurations, and some minor customized values can be deployed to multiple devices at the same type using the deploy option.

To configure the Cisco AppNav using templates:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > WAN Optimization**.

**Step 2** Select an **AppNav Cluster**.

**Step 3** Enter the configuration details on the following tabs:

- **Controller IP addresses**—A list of controllers can be configured here or during deployment. For example, if the template is used for multiple sites, such as branches, this field must be left empty. However, values can be provided during deployment.
- **Service nodes**—The Cisco WAAS service node groups are used by the policy map. By default, there is a single service node group called WNG-Default. If the template is used for multiple sites, leave the service node groups empty and add the actual IP addresses during deployment. Enter the following details:
  - Name of the Service Node
  - Description
  - IP address of the Cisco WAAS Service Node
- **Interception**—Interface roles for which Cisco WAAS should be enabled. During deployment, an actual list of interfaces is presented. You can make a selection of the actual interfaces belonging to the device, for each device. The purpose of the interface roles is to initialize the selection with a default. Therefore, the list of enabled interface roles can be left empty in the template design view. Here you can do the following:
  - Select or unselect the **Enable WAAS** check box.
- **General**—A valid cluster ID range is between 1 to 32. Select the check box to enable or disable a cluster. Enter the following details:
  - Cluster ID
  - Authentication Key
  - After this, select or unselect or uncheck the **Enable Distribution** check box.
- **Traffic redirection**—This is a policy-related configuration, policy-map, class-maps and their relationships with ISR-WAAS groups. A simple setting results in a default policy that redirects all the TCP traffic to one node group. Select the **expert mode** to create custom policies and to redirect different types of TCP traffic to a different ISR-WAAS.

**Step 4** Click **Save as Template**.

**Step 5** Click **Finish**.

You can view the configured template by choosing **Configuration > Templates > Features & Technologies > My Templates**.

## Deploying a Cisco AppNav Template

After a Cisco AppNav template is created, you can apply the template to begin traffic distribution.

To deploy a Cisco AppNav template:

**Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Templates > Features and Technologies**.

**Step 2** Select the **My Templates** folder in the left window pane.

**Step 3** Select the Cisco WAAS template to be deployed and click **Deploy**.

You can choose a single device or multiple devices and change the required configurations.

- Step 4** In the Value Assignment panel select each target device, one at a time and complete all the fields for that router:
- **Basic Parameters**—Includes an indication about whether the cluster is enabled.
  - **Controllers**—The list of controller IP addresses. This must include an IP address assigned to the device itself.
  - **Node Groups**—Enter IP addresses belonging to each of the ISR-WAAS groups used in the policy.
  - **Interception**—A set of WAN interfaces on which Cisco WAAS interception is enabled.
- Step 5** Click **Apply**.
- Step 6** Click **OK**.
- The Cisco AppNav is deployed on multiple devices.

**Note**

---

When a template is deployed to one or more devices, a job is created. Choose **Administration > Dashboards > Job Dashboard**, to verify the status of the template deployment and to view detailed status information about failures, success, or warnings. After you create a template, it can be edited multiple times depending on the requirements.

---

## Configuring Cisco AppNav Automatically During ISR-WAAS Container Activation

This method of configuring Cisco AppNav is available only on Cisco 4451-X ISR devices or platform. Also, the software version required for ISR-WAAS activation must be Version 3.10 or later. In this method, the configuration occurs automatically as part of the installation of the Cisco WAAS virtual appliance node, ISR4451X-WAAS.

- A single service node group contains the new ISR-WAAS is created.
- Class maps are created for different types of traffic optimized by the Cisco WAAS service node.
- A default policy map, that redirects all TCP traffic to the Cisco WAAS service node, is generated.
- A Cisco WAAS cluster is created.
- Cisco WAAS is enabled on interfaces denoted by an interface role (specified at the time of container activation).

For more information on how to configure Cisco AppNav using this method, see the [Installing an ISR-WAAS Container](#).







## Configuring the Cisco WAAS Container

---

The Cisco Wide Area Application Services (Cisco WAAS) container is a powerful WAN optimization acceleration solution.

- [Prerequisites for Installing an ISR-WAAS Container](#)
- [Installing an ISR-WAAS Container on a Single Router](#)
- [Installing an ISR-WAAS Container on Multiple Routers](#)
- [Uninstalling a Single Cisco ISR-WAAS Container](#)
- [Deactivating a Cisco ISR-WAAS Container](#)



**Note**

---

In this chapter, ISR-WAAS device refers to the router and ISR-WAAS container refers to the container.

---

## Prerequisites for Installing an ISR-WAAS Container

Before you install a Cisco WAAS container, you must configure the following in Cisco Prime Infrastructure:

- [Cisco WAAS Central Manager Integration](#)
- [Interface Roles](#)
- [Importing an OVA image](#)



**Note**

---

Ensure that the name of the ISR-WAAS container does not exceed 22 characters.

---

## Cisco WAAS Central Manager Integration

To manage the ISR-WAAS with the Cisco WAAS Central Manager, you must register with the Cisco WAAS Central Manager. Registration of ISR-WAAS with Cisco WAAS Central Manager can be done either from the ISR-WAAS CLI, or from the Cisco WAAS Central Manager GUI, or while activating the ISR-WAAS through Prime Infrastructure. The WCM periodically polls the Cisco 4451-X Integrated Services Router (ISR) to retrieve the current status information and perform configuration synchronization.

## Cisco WAAS Central Manager Integration

A typical Cisco WAAS deployment consists of both Prime Infrastructure and Cisco WAAS Central Manager applications. Cisco WAAS Central Manager IP is used during ISR-WAAS activation. After ISR-WAAS is activated, it registers with Cisco WAAS Central Manager. Prime Infrastructure needs the IP address and the server name of WCM for the following reasons:

- To inform Cisco WAAS Central Manager of the new Cisco ISR-WAAS
- For cross-launching Cisco WAAS Central Manager GUI for monitoring purposes

**Note**

Cisco WAAS Central Manager configuration is a one-time configuration. The Cisco WAAS Central Manager IP address is required for Prime Infrastructure to authenticate itself to Cisco WAAS Central Manager, and is configured in Prime Infrastructure using the Settings menu.

**Note**

If Cisco WAAS Central Manager IP is not configured in Prime Infrastructure, the newly activated ISR-WAAS will not be registered with Cisco WAAS Central Manager.

To configure the Cisco WAAS Central Manager IP address and server name in Prime Infrastructure:

**Step 1** Choose **Administration > Settings > System Settings**.

**Step 2** Click **Service Container Management**.

**Step 3** Enter the WCM IP address and the WCM server name.

**Step 4** Click **Save**.

WCM can be deployed under the following condition:

Prime Infrastructure works only with the active Cisco WAAS Central Manager that is configured in Prime Infrastructure.

After a Cisco WAAS Central Manager failover, one of the following must take place for Prime Infrastructure-Cisco WAAS Central Manager interworking to operate properly again:

- Prime Infrastructure is reconfigured with the IP address of the new Cisco WAAS Central Manager.
- The failed Cisco WAAS Central Manager must become active.

## Configuring Single Sign-On

Configuring the Single Sign-On (SSO) feature provides a seamless method to launch Cisco WAAS Central Manager from Prime Infrastructure using the existing Single Sign-On functionality.

To configure SSO:

**Step 1** Choose **Administration > User, Roles & AAA > SSO Servers**.

**Step 2** Choose **Add SSO Server** from the Select a command drop-down list.

**Step 3** Select the type of SSL/TLS certificate being used by the SSO server. Select from either Self-Signed Certificate or Certificate Authority (CA) certificate type.

- Step 4** If using Self-Signed Certificate type enter the IP address of the Prime Infrastructure acting as the SSO server. If using CA certificate enter either the IP address or the FQDN of the server of the Prime Infrastructure server that will be the SSO server.



**Note** The browser cookies that provide the Single Sign-On functionality are stored in the browser according to either the IP address or the FQDN given here. So, you must be consistent in entering either the IP address or the FQDN across all of the clients to the SSO server.

- Step 5** Click **GO**.
- Step 6** Click **Save**.
- Step 7** Select **AAA Mode Settings**.
- Step 8** Select the **SSO** radio button.
- Step 9** Click **Save**.
- Step 10** Configure the WCM IP address. For information on how to configure the WCM IP address, see the [Cisco WAAS Central Manager Integration](#).
- Step 11** After you configure the IP address, log out of Prime Infrastructure and log in to WCM and create a username.

## Creating a Username in Cisco WAAS Central Manager

- Step 1** Log in to WCM.
- Step 2** Choose **Home > Admin > AAA > Users**.
- Step 3** Click **Create**.
- Step 4** Enter a username that matches the Prime Infrastructure username.
- Step 5** Choose **Role Management** and click **admin** to assign a RBAC role to create a user account.
- Step 6** Choose **Domain Management** and assign a role and domain.
- Step 7** Click **Submit**.
- Step 8** Choose **Devices > Configure > AAA > NCS Single Sign-On**.
- Step 9** Select the **Enable NCS Single Sign-On** check box and enter the CAS/SSO server URL.
- Step 10** Click **Submit** to create the certificate.
- Step 11** Click **Submit** after the certificate is created.

## Cross-Launching Cisco WAAS Central Manager

You can cross-launch Cisco WAAS Central Manager in the following ways:

- [Cross-Launching Cisco WAAS Central Manager on a Single Device](#)
- [Cross-Launching Cisco WAAS Central Manager on Multiple Devices](#)

## Cross-Launching Cisco WAAS Central Manager on a Single Device

To cross-launch the Cisco WAAS Central Manager from the Device Work Center:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Select the ISR-WAAS device.  
The device details are displayed in the pane below.
  - Step 3** Click the **Service Container** tab.
  - Step 4** Select the corresponding ISR-WAAS container and click **Launch WCM**.
- 

## Cross-Launching Cisco WAAS Central Manager on Multiple Devices

To cross-launch from the Deployed Services:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Operate > Deployed Services**.
  - Step 2** Select the corresponding ISR-WAAS container and click Launch WCM.



**Note** Note The Cisco ISR-WAAS Container Lifecycle enables a user to install, uninstall, activate, or deactivate the service container.

---

## Defining Interface Roles

You can define interface roles in **Configuration > Templates > Shared Policy Objects > Interface Role**. For more information on creating interface roles, see the [Creating Interface Roles](#). Policy objects enable users to define logical collections of elements. Policy Objects are reusable, named components that can be used by other objects and policies. The Shared Policy Objects also eliminate the need to define a component each time you define a policy. For more information on Shared Policy Objects, see the [Shared Policy Objects](#).

## Importing an OVA image

To import an OVA image for an ISR-WAAS container:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Router Virtual Containers > WAAS-XE**.
  - Step 2** Select an OVA image from one of the following locations:
    - Device
    - URL
    - Protocol

- File
- Step 3** Click **Submit** to import the image into Prime Infrastructure.
- Step 4** Click **Refresh** to view the imported image in the **Services > Router Virtual Containers > WAAS-XE > Services Catalogue** folder.
- 

## Configuring Cisco AppNav Automatically During ISR-WAAS Container Activation

A Cisco WAAS container can be configured in two different ways depending on whether you want to configure it on a single router ([Installing an ISR-WAAS Container on a Single Router](#)) or multiple routers ([Installing an ISR-WAAS Container on Multiple Routers](#)).

Installation of the ISR-WAAS container can be done in two ways. You can either install the container and activate it later, or you can install and activate the container at the same instance.

**Note**

Ensure that the name of the ISR-WAAS container does not exceed 22 characters.

---

## Installing an ISR-WAAS Container

To install an ISR-WAAS container:

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Router Virtual Containers > WAAS-XE > Services Catalogue** to import an OVA image. For information on how to import an OVA image, see the [Defining Interface Roles](#).
- Step 2** After importing, click **Refresh** to view the imported image.
- Step 3** Click **Deploy**.
- Step 4** In the Network Wizard page, select the ISR-WAAS device on which you want to configure the container.
- Step 5** Choose the **Install** option and select a Resource Profile from the drop-down list.
- Step 6** Click **OK** to install the ISR-WAAS container.

**Note**

To successfully install and activate an ISR-WAAS, you need to have enough memory for each resource profile. For ISR-WAAS-750, you need 4194304 KB memory and two CPUs, for ISR-WAAS-1300, you need 6291456 KB memory and four CPUs, and for ISR-WAAS-2500, you need 8388608 KB memory with six CPUs.

---

## Installing and Activating an ISR-WAAS Container

To install and activate a ISR-WAAS container:

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Router Virtual Containers > WAAS-XE > Services Catalogue** to import an OVA image. For information on how to import an OVA image, see the [Defining Interface Roles](#).

- Step 2** After importing, click **Refresh** to view the imported image
- Step 3** Click **Deploy**.
- Step 4** In the Network wizard screen, select the device on which you want to configure the container
- Step 5** Choose the **Install and Activate** option.
- Step 6** Choose a Resource Profile from the drop-down list.
- Step 7** Select the **Redirect Traffic to WAAS-XE with AppNav-XE** check box.
- Step 8** Click **OK** to install and activate the ISR-WAAS container.




---

**Note** Once the ISR-WAAS is installed and activated, the Cisco AppNav configuration is automatically configured.

---




---

**Note** To successfully install and activate a ISR-WAAS, you should at least have 8 GB RAM in the router for the 750 resource profile.

---

## Installing an ISR-WAAS Container on a Single Router

To install an ISR-WAAS container on a single router:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** From the list that is displayed, choose the router on which you want to install the ISR-WAAS container.
  - Step 3** Click the **Service Container** tab.
  - Step 4** Click **Add** and enter the configuration details in each field.
  - Step 5** Click **OK**.
- 

## Installing an ISR-WAAS Container on Multiple Routers

To install an ISR-WAAS container on multiple routers:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Router Virtual Containers**.
  - Step 2** Select the ISR-WAAS folder that contains the imported OVA image.
  - Step 3** Click **Deploy**.  
From the list that is displayed, select the routers on which you want to install the ISR-WAAS container.  
After you deploy, you can either click **Install** ([Installing an ISR-WAAS Container](#)) or **Install and Activate** ([Installing and Activating an ISR-WAAS Container](#))
  - Step 4** If you choose **Install and Activate**, enter the following details in the Value Assignment area:
    - Enter the ISR-WAAS IP Address/Mask

- Enter the Router IP/ Mask
- Enter a Service Container name
- Select a Resource Profile

**Step 5** Click **OK**.

---

## Uninstalling and Deactivating a Cisco WAAS Container

You can deactivate a Cisco WAAS Container either from the Device Work Center or from the Deployed Services. From the Device Work Center, you can deactivate a single ISR-WAAS container, but from the Deployed Services, you can deactivate multiple ISR-WAAS containers.

### Uninstalling a Single Cisco ISR-WAAS Container

To uninstall a single ISR-WAAS container from the Device Work Center:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
- Step 2** From the list that is displayed, select the router from which you want to uninstall the Cisco WAAS container by clicking it.
- Step 3** Click the **Service Container** tab in the bottom pane.
- Step 4** Click **Uninstall**.
- Step 5** Click **OK**.
- 

### Uninstalling a Multiple Cisco ISR-WAAS Container

To uninstall multiple a Cisco ISR-WAAS containers from the Deployed Services:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Router Virtual Containers > WAAS-XE > Deployed Services**.
- Step 2** From the list that is displayed, select the routers from which you want to uninstall the Cisco WAAS containers by clicking them.
- Step 3** Click **Uninstall**.
- Step 4** Click **OK**.



**Note**

When a Cisco WAAS virtual appliance is uninstalled through Prime Infrastructure, the corresponding Cisco AppNav configuration is removed.

---

## Deactivating a Cisco ISR-WAAS Container

You can deactivate a Cisco ISR-WAAS container in the following two ways:

- [Deactivating a Single Cisco ISR-WAAS Container](#)
- [Deactivating Multiple Cisco ISR-WAAS Containers](#)

### Deactivating a Single Cisco ISR-WAAS Container

To deactivate a single Cisco ISR-WAAS container from the Device Work Center:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
  - Step 2** Select a Cisco ISR-WAAS device name from the device group list.
  - Step 3** Click the **Service Container** tab.
  - Step 4** Click **Deactivate**.
- 

### Deactivating Multiple Cisco ISR-WAAS Containers

To deactivate multiple Cisco WAAS containers from the Deployed Services:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Router Virtual Containers > WAAS-XE > Deployed Services**.
  - Step 2** Choose multiple ISR-WAAS device names from the list.
  - Step 3** Click **Deactivate**.
-





## Working with Wireless Mobility

---

- [What Is Mobility?](#)
- [New Mobility](#)
- [Mobility Work Center](#)
- [Creating a Mobility Domain](#)
- [Mobility Anchors](#)

### What Is Mobility?

Mobility, or roaming, is an ability of a wireless client to maintain its association seamlessly from one access point to another securely and with as little latency as possible. To allow more flexible roaming and to minimize the need for tunnel encapsulation of traffic, Cisco Prime Infrastructure provides a robust mobility architecture that distributes mobility functionality across the network devices.

The following are the key elements of the mobility architecture:

- **Mobility Controller (MC)**—The MC (for example, Cisco 5700 Series Wireless Controller) is responsible for one or more MAs or switch peer groups, handling roaming within its span of control, and transiting traffic between MAs and/or MCs when co-located with MTE.
- **Mobility Agent (MA)**—The MA (for example, Catalyst 3650 or Catalyst 3850 Switch) resides in the access switch or edge switch that the WAP is directly connected to, and terminates at the CAPWAP tunnel for communications with the WAP.
- **Mobility Oracle (MO)**—The MO is a top-level control entity responsible for connecting multiple MCs or mobility subdomains in deployments of the largest scale, to enable roaming across very large physical areas.
- **Mobility Domain**—A roaming domain: a mobile user may roam across all of the devices in this domain (the set of WAPs and all of the control entities associated with it). This typically includes MAs and MCs, and may include a MO (to join multiple subdomains).
- **Mobility Sub-Domain**—The set of WAPs and associated MAs and one MC, representing a portion of a larger mobility domain (where a MO serves to coordinate roaming between multiple sub-domains).
- **Switch Peer Group (SPG)**—A group of switches (acting as MAs). An SPG establishes a full mesh of mobility tunnels among the group members to support efficient roaming across the WAPs associated with the switches in the group. An SPG is also intended to limit the scope of interactions between switches during handoffs. An SPG is configured by the Mobility Controller, and every switch in the switch peer group has the same view of the membership. The switches in an SPG might

be interconnected by a set of direct tunnels. When a station roams from one switch to another within the same switch peer group, if the point of presence stays at the original or anchor switch, the traffic can be directly tunneled back to the anchor switch without involving the MTE. This direct tunneling mechanism is a data path optimization and is optional.

- **Mobility Group**—A mobility group is a set of MCs (and their associated MAs / switch peer groups)
- **Mobility Tunnel Endpoint**—The Mobility Tunnel Endpoint (MTE) provides data plane services for mobile devices through the use of tunneling. This minimizes the impact of roaming events on the network by keeping the user's point of presence on the network a constant. If the VLAN or subnet of the roamed client is available at the MTE, the MTE could become the point of presence; otherwise it merely functions as a tunnel switching entity that connects the roamed client to access switch or MTE that is the point of presence.

#### Related Topics

- [Mobility Work Center](#)
- [Creating a Mobility Domain](#)

## New Mobility

Hierarchical Mobility is referred to as New Mobility in the wireless LAN controller configuration. Prime Infrastructure 2.0 supports the new mobility functionality for Cisco 5508 and WiSM2 platforms that run Cisco WLC 7.6.

The key features of the New Mobility functionality in Prime Infrastructure are:

- Mobility Work Center discovers Cisco 5508 and WiSM 2 platforms that run Cisco WLC 7.6 and provide necessary operations related to building hierarchical mobility architecture that involves two device types (Cisco 5508 and WiSM2) and Cisco 3650/3850 deployed as Mobility Agent.
- When deploying the hierarchical mobility architecture, the wireless features such as WLAN, VLAN, security, guest anchor can be configured on Cisco 5508 and WiSM2 using the LifeCycle view.
- Deploying the flat mobility architecture on Cisco 5508 and WiSM2 would be supported only in classic view and entire wireless configuration would be left as it is in classic and LifeCycle view.
- As in Prime Infrastructure 2.0, the IOS based devices 3850 and 5760 continue to be configured using CLI templates for some of the wireless features such as creating VLAN interfaces.

For more information about the new mobility functionality, see the Hierarchical Mobility (New Mobility) the Cisco Wireless LAN Controllers and Lightweight Access Points for Release 7.3.112.0 Release Notes at:

[http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/controller/release/notes/crn7\\_3\\_112\\_0.html#wp1054557](http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/controller/release/notes/crn7_3_112_0.html#wp1054557)

## Mobility Work Center

The Mobility Work Center is available by choosing **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Domains**.

The following information is displayed:

- **Device Name**—Name of the MC.
- **Management IP**—Management IP address of the MC.
- **Wireless Interface IP**—IP address on the MC which is used for mobility protocol.

- **Mobility Group**—Name of the mobility group the MC belongs to.
- **Mobility Role**—Shows administrative and operational mobility mode. If Admin and Operational values are different, the device needs reboot for the administrative mode to be effective. It shows MO in addition to mobility mode if Mobility Oracle is enabled on it.

In this page, you can perform the following tasks:

- **Create Mobility Domain**—See [Creating a Mobility Domain](#).
- **Create Switch Peer Group**—To create switch peer groups in MC.
- **Change Mobility Role**—To change the controllers from MA to MC.
- **Delete Domain**—Deletes only the domain; it does not delete the controllers from Prime Infrastructure.
- **Delete Members**—To remove selected MCs from a selected domain.
- **Set as Mobility Oracle**—To enable MO on a selected MC, if the MC must act as the MO for the entire domain. There can be only one MO per domain. Only Cisco 5760 series controllers support the MO feature.
- **Add members to switch peer group**—To add members to switch peer group.
- **Delete members from switch peer group**—To delete members from switch peer group.

**Note**

By default, the Mobility Work Center page displays all of the mobility domains configured in the managed network. To see a list of mobility devices, choose **All Mobility Devices** from the left sidebar.

**Related Topics**

- [What Is Mobility?](#)
- [Creating a Mobility Domain](#)

## Creating a Mobility Domain

A mobility domain is a collection of controllers that have all been configured with each other's IP addresses, allowing clients to roam between the controllers in the mobility domain.

The Mobility Work Center displays all mobility domains configured in the managed network using Prime Infrastructure. The left sidebar menu shows:

- Domains
- MCs in each domain
- SPGs on each MC
- MAs in each SPG

When a node is selected from the left sidebar, the right pane shows more details. When a domain node is selected from the left sidebar, the right pane displays the MCs in the domain.

To create a mobility domain:

- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Domains**.
- Step 2** Click on the left sidebar menu.
- Step 3** Enter a name for the mobility domain for the set of MCs that you want to group together.

If a selected MC exists in another domain, it is removed from that domain and added to the new domain.

- Step 4** Select mobility domain member devices.  
A device can belong to one domain or SPG only.
- Step 5** Click **Apply**.
- 

## Creating a Switch Peer Group

An MC can have switch peer groups (SPGs), and a switch peer group can have MAs. The MAs in a managed network are listed on the Switch Peer Group page. If you create a switch peer group when you already have one, MAs are moved from the old switch peer group to the new one, and the MC wireless interface IP address is set on all of the MAs.

To create a switch peer group, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Domains**
- Step 2** Choose an MC from the left sidebar.
- Step 3** Click **Create Switch Peer Group**.
- Step 4** Enter a name for the switch peer group that will contain the set of MAs that you want to group together on the selected MC.
- If a selected MA exists in another switch peer group, it is removed from that group and added to the new group. You can create multiple switch peer groups on an MC.
- Step 5** Select mobility agents.  
A device can belong to one domain or SPG only.
- Step 6** Click **Apply**.  
The SPG that you created appears in the left sidebar. You can navigate to it to see the mobility agents on the selected switch peer group.
- 

## Changing a Mobility Role

By default, Cisco 3850 controllers act as MAs. These controllers can be converted to MCs if MCs are needed in the network.

To change a mobility role:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Mobility Domains**.
- Step 2** Choose **All Mobility Devices**.
- Step 3** Select a device and the role that you want to change to:
- **Change Role To Mobility Controller**—Enables the mobility controller feature on the selected controller.
  - **Change Role To Mobility Agent**—Enables the Mobility Agent feature on the selected controller. When you do this, the MC feature is disabled.

Converting MAs to MCs (and vice versa) is limited to 3850 devices. For a changed role to take effect, you must reboot the device.

- Assign Mobility Group—Allows you to enter new mobility group name for the selected device.

**Step 4** Click **Apply**.

---

## Mobility Anchors

Mobility anchors are a subset of a mobility group specified as the anchor controllers for a WLAN. This feature can be used to restrict a WLAN to a single subnet, regardless of the entry point of a client into the network. In this way, users can access a public or guest WLAN throughout an enterprise but still be restricted to a specific subnet. Guest WLAN can also be used to provide geographic load balancing because WLANs can represent a particular section of a building (such as a lobby, a restaurant, and so on).

When a client first associates to a controller of a mobility group that has been preconfigured as a mobility anchor for a WLAN, the client associates to the controller locally, and a local session is created for the client. Clients can be anchored only to preconfigured anchor controllers of the WLAN. For a given WLAN, you should configure the same set of anchor controllers on all controllers in the mobility group.

When a client first associates to a controller of a mobility group that has not been configured as a mobility anchor for a WLAN, the client associates to the controller locally, a local session is created for the client, and the controller is announced to the other controllers in the same mobility group. If the announcement is not answered, the controller contacts one of the anchor controllers configured for the WLAN and creates a foreign session for the client on the local switch. Packets from the client are encapsulated through a mobility tunnel using EtherIP and sent to the anchor controller, where they are decapsulated and delivered to the wired network. Packets to the client are received by the anchor controller and forwarded to the foreign controller through a mobility tunnel using EtherIP. The foreign controller decapsulates the packets and forwards them to the client.

## Configuring a Guest Anchor Controller for a WLAN

The guest anchor controller is a controller dedicated to guest traffic, and is located in an unsecured network area, often called the demilitarized zone (DMZ). Other internal WLAN controllers from where the traffic originates are located in the enterprise LAN.



### Note

The Cisco 5760 controller can be a guest anchor whereas the Catalyst 3850 switch cannot be a guest anchor but it can be a foreign controller.

---

You can configure a guest controller as a mobility anchor for a WLAN for load balancing.

### Before You Begin

- Ensure that wireless devices are set up in Prime Infrastructure. For more information about setting up wireless devices, see [Configuring Wireless Features](#).
- Ensure that the wireless devices that you want to configure as mobility anchors for a WLAN are in the same mobility domain.

To configure a guest anchor controller for a WLAN:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Inventory > Device Management > Network Devices**.
- Step 2** In the Device Group area, expand **Device Type**, then expand **Wireless Controller**.
- Step 3** Select the controller that you want to designate as a guest mobility anchor. The details of the device appear in the lower part of the page.
- Step 4** Click the **Configuration** tab.
- Step 5** From the left sidebar menu, choose **WLANs > WLAN Configuration**. The WLAN Configuration page appears.




---

**Note** If you are in the Classic view, choose **Configure > Controllers > Ctrl IP addr > WLANs > WLAN Configuration** to access the WLAN Configuration page.

---

- Step 6** Select the URL of the desired WLAN ID. A tabbed page appears.
- Step 7** Click the **Advanced** tab, and then click the **Mobility Anchors** link at the bottom of the page. The Mobility Anchors page appears.




---

**Note** You can also access the Mobility Anchors page from the WLAN Configuration page. Select the check box of the desired WLAN ID. From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Mobility Anchors**, and then click **Go**. The Mobility Anchors page appears.

---

- Step 8** Select the **IP address** check box of the controller to be designated a mobility anchor, and click **Save**.
- 

## Configuring Spectrum Experts

A Spectrum Expert client acts as a remote interference sensor and sends dynamic interference data to Prime Infrastructure. This feature allows Prime Infrastructure to collect, monitor, and archive detailed interferer data from Spectrum Experts in the network.

To configure spectrum experts, choose **Services > Mobility Services > Spectrum Experts**. This page provides a list of all Spectrum Experts including:

- Hostname—The hostname or IP address of the Spectrum Expert laptop.
- MAC Address—The MAC address of the spectrum sensor card in the laptop.
- Reachability Status—Specifies whether the Spectrum Expert is successfully running and sending information to Prime Infrastructure. The status appears as reachable or unreachable.
- [Viewing Spectrum Experts Summary, page 45-7](#)
- [Viewing Spectrum Experts Summary, page 45-7](#)

## Adding a Spectrum Expert

To add a Spectrum Expert, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > Spectrum Experts**.

- Step 2** From the Select a command drop-down list, choose **Add Spectrum Expert**. This link only appears when no spectrum experts are added. You can also access the Add Spectrum Expert page by choosing **Add Spectrum Expert** from the Select a command drop-down list.
- Step 3** Enter the hostname or IP address of the Spectrum Expert. If you use hostname, your spectrum expert must be registered with DNS to be added to Prime Infrastructure.
- To be correctly added as a spectrum expert, the spectrum expert client must be running and configured to communicate to Prime Infrastructure.
- 

## Viewing Spectrum Experts Summary

The Spectrum Experts page provides a table of the Spectrum Experts added to the system. The table provides the following Spectrum Expert information:

**Hostname**—Displays the host name or IP address.

**Active Interferers**—Indicates the current number of interferers being detected by the Spectrum Experts.

**Alarms APs**—The number of access points seen by the Spectrum Experts that are potentially affected by detected interferers.

**Alarms**—The number of active interference traps sent by the Spectrum Expert. Click to access the Alarm page that is filtered to the active alarms for this Spectrum Expert.

**Reachability Status**—Indicates “Reachable” in green if the Spectrum Expert is running and sending data to Prime Infrastructure. Otherwise, indicates “unreachable” in red.

**Location**—When the Spectrum Expert is a wireless client, a link for location is available. It shows the location of the Spectrum Expert with a red box that shows the effective range.

## Viewing Interferers Summary

The Interferers-SEs page displays a list of all the interferers detected over a 30-day interval. The table provides the following interferer information:

- **Interferer ID**—An identifier that is unique across different spectrum experts. This is a pseudo-randomly generated ID. Though it is similar to a MAC address, it is not a real address, which you can use to find the interfering device.
- **Category**—Indicates the category of the interferer. Categories include: Bluetooth, cordless phones, microwave ovens, 802.11 FH, generic: fixed-frequency, jammers, generic: frequency-hopped, generic:continuous, and analog video.
- **Type**—Active indicates that the interferer is currently being detected by a spectrum expert. Inactive indicates that the interferer is no longer detected by a spectrum expert or the spectrum expert saw that the interferer is no longer reachable by Prime Infrastructure.
- **Discover Time**—Indicates when the interferer was discovered.
- **Affected Channels**—Identifies affected channels.
- **Number of APs Affected**—The number of access points managed by Prime Infrastructure that the spectrum expert detects or the interferers that the spectrum expert detected on the channels of the access point. Only active interferers are shown. If all of the following conditions are met, the access point is labelled as *affected*:
  - If the access point is managed by Prime Infrastructure.
  - If the spectrum experts detects the access point.

- If the spectrum expert detects an interferer on the serving channel of the access point.
- Power—Indicated in dBm.
- Duty Cycle—Indicated in percentage. 100% is the worst value.
- Severity—Indicates the severity ranking of the interferer. 100 is the worst case whereas 0 is no interference.

## Viewing Spectrum Experts Details

The Spectrum Expert page provides all interference details from a single Spectrum Expert. This page updates every 20 seconds and gives a real-time look at the remote spectrum expert. This page includes the following items:

- Total Interferer Count—Given from the specific spectrum expert.
- Active Interferers Count Chart—Displays a pie chart that groups interferers by category.
- Active Interferer Count Per Channel—Displays the number of interferers grouped by category on different channels.
- AP List—Provides a list of access points detected by the spectrum expert. These access points are on channels that have active interferers detected.
- Affected Clients List—Provides a list of clients that are currently authenticated to an access point. You can select specific RADIUS or LDAP servers to provide external authentication in the Security > AAA page.

## Creating wIPS Profiles

Prime Infrastructure provides several predefined profiles from which to choose. These profiles (based on customer types, building types, industry types, and so on) allow you to quickly activate the additional wireless threat protection available through Cisco Adaptive wIPS. You can use a profile ‘as is’ or customize it to better meet your needs.

Predefined profiles include:



- Education
- EnterpriseBest
- EnterpriseRogue
- Financial
- HealthCare
- HotSpotOpen
- Hotspot8021x
- Military
- Retail
- Tradeshow
- Warehouse

The **wIPS Profiles > Profile List** page allows you to view, edit, apply, or delete current wIPS profiles and to add new profiles. The Profile List provides the following information for each profile:



- **Profile Name**—Indicates the user-defined name for the current profile. Click the profile name to view or edit profile details.  
Hover your mouse cursor over the profile name to view the Profile ID and version.
- **MSE(s) Applied To**—Indicates the number of mobility services engines (MSEs) to which this profile is applied. Click the MSE number to view profile assignment details.
- **Controller(s) Applied To**—Indicates the number of controllers to which this profile is applied. Click the controller number to view profile assignment details.

To create a wIPS profile, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Services > Mobility Services > wIPS Profiles**.
- Step 2** From the **Select a command** drop-down list, choose **Add Profile**, then click **Go**.
- Step 3** Enter a profile name in the Profile Name text box of the Profile Parameters page.
- Step 4** Select the applicable predefined profile, or choose **Default** from the drop-down list.
- Step 5** Choose **Save > Next**.
- When you select **Save**, the profile is saved to the Prime Infrastructure database with no changes and no mobility services engine or controller assignments. The profile appears in the profile list.
- Step 6** To edit and delete current groups or add a new group:
- From the **Select a command** drop-down list on the SSID Group List page, choose **Add Group** or **Add Groups from Global List**, then click **Go**.
  - Enter the group name and one or more SSID groups, then click **Save**.
- Step 7** To determine which policies are included in the current profile, choose **Profile Configuration**. The check boxes in the policy tree (located in the left Select Policy pane) indicate which policies are enabled or disabled in the current profile. Using this page, you can:
- Enable or disable an entire branch or an individual policy by selecting or unselecting the check box for the applicable branch or policy.  
By default, all policies are selected.
  - Click an individual policy to display the policy description. Use the Policy Rules page add, edit, delete, and reorder the current policy rule settings.
-  **Note** There must be at least one policy rule in place. You cannot delete a policy rule if it is the only one in the list.
- 
-  **Note** If the profile is already applied to a controller, it cannot be deleted.
- 
- Configure the following settings:
    - **Threshold** (not applicable to all policies)—Indicates the threshold or upper limit associated with the selected policy. Because every policy must contain at least one threshold, default thresholds are defined for each based on standard wireless network issues. Threshold options vary based on the selected policy.

When the threshold is reached for a policy, an alarm is triggered. Alarms from Cisco Adaptive wIPS DoS and security penetration attacks are classified as security alarms. A summary of these attacks is located in the Security Summary page; choose **Monitor > Security** to access this page. The wIPS attacks are located in the Threats and Attacks section.

- **Severity**—Indicates the level of severity of the selected policy. Parameters include critical, major, info, and warning. The value of this field might vary depending on the wireless network.
- **Notification**—Indicates the type of notification associated with the threshold.
- **ACL/SSID Group**—Indicates the ACL or SSID Group(s) to which this threshold is be applied.



---

**Note** Only selected groups trigger the policy.

---

**Step 8** When the profile configuration is complete, select **Next** to proceed to the MSE/Controller(s) page.

**Step 9** In the Apply Profile page, select the mobility services engine and controller(s) to which you want to apply the current profile, then click **Apply** to apply the current profile to the selected mobility services engine/controller(s).

You can also apply a profile directly from the profile list. From the Profile List page, select the profile that you want to apply and click **Apply Profile** from the **Select a command** drop-down list. Then click **Go** to access the Apply Profile page.

---



## Managing Various Reports

---

Cisco Prime Infrastructure reporting is necessary to monitor the system and network health as well as troubleshoot network problems. A number of reports can be generated to run on an immediate or a scheduled basis. Reports can also be combined to form composite reports. Each report type has a number of user-defined criteria to aid in defining the reports. The reports can be formatted as a summary, tabular, or combined (tabular and graphical) layout. After they have been defined, the reports can be saved for future diagnostic use or scheduled to run on a regular basis.

Reports are saved in the these formats:

- CSV
- PDF format and are either saved to a file on Prime Infrastructure to be downloaded later or emailed to a specific email address.

Report categories are:

- Current—Provides a snapshot of data that is not time-dependent.
- Historical—Retrieves data from the device periodically and stores it in the Prime Infrastructure database.
- Trend—Generates a report using aggregated data. Data can be periodically collected from devices and a schedule can be established for report generation.
- Top N—Generates reports based on top utilization.

With Prime Infrastructure, you also have the ability to export any report that you can view, sort reports into logical groups, and archive for long-term storage.

The Reports menu provides access to all Prime Infrastructure reports as well as currently saved and scheduled reports, which includes:

- Report Launch Pad—The hub for all Prime Infrastructure reports. From this page, you can access specific types of reports and create new reports.
- Scheduled Run Results—Allows you to access and manage all currently scheduled runs in Prime Infrastructure, and to access and manage on-demand exports as well as emailed reports.
- Saved Report Templates—Allows you to access and manage all currently saved report templates in Prime Infrastructure.

For information about the report field descriptions, See “Field Reference for Cisco Prime Infrastructure Reports” in Related Topics.

### Related Topics

- [Managing Reports](#)
- [About Scheduled Reports](#)

- [About Saved Report Templates](#)
- [Prime Infrastructure Reports](#)
- [Field Reference for Cisco Prime Infrastructure Reports](#)

## Managing Reports

The Report Launch Pad provides access to all Prime Infrastructure reports from a single page. You can create and save new reports, view current reports, open specific types of reports, schedule a report to run later, customize the results of a report, and combine multiple reports in to one single report.

To see more report details, hover the cursor over the tool tip next to the report type.

### Related Topics

- [Managing Various Reports](#)
- [Creating, Scheduling, and Running a New Report](#)
- [Combining Reports](#)
- [Customizing Report Results](#)
- [About Scheduled Reports](#)
- [About Saved Report Templates](#)
- [Prime Infrastructure Reports](#)

## Creating, Scheduling, and Running a New Report

To create, schedule, and run a new report:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Reports > Report Launch Pad**.
  - Step 2** Choose a category from the left sidebar menu to see the report types for each report category, click **New** corresponding to the appropriate report in the main area of the Report Launch Pad.
  - Step 3** In the Report Details page, complete the fields as described in the **Report Launch Pad > Report Type > New** section. See “Field Reference for Cisco Prime Infrastructure Reports” in Related topics. The parameters shown in the Report Details will vary with the report type. With some reports, you will need to customize the report results.
  - Step 4** If you plan to run this report later or as a recurring report, enter Schedule parameters as described in the **Report Launch Pad > Report Type > New** section. See “Field Reference for Cisco Prime Infrastructure Reports” in Related topics.
  - Step 5** To run the report, choose one of the following options:
    - **Run**—Click to run the report without saving the report setup.
    - **Save**—Click to save this report setup without immediately running the report. If you have entered Schedule parameters, the report runs automatically at the scheduled date and time.
    - **Run and Save**—Click to save this report setup and run the report immediately.
    - **Save and Export**—Click to save the report, run it, and export the results to a file. You will be prompted to:
      - Select the file format (CSV or PDF) of the exported report.

- Choose whether to send an email when the report has been generated. If you choose this option, you must enter the destination email address and the email subject line content, and choose whether you want the exported file included as an attachment to the email.
  - Click **OK**.
  - Save and Email—Click to save the report, run it, export the results as a file, and email the file. You will be prompted to:
    - Select the exported report file format.
    - Enter the destination email address and the email subject line content
    - Click **OK**.
  - Cancel—Click to return to the previous page without running or saving this report.
- 

If a report has been saved for a specific report type, you can access the current reports from the Report Launch Pad.

You cannot change or update generated reports for all subdomains at the same time. You can open and change the reports individually through their respective subdomains. To update all reports, delete the reports created on subdomains and regenerate virtual domain reports with the changes.

#### Related Topics

- [Field Reference for Cisco Prime Infrastructure Reports](#)
- [Combining Reports](#)
- [Customizing Report Results](#)

## Combining Reports

Two or more reports can be combined and information can be filtered based on requirements. Users can select multiple reports and combine them instead of creating special reports for different scenarios. Composite reports can be created from a pre-defined list of supported reports.

To create a new composite report:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Reports > Report Launch Pad**. You can create a new report in one of the following ways:
    - a. From the left sidebar menu, choose **Composite > Composite Report**, and then click **New**.
    - b. On the Report Launch Pad page, scroll down to view the Composite section, then click **New**.
  - Step 2** In the New Custom Composite Report page, enter the report title.
  - Step 3** From the **Report Category** drop-down list, choose a category.
  - Step 4** Select the required reports from the available list and add them to the **Selected Reports** text box. You can also remove the selected reports.
  - Step 5** Choose the appropriate **Report By** category from the drop-down list. The categories differ for each report.
  - Step 6** The **Report Criteria** field allows you to sort your results depending on the previous **Report By** selection made. Click **Edit** to open the Filter Criteria page and select the required filter criteria.
  - Step 7** If you plan to run this report later or as a recurring report, enter the Schedule parameters given in the **Schedule** section.

**Step 8** To run the report, choose one of the following options:

- **Run**—Click to run the report without saving the report setup.
- **Save**—Click to save the report setup without immediately running the report. If you have entered the Schedule parameters, the report runs at the scheduled date and time.
- **Run and Save**—Click to save the report setup and run the report immediately.
- **Save and Export**—Click to save the report, run it, and export the results to a file or as an email attachment. For this you need to:
  - Choose the exported report file format (CSV or PDF).
  - Check the first check box if you want to send an email when the report has been generated. You must enter the destination email address and email subject line content.
  - Check the second check box if you want the exported file to be included as an attachment in the email.

Click **OK**.

- **Save and Email**—Click to save the report, run it, export the results as a file, and email the file. You will be prompted to:
  - Choose the exported report file format.
  - Enter the destination email address and email subject line content.

Click **OK**.

- **Cancel**—Click to return to the previous page without running or saving the report.
- 

You can access the saved composite reports from the Saved Reports Template.

#### Related Topics

- [Field Reference for Cisco Prime Infrastructure Reports](#)
- [Creating, Scheduling, and Running a New Report](#)
- [Customizing Report Results](#)

## Customizing Report Results

Many reports allow you to customize their results, so that you can include / exclude the information you need. If the report you are creating permits this, it will display a **Customize** button. You can click this button to access the Create Custom Report page and customize the report results.

Customizing report results is sometimes required. For example, adding Flexible NetFlow (FNF) Extension parameters to the Traffic Analysis, Application, or Voice Video Data monitoring template makes those parameters part of your Prime Infrastructure monitoring setup. However, this does not mean that the collected FNF extension monitoring data will automatically appear in the corresponding Conversations reports for Core, Application Response Time (ART), and RTP performance. To ensure that FNF data is included in Conversations reports, you must add the FNF parameters to the “Data fields to include” column using the Create Custom Report page. See the Customizing page in “Field Reference for Cisco Prime Infrastructure Reports” in Related topics.

To customize report results:

- 
- Step 1** Choose **Reports > Report Launch Pad**.
- Step 2** Click the Report Title link for the appropriate report.
- Step 3** In the Report Details page, click **Customize**.
- Step 4** On the Create Custom Report page, complete the required information, then click **Apply** to confirm the changes.

The changes made in the Create Custom Report page are not saved until you click **Save** in the Report Details page.

---

#### Related Topics

- [Field Reference for Cisco Prime Infrastructure Reports](#)
- [Creating, Scheduling, and Running a New Report](#)
- [Combining Reports](#)

## About Scheduled Reports

To view all scheduled reports in Prime Infrastructure, choose **Reports > Scheduled Run Results**.

The scheduled report tasks are not visible outside the Virtual Domain they run in. The results of the scheduled report tasks are visible in the Reports Run Results page of the respective domains.

The list of scheduled runs can be sorted by report category, report type, time frame, and report generation method. For information about the fields on this page, see the Scheduled Run Results page in “Field Reference for Cisco Prime Infrastructure Reports” in Related topics.

#### Related Topics

- [Field Reference for Cisco Prime Infrastructure Reports](#)
- [Creating, Scheduling, and Running a New Report](#)
- [Combining Reports](#)
- [Customizing Report Results](#)
- [Managing Various Reports](#)
- [About Saved Report Templates](#)
- [Prime Infrastructure Reports](#)

## About Saved Report Templates

Saved report templates are available at **Reports > Saved Report Templates**. From the Saved Report Templates page, you can create report templates and manage saved report templates. You can also enable, disable, delete, or run saved reports, and you can filter and sort report templates by category, type, and status. For information about the fields on the Saved Report Templates page and filtering saved report templates, see “Field Reference for Cisco Prime Infrastructure Reports” in Related topics.

The Saved Report Templates page displays the following information:

- Report Title—Identifies the user-assigned report name.

Click the report title to view the details for this report.

- Report Type—Identifies the specific report type.
- Scheduled—Indicates whether this report is enabled or disabled.
- Virtual Domain—Identifies the name of the virtual domain under which this report is scheduled.
- Run Now—Click the run icon to immediately run the current report.

When you execute any domain based report for a sub virtual domain, the report displays all of the device attributes that are mapped to the virtual domain where you are currently logged-in.

#### Related Topics

- [Field Reference for Cisco Prime Infrastructure Reports](#)
- [Creating, Scheduling, and Running a New Report](#)
- [Customizing Report Results](#)
- [Managing Various Reports](#)
- [Prime Infrastructure Reports](#)
- [About Scheduled Reports](#)

## Prime Infrastructure Reports

The report shows hourly, daily or weekly data depending on a Data retention period configured by choosing **Administration > Settings > System Settings > Data Retention**. The data is retrieved from the database based on the following conditions.

If the period is:

1. Up to last 1 day, the data is fetched from raw table.
2. From last 2 days to 4 weeks, the data is fetched from a hourly aggregated table.
3. From previous month calendar to last 12 week, the data is fetched from daily aggregated table.
4. From last 6 months to last 1 year, the data is fetched from a weekly aggregated table.

For detailed information about Prime Infrastructure reports, see “Field Reference for Cisco Prime Infrastructure Reports” in Related topics.

#### Related Topics

- [Field Reference for Cisco Prime Infrastructure Reports](#)





# Prime Infrastructure User Interface Reference

Cisco Prime Infrastructure is a web-based application.

If any of your installed Cisco Prime products are not yet enabled through licensing, the menu items or options for those features are not displayed in the web interface.

- [Understanding the Prime Infrastructure User Interface](#)
- [Common UI Tasks](#)
- [Search Methods](#)

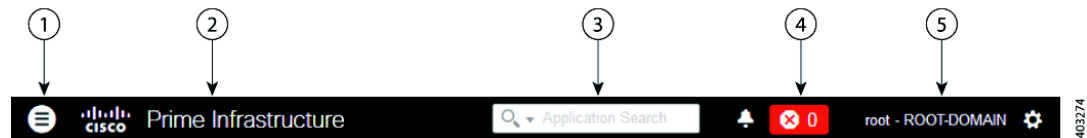
## Understanding the Prime Infrastructure User Interface

When you first log in to Prime Infrastructure, an overlay window shows you the major components of the graphical interface. To view this overlay window again, click your login name at the top-right of the screen, then choose **Help > Getting Started**.

### Toolbar

The toolbar shown in [Figure A-1](#) is at the top of every page:

**Figure A-1** Prime Infrastructure Toolbar



1	Click to open the menu.
2	Click to go to the Prime Infrastructure product page on cisco.com.
3	Type to search for data within Prime Infrastructure. You can enter any text string such as a partial or complete IP address or a username.
4	Displays the number of alarms, and the color corresponds to the highest severity level alarm in your network. Click to display the alarm summary window, displaying all alarms and the number of critical, major, and minor alarms.
5	Displays login name and the virtual domain to which you are assigned. Click to change your user preferences, change your password, log out, access help, and submit product feedback.

**Related Topics**

- [Search Methods](#)

## Filters

You can use the Filter feature to display specific information about the Prime Infrastructure interface. The Filter icon is provided wherever the data is displayed in a tabular format. The following types of filters are available:

- Quick Filter—See [Performing a Quick Filter](#)
- Advanced Filter—See [Performing an Advanced Filter](#)
- Dashboard Filter—See [Using Dashboard Filters](#)

### Performing a Quick Filter

This filter allows you to narrow down the data inside a table by applying a filter to a specific table column or columns. To apply different operators, use the Advanced Filter option (see [Performing an Advanced Filter](#)).

To launch the quick filter, choose **Quick Filter** from the Filter drop-down list.

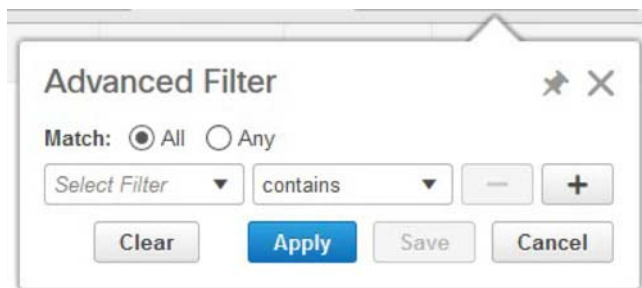
To clear the Quick Filter, click **Filter**.

### Performing an Advanced Filter

This filter allows you to narrow down the data in a table by applying a filter using multiple operators such as Does not contain, Does not equal, Ends with, Is empty, and so on. For example, you can choose the filter pattern by table column names and the operator from the drop-down list. In addition, you must enter filter criteria based on the data available in the Prime Infrastructure database.

To launch advanced filtering, choose **Advanced Filter** from the Filter drop-down list.

**Figure A-2**      *Advanced Filter*



To save the filter criteria used in the Advanced filter, follow these steps:

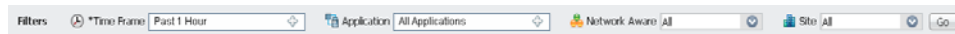
- 
- Step 1** Enter the advanced filter criteria, then click **Go**. The data is filtered based on the filter criteria.
  - Step 2** After the data is filtered, click the **Save** icon.
  - Step 3** In the Save Preset Filter dialog box, enter a name for the preset filter and click **Save**.
-

## Using Dashboard Filters

The Filters toolbar allows you to narrow down the data that is displayed in all of the dashlets in a dashboard. Use this toolbar to filter the dashlets data by:

- Time frame—Select one of the preset options or create a custom time frame.
- Applications—Select a service, up to 10 individual applications, or all applications.
- Network Aware—Select wired, wireless, or all networks.
- Site—Select a site, unassigned sites, or all sites.

**Figure A-3** Dashboard Filters Toolbar



To filter the data for all dashlets in a dashboard, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Open a dashboard (for example, choose **Dashboard > Overview > General**).
  - Step 2** Change the settings in any of the **Filters** toolbar options, then click **Go**.
- 

## Data Entry Features

In addition to the check boxes, drop-down lists and data entry fields common in most user interfaces, Prime Infrastructure uses some specialized data-entry features. These features are designed to keep your view of the network as uncluttered as possible, while still making it possible for you to add, update, and save your settings when needed. These specialized data-entry features include:

- [Edit Tables](#)
- [Data Popups](#)

### Edit Tables

Prime Infrastructure uses tables to display many kind of data, including lists of sites, devices, and events. The data is arranged in rows and columns, much like a spreadsheet.

An edit table differs from other tables in that you can add, edit, or delete the data it contains. Some edit tables also give you access to filters (see [Filters](#)). Edit tables are often displayed in data popups that are triggered by check boxes.

**Figure A-4** *Edit Table*

To use edit tables:

- To add a new row in the edit table:  
Click the (+) icon, complete the fields in the new row, and click **Save**.
- To delete one or more existing rows in an edit table:  
Select the row header check box (at the extreme left of each row), then click **Delete**.
- To update an entry in any field in any edit table row:  
Click the row header or on the field itself, edit the contents, then click **Save**.

## Data Popups

A data popup is a window associated with a check box, anchored field, or other data-entry feature. It is displayed automatically when you select a feature, so that you can view or update the data associated with that feature. In addition to containing check boxes, drop-down lists, and data-entry fields, data popups can also contain edit tables.

To use a data popup:

1. Select the feature that triggers the data popup, such as an anchored field or a check box.
2. With the associated popup displayed, view or update the fields as needed.
3. When you are finished, click anywhere outside the data popup. If you entered new information or changed existing information, your changes are saved automatically.

### Related Topics

- [Edit Tables](#)

## Interactive Graphs

Prime Infrastructure provides interactive line, area, pie, and stacked bar graphs of both time-based and non time-based data. Interactive graph features include the following:

- Support for automatic refresh—The graphs refresh automatically within a predetermined time interval.
- Two graph views:
  - Graph (Chart) view (this is the default)
  - Table (Grid) view

- Graph enlargement

#### Related Topics

- [Using Interactive Graphs](#)
- [Time-based Graphs](#)

## Using Interactive Graphs

The following table summarizes how to use interactive graphs.

**Table A-1** *Using Interactive Graphs*

To do this:	Do this:
Get help with the graph buttons	Hover your mouse cursor over the button. Prime Infrastructure displays a popup tooltip describing the button.
View the data as a graph or chart.	Click <b>View in Chart</b> .
View the data in grid or table form	Click <b>View in Grid</b> .
Enlarge the graph	Click the button located at the bottom right side of the graph. Prime Infrastructure displays an enlarged version of the graph in a separate page. The <b>View in Chart</b> and <b>View in Grid</b> toggle buttons are available in the new page, so you can change the type of enlarged graph displayed.

#### Related Topics

- [Interactive Graphs](#)
- [Time-based Graphs](#)

## Time-based Graphs

Some graphs display time-based data. For these time-based graphs, Prime Infrastructure provides a link bar at the top of the graph. The link bar contains a set of links representing standard time-frames (such as the last six hours, one day, and so on) appropriate for the type of data in the chart. When you select one of these time-frame links, the data for that time frame is retrieved and the graph is refreshed to show only the data for that time-frame.

The time-frame links displayed in time-based graphs include the following:

- 6h—Denotes the last six hours of data from the current time. The data is gathered from the current database table.
- 1d—Denotes the last day (24 hours) of data from the current time. The data is gathered from the current database table.
- 1w—Denotes the last week (seven days) of data from the current time. The data is gathered from the hourly aggregated table.
- 2w—Denotes the last two weeks of data from the current time. The data is gathered from the hourly aggregated table.
- 4w—Denotes the last four weeks of data from the current time. The data is gathered from the hourly aggregated table.

- 3m—Denotes the last three months of data from the current time. The data is gathered from the daily aggregated table.
- 6m—Denotes the last six months of data from the current time. The data is gathered from the weekly aggregated table.
- 1y—Denotes the past year (12 months) of data from the current time. The data is gathered from the weekly aggregated table.
- Custom—User-selected time period. You can set the day and time for the start and end dates. The use of a current or hourly, daily, or weekly aggregated source for data depends upon the selected start date.

The default, maximum and minimum retention periods for the aggregated data displayed in time-based graphs are controlled by Prime Infrastructure administrators. For details, see “About Historical Data Retention” in Related Topics.

#### Related Topics

- [Interactive Graphs](#)
- [Using Interactive Graphs](#)
- [About Historical Data Retention](#)

## Common UI Tasks

You can perform the following actions from nearly any Prime Infrastructure window:

- [Changing Your Password](#)
- [Changing Your Active Domain](#)
- [Setting Your Home Page](#)
- [Changing User Preferences](#)
- [Getting Device Details from Device 360° View](#)
- [Getting User Details from the User 360° View](#)
- [Getting Help](#)

## Changing Your Password

- 
- Step 1** Click your login name at the top-right of the screen and choose **Change Password**.
  - Step 2** Click the information icon to review the password policy.
  - Step 3** Enter a new password as directed and click **Save**.
- 

## Changing Your Active Domain

- 
- Step 1** Click your login name at the top-right of the screen and choose **Virtual Domain**.

- Step 2** Choose a domain from the list of domains of which you are a member.
- 

## Setting Your Home Page

- Step 1** Navigate to the page that you want to set as your home page.
- Step 2** Click your login name at the top-right of the screen and choose **Set Current Page as Home**.
- 

## Changing User Preferences

You can modify how many items are displayed on list pages, map settings, idle timeout settings, and alarm display options.

- Step 1** Click your login name at the top-right of the screen and choose **My Preferences**.
- Step 2** Modify any of the settings, then click **Save**.
- 

## Getting Device Details from Device 360° View

The Device 360° View provides detailed device information including device status, interface status, and associated device information. You can see the device 360° view from nearly all pages in which device IP addresses are displayed.

To launch the 360° view of any device, click the info icon next to the device IP address.

[Figure A-5](#) shows a sample of the Device 360° View.

**Note**

The features that appear in the Device 360° View differ depending on the device type.

---

Figure A-5 Sample Device 360° View

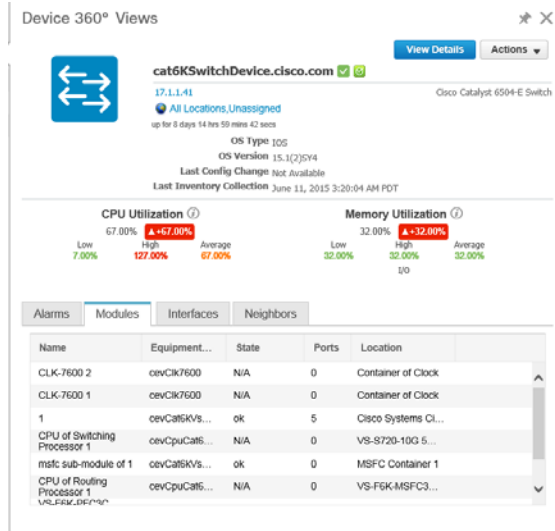


Table A-2 Device 360° View Features

Device 360° View Feature	Description
Device status	Indicates whether the device is reachable, is being managed, and is synchronized with the Prime Infrastructure database.
Action drop-down list	<p>Choose one of the following options from the <b>Action</b> drop-down list at the top right of the device 360° view.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alarm Browser—Launches the Alarm Browser. See <a href="#">Monitoring Alarms</a> for more information.</li> <li>Device Details—Displays device details.</li> <li>Support Community—Launches the Cisco Support Community. See <a href="#">Launching the Cisco Support Community</a>.</li> <li>Support Request—Allows you to open a support case. See <a href="#">Opening a Support Case</a> for more information.</li> <li>Ping—Allows you to ping the device.</li> <li>Traceroute—Allows you to perform a traceroute on the device.</li> <li>Connect to Device—Allows you to connect to the device using Telnet, SSH, HTTP, and HTTPS protocols.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> There are some prerequisites for 360° view Telnet and SSH to work in client browser.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Firefox: Use external applications such as Putty for Telnet, and FireSSH add-on for SSH.</li> <li>Internet Explorer (IE) and Google Chrome: Add Regedit entries for Telnet and SSH. (See <a href="#">Related Topics</a>.)</li> </ul>
Alarms	Lists alarms on the device, including the alarm status, time stamp, and category.
Modules	Lists the device modules and their name, type, state, and ports.
Interfaces	Lists the device interfaces and the top three applications for each interface.
Neighbors	Lists the device neighbors, including their index, port, duplex status, and sysname.



Table A-2 Device 360° View Features

Device 360° View Feature	Description
Wireless Interfaces	Lists the interface names, associated WLANs, VLAN IDs and IP addresses.
WLAN	Lists the WLAN names, SSIDs, security policies, and number of clients.

**Related Topics**

- [Connecting Device using Telnet and SSH in Internet Explorer and Google Chrome](#)


## Connecting Device using Telnet and SSH in Internet Explorer and Google Chrome

**Before You Begin**

Ensure that you have the Telnet and SSH browser plug-ins installed in Internet Explorer and Chrome.

### Enabling Telnet client functionality in Internet Explorer

To enable Telnet client functionality in 64 bit Windows operating System with 32 bit Internet Explorer, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Open the Telnet client in control panel.
- Go to Control Panel.
  - Click **Programs And Features**.
  - Click **Turn Windows features on or off** in the left pane.
  - Check the Telnet Client check box.
  - Click **OK**.
- Step 2** Copy the 64 bit version of telnet.exe from System32 in Windows directory to SysWOW64 in the same directory.
- Step 3** Add the following registry key for the 32 bit version of Internet Explorer.
- Open regedit.exe and navigate to the following registry key:  
`HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE Wow6432Node\Microsoft\Internet Explorer\MAIN\FeatureControl\FEATURE_DISABLE_TELNET_PROTOCOL`
    - For backing up the key, right-click FEATURE\_DISABLE\_TELNET\_PROTOCOL and select export. Save the key to a location where you can easily locate it when it needs to be restored.
-  **Note** If this key does not exist, please add the key as named above.
- 
- Right-click FEATURE\_DISABLE\_TELNET\_PROTOCOL again and select New and select DWORD (32-bit) Value from the drop-down list.
  - In the right pane, rename the New Value as iexplore.exe.
  - Verify that the value for iexplore.exe is 0x00000000 and close regedit.exe.
- Step 4** Copy the file System32\en-US\telnet.exe.mui to the folder SysWOW64\en-US.
-

## Enabling SSH

Follow these steps to start SSH session in Internet Explorer.

**Step 1** Create a file called ssh.reg with the following content:

```
REGEDIT4
[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\ssh]
@="URL:ssh Protocol"
"URL Protocol"=""
[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\ssh\shell]
[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\ssh\shell\open]
[HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\ssh\shell\open\command]
@="\"C:\\Program Files\\putty\\putty.exe\" \"%1\""
```

**Step 2** Run this file to add the information to the Windows Registry.



### Note

If you perform [Enabling Telnet client functionality in Internet Explorer](#) and [Enabling SSH](#), the changes will also be reflected in your Google chrome.

### Related Topics

- [Getting Device Details from Device 360° View](#)

## Getting User Details from the User 360° View

The User 360° View provides detailed information about an end user, including:

- End user network connection and association
- Authentication and authorization
- Possible problems with the network devices associated with the user's network attachment
- Application-related issues
- Other issues in the broader network

To access the 360° view for a user, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Choose **Monitor > Monitoring Tools > Clients and Users**.

**Step 2** Click the expand icon next to a user name under the **User Name** column. You can view the User 360° View.

[Figure A-6](#) shows a sample of the User 360° View.

Figure A-6 Sample User 360° View

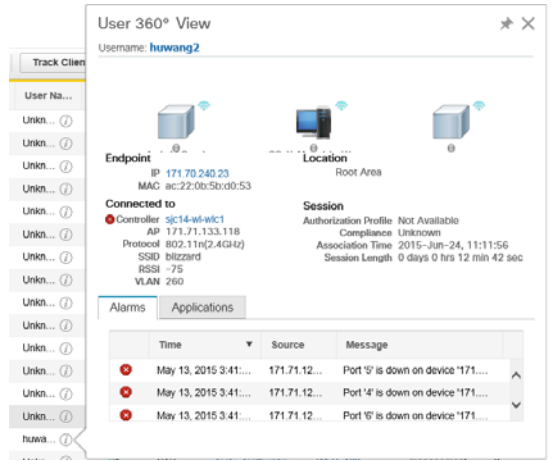


Table A-3 User 360° View Features

User 360° View Feature	Description
User information	Displays key information about the end user.
Endpoint	Displays endpoint information. This feature requires integration with an ISE server.
Connected To	<p>Displays network attachment information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Network device (access switch or AP + Controller): Visible indication of existence and severity of any active alarms associated with the device</li> <li>Attachment port: Visible indication of existence and severity of any active alarms associated with the port</li> </ul>
Location Session	<p>Displays network session information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The location is the Prime Infrastructure hierarchy location.</li> <li>Access Policy (ISE Authorization Profile). Visible indication of the existence of any errors associated with authentication. This feature requires integration with an ISE server.</li> <li>Endpoint compliance status. This feature requires integration with an ISE server.</li> <li>Session start time and end time.</li> </ul>
Alarms	Click the <b>Alarms</b> tab to view a list of alarms and statistics associated with the network session.
Applications	Click the <b>Applications</b> tab to view a list of applications and statistics associated with the network session. Session information (Netflow/NAM data, Assurance licenses) must be available.

## Getting Help

You can access online help by clicking the wheel next to your domain name (at the top-right of the screen) and choose **Contextual Help**.

## Search Methods

Prime Infrastructure provides the following search methods:

- Application Search—See [Performing an Application Search](#).
- Advanced Search—See [Performing an Advanced Search](#).
- Saved Search—See [Performing a Saved Search](#).

You can access the search options from any page within Prime Infrastructure.

### Performing an Application Search

To quickly search for data within Prime Infrastructure, you can enter any text string such as a partial or complete IP address or a username if you are searching for a client.

- 
- Step 1** Click the Search icon at the top-right of the screen.
- Step 2** In the Search text box, enter a search string and click **Search Prime Infrastructure**.
- Step 3** Click **View List** to view the matching devices from the Monitor or Configuration page.
- 

### Performing an Advanced Search

To perform a more specific search in Prime Infrastructure, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Click the Search icon at the top-right of the screen.
- Step 2** From the Search pulldown menu, select **Advanced Search**.
- Step 3** In the Advanced Search dialog box, choose a category from the Search Category drop-down list.
- Step 4** Choose all applicable filters or parameters for your search.




---

**Note** Search parameters change depending on the category that you selected.

---

- Step 5** To save this search, select the **Save Search** check box, enter a unique name for the search in the text box, and click **Go**.
- 




---

**Note** You can decide what information appears on the search results page. See the [Search Results](#) for more information.

---

The Search categories include the following:

- Access Points—See [Searching Access Points](#)
- Alarms—See [Searching Alarms](#)
- Clients—See [Searching Clients](#)
- Chokepoints—See [Searching Chokepoints](#)

- Configuration Versions—See [Searching Configuration Versions](#)
- Controller Licenses—See [Searching Controller Licenses](#)
- Controllers—See [Searching Controllers](#)
- Device Type—See [Searching Device Types](#)
- Events—See [Searching Events](#)
- Interferers—See [Searching Interferers](#)
- Jobs—See [Searching Jobs](#)
- Maps—See [Searching Maps](#)
- Rogue Client—See [Searching Rogue Clients](#)
- Shunned Client—See [Searching Shunned Clients](#)
- Switches—See [Searching Switches](#)
- Tags—See [Searching Tags](#)
- Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers—See [Searching Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers](#)

## Searching Alarms

You can configure the following parameters when performing an advanced search for alarms (see [Table A-4](#)).

**Table A-4** Search Alarms Fields

Field	Options
Severity	Choose <b>All Severities, Critical, Major, Minor, Warning, or Clear</b> .
Alarm Category	Choose <b>All Types, System, Access Points, Controllers, Coverage Hole, Config Audit, Mobility Service, Context Aware Notifications, SE Detected Interferers, Mesh Links, Rogue AP, Adhoc Rogue, Security, Performance, Application Performance, Routers, Switches and Hubs, or Cisco Interfaces and Modules</b> .
Condition	Use the drop-down list to choose a condition. Also, you can enter a condition by typing it in this drop-down list.  <b>Note</b> If you have selected an alarm category, this drop-down list would contain the conditions available in that category.
Time Period	Choose a time increment from Any Time to Last 7 days. The default is Any Time.
Acknowledged State	Select this check box to search for alarms with an Acknowledged or Unacknowledged state. If this check box is not selected, the acknowledged state is not taken into search criteria consideration.
Assigned State	Select this check box to search for alarms with an Assigned or Unassigned state or by Owner Name. If this check box is not selected, the assigned state is not part of the search criteria.  <b>Note</b> If you choose Assigned State > Owner Name, type the owner name in the available text box.

## Searching Jobs

You can configure the following parameters when performing an advanced search for jobs (see [Table A-5](#)).

**Table A-5** Search Jobs Fields

Field	Options
Job Name	Type the name of the job that you want to search.
Job Type	Type the job type that you want to search.
Job Status	Choose <b>All Status, Completed, or Scheduled</b> .

For more information, see the [Monitoring Jobs](#).



**Note**

You can use wildcards such as \*,? in the Job Name and Job Type text box to narrow or broaden your search.

## Searching Access Points

You can configure the following parameters when performing an advanced search for access points (see [Table A-6](#)).

**Table A-6** Search Access Points Fields

Field	Options
Search By	Choose <b>All APs, Base Radio MAC, Ethernet MAC, AP Name, AP Model, AP Location, IP Address, Device Name, Controller IP, All Unassociated APs, Floor Area, Outdoor Area, Unassigned APs, or Alarms</b> .  <b>Note</b> Search parameters might change depending on the selected category. When applicable, enter the additional parameter or filter information to help identify the Search By category. For example, when you select Floor Area, you also must identify its campus and building. Or, if you select Alarms, you can search for access points based on the severity of the alarm.
AP Type	Choose <b>All Types, LWAPP, or Autonomous</b> .
AP Mode	Choose <b>All Modes, Local, Monitor, FlexConnect, Rogue Detector, Sniffer, Bridge, or SE-Connect</b> .
Radio Type	Choose <b>All Radios, 802.11a, or 802.11b/g</b> .
802.11n Support	Select this check box to search for access points with 802.11n support.
OfficeExtend AP Enabled	Select this check box to search for Office Extend access points.
CleanAir Support	Select this check box to search for access points which support CleanAir.
CleanAir Enabled	Select this check box to search for access points which support CleanAir and which are enabled.
Items per page	Configure the number of records to be displayed in the search results page.

## Searching Controller Licenses

You can configure the following parameters when performing an advanced search for controller licenses (see [Table A-7](#)).

**Table A-7** Search Controller Licenses Fields

Field	Options
Controller Name	Type the controller name associated with the license search.
Feature Name	Choose <b>All</b> , <b>Plus</b> , or <b>Base</b> depending on the license tier.
Type	Choose <b>All</b> , <b>Demo</b> , <b>Extension</b> , <b>Grace Period</b> , or <b>Permanent</b> .
% Used or Greater	Choose the percentage of the license use from this drop-down list. The percentages range from 0 to 100.
Items per page	Configure the number of records to be displayed in the search results page.

## Searching Controllers

You can configure the following parameters when performing an advanced search for controllers (see [Table A-8](#)).

**Table A-8** Search Controllers Fields

Field	Options
Search for controller by	Choose <b>All Controllers</b> , <b>IP Address</b> , or <b>Controller Name</b> .  <b>Note</b> Search parameters might change depending on the selected category. When applicable, enter the additional parameter or filter information to help identify the Search By category.
Enter Controller IP Address	This text box appears only if you choose IP Address from the Search for controller by drop-down list.
Enter Controller Name	This text box appears only if you choose Controller Name from the Search for controller by drop-down list.
Audit Status	Choose one of the following from the drop-down list: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>All Status</b></li> <li>• <b>Mismatch</b>—Config differences were found between Prime Infrastructure and controller during the last audit.</li> <li>• <b>Identical</b>—No configuration differences were found during the last audit.</li> <li>• <b>Not Available</b>—Audit status is unavailable.</li> </ul>
Items per page	Configure the number of records to be displayed in the search results page.

## Searching Switches

You can configure the following parameters when performing an advanced search for switches (see [Table A-9](#)).

**Table A-9 Search Switches Fields**

Field	Options
Search for Switches by	Choose <b>All Switches</b> , <b>IP Address</b> , or <b>Switch Name</b> . You can use wildcards (*). For example, if you select IP Address and enter <b>172*</b> , Prime Infrastructure returns all switches that begin with IP address 172.
Items per page	Configure the number of records to be displayed in the search results page.

## Searching Clients

You can configure the following parameters when performing an advanced search for clients (see [Table A-10](#)).

**Table A-10 Search Clients Fields**

Field	Options
Media Type	Choose <b>All</b> , <b>Wireless Clients</b> , or <b>Wired Clients</b> .
Wireless Type	Choose <b>All</b> , <b>Lightweight</b> or <b>Autonomous Clients</b> if you chose Wireless Clients from the Media Type list.
Search By	Choose <b>All Clients</b> , <b>All Excluded Clients</b> , <b>All Wired Clients</b> , <b>All Logged in Guests</b> , <b>IP Address</b> , <b>User Name</b> , <b>MAC Address</b> , <b>Asset Name</b> , <b>Asset Category</b> , <b>Asset Group</b> , <b>AP Name</b> , <b>Controller Name</b> , <b>Controller IP</b> , <b>MSE IP</b> , <b>Floor Area</b> , <b>Outdoor Area</b> , <b>Switch Name</b> , or <b>Switch Type</b> . <b>Note</b> Search parameters might change depending on the selected category. When applicable, enter the additional parameter or filter information to help identify the Search By category. For example, when you select IP address, you must enter the specific IP address for this search.
Clients Detected By	Choose <b>Prime Infrastructure</b> or <b>MSEs</b> . Clients detected by Prime Infrastructure—Clients stored in Prime Infrastructure databases. Clients detected by MSE—Clients located by Context Aware service in the MSE directly communicating with the controllers.
Client States	Choose <b>All States</b> , <b>Idle</b> , <b>Authenticated</b> , <b>Associated</b> , <b>Probing</b> , or <b>Excluded</b> .
Posture Status	Choose <b>All</b> , <b>Unknown</b> , <b>Passed</b> , <b>Failed</b> if you want to know if the devices are clean or not.
Restrict By Radio Band	Select the check box to indicate a specific radio band. Choose <b>5 GHz</b> or <b>2.4 GHz</b> from the drop-down list.
Restrict By Protocol	Select the check box to indicate a specific protocol. Choose <b>802.11a</b> , <b>802.11b</b> , <b>802.11g</b> , <b>802.11n</b> , or <b>Mobile</b> from the drop-down list.
SSID	Select the check box and choose the applicable SSID from the drop-down list.
Profile	Select the check box to list all of the clients associated to the selected profile. <b>Note</b> Once the check box is selected, choose the applicable profile from the drop-down list.
CCX Compatible	Select the check box to search for clients that are compatible with Cisco Client Extensions. <b>Note</b> Once the check box is selected, choose the applicable version, <b>All Versions</b> , or <b>Not Supported</b> from the drop-down list.
E2E Compatible	Select the check box to search for clients that are end-to-end compatible. <b>Note</b> Once the check box is selected, choose the applicable version, <b>All Versions</b> , or <b>Not Supported</b> from the drop-down list.



**Table A-10** Search Clients Fields (continued)

Field	Options
NAC State	Select the check box to search for clients identified by a certain Network Admission Control (NAC) state. <b>Note</b> Once the check box is selected, choose the applicable state from the drop-down list: <b>Quarantine, Access, Invalid, and Not Applicable.</b>
Include Disassociated	Select this check box to include clients that are no longer on the network but for which Prime Infrastructure has historical records.
Items per page	Configure the number of records to be displayed in the search results page.

## Searching Chokepoints

You can configure the following parameters when performing an advanced search for chokepoints (see [Table A-10](#)).

**Table A-11** Search Chokepoint Fields

Field	Options
Search By	Choose <b>MAC Address</b> or <b>Chokepoint Name</b> . <b>Note</b> Search parameters might change depending on the selected category. When applicable, enter the additional parameter or filter information to help identify the Search By category. For example, when you select MAC address, you must enter the specific MAC address for this search.

## Searching Events

You can configure the following parameters when performing an advanced search for events (see [Table A-12](#)).

**Table A-12** Search Events Fields

Field	Options
Severity	Choose <b>All Severities, Critical, Major, Minor, Warning, Clear, or Info. Color coded.</b>
Event Category	Choose <b>All Types, Access Points, Controller, Security, Coverage Hole, Rogue AP, Adhoc Rogue, Interference, Mesh Links, Client, Mobility Service, Location Notifications, Pre Coverage Hole, or Prime Infrastructure.</b>
Condition	Use the drop-down list to choose a condition. Also, you can enter a condition by typing it in this drop-down list. <b>Note</b> If you selected an event category, this drop-down list contains the conditions available in that category.
Search All Events	Configure the number of records to be displayed in the search results page.

## Searching Interferers

You can configure the following parameters when performing an advanced search for interferers detected by access points (see [Table A-13](#)).

**Table A-13** Search SE-Detected Interferers Fields

Field	Options
Search By	Choose <b>All Interferers, Interferer ID, Interferer Category, Interferer Type, Affected Channel, Affected AP, Severity, Power, or Duty Cycle.</b> <b>Note</b> Search parameters might change depending on the selected category. When applicable, enter the additional parameter or filter information to help identify the Search By category.
Detected By	Choose <b>All Spectrum Experts</b> or a specific spectrum expert from the drop-down list.
Detected within the last	Choose the time range for the interferer detections. The times range from 5 minutes to 24 hours to All History.
Interferer Status	From this drop-down list, choose <b>All, Active, or Inactive.</b>
Restrict by Radio Bands/Channels	Configure the search by radio bands or channels.
Items per page	Configure the number of records to be displayed in the search results page.

## Searching Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers

You can configure the following parameters when performing an advanced search for Wi-Fi TDOA receivers (see [Table A-14](#)).

**Table A-14** Search Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers Fields

Field	Options
Search By	Choose <b>MAC Address or Wi-Fi TDOA Receivers Name.</b> <b>Note</b> Search parameters might change depending on the selected category. When applicable, enter the additional parameter or filter information to help identify the Search By category.

## Searching Maps

You can configure the following parameters when performing an advanced search for maps (see [Table A-15](#)).

**Table A-15** Search Map Fields

Field	Options
Search for	Choose <b>All Maps, Campuses, Buildings, Floor Areas, or Outdoor Areas.</b>
Map Name	Search by Map Name. Enter the map name in the text box.
Items per page	Configure the number of records to be displayed in the search results page.

## Searching Rogue Clients

You can configure the following parameters when performing an advanced search for rogue clients (see [Table A-16](#)).

**Table A-16** Search Rogue Client Fields

Field	Options
Search for clients by	Choose <b>All Rogue Clients</b> , <b>MAC Address</b> , <b>Controller</b> , <b>MSE</b> , <b>Floor Area</b> , or <b>Outdoor Area</b> .
Search In	Choose <b>MSEs</b> or <b>Prime Infrastructure Controllers</b> .
Status	Select the check box and choose <b>Alert</b> , <b>Contained</b> , or <b>Threat</b> from the drop-down list to include status in the search criteria.

## Searching Shunned Clients



### Note

When a Cisco IPS sensor on the wired network detects a suspicious or threatening client, it alerts the controller to shun this client.

You can configure the following parameters when performing an advanced search for shunned clients (see [Table A-17](#)).

**Table A-17** Search Shunned Client Fields

Field	Options
Search By	Choose <b>All Shunned Clients</b> , <b>Controller</b> , or <b>IP Address</b> .
	<b>Note</b> Search parameters might change depending on the selected category. When applicable, enter the additional parameter or filter information to help identify the Search By category.

## Searching Tags

You can configure the following parameters when performing an advanced search for tags (see [Table A-18](#)).

**Table A-18** Search Tags Fields

Field	Options
Search for tags by	Choose <b>All Tags</b> , <b>Asset Name</b> , <b>Asset Category</b> , <b>Asset Group</b> , <b>MAC Address</b> , <b>Controller</b> , <b>MSE</b> , <b>Floor Area</b> , or <b>Outdoor Area</b> .
	<b>Note</b> Search parameters might change depending on the selected category. When applicable, enter the additional parameter or filter information to help identify the Search By category.
Search In	Choose <b>MSEs</b> or <b>Prime Infrastructure Controllers</b> .
Last detected within	Choose a time increment from 5 minutes to 24 hours. The default is 15 minutes.
Tag Vendor	Select the check box and choose <b>Aeroscout</b> , <b>G2</b> , <b>PanGo</b> , or <b>WhereNet</b> .
Telemetry Tags only	Select the <b>Telemetry Tags only</b> check box to search tags accordingly.
Items per page	Configure the number of records to be displayed in the search results page.

## Searching Device Types

You can configure the following parameters when performing an advanced search for device type (see [Table A-19](#)).

**Table A-19** Search Device Type Fields

Field	Options
Select Device Type	Choose <b>All</b> , <b>Switches and Hubs</b> , <b>Wireless Controller</b> , <b>Unified AP</b> , <b>Autonomous AP</b> , <b>Unmanaged AP</b> , and <b>Routers</b> .
Enter Device IP	Enter the IP address of the device selected in the Select Device Type field.

## Searching Configuration Versions

You can configure the following parameter when performing an advanced search for configuration versions (see [Table A-20](#)).

**Table A-20** Search Configuration Versions Fields

Field	Options
Enter Tag	Enter the tag name.

## Performing a Saved Search



**Note** Saved searches apply only to the current partition.

To access and run a previously saved search, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Click the icon in the Application Search box, then click **Saved Search**.
  - Step 2** Choose a category from the Search Category drop-down list, then choose a saved search from the Saved Search List drop-down list.
  - Step 3** If necessary, change the current parameters for the saved search, then click **Go**.
-



## System Time Zones

This appendix lists all the available values for the system time zone.

Libya	GB-Eire	Kwajalein
GMT	Australia/Lord_Howe	Australia/West
Australia/Sydney	Australia/South	Australia/Queensland
Australia/Yancowinna	Australia/Melbourne	Australia/Canberra
Australia/Adelaide	Australia/Brisbane	Australia/Broken_Hill
Australia/North	Australia/Lindeman	Australia/Eucla
Australia/LHI	Australia/Perth	Australia/Tasmania
Australia/NSW	Australia/ACT	Australia/Darwin
Australia/Hobart	Australia/Victoria	Australia/Currie
EST	Hongkong	CST6CDT
GMT0	Iran	Etc/GMT-7
Etc/GMT	Etc/GMT-5	Etc/GMT+9
Etc/GMT0	Etc/GMT+5	Etc/UCT
Etc/GMT-6	Etc/GMT+8	Etc/GMT+10
Etc/GMT-9	Etc/GMT-11	Etc/GMT-13
Etc/GMT+0	Etc/GMT-1	Etc/GMT-10
Etc/GMT+3	Etc/GMT-0	Etc/GMT-3
Etc/GMT-8	Etc/GMT+11	Etc/Universal
Etc/GMT+4	Etc/UTC	Etc/GMT+12
Etc/Zulu	Etc/GMT+7	Etc/GMT-12
Etc/Greenwich	Etc/GMT-2	Etc/GMT+1
Etc/GMT-14	Etc/GMT-4	Etc/GMT+6
Etc/GMT+2	Antarctica/Palmer	Antarctica/Rothera
Antarctica/Casey	Antarctica/South_Pole	Antarctica/Davis
Antarctica/Syowa	Antarctica/DumontDURville	Antarctica/Mawson
Antarctica/Vostok	Antarctica/McMurdo	W-SU

US/Central	US/Aleutian	US/Samoa
US/Mountain	US/Arizona	US/Michigan
US/East-Indiana	US/Pacific	US/Hawaii
US/Alaska	US/Eastern	US/Indiana-Starke
Eire	PRC	UCT
Jamaica	Chile/EasterIsland	Chile/Continental
Egypt	Brazil/West	Brazil/DeNoronha
Brazil/East	Brazil/Acre	Indian/Mahe
Indian/Antananarivo	Indian/Kerguelen	Indian/Mauritius
Indian/Chagos	Indian/Cocos	Indian/Reunion
Indian/Maldives	Indian/Mayotte	Indian/Christmas
Indian/Comoro	EET	Mideast/Riyadh88
Mideast/Riyadh89	Mideast/Riyadh87	Japan
Africa/Harare	Africa/Mogadishu	Africa/Cairo
Africa/Banjul	Africa/Luanda	Africa/Addis_Ababa
Africa/Johannesburg	Africa/Ouagadougou	Africa/Lubumbashi
Africa/Windhoek	Africa/Bissau	Africa/Nouakchott
Africa/Freetown	Africa/Sao_Tome	Africa/Brazzaville
Africa/Blantyre	Africa/Maseru	Africa/Algiers
Africa/Lome	Africa/Asmera	Africa/Tunis
Africa/Porto-Novo	Africa/Bamako	Africa/El_Aaiun
Africa/Kinshasa	Africa/Tripoli	Africa/Bujumbura
Africa/Bangui	Africa/Conakry	Africa/Lusaka
Africa/Nairobi	Africa/Ceuta	Africa/Mbabane
Africa/Timbuktu	Africa/Accra	Africa/Niamey
Africa/Gaborone	Africa/Djibouti	Africa/Lagos
Africa/Maputo	Africa/Kigali	Africa/Khartoum
Africa/Abidjan	Africa/Dar_es_Salaam	Africa/Asmara
Africa/Libreville	Africa/Dakar	Africa/Malabo
Africa/Kampala	Africa/Casablanca	Africa/Ndjamena
Africa/Monrovia	Africa/Douala	MST
Singapore	Europe/Copenhagen	Europe/Bratislava
Europe/Riga	Europe/Jersey	Europe/Uzhgorod
Europe/Luxembourg	Europe/Athens	Europe/Belfast
Europe/Samara	Europe/San_Marino	Europe/Tirane
Europe/Monaco	Europe/Sofia	Europe/Stockholm
Europe/Guernsey	Europe/Amsterdam	Europe/Sarajevo
Europe/Andorra	Europe/Zaporozhye	Europe/Bucharest

Europe/Dublin	Europe/Zagreb	Europe/Ljubljana
Europe/Prague	Europe/Moscow	Europe/Vatican
Europe/Kiev	Europe/Warsaw	Europe/Chisinau
Europe/Zurich	Europe/Malta	Europe/Skopje
Europe/Volgograd	Europe/Vaduz	Europe/Rome
Europe/Brussels	Europe/Helsinki	Europe/Belgrade
Europe/Istanbul	Europe/Budapest	Europe/Madrid
Europe/Mariehamn	Europe/Simferopol	Europe/Paris
Europe/Minsk	Europe/Vilnius	Europe/Podgorica
Europe/Isle_of_Man	Europe/Vienna	Europe/Kaliningrad
Europe/Gibraltar	Europe/Lisbon	Europe/Tallinn
Europe/Oslo	Europe/London	Europe/Nicosia
Europe/Tiraspol	Europe/Berlin	Mexico/BajaSur
Mexico/BajaNorte	Mexico/General	GMT+0
WET	MST7MDT	Turkey
Factory	Atlantic/St_Helena	Atlantic/Bermuda
Atlantic/Faeroe	Atlantic/Madeira	Atlantic/Canary
Atlantic/Jan_Mayen	Atlantic/Reykjavik	Atlantic/Stanley
Atlantic/Azores	Atlantic/South_Georgia	Atlantic/Cape_Verde
Atlantic/Faroe	GMT-0	Poland
America/El_Salvador	America/Montreal	America/St_Kitts
America/Godthab	America/Cambridge_Bay	America/Glace_Bay
America/St_Thomas	America/Chicago	America/Shiprock
America/St_Barthelemy	America/Chihuahua	America/Guadeloupe
America/Miquelon	America/Maceio	America/Toronto
America/Noronha	America/Swift_Current	America/Tortola
America/Mendoza	America/Argentina/Mendoza	America/Argentina/San_Luis
America/Argentina/ Buenos_Aires	America/Argentina/Catamarca	America/Argentina/Tucuman
America/Argentina/San_Juan	America/Argentina/La_Rioja	America/Argentina/Salta
America/Argentina/Cordoba	America/Argentina/Jujuy	America/Argentina/ ComodRivadavia
America/Argentina/Ushuaia	America/Argentina/Rio_Gallegos	America/St_Vincent
America/Boise	America/Regina	America/Thule
America/Santiago	America/Menominee	America/Coral_Harbour
America/Caracas	America/Aruba	America/Danmarkshavn
America/Jamaica	America/Fortaleza	America/Inuvik
America/Havana	America/Curacao	America/Cuiaba
America/Guatemala	America/Dawson	America/Yakutat

America/Atikokan	America/Nipigon	America/Grenada
America/Panama	America/Eirunepe	America/Phoenix
America/Belem	America/Goose_Bay	America/Sao_Paulo
America/Vancouver	America/Adak	America/Tijuana
America/Louisville	America/Scoresbysund	America/Halifax
America/Antigua	America/Winnipeg	America/Asuncion
America/Santarem	America/Knox_IN	America/Buenos_Aires
America/Catamarca	America/Pangnirtung	America/Rainy_River
America/Rankin_Inlet	America/Araguaina	America/Atka
America/Cayenne	America/Campo_Grande	America/Mazatlan
America/Porto_Velho	America/Anguilla	America/Whitehorse
America/Nassau	America/Hermosillo	America/Guyana
America/Grand_Turk	America/St_Lucia	America/Manaus
America/Blanc-Sablon	America/Kentucky/Monticello	America/Kentucky/Louisville
America/Ensenada	America/Anchorage	America/Managua
America/Costa_Rica	America/La_Paz	America/Puerto_Rico
America/Iqaluit	America/Virgin	America/Porto_Acre
America/Yellowknife	America/Boa_Vista	America/Montserrat
America/Juneau	America/Port-au-Prince	America/Recife
America/Port_of_Spain	America/Barbados	America/Bahia
America/Monterrey	America/Indiana/Knox	America/Indiana/Marengo
America/Indiana/Vincennes	America/Indiana/Tell_City	America/Indiana/Vevay
America/Indiana/Petersburg	America/Indiana/Indianapolis	America/Indiana/Winamac
America/Resolute	America/Cordoba	America/Rosario
America/Santo_Domingo	America/Denver	America/Edmonton
America/Thunder_Bay	America/Merida	America/Dawson_Creek
America/St_Johns	America/Cancun	America/Fort_Wayne
America/Dominica	America/Marigot	America/Jujuy
America/Rio_Branco	America/Mexico_City	America/Cayman
America/Indianapolis	America/New_York	America/Guayaquil
America/Lima	America/Los_Angeles	America/Martinique
America/Belize	America/Bogota	America/Paramaribo
America/Detroit	America/Nome	America/Montevideo
America/North_Dakota/ New_Salem	America/North_Dakota/Center	America/Tegucigalpa
America/Moncton	Cuba	Navajo
NZ-CHAT	Iceland	Universal
Pacific/Pitcairn	Pacific/Kwajalein	Pacific/Noumea
Pacific/Samoa	Pacific/Enderbury	Pacific/Rarotonga



Pacific/Pago_Pago	Pacific/Tarawa	Pacific/Fiji
Pacific/Chatham	Pacific/Guadalcanal	Pacific/Honolulu
Pacific/Palau	Pacific/Galapagos	Pacific/Kosrae
Pacific/Majuro	Pacific/Guam	Pacific/Efate
Pacific/Funafuti	Pacific/Wallis	Pacific/Nauru
Pacific/Fakaofu	Pacific/Easter	Pacific/Norfolk
Pacific/Yap	Pacific/Johnston	Pacific/Truk
Pacific/Port_Moresby	Pacific/Saipan	Pacific/Tongatapu
Pacific/Midway	Pacific/Marquesas	Pacific/Kiritimati
Pacific/Gambier	Pacific/Niue	Pacific/Auckland
Pacific/Ponape	Pacific/Apia	Pacific/Tahiti
Pacific/Wake	Israel	UTC
Portugal	ROC	NZ
Canada/Central	Canada/Yukon	Canada/East-Saskatchewan
Canada/Mountain	Canada/Atlantic	Canada/Pacific
Canada/Eastern	Canada/Newfoundland	Canada/Saskatchewan
PST8PDT	Zulu	CET
Arctic/Longyearbyen	GB	ROK
EST5EDT	Greenwich	Asia/Pyongyang
Asia/Vladivostok	Asia/Ulaanbaatar	Asia/Tel_Aviv
Asia/Riyadh	Asia/Riyadh88	Asia/Baku
Asia/Kuching	Asia/Kashgar	Asia/Harbin
Asia/Katmandu	Asia/Riyadh89	Asia/Aqtobe
Asia/Thimbu	Asia/Baghdad	Asia/Colombo
Asia/Tokyo	Asia/Aqtau	Asia/Taipei
Asia/Kuwait	Asia/Chungking	Asia/Jayapura
Asia/Tashkent	Asia/Ujung_Pandang	Asia/Karachi
Asia/Dhaka	Asia/Singapore	Asia/Gaza
Asia/Sakhalin	Asia/Kuala_Lumpur	Asia/Dubai
Asia/Kabul	Asia/Dushanbe	Asia/Jakarta
Asia/Novosibirsk	Asia/Qyzylorda	Asia/Dili
Asia/Shanghai	Asia/Irkutsk	Asia/Kamchatka
Asia/Urumqi	Asia/Aden	Asia/Muscat
Asia/Magadan	Asia/Yekaterinburg	Asia/Tbilisi
Asia/Brunei	Asia/Krasnoyarsk	Asia/Hong_Kong
Asia/Omsk	Asia/Samarkand	Asia/Pontianak
Asia/Saigon	Asia/Hovd	Asia/Bahrain
Asia/Phnom_Penh	Asia/Ashkhabad	Asia/Kolkata

Asia/Bishkek	Asia/Macao	Asia/Anadyr
Asia/Calcutta	Asia/Ulan_Bator	Asia/Macau
Asia/Vientiane	Asia/Ashgabat	Asia/Istanbul
Asia/Dacca	Asia/Damascus	Asia/Yakutsk
Asia/Kathmandu	Asia/Makassar	Asia/Amman
Asia/Thimphu	Asia/Choibalsan	Asia/Manila
Asia/Yerevan	Asia/Tehran	Asia/Rangoon
Asia/Qatar	Asia/Almaty	Asia/Chongqing
Asia/Oral	Asia/Beirut	Asia/Seoul
Asia/Bangkok	Asia/Nicosia	Asia/Ho_Chi_Minh
Asia/Riyadh87	Asia/Jerusalem	MET
HST		